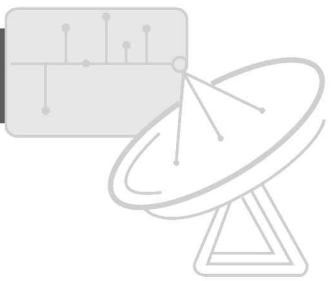
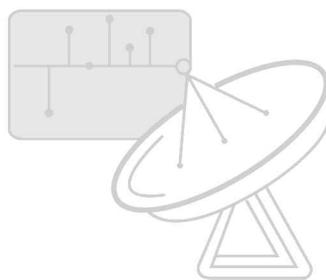


# Signals and Systems



# Signals and Systems

THIRD EDITION



**A. ANAND KUMAR**

*Principal*  
College of Engineering  
K.L. University  
Green Fields, Vaddeswaram  
Guntur District  
Andhra Pradesh

**PHI Learning Private Limited**  
Delhi-110092  
2013

**SIGNALS AND SYSTEMS, Third Edition**  
A. Anand Kumar

© 2013 by PHI Learning Private Limited, Delhi. All rights reserved. No part of this book may be reproduced in any form, by mimeograph or any other means, without permission in writing from the publisher.

**ISBN-978-81-203-4840-0**

The export rights of this book are vested solely with the publisher.

**Fourth Printing (Third Edition)** ... ... ... **September 2013**

Published by Asoke K. Ghosh, PHI Learning Private Limited, Rimjhim House, 111, Patparganj Industrial Estate, Delhi-110092 and Printed by Mohan Makhijani at Rekha Printers Private Limited, New Delhi-110020.

*To my Gurus*

**Dr. K. RAJA RAJESWARI**

Professor, ECE Dept., A.U. College of Engineering, Visakhapatnam

**Dr. K.S. LINGAMURTHY**

Professor & HOD, EEE Dept., GITAM University, Visakhapatnam

*and*

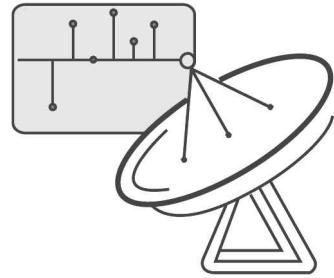
*To my well wishers*

**SRI B. VENU GOPALA KRISHNA**

Chairman, Sasi Educational Society, Velivennu, W.G. District, A.P.

**Er. SRI KONERU SATYANARAYANA**

President, KLEF, K.L. University, Vijayawada



# Contents

<i>Preface .....</i>	<i>xvii</i>
<i>Symbols, Notations and Abbreviations .....</i>	<i>xxi</i>
<b>1. SIGNALS.....</b>	<b>1–112</b>
1.1    Introduction .....	1
1.2    Representation of Discrete-time Signals .....	1
1.2.1    Graphical Representation .....	2
1.2.2    Functional Representation .....	2
1.2.3    Tabular Representation .....	2
1.2.4    Sequence Representation .....	3
1.3    Elementary Signals .....	3
1.3.1    Unit Step Function .....	3
1.3.2    Unit Ramp Function .....	5
1.3.3    Unit Parabolic Function .....	6
1.3.4    Unit Impulse Function .....	8
1.3.5    Sinusoidal Signal .....	9
1.3.6    Real Exponential Signal .....	11
1.3.7    Complex Exponential Signal .....	12
1.3.8    Rectangular Pulse Function .....	13
1.3.9    Triangular Pulse Function .....	13
1.3.10    Signum Function .....	14
1.3.11    Sinc Function .....	14
1.3.12    Gaussian Function .....	15
1.4    Basic Operations on Signals .....	20
1.4.1    Time Shifting .....	20
1.4.2    Time Reversal .....	21

1.4.3	Amplitude Scaling .....	27
1.4.4	Time Scaling .....	27
1.4.5	Signal Addition .....	30
1.4.6	Signal Multiplication .....	31
1.5	Classification of Signals .....	41
1.5.1	Deterministic and Random Signals .....	42
1.5.2	Periodic and Non-periodic Signals .....	43
1.5.3	Energy and Power Signals .....	55
1.5.4	Causal and Non-causal Signals .....	73
1.5.5	Even and Odd Signals .....	75
	<i>MatLab Programs</i> .....	82
	<i>Short Questions with Answers</i> .....	98
	<i>Review Questions</i> .....	105
	<i>Fill in the Blanks</i> .....	105
	<i>Objective Type Questions</i> .....	106
	<i>Problems</i> .....	109
<b>2.</b>	<b>SYSTEMS</b> .....	<b>113–170</b>
2.1	Introduction .....	113
2.2	Classification of Systems .....	113
2.2.1	Lumped Parameter and Distributed Parameter Systems .....	115
2.2.2	Static and Dynamic Systems .....	115
2.2.3	Causal and Non-causal Systems .....	116
2.2.4	Linear and Non-linear Systems .....	118
2.2.5	Time-invariant and Time-varying Systems .....	125
2.2.6	Stable and Unstable Systems .....	138
2.2.7	Invertible and Non-invertible Systems .....	156
2.2.8	FIR and IIR Systems .....	156
	<i>MatLab Programs</i> .....	157
	<i>Short Questions with Answers</i> .....	164
	<i>Review Questions</i> .....	166
	<i>Fill in the Blanks</i> .....	166
	<i>Objective Type Questions</i> .....	167
	<i>Problems</i> .....	169
<b>3.</b>	<b>SIGNAL ANALYSIS</b> .....	<b>171–202</b>
3.1	Introduction .....	171
3.2	Analogy between Vectors and Signals .....	171
3.3	Graphical Evaluation of a Component of one Function in the Other .....	180
3.4	Orthogonal Vector Space .....	181
3.5	Orthogonal Signal Space .....	182
3.5.1	Approximation of a Function by a Set of Mutually Orthogonal Functions .....	183
3.5.2	Evaluation of Mean Square Error .....	185
3.5.3	Representation of a Function by a Closed or a Complete Set of Mutually Orthogonal Functions .....	185

---

3.6 Orthogonality in Complex Functions .....	187
<i>MatLab Programs</i> .....	193
<i>Short Questions with Answers</i> .....	197
<i>Review Questions</i> .....	200
<i>Fill in the Blanks</i> .....	200
<i>Objective Type Questions</i> .....	201
<i>Problems</i> .....	202

#### 4. FOURIER SERIES REPRESENTATION OF PERIODIC SIGNALS ..... 203–295

4.1 Introduction .....	203
4.2 Representation of Fourier Series .....	203
4.3 Existence of Fourier Series .....	204
4.4 Trigonometric Form of Fourier Series .....	204
4.4.1 Evaluation of Fourier Coefficients of the Trigonometric Fourier Series .....	205
4.5 Cosine Representation (Alternate Form of the Trigonometric Representation) .....	211
4.6 Wave Symmetry .....	213
4.6.1 Even or Mirror Symmetry .....	215
4.6.2 Odd or Rotation Symmetry .....	219
4.6.3 Half Wave Symmetry .....	222
4.6.4 Quarter Wave Symmetry .....	225
4.7 Exponential Fourier Series .....	229
4.7.1 Determination of the Coefficients of Exponential Fourier Series .....	230
4.7.2 Trigonometric Fourier Series from Exponential Fourier Series .....	231
4.7.3 Exponential Fourier Series from Trigonometric Fourier Series .....	232
4.7.4 Cosine Fourier Series from Exponential Fourier Series .....	233
4.8 Fourier Spectrum .....	233
4.9 Power Representation Using the Fourier Series .....	242
4.10 Gibbs Phenomenon .....	243
4.11 Properties of Continuous-Time Fourier Series .....	244
4.11.1 Linearity Property .....	244
4.11.2 Time Shifting Property .....	244
4.11.3 Time Reversal Property .....	245
4.11.4 Time Scaling Property .....	246
4.11.5 Time Differentiation Property .....	246
4.11.6 Time Integration Property .....	246
4.11.7 Convolution Theorem or Property .....	247
4.11.8 Modulation or Multiplication Property .....	248
4.11.9 Conjugation and Conjugate Symmetry Property .....	249
4.11.10 Parseval's Relation or Theorem or Property .....	249
<i>MatLab Programs</i> .....	277
<i>Short Questions with Answers</i> .....	286
<i>Review Questions</i> .....	289
<i>Fill in the Blanks</i> .....	289
<i>Objective Type Questions</i> .....	291
<i>Problems</i> .....	293

---

<b>5. FOURIER TRANSFORMS .....</b>	<b>296–409</b>
5.1 Introduction .....	296
5.2 Fourier Transform Representation of Non-periodic Functions .....	297
5.2.1 Derivation of the Fourier Transform of a Non-periodic Signal from the Fourier Series of a Periodic Signal .....	298
5.3 Magnitude and Phase Representation of Fourier Transform .....	299
5.4 Existence of Fourier Transforms .....	300
5.5 Fourier Transforms of Standard Signals .....	300
5.5.1 Impulse Function $\delta(t)$ .....	300
5.5.2 Single-sided Real Exponential Function $e^{-at} u(t)$ .....	301
5.5.3 Double-sided Real Exponential Function $e^{-a t }$ .....	302
5.5.4 Complex Exponential Function $e^{j\omega_0 t}$ .....	303
5.5.5 Constant Amplitude (1) .....	303
5.5.6 Signum Function $\text{sgn}(t)$ .....	305
5.5.7 Unit Step Function $u(t)$ .....	306
5.5.8 Rectangular Pulse (Gate pulse) $\Pi(t/\tau)$ or $\text{rect}(t/\tau)$ .....	307
5.5.9 Triangular Pulse $\Delta(t/\tau)$ .....	309
5.5.10 Cosine Wave $\cos \omega_0 t$ .....	311
5.5.11 Sine Wave $\sin \omega_0 t$ .....	311
5.6 Properties of Continuous Time Fourier Transform .....	312
5.6.1 Linearity Property .....	312
5.6.2 Time Shifting Property .....	312
5.6.3 Frequency Shifting Property (Multiplication by an Exponential) .....	313
5.6.4 Time Reversal Property .....	314
5.6.5 Time Scaling Property .....	314
5.6.6 Differentiation in Time Domain Property .....	315
5.6.7 Differentiation in Frequency Domain Property .....	316
5.6.8 Time Integration Property .....	316
5.6.9 Convolution Property or Theorem.....	317
5.6.10 Multiplication Property or Theorem .....	318
5.6.11 Duality (Symmetry) Property .....	319
5.6.12 Modulation Property .....	320
5.6.13 Conjugation Property .....	321
5.6.14 Autocorrelation Property .....	321
5.6.15 Parseval's Relation or Theorem or Property .....	322
5.6.16 Area under the Curve .....	323
5.6.17 Fourier Transform of Complex and Real Functions .....	323
5.7 Fourier Transform of a Periodic Signal .....	325
5.8 System Analysis with Fourier Transform .....	371
5.9 Introduction to Hilbert Transform .....	380
<i>MatLab Programs .....</i>	386
<i>Short Questions with Answers .....</i>	398
<i>Review Questions .....</i>	401
<i>Fill in the Blanks .....</i>	402
<i>Objective Type Questions .....</i>	403
<i>Problems .....</i>	408

**6. SIGNAL TRANSMISSION THROUGH LINEAR SYSTEMS ..... 410–456**

6.1	Introduction .....	410
6.2	Systems .....	410
6.3	Properties of Linear Time Invariant Systems .....	413
6.3.1	The Commutative Property .....	413
6.3.2	The Distributive Property .....	413
6.3.3	The Associative Property .....	414
6.3.4	Systems with and without Memory .....	414
6.3.5	Causality .....	414
6.3.6	Stability .....	415
6.3.7	Invertibility .....	415
6.3.8	The Unit Step Response .....	415
6.4	Transfer Function of an LTI System .....	416
6.5	Filter Characteristics of Linear Systems .....	417
6.6	Distortionless Transmission through a System .....	418
6.7	Signal Bandwidth .....	420
6.8	System Bandwidth .....	421
6.9	Ideal Filter Characteristics .....	421
6.10	Causality and Paley-Wiener Criterion for Physical Realization .....	424
6.11	Relationship between Bandwidth and Rise Time .....	424
	<i>Short Questions with Answers .....</i>	447
	<i>Review Questions .....</i>	451
	<i>Fill in the Blanks .....</i>	451
	<i>Objective Type Questions .....</i>	453
	<i>Problems .....</i>	454

**7. CONVOLUTION AND CORRELATION OF SIGNALS ..... 457–540**

7.1	Introduction .....	457
7.2	Concept of Convolution .....	457
7.3	Properties of Convolution .....	459
7.4	Convolution Theorems .....	463
7.4.1	Time Convolution Theorem .....	463
7.4.2	Frequency Convolution Theorem .....	464
7.5	Graphical Procedure to Perform Convolution .....	466
7.6	Signal Comparison: Correlation of Functions .....	483
7.6.1	Cross Correlation .....	485
7.6.2	Autocorrelation .....	488
7.7	Energy Density Spectrum .....	491
7.8	Power Density Spectrum .....	493
7.9	Relation between Autocorrelation Function and Energy/Power Spectral Density Function .....	497
7.9.1	Relation between ESD and Autocorrelation Function $R(\tau)$ .....	497
7.9.2	Relation between Autocorrelation Function $R(\tau)$ and Power Spectral Density (PSD) .....	498
7.10	Relation between Convolution and Correlation .....	498

7.11	Detection of Periodic Signals in the Presence of Noise by Correlation .....	516
7.11.1	Detection by Autocorrelation .....	517
7.11.2	Detection by Cross Correlation .....	517
7.12	Extraction of a Signal from Noise by Filtering.....	518
	<i>MatLab Programs</i> .....	520
	<i>Short Questions with Answers</i> .....	531
	<i>Review Questions</i> .....	536
	<i>Fill in the Blanks</i> .....	536
	<i>Objective Type Questions</i> .....	537
	<i>Problems</i> .....	539
<b>8.</b>	<b>SAMPLING .....</b>	<b>541–590</b>
8.1	Introduction .....	541
8.2	Sampling.....	541
8.3	Sampling Theorem .....	542
8.4	Nyquist Rate of Sampling .....	545
8.5	Effects of under Sampling—Aliasing .....	546
8.6	Anti-Aliasing Filter.....	546
8.7	Sampling Techniques .....	547
8.7.1	Ideal or Impulse Sampling .....	547
8.7.2	Natural Sampling .....	548
8.7.3	Flat Top Sampling .....	550
8.8	Data Reconstruction .....	552
8.8.1	Ideal Reconstruction Filter .....	553
8.8.2	Zero Order Hold .....	554
8.8.3	Transfer Function of a Zero Order Hold .....	555
8.9	Sampling of Band Pass Signals .....	575
	<i>MatLab Programs</i> .....	578
	<i>Short Questions with Answers</i> .....	582
	<i>Review Questions</i> .....	585
	<i>Fill in the Blanks</i> .....	585
	<i>Objective Type Questions</i> .....	586
	<i>Problems</i> .....	588
<b>9.</b>	<b>LAPLACE TRANSFORMS .....</b>	<b>591–753</b>
9.1	Introduction .....	591
9.2	Region of Convergence .....	592
9.3	Existence of Laplace Transform .....	593
9.4	Advantages and Limitations of Laplace Transform .....	594
9.5	Relation between Fourier Transform and Laplace Transform .....	594
9.6	One-sided (Unilateral) Laplace Transform of Some Commonly Used Signals .....	596
9.6.1	Impulse Function [ $x(t) = \delta(t)$ ] .....	596
9.6.2	Step Function [ $x(t) = u(t)$ ] .....	596
9.6.3	Ramp Function [ $x(t) = tu(t)$ ] .....	597
9.6.4	Parabolic Function [ $x(t) = t^2 u(t)$ ].....	598

---

9.6.5	Real Exponential Function [ $x(t) = e^{at} u(t)$ ] .....	598
9.6.6	Complex Exponential Function [ $x(t) = e^{j\omega t} u(t)$ ] .....	599
9.6.7	Sine and Cosine Functions [ $x(t) = \cos \omega t u(t), \sin \omega t u(t)$ ] .....	599
9.6.8	Hyperbolic sine and cosine Functions [ $x(t) = \sinh \omega t u(t), \cosh \omega t u(t)$ ] ...	600
9.6.9	Damped sine and cosine Functions [ $x(t) = e^{-at} \sin \omega t u(t)$ ] .....	600
9.6.10	Damped Hyperbolic sine and cosine Functions [ $x(t) = e^{-at} \sinh \omega t u(t)$ ] ...	601
9.7	Properties and Theorems of Laplace Transform .....	616
9.7.1	Linearity Property .....	616
9.7.2	Time Shift Property .....	617
9.7.3	Time Scaling Property .....	617
9.7.4	Time Reversal Property .....	618
9.7.5	Transform of Derivatives Property .....	618
9.7.6	Transform of Integrals Property .....	620
9.7.7	Differentiation in $s$ -domain Property .....	620
9.7.8	Frequency Shift Property .....	622
9.7.9	Time Convolution Property .....	622
9.7.10	Multiplication or Modulation or Convolution in $s$ -domain Property .....	623
9.7.11	Conjugation and Conjugate Symmetry Property .....	624
9.7.12	Parseval's Relation or Theorem or Property .....	625
9.7.13	Initial Value Theorem .....	625
9.7.14	Final Value Theorem .....	626
9.7.15	Time Periodicity Property (Laplace Transform of Periodic Functions) ....	627
9.8	Inversion of Unilateral Laplace Transform .....	648
9.8.1	Distinct Poles .....	649
9.8.2	Multiple Poles .....	649
9.8.3	Complex Roots .....	650
9.9	Inversion of Bilateral Laplace Transform .....	676
9.10	ROCs for Various Classes of Signals .....	682
9.10.1	Right-sided Signals .....	683
9.10.2	Left-sided Signals .....	683
9.10.3	Two-sided Signals .....	683
9.10.4	Finite Duration Signals .....	683
9.10.5	Properties of ROC .....	684
9.11	Solution of Differential Equations Using Laplace Transform .....	687
9.12	Waveform Synthesis .....	703
9.13	Circuit Analysis Using Laplace Transforms .....	718
9.13.1	Step and Impulse Responses of Series $R-L$ Circuit .....	719
9.13.2	Step and Impulse Responses of Series $R-C$ Circuit .....	721
9.13.3	Step Response of Series $R-L-C$ Circuit .....	723
	<i>MatLab Programs</i> .....	733
	<i>Short Questions with Answers</i> .....	741
	<i>Review Questions</i> .....	744
	<i>Fill in the Blanks</i> .....	745
	<i>Objective Type Questions</i> .....	746
	<i>Problems</i> .....	750

---

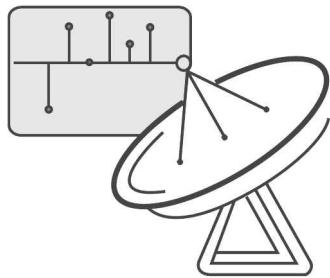
<b>10. Z-TRANSFORMS .....</b>	<b>754–901</b>
10.1 Introduction .....	754
10.2 Relation between Discrete Time Fourier Transform (DTFT) and Z-Transform .....	755
10.3 Z-Transforms of Some Common Sequences .....	756
10.3.1 The Unit-sample Sequence (The Unit-impulse Sequence) [ $x(n) = \delta(n)$ ] .....	756
10.3.2 The Unit-step Sequence [ $x(n) = u(n)$ ] .....	757
10.3.3 The Unit-ramp Sequence [ $x(n) = r(n) = nu(n)$ ] .....	757
10.3.4 The Exponential Sequence [ $x(n) = e^{-j\omega n} u(n)$ ] .....	758
10.3.5 The Sinusoidal Sequence [ $x(n) = \sin \omega n u(n)$ ] .....	758
10.3.6 The Cosinusoidal Sequence [ $x(n) = \cos \omega n u(n)$ ] .....	759
10.4 Z-Transform and ROC of Finite Duration Sequences .....	783
10.5 Properties of ROC .....	787
10.6 Properties of Z-Transform .....	788
10.6.1 Linearity Property .....	788
10.6.2 Time Shifting Property .....	789
10.6.3 Multiplication by an Exponential Sequence Property .....	791
10.6.4 Time Reversal Property .....	791
10.6.5 Time Expansion Property .....	792
10.6.6 Multiplication by $n$ or Differentiation in $z$ -domain Property .....	793
10.6.7 Conjugation Property .....	793
10.6.8 Convolution Property .....	794
10.6.9 The Multiplication Property or Complex Convolution Property .....	795
10.6.10 Correlation Property .....	796
10.6.11 Accumulation Property .....	797
10.6.12 Parseval's Theorem or Relation or Property .....	797
10.6.13 Initial Value Theorem .....	798
10.6.14 Final Value Theorem .....	798
10.7 Inverse Z-Transform .....	814
10.7.1 Long Division Method .....	816
10.7.2 Partial Fraction Expansion Method .....	833
10.7.3 Residue Method .....	847
10.7.4 Convolution Method .....	853
10.8 Transform Analysis of LTI Systems .....	855
10.8.1 System Function and Impulse Response .....	855
10.8.2 Relationship between Transfer Function and Difference Equation .....	856
10.9 Stability and Causality .....	856
10.10 Solution of Difference Equations Using Z-Transforms .....	874
<i>MatLab Programs .....</i>	880
<i>Short Questions with Answers .....</i>	890
<i>Review Questions .....</i>	893
<i>Fill in the Blanks .....</i>	893
<i>Objective Type Questions .....</i>	895
<i>Problems .....</i>	898

---

<b>11. SYSTEM REALIZATION .....</b>	<b>902–921</b>
11.1 Introduction .....	902
11.2 Realization of Continuous-Time Systems .....	902
11.2.1 Realization of Systems in Direct Form-I .....	904
11.2.2 Realization of Systems in Direct Form-II .....	907
11.2.3 Realization of Systems in Cascade Form .....	911
11.2.4 Realization of Systems in Parallel Form .....	914
<i>Short Questions with Answers .....</i>	919
<i>Review Questions .....</i>	920
<i>Fill in the Blanks .....</i>	920
<i>Objective Type Questions .....</i>	920
<i>Problems .....</i>	921
<b>12. DISCRETE-TIME FOURIER TRANSFORM .....</b>	<b>922–972</b>
12.1 Introduction .....	922
12.2 Discrete-time Fourier Transform (DTFT) .....	922
12.3 Existence of DTFT .....	923
12.4 Relation between Z-transform and Fourier Transform .....	923
12.5 Inverse Discrete-time Fourier Transform .....	932
12.6 Properties of Discrete-time Fourier Transform .....	934
12.6.1 Linearity Property .....	934
12.6.2 Periodicity Property .....	935
12.6.3 Time Shifting Property .....	935
12.6.4 Frequency Shifting Property .....	935
12.6.5 Time Reversal Property .....	936
12.6.6 Differentiation in the Frequency Domain Property .....	936
12.6.7 Time Convolution Property .....	937
12.6.8 Frequency Convolution Property .....	937
12.6.9 The Correlation Theorem .....	938
12.6.10 The Modulation Theorem .....	938
12.6.11 Parseval's Theorem .....	938
12.6.12 Symmetry Properties .....	939
12.7 Transfer Function .....	947
12.8 Frequency Response of Discrete-time Systems .....	948
<i>MatLab Programs .....</i>	957
<i>Short Questions with Answers .....</i>	967
<i>Review Questions .....</i>	969
<i>Fill in the Blanks .....</i>	969
<i>Objective Type Questions .....</i>	970
<i>Problems .....</i>	972

<b>Appendix A .....</b>	<b>973–975</b>
<b>Appendix B .....</b>	<b>976–985</b>
<b>Glossary .....</b>	<b>987–993</b>
<b>Answers .....</b>	<b>995–1018</b>
<b>Index .....</b>	<b>1019–1022</b>

# Preface



Reflecting over 37 years of experience in the class room, this comprehensive textbook on Signals and Systems is developed to provide a solid grounding in the foundations of this subject. Using a student-friendly writing style, the text introduces the reader to the concepts of signals and systems in a simple and lucid manner. The text is suitable for use as one semester course material by undergraduate students of Electronics and Communication Engineering, Telecommunication Engineering, Electronics and Instrumentation Engineering and Electrical and Electronics Engineering. It will also be useful to AMIE and grad IETE courses.

The third edition of this book is organised in 12 chapters. The outline of the book is as follows:

Signals constitute an important part of our daily life. Standard signals, basic operations on signals and classification of signals are discussed in Chapter 1. Also operations on signals and determination of the type of a given signal are illustrated with numerous examples.

A system is defined as an entity that acts on an input signal and transforms it into an output signal. Classification of the systems is covered in Chapter 2 along with the numerical examples on determination of the type of a given system.

A new problem can be understood very easily when an analogy can be found between this and a familiar phenomenon. Using concepts of vectors, signal analysis is performed in Chapter 3.

Periodic signals can be easily analysed using Fourier series. Fourier series representation of periodic signals in trigonometric form, cosine form and exponential form, and the conversion from one form to another are devoted to Chapter 4. The properties of Fourier series and Fourier spectrum are also discussed in this chapter.

Signal analysis becomes very easy in frequency domain. Fourier transform is a transformation technique to transform periodic and aperiodic signals from continuous time

domain into frequency domain. Fourier transform of various signals, properties of Fourier transform, Fourier spectrum and system analysis using Fourier transform are discussed in Chapter 5. Hilbert transformation is also introduced.

Transmission of signals through linear systems is very important. The filter characteristics of linear time invariant systems, distortionless transmission through linear time invariant systems, signal bandwidth and system bandwidth, various types of filters and time domain and frequency domain criterion for physical realizability are described in Chapter 6.

Convolution and correlation of signals are very important in communication. Convolution is a mathematical way of combining two signals to form a third signal. Correlation, which is similar to convolution, compares two signals to determine the degree of similarity between them. Determination of convolution of two signals by algebraic method and graphical method, cross correlation and autocorrelation of signals, power spectral density and energy spectral density are also covered in Chapter 7.

Digital communication is more advantageous as compared to analog one. The process of converting a continuous-time signal into a discrete-time signal is called sampling. Sampling theorem, types of sampling, band pass sampling theorem, etc. are discussed in Chapter 8.

Laplace transform is a very powerful mathematical technique for analysis of continuous-time systems. Unilateral and bilateral Laplace transform, Inverse Laplace transform, ROC, its properties, properties and theorems of Laplace transform, solution of differential equations, waveform synthesis and circuit analysis using Laplace transform are discussed in Chapter 9.

Z-transform is a very powerful mathematical technique for analysis of discrete-time systems. Unilateral and bilateral Z-transform, Inverse Z-transform, ROC, its properties, properties and theorems of Z-transform, solution of difference equations using Z-transform are discussed in Chapter 10.

Systems may be continuous-time systems or discrete-time systems. Realization of a system means obtaining a network corresponding to the differential equation or difference equation or transfer function of the system. Various methods of realization of continuous-time systems are discussed in Chapter 11.

Discrete-time Fourier transform (DTFT) is a method of representing a discrete-time signal in frequency domain. It is popular for digital signal processing because using this the complicated convolution operation of two sequences in time domain can be converted into a much simpler operation of multiplication in frequency domain. The DTFT, its properties and its use in the analysis of signals are discussed in Chapter 12.

Matlab programs have been included at the end of each chapter to enable the students to practice and test and to get clear concepts.

A large number of typical examples have been worked out, so that the reader can understand the related concepts clearly. Extensive short questions with answers are given at the end of each chapter to enable the students to prepare for the examinations very thoroughly. Review questions, fill in the blank type questions, objective type multiple choice questions and numerical problems are included at the end of each chapter to enable the students to build a clear understanding of the subject matter discussed in the text and also to assess their learning. The answers to all these are also given at the end of the book. Almost all the solved and unsolved problems presented in this book have been class room tested.

I express my profound gratitude to all those without whose assistance and cooperation, this book would not have been successfully completed. I thank Smt. G. Bhavani of Sasi Institute of Technology and Engineering, Tadepalligudem for typing the manuscript and drawing all the figures.

I thank Mr. T.J.V. Subrahmanyewara Rao, Associate Professor, ECE Department, K.L. University College of Engineering for helping with MatLab Programs.

I am grateful to Mr. Burugupalli Venugopala Krishna, Chairman, Sasi Educational Society, Velivennu, West Godavari District, for encouraging and providing me with all the facilities for writing this book. I also thank Mr. B. Ravi Kumar, Executive Director, Sasi Institute of Technology and Engineering, Tadepalligudem, for his cooperation.

I thank Er. Mr. Koneru Satyanarayana, President, Er. Mr. Koneru Lakshman Havish and Er. Mr. Koneru Raja Harin, Vice Presidents and Smt. Koneru Siva Kanchana Latha, Secretary Koneru Lakshmaiah Education Foundation (KLEF), K.L. University, Vijayawada, for their constant encouragement.

I express my sincere appreciation to my brother Mr. A. Vijaya Kumar and to my friends, Dr. K. Koteswara Rao, Chairman, Gowtham Educational Society, Gudivada, Krishna Dt., A.P. and Mr. Y. Ramesh Babu and Smt. Y. Krishna Kumari of Detroit, USA for their constant encouragement.

I thank Dr. K. Raja Rajeswari, Professor, ECE Department, Andhra University College of Engineering, Visakhapatnam and Dr. K.S. Linga Murthy, Professor and Head, EEE Department, GITAM University, Visakhapatnam, for their constant words of encouragement.

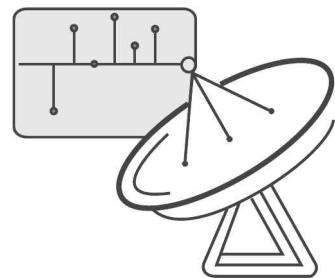
I am thankful to my publishers and staff of PHI Learning for publishing this book. My thanks in particular goes to Ms. Shivani Garg, Senior Editor for meticulously editing the manuscript. I also thank Ms. Babita Mishra, Editorial Coordinator and Mr. Mayur Joseph (Production Department) for their whole hearted cooperation.

Finally I am deeply indebted to my family: My wife A. Jhansi, who is the source of inspiration for this activity and without whose cooperation this book would not have been completed, my sons Dr. A. Anil Kumar and Mr. A. Sunil Kumar and daughters-in-law Dr. A. Anureet Kaur and Smt. A. Apurupa, and granddaughters A. Khushi and A. Shreya for motivating and encouraging me constantly to undertake and complete this work.

I will gratefully acknowledge constructive criticism from both students and teachers for further improvement of this book.

**A. Anand Kumar**

# Symbols, Notations and Abbreviations



## SYMBOLS AND NOTATIONS

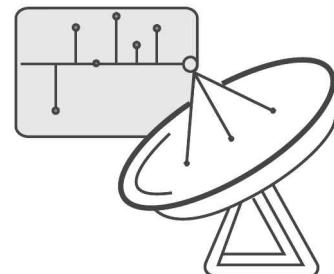
$\Omega$	Ohm
$H$	Henry
$F$	Farad
$*$	Linear convolution
$\otimes$	Correlation
$\oint$	Integration over a closed contour
$T$	Transformation
$x^*(t)$	Complex conjugate of $x(t)$
$L$	Laplace transform
$L^{-1}$	Inverse Laplace transform
$F$	Fourier transform
$F^{-1}$	Inverse Fourier transform
$Z$	Z-transform
$Z^{-1}$	Inverse Z-transform
$\longleftrightarrow$	Used for indicating a transform pair
lc letter	$x(t)$ or $x(n)$ for time signal
uc letter	$X(\omega)$ , $X(s)$ or $X(z)$ for the transformed signal
$ a $	Magnitude of the complex quantity $a$ . Absolute value of $a$ , if $a$ is real valued
$\arg(z)$ or $ z $	Angle of the complex quantity
$\delta(t)$	Unit-impulse function

$u(t)$	Unit-step function
$r(t)$	Unit-ramp function
$\delta(n)$	Unit-sample sequence
$u(n)$	Unit-step sequence
$r(n)$	Unit-ramp sequence
$\Pi(t/\tau)$ or $\text{rect}(t/\tau)$	Unit rectangular pulse
$\Delta(t/\tau)$	Unit triangular pulse
$\text{sgn}(t)$	Signum function

## ABBREVIATIONS

BIBO	Bounded-input Bounded-output
BPF	Band-pass filter
BRF	Band-reject filter
BW	Band width
CT	Continuous-time
CTFS	Continuous-time Fourier series
CTFT	Continuous-time Fourier transform
DFT	Discrete Fourier transform
DTFT	Discrete-time Fourier transform
FIR	Finite impulse response
FS	Fourier series
HPF	High-pass filter
Hz	Hertz
IDTFT	Inverse discrete-time Fourier transform
IIR	Infinite impulse response
$\text{Im}(s)$	Imaginary part of $s$
KVL	Kirchhoff's voltage law
LCM	Least common multiple
LPF	Low-pass filter
LSI	Linear shift invariant
LTI	Linear time invariant
LTV	Linear time variant
$\text{Re}(s)$	Real part of $s$
RMS	Root mean square
ROC	Region of convergence
S/H	Sample and hold
sps	Sample per second
ZOH	Zero-order hold

# 1



# Signals

## 1.1 INTRODUCTION

Anything that carries information can be called a signal. Signals constitute an important part of our daily life. A signal is defined as a single-valued function of one or more independent variables which contain some information. A signal may also be defined as any physical quantity that varies with time, space or any other independent variable. A signal may be represented in time domain or frequency domain. Human speech is a familiar example of a signal. Electric current and voltage are also examples of signals. A signal can be a function of one or more independent variables. A signal may be a function of time, temperature, position, pressure, distance, etc. If a signal depends on only one independent variable, it is called a *one-dimensional signal*, and if a signal depends on two independent variables, it is called a *two-dimensional signal*. In this book we discuss only about one-dimensional signals. In this chapter we discuss about various basic signals available, various operations on signals and classification of signals.

## 1.2 REPRESENTATION OF DISCRETE-TIME SIGNALS

In general signals may be continuous-time signals or discrete-time signals. Continuous-time signals are defined for all instants of time, whereas discrete-time signals are defined only at discrete instants of time. Continuous-time signals are represented by  $x(t)$  and discrete-time signals are represented by  $x(n)$  where  $t$  and  $n$  are independent variables in time domain. Continuous-time signals are represented by a function or a graph.

There are four ways of representing discrete-time signals. They are:

- |                             |                              |
|-----------------------------|------------------------------|
| 1. Graphical representation | 2. Functional representation |
| 3. Tabular representation   | 4. Sequence representation   |

### 1.2.1 Graphical Representation

Consider a signal  $x(n)$  with values

$$x(-2) = -3, \quad x(-1) = 2, \quad x(0) = 0, \quad x(1) = 3, \quad x(2) = 1 \quad \text{and} \quad x(3) = 2$$

This discrete-time signal can be represented graphically as shown in Figure 1.1.

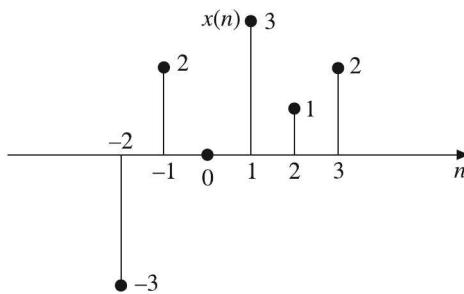


Figure 1.1 Graphical representation of discrete-time signal.

### 1.2.2 Functional Representation

In this, the amplitude of the signal is written against the values of  $n$ . The signal given in 1.2.1 can be represented using functional representation as given below.

$$x(n) = \begin{cases} -3 & \text{for } n = -2 \\ 2 & \text{for } n = -1 \\ 0 & \text{for } n = 0 \\ 3 & \text{for } n = 1 \\ 1 & \text{for } n = 2 \\ 2 & \text{for } n = 3 \end{cases}$$

Another example is

$$x(n) = \begin{cases} 2^n & \text{for } n \geq 0 \\ 0 & \text{for } n < 0 \end{cases}$$

### 1.2.3 Tabular Representation

In this, the sampling instant  $n$  and the magnitude of the signal at the sampling instant are represented in tabular form. The signal given in 1.2.1 can be represented in tabular form as shown below.

$n$	-2	-1	0	1	2	3
$x(n)$	-3	2	0	3	1	2

### 1.2.4 Sequence Representation

A finite duration sequence given in 1.2.1 can be represented as:

$$x(n) = \left\{ \begin{matrix} -3, 2, 0, 3, 1, 2 \\ \uparrow \end{matrix} \right\}$$

Another example is

$$x(n) = \left\{ \begin{matrix} \dots, 2, 3, 0, 1, -2, \dots \\ \uparrow \end{matrix} \right\}$$

The arrow mark  $\uparrow$  denotes the  $n = 0$  term. When no arrow is indicated, the first term corresponds to  $n = 0$

So a finite duration sequence, that satisfies the condition  $x(n) = 0$  for  $n < 0$  can be represented as  $x(n) = \{3, 5, 2, 1, 4, 7\}$ .

#### **Sum and product of discrete-time sequences**

The sum of two discrete-time sequences is obtained by adding the corresponding elements of sequences

$$\{C_n\} = \{a_n\} + \{b_n\} \rightarrow C_n = a_n + b_n$$

The product of two discrete-time sequences is obtained by multiplying the corresponding elements of the sequences.

$$\{C_n\} = \{a_n\} \{b_n\} \rightarrow C_n = a_n b_n$$

The multiplication of a sequence by a constant  $k$  is obtained by multiplying each element of the sequence by that constant.

$$\{C_n\} = k \{a_n\} \rightarrow C_n = k a_n$$

## 1.3 ELEMENTARY SIGNALS

There are several elementary signals which play vital role in the study of signals and systems. These elementary signals serve as basic building blocks for the construction of more complex signals. Infact, these elementary signals may be used to model a large number of physical signals which occur in nature. These elementary signals are also called standard signals.

The standard signals are:

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 1. Unit step function<br>3. Unit parabolic function<br>5. Sinusoidal function<br>7. Complex exponential function, etc. | 2. Unit ramp function<br>4. Unit impulse function<br>6. Real exponential function |
|--|---|

### 1.3.1 Unit Step Function

The step function is an important signal used for analysis of many systems. The step function is that type of elementary function which exists only for positive time and is zero for negative time. It is equivalent to applying a signal whose amplitude suddenly changes and remains constant forever after application.

If a step function has unity magnitude, then it is called unit step function. The usefulness of the unit-step function lies in the fact that if we want a signal to start at  $t = 0$ , so that it may have a value of zero for  $t < 0$ , we only need to multiply the given signal with unit step function  $u(t)$ . A unit step function is useful as a test signal because the response of the system for a unit step reveals a great deal about how quickly the system responds to a sudden change in the input signal.

The continuous-time unit step function  $u(t)$  is defined as:

$$u(t) = \begin{cases} 1 & \text{for } t \geq 0 \\ 0 & \text{for } t < 0 \end{cases}$$

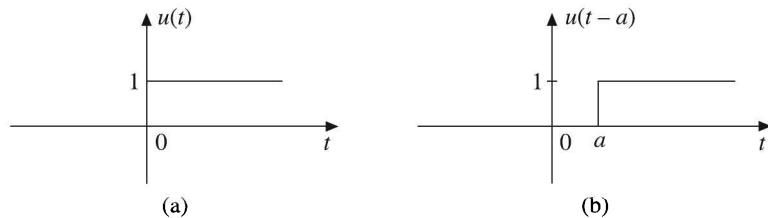
From the above equation for  $u(t)$ , we can observe that when the argument  $t$  in  $u(t)$  is less than zero, then the unit step function is zero, and when the argument  $t$  in  $u(t)$  is greater than or equal to zero, then the unit step function is unity.

The shifted unit step function  $u(t - a)$  is defined as:

$$u(t - a) = \begin{cases} 1 & \text{for } t \geq a \\ 0 & \text{for } t < a \end{cases}$$

It is zero if the argument  $(t - a) < 0$  and equal to 1 if the argument  $(t - a) \geq 0$ .

The graphical representations of  $u(t)$  and  $u(t - a)$  are shown in Figure 1.2[(a) and (b)].



**Figure 1.2** (a) Unit step function, (b) Delayed unit step function.

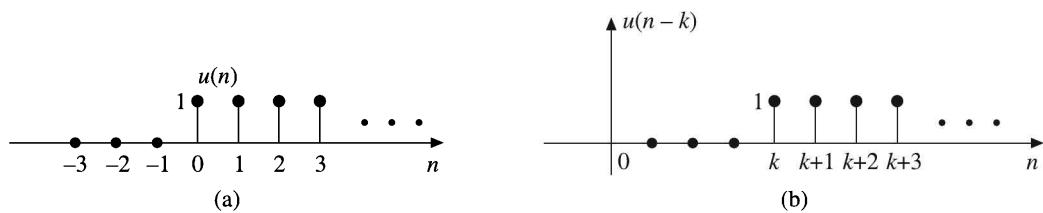
The discrete-time unit step sequence  $u(n)$  is defined as:

$$u(n) = \begin{cases} 1 & \text{for } n \geq 0 \\ 0 & \text{for } n < 0 \end{cases}$$

The shifted version of the discrete-time unit step sequence  $u(n - k)$  is defined as

$$u(n - k) = \begin{cases} 1 & \text{for } n \geq k \\ 0 & \text{for } n < k \end{cases}$$

The graphical representations of  $u(n)$  and  $u(n - k)$  are shown in Figure 1.3[(a) and (b)].



**Figure 1.3** Discrete-time (a) Unit step function, (b) Shifted unit step function.

### 1.3.2 Unit Ramp Function

The continuous-time unit ramp function  $r(t)$  is that function which starts at  $t = 0$  and increases linearly with time and is defined as:

$$r(t) = \begin{cases} t & \text{for } t \geq 0 \\ 0 & \text{for } t < 0 \end{cases}$$

or

$$r(t) = t u(t)$$

The unit ramp function has unit slope. It is a signal whose amplitude varies linearly. It can be obtained by integrating the unit step function. That means, a unit step signal can be obtained by differentiating the unit ramp signal.

i.e.

$$r(t) = \int u(t) dt = \int dt = t \quad \text{for } t \geq 0$$

$$u(t) = \frac{d}{dt} r(t)$$

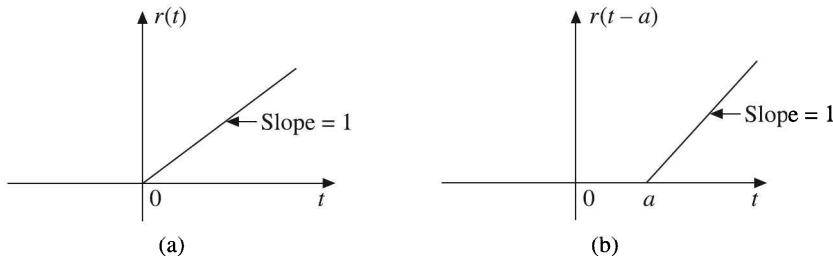
The delayed unit ramp signal  $r(t - a)$  is given by

$$r(t - a) = \begin{cases} t - a & \text{for } t \geq a \\ 0 & \text{for } t < a \end{cases}$$

or

$$r(t - a) = (t - a) u(t - a)$$

The graphical representations of  $r(t)$  and  $r(t - a)$  are shown in Figure 1.4[(a) and (b)].



**Figure 1.4** (a) Unit ramp signal, (b) Delayed unit ramp signal.

The discrete-time unit ramp sequence  $r(n)$  is defined as

$$r(n) = \begin{cases} n & \text{for } n \geq 0 \\ 0 & \text{for } n < 0 \end{cases}$$

or

$$r(n) = n u(n)$$

The shifted version of the discrete-time unit-ramp sequence  $r(n - k)$  is defined as

$$r(n - k) = \begin{cases} n - k & \text{for } n \geq k \\ 0 & \text{for } n < k \end{cases}$$

or

$$r(n - k) = (n - k) u(n - k)$$

The graphical representations of  $r(n)$  and  $r(n - 2)$  are shown in Figure 1.5[(a) and (b)].

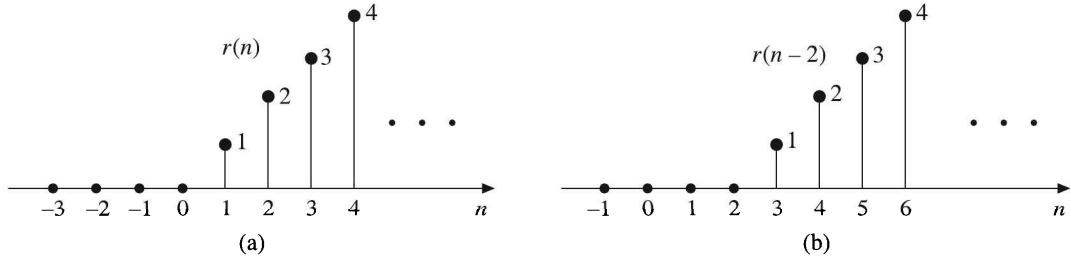


Figure 1.5 Discrete-time (a) Unit-ramp sequence, (b) Shifted-ramp sequence.

### 1.3.3 Unit Parabolic Function

The continuous-time unit parabolic function  $p(t)$ , also called unit acceleration signal starts at  $t = 0$ , and is defined as:

$$p(t) = \begin{cases} \frac{t^2}{2} & \text{for } t \geq 0 \\ 0 & \text{for } t < 0 \end{cases}$$

or

$$p(t) = \frac{t^2}{2} u(t)$$

The shifted version of the unit parabolic sequence  $p(t - a)$  is given by

$$p(t - a) = \begin{cases} \frac{(t - a)^2}{2} & \text{for } t \geq a \\ 0 & \text{for } t < a \end{cases}$$

or

$$p(t - a) = \frac{(t - a)^2}{2} u(t - a)$$

The graphical representations of  $p(t)$  and  $p(t - a)$  are shown in Figure 1.6[(a) and (b)].

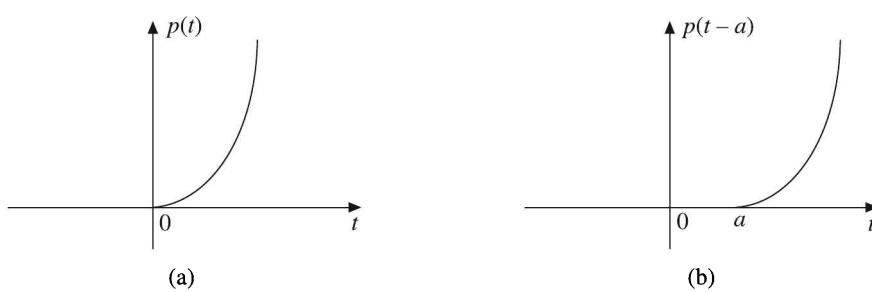


Figure 1.6 (a) Unit parabolic signal, (b) Delayed parabolic signal.

The unit parabolic function can be obtained by integrating the unit ramp function or double integrating the unit step function.

$$p(t) = \int \int u(t) dt = \int r(t) dt = \int t dt = \frac{t^2}{2} \quad \text{for } t \geq 0$$

The ramp function is derivative of parabolic function and step function is double derivative of parabolic function

$$r(t) = \frac{d}{dt} p(t); \quad u(t) = \frac{d^2}{dt^2} p(t)$$

The discrete-time unit parabolic sequence  $p(n)$  is defined as:

$$p(n) = \begin{cases} \frac{n^2}{2} & \text{for } n \geq 0 \\ 0 & \text{for } n < 0 \end{cases}$$

or

$$p(n) = \frac{n^2}{2} u(n)$$

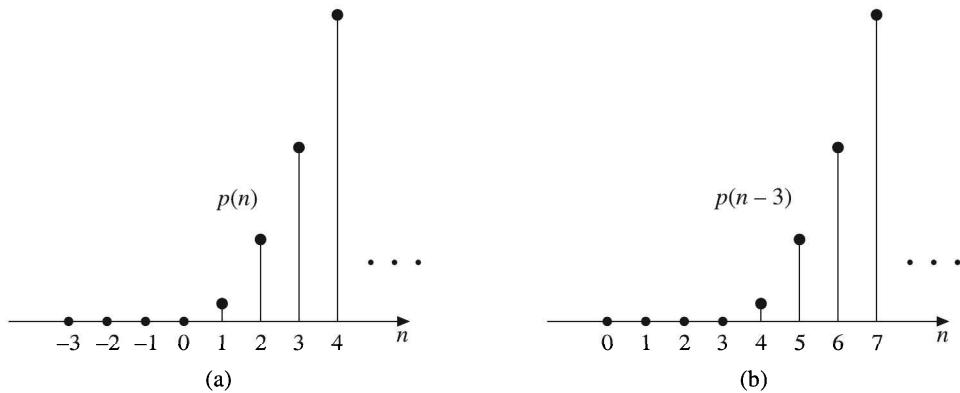
The shifted version of the discrete-time unit parabolic sequence  $p(n - k)$  is defined as:

$$p(n - k) = \begin{cases} \frac{(n - k)^2}{2} & \text{for } n \geq k \\ 0 & \text{for } n < k \end{cases}$$

or

$$p(n - k) = \frac{(n - k)^2}{2} u(n - k)$$

The graphical representations of  $p(n)$  and  $p(n - 3)$  are shown in Figure 1.7[(a) and (b)].



**Figure 1.7** Discrete-time (a) Parabolic sequence, (b) Shifted parabolic sequence.

### 1.3.4 Unit Impulse Function

The unit impulse function is the most widely used elementary function used in the analysis of signals and systems. The continuous-time unit impulse function  $\delta(t)$ , also called Dirac delta function, plays an important role in signal analysis. It is defined as:

$$\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \delta(t) dt = 1$$

and

$$\delta(t) = 0 \quad \text{for } t \neq 0$$

i.e. as

$$\delta(t) = \begin{cases} 1 & \text{for } t = 0 \\ 0 & \text{for } t \neq 0 \end{cases}$$

That is, the impulse function has zero amplitude everywhere except at  $t = 0$ . At  $t = 0$ , the amplitude is infinity so that the area under the curve is unity.  $\delta(t)$  can be represented as a limiting case of a rectangular pulse function.

As shown in Figure 1.8(a),

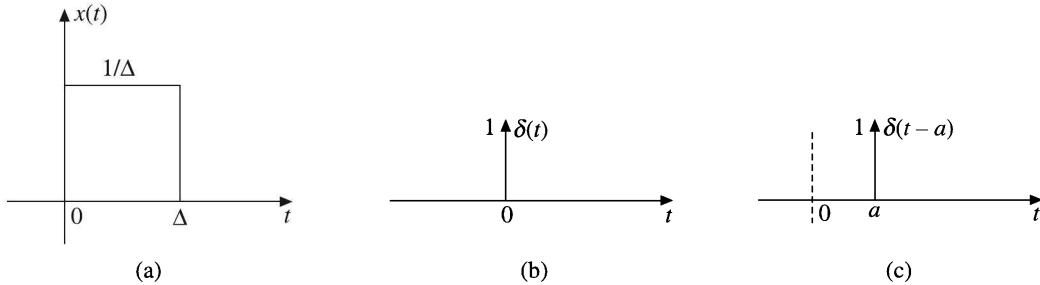
$$x(t) = \frac{1}{\Delta} [u(t) - u(t - \Delta)]$$

$$\delta(t) = \lim_{\Delta \rightarrow 0} x(t) = \lim_{\Delta \rightarrow 0} \frac{1}{\Delta} [u(t) - u(t - \Delta)]$$

A delayed unit impulse function  $\delta(t - a)$  is defined as:

$$\delta(t - a) = \begin{cases} 1 & \text{for } t = a \\ 0 & \text{for } t \neq a \end{cases}$$

The graphical representations of  $\delta(t)$  and  $\delta(t - a)$  are shown in Figure 1.8[(b) and (c)].



**Figure 1.8** (a)  $\delta(t)$  as limiting case of a pulse, (b) Unit impulse, (c) Delayed unit impulse.

If unit impulse function is assumed in the form of a pulse, then the following points may be observed about a unit impulse function.

- (i) The width of the pulse is zero. This means the pulse exists only at  $t = 0$ .
- (ii) The height of the pulse goes to infinity.
- (iii) The area under the pulse curve is always unity.
- (iv) The height of arrow indicates the total area under the impulse.

The integral of unit impulse function is a unit step function and the derivate of unit step function is a unit impulse function.

$$u(t) = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \delta(t) dt$$

and

$$\delta(t) = \frac{d}{dt} u(t)$$

### Properties of continuous-time unit impulse function

1. It is an even function of time  $t$ , i.e.  $\delta(t) = \delta(-t)$
2.  $\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} x(t) \delta(t) dt = x(0); \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} x(t) \delta(t - t_0) dt = x(t_0)$
3.  $\delta(at) = \frac{1}{|a|} \delta(t)$
4.  $x(t) \delta(t - t_0) = x(t_0) \delta(t - t_0) = x(t_0); x(t) \delta(t) = x(0) \delta(t) = x(0)$
5.  $x(t) = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} x(\tau) \delta(t - \tau) d\tau$

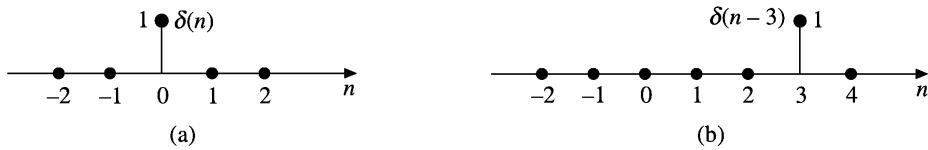
The discrete-time unit impulse function  $\delta(n)$ , also called unit sample sequence, is defined as:

$$\delta(n) = \begin{cases} 1 & \text{for } n = 0 \\ 0 & \text{for } n \neq 0 \end{cases}$$

The shifted unit impulse function  $\delta(n - k)$  is defined as:

$$\delta(n - k) = \begin{cases} 1 & \text{for } n = k \\ 0 & \text{for } n \neq k \end{cases}$$

The graphical representations of  $\delta(n)$  and  $\delta(n - 3)$  are shown in Figure 1.9[(a) and (b)].



**Figure 1.9** Discrete-time (a) Unit sample sequence, (b) Delayed unit sample sequence.

### Properties of discrete-time unit sample sequence

1.  $\delta(n) = u(n) - u(n - 1)$
2.  $\delta(n - k) = \begin{cases} 1 & \text{for } n = k \\ 0 & \text{for } n \neq k \end{cases}$
3.  $x(n) = \sum_{k=-\infty}^{\infty} x(k) \delta(n - k)$
4.  $\sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} x(n) \delta(n - n_0) = x(n_0)$

### 1.3.5 Sinusoidal Signal

A continuous-time sinusoidal signal in its most general form is given by

$$x(t) = A \sin(\omega t + \phi)$$

where

$A$  = Amplitude

$\omega$  = Angular frequency in radians

$\phi$  = Phase angle in radians

Figure 1.10 shows the waveform of a sinusoidal signal. A sinusoidal signal is an example of a periodic signal. The time period of a continuous-time sinusoidal signal is given by

$$T = \frac{2\pi}{\omega}$$

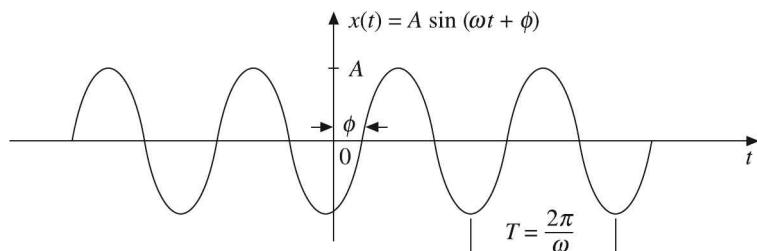


Figure 1.10 Sinusoidal waveform.

The discrete-time sinusoidal sequence is given by

$$x(n) = A \sin(\omega n + \phi)$$

where  $A$  is the amplitude,  $\omega$  is angular frequency,  $\phi$  is phase angle in radians and  $n$  is an integer.

The period of the discrete-time sinusoidal sequence is:

$$N = \frac{2\pi}{\omega} m$$

where  $N$  and  $m$  are integers.

All continuous-time sinusoidal signals are periodic but discrete-time sinusoidal sequences may or may not be periodic depending on the value of  $\omega$ .

For a discrete-time signal to be periodic, the angular frequency  $\omega$  must be a rational multiple of  $2\pi$ .

The graphical representation of a discrete-time sinusoidal signal is shown in Figure 1.11.

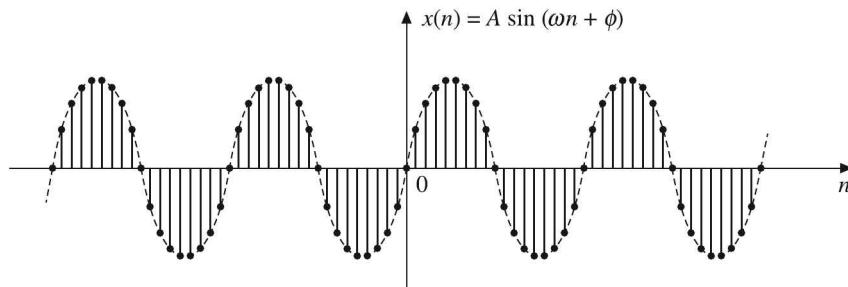


Figure 1.11 Discrete-time sinusoidal signal.

### 1.3.6 Real Exponential Signal

A continuous-time real exponential signal has the general form as:

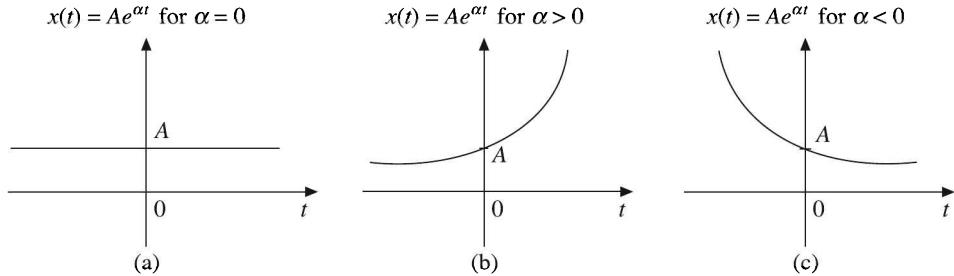
$$x(t) = Ae^{\alpha t}$$

where both  $A$  and  $\alpha$  are real.

The parameter  $A$  is the amplitude of the exponential measured at  $t = 0$ . The parameter  $\alpha$  can be either positive or negative. Depending on the value of  $\alpha$ , we get different exponentials.

1. If  $\alpha = 0$ , the signal  $x(t)$  is of constant amplitude for all times.
2. If  $\alpha$  is positive, i.e.  $\alpha > 0$ , the signal  $x(t)$  is a growing exponential signal.
3. If  $\alpha$  is negative, i.e.  $\alpha < 0$ , the signal  $x(t)$  is a decaying exponential signal.

These three waveforms are shown in Figure 1.12[(a), (b) and (c)].

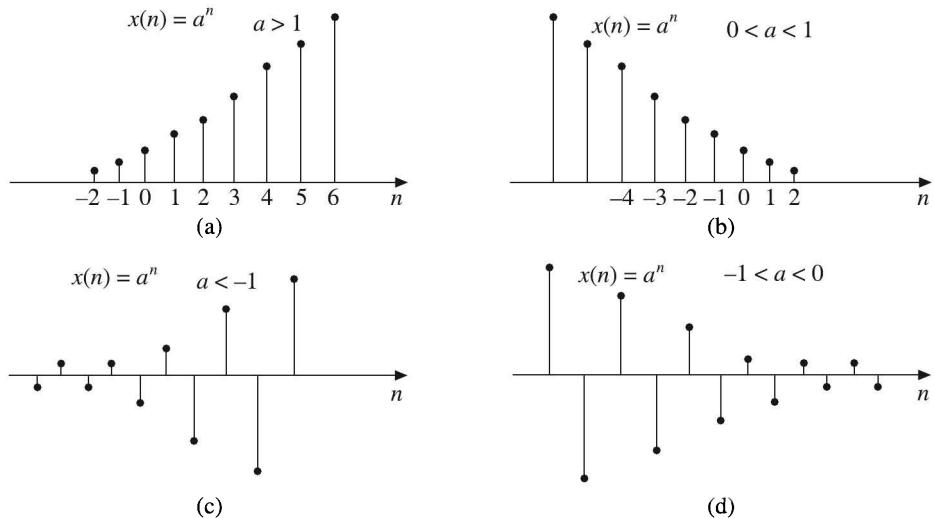


**Figure 1.12** Continuous-time real exponential signals  $x(t) = Ae^{\alpha t}$  for (a)  $\alpha = 0$ , (b)  $\alpha > 0$ , (c)  $\alpha < 0$ .

The discrete-time real exponential sequence  $a^n$  is defined as:

$$x(n) = a^n \quad \text{for all } n$$

Figure 1.13 illustrates different types of discrete-time exponential signals.



**Figure 1.13** Discrete-time exponential signal  $a^n$  for (a)  $a > 1$ , (b)  $0 < a < 1$ , (c)  $a < -1$ , (d)  $-1 < a < 0$ .

When  $a > 1$ , the sequence grows exponentially as shown in Figure 1.13(a).

When  $0 < a < 1$ , the sequence decays exponentially as shown in Figure 1.13(b).

When  $a < 0$ , the sequence takes alternating signs as shown in Figure 1.13[(c) and (d)].

### 1.3.7 Complex Exponential Signal

The complex exponential signal has a general form as

$$x(t) = Ae^{st}$$

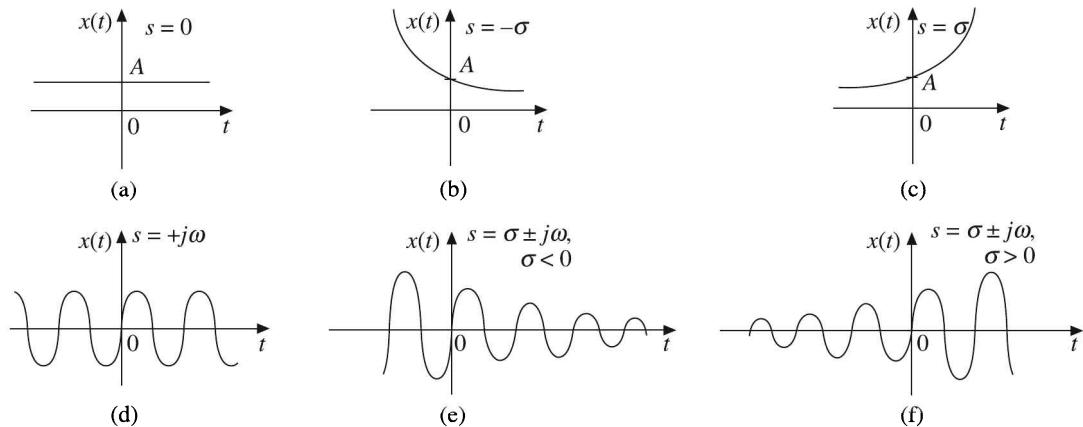
where  $A$  is the amplitude and  $s$  is a complex variable defined as

$$s = \sigma + j\omega$$

Therefore,

$$\begin{aligned} x(t) &= Ae^{st} = Ae^{(\sigma+j\omega)t} = Ae^{\sigma t}e^{j\omega t} \\ &= Ae^{\sigma t}[\cos \omega t + j \sin \omega t] \end{aligned}$$

Depending on the values of  $\sigma$  and  $\omega$ , we get different waveforms as shown in Figure 1.14.



**Figure 1.14** Complex exponential signals.

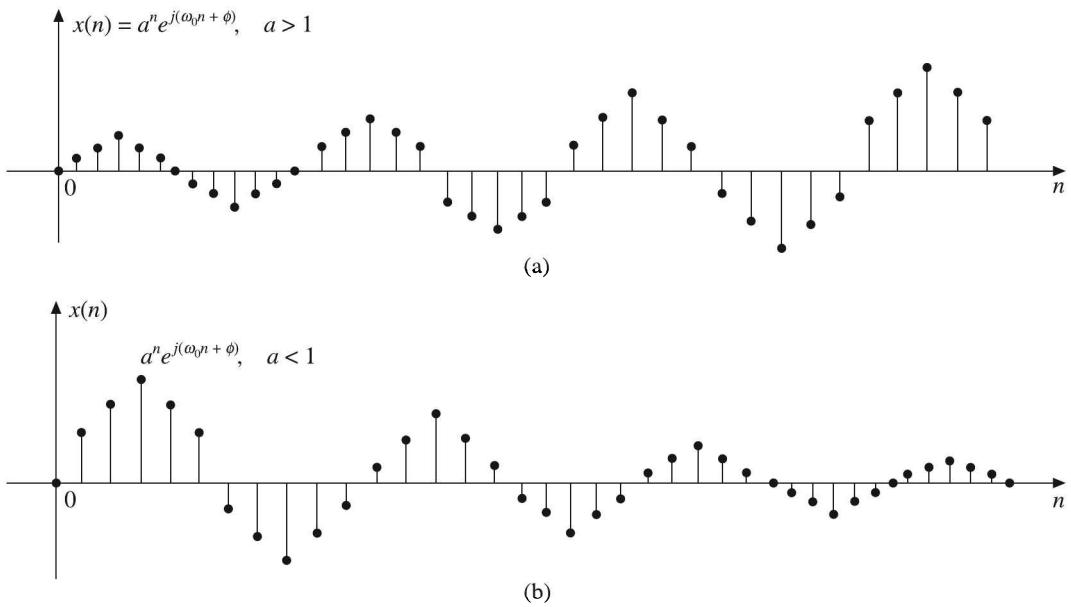
The discrete-time complex exponential sequence is defined as

$$\begin{aligned} x(n) &= a^n e^{j(\omega_0 n + \phi)} \\ &= a^n \cos(\omega_0 n + \phi) + j a^n \sin(\omega_0 n + \phi) \end{aligned}$$

For  $|a| = 1$ , the real and imaginary parts of complex exponential sequence are sinusoidal.

For  $|a| > 1$ , the amplitude of the sinusoidal sequence exponentially grows as shown in Figure 1.15(a).

For  $|a| < 1$ , the amplitude of the sinusoidal sequence exponentially decays as shown in Figure 1.15(b)



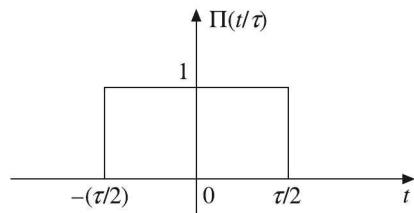
**Figure 1.15** Complex exponential sequence  $x(n) = a^n e^{j(\omega_0 n + \phi)}$  for (a)  $a > 1$ , (b)  $a < 1$ .

### 1.3.8 Rectangular Pulse Function

The unit rectangular pulse function  $\Pi(t/\tau)$  shown in Figure 1.16 is defined as

$$\Pi\left(\frac{t}{\tau}\right) = \begin{cases} 1 & \text{for } |t| \leq \frac{\tau}{2} \\ 0 & \text{otherwise} \end{cases}$$

It is an even function of  $t$ .



**Figure 1.16** Rectangular pulse function.

### 1.3.9 Triangular Pulse Function

The unit triangular pulse function  $\Delta(t/\tau)$  shown in Figure 1.17 is defined as:

$$\Delta\left(\frac{t}{\tau}\right) = \begin{cases} 1 - (2|t|/\tau) & \text{for } |t| < (\tau/2) \\ 0 & \text{for } |t| > (\tau/2) \end{cases}$$

It is an even function of  $t$ .

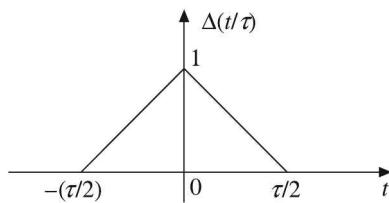


Figure 1.17 Triangular pulse function.

### 1.3.10 Signum Function

The unit signum function  $\text{sgn}(t)$  shown in Figure 1.18 is defined as:

$$\text{sgn}(t) = \begin{cases} 1 & \text{for } t > 0 \\ -1 & \text{for } t < 0 \end{cases}$$

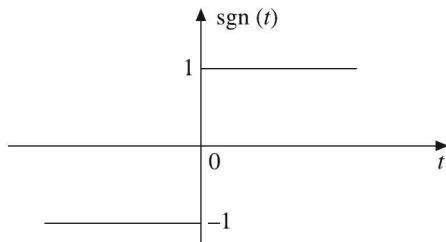


Figure 1.18 Signum function.

The signum function can be expressed in terms of unit step function as:

$$\text{sgn}(t) = -1 + 2u(t)$$

### 1.3.11 Sinc Function

The sinc function  $\text{sinc}(t)$  shown in Figure 1.19 is defined as:

$$\text{sinc}(t) = \frac{\sin t}{t} \quad \text{for } -\infty < t < \infty$$

The sinc function oscillates with period  $2\pi$  and decays with increasing  $t$ . Its value is zero at  $n\pi$ ,  $n = \pm 1, \pm 2, \dots$ . It is an even function of  $t$ .

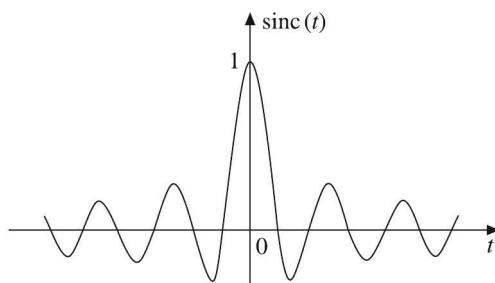


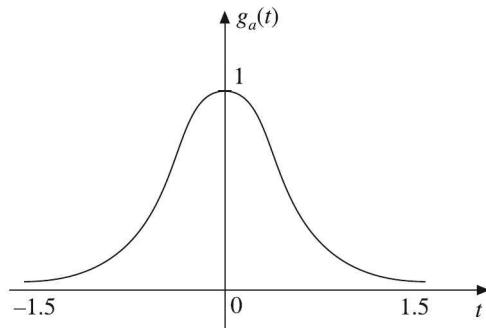
Figure 1.19 Sinc function.

### 1.3.12 Gaussian Function

The Gaussian function  $g_a(t)$  shown in Figure 1.20 is defined as:

$$g_a(t) = e^{-at^2} \quad \text{for } -\infty < t < \infty$$

This function is extremely useful in probability theory.



**Figure 1.20** Gaussian function.

**EXAMPLE 1.1** Evaluate the following integrals:

$$(a) \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} e^{-at^2} \delta(t-5) dt$$

$$(b) \int_0^{\infty} t^2 \delta(t-6) dt$$

$$(c) \int_0^3 \delta(t) \sin 5\pi t dt$$

$$(d) \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \delta(t+2) e^{-2t} dt$$

$$(e) \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} (t-2)^3 \delta(t-2) dt$$

$$(f) \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \delta(t) e^{-j\omega t} dt$$

$$(g) \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} [\delta(t) \cos 2t + \delta(t-2) \sin 2t] dt$$

**Solution:**

(a) Given

$$\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} e^{-at^2} \delta(t-5) dt$$

We know that

$$\delta(t-5) = \begin{cases} 1 & \text{for } t=5 \\ 0 & \text{elsewhere} \end{cases}$$

$$\therefore \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} e^{-at^2} \delta(t-5) dt = \left[ e^{-at^2} \right]_{t=5} = e^{-25a}$$

(b) Given

$$\int_0^{\infty} t^2 \delta(t-6) dt$$

We know that

$$\delta(t-6) = \begin{cases} 1 & \text{for } t=6 \\ 0 & \text{elsewhere} \end{cases}$$

∴

$$\int_0^{\infty} t^2 \delta(t-6) dt = [t^2]_{t=6} = 36$$

(c) Given

$$\int_0^3 \delta(t) \sin 5\pi t dt$$

We know that

$$\delta(t) = \begin{cases} 1 & \text{for } t=0 \\ 0 & \text{elsewhere} \end{cases}$$

∴

$$\int_0^3 \delta(t) \sin 5\pi t dt = [\sin 5\pi t]_{t=0} = 0$$

(d) Given

$$\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \delta(t+2) e^{-2t} dt$$

We know that

$$\delta(t+2) = \begin{cases} 1 & \text{for } t=-2 \\ 0 & \text{elsewhere} \end{cases}$$

∴

$$\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \delta(t+2) e^{-2t} dt = [e^{-2t}]_{t=-2} = e^4$$

(e) Given

$$\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} (t-2)^3 \delta(t-2) dt$$

We know that

$$\delta(t-2) = \begin{cases} 1 & \text{for } t=2 \\ 0 & \text{elsewhere} \end{cases}$$

∴

$$\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} (t-2)^3 \delta(t-2) dt = [(t-2)^3]_{t=2} = 0$$

(f) Given

$$\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \delta(t) e^{-j\omega t} dt$$

We know that

$$\delta(t) = \begin{cases} 1 & \text{for } t=0 \\ 0 & \text{elsewhere} \end{cases}$$

$$\therefore \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \delta(t) e^{-j\omega t} dt = [e^{-j\omega t}]_{t=0} = 1$$

(g) Given  $\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} [\delta(t) \cos 2t + \delta(t-2) \sin 2t] dt$

We know that  $\delta(t) = \begin{cases} 1 & \text{for } t = 0 \\ 0 & \text{elsewhere} \end{cases}$  and  $\delta(t-2) = \begin{cases} 1 & \text{for } t = 2 \\ 0 & \text{elsewhere} \end{cases}$

$$\therefore \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} [\delta(t) \cos 2t + \delta(t-2) \sin 2t] dt = [\cos 2t]_{t=0} + [\sin 2t]_{t=2} = 1 + \sin 4t$$

**EXAMPLE 1.2** Find the following summations

(a)  $\sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} e^{3n} \delta(n-3)$

(b)  $\sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} \delta(n-2) \cos 3n$

(c)  $\sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} n^2 \delta(n+4)$

(d)  $\sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} \delta(n-2) e^{n^2}$

(e)  $\sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \delta(n+1) 4^n$

**Solution:**

(a) Given  $\sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} e^{3n} \delta(n-3)$

We know that  $\delta(n-3) = \begin{cases} 1 & \text{for } n = 3 \\ 0 & \text{elsewhere} \end{cases}$

$$\therefore \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} e^{3n} \delta(n-3) = [e^{3n}]_{n=3} = e^9$$

(b) Given  $\sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} \delta(n-2) \cos 3n$

We know that  $\delta(n-2) = \begin{cases} 1 & \text{for } n = 2 \\ 0 & \text{elsewhere} \end{cases}$

$$\therefore \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} \delta(n-2) \cos 3n = [\cos 3n]_{n=2} = \cos 6$$

(c) Given

$$\sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} n^2 \delta(n+4)$$

We know that

$$\delta(n+4) = \begin{cases} 1 & \text{for } n = -4 \\ 0 & \text{elsewhere} \end{cases}$$

∴

$$\sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} n^2 \delta(n+4) = [n^2]_{n=-4} = 16$$

(d) Given

$$\sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} \delta(n-2) e^{n^2}$$

We know that

$$\delta(n-2) = \begin{cases} 1 & \text{for } n = 2 \\ 0 & \text{elsewhere} \end{cases}$$

∴

$$\sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} \delta(n-2) e^{n^2} = [e^{n^2}]_{n=2} = e^{2^2} = e^4$$

(e) Given

$$\sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \delta(n+1) 4^n$$

We know that

$$\delta(n+1) = \begin{cases} 1 & \text{for } n = -1 \\ 0 & \text{for } n \neq -1 \end{cases}$$

∴

$$\sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \delta(n+1) 4^n = 0$$

**EXAMPLE 1.3** Prove the properties of impulse function.**Solution:** First property

$$\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} x(t) \delta(t) dt = x(0)$$

*Proof:* Let  $x(t)$  be continuous at  $t = 0$ ; the value of  $x(t)$  at  $t = 0$  is  $x(0)$ . The impulse  $\delta(t)$  exists only at  $t = 0$ . For all other time  $\delta(t) = 0$ . Therefore, the integration of  $x(t) \delta(t)$  from  $t = -\infty$  to  $\infty$  has a value only at  $t = 0$ .

$$\therefore \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} x(t) \delta(t) dt = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} x(0) \delta(t) dt = x(0) \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \delta(t) dt = x(0)$$

Second property

$$x(t) \delta(t - t_0) = x(t_0) \delta(t - t_0)$$

*Proof:* Let the signal  $x(t)$  be continuous at  $t = t_0$ . The value of  $x(t)$  at  $t = t_0$  is  $x(t_0)$ .  $\delta(t - t_0)$  is an impulse function that exists only at  $t = t_0$ . Therefore,

$$x(t) \delta(t - t_0) = x(t_0) \delta(t - t_0)$$

Third property

$$\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} x(t) \delta(t - t_0) dt = x(t_0)$$

*Proof:* Let  $x(t)$  be continuous at  $t = t_0$  and let its value at  $t = t_0$  be  $x(t_0)$ . We know that  $\delta(t - t_0) = 1$  only for  $t = t_0$ . For all other time it is equal to zero. Therefore, the integration of the product term  $x(t) \delta(t - t_0)$  from  $-\infty$  to  $\infty$  has a value only at  $t = t_0$ .

$$\therefore \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} x(t) \delta(t - t_0) dt = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} x(t_0) \delta(t - t_0) dt = x(t_0) \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \delta(t - t_0) dt = x(t_0)$$

Fourth property  $\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} x(\tau) \delta(t - \tau) d\tau = x(t)$

*Proof:* Let  $x(\tau)$  be continuous at  $\tau = t$ . Let the value of  $x(\tau)$  at  $\tau = t$  be  $x(t)$ . We know that  $\delta(t - \tau) = 1$  only at  $\tau = t$ . For all other  $\tau$  it is zero. So the integration of the product  $x(\tau) \delta(t - \tau)$  has a value only at  $\tau = t$ .

$$\therefore \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} x(\tau) \delta(t - \tau) d\tau = x(\tau) \Big|_{\tau=t} = x(t)$$

This is the formula for convolution of  $x(t)$  with  $\delta(t)$ . This property says that the convolution of any signal with an impulse results in the original signal itself.

Fifth property  $\delta(at) = \frac{1}{|a|} \delta(t)$  [Scaling property]

*Proof:* Let  $x(t)$  be some function. Consider the integral

$$\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} x(t) \delta(at) dt \quad \text{for } a > 0$$

Let

$$at = \tau$$

$$\therefore t = \frac{\tau}{a} \quad \text{and} \quad dt = \frac{d\tau}{a}$$

If  $a > 0$

$$\begin{aligned} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} x(t) \delta(at) dt &= \frac{1}{a} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} x\left(\frac{\tau}{a}\right) \delta(\tau) d\tau \\ &= \left[ \frac{1}{a} x\left(\frac{\tau}{a}\right) \right]_{\tau=0} \\ &= \frac{1}{a} x(0) \end{aligned}$$

Similarly, for  $a < 0$

$$\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} x(t) \delta(at) dt = \frac{1}{-a} x(0)$$

$$\therefore \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} x(t) \delta(at) dt = \frac{1}{|a|} x(0)$$

Now, consider

$$\frac{1}{|a|} x(0)$$

We know that

$$x(0) = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} x(t) \delta(t) dt$$

∴

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{1}{|a|} x(0) &= \frac{1}{|a|} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} x(t) \delta(t) dt \\ &= \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} x(t) \frac{1}{|a|} \delta(t) dt \end{aligned}$$

which indicates that

$$\delta(at) = \frac{1}{|a|} \delta(t)$$

Sixth property

$$\delta(t) = \delta(-t)$$

i.e. impulse function is an even function.

*Proof:* Consider the scaling property,

$$\delta(at) = \frac{1}{|a|} \delta(t)$$

Let

$$a = -1$$

∴

$$\delta(-t) = \frac{1}{|-1|} \delta(t) = \delta(t)$$

## 1.4 BASIC OPERATIONS ON SIGNALS

When we process a signal, this signal may undergo several manipulations involving the independent variable or the amplitude of the signal. The basic operations on signals are as follows:

- |                    |                          |
|--------------------|--------------------------|
| 1. Time shifting   | 2. Time reversal         |
| 3. Time scaling    | 4. Amplitude scaling     |
| 5. Signal addition | 6. Signal multiplication |

The first three operations correspond to transformation in independent variable  $t$  or  $n$  of a signal. The last three operations correspond to transformation on amplitude of a signal.

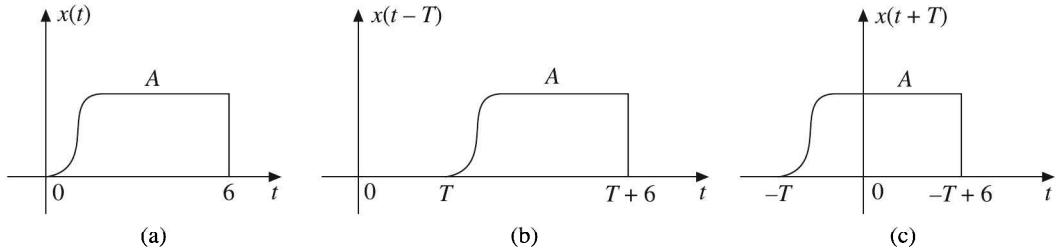
### 1.4.1 Time Shifting

Mathematically, the time shifting of a continuous-time signal  $x(t)$  can be represented by

$$y(t) = x(t - T)$$

The time shifting of a signal may result in time delay or time advance. In the above equation if  $T$  is positive the shift is to the right and then the shifting delays the signal, and if  $T$  is negative the shift is to the left and then the shifting advances the signal. An arbitrary

signal  $x(t)$ , its delayed version and advanced version are shown in Figure 1.21[(a), (b) and (c)]. Shifting a signal in time means that a signal may be either advanced in the time axis or delayed in the time axis.



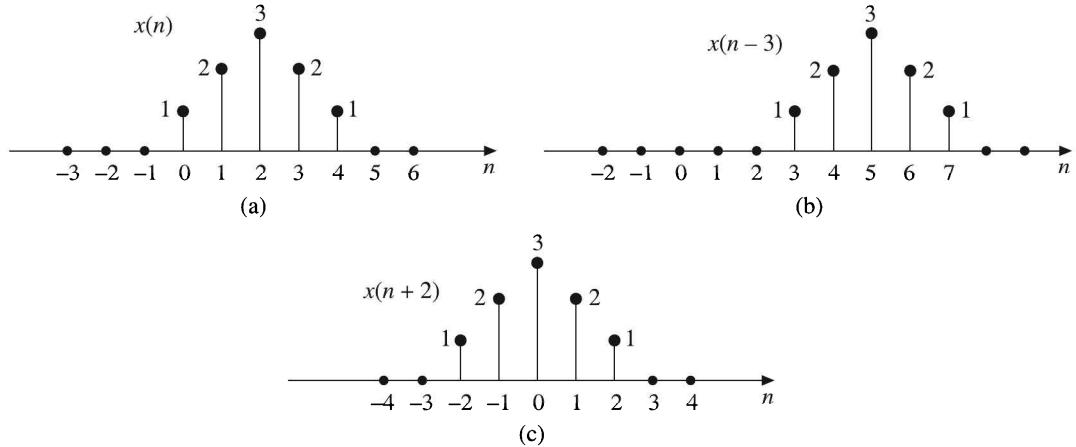
**Figure 1.21** (a) Signal, (b) Its delayed version, (c) Its time advanced version.

Similarly, the time shifting operation of a discrete-time signal  $x(n)$  can be represented by

$$y(n) = x(n - k)$$

This shows that the signal  $y(n)$  can be obtained by time shifting the signal  $x(n)$  by  $k$  units. If  $k$  is positive, it is delay and the shift is to the right, and if  $k$  is negative, it is advance and the shift is to the left.

An arbitrary signal  $x(n)$  is shown in Figure 1.22(a).  $x(n - 3)$  which is obtained by shifting  $x(n)$  to the right by 3 units [i.e. delay  $x(n)$  by 3 units] is shown in Figure 1.22(b).  $x(n + 2)$  which is obtained by shifting  $x(n)$  to the left by 2 units (i.e. advancing  $x(n)$  by 2 units) is shown in Figure 1.22(c).



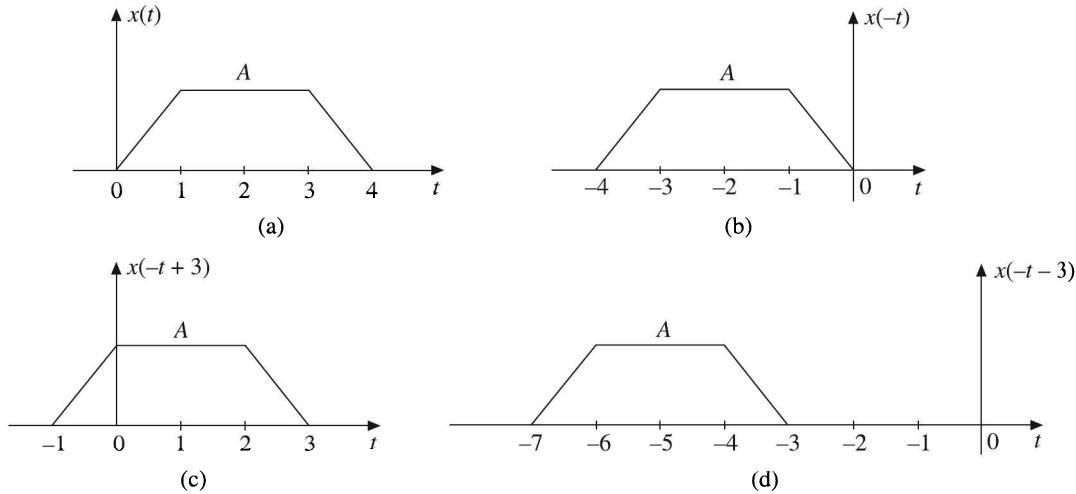
**Figure 1.22** (a) Sequence  $x(n)$ , (b)  $x(n - 3)$ , (c)  $x(n + 2)$ .

### 1.4.2 Time Reversal

The time reversal, also called time folding of a signal  $x(t)$  can be obtained by folding the signal about  $t = 0$ . This operation is very useful in convolution. It is denoted by  $x(-t)$ . It is obtained by replacing the independent variable  $t$  by  $(-t)$ . Folding is also called as the

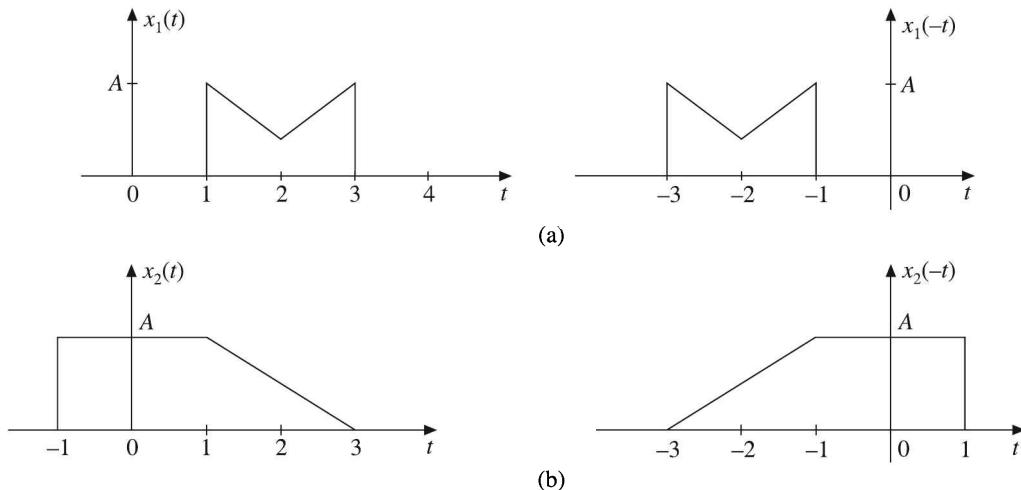
reflection of the signal about the time origin  $t = 0$ . Figure 1.23(a) shows an arbitrary signal  $x(t)$ , and Figure 1.23(b) shows its reflection  $x(-t)$ .

The signal  $x(-t + 3)$  obtained by shifting the reversed signal  $x(-t)$  to the right by 3 units (delay by 3 units) is shown in Figure 1.23(c). The signal  $x(-t - 3)$  obtained by shifting the reversed signal  $x(-t)$  to the left by 3 units (advance by 3 units) is shown in Figure 1.23(d).



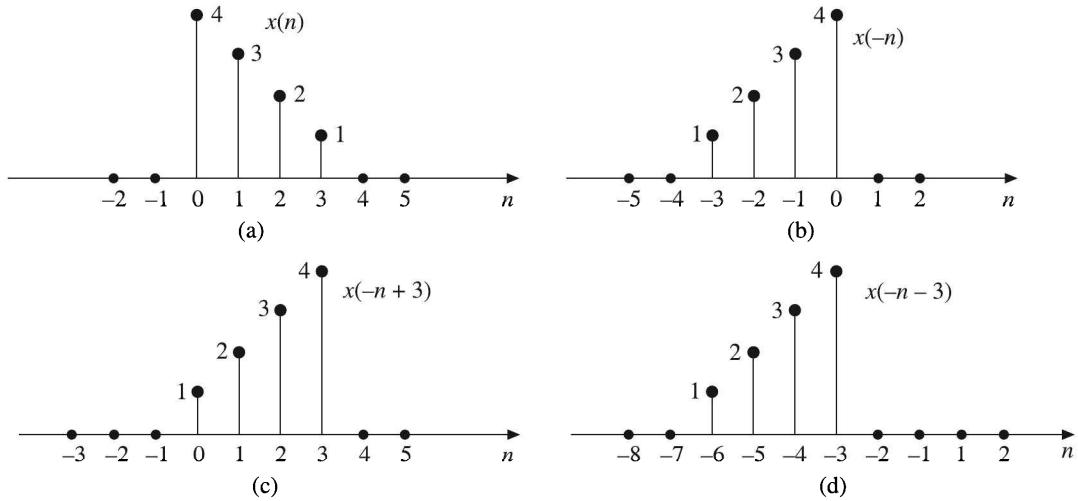
**Figure 1.23** (a) An arbitrary signal  $x(t)$ , (b) Time reversed signal  $x(-t)$ , (c) Time reversed and delayed signal  $x(-t + 3)$ , (d) Time reversed and advanced signal  $x(-t - 3)$ .

Other examples for time reversal operation are shown in Figure 1.24.



**Figure 1.24** Time reversal operations.

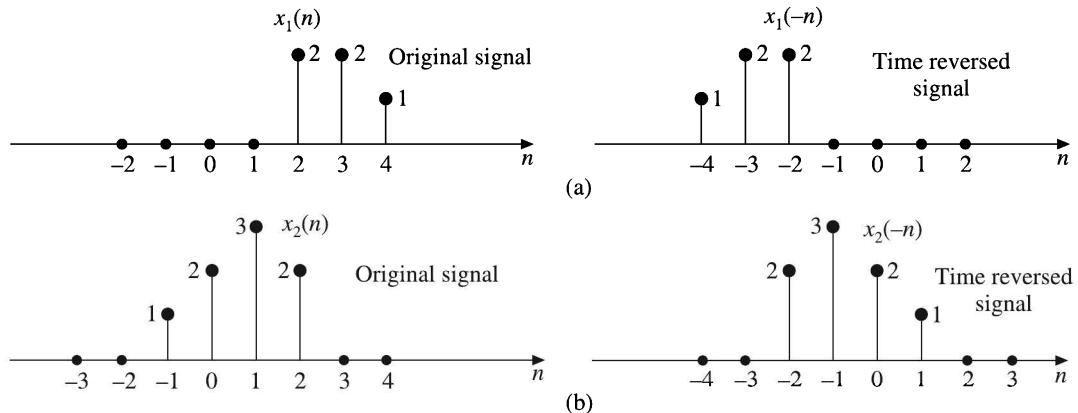
The time reversal of a discrete-time signal  $x(n)$  can be obtained by folding the sequence about  $n = 0$ . Figure 1.25(a) shows an arbitrary discrete-time signal  $x(n)$  and its time reversed version  $x(-n)$  is shown in Figure 1.25(b). Figure 1.25[(c) and (d)] shows the delayed and advanced versions of reversed signal  $x(-n)$ .



**Figure 1.25** (a) Original signal  $x(n)$ , (b) Time reversed signal  $x(-n)$ , (c) Time reversed and delayed signal  $x(-n + 3)$ , (d) Time reversed and advanced signal  $x(-n - 3)$ .

The signal  $x(-n + 3)$  is obtained by delaying (shifting to the right) the time reversed signal  $x(-n)$  by 3 units of time. The signal  $x(-n - 3)$  is obtained by advancing (shifting to the left) the time reversed signal  $x(-n)$  by 3 units of time.

Figure 1.26 shows other examples for time reversal of signals.



**Figure 1.26** Time reversal operations.

**EXAMPLE 1.4** Sketch the following signals

- |                 |                  |
|-----------------|------------------|
| (a) $u(-t + 2)$ | (b) $-2u(t + 2)$ |
| (c) $-4r(t)$    | (d) $2r(t - 2)$  |
| (e) $r(-t + 3)$ | (f) $\Pi(t - 2)$ |

**Solution:**

(a) Given  $x(t) = u(-t + 2)$

The signal  $u(-t + 2)$  can be obtained by first drawing the unit step signal  $u(t)$  as shown in Figure 1.27(a), then time reversing the signal  $u(t)$  about  $t = 0$  to obtain

$u(-t)$  as shown in Figure 1.27(b), and then shifting the reversed signal to the right by 2 units of time to obtain  $u(-t + 2)$  as shown in Figure 1.27(c).

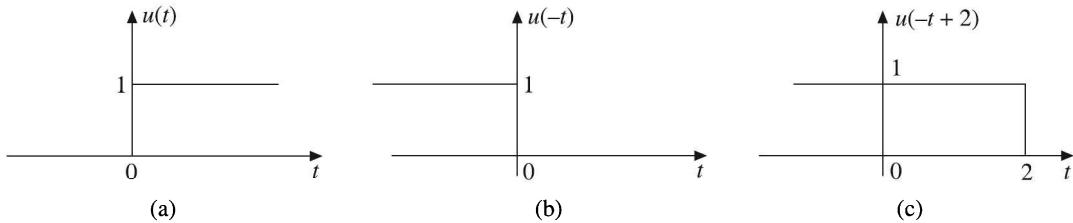


Figure 1.27 (a) Unit step signal, (b) Folded unit step signal, (c) Delayed folded signal.

(b) Given  $x(t) = -2u(t + 2)$

The signal  $-2u(t + 2)$  can be obtained by first drawing the unit step signal  $u(t)$  as shown in Figure 1.28(a), then shifting the signal  $u(t)$  to the left by 2 units of time to obtain  $u(t + 2)$  as shown in Figure 1.28(b), and then multiplying that signal  $u(t + 2)$  by  $-2$  to obtain  $-2u(t + 2)$  as shown in Figure 1.28(c).

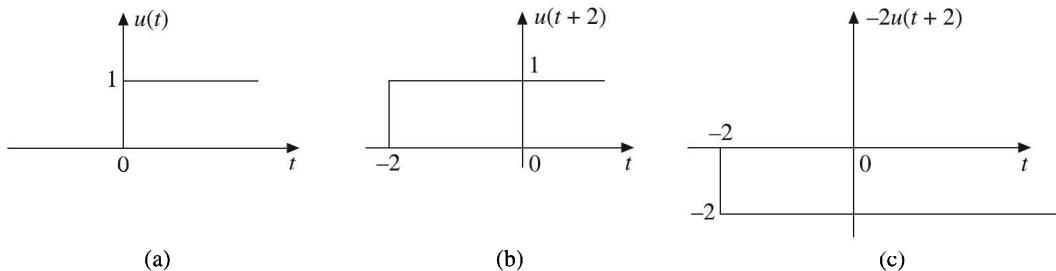


Figure 1.28 (a) Unit step signal  $u(t)$ , (b) Shifted signal  $u(t + 2)$ , (c) Scaled signal  $-2u(t + 2)$ .

(c) Given  $x(t) = -4r(t)$

The signal  $x(t)$  is a ramp signal with a slope of  $-4$  as shown in Figure 1.29.

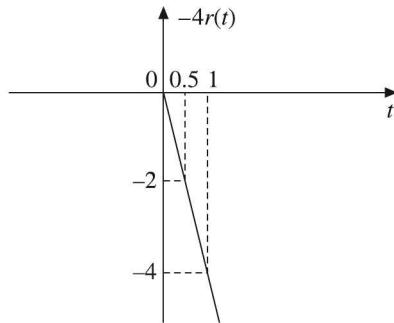
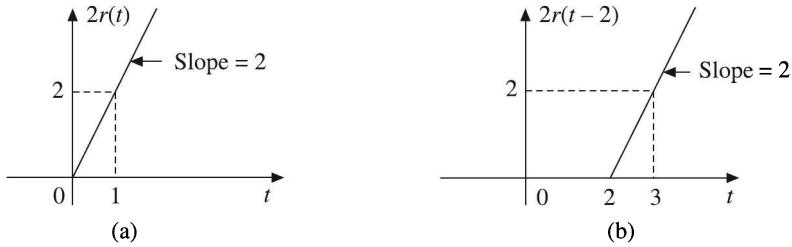


Figure 1.29 Ramp signal  $x(t) = -4r(t)$ .

(d) Given  $x(t) = 2r(t - 2)$

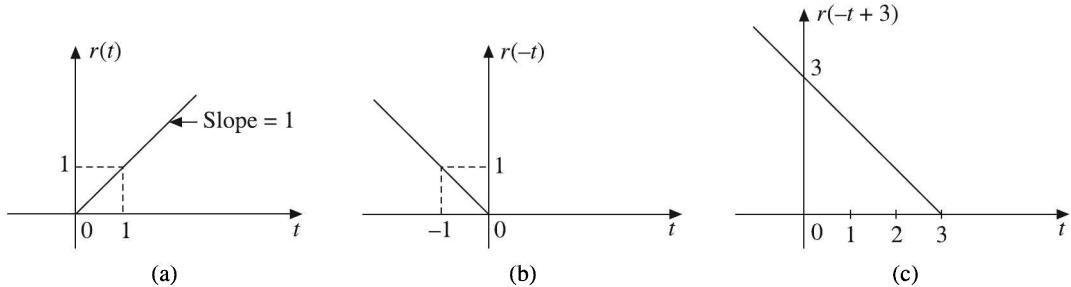
The signal  $2r(t - 2)$  can be obtained by first drawing the ramp signal  $2r(t)$  with slope of 2 as shown in Figure 1.30(a), and then shifting it to the right by 2 units to obtain  $2r(t - 2)$  as shown in Figure 1.30(b).



**Figure 1.30** (a) Scaled ramp, (b) Delayed scaled ramp.

(e) Given  $x(t) = r(-t + 3)$

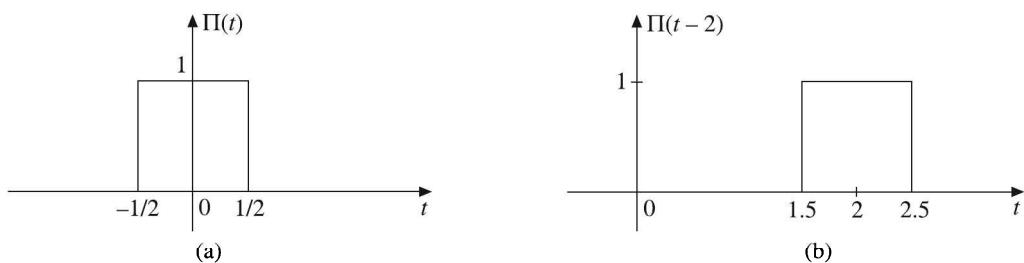
The signal  $r(-t + 3)$  can be obtained by first drawing the unit ramp signal  $r(t)$  as shown in Figure 1.31(a), folding the signal  $r(t)$  about  $t = 0$  to obtain  $r(-t)$  as shown in Figure 1.31(b) and then shifting it to the right (delaying) by 3 units of time to obtain  $r(-t + 3)$  as shown in Figure 1.31(c).



**Figure 1.31** (a) Ramp signal, (b) Folded ramp, (c) Delayed folded ramp.

(f) Given  $x(t) = \Pi(t - 2)$

The signal  $\Pi(t - 2)$  can be obtained by first drawing  $\Pi(t)$  as shown in Figure 1.32(a) and then shifting it to the right by 2 units to obtain  $\Pi(t - 2)$  as shown in Figure 1.32(b).



**Figure 1.32** (a) Signal  $\Pi(t)$ , (b) Signal  $\Pi(t - 2)$ .

**EXAMPLE 1.5** Sketch the following signals

(a)  $u(n+2)u(-n+3)$

(b)  $x(n) = u(n+4) - u(n-2)$

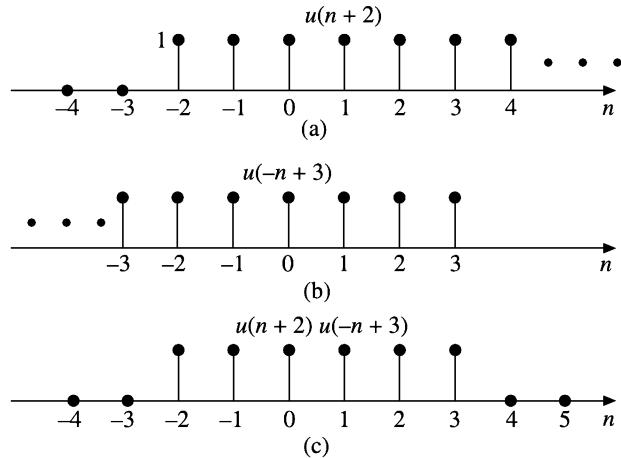
**Solution:**

(a) Given

$$x(n) = u(n+2)u(-n+3)$$

The signal  $u(n+2)u(-n+3)$  can be obtained by first drawing the signal  $u(n+2)$  as shown in Figure 1.33(a), then drawing  $u(-n+3)$  as shown in Figure 1.33(b) and then multiplying these sequences element by element to obtain  $u(n+2)u(-n+3)$  as shown in Figure 1.33(c).

$$x(n) = 0 \quad \text{for } n < -2 \quad \text{and} \quad n > 3; \quad x(n) = 1 \quad \text{for } -2 < n < 3$$

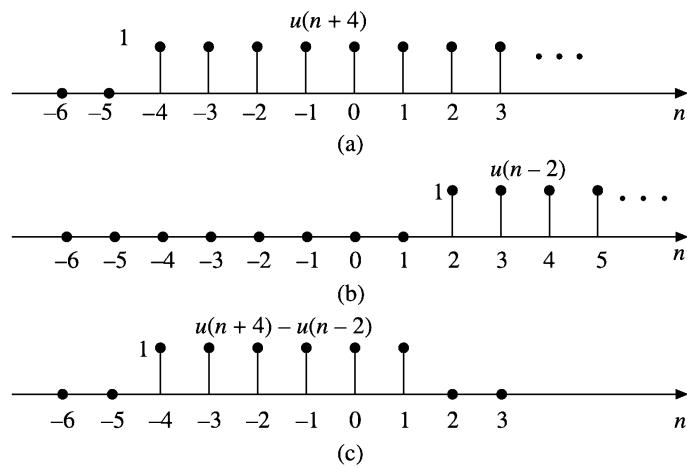


**Figure 1.33** Plots of (a)  $u(n+2)$ , (b)  $u(-n+3)$ , (c)  $u(n+2)u(-n+3)$ .

(b) Given

$$x(n) = u(n+4) - u(n-2)$$

The signal  $u(n+4) - u(n-2)$  can be obtained by first plotting  $u(n+4)$  as shown in Figure 1.34(a), then plotting  $u(n-2)$  as shown in Figure 1.34(b) and then subtracting each element of  $u(n-2)$  from the corresponding element of  $u(n+4)$  to obtain the result shown in Figure 1.34(c).



**Figure 1.34** Plots of (a)  $u(n+4)$ , (b)  $u(n-2)$ , (c)  $u(n+4) - u(n-2)$ .

### 1.4.3 Amplitude Scaling

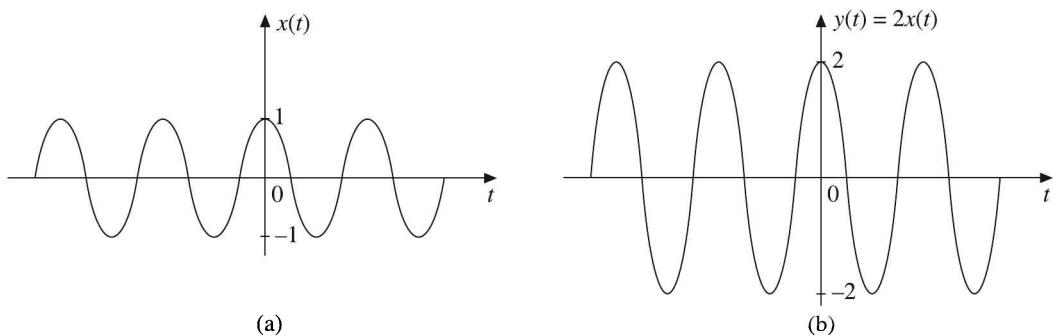
The amplitude scaling of a continuous-time signal  $x(t)$  can be represented by

$$y(t) = Ax(t)$$

where  $A$  is a constant.

The amplitude of  $y(t)$  at any instant is equal to  $A$  times the amplitude of  $x(t)$  at that instant, but the shape of  $y(t)$  is same as the shape of  $x(t)$ . If  $A > 1$ , it is amplification and if  $A < 1$ , it is attenuation.

Here the amplitude is rescaled. Hence the name amplitude scaling. Figure 1.35(a) shows an arbitrary signal  $x(t)$  and Figure 1.35(b) shows  $y(t) = 2x(t)$ .



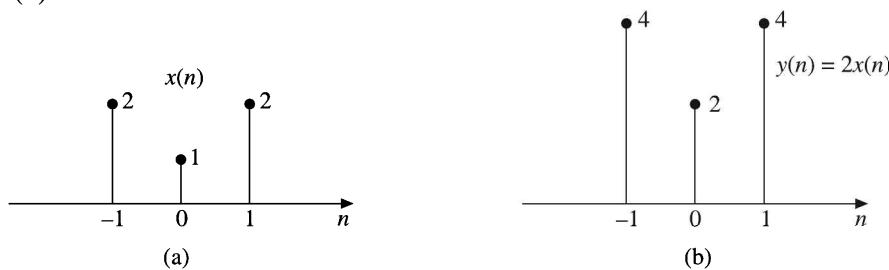
**Figure 1.35** Plots of (a)  $x(t) = \cos \omega t$ , (b)  $y(t) = 2x(t)$ .

Similarly, the amplitude scaling of a discrete-time signal can be represented by

$$y(n) = ax(n)$$

where  $a$  is a constant.

Figure 1.36(a) shows a signal  $x(n)$  and Figure 1.36(b) shows a scaled signal  $y(n) = 2x(n)$ .



**Figure 1.36** Plots of (a) Signal  $x(n)$ , (b)  $y(n) = 2x(n)$ .

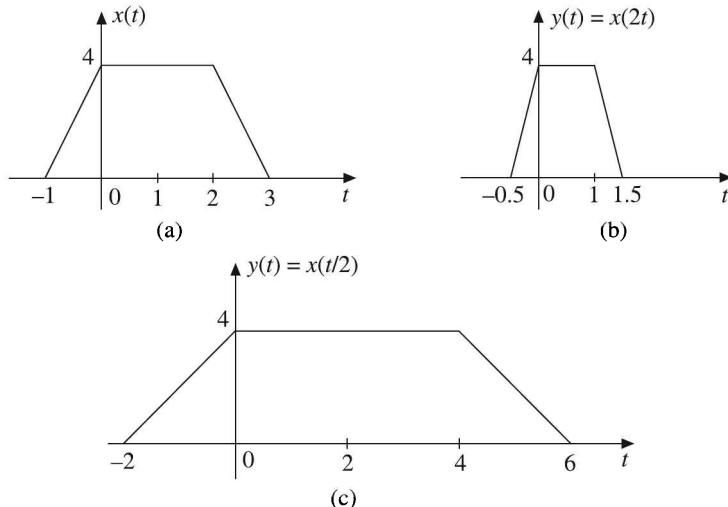
### 1.4.4 Time Scaling

Time scaling may be time expansion or time compression. The time scaling of a signal  $x(t)$  can be accomplished by replacing  $t$  by  $at$  in it. Mathematically, it can be expressed as:

$$y(t) = x(at)$$

If  $a > 1$ , it results in time compression by a factor  $a$  and if  $a < 1$ , it results in time expansion by a factor  $a$  because with that transformation a point at ' $at$ ' in signal  $x(t)$  becomes a point at ' $t$ ' in  $y(t)$ .

Consider a signal shown in Figure 1.37(a). For a transformation  $y(t) = x(2t)$ , the time compressed signal is as shown in Figure 1.37(b) and for a transformation  $y(t) = x(t/2)$  the time expanded signal is as shown in Figure 1.37(c).



**Figure 1.37** (a) Original signal, (b) Compressed signal, (c) Enlarged signal.

Observe that in Figure 1.37(a),  $x(t)$  is increasing linearly from 0 to 4 in the interval  $t = -1$  to  $t = 0$  and remaining constant at 4 in the interval  $t = 0$  to  $t = 2$  and decreasing linearly from 4 to 0 in the interval  $t = 2$  to  $t = 3$ .

In Figure 1.37(b), the time scaled (compressed) signal  $x(2t)$  increases linearly from 0 to 4 in the interval  $t = -(1/2)$  to  $t = (0/2)$ , remains constant at 4 from  $t = (0/2)$  to  $t = (2/2)$  and then decreases linearly from 4 to 0 in the interval  $t = (2/2)$  to  $t = (3/2)$ .

In Figure 1.37(c), the time scaled (expanded) signal  $x(t/2)$  increases linearly from 0 to 4, in the interval  $t = -1 \times 2$  to  $t = 0 \times 2$ , remains constant at 4 in the interval  $t = 0 \times 2$  to  $t = 2 \times 2$  and then decreases linearly from 4 to 0 in the interval  $t = 2 \times 2$  to  $t = 2 \times 3$ .

In the discrete-time case, we can write the time scaling as follows.

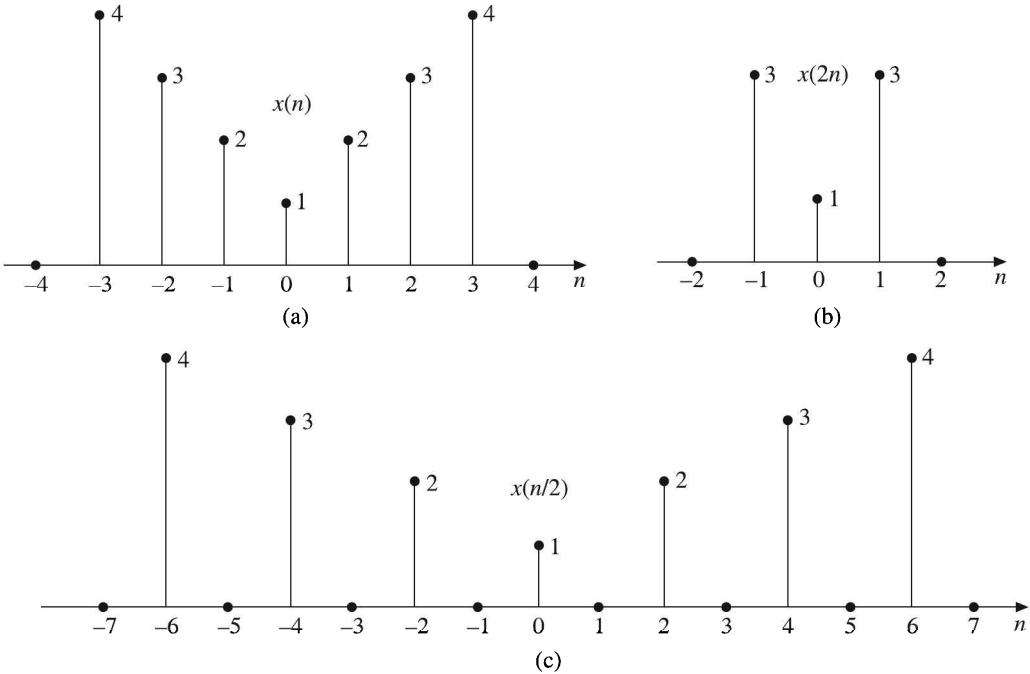
$$y(n) = x(an)$$

again when  $a > 1$ , it is time compression and when  $a < 1$ , it is time expansion.

Let  $x(n)$  be a sequence as shown in Figure 1.38(a). If  $a = 2$ ,  $y(n) = x(2n)$ . Then we can plot the time scaled signal  $y(n)$  by substituting different values for  $n$  as shown in Figure 1.38(b). Here the signal is compressed by 2.

$$\begin{aligned} y(0) &= x(0) = 1 \\ y(-1) &= x(-2) = 3 \\ y(-2) &= x(-4) = 0 \\ y(1) &= x(2) = 3 \\ y(2) &= x(4) = 0 \end{aligned}$$

and so on.



**Figure 1.38** Discrete-time scaling (a) Plot of  $x(n)$ , (b) Plot of  $x(2n)$ , (c) Plot of  $x(n/2)$ .

So to plot  $x(2n)$  we have to skip odd numbered samples in  $x(n)$ .

If  $a = (1/2)$ ,  $y(n) = x(n/2)$ , then

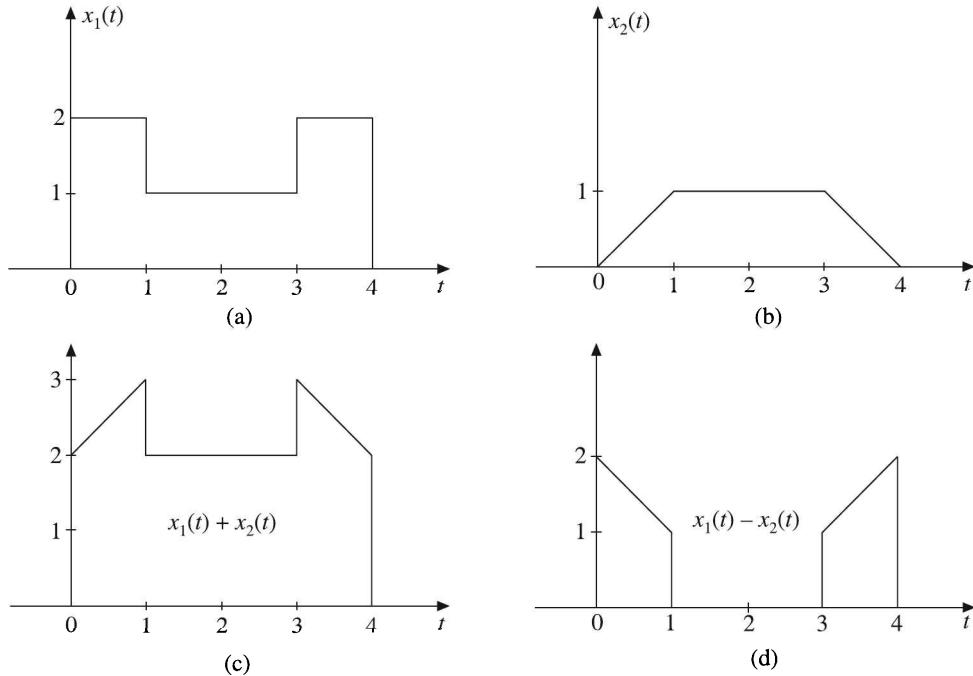
$$\begin{aligned}
 y(0) &= x(0) = 1 \\
 y(2) &= x(1) = 2 \\
 y(4) &= x(2) = 3 \\
 y(6) &= x(3) = 4 \\
 y(8) &= x(4) = 0 \\
 y(-2) &= x(-1) = 2 \\
 y(-4) &= x(-2) = 3 \\
 y(-6) &= x(-3) = 4 \\
 y(-8) &= x(-4) = 0
 \end{aligned}$$

We can plot  $y(n) = x(n/2)$  as shown in Figure 1.38(c). Here the signal is expanded by 2. All odd components in  $x(n/2)$  are zero because  $x(n)$  does not have any value in between the sampling instants.

Time scaling is very useful when data is to be fed at some rate and is to be taken out at a different rate.

### 1.4.5 Signal Addition

The sum of two continuous-time signals  $x_1(t)$  and  $x_2(t)$  can be obtained by adding their values at every instant of time. Similarly, the subtraction of one continuous-time signal  $x_2(t)$  from another signal  $x_1(t)$  can be obtained by subtracting the value of  $x_2(t)$  from that of  $x_1(t)$  at every instant. Consider two signals  $x_1(t)$  and  $x_2(t)$  shown in Figure 1.39[(a) and (b)].



**Figure 1.39** Addition and subtraction of continuous-time signals.

The addition of those two signals  $x_1(t)$  and  $x_2(t)$  can be obtained by considering different time intervals as follows:

For  $0 \leq t \leq 1$   $x_1(t) = 2$  and  $x_2(t)$  is rising linearly from 0 to 1.

Hence  $x_1(t) + x_2(t)$  will rise linearly from  $2 + 0 = 2$  to  $2 + 1 = 3$ .

For  $1 \leq t \leq 3$   $x_1(t) = 1$  and  $x_2(t) = 1$

Hence  $x_1(t) + x_2(t)$  will be equal to  $1 + 1 = 2$ .

For  $3 \leq t \leq 4$   $x_1(t) = 2$  and  $x_2(t)$  falls linearly from 1 to 0.

Hence  $x_1(t) + x_2(t)$  will fall linearly from  $2 + 1 = 3$  to  $2 + 0 = 2$ .

The sum  $x_1(t) + x_2(t)$  is as shown in Figure 1.39(c).

The subtraction of signal  $x_2(t)$  from  $x_1(t)$  can be performed by considering different time intervals as follows:

For  $0 \leq t \leq 1$   $x_1(t) = 2$  and  $x_2(t)$  rises linearly from 0 to 1.

Hence  $x_1(t) - x_2(t)$  falls linearly from  $2 - 0 = 2$  to  $2 - 1 = 1$ .

For  $1 \leq t \leq 3$   $x_1(t) = 1$  and  $x_2(t) = 1$

$$\text{Hence } x_1(t) - x_2(t) = 1 - 1 = 0$$

For  $3 \leq t \leq 4$   $x_1(t) = 2$  and  $x_2(t)$  is falling linearly from 1 to 0.

$$\text{Hence } x_1(t) - x_2(t) \text{ rises linearly from } 2 - 1 = 1 \text{ to } 2 - 0 = 2.$$

The difference  $x_1(t) - x_2(t)$  is as shown in Figure 1.39(d).

In discrete-time domain, the sum of two signals  $x_1(n)$  and  $x_2(n)$  can be obtained by adding the corresponding sample values and the subtraction of  $x_2(n)$  from  $x_1(n)$  can be obtained by subtracting each sample of  $x_2(n)$  from the corresponding sample of  $x_1(n)$  as illustrated below.

If  $x_1(n) = \{1, 2, 3, 1, 5\}$

and  $x_2(n) = \{2, 3, 4, 1, -2\}$

Then  $x_1(n) + x_2(n) = \{1 + 2, 2 + 3, 3 + 4, 1 + 1, 5 - 2\} = \{3, 5, 7, 2, 3\}$

and  $x_1(n) - x_2(n) = \{1 - 2, 2 - 3, 3 - 4, 1 - 1, 5 + 2\} = \{-1, -1, -1, 0, 7\}$

#### 1.4.6 Signal Multiplication

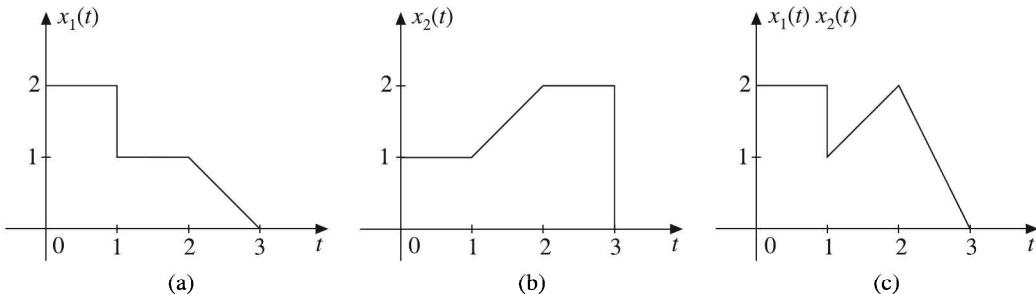
The multiplication of two continuous-time signals can be performed by multiplying their values at every instant. Two continuous-time signals  $x_1(t)$  and  $x_2(t)$  shown in Figure 1.40[(a) and (b)] are multiplied as shown below to obtain  $x_1(t)x_2(t)$  shown in Figure 1.40(c).

For  $0 \leq t \leq 1$   $x_1(t) = 2$  and  $x_2(t) = 1$

$$\text{Hence } x_1(t)x_2(t) = 2 \times 1 = 2$$

For  $1 \leq t \leq 2$   $x_1(t) = 1$  and  $x_2(t) = 1 + (t - 1)$

$$\text{Hence } x_1(t)x_2(t) = (1)[1 + (t - 1)] = 1 + (t - 1)$$



**Figure 1.40** Multiplication of continuous-time signals.

For  $2 \leq t \leq 3$   $x_1(t) = 1 - (t - 2)$  and  $x_2(t) = 2$

$$\text{Hence } x_1(t)x_2(t) = [1 - (t - 2)] 2 = 2 - 2(t - 2)$$

Multiplication of two discrete-time sequences can be performed by multiplying their values at the sampling instants.

If  $x_1(n) = \{1, -3, 2, 4, 1.5\}$  and  $x_2(n) = \{2, -1, 3, 1.5, 2\}$

Then  $x_1(n)x_2(n) = \{1 \times 2, -3 \times -1, 2 \times 3, 4 \times 1.5, 1.5 \times 2\}$   
 $= \{2, 3, 6, 6, 3\}$

**EXAMPLE 1.6** For the signal  $x(t)$  shown in Figure 1.41, find the signals.

(a)  $x(t - 3)$  and  $x(t + 3)$

(b)  $x(2t + 2)$  and  $x\left(\frac{1}{2}t - 2\right)$

(c)  $x\left(\frac{5}{3}t\right)$  and  $x\left(\frac{3}{5}t\right)$

(d)  $x(-t + 2)$  and  $x(-t - 2)$

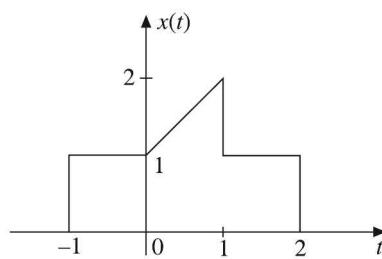


Figure 1.41 Signal for Example 1.6.

**Solution:**

(a) The signal  $x(t - 3)$  can be obtained by shifting  $x(t)$  to the right (delay) by 3 units as shown in Figure 1.42(a).

The signal  $x(t + 3)$  can be obtained by shifting  $x(t)$  to the left (advance) by 3 units as shown in Figure 1.42(b).

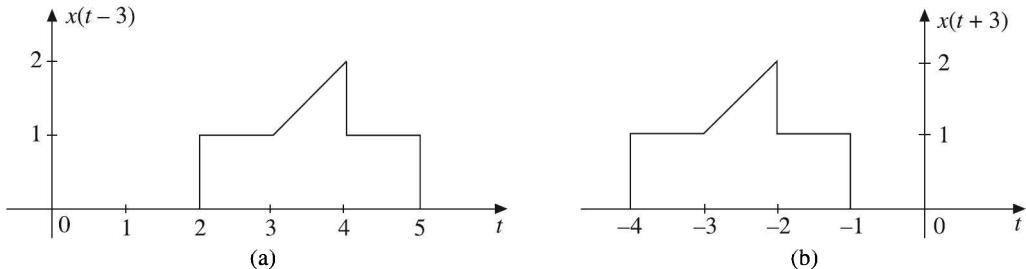
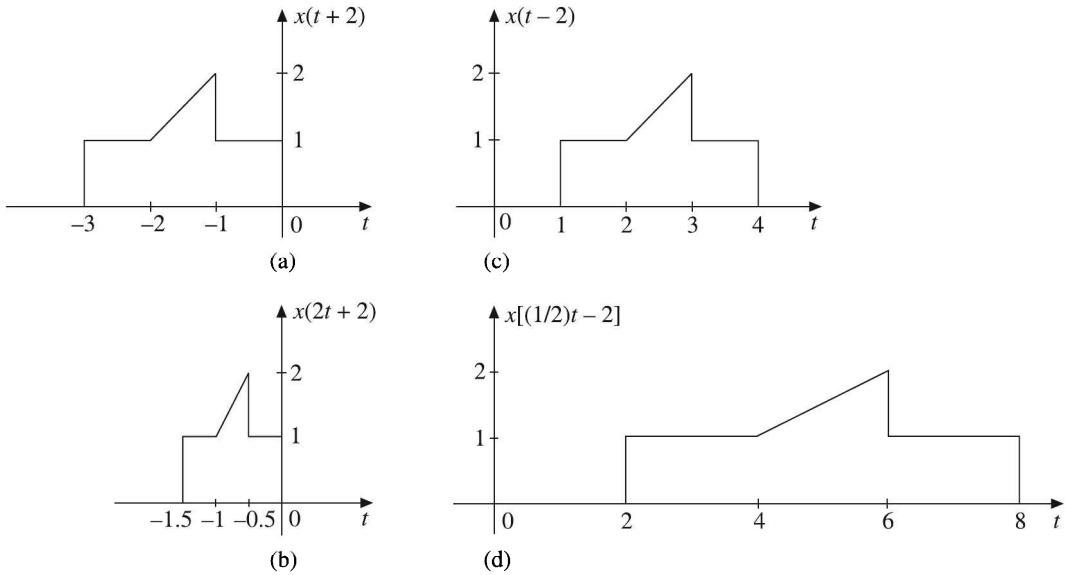


Figure 1.42 (a) Time delay, (b) Time advance.

(b) The signal  $x(2t + 2)$  can be obtained by first advancing  $x(t)$  by two units to get  $x(t + 2)$  as shown in Figure 1.43(a) and then time scaling (compression)  $x(t + 2)$  by a factor of 2 as shown in Figure 1.43(b).

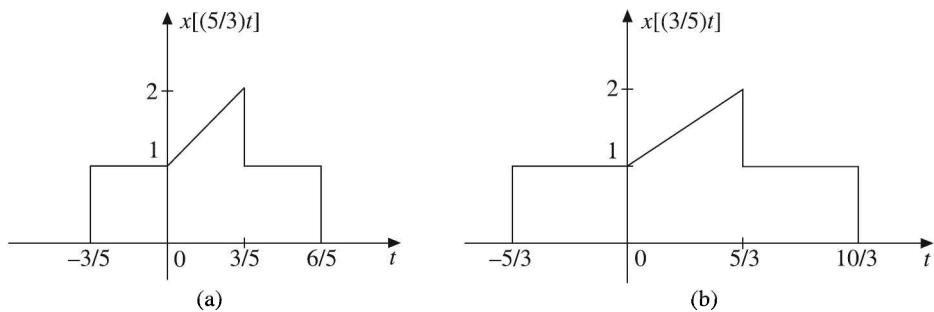
The signal  $x\left(\frac{1}{2}t - 2\right)$  can be obtained by first time delaying  $x(t)$  by 2 units to obtain  $x(t - 2)$  as shown in Figure 1.43(c) and then time scaling (expanding)  $x(t - 2)$  by a factor of  $(1/2)$  as shown in Figure 1.43(d).



**Figure 1.43** (a) Time advance, (b) Time compression, (c) Time delay, (d) Time expansion.

- (c) The signal  $x[(5/3)t]$  can be obtained by time scaling  $x(t)$  by a factor of  $(5/3)$  i.e. by compressing the signal  $x(t)$  by  $(3/5)$  times as shown in Figure 1.44(a).

The signal  $x[(3/5)t]$  can be obtained by time scaling  $x(t)$  by a factor of  $(3/5)$ , i.e. by expanding  $x(t)$  by  $(5/3)$  times as shown in Figure 1.44(b). The zero point remains as it is because  $0 \times a = 0$  itself.



**Figure 1.44** (a) Time compression, (b) Time expansion.

- (d) The signal  $x(-t + 2)$  can be obtained by folding the signal  $x(t)$  about  $t = 0$  to obtain the time reversed signal  $x(-t)$  as shown in Figure 1.45(a) and then shifting  $x(-t)$  to the right by 2 units as shown in Figure 1.45(b).

The signal  $x(-t - 2)$  can be obtained by shifting  $x(-t)$  to the left by two units as shown in Figure 1.45(c).

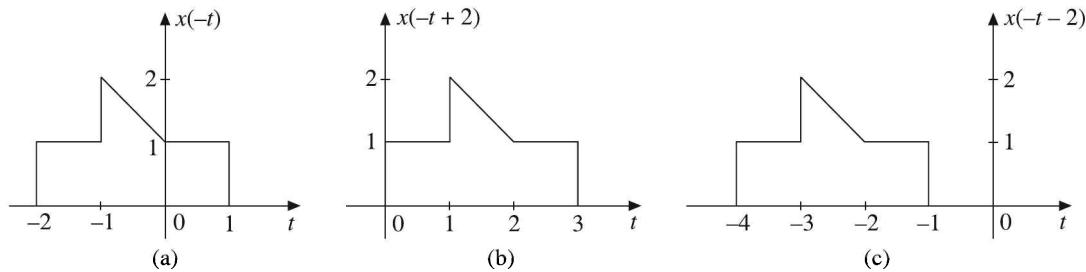


Figure 1.45 (a) Time reversal, (b) Time delay, and (c) Time advance operations on  $x(t)$ .

**EXAMPLE 1.7** Sketch the following signals

$$(a) 2u(t + 2) - 2u(t - 3)$$

$$(b) u(t + 4) u(-t + 4)$$

$$(c) \Pi\left(\frac{t - 2}{2}\right) + \Pi(2t - 3.5)$$

$$(d) r(t) - r(t - 1) - r(t - 3) + r(t - 4)$$

$$(e) r(-t) u(t + 2)$$

$$(f) r(-0.25t + 1)$$

**Solution:**

$$(a) \text{ Given } 2u(t + 2) - 2u(t - 3)$$

The signal  $u(t)$  is shown in Figure 1.46(a). The signal  $2u(t + 2)$  is obtained by shifting  $u(t)$  to the left by 2 units and multiplying by 2 as shown in Figure 1.46(b).

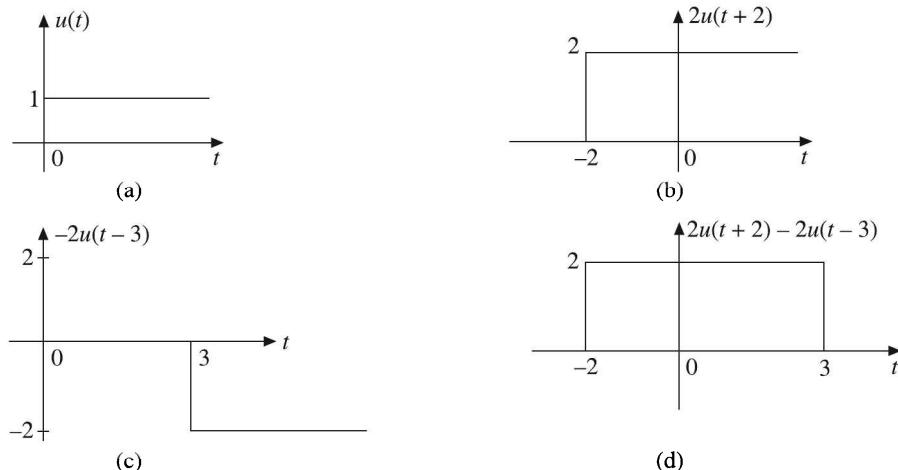


Figure 1.46 Waveforms for Example 1.7(a).

The signal  $-2u(t - 3)$  is obtained by shifting  $u(t)$  to the right by 3 units and multiplying by -2 as shown in Figure 1.46(c). The signal  $2u(t + 2) - 2u(t - 3)$  obtained by adding signals  $2u(t + 2)$  and  $-2u(t - 3)$  is shown in Figure 1.46(d).

$$2u(t + 2) = 2 \quad \text{for } t \geq -2$$

$$\text{and} \quad -2u(t - 3) = -2 \quad \text{for } t \geq 3$$

Therefore,  $2u(t+2) - 2u(t-3) = \begin{cases} 2 & \text{for } -2 \leq t \leq 3 \\ 0 & \text{otherwise} \end{cases}$

- (b) Given  $u(t+4) u(-t+4)$

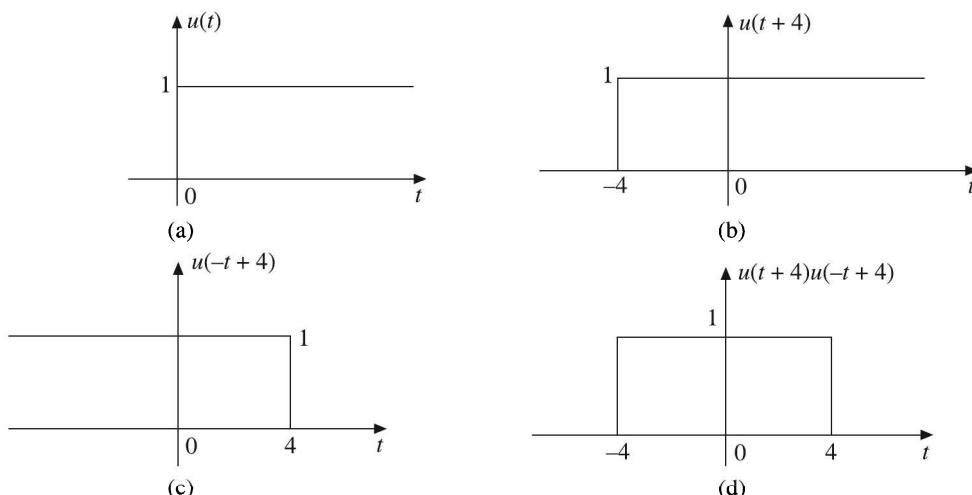
The signal  $u(t)$  is shown in Figure 1.47(a). The signal  $u(t+4)$  is obtained by shifting  $u(t)$  to the left by 4 units as shown in Figure 1.47(b). The signal  $u(-t+4)$  is obtained by reversing  $u(t)$  to obtain  $u(-t)$  and then shifting  $u(-t)$  to the right by 4 units as shown in Figure 1.47(c). The signal  $u(t+4) u(-t+4)$  obtained by multiplying the signals  $u(t+4)$  and  $u(-t+4)$  is shown in Figure 1.47(d).

$$u(t+4) = \begin{cases} 1 & \text{for } t \geq -4 \\ 0 & \text{elsewhere} \end{cases}$$

and

$$u(-t+4) = \begin{cases} 1 & \text{for } t \leq 4 \\ 0 & \text{elsewhere} \end{cases}$$

Therefore,  $u(t+4) u(-t+4) = \begin{cases} 1 & \text{for } -4 \leq t \leq 4 \\ 0 & \text{otherwise} \end{cases}$



**Figure 1.47** Waveforms for Example 1.7(b).

(c) Given  $\Pi\left(\frac{t-2}{2}\right) + \Pi(2t-3.5)$

The signal  $\Pi(t)$  is shown in Figure 1.48(a). The signal  $\Pi[(t-2)/2] = \Pi(0.5t-1)$  is obtained by first shifting  $\Pi(t)$  by 1 unit right and then expanding the time scale by 2 as shown in Figure 1.48(b). The signal  $\Pi(2t-3.5)$  is obtained by first shifting  $\Pi(t)$  by 3.5 units right and then compressing the time scale by 2 as shown in Figure 1.48(c). The signal  $\Pi[(t-2)/2] + \Pi(2t-3.5)$  is obtained by adding the signals  $\Pi[(t-2)/2]$  and  $\Pi(2t-3.5)$  as shown in Figure 1.48(d).

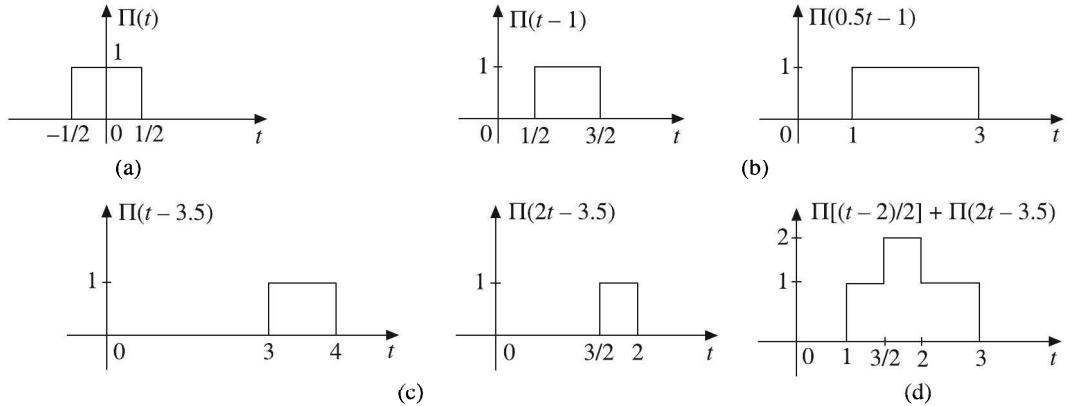


Figure 1.48 Waveforms for Example 1.7(c).

$$\Pi\left(\frac{t-2}{2}\right) = 1 \quad \text{for } 1 \leq t \leq 3$$

$$\Pi(2t-3.5) = 1 \quad \text{for } 1.5 \leq t \leq 2$$

$$\therefore \quad \Pi\left(\frac{t-2}{2}\right) + \Pi(2t-3.5) = \begin{cases} 1 & \text{for } 1 \leq t \leq 1.5 \\ 2 & \text{for } 1.5 \leq t \leq 2 \\ 1 & \text{for } 2 \leq t \leq 3 \end{cases}$$

$$(d) \text{ Given } r(t) - r(t-1) - r(t-3) + r(t-4)$$

The signal  $r(t)$  is drawn as shown in Figure 1.49(a). It is a straight line starting at origin with a slope 1.  $-r(t-1)$  is a straight line starting at  $t = 1$  with a slope  $-1$  as shown in Figure 1.49(a).  $-r(t-3)$  is a straight line starting at  $t = 3$  with a

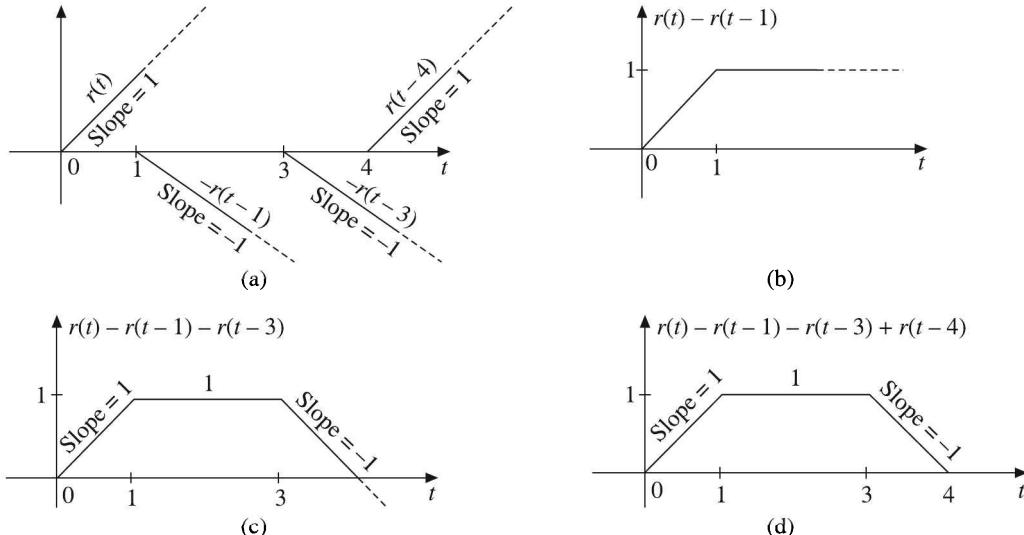


Figure 1.49 Waveforms for Example 1.7(d).

slope  $-1$  as shown in Figure 1.49(a) and  $r(t - 4)$  is a straight line starting at  $t = 4$  with a slope  $1$  as shown in Figure 1.49(a). All these straight lines extend upto  $\infty$ .

The sum  $r(t) - r(t - 1) - r(t - 3) + r(t - 4)$  is a trapezoidal signal as shown in Figure 1.49(d).

In the interval  $0 \leq t < 1$ , only  $r(t)$  is existing and the amplitudes of  $-r(t - 1)$ ,  $-r(t - 3)$  and  $r(t - 4)$  are zero. Therefore, the resultant output is  $r(t)$  alone. In the interval  $1 \leq t \leq 3$ , the amplitudes of  $-r(t - 3)$  and  $r(t - 4)$  are zero. Therefore, the resultant output is the sum of  $r(t)$  and  $-r(t - 1)$ . That is, the slope is changed from  $1$  to  $0$ . In the interval  $3 \leq t \leq 4$ , the amplitude of  $r(t - 4)$  is zero. Therefore, the resultant output is the sum of  $r(t)$ ,  $-r(t - 1)$  and  $-r(t - 3)$ . That is, the slope is changed from  $0$  to  $-1$ . For  $4 \leq t \leq \infty$ , the amplitude of resultant output is the sum of  $r(t)$ ,  $-r(t - 1)$ ,  $-r(t - 3)$  and  $r(t - 4)$ . It is equal to zero.

- (e) Given  $r(-t) u(t + 2)$

$r(-t)$  is time reversal of  $r(t)$  as shown in Figure 1.50(a).

$$r(-t) = \begin{cases} -t & \text{for } t < 0 \\ 0 & \text{for } t > 0 \end{cases}$$

$$u(t + 2) = \begin{cases} 1 & \text{for } t > -2 \\ 0 & \text{for } t < -2 \end{cases}$$

as shown in Figure 1.50(a).

The product

$$r(-t)u(t + 2) = \begin{cases} r(-t) = -t & \text{for } -2 \leq t < 0 \\ 0 & \text{for } t < -2 \\ 0 & \text{for } t > 0 \end{cases}$$

as shown in Figure 1.50(b).

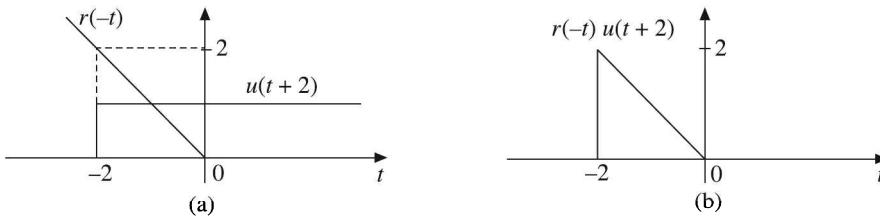


Figure 1.50 Waveforms for Example 1.7(e).

- (f) Given  $r(-0.25t + 1)$

$r(-0.25t + 1)$  is obtained by time reversing the signal  $r(t)$  to obtain  $r(-t)$  delaying it (moving to right) by 1 unit to obtain  $r(-t + 1)$  and then expanding the signal  $r(-t + 1)$  by 4 times. The entire operation is shown in Figure 1.51.

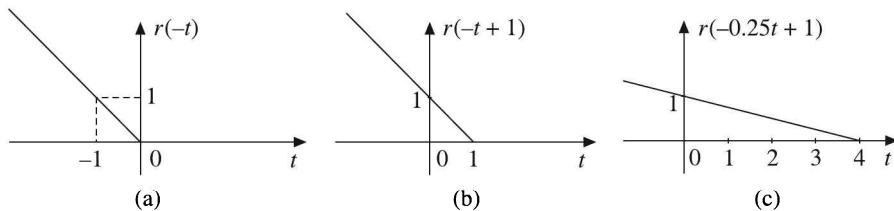
$$r(-0.25t + 1) = \begin{cases} -0.25t + 1 & \text{for } -0.25t + 1 > 0 \\ 0 & \text{otherwise} \end{cases}$$

i.e.  $r(-0.25t + 1) = \begin{cases} -0.25t + 1 & \text{for } t < 4 \\ 0 & \text{otherwise} \end{cases}$

$$\text{i.e. } \begin{aligned} r(-0.25t+1) &= 0 && \text{for } t \geq 4 \\ &= 0.25 && \text{for } t = 3 \\ &= 0.75 && \text{for } t = 1 \\ &= 1 && \text{for } t = 0 \\ &= 1.5 && \text{for } t = -2 \end{aligned}$$

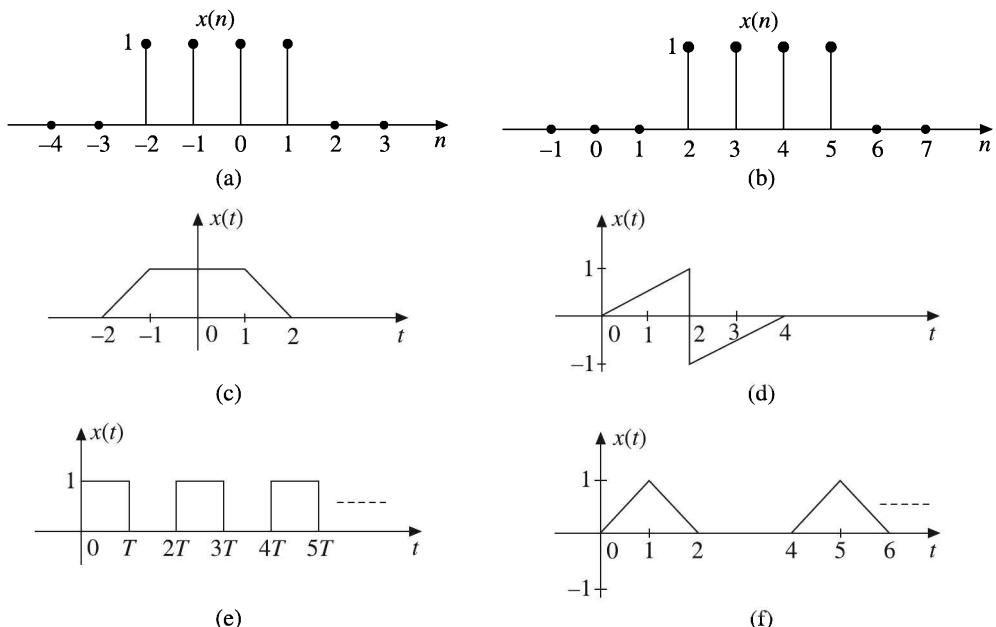
and so on.

This can be plotted as shown in Figure 1.51(c).



**Figure 1.51** Waveforms for Example 1.7(f).

**EXAMPLE 1.8** Express the following signals as sum of singular functions:



**Figure 1.52** Waveforms for Example 1.8.

**Solution:**

(a) The given signal shown in Figure 1.52(a) is:

$$x(n) = \delta(n+2) + \delta(n+1) + \delta(n) + \delta(n-1)$$

$$x(n) = \begin{cases} 0 & \text{for } n \leq -3 \\ 1 & \text{for } -2 \leq n \leq 1 \\ 0 & \text{for } n \geq 2 \end{cases}$$

$$\therefore x(n) = u(n+2) - u(n-2)$$

- (b) The signal shown in Figure 1.52(b) is:

$$x(n) = \delta(n-2) + \delta(n-3) + \delta(n-4) + \delta(n-5)$$

$$x(n) = \begin{cases} 0 & \text{for } n \leq 1 \\ 1 & \text{for } 2 \leq n \leq 5 \\ 0 & \text{for } n \geq 6 \end{cases}$$

$$\therefore x(n) = u(n-2) - u(n-6)$$

- (c) The signal shown in Figure 1.52(c) is starting at  $t = -2$  with a slope 1 and extends up to  $t = -1$ . Therefore

$$\text{From } -2 \leq t \leq -1 \quad x(t) = r(t+2)$$

At  $t = -1$ , the slope is changing from 1 to 0. So at  $t = 1$ , we have to add a ramp with slope -1. This 0 slope is maintained up to  $t = 1$ . Therefore

$$\text{From } -2 \leq t \leq 1 \quad x(t) = r(t+2) - r(t+1)$$

At  $t = 1$ , the slope is changing from 0 to -1. So at  $t = 1$ , we have to add a ramp with a slope -1. This -1 slope is maintained up to  $t = 2$ . Therefore

$$\text{From } -2 \leq t \leq 2 \quad x(t) = r(t+2) - r(t+1) - r(t-1)$$

At  $t = 2$ , the slope is changing from -1 to 0. So at  $t = 2$ , we have to add a ramp with a slope 1. This 0 slope is maintained up to  $t = \infty$ . Therefore

$$\text{From } -2 \leq t \leq \infty \quad x(t) = r(t+2) - r(t+1) - r(t-1) + r(t-2)$$

$$\therefore x(t) = r(t+2) - r(t+1) - r(t-1) + r(t-2)$$

The analysis is shown in Figure 1.53.

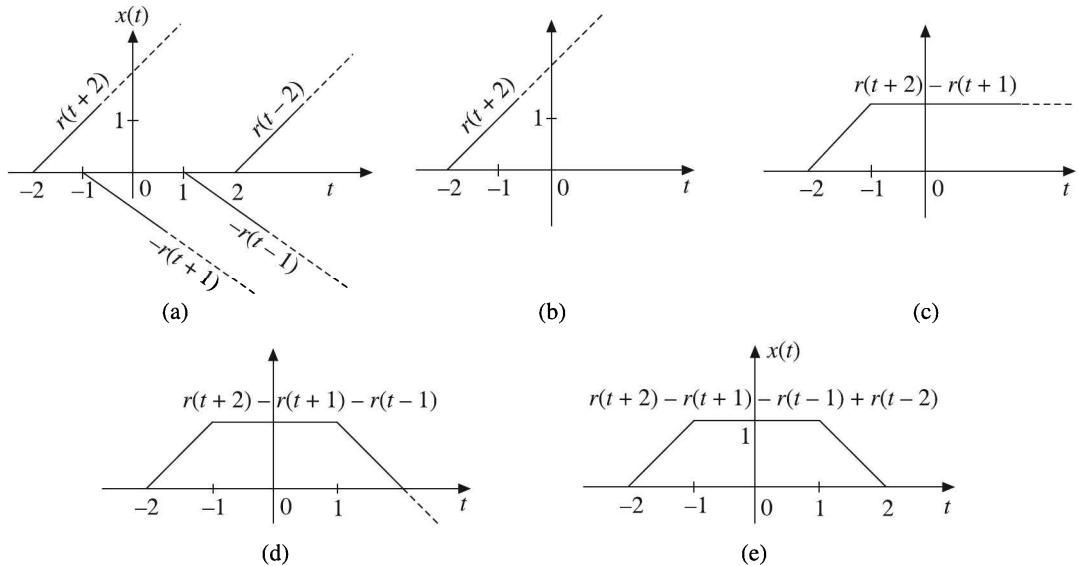


Figure 1.53 Waveforms for Example 1.8(c).

- (d) The signal shown in Figure 1.52(d) is starting from  $t = 0$  with a slope  $1/2$ . So it is ramp  $(1/2)r(t)$ . At  $t = 2$ , the value of  $(1/2)r(t) = 1$ . At  $t = 2$ , the amplitude is suddenly falling to -1 and then rising linearly with same slope  $1/2$ . Hence at  $t = 2$ , we have to add a step of -2 amplitude, i.e.  $-2u(t-2)$ . At  $t = 4$ , the signal terminates. So at

$t = 4$ , we have to add a ramp with a slope  $-(1/2)$ , i.e.  $-(1/2)r(t - 4)$ . The analysis is shown in Figure 1.54.

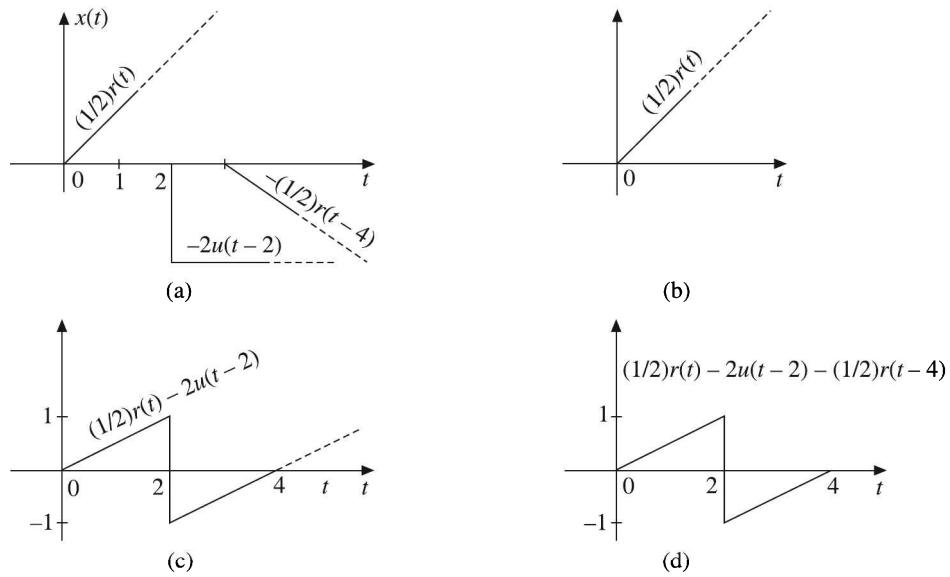


Figure 1.54 Waveforms for Example 1.8(d).

- (e) Each rectangular pulse in the given signal of Figure 1.52(e) can be expressed as the sum of two step functions as shown in Figure 1.55. The pulse train extends up to infinity.

$$\therefore x(t) = u(t) - u(t-T) + u(t-2T) - u(t-3T) + u(t-4T) - u(t-5T) + \dots$$

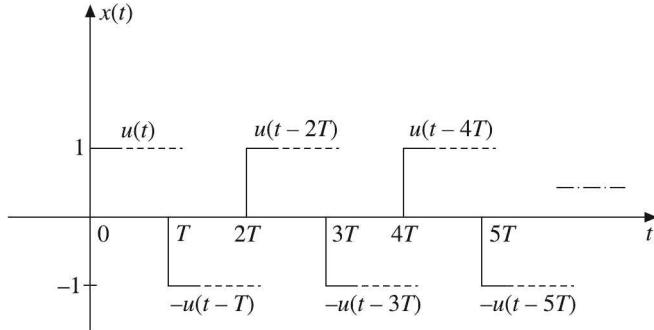


Figure 1.55 Waveforms for Example 1.8(e).

- (f) Each triangular pulse in the given signal of Figure 1.52(f) can be expressed as the sum of 3 ramp functions as shown in Figure 1.56. The pulse train extends upto infinity.

$$\therefore x(t) = r(t) - 2r(t-1) + r(t-2) + r(t-4) - 2r(t-5) + r(t-6) + \dots$$

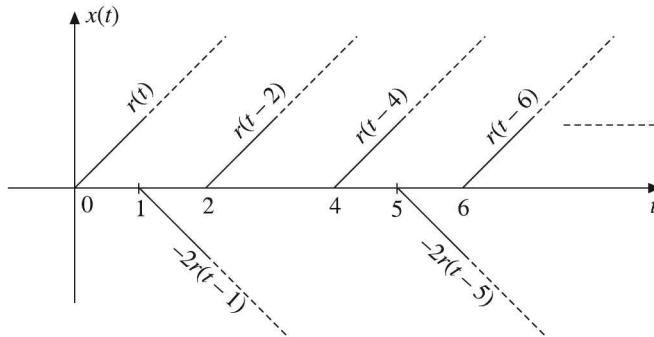


Figure 1.56 Example 1.8(f).

## 1.5 CLASSIFICATION OF SIGNALS

Based upon their nature and characteristics in the time domain, the signals may be broadly classified as under

- (a) Continuous-time signals
- (b) Discrete-time signals

### *Continuous-time signals*

The signals that are defined for every instant of time are known as continuous-time signals. Continuous-time signals are also called analog signals. For continuous-time signals, the independent variable is time. They are denoted by  $x(t)$ . They are continuous in amplitude as well as in time. Most of the signals available are continuous-time signals. Figure 1.57(a) and (b) shows the graphical representation of continuous-time signals.

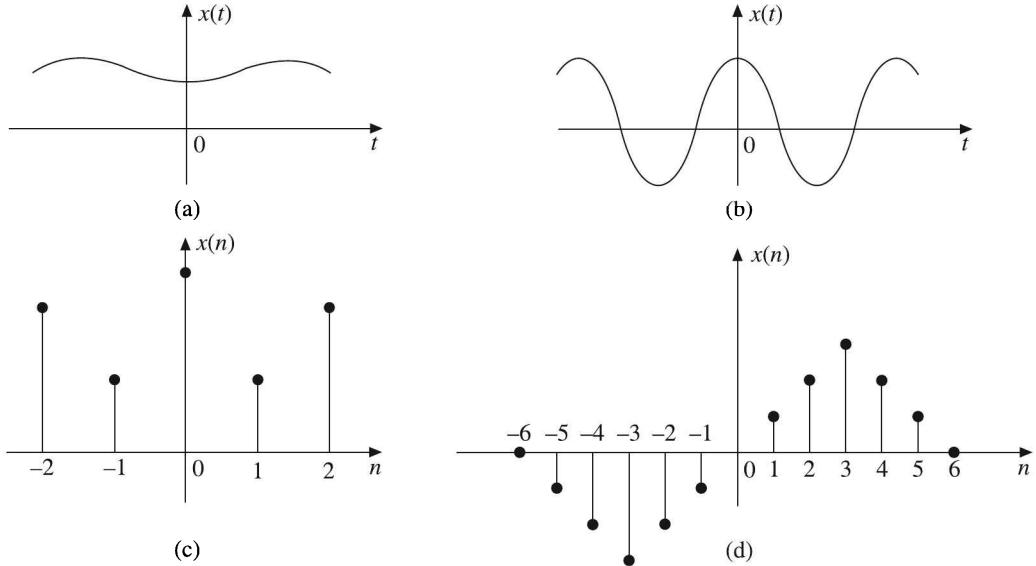
### *Discrete-time signals*

The signals that are defined only at discrete instants of time are known as discrete-time signals. The discrete-time signals are continuous in amplitude but discrete in time. For discrete-time signals, the amplitude between two time instants is just not defined. For discrete-time signals, the independent variable is time  $n$ . Since they are defined only at discrete instants of time, they are denoted by a sequence  $x(nT)$  or simply by  $x(n)$  where  $n$  is an integer.

The discrete-time signals may be inherently discrete or may be discrete versions of the continuous-time signals. Figure 1.57(c) and (d) show the graphical representation of discrete-time signals.

Both continuous-time and discrete-time signals may further be classified as under

1. Deterministic and random signals
2. Periodic and non-periodic signals
3. Energy and power signals
4. Causal and non-causal signals
5. Even and odd signals



**Figure 1.57** (a) and (b) Continuous-time signals, (c) and (d) Discrete-time signals.

### 1.5.1 Deterministic and Random Signals

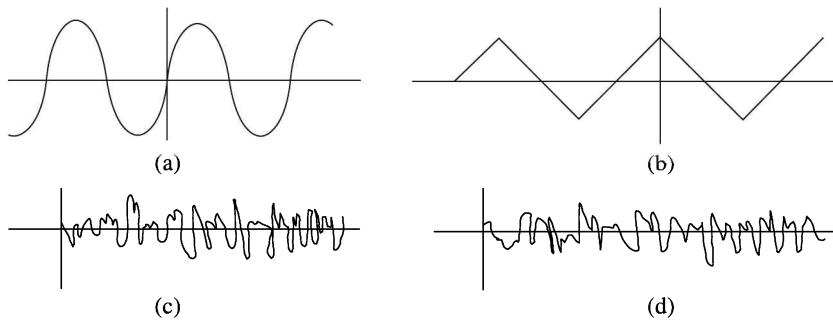
A signal exhibiting no uncertainty of its magnitude and phase at any given instant of time is called deterministic signal. A deterministic signal has a regular pattern and can be completely represented by mathematical equation at any time. Its amplitude and phase at any time instant can be predicted in advance.

*Examples:* Sine wave,  $x(t) = \cos \omega t$  or  $x(n) = \cos \omega n$ , Exponential signals, square wave, triangular wave, etc.

A signal characterized by uncertainty about its occurrence is called a random signal. A random signal cannot be represented by any mathematical equation. The pattern of such a signal is quite irregular. Its amplitude and phase at any time instant cannot be predicted in advance.

A typical example of non deterministic signals is thermal noise generated in an electric circuit. Such a noise has a probabilistic nature.

Figure 1.58 shows the graphical representation of deterministic and random signals.



**Figure 1.58** (a) and (b) Deterministic signals, (c) and (d) Random signals.

### 1.5.2 Periodic and Non-periodic Signals

A signal which has a definite pattern and which repeats itself at regular intervals of time is called a periodic signal, and a signal which does not repeat at regular intervals of time is called a non-periodic or aperiodic signal.

Mathematically, a continuous-time signal  $x(t)$  is called periodic if and only if

$$x(t + T) = x(t) \text{ for all } t, \text{ i.e. for } -\infty < t < \infty$$

where  $t$  denotes time and  $T$  is a constant representing the period. The smallest value of  $T$  which satisfies the above condition is called the fundamental period or simply period of  $x(t)$ . A signal is aperiodic if the above condition is not satisfied even for one value of  $t$ . Sometimes aperiodic signals are said to have a period equal to infinity.

The reciprocal of fundamental period  $T$  is called the fundamental frequency  $f$  of  $x(t)$ ,

i.e.

$$f = \frac{1}{T}$$

The angular frequency is given by

$$\omega = 2\pi f = \frac{2\pi}{T}$$

$$\therefore \text{Fundamental period } T = \frac{2\pi}{\omega}$$

Similarly, a discrete-time signal  $x(n)$  is said to be periodic if it satisfies the condition  $x(n) = x(n + N)$  for all integers  $n$ .

The smallest value of  $N$  which satisfies the above condition is known as fundamental period.

If the above condition is not satisfied even for one value of  $n$ , then the discrete-time signal is aperiodic.

The angular frequency is given by

$$\omega = \frac{2\pi}{N}$$

$$\therefore \text{Fundamental period } N = \frac{2\pi}{\omega}$$

1. The sum of two continuous-time periodic signals  $x_1(t)$  and  $x_2(t)$  with periods  $T_1$  and  $T_2$  may or may not be periodic depending on the relation between  $T_1$  and  $T_2$ .
2. The sum of two periodic signals is periodic only if the ratio of their respective periods  $T_1/T_2$  is a rational number or ratio of two integers.
3. The fundamental period is the least common multiple (LCM) of  $T_1$  and  $T_2$ .
4. If the ratio  $T_1/T_2$  is an irrational number, then the signals  $x_1(t)$  and  $x_2(t)$  do not have a common period and  $x(t)$  cannot be periodic.
5. The sum of two discrete-time periodic sequences is always periodic.

Some examples of continuous-time and discrete-time periodic/non-periodic signals are shown in Figure 1.59.

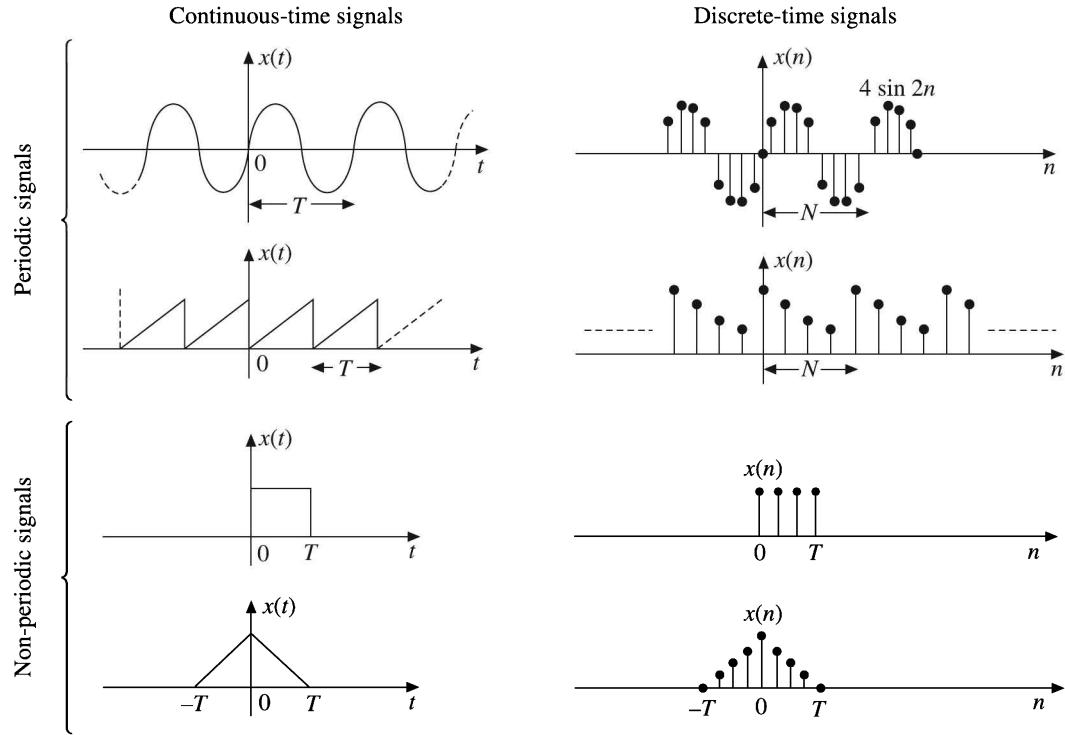


Figure 1.59 Examples of periodic and non-periodic signals.

**EXAMPLE 1.9** Show that the complex exponential signal  $x(t) = e^{j\omega_0 t}$  is periodic with period  $2\pi/\omega_0$ .

**Solution:** Given

$$x(t) = e^{j\omega_0 t}$$

$x(t)$  will be periodic if

$$x(t + T) = x(t)$$

i.e. if

$$e^{j\omega_0(t+T)} = e^{j\omega_0 t}$$

i.e. if

$$e^{j\omega_0 t} e^{j\omega_0 T} = e^{j\omega_0 t}$$

i.e. if

$$e^{j\omega_0 T} = 1$$

This is valid if

$$\omega_0 T = n(2\pi)$$

where  $n$  is an integer.

∴

$$T = \frac{2\pi n}{\omega_0}$$

Thus, the fundamental period, i.e. the smallest positive  $T$  of  $x(t)$  is given by

$$T = \frac{2\pi}{\omega_0}$$

**EXAMPLE 1.10** Show that the sinusoidal signal  $x(t) = \sin(\omega_0 t + \theta)$  is periodic with period  $2\pi/\omega_0$ .

**Solution:** Given

$$x(t) = \sin(\omega_0 t + \theta)$$

$x(t)$  will be periodic if

$$x(t) = x(t + T)$$

But

$$x(t + T) = \sin[\omega_0(t + T) + \theta] = \sin[\omega_0t + \theta + \omega_0T]$$

For  $\sin(\omega_0t + \theta)$  to be equal to  $\sin(\omega_0t + \theta + \omega_0T)$ ,  $\omega_0T$  must be equal to  $2n\pi$ , where  $n$  is a positive integer.

Therefore,

$$T = \frac{2\pi n}{\omega_0}$$

This shows that the sinusoidal signal  $x(t) = \sin(\omega_0 t + \theta)$  is periodic with fundamental period  $T = (2\pi/\omega_0)$ .

**EXAMPLE 1.11** Let  $x_1(t)$  and  $x_2(t)$  be periodic signals with fundamental periods  $T_1$  and  $T_2$  respectively. Under what conditions is the sum  $x(t) = x_1(t) + x_2(t)$  periodic and what is the fundamental period of  $x(t)$  if it is periodic?

Or

Show that a composite signal is periodic if the ratio of their fundamental periods is a rational number.

**Solution:** Given signals  $x_1(t)$  and  $x_2(t)$  are periodic with fundamental periods  $T_1$  and  $T_2$  respectively. So

$$x_1(t) = x_1(t + T_1) = x_1(t + mT_1), \quad m \text{ is a positive integer}$$

$$x_2(t) = x_2(t + T_2) = x_2(t + kT_2), \quad k \text{ is a positive integer}$$

Given signal is

$$x(t) = x_1(t) + x_2(t)$$

∴

$$x(t) = x_1(t + mT_1) + x_2(t + kT_2)$$

For  $x(t)$  to be periodic with period  $T$ , we require

$$x(t) = x(t + T) = x_1(t + T) + x_2(t + T)$$

$$= x_1(t + mT_1) + x_2(t + kT_2)$$

∴

$$mT_1 = kT_2 = T$$

∴

$$\frac{T_1}{T_2} = \frac{k}{m} = \text{rational number}$$

Then the fundamental period  $T$  of  $x(t)$  is the LCM of  $T_1$  and  $T_2$ . Therefore,

$$T = mT_1 = kT_2$$

So we can say that, the sum of two periodic signals is periodic only if the ratio of their respective periods is a rational number. Then the fundamental period is the LCM of the respective fundamental periods.

**Note:** The same condition holds for discrete-time signals also.

**EXAMPLE 1.12** Examine whether the following signals are periodic or not? If periodic determine the fundamental period.

- |   |                                     |
|---|-------------------------------------|
| (a) $\sin 12\pi t$                                | (b) $e^{j4\pi t}$                   |
| (c) $\sin \pi t u(t)$                             | (d) $e^{- t }$                      |
| (e) $\cos 2t + \sin \sqrt{3}t$                    | (f) $3 \sin 200\pi t + 4 \cos 100t$ |
| (g) $\sin 10\pi t + \cos 20\pi t$                 | (h) $\sin(10t+1) - 2 \cos(5t-2)$    |
| (i) $je^{j6t}$                                    | (j) $3u(t) + 2 \sin 2t$             |
| (k) $6e^{j[4t+(\pi/3)]} + 8e^{j[3\pi t+(\pi/4)]}$ | (l) $u(t) - 2u(t-5)$                |
| (m) $2 + \cos 2\pi t$                             |                                     |

**Solution:**

(a) Given  $x(t) = \sin 12\pi t$

Comparing it with  $\sin \omega t$ , we have

$$\omega = 12\pi \quad \text{or} \quad T = \frac{2\pi}{\omega} = \frac{2\pi}{12\pi} = \frac{1}{6}$$

Since  $T$  is a ratio of two integers,  $x(t)$  is periodic with fundamental period  $T = 1/6$  sec.

(b) Given  $x(t) = e^{j4\pi t}$

Comparing it with  $e^{j\omega t}$ , we have

$$\omega = 4\pi \quad \text{or} \quad T = \frac{2\pi}{\omega} = \frac{2\pi}{4\pi} = \frac{1}{2}$$

Since  $T$  is a ratio of two integers,  $x(t)$  is periodic with fundamental period  $T = 1/2$  sec.

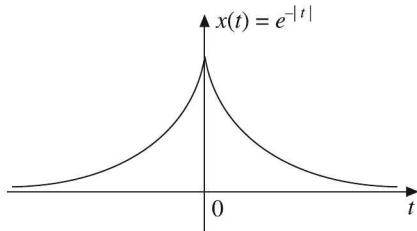
(c) Given  $x(t) = \sin \pi t u(t)$

$\sin \pi t$  is periodic with period  $T = \frac{2\pi}{\omega} = \frac{2\pi}{\pi} = 2$  sec.  $u(t)$  exists only between  $t = 0$  to  $t = \infty$ . Hence it is not periodic.

Therefore,  $\sin \pi t u(t)$  which is the product of a periodic and a non-periodic signal is not periodic.

(d) Given  $x(t) = e^{-|t|}$

The plot of  $x(t) = e^{-|t|}$  versus  $t$  is shown in Figure 1.60. It does not repeat at all. So it is aperiodic.



**Figure 1.60** Plot of  $x(t) = e^{-|t|}$ .

(e) Given  $x(t) = \cos 2t + \sin \sqrt{3}t$

Let  $x(t) = x_1(t) + x_2(t)$

where  $x_1(t) = \cos 2t$  and  $x_2(t) = \sin \sqrt{3}t$

Comparing  $x_1(t) = \cos 2t$  with  $\cos \omega_1 t$ , we have

$$\omega_1 = 2, \text{ i.e. } 2\pi f_1 = 2 \quad \text{or} \quad f_1 = \frac{1}{\pi}$$

$$\therefore \text{Period of } x_1(t) \text{ is} \quad T_1 = \frac{1}{f_1} = \pi$$

Comparing  $x_2(t) = \sin \sqrt{3}t$  with  $\sin \omega_2 t$ , we have

$$\omega_2 = \sqrt{3}, \text{ i.e. } 2\pi f_2 = \sqrt{3} \quad \text{or} \quad f_2 = \frac{\sqrt{3}}{2\pi}$$

$$\therefore \text{Period of } x_2(t) \text{ is} \quad T_2 = \frac{1}{f_2} = \frac{2\pi}{\sqrt{3}}$$

$$\text{The ratio of two periods} = \frac{T_1}{T_2} = \frac{\pi}{2\pi/\sqrt{3}} = \frac{\sqrt{3}}{2}$$

Since  $T_1/T_2$  is not a ratio of two integers (i.e. not a rational number), the given signal  $x(t)$  is non-periodic.

(f) Given  $x(t) = 3 \sin 200\pi t + 4 \cos 100t$

Let  $x(t) = x_1(t) + x_2(t)$

where  $x_1(t) = 3 \sin 200\pi t$  and  $x_2(t) = 4 \cos 100t$

Comparing  $x_1(t) = 3 \sin 200\pi t$  with  $A \sin \omega_1 t$ , we have

$$\omega_1 = 200\pi, \text{ i.e. } 2\pi f_1 = 200\pi \quad \text{or} \quad f_1 = 100$$

$$\therefore \text{Period of } x_1(t) \text{ is} \quad T_1 = \frac{1}{f_1} = \frac{1}{100}$$

Comparing  $x_2(t) = 4 \cos 100t$  with  $B \cos \omega_2 t$ , we have

$$\omega_2 = 100, \text{ i.e. } 2\pi f_2 = 100 \quad \text{or} \quad f_2 = \frac{50}{\pi}$$

$$\therefore \text{Period of } x_2(t) \text{ is} \quad T_2 = \frac{1}{f_2} = \frac{\pi}{50}$$

$$\text{The ratio of two periods} = \frac{T_1}{T_2} = \frac{1/100}{\pi/50} = \frac{1}{2\pi}$$

Since  $T_1/T_2$  is not a ratio of two integers (i.e. not a rational number), the given signal  $x(t)$  is non-periodic.

(g) Given  $x(t) = \sin 10\pi t + \cos 20\pi t$

Let  $x(t) = x_1(t) + x_2(t)$

where  $x_1(t) = \sin 10\pi t$  and  $x_2(t) = \cos 20\pi t$

Comparing  $x_1(t) = \sin 10\pi t$  with  $\sin \omega_1 t$ , we have

$$\omega_1 = 10\pi, \text{ i.e. } 2\pi f_1 = 10\pi \quad \text{or} \quad f_1 = 5$$

$$\therefore \text{Period of } x_1(t) \text{ is} \quad T_1 = \frac{1}{f_1} = \frac{1}{5}$$

Comparing  $x_2(t) = \cos 20\pi t$  with  $\cos \omega_2 t$ , we have

$$\omega_2 = 20\pi, \text{ i.e. } 2\pi f_2 = 20\pi \quad \text{or} \quad f_2 = 10$$

$$\therefore \text{Period of } x_2(t) \text{ is} \quad T_2 = \frac{1}{f_2} = \frac{1}{10}$$

$$\text{The ratio of two periods} = \frac{T_1}{T_2} = \frac{1/5}{1/10} = 2$$

$$\therefore T_1 = 2T_2$$

Since  $T_1/T_2$  is a rational number (ratio of two integers 2 and 1), the given signal  $x(t)$  is periodic.

$$\text{The fundamental period} \quad T = T_1 = 2T_2 = \frac{1}{5} \text{ sec}$$

(h) Given  $x(t) = \sin(10t + 1) - 2 \cos(5t - 2)$

Let  $x(t) = x_1(t) + x_2(t)$

where  $x_1(t) = \sin(10t + 1)$  and  $x_2(t) = 2 \cos(5t - 2)$

Comparing  $x_1(t) = \sin(10t + 1)$  with  $\sin(\omega_1 t + \theta_1)$ , we have

$$\omega_1 = 10, \text{ i.e. } 2\pi f_1 = 10 \quad \text{or} \quad f_1 = \frac{10}{2\pi} = \frac{5}{\pi}$$

The period of  $x_1(t)$  is:

$$T_1 = \frac{1}{f_1} = \frac{\pi}{5} \text{ sec}$$

Comparing  $x_2(t) = 2 \cos(5t - 2)$  with  $A \cos(\omega_2 t + \theta_2)$ , we have

$$\omega_2 = 5, \text{ i.e. } 2\pi f_2 = 5 \quad \text{or} \quad f_2 = \frac{5}{2\pi}$$

The period of  $x_2(t)$  is:

$$T_2 = \frac{1}{f_2} = \frac{2\pi}{5} \text{ sec}$$

The ratio of two periods =  $\frac{T_1}{T_2} = \frac{\pi/5}{2\pi/5} = \frac{1}{2}$

$$\therefore 2T_1 = T_2$$

Since  $T_1/T_2$  is a ratio of two integers (i.e. a rational number), the given signal  $x(t)$  is periodic.

$$\text{Fundamental period } T = 2T_1 = T_2 = \frac{2\pi}{5} \text{ sec}$$

(i) Given

$$x(t) = e^{j6t}$$

Comparing this with the standard form  $x(t) = e^{j\omega t}$ , we have

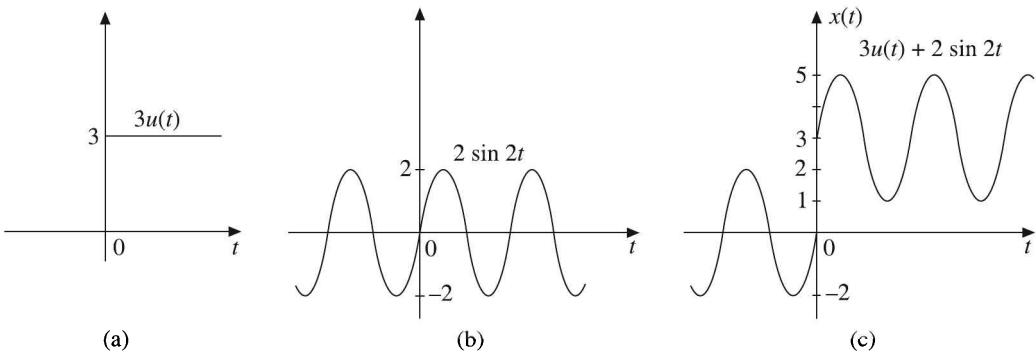
$$\omega = 6, \text{ i.e. } 2\pi f = 6 \quad \text{or} \quad f = \frac{3}{\pi}$$

$$\therefore \text{Time period } T = \frac{1}{f} = \frac{\pi}{3}$$

Since  $T$  is not a rational number (i.e. not a ratio of integers),  $x(t)$  is not periodic.

(j) Given  $x(t) = 3u(t) + 2 \sin 2t$  (Figure 1.61).

Period of  $3u(t)$  is zero, i.e. it is aperiodic. Period of  $2 \sin 2t$  is  $T = (2\pi/2) = \pi$  sec.  $2 \sin 2t$  is periodic. Therefore,  $x(t)$ , the sum of an aperiodic signal and a periodic signal, is aperiodic.



**Figure 1.61** Signal for Example 1.12(j).

(k) Given

$$x(t) = 6e^{j[4t+(\pi/3)]} + 8e^{j[3\pi t+(\pi/4)]}$$

Let

$$x(t) = x_1(t) + x_2(t)$$

where  $x_1(t) = 6e^{j[4t+(\pi/3)]}$  and  $x_2(t) = 8e^{j[3\pi t+(\pi/4)]}$

Comparing  $x_1(t) = 6e^{j[4t+(\pi/3)]}$  with  $Ae^{j(\omega_1 t + \theta_1)}$ , we have

$$\omega_1 = 4, \text{ i.e. } 2\pi f_1 = 4 \quad \text{or} \quad f_1 = \frac{2}{\pi}$$

$\therefore$  Time period of  $6e^{j[4t+(\pi/3)]}$  is  $T_1 = \frac{1}{f_1} = \frac{\pi}{2}$ .

Comparing  $x_2(t) = 8e^{j[3\pi t+(\pi/4)]}$  with  $B e^{j(\omega_2 t + \theta_2)}$ , we have

$$\omega_2 = 3\pi; \text{ i.e. } 2\pi f_2 = 3\pi \quad \text{or} \quad f_2 = \frac{3}{2}$$

$\therefore$  Time period of  $8e^{j[3\pi t+(\pi/4)]}$  is  $T_2 = \frac{1}{f_2} = \frac{2}{3}$ .

The ratio of two periods  $= \frac{T_1}{T_2} = \frac{\pi/2}{2/3} = \frac{3\pi}{4}$ .

Since the ratio  $T_1/T_2$  is not rational, the given signal  $x(t)$  is not periodic.

(l) Given

$$x(t) = u(t) - 2u(t-5)$$

Period of  $u(t)$  as well as  $u(t-5)$  is zero. So both  $u(t)$  and  $u(t-5)$  are aperiodic.

Therefore,  $x(t)$ , the sum of two aperiodic signals, is aperiodic as shown in Figure 1.62.

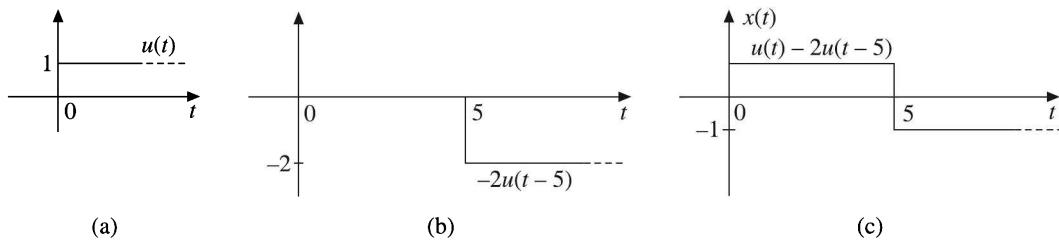


Figure 1.62 Signal for Example 1.12(l).

(m) Given

$$x(t) = 2 + \cos 2\pi t$$

2 is a dc signal extending from  $-\infty$  to  $\infty$ . The time period of  $\cos 2\pi t$  is  $T = (2\pi/2\pi) = 1$ . Since it is a rational number,  $\cos 2\pi t$  is periodic. The signal  $x(t) = 2 + \cos 2\pi t$  is nothing but  $\cos 2\pi t$  shifted upwards by 2 as shown in Figure 1.63. So  $x(t)$  is also periodic with a fundamental period  $T = 1$  sec.

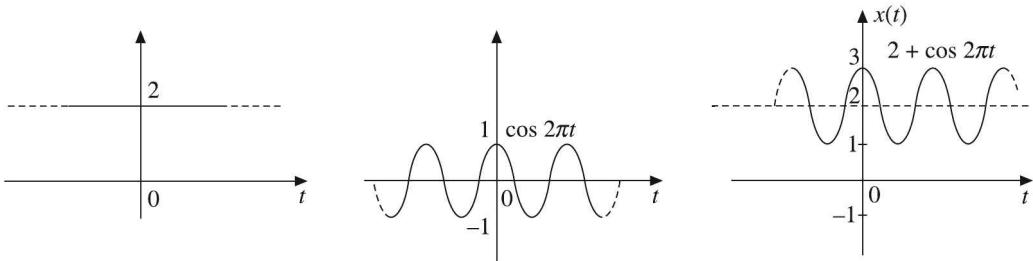


Figure 1.63 Signal for Example 1.12(m).

**EXAMPLE 1.13** Show that the complex exponential sequence  $x(n) = e^{j\omega_0 n}$  is periodic only if  $\omega_0/2\pi$  is a rational number.

**Solution:** Given

$$x(n) = e^{j\omega_0 n}$$

$x(n)$  will be periodic if

$$x(n + N) = x(n)$$

i.e.

$$e^{j[\omega_0(n+N)]} = e^{j\omega_0 n}$$

i.e.

$$e^{j\omega_0 N} e^{j\omega_0 n} = e^{j\omega_0 n}$$

This is possible only if

$$e^{j\omega_0 N} = 1$$

This is true only if

$$\omega_0 N = 2\pi k$$

where  $k$  is a positive integer.

$$\therefore \frac{\omega_0}{2\pi} = \frac{k}{N} = \text{Rational number}$$

This shows that the complex exponential sequence  $x(n) = e^{j\omega_0 n}$  is periodic if  $\omega_0/2\pi$  is a rational number.

**EXAMPLE 1.14** Let  $x(t)$  be the complex exponential signal,  $x(t) = e^{j\omega_0 t}$  with radian frequency  $\omega_0$  and fundamental period  $T = 2\pi/\omega_0$ . Consider the discrete-time sequence  $x(n)$  obtained by the uniform sampling of  $x(t)$  with sampling interval  $T_s$ , i.e.

$$x(n) = x(nT_s) = e^{jn\omega_0 T_s}$$

Show that  $x(n)$  is periodic if the ratio of the sampling interval  $T_s$  to the fundamental period  $T$  of  $x(t)$ , i.e.  $T_s/T$  is a rational number.

**Solution:** Given

$$x(t) = e^{j\omega_0 t}$$

$$x(n) = x(nT_s) = e^{jn\omega_0 T_s}$$

$T_s$  is the sampling interval.

$$\text{Now, fundamental period } T = \frac{2\pi}{\omega_0}$$

$$\therefore \omega_0 = \frac{2\pi}{T}$$

If  $x(n)$  is periodic with the fundamental period  $N$ , then

$$x(n+N) = x(n)$$

i.e.  $e^{j(n+N)\omega_0 T_s} = e^{jn\omega_0 T_s}$

i.e.  $e^{jn\omega_0 T_s} e^{jN\omega_0 T_s} = e^{jn\omega_0 T_s}$

This is true only if  $e^{jN\omega_0 T_s} = 1$

i.e.  $N\omega_0 T_s = 2\pi m$

where  $m$  is a positive integer.

i.e.  $N \frac{2\pi}{T} T_s = 2\pi m$

$\therefore \frac{T_s}{T} = \frac{m}{N}$  = Rational number

This shows that  $x(n)$  is periodic if the ratio of the sampling interval to the fundamental period of  $x(t)$ ,  $T_s/T$  is a rational number.

**EXAMPLE 1.15** Obtain the condition for discrete-time sinusoidal signal to be periodic.

**Solution:** In case of continuous-time signals, all sinusoidal signals are periodic. But in discrete-time case, not all sinusoidal sequences are periodic.

Consider a discrete-time signal given by

$$x(n) = A \sin(\omega_0 n + \theta)$$

where  $A$  is amplitude,  $\omega_0$  is frequency and  $\theta$  is phase shift.

A discrete-time signal is periodic if and only if

$$x(n) = x(n+N) \text{ for all } n$$

Now,  $x(n+N) = A \sin[\omega_0(n+N) + \theta] = A \sin(\omega_0 n + \theta + \omega_0 N)$

Therefore,  $x(n)$  and  $x(n+N)$  are equal if  $\omega_0 N = 2\pi m$ . That is, there must be an integer  $m$  such that

$$\omega_0 = \frac{2\pi m}{N} = 2\pi \left[ \frac{m}{N} \right]$$

or  $N = 2\pi \left[ \frac{m}{\omega_0} \right]$

From the above equation we find that, for the discrete-time signal to be periodic, the fundamental frequency  $\omega_0$  must be a rational multiple of  $2\pi$ . Otherwise the discrete-time signal is aperiodic. The smallest value of positive integer  $N$ , for some integer  $m$ , is the fundamental period.

**EXAMPLE 1.16** Determine whether the following discrete-time signals are periodic or not? If periodic, determine the fundamental period.

(a)  $\sin(0.02\pi n)$

(b)  $\sin(5\pi n)$

(c)  $\cos 4n$

(d)  $\sin \frac{2\pi n}{3} + \cos \frac{2\pi n}{5}$

(e)  $\cos\left(\frac{n}{6}\right)\cos\left(\frac{n\pi}{6}\right)$

(f)  $\cos\left(\frac{\pi}{2} + 0.3n\right)$

(g)  $e^{j(\pi/2)n}$

(h)  $1 + e^{j2\pi n/3} - e^{j4\pi n/7}$

**Solution:**

(a) Given

$x(n) = \sin(0.02\pi n)$

Comparing it with

$x(n) = \sin(2\pi fn),$

we have  $0.02\pi = 2\pi f$  or  $f = \frac{0.02\pi}{2\pi} = 0.01 = \frac{1}{100} = \frac{k}{N}$

Here  $f$  is expressed as a ratio of two integers with  $k = 1$  and  $N = 100$ . So it is rational. Hence the given signal is periodic with fundamental period  $N = 100$ .

(b) Given

$x(n) = \sin(5\pi n)$

Comparing it with

$x(n) = \sin(2\pi fn),$

we have  $2\pi f = 5\pi$  or  $f = \frac{5}{2} = \frac{k}{N}$

Here  $f$  is a ratio of two integers with  $k = 5$  and  $N = 2$ . Hence it is rational. Therefore, the given signal is periodic with fundamental period  $N = 2$ .

(c) Given

$x(n) = \cos 4n$

Comparing it with

$x(n) = \cos 2\pi fn,$

we have  $2\pi f = 4$  or  $f = \frac{2}{\pi}$

Since  $f = (2/\pi)$  is not a rational number,  $x(n)$  is not periodic.

(d) Given

$x(n) = \sin \frac{2\pi n}{3} + \cos \frac{2\pi n}{5}$

Comparing it with

$x(n) = \sin 2\pi f_1 n + \cos 2\pi f_2 n$

we have  $2\pi f_1 = \frac{2\pi}{3}$  or  $f_1 = \frac{1}{3} = \frac{k_1}{N_1}$

$\therefore N_1 = 3$

and  $2\pi f_2 = \frac{2\pi}{5}$  or  $f_2 = \frac{1}{5}$

$\therefore N_2 = 5$

Since  $\frac{N_1}{N_2} = \frac{3}{5}$  is a ratio of two integers, the sequence  $x(n)$  is periodic. The period of  $x(n)$  is the LCM of  $N_1$  and  $N_2$ . Here LCM of  $N_1 = 3$  and  $N_2 = 5$  is 15. Therefore, the given sequence is periodic with fundamental period  $N = 15$ .

(e) Given 
$$x(n) = \cos\left(\frac{n}{6}\right) \cos\left(\frac{n\pi}{6}\right)$$

Comparing it with  $x(n) = \cos(2\pi f_1 n) \cos(2\pi f_2 n)$ ,

we have  $2\pi f_1 n = \frac{n}{6}$  or  $f_1 = \frac{1}{12\pi}$

which is not rational

and  $2\pi f_2 n = \frac{n\pi}{6}$  or  $f_2 = \frac{1}{12}$

which is rational

Thus,  $\cos(n/6)$  is non-periodic and  $\cos(n\pi/6)$  is periodic.  $x(n)$  is non-periodic because it is the product of periodic and non-periodic signals.

(f) Given 
$$x(n) = \cos\left(\frac{\pi}{2} + 0.3n\right)$$

Comparing it with  $x(n) = \cos(2\pi f n + \theta)$ ,

we have  $2\pi f n = 0.3n$  and phase shift  $\theta = \frac{\pi}{2}$

$\therefore f = \frac{0.3}{2\pi} = \frac{3}{20\pi}$

which is not rational.

Hence, the signal  $x(n)$  is non-periodic.

(g) Given 
$$x(n) = e^{j(\pi/2)n}$$

Comparing it with  $x(n) = e^{j2\pi f n}$ ,

we have  $2\pi f = \frac{\pi}{2}$  or  $f = \frac{1}{4} = \frac{k}{N}$

which is rational.

Hence, the given signal  $x(n)$  is periodic with fundamental period  $N = 4$ .

(h) Given 
$$x(n) = 1 + e^{j2\pi n/3} - e^{j4\pi n/7}$$

Let  $x(n) = 1 + e^{j2\pi n/3} - e^{j4\pi n/7} = x_1(n) + x_2(n) + x_3(n)$

where  $x_1(n) = 1$ ,  $x_2(n) = e^{j2\pi n/3}$  and  $x_3(n) = e^{j4\pi n/7}$

$x_1(n) = 1$  is a dc signal with an arbitrary period  $N_1 = 1$

$$x_2(n) = e^{j2\pi n/3} = e^{j2\pi f_2 n}$$

$$\therefore \frac{2\pi n}{3} = 2\pi f_2 n \quad \text{or} \quad f_2 = \frac{1}{3} = \frac{k_2}{N_2} \quad \text{where } N_2 = 3.$$

Hence  $x_2(n)$  is periodic with period  $N_2 = 3$ .

$$x_3(n) = e^{j4\pi n/7} = e^{j2\pi f_3 n}$$

$$\therefore \frac{4\pi n}{7} = 2\pi f_3 n \quad \text{or} \quad f_3 = \frac{2}{7} = \frac{k_3}{N_3} \quad \text{where } N_3 = \frac{7}{2}$$

Now,  $\frac{N_1}{N_2} = \frac{1}{3}$  = Rational number

$$\frac{N_1}{N_3} = \frac{1}{7/2} = \frac{2}{7} = \text{Rational number}$$

The LCM of  $N_1, N_2, N_3 = \frac{7}{2} \times 3 = \frac{21}{2}$

The given signal  $x(n)$  is periodic with fundamental period  $N = 10.5$ .

### 1.5.3 Energy and Power Signals

In electrical systems, signals may represent voltage or current. Consider a voltage signal  $v(t)$  across a resistance  $R$  producing a current  $i(t)$  as shown in Figure 1.64.

The instantaneous power developed in  $R$  is given by

$$\begin{aligned} p(t) &= v(t) i(t) \\ &= v(t) \frac{v(t)}{R} = \frac{v^2(t)}{R} \\ &= i(t) R i(t) = i^2(t) R \end{aligned}$$

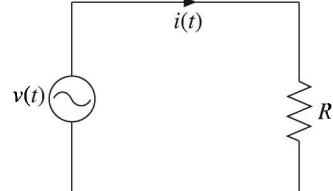


Figure 1.64 Simple resistive circuit.

When  $R = 1$  ohm, the power dissipated is called *normalized power*.

So Normalized power  $p(t) = v^2(t)$  or  $i^2(t)$

If  $v(t)$  or  $i(t)$  is denoted by a signal  $x(t)$ , then the instantaneous power is equal to the square of the amplitude of the signal.

i.e.  $p(t) = x^2(t)$

Thus, for current as well as voltage, the equation for normalized power is same.

The total energy or normalized energy of a continuous-time signal  $x(t)$  is given by

$$E = \lim_{T \rightarrow \infty} \int_{-T}^T x^2(t) dt \text{ joules}$$

The average power or normalized average power of a continuous-time signal  $x(t)$  is given by

$$P = \text{Lt}_{T \rightarrow \infty} \frac{1}{2T} \int_{-T}^T x^2(t) dt \text{ watts}$$

The square root of  $P$  is known as rms value of the signal  $x(t)$ .

In the case of discrete-time signal  $x(n)$ , the integrals are replaced by summation. So the total energy  $E$  of a discrete-time signal  $x(n)$  is defined as:

$$E = \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} |x(n)|^2$$

and the average power  $P$  of a discrete-time signal  $x(n)$  is defined as:

$$P = \text{Lt}_{N \rightarrow \infty} \frac{1}{2N+1} \sum_{n=-N}^N |x(n)|^2$$

Signals may also be classified as energy signals and power signals. However there are some signals which can neither be classified as energy signals nor power signals.

- A signal is said to be an energy signal if and only if its total energy  $E$  is finite (i.e.  $0 < E < \infty$ ). For an energy signal, average power  $P = 0$ . Non-periodic signals are examples of energy signals.
- A signal is said to be a power signal if its average power  $P$  is finite (i.e.  $0 < P < \infty$ ). For a power signal, total energy  $E = \infty$ . Periodic signals are examples of power signals.
- Both energy and power signals are mutually exclusive, i.e. no signal can be both energy signal and power signal.
- The signals that do not satisfy the above properties are neither energy signals nor power signals.

**EXAMPLE 1.17** Determine the power and rms value of the signal  $x(t) = A \sin(\omega_0 t + \theta)$

**Solution:** Given

$$x(t) = A \sin(\omega_0 t + \theta)$$

Then

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Average power } P &= \text{Lt}_{T \rightarrow \infty} \frac{1}{2T} \int_{-T}^T |x(t)|^2 dt \\ &= \text{Lt}_{T \rightarrow \infty} \frac{1}{2T} \int_{-T}^T |A \sin(\omega_0 t + \theta)|^2 dt \\ &= \text{Lt}_{T \rightarrow \infty} \frac{A^2}{2T} \int_{-T}^T \left[ \frac{1 - \cos(2\omega_0 t + 2\theta)}{2} \right] dt \\ &= \text{Lt}_{T \rightarrow \infty} \frac{A^2}{4T} \int_{-T}^T dt - \text{Lt}_{T \rightarrow \infty} \frac{A^2}{4T} \int_{-T}^T \cos(2\omega_0 t + 2\theta) dt \\ &= \text{Lt}_{T \rightarrow \infty} \frac{A^2}{4T} \int_{-T}^T dt - 0 \quad [\text{Integration of cosine function over one full cycle is always zero.}] \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
&= \text{Lt}_{T \rightarrow \infty} \frac{A^2}{4T} [T + T] \\
&= \frac{A^2}{2} \\
\text{rms value} &= \sqrt{\frac{A^2}{2}} = \frac{A}{\sqrt{2}}
\end{aligned}$$

So we can conclude that the power of a sinusoidal signal with amplitude  $A$  is equal to  $A^2/2$  and rms value is equal to  $A/\sqrt{2}$ .

$$\begin{aligned}
\text{Normalized energy } E &= \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} |A \sin(\omega_0 t + \theta)|^2 dt \\
&= \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \frac{A^2[1 - \cos 2(\omega_0 t + \theta)]}{2} dt \\
&= \frac{A^2}{2} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} dt - \frac{A^2}{2} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} [\cos(2\omega_0 t + 2\theta)] dt = \frac{A^2}{2} [t]_{-\infty}^{\infty} - 0 \\
&= \infty
\end{aligned}$$

$\therefore$  Energy  $E = \infty$

**EXAMPLE 1.18** Prove the following:

- (a) The power of the energy signal is zero over infinite time.
- (b) The energy of the power signal is infinite over infinite time.

**Solution:**

- (a) **Power of the energy signal**

Let  $x(t)$  be an energy signal, i.e.  $E = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} |x(t)|^2 dt$  is finite

$$\begin{aligned}
\text{Power of the signal } P &= \text{Lt}_{T \rightarrow \infty} \frac{1}{2T} \int_{-T}^{T} |x(t)|^2 dt \\
&= \text{Lt}_{T \rightarrow \infty} \frac{1}{2T} \left[ \text{Lt}_{T \rightarrow \infty} \int_{-T}^{T} |x(t)|^2 dt \right] = \text{Lt}_{T \rightarrow \infty} \frac{1}{2T} \left[ \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} |x(t)|^2 dt \right] \\
&= \text{Lt}_{T \rightarrow \infty} \frac{1}{2T} [E] \quad \left[ \text{since } E = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} |x(t)|^2 dt \right] \\
&= 0 \times E = 0 \quad \left[ \text{since } \text{Lt}_{T \rightarrow \infty} \frac{1}{2T} = 0 \right]
\end{aligned}$$

Thus, the power of the energy signal is zero over infinite time.

(b) **Energy of the power signal**

Let  $x(t)$  be a power signal, i.e.  $P = \text{Lt}_{T \rightarrow \infty} \frac{1}{2T} \int_{-T}^T |x(t)|^2 dt$  is finite.

$$\text{Energy of the signal} \quad E = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} |x(t)|^2 dt$$

Let us change the limits of integration as  $-T$  to  $T$  and take limit  $T \rightarrow \infty$ . This will not change the meaning of above equation for  $E$ .

$$\begin{aligned} \text{i.e. } E &= \text{Lt}_{T \rightarrow \infty} \int_{-T}^T |x(t)|^2 dt \\ &= \text{Lt}_{T \rightarrow \infty} \left[ 2T \frac{1}{2T} \int_{-T}^T |x(t)|^2 dt \right] = \text{Lt}_{T \rightarrow \infty} 2T \left[ \text{Lt}_{T \rightarrow \infty} \frac{1}{2T} \int_{-T}^T |x(t)|^2 dt \right] \\ &= \text{Lt}_{T \rightarrow \infty} 2TP \quad \left[ \text{since } P = \text{Lt}_{T \rightarrow \infty} \frac{1}{2T} \int_{-T}^T |x(t)|^2 dt \right] \\ &= \infty \end{aligned}$$

Thus, the energy of the power signal is infinite over infinite time.

*Important tips to determine whether the given signal is an energy signal or power signal*

- Observe the signal carefully. If it is periodic and of infinite duration, then it can be a power signal. Hence calculate its power directly (Its  $E = \infty$ ).
- If the signal is periodic only over a finite duration or not periodic at all, then it can be energy signal. Hence calculate its energy (Its  $P = 0$ ).

**EXAMPLE 1.19** Determine the power and rms value of the following signals:

$$(a) \quad x(t) = 7 \cos\left(20t + \frac{\pi}{2}\right)$$

$$(b) \quad x(t) = 12 \cos\left(20t + \frac{\pi}{3}\right) + 16 \sin\left(30t + \frac{\pi}{2}\right)$$

$$(c) \quad x(t) = 8 \cos 4t \cos 6t$$

$$(d) \quad x(t) = e^{j2t} \cos 10t$$

$$(e) \quad x(t) = Ae^{j5t}$$

**Solution:**

$$(a) \quad \text{Given} \quad x(t) = 7 \cos\left(20t + \frac{\pi}{2}\right)$$

It is of the form  $A \cos(\omega_0 t + \theta)$

Then Power of the signal  $P = \frac{7^2}{2} = 24.5 \text{ W}$

The rms value of the signal is  $\sqrt{24.5}$ .

(b) Given  $x(t) = 12 \cos\left(20t + \frac{\pi}{3}\right) + 16 \sin\left(30t + \frac{\pi}{2}\right)$

Then Power of the signal  $P = \frac{12^2}{2} + \frac{16^2}{2} = 200 \text{ W}$

and rms value of the signal =  $\sqrt{200}$

(c) Given  $x(t) = 8 \cos 4t \cos 6t$

$$\begin{aligned} &= 8 \frac{[\cos 10t + \cos 2t]}{2} \\ &= 4 \cos 10t + 4 \cos 2t \end{aligned}$$

Then Power of the signal  $P = \frac{4^2}{2} + \frac{4^2}{2} = 16 \text{ W}$

The rms value of the signal is  $\sqrt{16} = 4$ .

(d) Given  $x(t) = e^{j2t} \cos 10t$   
 $= (\cos 2t + j \sin 2t) \cos 10t$   
 $= \cos 2t \cos 10t + j \sin 2t \cos 10t$   
 $= \frac{(\cos 12t + \cos 8t)}{2} + \frac{j(\sin 12t - \sin 8t)}{2}$

Then Power of the signal  $= \frac{\left(\frac{1}{2}\right)^2}{2} + \frac{\left(\frac{1}{2}\right)^2}{2} + \frac{\left(\frac{1}{2}\right)^2}{2} + \frac{\left(\frac{1}{2}\right)^2}{2} = \frac{1}{2}$

and rms value =  $\sqrt{\frac{1}{2}}$

(e) Given  $x(t) = A e^{j5t}$   
 $= A \cos 5t + jA \sin 5t$

Then Power of the signal  $= \frac{A^2}{2} + \frac{A^2}{2} = A^2$

and rms value of the signal =  $\sqrt{A^2} = A$

**EXAMPLE 1.20** Determine whether the following signals are energy signals or power signals and calculate their energy or power:

- |  |                                    |
|--|------------------------------------|
| (a) $x(t) = \sin^2 \omega_0 t$                   | (b) $x(t) = \text{rect}(t/\tau)$   |
| (c) $x(t) = \text{rect}(t/\tau) \sin \omega_0 t$ | (d) $x(t) = A e^{-at} u(t), a > 0$ |
| (e) $x(t) = u(t)$                                | (f) $x(t) = t u(t)$                |
| (g) $x(t) = e^{j[3t + (\pi/2)]}$                 |                                    |

**Solution:**

(a) Given  $x(t) = \sin^2 \omega_0 t$

This is a squared sine wave. Hence it is periodic signal. So it can be a power signal and calculate the power directly.

The normalized average power is:

$$P = \text{Lt}_{T \rightarrow \infty} \frac{1}{2T} \int_{-T}^T |x(t)|^2 dt$$

Here  $[\sin^2 \omega_0 t]^2 = \sin^4 \omega_0 t$  has some period  $T$  and it is real. Hence, the above equation will be

$$P = \text{Lt}_{T \rightarrow \infty} \frac{1}{2T} \int_{-T}^T \sin^4 \omega_0 t dt$$

It can be expanded by standard trigonometric relations as follows

$$\begin{aligned} P &= \text{Lt}_{T \rightarrow \infty} \frac{1}{2T} \int_{-T}^T \frac{1}{8} [3 - 4 \cos 2\omega_0 t + \cos 4\omega_0 t] dt \\ &= \text{Lt}_{T \rightarrow \infty} \frac{1}{2T} \int_{-T}^T \frac{3}{8} dt - \text{Lt}_{T \rightarrow \infty} \frac{1}{2T} \int_{-T}^T \frac{4}{8} \cos 2\omega_0 t dt + \text{Lt}_{T \rightarrow \infty} \frac{1}{2T} \int_{-T}^T \frac{1}{8} \cos 4\omega_0 t dt \\ &= \text{Lt}_{T \rightarrow \infty} \frac{1}{2T} \frac{3}{8} [t]_{-T}^T - 0 + 0 = \text{Lt}_{T \rightarrow \infty} \frac{1}{2T} \frac{3}{8} [2T] = \frac{3}{8} \end{aligned}$$

The power of the signal is finite and non-zero.

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Now, Normalized energy of signal } E &= \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} |x(t)|^2 dt \\ &= \text{Lt}_{T \rightarrow \infty} \int_{-T}^T (\sin^2 \omega_0 t)^2 dt \\ &= \text{Lt}_{T \rightarrow \infty} \int_{-T}^T \frac{1}{8} [3 - 4 \cos 2\omega_0 t + \cos 4\omega_0 t] dt \\ &= \text{Lt}_{T \rightarrow \infty} \frac{3}{8} [t]_{-T}^T = \text{Lt}_{T \rightarrow \infty} \frac{3}{8} 2T = \infty \end{aligned}$$

Hence it is a power signal with  $P = 3/8$  watts.

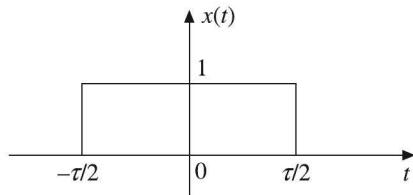
(b) Given

$$x(t) = \text{rect}\left(\frac{t}{\tau}\right)$$

The rect ( $t/\tau$ ) function is given as:

$$\text{rect}\left(\frac{t}{\tau}\right) = \begin{cases} 1 & \text{for } -\frac{\tau}{2} < t < \frac{\tau}{2} \\ 0 & \text{otherwise} \end{cases}$$

As shown in Figure 1.65, it is a non-periodic function.

**Figure 1.65**  $\text{rect}(t/\tau)$ .

So it can be an energy signal and calculate the energy directly.

$$\begin{aligned} E &= \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} |x(t)|^2 dt \\ &= \int_{-\tau/2}^{\tau/2} (1)^2 dt \\ &= \frac{\tau}{2} + \frac{\tau}{2} = \tau \end{aligned}$$

The energy of the signal is finite and non zero.

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Now,} \quad \text{Normalized power } P &= \lim_{T \rightarrow \infty} \frac{1}{2T} \int_{-T}^{T} |x(t)|^2 dt \\ &= \lim_{T \rightarrow \infty} \frac{1}{2T} \int_{-\tau/2}^{\tau/2} (1)^2 dt \\ &= \lim_{T \rightarrow \infty} \frac{1}{2T} [\tau] \\ &= 0 \end{aligned}$$

Hence it is an energy signal with  $E = \tau$  joules.

(c) Given signal is  $x(t) = \text{rect}(t/\tau) \sin \omega_0 t$  and is shown in Figure 1.66.

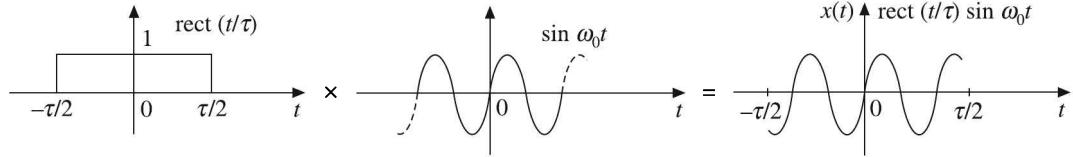


Figure 1.66 Signal for Example 1.20(c).

The given signal is the product of a rect. function and a sine wave. Figure 1.66 shows how  $x(t)$  is derived.

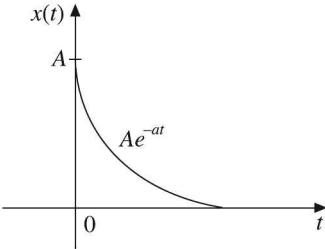
- $\sin \omega_0 t$  is periodic and infinite duration signal. So basically it is a power signal.
- $\text{rect}(t/\tau)$  is non-periodic and finite duration signal. So basically it is an energy signal.
- $\text{rect}(t/\tau) \sin \omega_0 t$  is product of the above two. Hence it is a sine wave of duration  $-\frac{\tau}{2} < t < \frac{\tau}{2}$ , i.e. it is periodic over a finite interval only. So it is an energy signal. Calculate energy directly.

$$\begin{aligned} E &= \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} |x(t)|^2 dt \\ &= \int_{-\tau/2}^{\tau/2} [\sin \omega_0 t]^2 dt = \int_{-\tau/2}^{\tau/2} \left( \frac{1 - \cos 2\omega_0 t}{2} \right) dt \\ &= \frac{1}{2} \int_{-\tau/2}^{\tau/2} dt - \frac{1}{2} \int_{-\tau/2}^{\tau/2} \cos 2\omega_0 t dt = \frac{\tau}{2} - 0 \\ &= \frac{\tau}{2} \text{ joules} \end{aligned}$$

Here energy is finite and non-zero. Hence it is energy signal with  $E = \tau/2$  joules.

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Now, } \text{Normalized power } P &= \lim_{T \rightarrow \infty} \frac{1}{2T} \int_{-T}^{T} |x(t)|^2 dt \\ &= \lim_{T \rightarrow \infty} \frac{1}{2T} \int_{-\tau/2}^{\tau/2} \sin^2 \omega_0 t dt \\ &= \lim_{T \rightarrow \infty} \frac{1}{2T} \int_{-\tau/2}^{\tau/2} \left( \frac{1 - \cos 2\omega_0 t}{2} \right) dt \\ &= \lim_{T \rightarrow \infty} \frac{1}{2T} \left[ \frac{\tau}{2} \right] - 0 \\ &= 0 \end{aligned}$$

(d) Given  $x(t) = Ae^{-at}u(t)$ ,  $a > 0$  (Figure 1.67).



**Figure 1.67** Signal for Example 1.20(d).

$u(t) = 1$  exists only for  $0 < t < \infty$ . The given signal is non-periodic and of finite duration. So it can be an energy signal.

$$x(t) = Ae^{-at} u(t) = \begin{cases} Ae^{-at}, & t \geq 0 \\ 0, & t < 0 \end{cases}$$

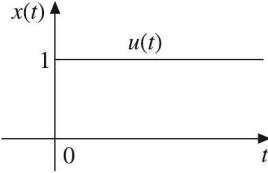
$$\therefore |x(t)|^2 = A^2 e^{-2at} \quad \text{for } t \geq 0$$

$$\begin{aligned} E &= \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} |x(t)|^2 dt \\ &= \int_0^{\infty} |A e^{-at}|^2 dt = A^2 \int_0^{\infty} e^{-2at} dt \\ &= A^2 \left[ \frac{e^{-2at}}{-2a} \right]_0^{\infty} \\ &= \frac{A^2}{2a} \end{aligned}$$

The energy is finite and non-zero. Hence the given signal is energy signal with  $E = A^2/2a$ .

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Now,} \quad \text{Normalized power } P &= \lim_{T \rightarrow \infty} \frac{1}{2T} \int_{-T}^T |x(t)|^2 dt \\ &= \lim_{T \rightarrow \infty} \frac{1}{2T} \int_0^T (Ae^{-at})^2 dt \\ &= \lim_{T \rightarrow \infty} \frac{A^2}{2T} [e^{-2at}]_0^T \\ &= 0 \end{aligned}$$

(e) Given  $x(t) = u(t)$  (Figure 1.68)



**Figure 1.68** Signal for Example 1.20(e).

It is a non-periodic signal extending from  $t = 0$  to  $t = \infty$  with amplitude remaining constant.

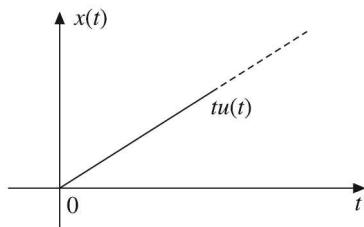
Hence it is a power signal with finite power and infinite energy

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Then} \quad \text{Normalized average power } P &= \text{Lt}_{T \rightarrow \infty} \frac{1}{2T} \int_{-T}^T |x(t)|^2 dt \\ &= \text{Lt}_{T \rightarrow \infty} \frac{1}{2T} \int_0^T (1)^2 dt = \frac{1}{2} \\ E &= \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} |x(t)|^2 dt \\ &= \text{Lt}_{T \rightarrow \infty} \int_0^T (1)^2 dt = \text{Lt}_{T \rightarrow \infty} [T] = \infty \end{aligned}$$

Here  $P = 1/2$  and  $E = \infty$ . Hence it is a power signal.

(f) Given  $x(t) = tu(t)$

It is a non-periodic signal with magnitude increasing linearly from  $t = 0$  to  $t = \infty$  as shown in Figure 1.69.



**Figure 1.69** Plot of  $x(t) = tu(t)$ .

$$x(t) = tu(t) = \begin{cases} t, & t \geq 0 \\ 0, & t < 0 \end{cases}$$

$$\therefore |x(t)|^2 = t^2 \quad \text{for } t \geq 0$$

$$\begin{aligned}\text{Energy of the signal } E &= \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} |x(t)|^2 dt \\ &= \text{Lt}_{T \rightarrow \infty} \int_0^T (t)^2 dt = \text{Lt}_{T \rightarrow \infty} \left[ \frac{t^3}{3} \right]_0^T = \text{Lt}_{T \rightarrow \infty} \frac{T^3}{3} = \infty\end{aligned}$$

$$\therefore E = \infty$$

Average power of the signal

$$\begin{aligned}P &= \text{Lt}_{T \rightarrow \infty} \frac{1}{2T} \int_{-T}^T |x(t)|^2 dt \\ &= \text{Lt}_{T \rightarrow \infty} \frac{1}{2T} \int_0^T t^2 dt \\ &= \text{Lt}_{T \rightarrow \infty} \frac{1}{2T} \left[ \frac{t^3}{3} \right]_0^T = \infty\end{aligned}$$

$$\therefore P = \infty$$

In this case,  $E = \infty$  and  $P = \infty$ . Hence the given signal is neither energy signal nor power signal.

- (g) Given  $x(t) = e^{j[3t+(\pi/2)]}$

The given signal is an infinite duration periodic signal which is a combination of sine and cosine signals. So it can be a power signal.

$$\begin{aligned}\text{Then Energy of the signal } E &= \text{Lt}_{T \rightarrow \infty} \int_{-T}^T |x(t)|^2 dt \\ &= \text{Lt}_{T \rightarrow \infty} \int_{-T}^T \left| e^{j[3t+(\pi/2)]} \right|^2 dt \\ &= \text{Lt}_{T \rightarrow \infty} \int_{-T}^T (1)^2 dt \\ &= \text{Lt}_{T \rightarrow \infty} [2T] = \infty\end{aligned}$$

The average power of the signal is:

$$\begin{aligned}P &= \text{Lt}_{T \rightarrow \infty} \frac{1}{2T} \int_{-T}^T \left| e^{j[3t+(\pi/2)]} \right|^2 dt \\ &= \text{Lt}_{T \rightarrow \infty} \frac{1}{2T} [2T] = 1\end{aligned}$$

The average power of the signal is finite and the total energy of the signal is infinite. Therefore, the given signal is a power signal.

**EXAMPLE 1.21** Sketch the following signals and say whether they are energy signals or power signals:

- |                                       |                          |
|---------------------------------------|--------------------------|
| (a) $e^{-5t} u(t)$                    | (b) $u(t) - u(t - 4)$    |
| (c) $\sin \omega t u(t - 1) u(9 - t)$ | (d) $u(t) + u(t - 2)$    |
| (e) $r(t) - r(t - 3)$                 | (f) $(2 + e^{-6t}) u(t)$ |
| (g) $t^2 u(t)$                        | (h) $(2 + e^{4t}) u(t)$  |

**Solution:** The given signals are plotted as shown in Figure 1.70.

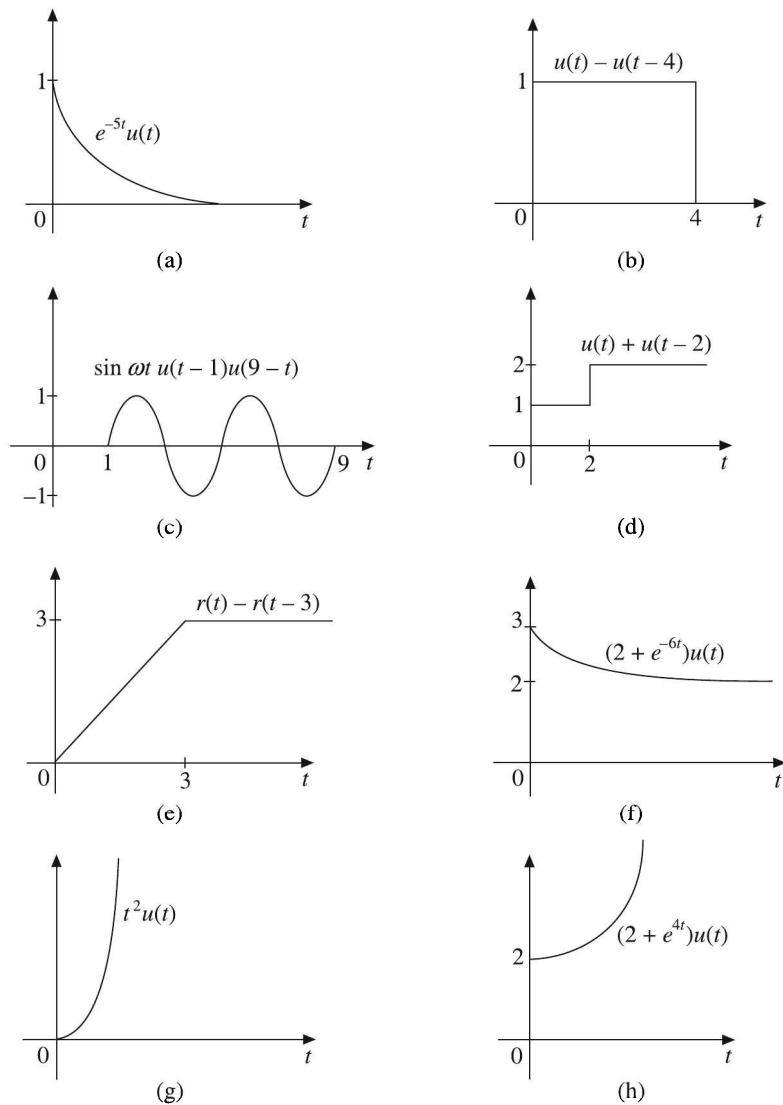


Figure 1.70 Signals for Example 1.21.

From Figure 1.70 we can conclude the following about the given signals:

- (a) It is an aperiodic signal with magnitude dropping from 1 to 0 exponentially. So its energy  $E = \text{Finite}$  and average power  $P = 0$ . Hence it is an energy signal.

$$E = \int_0^{\infty} |e^{-5t}|^2 dt = \frac{1}{10} \text{ joules}$$

- (b) It is an aperiodic signal with constant magnitude of unity from  $t = 0$  to  $t = 4$ . So its energy  $E$  is finite and average power  $P = 0$ . Hence it is an energy signal.

$$E = \int_0^4 (1)^2 dt = 4 \text{ joules}$$

- (c) It is periodic only between  $t = 1$  to  $t = 9$ . So it is an aperiodic signal. So its energy  $E$  is finite and average power  $P = 0$ . Hence it is an energy signal.

$$E = \int_1^9 (\sin \omega t)^2 dt = 8 \text{ joules}$$

- (d) It is a non-periodic infinite duration signal with constant amplitude of 1 from  $t = 0$  to  $t = 2$  and 2 between  $t = 2$  to  $t = \infty$ . So its energy  $E = \infty$  and average power is finite. So it is a power signal.

$$P = \lim_{T \rightarrow \infty} \frac{1}{2T} \left[ \int_0^2 (1)^2 dt + \int_2^T (2)^2 dt \right] = 2 \text{ watts}$$

- (e) It is a non-periodic infinite duration signal with linearly rising amplitude from  $t = 0$  to  $t = 3$  and with constant amplitude of 3 between  $t = 3$  to  $t = \infty$ . So its energy  $E = \infty$  and average power is finite. So it is a power signal.

$$P = \lim_{T \rightarrow \infty} \frac{1}{2T} \left[ \int_0^3 (t)^2 dt + \int_3^T (3)^2 dt \right] = 4.5 \text{ watts}$$

- (f) It is a non-periodic infinite duration signal with amplitude falling from 3 to 2 and then remaining constant. So its energy  $E = \infty$  and average power is finite. So it is a power signal.

$$P = \lim_{T \rightarrow \infty} \frac{1}{2T} \left[ \int_0^T (2 + e^{-6t})^2 dt \right] = 2 \text{ watts}$$

- (g) It is a non-periodic infinite duration signal with exponentially increasing amplitude between 0 to  $\infty$ . So its energy  $E = \infty$  and average power  $P = \infty$ . Hence, it is neither power signal nor energy signal.

$$P = \lim_{T \rightarrow \infty} \frac{1}{2T} \left[ \int_0^T (t^2)^2 dt \right] = \infty$$

- (h) It is a non-periodic infinite duration signal with exponentially increasing amplitude between 0 to  $\infty$ . So its energy  $E = \infty$  and average power  $P = \infty$ . Hence, it is neither power signal nor energy signal.

**EXAMPLE 1.22** Find which of the following signals are energy signals, power signals, neither energy nor power signals:

- |                                       |                               |
|---------------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| (a) $\left(\frac{1}{2}\right)^n u(n)$ | (b) $e^{j[(\pi/3)n+(\pi/2)]}$ |
| (c) $\sin\left(\frac{\pi}{3}n\right)$ | (d) $u(n) - u(n-6)$           |
| (e) $nu(n)$                           | (f) $r(n) - r(n-4)$           |

**Solution:**

(a) Given  $x(n) = \left(\frac{1}{2}\right)^n u(n)$

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Energy of the signal } E &= \text{Lt}_{N \rightarrow \infty} \sum_{n=-N}^N |x(n)|^2 \\ &= \text{Lt}_{N \rightarrow \infty} \sum_{n=-N}^N \left[ \left( \frac{1}{2} \right)^n \right]^2 u(n) \\ &= \text{Lt}_{N \rightarrow \infty} \sum_{n=0}^N \left( \frac{1}{4} \right)^n \\ &= \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \left( \frac{1}{4} \right)^n = \frac{1}{1-(1/4)} = \frac{4}{3} \text{ joules} \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Power of the signal } P &= \text{Lt}_{N \rightarrow \infty} \frac{1}{2N+1} \sum_{n=-N}^N |x(n)|^2 \\ &= \text{Lt}_{N \rightarrow \infty} \frac{1}{2N+1} \sum_{n=0}^N \left( \frac{1}{4} \right)^n \\ &= \text{Lt}_{N \rightarrow \infty} \frac{1}{2N+1} \left[ \frac{1 - (1/4)^{N+1}}{1 - (1/4)} \right] \\ &= 0 \end{aligned}$$

The energy is finite and power is zero. Therefore,  $x(n)$  is an energy signal.

(b) Given

$$x(n) = e^{j[(\pi/3)n + (\pi/2)]}$$

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Energy of the signal } E &= \text{Lt}_{N \rightarrow \infty} \sum_{n=-N}^N |e^{j[(\pi/3)n + (\pi/2)]}|^2 \\ &= \text{Lt}_{N \rightarrow \infty} \sum_{n=-N}^N 1 \\ &= \text{Lt}_{N \rightarrow \infty} [2N+1] = \infty \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Power of the signal } P &= \text{Lt}_{N \rightarrow \infty} \frac{1}{2N+1} \sum_{n=-N}^N |e^{j[(\pi/3)n + (\pi/2)]}|^2 \\ &= \text{Lt}_{N \rightarrow \infty} \frac{1}{2N+1} \sum_{n=-N}^N 1 \\ &= \text{Lt}_{N \rightarrow \infty} \frac{1}{2N+1} [2N+1] = 1 \text{ watt} \end{aligned}$$

The energy is infinite and the power is finite. Therefore, it is a power signal.

(c) Given

$$x(n) = \sin\left(\frac{\pi}{3}n\right)$$

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Energy of the signal } E &= \text{Lt}_{N \rightarrow \infty} \sum_{n=-N}^N \sin^2\left(\frac{\pi}{3}n\right) \\ &= \text{Lt}_{N \rightarrow \infty} \sum_{n=-N}^N \frac{1 - \cos[(2\pi/3)n]}{2} \\ &= \frac{1}{2} \text{Lt}_{N \rightarrow \infty} \sum_{n=-N}^N \left(1 - \cos\frac{2\pi}{3}n\right) \\ &= \infty \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Power of the signal } P &= \text{Lt}_{N \rightarrow \infty} \frac{1}{2N+1} \sum_{n=-N}^N \sin^2\left(\frac{\pi}{3}n\right) \\ &= \text{Lt}_{N \rightarrow \infty} \frac{1}{2N+1} \sum_{n=-N}^N \frac{1 - \cos[(2\pi/3)n]}{2} \\ &= \frac{1}{2} \text{Lt}_{N \rightarrow \infty} \frac{1}{2N+1} [2N+1] = \frac{1}{2} \text{ watt} \end{aligned}$$

The energy is infinite and power is finite. Therefore, it is a power signal.

(d) Given

$$x(n) = u(n) - u(n - 6)$$

$$\text{Energy of the signal } E = \text{Lt}_{N \rightarrow \infty} \sum_{n=-N}^N [u(n) - u(n - 6)]^2$$

$$= \text{Lt}_{N \rightarrow \infty} \sum_{n=0}^5 1 = 6 \text{ joules}$$

$$\text{Power of the signal } P = \text{Lt}_{N \rightarrow \infty} \frac{1}{2N+1} \sum_{n=-N}^N [u(n) - u(n - 6)]^2$$

$$= \text{Lt}_{N \rightarrow \infty} \frac{1}{2N+1} \sum_{n=0}^5 1 = 0$$

Energy is finite and power is zero. Thus, it is an energy signal.

(e) Given

$$x(n) = nu(n)$$

$$\text{Energy of the signal } E = \text{Lt}_{N \rightarrow \infty} \sum_{n=-N}^N [n]^2 u(n)$$

$$= \text{Lt}_{N \rightarrow \infty} \sum_{n=0}^N [n^2]$$

$$= \infty$$

$$\text{Power of the signal } P = \text{Lt}_{N \rightarrow \infty} \frac{1}{2N+1} \sum_{n=-N}^N [n]^2 u(n)$$

$$= \text{Lt}_{N \rightarrow \infty} \frac{1}{2N+1} \sum_{n=0}^N n^2$$

$$= \infty$$

Energy is infinite and power is also infinite. Therefore, it is neither energy signal nor power signal.

(f) Given

$$x(n) = r(n) - r(n - 4)$$

$$\text{Energy of the signal } E = \text{Lt}_{N \rightarrow \infty} \sum_{n=-N}^N [r(n) - r(n - 4)]^2$$

$$= \text{Lt}_{N \rightarrow \infty} \left[ \sum_{n=0}^4 n^2 + \sum_{n=5}^N (4)^2 \right]$$

$$= \infty$$

$$\begin{aligned}
 \text{Power of the signal } P &= \lim_{N \rightarrow \infty} \frac{1}{2N+1} \sum_{n=-N}^N [r(n) - r(n-4)]^2 \\
 &= \lim_{N \rightarrow \infty} \frac{1}{2N+1} \left[ \sum_{n=0}^4 n^2 + \sum_{n=5}^N (4)^2 \right] \\
 &= 8 \text{ watts}
 \end{aligned}$$

Energy is infinite and power is finite. Thus, it is a power signal.

**EXAMPLE 1.23** Find whether the signal

$$x(t) = \begin{cases} t-2 & -2 \leq t \leq 0 \\ 2-t & 0 \leq t \leq 2 \\ 0 & \text{otherwise} \end{cases}$$

is energy signal or power signal. Also find the energy and power of the signal.

**Solution:** The given signal is a non-periodic finite duration signal. So it has finite energy and zero average power. So it is an energy signal.

$$\begin{aligned}
 \text{Energy of the signal } E &= \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} |x(t)|^2 dt \\
 &= \left[ \int_{-2}^0 (t-2)^2 dt + \int_0^2 (2-t)^2 dt \right] \\
 &= \int_{-2}^0 (t^2 - 4t + 4) dt + \int_0^2 (4 + t^2 - 4t) dt \\
 &= \left[ \frac{t^3}{3} - \frac{4t^2}{2} + 4t \right]_{-2}^0 + \left[ 4t + \frac{t^3}{3} - \frac{4t^2}{2} \right]_0^2 \\
 &= \frac{64}{3} \text{ joules}
 \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
 \text{Power of the signal } P &= \lim_{T \rightarrow \infty} \frac{1}{2T} \int_{-T}^T |x(t)|^2 dt \\
 &= \lim_{T \rightarrow \infty} \frac{1}{2T} \left[ \int_{-2}^0 (t-2)^2 dt + \int_0^2 (2-t)^2 dt \right] \\
 &= \lim_{T \rightarrow \infty} \frac{1}{2T} \left[ \frac{64}{3} \right] = 0
 \end{aligned}$$

Since energy is finite and power is zero, it is an energy signal.

**EXAMPLE 1.24** Find whether the signal

$$x(n) = \begin{cases} n^2 & 0 \leq n \leq 3 \\ 10 - n & 4 \leq n \leq 6 \\ n & 7 \leq n \leq 9 \\ 0 & \text{otherwise} \end{cases}$$

is a power signal or energy signal. Also find the energy and power of the signal.

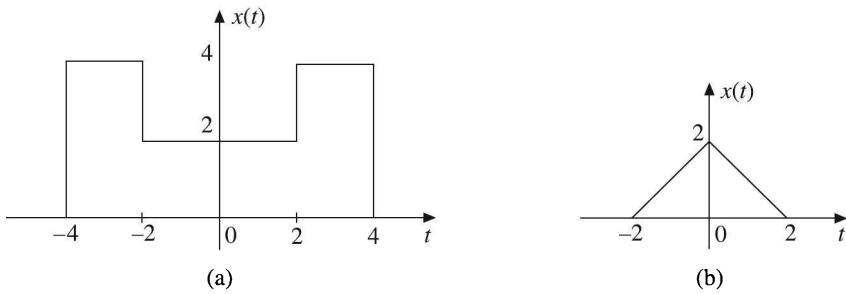
**Solution:** The given signal is a non-periodic finite duration signal. So it has finite energy and zero average power. So it is an energy signal.

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Energy of the signal } E &= \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} |x(n)|^2 \\ &= \sum_{n=0}^3 (n^2)^2 + \sum_{n=4}^6 (10-n)^2 + \sum_{n=7}^9 (n)^2 \\ &= \sum_{n=0}^3 n^4 + \sum_{n=4}^6 (100+n^2-20n) + \sum_{n=7}^9 n^2 \\ &= (0+1+16+81)+(36+25+16)+(49+64+81) \\ &= 369 < \infty \text{ joules} \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Power of the signal } P &= \lim_{N \rightarrow \infty} \frac{1}{2N+1} \sum_{n=-N}^N |x(n)|^2 \\ &= \lim_{N \rightarrow \infty} \frac{1}{2N+1} \left[ \sum_{n=0}^3 (n^2)^2 + \sum_{n=4}^6 (10-n)^2 + \sum_{n=7}^9 (n)^2 \right] \\ &= \lim_{N \rightarrow \infty} \frac{1}{2N+1} [369] = 0 \end{aligned}$$

Here energy is finite and power is zero. So it is an energy signal.

**EXAMPLE 1.25** Find the energy of the signals shown in Figure 1.71.



**Figure 1.71** Signals for Example 1.25.

**Solution:**

- (a) The signal shown in Figure 1.71(a) can be expressed as:

$$x(t) = \begin{cases} 4 & -4 \leq t \leq -2 \\ 2 & -2 \leq t \leq 2 \\ 4 & 2 \leq t \leq 4 \\ 0 & \text{otherwise} \end{cases}$$

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Energy of the signal} \quad E &= \int_{-4}^{-2} [4]^2 dt + \int_{-2}^2 [2]^2 dt + \int_2^4 [4]^2 dt \\ &= 16[t]_{-4}^{-2} + 4[t]_2^2 + 16[t]_2^4 \\ &= 16(-2 + 4) + 4(2 + 2) + 16(4 - 2) \\ &= 80 \text{ joules} \end{aligned}$$

- (b) The signal shown in Figure 1.71(b) can be expressed as:

$$x(t) = \begin{cases} t + 2 & -2 \leq t \leq 0 \\ 2 - t & 0 \leq t \leq 2 \\ 0 & \text{otherwise} \end{cases}$$

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Energy of the signal} \quad E &= \int_{-2}^0 [t + 2]^2 dt + \int_0^2 [2 - t]^2 dt \\ &= \int_{-2}^0 [t^2 + 4t + 4] dt + \int_0^2 [4 + t^2 - 4t] dt \\ &= \frac{16}{3} \text{ joules} \end{aligned}$$

#### 1.5.4 Causal and Non-causal Signals

A continuous-time signal  $x(t)$  is said to be causal if  $x(t) = 0$  for  $t < 0$ , otherwise the signal is non-causal. A continuous-time signal  $x(t)$  is said to be anti-causal if  $x(t) = 0$  for  $t > 0$ .

A causal signal does not exist for negative time and an anti-causal signal does not exist for positive time. A signal which exists in positive as well as negative time is neither causal nor anti-causal. It is non-causal.  $u(t)$  is a causal signal and  $u(-t)$  is anti-causal signal.

Similarly, a discrete-time signal  $x(n)$  is said to be causal if  $x(n) = 0$  for  $n < 0$ , otherwise the signal is non-causal. A discrete-time signal  $x(n)$  is said to be anti-causal if  $x(n) = 0$  for  $n > 0$ .

**EXAMPLE 1.26** Find which of the following signals are causal or non-causal.

- |                                       |  |
|---------------------------------------|--|
| (a) $x(t) = e^{2t} u(t - 1)$          | (b) $x(t) = e^{-3t} u(-t + 2)$   |
| (c) $x(t) = 3 \operatorname{sinc} 2t$ | (d) $x(t) = u(t + 2) - u(t - 2)$   |
| (e) $x(t) = \cos 2t$                  | (f) $x(t) = \sin 2t u(t)$  |
| (g) $x(n) = u(n + 4) - u(n - 2)$      | (h) $x(n) = \left(\frac{1}{4}\right)^n u(n + 2) - \left(\frac{1}{2}\right)^n u(n - 4)$ |
| (i) $x(t) = 2u(-t)$                   | (j) $x(n) = u(-n)$   |

**Solution:**

- (a) Given  $x(t) = e^{2t} u(t - 1)$   
The signal  $x(t)$  is causal because  $x(t) = 0$  for  $t < 0$ .
- (b) Given  $x(t) = e^{-3t} u(-t + 2)$   
The given signal  $x(t)$  is non-causal because  $x(t) \neq 0$  for  $t < 0$ .
- (c) Given  $x(t) = 3 \operatorname{sinc} 2t$   
A sinc signal exists for  $t < 0$  also. So the given signal is non-causal.
- (d) Given  $x(t) = u(t + 2) - u(t - 2)$   
The given signal exists from  $t = -2$  to  $t = +2$ . Since  $x(t) \neq 0$  for  $t < 0$  it is non-causal.
- (e) Given  $x(t) = \cos 2t$   
The given signal exists from  $-\infty$  to  $\infty$ . Since  $x(t) \neq 0$  for  $t < 0$ , the signal is non-causal.
- (f) Given  $x(t) = \sin 2t u(t)$   
The given signal is causal because  $x(t) = 0$  for  $t < 0$ .
- (g) Given  $x(n) = u(n + 4) - u(n - 2)$   
The given signal exists from  $n = -4$  to  $n = 1$ . Since  $x(n) \neq 0$  for  $n < 0$ , it is non-causal.
- (h) Given  $x(n) = \left(\frac{1}{4}\right)^n u(n + 2) - \left(\frac{1}{2}\right)^n u(n - 4)$   
The given signal exists for  $n < 0$  also. So it is non-causal.
- (i) Given  $x(t) = 2u(-t)$   
The given signal exists only for  $t < 0$ . So it is anti-causal. It can be called non-causal also.
- (j) Given  $x(n) = u(-n)$   
The given signal exists only for  $n < 0$ . So it is anti-causal. It can be called non-causal also.

### 1.5.5 Even and Odd Signals

#### *Even (symmetric) signal*

A continuous-time signal  $x(t)$  is said to be an even (symmetric) signal if it satisfies the condition

$$x(t) = x(-t) \text{ for all } t$$

A discrete-time signal  $x(n)$  is said to be an even (symmetric) signal if it satisfies the condition

$$x(n) = x(-n) \text{ for all } n$$

Even signals are symmetrical about the vertical axis or time origin. Hence they are also called symmetric signals: cosine wave is an example of an even signal. Some even signals are shown in Figure 1.72(a).

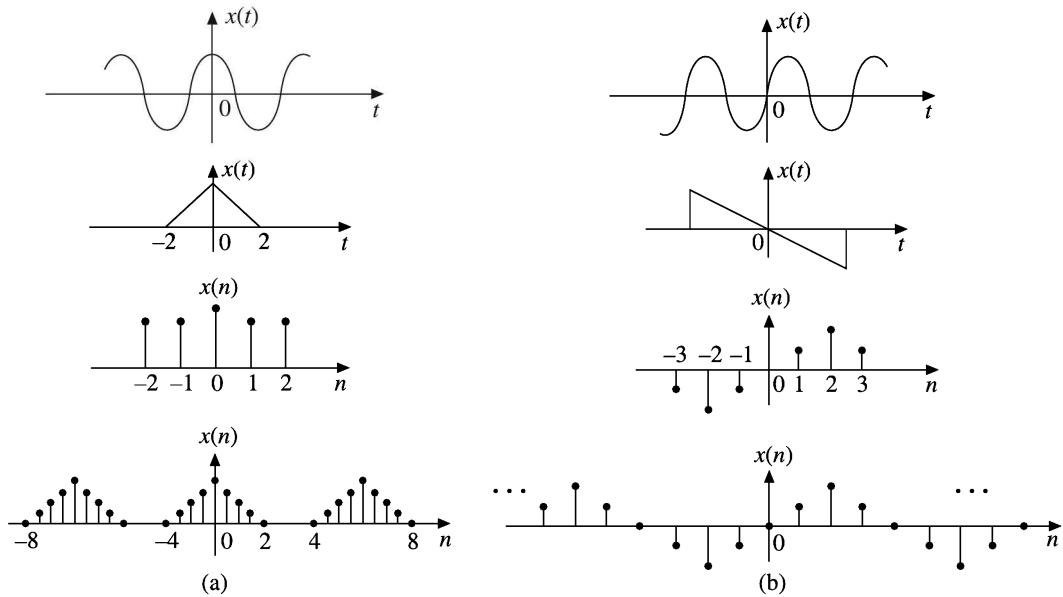


Figure 1.72 (a) Even signals, (b) Odd signals.

#### *Odd (antisymmetric) signal*

A continuous-time signal  $x(t)$  is said to be an odd (antisymmetric) signal if it satisfies the condition

$$x(-t) = -x(t) \text{ for all } t$$

A discrete-time signal  $x(n)$  is said to be an odd (antisymmetric) signal if it satisfies the condition

$$x(-n) = -x(n) \text{ for all } n$$

Odd signals are antisymmetrical about the vertical axis. Hence they are called antisymmetric signals. Sine wave is an example of an odd signal. For an odd signal  $x(t) = 0$ ,  $x(n) = 0$ . Some odd signals are shown in Figure 1.72(b).

Any signal  $x(t)$  can be expressed as sum of even and odd components. That is

$$x(t) = x_e(t) + x_o(t)$$

where  $x_e(t)$  is even components and  $x_o(t)$  is odd components of the signal.

### Evaluation of even and odd parts of a signal

We have

$$x(t) = x_e(t) + x_o(t)$$

∴

$$x(-t) = x_e(-t) + x_o(-t) = x_e(t) - x_o(t)$$

$$x(t) + x(-t) = x_e(t) + x_o(t) + x_e(t) - x_o(t) = 2x_e(t)$$

∴

$$x_e(t) = \frac{1}{2}[x(t) + x(-t)]$$

$$x(t) - x(-t) = [x_e(t) + x_o(t)] - [x_e(t) - x_o(t)] = 2x_o(t)$$

∴

$$x_o(t) = \frac{1}{2}[x(t) - x(-t)]$$

Similarly, the even and odd parts of a discrete-time signal,  $x_e(n)$  and  $x_o(n)$  are given by

$$x_e(n) = \frac{1}{2}[x(n) + x(-n)]$$

and

$$x_o(n) = \frac{1}{2}[x(n) - x(-n)]$$

The product of two even or odd signals is an even signal and the product of even signal and odd signal is an odd signal.

We can prove this as follows:

Let

$$x(t) = x_1(t) x_2(t)$$

(i) If  $x_1(t)$  and  $x_2(t)$  are both even, i.e.

$$x_1(-t) = x_1(t)$$

and

$$x_2(-t) = x_2(t)$$

Then

$$x(-t) = x_1(-t) x_2(-t) = x_1(t) x_2(t) = x(t)$$

Therefore,  $x(t)$  is an even signal.

If  $x_1(t)$  and  $x_2(t)$  are both odd, i.e.

$$x_1(-t) = -x_1(t)$$

and

$$x_2(-t) = -x_2(t)$$

$$\text{Then } x(-t) = x_1(-t) x_2(-t) = [-x_1(t)][-x_2(t)] = x_1(t) x_2(t) = x(t)$$

Therefore,  $x(t)$  is an even signal.

(ii) If  $x_1(t)$  is even and  $x_2(t)$  is odd, i.e.

$$x_1(-t) = x_1(t)$$

and

$$x_2(-t) = -x_2(t)$$

Then

$$x(-t) = x_1(-t)x_2(-t) = -x_1(t)x_2(t) = -x(t)$$

Therefore  $x(t)$  is an odd signal.

Thus, the product of two even signals or of two odd signals is an even signal and the product of even and odd signals is an odd signal.

*Every signal need not be either purely even signal or purely odd signal, but every signal can be decomposed into sum of even and odd parts.*

**EXAMPLE 1.27** Find the even and odd components of the following signals:

$$(a) \quad x(t) = e^{j2t}$$

$$(b) \quad x(t) = \cos\left(\omega_0 t + \frac{\pi}{3}\right)$$

$$(c) \quad x(t) = (1 + t^2 + t^3) \cos^2 10t$$

$$(d) \quad x(t) = \sin 2t + \sin 2t \cos 2t + \cos 2t$$

$$(e) \quad x(t) = 1 + 2t + 3t^2 + 4t^3$$

**Solution:**

(a) Given

$$x(t) = e^{j2t}$$

∴

$$x(-t) = e^{-j2t}$$

$$x_e(t) = \frac{1}{2}[x(t) + x(-t)] = \frac{1}{2}[e^{j2t} + e^{-j2t}] = \cos 2t$$

$$x_o(t) = \frac{1}{2}[x(t) - x(-t)] = \frac{1}{2}[e^{j2t} - e^{-j2t}] = j \sin 2t$$

(b) Given

$$x(t) = \cos\left(\omega_0 t + \frac{\pi}{3}\right)$$

∴

$$x(-t) = \cos\left(-\omega_0 t + \frac{\pi}{3}\right) = \cos\left(\omega_0 t - \frac{\pi}{3}\right)$$

$$x_e(t) = \frac{1}{2}[x(t) + x(-t)] = \frac{1}{2}\left[\cos\left(\omega_0 t + \frac{\pi}{3}\right) + \cos\left(\omega_0 t - \frac{\pi}{3}\right)\right]$$

$$= \cos \omega_0 t \cos \frac{\pi}{3} = \frac{1}{2} \cos \omega_0 t$$

$$x_o(t) = \frac{1}{2}[x(t) - x(-t)] = \frac{1}{2}\left[\cos\left(\omega_0 t + \frac{\pi}{3}\right) - \cos\left(\omega_0 t - \frac{\pi}{3}\right)\right]$$

$$= -\sin \omega_0 t \sin \frac{\pi}{3} = -\frac{\sqrt{3}}{2} \sin \omega_0 t$$

(c) Given  $x(t) = (1 + t^2 + t^3) \cos^2 10t$

$$\therefore x(-t) = (1 + t^2 - t^3) \cos^2 10t$$

$$x_e(t) = \frac{1}{2}[x(t) + x(-t)] = \frac{1}{2}[(1 + t^2 + t^3) \cos^2 10t + (1 + t^2 - t^3) \cos^2 10t]$$

$$= \frac{1}{2}[2(1 + t^2) \cos^2 10t] = (1 + t^2) \cos^2 10t$$

$$x_o(t) = \frac{1}{2}[x(t) - x(-t)] = \frac{1}{2}[(1 + t^2 + t^3) \cos^2 10t - (1 + t^2 - t^3) \cos^2 10t]$$

$$= \frac{1}{2}[2t^3 \cos^2 10t] = t^3 \cos^2 10t$$

(d) Given  $x(t) = \sin 2t + \sin 2t \cos 2t + \cos 2t$

$$\therefore x(-t) = \sin(-2t) + \sin(-2t) \cos(-2t) + \cos(-2t)$$

$$= -\sin 2t - \sin 2t \cos 2t + \cos 2t$$

$$x_e(t) = \frac{1}{2}[x(t) + x(-t)] = \frac{1}{2}[(\sin 2t + \sin 2t \cos 2t + \cos 2t) + (-\sin 2t - \sin 2t \cos 2t + \cos 2t)]$$

$$= \frac{1}{2}[2 \cos 2t] = \cos 2t$$

$$x_o(t) = \frac{1}{2}[x(t) - x(-t)] = \frac{1}{2}[(\sin 2t + \sin 2t \cos 2t + \cos 2t) - (-\sin 2t - \sin 2t \cos 2t + \cos 2t)]$$

$$= \frac{1}{2} 2[\sin 2t + \sin 2t \cos 2t] = \sin 2t + \sin 2t \cos 2t$$

(e) Given  $x(t) = 1 + 2t + 3t^2 + 4t^3$

$$\therefore x(-t) = 1 - 2t + 3t^2 - 4t^3$$

$$x_e(t) = \frac{1}{2}[x(t) + x(-t)] = \frac{1}{2}[(1 + 2t + 3t^2 + 4t^3) + (1 - 2t + 3t^2 - 4t^3)]$$

$$= \frac{1}{2}[2(1 + 3t^2)] = 1 + 3t^2$$

$$x_o(t) = \frac{1}{2}[x(t) - x(-t)] = \frac{1}{2}[(1 + 2t + 3t^2 + 4t^3) - (1 - 2t + 3t^2 - 4t^3)]$$

$$= \frac{1}{2} 2[2t + 4t^3] = 2t + 4t^3$$

**EXAMPLE 1.28** Find whether the following signals are even or odd.

(a)  $x(t) = e^{-3t}$

(b)  $x(t) = u(t + 2)$

(c)  $x(t) = 3e^{j4\pi t}$

(d)  $x(t) = u(t + 4) - u(t - 2)$

**Solution:**

(a) Given

$$x(t) = e^{-3t}$$

$$x(-t) = e^{3t}$$

$$-x(t) = -e^{-3t}$$

Since  $x(-t) \neq x(t)$  and  $x(-t) \neq -x(t)$ , the given signal is neither even signal nor odd signal.

(b) Given

$$x(t) = u(t + 2)$$

$$x(-t) = u(-t + 2)$$

$$-x(t) = -u(t + 2)$$

Then

$$u(t + 2) = \begin{cases} 1 & \text{for } t \geq -2 \\ 0 & \text{for } t < -2 \end{cases}$$

$$u(-t + 2) = \begin{cases} 1 & \text{for } t \leq 2 \\ 0 & \text{for } t > 2 \end{cases}$$

$$-u(t + 2) = \begin{cases} -1 & \text{for } t > -2 \\ 0 & \text{for } t < -2 \end{cases}$$

Since  $x(-t) \neq x(t)$  and  $x(-t) \neq -x(t)$ , the given signal is neither even signal nor odd signal.

(c) Given

$$x(t) = 3e^{j4\pi t}$$

$$x(-t) = 3e^{-j4\pi t}$$

$$-x(t) = -3e^{j4\pi t}$$

Since  $x(-t) \neq x(t)$  and  $x(-t) \neq -x(t)$ , the given signal is neither even signal nor odd signal.

(d) Given

$$x(t) = u(t + 4) - u(t - 2)$$

$$x(-t) = u(-t + 4) - u(-t - 2)$$

$$-x(t) = -u(t + 4) + u(t - 2)$$

Since  $x(-t) \neq x(t)$  and  $x(-t) \neq -x(t)$ , the given signal is neither even signal nor odd signal.

**EXAMPLE 1.29** Find the even and odd components of the following signals.

$$(a) \quad x(n) = \left\{ -3, 1, 2, \underset{\uparrow}{-4}, 2 \right\}$$

$$(b) \quad x(n) = \left\{ -2, 5, 1, \underset{\uparrow}{-3} \right\}$$

$$(c) \quad x(n) = \left\{ \underset{\uparrow}{5}, 4, 3, 2, 1 \right\}$$

$$(d) \quad x(n) = \left\{ 5, 4, 3, 2, \underset{\uparrow}{1} \right\}$$

**Solution:**

$$(a) \quad \text{Given} \quad x(n) = \left\{ -3, 1, 2, \underset{\uparrow}{-4}, 2 \right\}$$

$$x(-n) = \left\{ 2, \underset{\uparrow}{-4}, 2, 1, -3 \right\}$$

$$\therefore \quad x_e(n) = \frac{1}{2}[x(n) + x(-n)]$$

$$= \frac{1}{2}[-3 + 2, 1 - 4, 2 + 2, -4 + 1, 2 - 3]$$

$$= \left\{ -0.5, -1.5, 2, \underset{\uparrow}{-1.5}, -0.5 \right\}$$

$$x_o(n) = \frac{1}{2}[x(n) - x(-n)]$$

$$= \frac{1}{2}[-3 - 2, 1 + 4, 2 - 2, -4 - 1, 2 + 3]$$

$$= \left\{ -2.5, 2.5, 0, \underset{\uparrow}{-2.5}, 2.5 \right\}$$

$$(b) \quad \text{Given} \quad x(n) = \left\{ -2, 5, 1, \underset{\uparrow}{-3} \right\}$$

$$x(-n) = \left\{ -3, 1, 5, \underset{\uparrow}{-2} \right\}$$

$$\therefore \quad x_e(n) = \frac{1}{2}[x(n) + x(-n)]$$

$$= \frac{1}{2}[-2 + 0, 5 - 3, 1 + 1, -3 + 5, 0 - 2]$$

$$= -1, 1, 1, \underset{\uparrow}{1}, -1$$

$$x_o(n) = \frac{1}{2}[x(n) - x(-n)]$$

$$= \frac{1}{2}[-2 - 0, 5 + 3, 1 - 1, -3 - 5, 0 + 2]$$

$$= -1, 4, 0, \underset{\uparrow}{-4}, 1$$

(c) Given  $x(n) = \begin{cases} 5, 4, 3, 2, 1 \\ \uparrow \end{cases}$   
 $n = 0, 1, 2, 3, 4$

$$\begin{aligned}\therefore x(n) &= \begin{array}{c} 5, 4, 3, 2, 1 \\ \uparrow \end{array} \\ x(-n) &= 1, 2, 3, 4, 5 \\ &\quad \uparrow \\ x_e(n) &= \frac{1}{2} [x(n) + x(-n)] \\ &= \frac{1}{2} [1, 2, 3, 4, 5 + 5, 4, 3, 2, 1] \\ &= \left\{ 0.5, 1, 1.5, 2, \begin{array}{c} 5, 2, 1.5, 1, 0.5 \\ \uparrow \end{array} \right\} \\ x_o(n) &= \frac{1}{2} [x(n) - x(-n)] \\ &= \frac{1}{2} [-1, -2, -3, -4, 0, 4, 3, 2, 1] \\ &= \left\{ -0.5, -1, -1.5, -2, \begin{array}{c} 0, 2, 1.5, 1, 0.5 \\ \uparrow \end{array} \right\}\end{aligned}$$

(d) Given  $x(n) = \begin{cases} 5, 4, 3, 2, 1 \\ \uparrow \end{cases}$

$$n = -4, -3, -2, -1, 0$$

$$\begin{aligned}\therefore x(n) &= 5, 4, 3, 2, 1 \\ &\quad \uparrow \\ x(-n) &= \begin{array}{c} 1, 2, 3, 4, 5 \\ \uparrow \end{array}\end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}\therefore x_e(n) &= \frac{1}{2} [x(n) + x(-n)] \\ &= \frac{1}{2} [5, 4, 3, 2, 1 + 1, 2, 3, 4, 5] \\ &= [2.5, 2, 1.5, 1, 1, 1, 1.5, 2, 2.5] \\ x_o(n) &= \frac{1}{2} [x(n) - x(-n)] \\ &= \frac{1}{2} [5, 4, 3, 2, 0, -2, -3, -4, -5] \\ &= \frac{1}{2} [2.5, 2, 1.5, 1, 0, -1, -1.5, -2, -2.5]\end{aligned}$$

### When the signal is given as a waveform

The even part of the signal can be found by folding the signal about the y-axis and adding the folded signal to the original signal and dividing the sum by two. The odd part of the signal can be found by folding the signal about y-axis and subtracting the folded signal from the original signal and dividing the difference by two as illustrated in Figure 1.73.

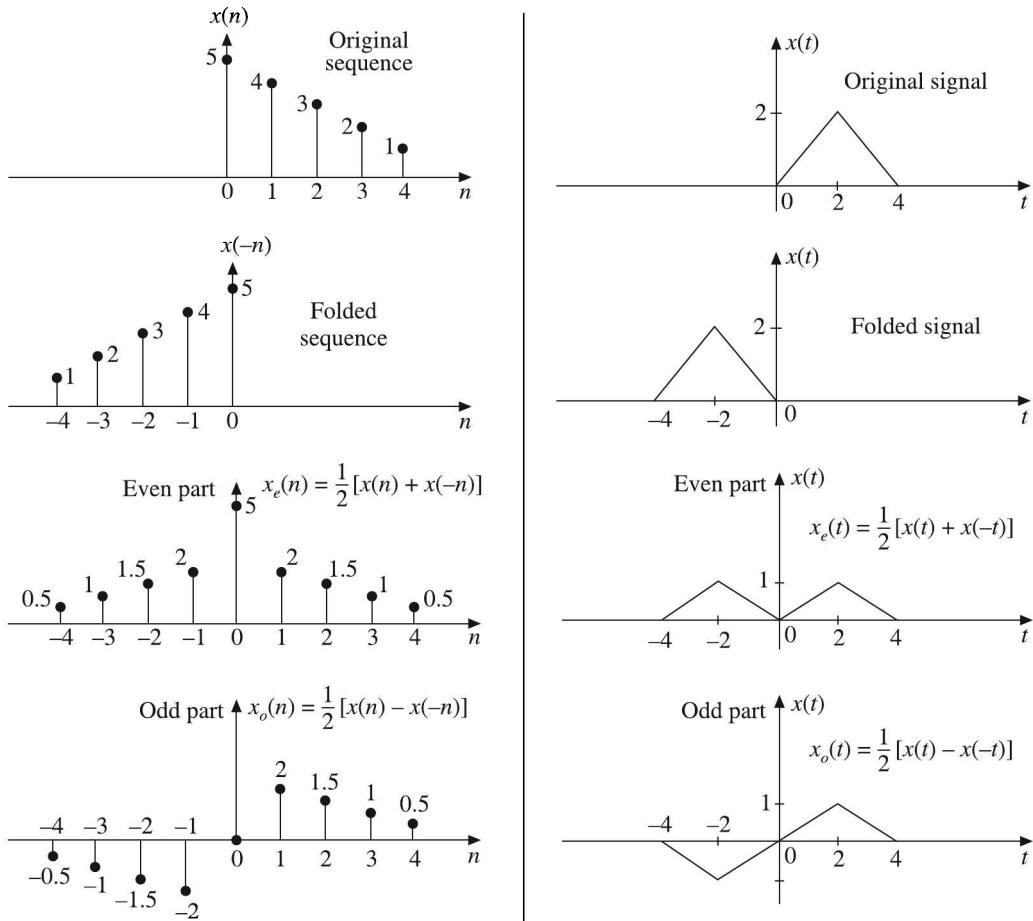


Figure 1.73 Graphical evaluation of even and odd parts.

## MATLAB PROGRAMS

### Program 1.1

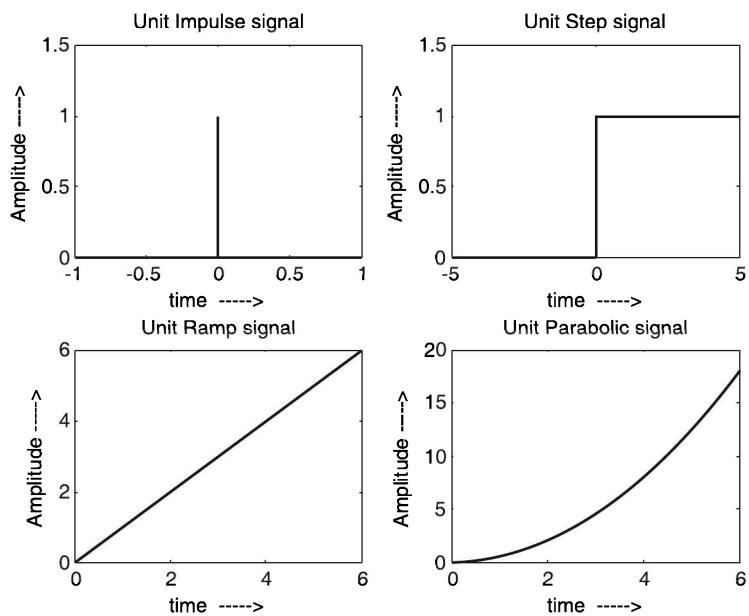
```
% Generation of elementary signals in continuous-time
clc; close all; clear all;
% Unit Impulse signal
t=-1:0.001:1;
```

```

impulse=[zeros(1,1000),ones(1,1),zeros(1,1000)];
subplot(2,2,1);plot(t,impulse);
xlabel('time ---->');ylabel('Amplitude ---->');
title('Unit Impulse signal');
axis([-1 1 0 1.5]);
% Unit Step signal
t=-5:0.01:5;
step=[zeros(1,500),ones(1,501)];
subplot(2,2,2);plot(t,step);
xlabel('time ---->');ylabel('Amplitude ---->');
title('Unit Step signal');
axis([-5 5 0 1.5]);
% Unit Ramp signal
t=0:0.01:6;
ramp=t;
subplot(2,2,3);plot(t,ramp);
xlabel('time ---->');ylabel('Amplitude ---->');
title('Unit Ramp signal');
% Unit Parabolic signal
t=0:0.01:6;
parabola=0.5*(t.^2);
subplot(2,2,4);plot(t,parabola);
xlabel('time ---->');ylabel('Amplitude ---->');
title('Unit Parabolic signal');

```

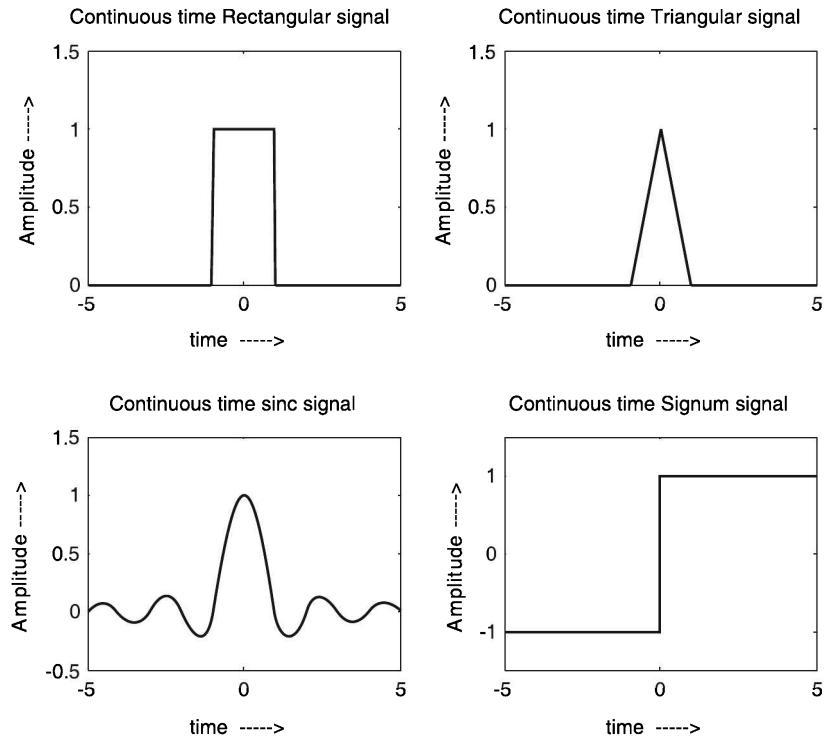
Output:



## Program 1.2

```
% Generation of elementary signals in continuous-time
clc; close all; clear all;
% Rectangular signal
t=-5:0.01:5;
width=2;
y=rectpuls(t,width);
% alternate procedure
%y=zeros(1,400),ones(1,201),zeros(1,400)];
subplot(2,2,1); plot(t,y);
xlabel('time -->'); ylabel('Amplitude -->');
title('Continuous time Rectangular signal');
axis([-5 5 0 1.5]);
% Triangular signal
t=-5:0.01:5;
width=2;
y=tripuls(t,width);
% alternate procedure
%y=trimf(t, [-1 0 1]);
subplot(2,2,2); plot(t,y);
xlabel('time -->'); ylabel('Amplitude -->');
title('Continuous time Triangular signal');
axis([-5 5 0 1.5]);
% sinc function
t=-5:0.01:5;
y=sin(pi*t)./(pi*t);
% alternate procedure
%y=sinc(t);
subplot(2,2,3); plot(t,y);
xlabel('time -->'); ylabel('Amplitude -->');
title('Continuous time sinc signal');
axis([-5 5 -0.5 1.5]);
% Signum signal
t=-10:0.01:10;
y=[-ones(1,1000),zeros(1,1),ones(1,1000)];
% alternate procedure
%y=sign(t);
%y=t./abs(t);
subplot(2,2,4); plot(t,y);
xlabel('time -->'); ylabel('Amplitude -->');
title('Continuous time Signum signal');
axis([-5 5 -1.5 1.5]);
```

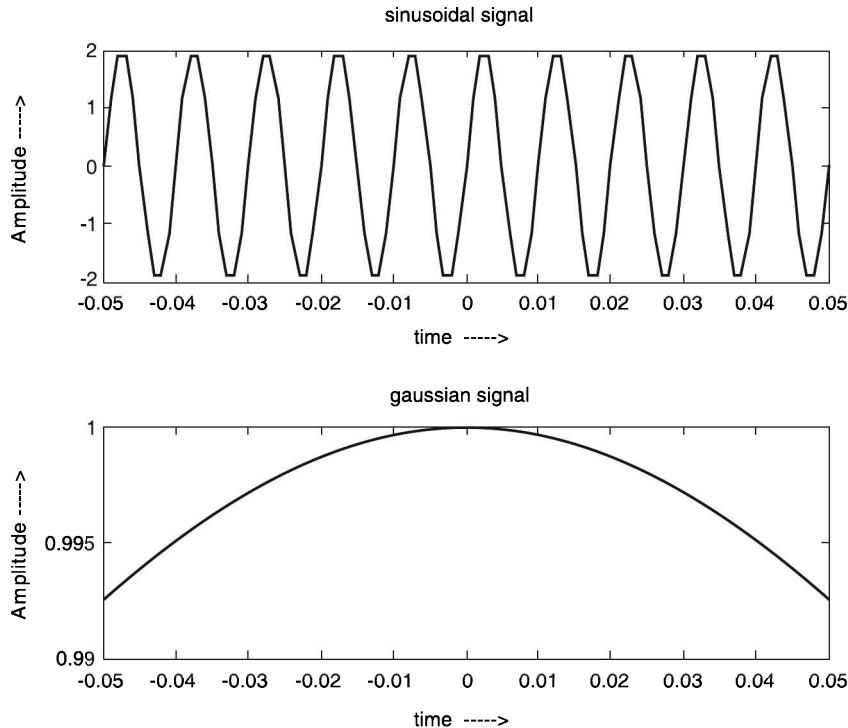
Output:



### Program 1.3

```
% Generation of continuous-time sinusoidal and gaussian signals
clc;close all;clear all;
t=-0.05:0.001:0.05;
f=100;
a=2;
yt=a*sin(2*pi*f*t);
subplot(2,1,1);plot(t,yt);
xlabel('time -->');ylabel('Amplitude -->');
title('sinusoidal signal')
a=3;
yt=exp(-a*t.^2);
subplot(2,1,2);plot(t,yt);
xlabel('time -->');ylabel('Amplitude -->');
title('gaussian signal')
```

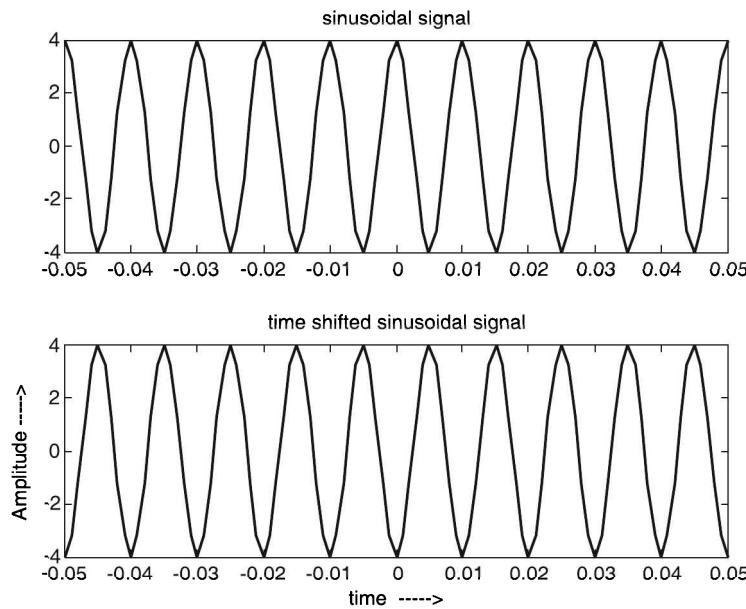
Output:



#### Program 1.4

```
% Generation of a continuous-time sinusoidal signal of frequency
100Hz in a time duration of 100 msec
% with a time shift of 5 msec.
t=-0.05:0.001:0.05;
f=100;
a=4;
y1=a*cos(2*pi*f*t);
y2=a*cos(2*pi*f*(t-0.005));
subplot(2,1,1);plot(t,y1);
title('sinusoidal signal');
subplot(2,1,2);plot(t,y2);
xlabel('time -->');ylabel('Amplitude -->');
title('time shifted sinusoidal signal');
```

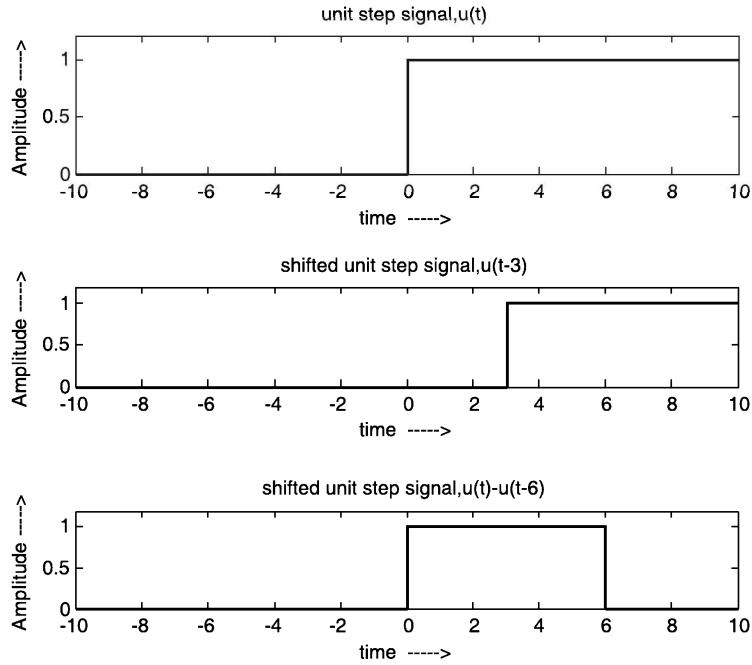
Output:



### Program 1.5

```
% Generation of unit step function using Signum function
% u(t)=0.5sgn(t)+0.5
t=-10:0.01:10;
step=0.5*sign(t)+0.5;
subplot(3,1,1);plot(t,step);
xlabel('time -->');ylabel('Amplitude -->');
title('unit step signal,u(t)');
axis([-10 10 0 1.2]);
% y(t)=u(t-3)
t=-10:0.01:10;
y=0.5*sign(t-3)+0.5;
subplot(3,1,2);plot(t,y);
xlabel('time -->');ylabel('Amplitude -->');
title('shifted unit step signal,u(t-3)');
axis([-10 10 0 1.2]);
% y(t)=u(t)-u(t-6)
t=-10:0.01:10;
y=(0.5*sign(t)+0.5)-(0.5*sign(t-6)+0.5);
subplot(3,1,3);plot(t,y);
xlabel('time -->');ylabel('Amplitude -->');
title('shifted unit step signal,u(t)-u(t-6)');
axis([-10 10 0 1.2]);
```

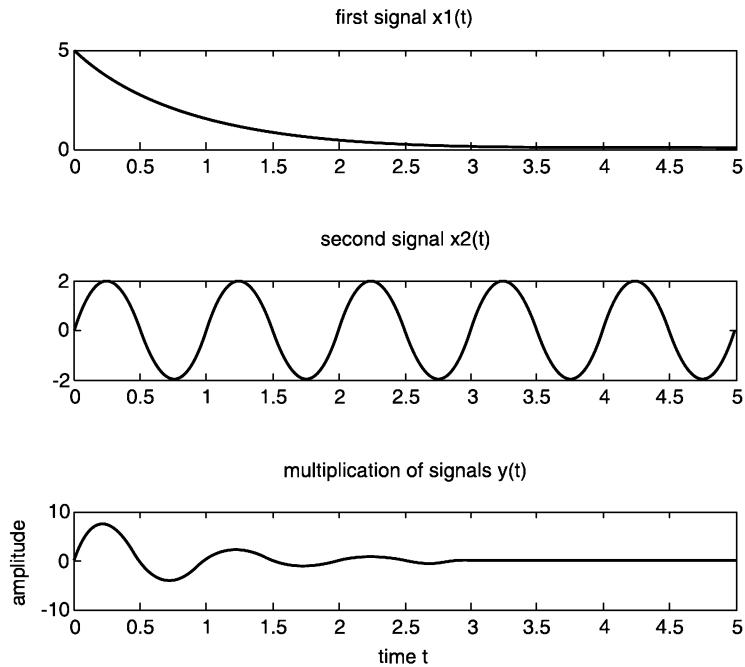
Output:



### Program 1.6

```
% Multiplication of two continuous-time signals
% x1(t)=5exp(-at);
t=0:0.001:5;
a=1.2;
x1=5*exp(-a*t);
subplot(3,1,1);plot(t,x1);
title('first signal x1(t)');
% x2(t)=2sin(wt)
f=1;
x2=2*sin(2*pi*f*t);
subplot(3,1,2);plot(t,x2);
title('second signal x2(t)');
% multiplication of x1(t) and x2(t)
y=x1.*x2;
subplot(3,1,3);plot(t,y);
xlabel('time t');ylabel('amplitude');
title('multiplication of signals y(t)');
```

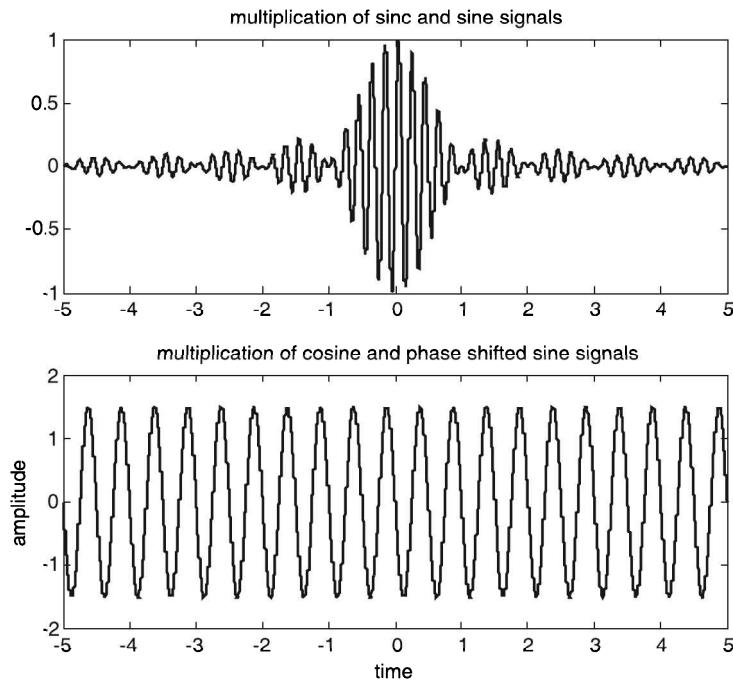
Output:



### Program 1.7

```
% Multiplication of two continuous-time signals
clc;clear all;clear all;
t=-5:0.001:5;
f1=5;
x1=sinc(t).*sin(2*pi*f1*t);
f2=1;
x2=3*cos(2*pi*f2*t).*sin(2*pi*f2*(t+0.5));
subplot(2,1,1);plot(t,x1);
title('multiplication of sinc and sine signals');
subplot(2,1,2);plot(t,x2);
xlabel('time');ylabel('amplitude');
title('multiplication of cosine and phase shifted sine signals');
```

Output:



### Program 1.8

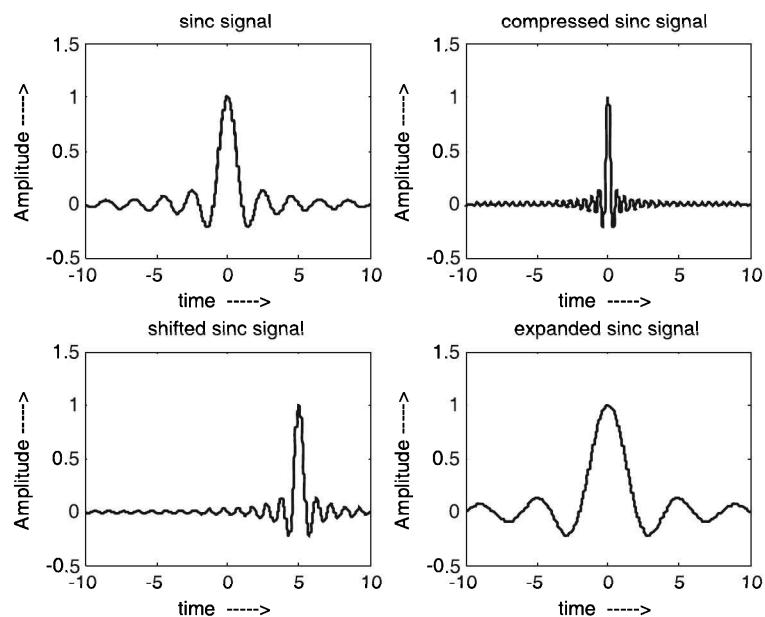
```
% Shifting and scaling operations using sinc signal
% y1=sinc(t)
t=-10:0.01:10;
y1=sinc(t);
subplot(2,2,1);plot(t,y1);
xlabel('time -->');ylabel('Amplitude -->');
title('sinc signal');
axis([-10 10 -0.5 1.5]);
% y2=sinc(4t)
t=-10:0.01:10;
y2=sinc(4*t);
subplot(2,2,2);plot(t,y2);
xlabel('time -->');ylabel('Amplitude -->');
title('compressed sinc signal');
axis([-10 10 -0.5 1.5]);
% y3=sinc(2t-5)
t=-10:0.01:10;
y3=sinc(2*(t-5));
subplot(2,2,3);plot(t,y3);
xlabel('time -->');ylabel('Amplitude -->');
title('shifted sinc signal');
```

```

axis([-10 10 -0.5 1.5]);
% y4=sinc(0.25t)
t=-10:0.01:10;
y4=sinc(0.5*t);
subplot(2,2,4);plot(t,y4);
xlabel('time ---->');ylabel('Amplitude ---->');
title('expanded sinc signal');
axis([-10 10 -0.5 1.5]);

```

**Output:**



### Program 1.9

```

Generation of elementary sequences in discrete-time
    (i) Unit Impulse sequence      (ii) Unit step sequence
    (iii) Unit ramp sequence       (iv) Unit parabolic sequence
% Generation of Elementary signals in Discrete time
clc; close all; clear all;
% Unit Impulse sequence
n=-10:1:10;
impulse=[zeros(1,10),ones(1,1),zeros(1,10)];
subplot(2,2,1);stem(n,impulse);
xlabel('Discrete time n ---->');ylabel('Amplitude ---->');
title('Unit Impulse sequence');
axis([-10 10 0 1.2]);
% Unit Step sequence

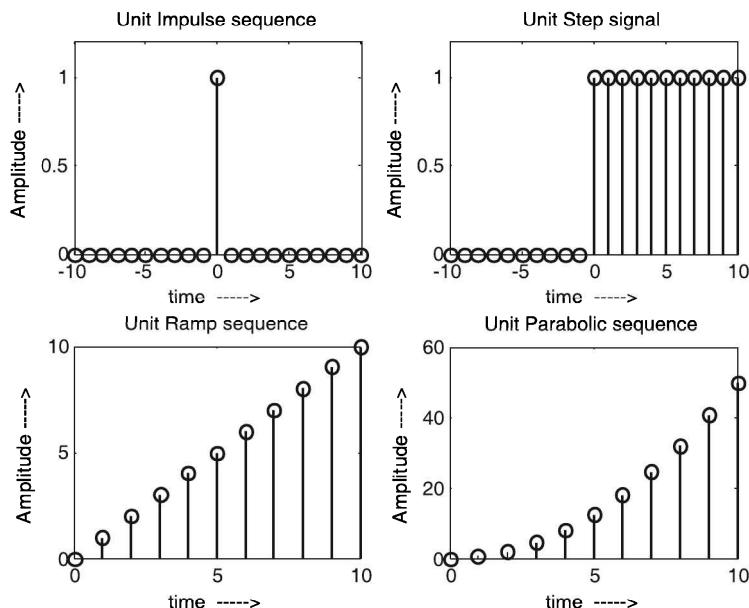
```

```

n=-10:1:10;
step=[zeros(1,10),ones(1,11)];
subplot(2,2,2);stem(n,step);
xlabel('Discrete time n ---->');ylabel('Amplitude ---->');
title('Unit Step sequence');
axis([-10 10 0 1.2]);
% Unit Ramp sequence
n=0:1:10;
ramp=n;
subplot(2,2,3);stem(n,ramp);
xlabel('Discrete time n ---->');ylabel('Amplitude ---->');
title('Unit Ramp sequence');
% Unit Parabolic sequence
n=0:1:10;
parabola=0.5*(n.^2);
subplot(2,2,4);stem(n,parabola);
xlabel('Discrete time n ---->');ylabel('Amplitude ---->');
title('Unit Parabolic sequence');

```

Output:



### Program 1.10

**Generation of discrete-time Exponential sequence for various values of 'a'.**

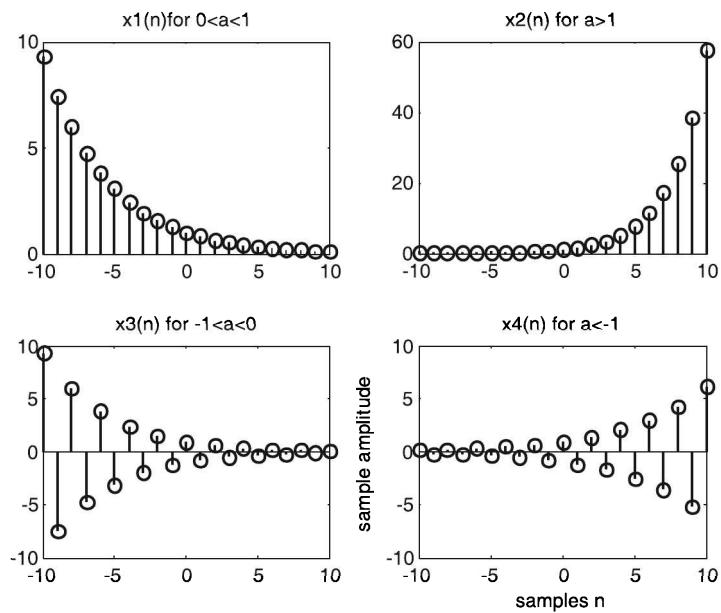
```
% Program to generate a DT exponential sequence
```

```

clc;close all;clear all;
n=-10:1:10;
% for 0<a<1
a=0.8;
x1=a.^n;
subplot(2,2,1);stem(n,x1);
title('x1(n) for 0<a<1');
% for a>1
a=1.5;
x2=a.^n;
subplot(2,2,2);stem(n,x2);
title('x2(n) for a>1');
% for -1<a<0
a=-0.8;
x3=a.^n;
subplot(2,2,3);stem(n,x3);
title('x3(n) for -1<a<0');
% for a<-1
a=-1.2;
x4=a.^n;
subplot(2,2,4);stem(n,x4);
title('x4(n) for a<-1');
xlabel('samples n');ylabel('sample amplitude')

```

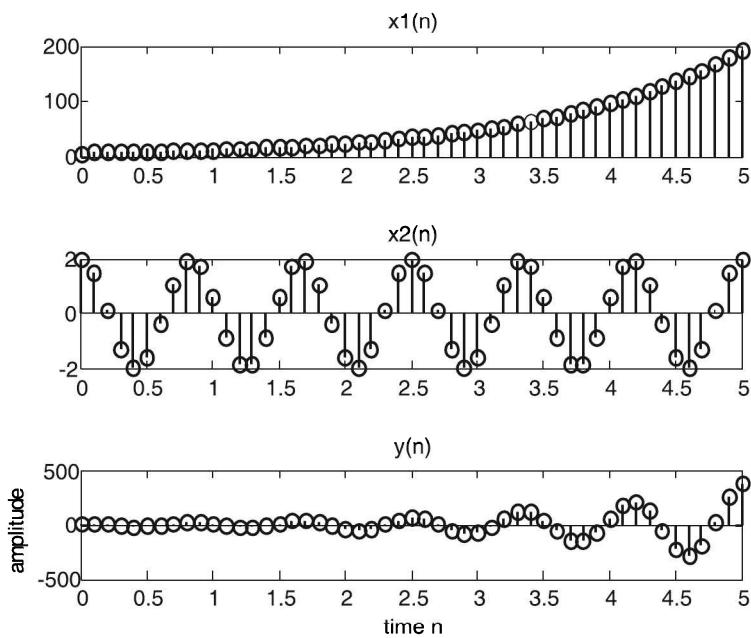
Output:



**Program 1.11****Multiplication of two discrete-time sequences**

```
% multiplication of DT signals
% x1(n)=6*a^n;
n=0:0.1:5;
a=2;
x1=6*(a.^n);
subplot(3,1,1);stem(n,x1);
title('x1(n)');
% x2(n)=2*cos(wn)
f=1.2;
x2=2*cos(2*pi*f*n);
subplot(3,1,2);stem(n,x2);
title('x2(n)');
% multiplication of two sequences
y=x1.*x2;
subplot(3,1,3);stem(n,y);
xlabel('time n');ylabel('amplitude');
title('y(n)');
```

Output:



### Program 1.12

```

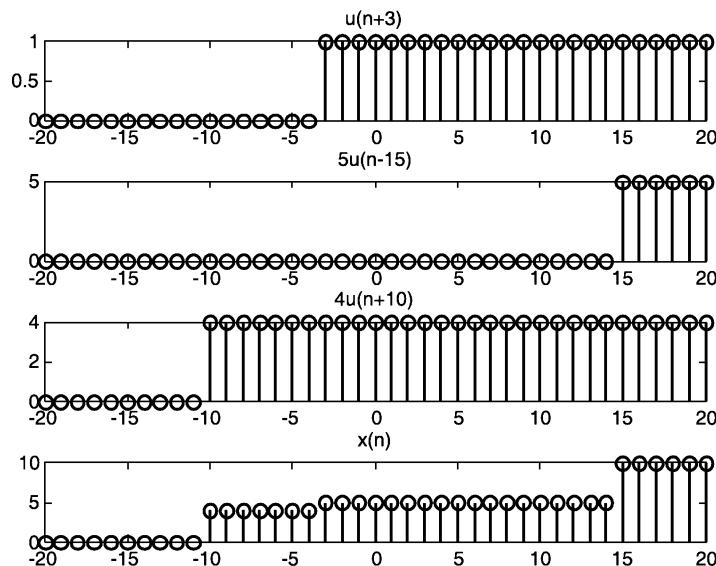
Generation of the discrete-time sequence
 $x(n)=u(n+3)+5u(n-15)+4u(n+10)$ 

% Generate the following step sequences.

n=-20:1:20;
u=[zeros(1,20),ones(1,21)];
u1=[zeros(1,17),ones(1,24)];
u2=[zeros(1,35),ones(1,6)];u2=5*u2;
u3=[zeros(1,10),ones(1,31)];u3=4*u3;
x=u1+u2+u3;
subplot(4,1,1);stem(n,u1);
title('u(n+3)');
subplot(4,1,2);stem(n,u2);
title('5u(n-15)');
subplot(4,1,3);stem(n,u3);
title('4u(n+10)');
subplot(4,1,4);stem(n,x);
title('x(n)');

```

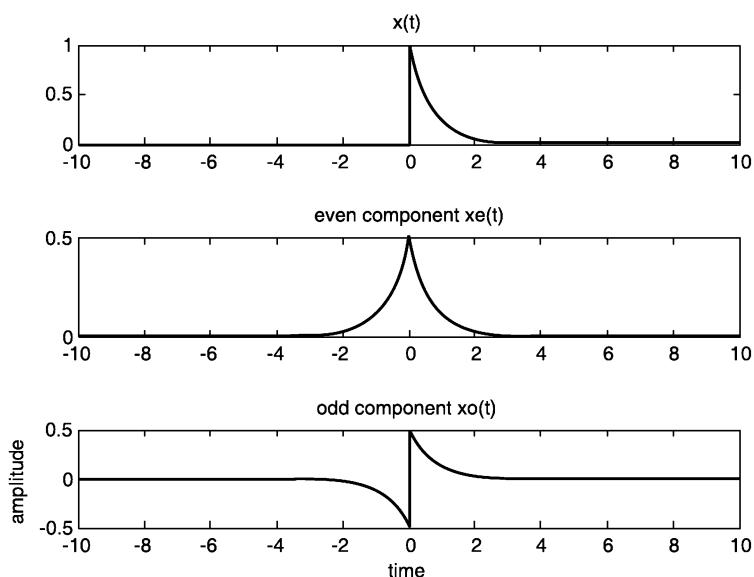
Output:



**Program 1.13**

```
% Even and odd components of a continuous-time signal
% x(t)=exp(-2t)u(t)
clc;close all;clear all;
t=-10:0.01:10;
% actual signal x(t)
u=0.5*sign(t)+0.5
x1=exp(-1.5*t).*u;
subplot(3,1,1);plot(t,x1);
title('x(t)');
% time reversed signal x(-t)
x2=fliplr(x1);
% Even component xe(t)
xe=0.5*(x1+x2);
subplot(3,1,2);plot(t,xe);
title('even component xe(t)');
% Odd component xo(t)
xo=0.5*(x1-x2);
subplot(3,1,3);plot(t,xo);
xlabel('time');ylabel('amplitude');
title('odd component xo(t)');
```

Output:

**Program 1.14**

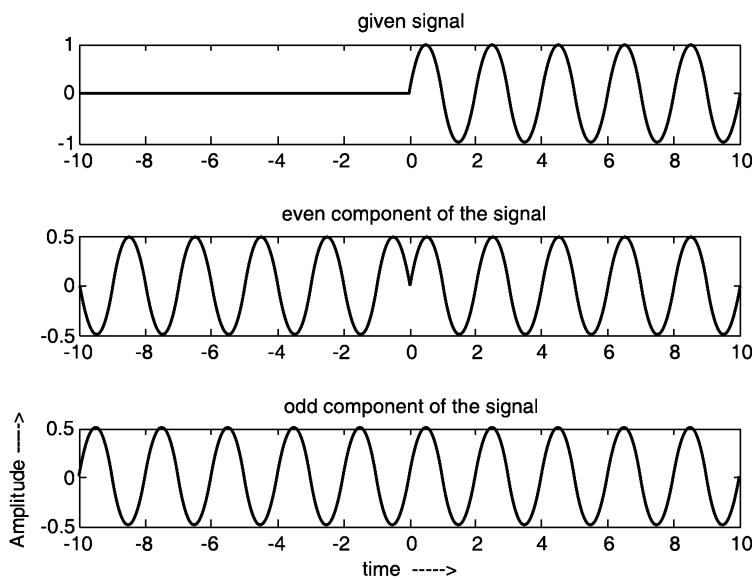
```
% Evaluation of the even and odd components of a signal
% x(t)=sin(wt)u(t)
clc;close all;clear all;
```

```

t=-10:0.01:10;
u=0.5*sign(t)+0.5;
w=2*pi*0.5;
x1=sin(w*t).*u;
x2=fliplr(x1);
xe=0.5*(x1+x2);
xo=0.5*(x1-x2);
subplot(3,1,1);plot(t,x1);
title('given signal')
subplot(3,1,2);plot(t,xe);
title('even component of the signal')
subplot(3,1,3);plot(t,xo);
title('odd component of the signal')
xlabel('time -->');ylabel('Amplitude -->');

```

**Output:**



### Program 1.15

**Evaluation of the even and odd components of a sequence**

```

y(n)=u(n)-u(n-10)
% Even and Odd components of a sequence
n=-15:1:15;
y1=[zeros(1,15),ones(1,10),zeros(1,6)];
y2=fliplr(y1);
ye=0.5*(y1+y2);

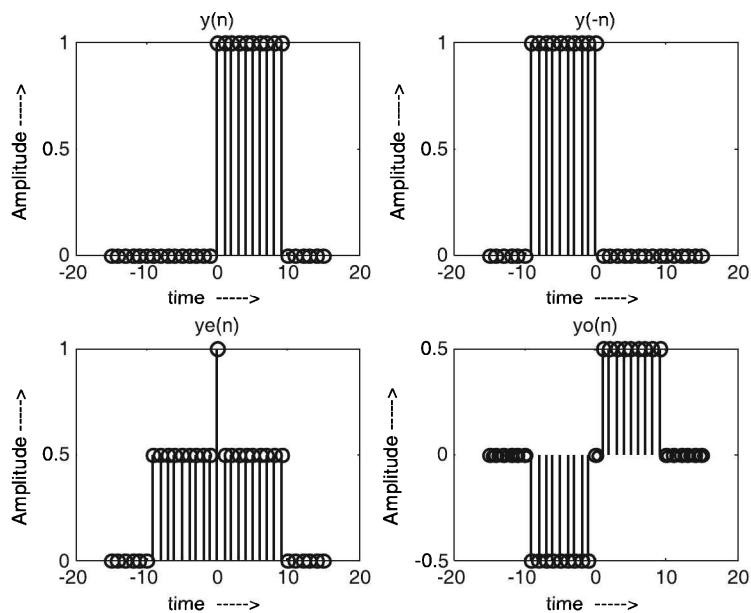
```

```

yo=0.5*(y1-y2);
subplot(2,2,1);stem(n,y1);
xlabel('time -->');ylabel('Amplitude -->');
title('y(n)');
subplot(2,2,2);stem(n,y2);
xlabel('time -->');ylabel('Amplitude -->');
title('y(-n)');
subplot(2,2,3);stem(n,ye);
xlabel('time -->');ylabel('Amplitude -->');
title('ye(n)');
subplot(2,2,4);stem(n,yo);
xlabel('time -->');ylabel('Amplitude -->');
title('yo(n)');

```

Output:



### SHORT QUESTIONS WITH ANSWERS

1. Define a signal.

*Ans.* A signal is defined as a single-valued function of one or more independent variables which contain some information.

2. What is one dimensional signal?

*Ans.* A signal which depends on only one independent variable is called a one dimensional signal.

3. What is signal modelling?

*Ans.* The representation of a signal by mathematical expression is known as signal modelling.

4. What are the different types of representing discrete-time signals?

*Ans.* There are four different types of representation of discrete-time signals. They are:

- |                              |                               |
|------------------------------|-------------------------------|
| (a) Graphical representation | (b) Functional representation |
| (c) Tabular representation   | (d) Sequence representation   |

5. Define unit step function.

*Ans.* The continuous-time unit step function  $u(t)$  is defined as:

$$u(t) = \begin{cases} 1 & \text{for } t \geq 0 \\ 0 & \text{for } t < 0 \end{cases}$$

The discrete-time unit step sequence  $u(n)$  is defined as:

$$u(n) = \begin{cases} 1 & \text{for } n \geq 0 \\ 0 & \text{for } n < 0 \end{cases}$$

6. Define unit ramp function.

*Ans.* The continuous-time unit ramp function  $r(t)$  is defined as:

$$r(t) = \begin{cases} t & \text{for } t \geq 0 \\ 0 & \text{for } t < 0 \end{cases}$$

or

$$r(t) = tu(t)$$

The discrete-time unit ramp sequence  $r(n)$  is defined as:

$$r(n) = \begin{cases} n & \text{for } n \geq 0 \\ 0 & \text{for } n < 0 \end{cases}$$

or

$$r(n) = nu(n)$$

7. Define unit parabolic function.

*Ans.* The continuous-time unit parabolic function  $p(t)$  is defined as:

$$p(t) = \begin{cases} t^2/2 & \text{for } t \geq 0 \\ 0 & \text{for } t < 0 \end{cases}$$

or

$$p(t) = \frac{t^2}{2} u(t)$$

The discrete-time unit parabolic sequence  $p(n)$  is defined as:

$$p(n) = \begin{cases} n^2/2 & \text{for } n \geq 0 \\ 0 & \text{for } n < 0 \end{cases}$$

or

$$p(n) = \frac{n^2}{2} u(n)$$

8. Define unit impulse function

*Ans.* The continuous-time unit impulse function  $\delta(t)$  is defined as:

$$\delta(t) = \begin{cases} 1 & \text{for } t = 0 \\ 0 & \text{for } t \neq 0 \end{cases}$$

The discrete-time unit impulse sequence  $\delta(n)$  is defined as:

$$\delta(n) = \begin{cases} 1 & \text{for } n = 0 \\ 0 & \text{for } n \neq 0 \end{cases}$$

9. Write the properties of unit impulse function.

*Ans.* The properties of continuous-time unit impulse function are:

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| (a) $\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} x(t) \delta(t) dt = x(0)$              | (b) $x(t) \delta(t - t_0) = x(t_0) \delta(t - t_0) = x(t_0)$ |
| (c) $\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} x(\tau) \delta(t - \tau) d\tau = x(t)$ | (d) $\delta(at) = \frac{1}{ a } \delta(t)$                   |
| (e) $\delta(-t) = \delta(t)$  |  |

The properties of discrete-time unit sample sequence are:

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| (a) $\delta(n) = u(n) - u(n - 1)$                         | (b) $\delta(n - k) = \begin{cases} 1, & n = k \\ 0, & n \neq k \end{cases}$ |
| (c) $x(n) = \sum_{k=-\infty}^{\infty} x(k) \delta(n - k)$ |   |

10. Define a sinusoidal signal.

*Ans.* The continuous-time sinusoidal signal is given by

$$x(t) = A \sin(\omega t + \phi)$$

where  $A$  is the amplitude,  $\omega$  is the frequency in radians/sec and  $\phi$  is the phase angle in radians.

The discrete-time sinusoidal signal is given by

$$x(n) = A \cos(\omega_0 n + \phi)$$

where  $\omega_0$  is the frequency (in radians/sample), and  $\phi$  is the phase (in radians).

11. Define a real exponential signal.

*Ans.* The continuous-time real exponential signal is defined as:

$$x(t) = Ae^{at}$$

where both  $A$  and  $a$  are real.

The discrete-time real exponential sequence is given by

$$x(n) = a^n u(n)$$

where  $a$  is a constant.

12. Define complex exponential signal.

*Ans.* The continuous-time complex exponential signal is given by

$$x(t) = e^{st}$$

where  $s$  is a complex variable, defined as:

$$s = \sigma + j\omega$$

The discrete-time complex exponential signal is given by

$$x(n) = a^n e^{j(\omega_0 n + \phi)}$$

13. Define unit rectangular pulse function.

*Ans.* The unit rectangular pulse function  $\Pi(t)$  is defined as:

$$\Pi(t) = \begin{cases} 1 & \text{for } |t| \leq \frac{1}{2} \\ 0 & \text{otherwise} \end{cases}$$

14. Define unit triangular pulse function.

*Ans.* The unit triangular pulse function  $\Delta_a(t)$  is defined as:

$$\Delta_a(t) = \begin{cases} 1 - \frac{2|t|}{a} & \text{for } |t| \leq \frac{a}{2} \\ 0 & \text{for } |t| > \frac{a}{2} \end{cases}$$

15. Define unit signum function.

*Ans.* The unit signum function  $\operatorname{sgn}(t)$  is defined as:

$$\operatorname{sgn}(t) = \begin{cases} 1 & \text{for } t \geq 0 \\ -1 & \text{for } t < 0 \end{cases}$$

It can be expressed in terms of unit step function as:

$$\operatorname{sgn}(t) = -1 + 2u(t)$$

16. Define sinc function.

*Ans.* The sinc function is defined by expression

$$\operatorname{sinc}(t) = \frac{\sin t}{t} \quad \text{for } -\infty < t < \infty$$

The sinc function oscillates with period  $2\pi$  and decays with increasing  $t$ . Its value is zero at  $n\pi$ ,  $n = \pm 1, \pm 2, \dots$ . It is an even function of  $t$ .

17. Define Gaussian function.

*Ans.* The Gaussian function is defined by the expression

$$g_a(t) = e^{at^2} \quad \text{for } -\infty < t < \infty$$

18. What is the relation between impulse, step, ramp and parabolic signals?

*Ans.* The relation between impulse, step, ramp and parabolic functions is given as follows:

Step function is the integration of impulse function, ramp function is the integration of step function and parabolic function is the integration of ramp function.

Ramp function is the derivative of parabolic function, step function is the derivative of ramp function and impulse function is the derivative of step function.

19. What are the basic operations on signals?

*Ans.* The basic set of operations on signals are:

- |                     |                           |
|---------------------|---------------------------|
| (a) Time shifting   | (b) Time reversal         |
| (c) Time scaling    | (d) Amplitude scaling     |
| (e) Signal addition | (f) Signal multiplication |

20. How are signals classified?

*Ans.* Signals are classified according to their characteristics. Some of them are:

- (a) Continuous-time and discrete-time signals
- (b) Deterministic and random signals
- (c) Periodic and aperiodic signals
- (d) Energy and power signals
- (e) Even and odd signals
- (f) Causal and non-causal signals

21. Distinguish between continuous-time and discrete-time signals.

*Ans.* Continuous-time signals are signals which are defined at all instants of time, whereas discrete-time signals are signals which are defined only at discrete instants of time. In continuous-time signals, both amplitude and time are continuous, but discrete-time signals are continuous in amplitude and discrete in time.

22. What is an analog signal?

*Ans.* Continuous-time signals are also called analog signals.

23. What are digital signals?

*Ans.* The signals that are discrete in time and quantized in amplitude are called digital signals.

24. Distinguish between deterministic and random signals.

*Ans.* A deterministic signal is a signal exhibiting no uncertainty of its magnitude and phase at any given instant of time. It can be represented by a mathematical equation, whereas a random signal is a signal characterised by uncertainty about its occurrence. It cannot be represented by a mathematical equation.

25. Distinguish between periodic and aperiodic signals.

*Ans.* A continuous-time signal  $x(t)$  is said to be periodic if it satisfies the condition

$$x(t) = x(t + T) \text{ for all } t$$

whereas a continuous-time signal  $x(t)$  is said to be aperiodic, if the above condition is not satisfied even for one value of  $t$ .

A discrete-time sequence  $x(n)$  is said to be periodic, if it satisfies the condition

$$x(n) = x(n + N) \text{ for all } n$$

whereas a discrete-time signal  $x(n)$  is said to be aperiodic, if the above condition is not satisfied even for one value of  $n$ .

26. What do you mean by fundamental period of a signal?

*Ans.* The smallest value of  $T$  that satisfies the condition  $x(t + T) = x(t)$  for all values of  $t$  for continuous-time signals is called the fundamental period of the signal  $x(t)$ . The smallest value of  $N$  that satisfies the condition  $x(n + N) = x(n)$  for all values of  $n$  for discrete-time signals is called the fundamental period of the signal  $x(n)$ .

27. Are all sinusoidal signals periodic?

*Ans.* In the case of continuous-time signals, all sinusoidal signals are periodic. But in the case of discrete-time signals, not all sinusoidal sequences are periodic.

28. Is the sum of two periodic signals always periodic?

*Ans.* No. The sum of two continuous-time periodic signals  $x_1(t)$  and  $x_2(t)$  with periods  $T_1$  and  $T_2$  may or may not be periodic depending on the relation between  $T_1$  and  $T_2$ . For the sum to be periodic, the ratio of periods  $T_1/T_2$  must be a rational number or ratio of two integers.

29. What is the condition to be satisfied for a discrete-time sinusoidal sequence to be periodic?

*Ans.* For the discrete-time sinusoidal sequence to be periodic, the condition to be satisfied is, the fundamental frequency  $\omega_0$  must be a rational multiple of  $2\pi$ . Otherwise, the discrete-time signal is aperiodic.

30. What is the fundamental period of a discrete-time sinusoidal sequence?

*Ans.* The smallest value of positive integer  $N$ , for some integer  $m$ , which satisfies the equation  $N = 2\pi(m/\omega_0)$  for a sinusoidal periodic signal is called the fundamental period of that signal.

31. Distinguish between energy and power signals.

*Ans.* An energy signal is one whose total energy  $E$  = finite value and whose average power  $P = 0$ , whereas a power signal is the one whose average power  $P$  = finite value and total energy  $E = \infty$ .

32. Write the expressions for total energy  $E$  and average power  $P$  of a signal.

*Ans.* The expressions for total energy  $E$  and average power  $P$  of a signal are:

$$E = \lim_{T \rightarrow \infty} \int_{-T}^T |x(t)|^2 dt$$

and

$$P = \text{Lt}_{T \rightarrow \infty} \frac{1}{2T} \int_{-T}^T |x(t)|^2 dt \quad (\text{for continuous-time signals})$$

$$E = \text{Lt}_{N \rightarrow \infty} \sum_{n=-N}^N |x(n)|^2$$

and

$$P = \text{Lt}_{N \rightarrow \infty} \frac{1}{2N} \sum_{n=-N}^N |x(n)|^2 \quad (\text{for discrete-time signals})$$

33. Do all the signals belong to either energy signal or power signal category?

*Ans.* No. Some signals may not correspond to either energy signal type or power signal type. Such signals are neither power signals nor energy signals.

34. Distinguish between even and odd signals.

*Ans.* A continuous-time signal  $x(t)$  is said to be even (symmetric) signal, if it satisfies the condition

$$x(-t) = x(t) \text{ for all } t$$

whereas a continuous-time signal  $x(t)$  is said to be odd (antisymmetric) signal, if it satisfies the condition

$$x(-t) = -x(t) \text{ for all } t$$

A discrete-time signal  $x(n)$  is said to be even (symmetric) signal, if it satisfies the condition

$$x(-n) = x(n) \text{ for all } n$$

whereas a discrete-time signal  $x(n)$  is said to be odd (antisymmetric) signal, if it satisfies the condition

$$x(-n) = -x(n) \text{ for all } n$$

35. Do all the signals correspond to either even or odd type?

*Ans.* No. All the signals need not necessarily belong to either even or odd type. There are signals which are neither even nor odd.

36. Can every signal be decomposed into even and odd parts?

*Ans.* Yes, every signal can be decomposed into even and odd parts.

37. Write the expressions for even and odd parts of a signal.

*Ans.* The even and odd parts of a continuous-time signal are given by

$$x_e(t) = \frac{1}{2} [x(t) + x(-t)]$$

$$x_o(t) = \frac{1}{2} [x(t) - x(-t)]$$

The even and odd parts of a discrete-time signal are given by

$$x_e(n) = \frac{1}{2} [x(n) + x(-n)]$$

$$x_o(n) = \frac{1}{2} [x(n) - x(-n)]$$

38. Distinguish between causal and non-causal signals.

*Ans.* A continuous-time signal  $x(t)$  is said to be causal, if  $x(t) = 0$  for  $t < 0$ , otherwise the signal is non-causal. A discrete-time signal  $x(n)$  is said to be causal, if  $x(n) = 0$  for  $n < 0$ , otherwise the signal is non-causal.

39. Define anti-causal signal.

*Ans.* A continuous-time signal  $x(t)$  is said to be anti-causal, if  $x(t) = 0$  for  $t > 0$  and a discrete-time signal  $x(n)$  is said to be anti-causal, if  $x(n) = 0$  for  $n > 0$ .

## REVIEW QUESTIONS

1. Define various elementary continuous-time signals. Indicate them graphically.
2. Define various elementary discrete-time signals. Indicate them graphically.
3. What are the types of representation of discrete-time signals? Represent a sequence in all types.
4. What are the basic operations on signals? Illustrate with an example.
5. How are signals classified? Differentiate between them.
6. Write short notes on: (i) Complex exponential signals (ii) Sinusoidal signals.
7. Write the properties of the Dirac delta function.
8. Derive the relation between complex exponential and sinusoidal signals.
9. Write short notes on the following signals:
 

(a) Unit step	(b) Unit impulse
(c) Unit ramp	(d) Signum

## FILL IN THE BLANKS

1. If a signal depends on only one independent variable, it is called a \_\_\_\_\_ signal.
2. The representation of a signal by mathematical expression is known as \_\_\_\_\_.
3. Continuous-time signals are defined for \_\_\_\_\_.
4. Discrete-time signals are \_\_\_\_\_ in time and \_\_\_\_\_ in amplitude.

5. The signals that are discrete in time and quantized in amplitude are called \_\_\_\_\_.
6. Unit step function can be obtained by \_\_\_\_\_ the unit impulse function.
7. Unit impulse function can be obtained by \_\_\_\_\_ the unit step function.
8. Unit ramp function can be obtained by \_\_\_\_\_ the unit step function.
9. Unit step function can be obtained by \_\_\_\_\_ the unit ramp function.
10. Unit parabolic function can be obtained by \_\_\_\_\_ the unit ramp function.
11. Unit ramp function can be obtained by \_\_\_\_\_ the unit parabolic function.
12. The \_\_\_\_\_ of a signal can be obtained by folding the signal about  $t = 0$ .
13. A signal which can be described by a mathematical equation is called a \_\_\_\_\_.
14. A signal which cannot be represented by a mathematical equation is called a \_\_\_\_\_.
15. For the sum of two periodic signals to be periodic, the ratio of their periods must be a \_\_\_\_\_.
16. In the case of \_\_\_\_\_ -time signals, all sinusoidal signals are periodic.
17. In the case \_\_\_\_\_ -time signals, not all the sinusoidal signals are periodic.
18. For an even signal  $x(-t) = \text{_____}$  for all  $t$ .
19. For an odd signal  $x(-t) = \text{_____}$  for all  $t$ .
20. For an energy signal,  $E = \text{_____}$  and  $P = \text{_____}$ .
21. For a power signal,  $P = \text{_____}$  and  $E = \text{_____}$ .
22. For an anti-causal signal,  $x(t) = 0$  for \_\_\_\_\_.
23. Double integration of a unit impulse function results in a unit \_\_\_\_\_ function.
24. Double differentiation of a unit parabolic function results in a unit \_\_\_\_\_ function.
25. Double integration of a unit step function results in a unit \_\_\_\_\_ function.
26. Double differentiation of a unit ramp function results in a unit \_\_\_\_\_ function.

### OBJECTIVE TYPE QUESTIONS

1. Graphical representation of a signal in time domain is called
  - (a) frequency spectrum
  - (b) frequency
  - (c) waveform
  - (d) none of the above
2. Graphical representation of a signal in frequency domain is called
  - (a) frequency spectrum
  - (b) frequency
  - (c) waveform
  - (d) none of the above



15. The relation between a signum function and a unit step function is,  $\text{sgn}(t) =$
- (a)  $2u(t) - 1$       (b)  $u(t) - 1$       (c)  $2u(t)$       (d)  $u(t) - u(-t)$
16. A deterministic signal has
- (a) no uncertainty      (b) uncertainty  
(c) partial uncertainty      (d) none of the above
17. A random signal has
- (a) no uncertainty      (b) uncertainty  
(c) partial uncertainty      (d) none of the above
18. The sum of two periodic signals is periodic only if the ratio of their respective periods  $T_1/T_2$  is
- (a) a rational number      (b) an irrational number  
(c) a complex number      (d) a real number
19. The fundamental period of a continuous-time complex exponential signal is  $T_0 =$
- (a)  $2\pi$       (b)  $\frac{2\pi}{\omega_0}$       (c)  $T$       (d)  $2\pi\omega_0$
20. The fundamental period of a discrete-time complex exponential sequence is  $N =$
- (a)  $\frac{2\pi}{\omega_0}$       (b)  $\frac{2\pi}{m}\omega_0$       (c)  $\frac{2\pi}{\omega_0}m$       (d)  $2\pi m\omega_0$
21. The fundamental period of a sinusoidal signal is  $T =$
- (a)  $\frac{2\pi}{\omega}$       (b)  $2\pi$       (c)  $\frac{\omega}{2\pi}$       (d)  $2\pi\omega$
22. The fundamental period of a sinusoidal sequence is  $N =$
- (a)  $2\pi m$       (b)  $\frac{\omega_0}{2\pi m}$       (c)  $m\omega_0$       (d)  $\frac{2\pi}{\omega_0}m$
23. A signal is an energy signal if
- (a)  $E = 0, P = 0$       (b)  $E = \infty, P = \text{finite}$   
(c)  $E = \text{finite}, P = 0$       (d)  $E = \text{finite}, P = \infty$
24. A signal is a power signal if
- (a)  $P = \text{finite}, E = 0$       (b)  $P = \text{finite}, E = \infty$   
(c)  $P = \infty, E = \text{finite}$       (d)  $P = \infty, E = \infty$
25. The signal  $\alpha^n u(n)$  is an energy signal if
- (a)  $|\alpha| < 1$       (b)  $|\alpha| > 1$       (c)  $|\alpha| = 1$       (d)  $|\alpha| = 0$
26. The signal  $\alpha^n u(n)$  is a power signal if
- (a)  $|\alpha| < 1$       (b)  $|\alpha| > 1$       (c)  $|\alpha| = 1$       (d)  $|\alpha| = 0$

# PROBLEMS

- ### 1. Evaluate the following

$$(a) \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} e^{-t^2} \delta(t-3) dt$$

$$(b) \quad \int_0^{\infty} t^3 \delta(t - 2) dt$$

$$(c) \quad \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \delta(t+3) e^{-2t} dt$$

$$(d) \quad \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} (t-1)^2 \delta(t-1) dt$$

$$(e) \quad \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} e^{2n} \delta(n-2)$$

$$(f) \quad \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} n^2 \delta(n-3)$$

$$(g) \quad \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} \delta(n) 5^n$$

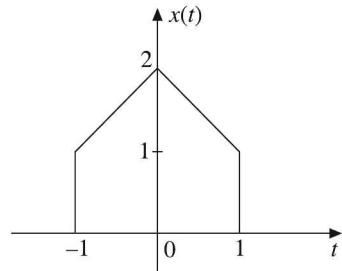
$$(h) \quad \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} \delta(n) \sin 2n$$

2. Sketch the following signals:

$$\begin{array}{llll} \text{(a)} u(-t+4) & \text{(b)} r(-t+4) & \text{(c)} -2r(t-2) & \text{(d)} \Pi(t-2) \\ \text{(e)} u(n+2)-u(n) & \text{(f)} u(-n+2)-u(-n-2) & & \end{array}$$

3. For the signal  $x(t)$  shown in Figure 1.74, find the signals

$$\begin{array}{llll} \text{(a)} x(2t+2) & \text{(b)} x\left(\frac{1}{2}t-2\right) & \text{(c)} x(-t-2) & \text{(d)} 3x(5t) \end{array}$$

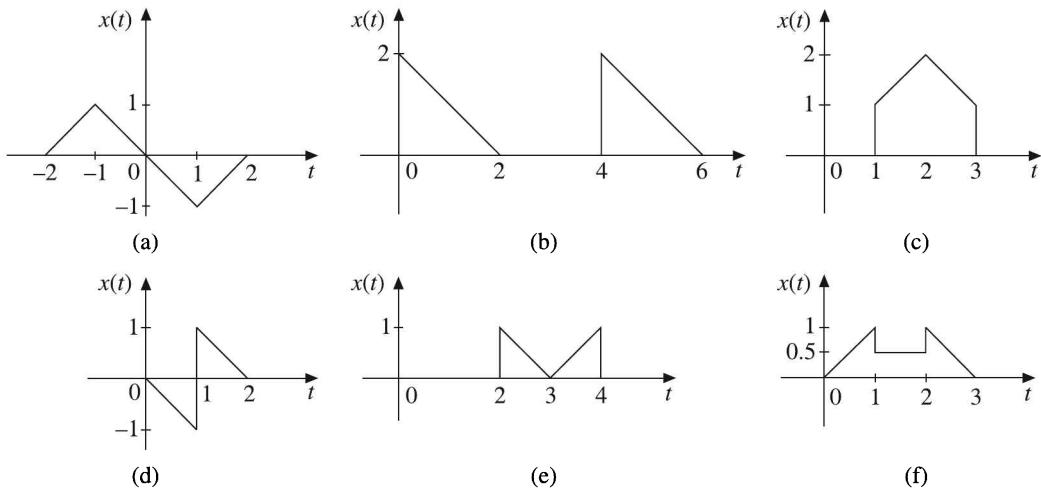


**Figure 1.74** Figure for Problem 3.

4. Sketch the following signals

$$\begin{array}{ll} \text{(a)} \Pi\left(\frac{t-2}{4}\right) + \Pi(t-2) & \text{(b)} r(t) - 2r(t-2) + r(t-4) \\ \text{(c)} r(t) u(-t+3) & \end{array}$$

5. Express the signals shown in Figure 1.75 as sum of singular functions.



**Figure 1.75** Figure for Problem 5.

6. Examine whether the following signals are periodic or not. If periodic, determine the fundamental period.

  - (a)  $\cos 6\pi t$
  - (b)  $e^{j8\pi t}$
  - (c)  $2 + \sin 4\pi t$
  - (d)  $2u(t) + 3 \cos 2\pi t$
  - (e)  $2\cos 50\pi t + 3 \sin 25t$
  - (f)  $3e^{j[4\pi t + (\pi/3)]} + 4e^{-j[2t + (\pi/2)]}$

7. Determine whether the following signals are periodic or not. If periodic, determine the fundamental period.

  - (a)  $\cos(0.04\pi n)$
  - (b)  $\sin \frac{4\pi n}{3} + \cos \frac{2n}{3}$
  - (c)  $e^{j(\pi/3)n}$
  - (d)  $\sin\left(\frac{n}{2}\right) \sin\left(\frac{n\pi}{2}\right)$

8. Determine the power and rms value of the following signals:

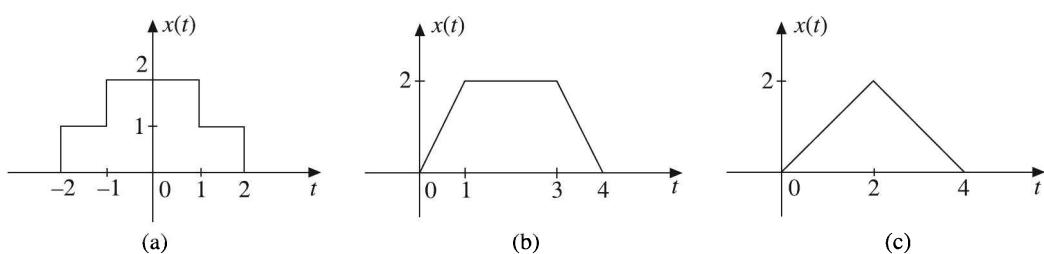
  - (a)  $5 \sin\left(10t + \frac{\pi}{2}\right)$
  - (b)  $e^{j5t} \cos 2t$
  - (c)  $6 \cos\left(10t + \frac{\pi}{2}\right) + 8 \sin\left(12t + \frac{\pi}{3}\right)$

9. Determine whether the following signals are energy signals or power signals, and calculate their energy or power:

  - (a)  $\hat{t^3}u(t)$
  - (b)  $2u(t)$
  - (c)  $10e^{-5t}u(t)$
  - (d)  $(3 + e^{2t})u(t)$
  - (e)  $(2 + e^{-2t})u(t)$
  - (f)  $r(t - 2) - r(t - 3)$

10. Find which of the following signals are energy signals, power signals, neither energy nor power signals. Calculate the power and energy in each case.

  - (a)  $\left(\frac{1}{3}\right)^n u(n)$
  - (b)  $e^{j[(\pi/2)n + \pi/2]}$
  - (c)  $u(n) - u(n - 4)$



**Figure 1.76** Figure for Problem 11.

12. Find which of the following signals are causal or non-causal:

- (a)  $e^{3t} u(t - 2)$       (b)  $\sin\left(2t - \frac{\pi}{3}\right)$       (c)  $\sin 3t u(t - 1)$       (d)  $u(-2n)$   
(e)  $u(n + 3) - u(n + 1)$       (f)  $e^{3n}$

13. Find the even and odd components of the following signals:

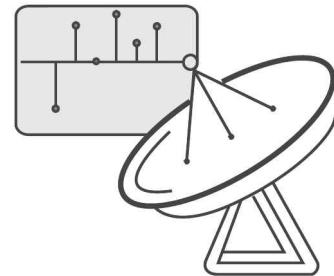
- (a)  $\sin\left(2t + \frac{\pi}{2}\right)$       (b)  $1 - 2t + 3t^3$       (c)  $\sin 2t + \cos 2t$       (d)  $\begin{cases} -2, 4, 1, 3, 6 \\ \uparrow \end{cases}$   
(e)  $\begin{cases} 3, -2, 4, 5 \\ \uparrow \end{cases}$       (f)  $\begin{cases} 2, 1, 4, 3, 5 \\ \uparrow \end{cases}$

14. Find whether the following signals are even or odd:

- (a)  $e^{4t}$       (b)  $u(t + 2) - u(t - 2)$   
(c)  $e^{-|t|}$       (d)  $u(-n + 2) u(n + 2)$

# 2

# Systems



## 2.1 INTRODUCTION

A system is defined as an entity that acts on an input signal and transforms it into an output signal. A system may also be defined as a set of elements or functional blocks which are connected together and produces an output in response to an input signal. The response or output of the system depends upon the transfer function of the system. It is a cause-and-effect relation between two or more signals. There are various types of systems: electrical systems, mechanical systems, biological systems, opto-electronic systems, electromechanical systems and so on. The actual physical structure of the system determines the exact relation between the input  $x(t)$  and the output  $y(t)$  and specifies the output for every input. Physical devices such as motor, amplifier, filter, boiler and turbine are examples of systems. In this chapter, we discuss about classification of systems and determination of the type of system from the describing equation. Systems may be single input and single output systems or multi input and multi output systems. In this book, we consider only single input and single output systems.

## 2.2 CLASSIFICATION OF SYSTEMS

A system is represented by a block diagram as shown in Figure 2.1. An arrow entering the box is the input signal (also called excitation, source or driving function) and an arrow leaving the box is an output signal (also called response). Generally, the input is denoted by  $x(t)$  and the output is denoted by  $y(t)$ .

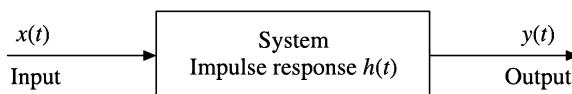


Figure 2.1 A system.

The relation between the input  $x(t)$  and the output  $y(t)$  of a system has the form

$$y(t) = \text{Operation on } x(t)$$

Mathematically,

$$y(t) = T[x(t)]$$

which represents that  $x(t)$  is transformed to  $y(t)$ . In other words  $y(t)$  is the transformed version of  $x(t)$ .

Like signals, systems may also be broadly classified as under

- (a) Continuous-time systems
- (b) Discrete-time systems

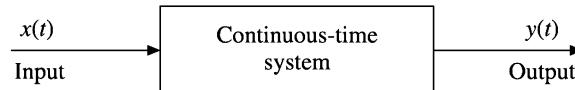
### **Continuous-time system**

A continuous-time system is one which transforms continuous-time input signals into continuous-time output signals.

If the input and output of a continuous-time system are  $x(t)$  and  $y(t)$  then we can say that  $x(t)$  is transformed to  $y(t)$ . That is,

$$y(t) = T[x(t)]$$

Amplifiers, filters, integrators, and differentiators are the examples of continuous-time systems. The block diagram of a continuous-time system is shown in Figure 2.2.



**Figure 2.2** Block diagram of continuous-time system.

### **Discrete-time System**

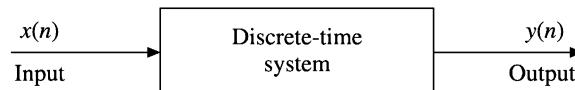
A discrete-time system is one which transforms discrete-time input signals into discrete-time output signals.

If the input and output of a discrete-time system are  $x(n)$  and  $y(n)$ , then we can say that  $x(n)$  is transformed to  $y(n)$ . That is,

$$y(n) = T[x(n)]$$

Microprocessors, semiconductor memories, shift registers, etc. are the examples of discrete-time systems.

The block diagram of a discrete-time system is shown in Figure 2.3.



**Figure 2.3** Block diagram of discrete-time system.

Both continuous-time and discrete-time systems may be classified as under

1. Lumped parameter and distributed parameter systems
2. Static (memoryless) and dynamic (memory) systems
3. Causal and non-causal systems
4. Linear and non-linear systems
5. Time-invariant and time varying systems

- 
- 6. Stable and unstable systems.
  - 7. Invertible and non-invertible systems
  - 8. FIR and IIR systems

### 2.2.1 Lumped Parameter and Distributed Parameter Systems

Lumped parameter systems are the systems in which each component is lumped at one point in space. These systems are described by ordinary differential equations. Distributed parameter systems are the systems in which signals are functions of space as well as time. These systems are described by partial differential equations.

### 2.2.2 Static and Dynamic Systems

A system is said to be static or memoryless if the response is due to present input alone, i.e. for a static or memoryless system, the output at any instant  $t$  (or  $n$ ) depends only on the input applied at that instant  $t$  (or  $n$ ) but not on the past or future values of input.

For example, the systems defined below are static or memoryless systems.

$$\begin{aligned}y(t) &= x(t) \\y(t) &= x^2(t) \\y(n) &= x(n) \\y(n) &= 2x^2(n)\end{aligned}$$

In contrast, a system is said to be dynamic or memory system if the response depends upon past or future inputs.

For example, the systems defined below are dynamic or memory systems.

$$\begin{aligned}y(t) &= x(t-1) \\y(t) &= x(t) + x(t+2) \\y(t) &= \frac{d^2x(t)}{dt^2} + x(t) \\y(n) &= x(2n) \\y(n) &= x(n) + x(n-2)\end{aligned}$$

Any continuous-time system described by a differential equation or any discrete-time system described by a difference equation is also a dynamic system.

A purely resistive electrical circuit is a static system, whereas an electric circuit having inductors and/or capacitors is a dynamic system.

A summer or accumulator is an example of a discrete-time system with memory. A delay is also a discrete-time system with memory.

**EXAMPLE 2.1** Find whether the following systems are dynamic or not:

- |   |                            |
|---|----------------------------|
| (a) $y(t) = x(t-3)$                       | (b) $y(t) = x(2t)$         |
| (c) $y(t) = \frac{d^2x(t)}{dt^2} + 2x(t)$ | (d) $y(n) = x(n+2)$        |
| (e) $y(n) = x^2(n)$                       | (f) $y(n) = x(n-2) + x(n)$ |

**Solution:**

- (a) Given  $y(t) = x(t - 3)$   
The output depends on past value of input. Therefore, the system is dynamic.
- (b) Given  $y(t) = x(2t)$   
The output depends on future value of input. Therefore, the system is dynamic.
- (c) Given  $y(t) = \frac{d^2x(t)}{dt^2} + 2x(t)$   
The system is described by a differential equation. Therefore, the system is dynamic.
- (d) Given  $y(n) = x(n + 2)$   
The output depends on the future value of input. Therefore, the system is dynamic.
- (e) Given  $y(n) = x^2(n)$   
The output depends on the present value of input alone. Therefore, the system is static.
- (f) Given  $y(n) = x(n - 2) + x(n)$   
The system is described by a difference equation. Therefore, the system is dynamic.

### 2.2.3 Causal and Non-causal Systems

A system is said to be causal (or non-anticipative) if the output of the system at any time  $t$  depends only on the present and past values of the input but not on future inputs. In other words, we can say that a system is causal if the response or output does not begin before the input function is applied. That is, a causal system is non anticipatory.

Causal systems are real time systems. They are physically realizable.

The impulse response of a causal system is zero for  $t$  (or  $n$ )  $< 0$ , since  $\delta(t)$  [or  $\delta(n)$ ] exists only at  $t$  (or  $n$ )  $= 0$ .

i.e.  $h(t) = 0$  for  $t < 0$  and  $h(n) = 0$  for  $n < 0$

Examples for the causal systems are:

$$\begin{aligned}y(t) &= x(t - 2) + 2x(t) \\y(t) &= tx(t) \\y(n) &= nx(n) \\y(n) &= x(n - 2) + x(n - 1) + x(n)\end{aligned}$$

A system is said to be non-causal (anticipative) if the output of the system at any time  $t$  depends on future inputs. They do not exist in real time. They are not physically realizable. They are anticipatory systems. They produce an output even before the input is given.

Examples for the non-causal systems are:

$$\begin{aligned}y(t) &= x(t + 2) + x(t) \\y(t) &= x^2(t) + tx(t + 1) \\y(n) &= x(n) + x(2n) \\y(n) &= x^2(n) + 2x(n + 2)\end{aligned}$$

A resistor is an example of a continuous-time causal system. Image processing systems are examples of non causal systems.

**EXAMPLE 2.2** Check whether the following systems are causal or not:

$$(a) \quad y(t) = x^2(t) + x(t - 4)$$

$$(c) \quad y(t) = \int_{-\infty}^{3t} x(\tau) d\tau$$

$$(e) \quad y(t) = x[\sin 2t]$$

$$(g) \quad y(n) = x(2n)$$

$$(i) \quad y(n) = x(-n)$$

$$(b) \quad y(t) = x(2 - t) + x(t - 4)$$

$$(d) \quad y(t) = x\left(\frac{t}{2}\right)$$

$$(f) \quad y(n) = x(n) + x(n - 2)$$

$$(h) \quad y(n) = \sin [x(n)]$$

**Solution:**

(a) Given

$$y(t) = x^2(t) + x(t - 4)$$

For  $t = -2$

$$y(-2) = x^2(-2) + x(-6)$$

For  $t = 0$

$$y(0) = x^2(0) + x(-4)$$

For  $t = 2$

$$y(2) = x^2(2) + x(-2)$$

For all values of  $t$ , the output depends only on the present and past values of input. Therefore, the system is causal.

(b) Given

$$y(t) = x(2 - t) + x(t - 4)$$

For  $t = -1$

$$y(-1) = x(3) + x(-5)$$

For  $t = 0$

$$y(0) = x(2) + x(-4)$$

For  $t = 1$

$$y(1) = x(1) + x(-3)$$

For some values of  $t$ , the output depends on the future input. Therefore, the system is non-causal.

(c) Given

$$y(t) = \int_{-\infty}^{3t} x(\tau) d\tau$$

For  $t = 0$

$$y(0) = \int_{-\infty}^0 x(\tau) d\tau = p(0) - p(-\infty)$$

For  $t = 1$

$$y(1) = \int_{-\infty}^3 x(\tau) d\tau = p(3) - p(-\infty)$$

where

$$\int x(\tau) d\tau = p(\tau)$$

The output  $y(1)$  depends on the future value  $p(3)$ . Therefore, the system is non-causal.

(d) Given

$$y(t) = x(t/2)$$

For  $t = -2$

$$y(-2) = x(-1)$$

For  $t = 0$

$$y(0) = x(0)$$

For  $t = 2$

$$y(2) = x(1)$$

For negative values of  $t$ , the output depends on the future input. Therefore, the system is non-causal.

- (e) Given  $y(t) = x[\sin 2t]$

$$y(\pi) = x[\sin 2\pi] = x(0)$$

$$y(-\pi) = x[\sin (-2\pi)] = x(0)$$

As the output at  $(-\pi)$  depends on the input that occurs later, the system is non-causal.

- (f) Given  $y(n) = x(n) + x(n-2)$

$$\text{For } n = -2 \quad y(-2) = x(-2) + x(-4)$$

$$\text{For } n = 0 \quad y(0) = x(0) + x(-2)$$

$$\text{For } n = 2 \quad y(2) = x(2) + x(0)$$

For all values of  $n$ , the output depends only on the present and past inputs. Therefore, the system is causal.

- (g) Given  $y(n) = x(2n)$

$$\text{For } n = -2 \quad y(-2) = x(-4)$$

$$\text{For } n = 0 \quad y(0) = x(0)$$

$$\text{For } n = 2 \quad y(2) = x(4)$$

For positive values of  $n$ , the output depends on the future values of input. Therefore, the system is non-causal.

- (h) Given  $y(n) = \sin [x(n)]$

$$\text{For } n = -2 \quad y(-2) = \sin [x(-2)]$$

$$\text{For } n = 0 \quad y(0) = \sin [x(0)]$$

$$\text{For } n = 2 \quad y(2) = \sin [x(2)]$$

For all values of  $n$ , the output depends only on the present value of input. Therefore, the system is causal.

- (i) Given  $y(n) = x(-n)$

$$\text{For } n = -2 \quad y(-2) = x(2)$$

$$\text{For } n = 0 \quad y(0) = x(0)$$

$$\text{For } n = 2 \quad y(2) = x(-2)$$

For negative values of  $n$ , the output depends on the future values of input. Therefore, the system is non-causal.

#### 2.2.4 Linear and Non-linear Systems

A system which obeys the principle of superposition and principle of homogeneity is called a linear system, and a system which does not obey the principle of superposition and homogeneity is called a non-linear system.

Homogeneity property means a system which produces an output  $y(t)$  for an input  $x(t)$  must produce an output  $ay(t)$  for an input  $ax(t)$ .

Superposition property means a system which produces an output  $y_1(t)$  for an input  $x_1(t)$  and an output  $y_2(t)$  for an input  $x_2(t)$  must produce an output  $y_1(t) + y_2(t)$  for an input  $x_1(t) + x_2(t)$ .

Combining them we can say that a system is linear if an arbitrary input  $x_1(t)$  produces an output  $y_1(t)$  and an arbitrary input  $x_2(t)$  produces an output  $y_2(t)$ , then the weighted sum of inputs  $ax_1(t) + bx_2(t)$ , where  $a$  and  $b$  are constants, produces an output  $ay_1(t) + by_2(t)$  which is the sum of weighted outputs. That is,

$$T[ax_1(t) + bx_2(t)] = aT[x_1(t)] + bT[x_2(t)]$$

For discrete-time linear system,

$$T[ax_1(n) + bx_2(n)] = aT[x_1(n)] + bT[x_2(n)]$$

Simply we can say that a system is linear if the output due to weighted sum of inputs is equal to the weighted sum of outputs.

In general, if the describing equation contains square or higher order terms of input and/or output and/or product of input/output and its derivative or a constant, the system will definitely be non-linear.

Few examples of linear systems are filters, communication channels, etc.

**EXAMPLE 2.3** Check whether the following systems are linear or not:

$$(a) \frac{d^2y(t)}{dt^2} + 2t y(t) = t^2 x(t)$$

$$(b) \quad 2 \frac{dy(t)}{dt} + 5y(t) = x^2(t)$$

$$(c) \quad \frac{dy(t)}{dt} + y(t) = x(t) \frac{dx(t)}{dt}$$

$$(d) \quad y(t) = x(t^2)$$

$$(e) \quad y(t) = \int_{-\infty}^t x(\tau) d\tau$$

$$(f) \quad y(t) = 2x^2(t)$$

$$(g) \quad y(t) = e^{x(t)}$$

$$(h) \quad y(n) = n^2 x(n)$$

$$(i) \quad y(n) = x(n) + \frac{1}{2x(n-2)}$$

$$(j) \quad y(n) = 2x(n) + 4$$

$$(k) \quad y(n) = x(n) \cos \omega n$$

**Solution:**

(a) Given

$$\frac{d^2y(t)}{dt^2} + 2t y(t) = t^2 x(t)$$

Let an input  $x_1(t)$  produce an output  $y_1(t)$ .

Then

$$\frac{d^2y_1(t)}{dt^2} + 2ty_1(t) = t^2 x_1(t)$$

Let an input  $x_2(t)$  produce an output  $y_2(t)$ .

Then

$$\frac{d^2y_2(t)}{dt^2} + 2ty_2(t) = t^2x_2(t)$$

Linear combination of the above equations gives

$$a \frac{d^2y_1(t)}{dt^2} + a2ty_1(t) + b \frac{d^2y_2(t)}{dt^2} + b2ty_2(t) = at^2x_1(t) + bt^2x_2(t)$$

$$\text{i.e. } 2 \frac{d^2}{dt^2} \underbrace{[ay_1(t) + by_2(t)]}_{\substack{\text{Weighted sum} \\ \text{of outputs}}} + 2t \underbrace{[ay_1(t) + by_2(t)]}_{\substack{\text{Weighted sum} \\ \text{of outputs}}} = t^2 \underbrace{[ax_1(t) + bx_2(t)]}_{\substack{\text{Weighted sum} \\ \text{of inputs}}}$$

This shows that the weighted sum of inputs to the system produces an output which is equal to the weighted sum of outputs to each of the individual inputs. Therefore, the system is linear.

**Note:** If RHS is function of weighted sum of inputs and LHS is function of weighted sum of outputs, then the system is linear.

(b) Given

$$2 \frac{dy(t)}{dt} + 5y(t) = x^2(t)$$

If an input  $x_1(t)$  produces an output  $y_1(t)$ , then

$$2 \frac{dy_1(t)}{dt} + 5y_1(t) = x_1^2(t)$$

Similarly, if an input  $x_2(t)$  produces an output  $y_2(t)$ , then

$$2 \frac{dy_2(t)}{dt} + 5y_2(t) = x_2^2(t)$$

The linear combination of the above equations can be written as:

$$\text{i.e. } 2 \frac{d}{dt} \underbrace{[ay_1(t) + by_2(t)]}_{\substack{\text{Weighted sum} \\ \text{of outputs}}} + 5 \underbrace{[ay_1(t) + by_2(t)]}_{\substack{\text{Weighted sum} \\ \text{of outputs}}} = \underbrace{ax_1^2(t) + bx_2^2(t)}_{\substack{\text{Not a weighted} \\ \text{sum of inputs}}}$$

The RHS is not a function of weighted sum of inputs. Hence superposition principle is not satisfied. Therefore, the system is non-linear.

(c) Given

$$\frac{dy(t)}{dt} + y(t) = x(t) \frac{dx(t)}{dt}$$

Let an input  $x_1(t)$  produce an output  $y_1(t)$ .

Then

$$\frac{dy_1(t)}{dt} + y_1(t) = x_1(t) \frac{dx_1(t)}{dt}$$

Let an input  $x_2(t)$  produce an output  $y_2(t)$ .

Then

$$\frac{dy_2(t)}{dt} + y_2(t) = x_2(t) \frac{dx_2(t)}{dt}$$

The linear combination of the above equations can be written as:

$$a \frac{dy_1(t)}{dt} + ay_1(t) + b \frac{dy_2(t)}{dt} + by_2(t) = ax_1(t) \frac{dx_1(t)}{dt} + bx_2(t) \frac{dx_2(t)}{dt}$$

$$\text{i.e. } \underbrace{\frac{d}{dt} [ay_1(t) + by_2(t)]}_{\substack{\text{Weighted sum} \\ \text{of outputs}}} + \underbrace{[ay_1(t) + by_2(t)]}_{\substack{\text{Weighted sum} \\ \text{of outputs}}} = \underbrace{\left[ ax_1(t) \frac{dx_1(t)}{dt} + bx_2(t) \frac{dx_2(t)}{dt} \right]}_{\substack{\text{Not a weighted sum} \\ \text{of inputs}}}$$

Since the RHS is not a weighted sum of inputs, superposition principle is not satisfied. Therefore, the system is non-linear.

(d) Given  $y(t) = x(t^2)$

Let an input  $x_1(t)$  produce an output  $y_1(t)$ .

Then

$$y_1(t) = x_1(t^2)$$

Let an input  $x_2(t)$  produce an output  $y_2(t)$ .

Then

$$y_2(t) = x_2(t^2)$$

The linear combination of the above equations can be written as:

$$\underbrace{ay_1(t) + by_2(t)}_{\substack{\text{Weighted sum} \\ \text{of outputs}}} = \underbrace{ax_1(t^2) + bx_2(t^2)}_{\substack{\text{Weighted sum} \\ \text{of inputs}}}$$

The LHS is a function of weighted sum of outputs and the RHS is a function of weighted sum of inputs. The superposition principle is satisfied. Therefore, the system is linear.

(e) Given

$$y(t) = \int_{-\infty}^t x(\tau) d\tau$$

$$y(t) = T[x(t)] = \int_{-\infty}^t x(\tau) d\tau$$

Let an input  $x_1(t)$  produce an output  $y_1(t)$ .

Then

$$y_1(t) = T[x_1(t)] = \int_{-\infty}^t x_1(\tau) d\tau$$

Let an input  $x_2(t)$  produce an output  $y_2(t)$ .

Then

$$y_2(t) = T[x_2(t)] = \int_{-\infty}^t x_2(\tau) d\tau$$

The weighted sum of outputs is:

$$ay_1(t) + by_2(t) = a \int_{-\infty}^t x_1(\tau) d\tau + b \int_{-\infty}^t x_2(\tau) d\tau = \int_{-\infty}^t [ax_1(\tau) + bx_2(\tau)] d\tau$$

The output due to weighted sum of inputs is:

$$y_3(t) = T[ax_1(t) + bx_2(t)] = \int_{-\infty}^t [ax_1(\tau) + bx_2(\tau)] d\tau$$

$$y_3(t) = ay_1(t) + by_2(t)$$

The weighted sum of outputs is equal to the output due to weighted sum of inputs. The superposition principle is satisfied. Therefore, the system is linear.

(f) Given

$$y(t) = 2x^2(t)$$

$$y(t) = T[x(t)] = 2x^2(t)$$

For an input  $x_1(t)$ ,

$$y_1(t) = T[x_1(t)] = 2x_1^2(t)$$

For an input  $x_2(t)$ ,

$$y_2(t) = T[x_2(t)] = 2x_2^2(t)$$

The weighted sum of outputs is:

$$ay_1(t) + by_2(t) = a[2x_1^2(t)] + b[2x_2^2(t)] = 2[ax_1^2(t) + bx_2^2(t)]$$

The output due to weighted sum of inputs is:

$$y_3(t) = T[ax_1(t) + bx_2(t)] = 2[ax_1(t) + bx_2(t)]^2$$

$$y_3(t) \neq ay_1(t) + by_2(t)$$

The weighted sum of outputs is not equal to the output due to weighted sum of inputs. The superposition principle is not satisfied. Therefore, the system is non-linear.

(g) Given

$$y(t) = e^{x(t)}$$

$$y(t) = T[x(t)] = e^{x(t)}$$

For an input  $x_1(t)$ ,

$$y_1(t) = T[x_1(t)] = e^{x_1(t)}$$

For an input  $x_2(t)$ ,

$$y_2(t) = T[x_2(t)] = e^{x_2(t)}$$

The weighted sum of outputs is:

$$ay_1(t) + by_2(t) = ae^{x_1(t)} + be^{x_2(t)}$$

The output due to weighted sum of inputs is:

$$y_3(t) = T[ax_1(t) + bx_2(t)] = e^{[ax_1(t) + bx_2(t)]}$$

$$y_3(t) \neq ay_1(t) + by_2(t)$$

The weighted sum of outputs is not equal to the output due to weighted sum of inputs. The superposition principle is not satisfied. Therefore the system is non-linear.

(h) Given

$$y(n) = n^2x(n)$$

$$y(n) = T[x(n)] = n^2x(n)$$

Let an input  $x_1(n)$  produce an output  $y_1(n)$ .

$$\therefore y_1(n) = T[x_1(n)] = n^2x_1(n)$$

Let an input  $x_2(n)$  produce an output  $y_2(n)$ .

$$\therefore y_2(n) = T[x_2(n)] = n^2x_2(n)$$

The weighted sum of outputs is:

$$ay_1(n) + by_2(n) = a[n^2x_1(n)] + b[n^2x_2(n)] = n^2[ax_1(n) + bx_2(n)]$$

The output due to weighted sum of inputs is:

$$y_3(n) = T[ax_1(n) + bx_2(n)] = n^2[ax_1(n) + bx_2(n)]$$

$$y_3(n) = ay_1(n) + by_2(n)$$

The weighted sum of outputs is equal to the output due to weighted sum of inputs. The superposition principle is satisfied. Therefore, the given system is linear.

(i) Given

$$y(n) = x(n) + \frac{1}{2x(n-2)}$$

$$y(n) = T[x(n)] = x(n) + \frac{1}{2x(n-2)}$$

For an input  $x_1(n)$ ,

$$y_1(n) = T[x_1(n)] = x_1(n) + \frac{1}{2x_1(n-2)}$$

For an input  $x_2(n)$ ,

$$y_2(n) = T[x_2(n)] = x_2(n) + \frac{1}{2x_2(n-2)}$$

The weighted sum of outputs is given by

$$\begin{aligned} ay_1(n) + by_2(n) &= a\left[x_1(n) + \frac{1}{2x_1(n-2)}\right] + b\left[x_2(n) + \frac{1}{2x_2(n-2)}\right] \\ &= [ax_1(n) + bx_2(n)] + \frac{a}{2x_1(n-2)} + \frac{b}{2x_2(n-2)} \end{aligned}$$

The output due to weighted sum of inputs is:

$$y_3(n) = T[ax_1(n) + bx_2(n)] = [ax_1(n) + bx_2(n)] + \frac{1}{2[ax_1(n-2) + bx_2(n-2)]}$$

$$y_3(n) \neq ay_1(n) + by_2(n)$$

The weighted sum of outputs is not equal to the output due to weighted sum of inputs. The superposition principle is not satisfied. Therefore, the given system is non-linear.

- (j) Given  $y(n) = 2x(n) + 4$

$$y(n) = T[x(n)] = 2x(n) + 4$$

For an input  $x_1(n)$ ,

$$y_1(n) = T[x_1(n)] = 2x_1(n) + 4$$

For an input  $x_2(n)$ ,

$$y_2(n) = T[x_2(n)] = 2x_2(n) + 4$$

The weighted sum of outputs is:

$$ay_1(n) + by_2(n) = a[2x_1(n) + 4] + b[2x_2(n) + 4] = 2[ax_1(n) + bx_2(n)] + 4(a + b)$$

The output due to weighted sum of inputs is:

$$y_3(n) = T[ax_1(n) + bx_2(n)] = 2[ax_1(n) + bx_2(n)] + 4$$

$$y_3(n) \neq ay_1(n) + by_2(n)$$

The weighted sum of outputs is not equal to the output due to weighted sum of inputs. The superposition principle is not satisfied. Therefore, the given system is non-linear.

- (k) Given  $y(n) = x(n) \cos \omega n$

$$y(n) = T[x(n)] = x(n) \cos \omega n$$

For an input  $x_1(n)$ ,

$$y_1(n) = T[x_1(n)] = x_1(n) \cos \omega n$$

For an input  $x_2(n)$ ,

$$y_2(n) = T[x_2(n)] = x_2(n) \cos \omega n$$

The weighted sum of outputs is:

$$ay_1(n) + by_2(n) = ax_1(n) \cos \omega n + bx_2(n) \cos \omega n = [ax_1(n) + bx_2(n)] \cos \omega n$$

The output due to weighted sum of inputs is:

$$y_3(n) = T[ax_1(n) + bx_2(n)] = [ax_1(n) + bx_2(n)] \cos \omega n$$

$$y_3(n) = ay_1(n) + by_2(n)$$

The weighted sum of outputs is equal to the output due to weighted sum of inputs. The superposition principle is satisfied. Therefore, the given system is linear.

### 2.2.5 Time-invariant and Time-varying Systems

Time-invariance is the property of a system which makes the behaviour of the system independent of time. This means that the behaviour of the system does not depend on the time at which the input is applied.

A system is said to be time-invariant (or shift-invariant) if its input/output characteristics do not change with time, i.e. if a time shift in the input results in a corresponding time shift in the output as shown in Figure 2.4, i.e.

If

$$x(t) \rightarrow y(t)$$

Then

$$x(t - T) \rightarrow y(t - T)$$

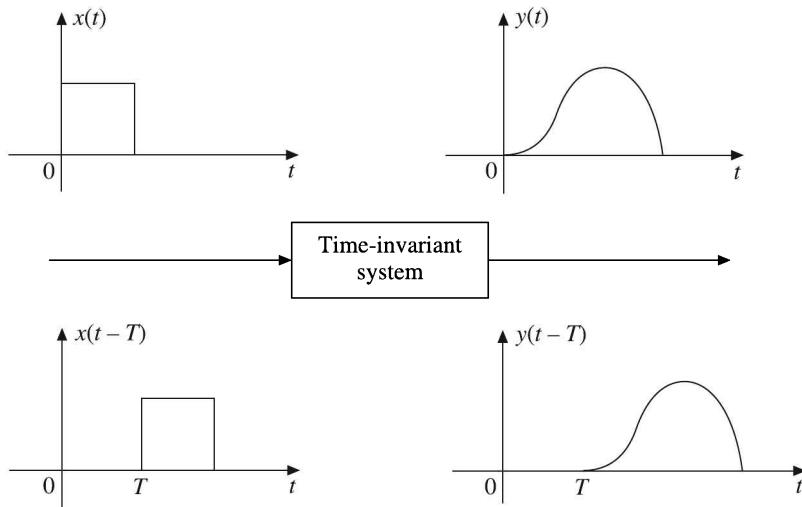


Figure 2.4 Time-invariant system.

A system not satisfying the above requirements is called a time-varying system (or shift varying system)

The time-invariance property of the given continuous-time system can be tested as follows:

Let  $x(t)$  be the input and let  $x(t - T)$  be the input delayed by  $T$  units.

$y(t) = T[x(t)]$  be the output for an input  $x(t)$ .

$y(t, T) = T[x(t - T)] = y(t)|_{x(t)=x(t-T)}$  be the output for the delayed input  $x(t - T)$ .

$y(t - T) = y(t)|_{t=t-T}$  be the output delayed by  $T$  units.

If

$$y(t, T) = y(t - T)$$

i.e. if the delayed output is equal to the output due to delayed input for all possible values of  $t$ , then the system is time-invariant.

On the other hand, if

$$y(t, T) \neq y(t - T)$$

i.e. if the delayed output is not equal to the output due to delayed input, then the system is time-variant.

If the continuous-time system is described by differential equation, the time-invariance can be found by observing the coefficients of the differential equation. If the coefficients of the differential equation are constants, then the system is time-invariant. If the coefficients are functions of time, then the system is time-variant.

The system described by

$$3\frac{d^2y(t)}{dt^2} + 2\frac{dy(t)}{dt} + 4y(t) = 5x(t)$$

is time-invariant system because all the coefficients are constants.

The system described by

$$\frac{d^2y(t)}{dt} + 2t\frac{dy(t)}{dt} + 3t^2y(t) = 4x(t)$$

is time varying system because all the coefficients are not constant. (Two are functions of time).

For discrete-time systems, the time invariance property is called shift invariance. The time invariance property of the given discrete-time system can be tested as follows:

Let  $x(n)$  be the input and let  $x(n - k)$  be the input delayed by  $k$  units.

$y(n) = T[x(n)]$  be the output for the input  $x(n)$ .

$y(n, k) = T[x(n, k)] = y(n)|_{x(n)=x(n-k)}$  be the output for the delayed input  $x(n - k)$ .

$y(n - k) = y(n)|_{n=n-k}$  be the output delayed by  $k$  units.

If

$$y(n, k) = y(n - k)$$

i.e. if delayed output is equal to the output due to delayed input for all possible values of  $k$ , then the system is time-invariant.

On the other hand, if

$$y(n, k) \neq y(n - k)$$

i.e. if the delayed output is not equal to the output due to delayed input, then the system is time-variant.

If the discrete-time system is described by difference equation, the time invariance can be found by observing the coefficients of the difference equation.

If the coefficients of the difference equation are constants, then the system is time-invariant. If the coefficients are functions of time, then the system is time-variant.

The system described by

$$y(n) + 3y(n - 1) + 5y(n - 2) = 2x(n)$$

is time-invariant system because all the coefficients are constants.

The system described by

$$y(n) - 2ny(n - 1) + 3n^2y(n - 2) = x(n) + x(n - 1)$$

is time-varying system because all the coefficients are not constant (Two are functions of time).

The systems satisfying both linearity and time-invariance properties are popularly known as linear time-invariant or simply LTI systems.

**EXAMPLE 2.4** Determine whether the following systems are time-invariant or not:

- |                               |                                |
|-------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| (a) $y(t) = t^2 x(t)$         | (b) $y(t) = x(t) \sin 10\pi t$ |
| (c) $y(t) = x(t^2)$           | (d) $y(t) = x(-2t)$            |
| (e) $y(t) = e^{2x(t)}$        | (f) $y(n) = x(n/2)$            |
| (g) $y(n) = x(n)$             | (h) $y(n) = x^2(n - 2)$        |
| (i) $y(n) = x(n) + nx(n - 2)$ |                                |

**Solution:**

(a) Given

$$y(t) = t^2 x(t)$$

$$y(t) = T[x(t)] = t^2 x(t)$$

The output due to input delayed by  $T$  sec is:

$$y(t, T) = T[x(t - T)] = y(t) \Big|_{x(t)=x(t-T)} = t^2 x(t - T)$$

The output delayed by  $T$  sec is:

$$y(t - T) = y(t) \Big|_{t=t-T} = (t - T)^2 x(t - T)$$

$$y(t, T) \neq y(t - T)$$

i.e. the delayed output is not equal to the output due to delayed input.

Therefore, the system is time-variant.

(b) Given

$$y(t) = x(t) \sin 10\pi t$$

$$y(t) = T[x(t)] = x(t) \sin 10\pi t$$

The output due to input delayed by  $T$  sec is:

$$y(t, T) = T[x(t - T)] = y(t) \Big|_{x(t)=x(t-T)} = x(t - T) \sin 10\pi t$$

The output delayed by  $T$  sec is:

$$y(t - T) = y(t) \Big|_{t=t-T} = x(t - T) \sin 10\pi(t - T)$$

$$y(t, T) \neq y(t - T)$$

i.e. the delayed output is not equal to the output due to delayed input.

Therefore, the system is time-variant.

(c) Given

$$y(t) = x(t^2)$$

$$y(t) = T[x(t)] = x(t^2)$$

The output due to input delayed by  $T$  sec is:

$$y(t, T) = T[x(t - T)] = y(t) \Big|_{x(t)=x(t-T)} = x(t^2 - T)$$

The output delayed by  $T$  sec is:

$$y(t - T) = y(t)|_{t=t-T} = x[(t - T)^2]$$

$$y(t, T) \neq y(t - T)$$

i.e. the delayed output is not equal to the output due to delayed input.  
Therefore, the system is time-variant.

(d) Given

$$y(t) = x(-2t)$$

$$y(t) = T[x(t)] = x(-2t)$$

The output due to input delayed by  $T$  sec is:

$$y(t, T) = T[x(t - T)] = y(t)|_{x(t)=x(t-T)} = x(-2t - T)$$

The output delayed by  $T$  sec is:

$$y(t - T) = y(t)|_{t=t-T} = x[-2(t - T)] = x(-2t + 2T)$$

$$y(t, T) \neq y(t - T)$$

i.e. the delayed output is not equal to the output due to delayed input.  
Therefore, the system is time-variant.

(e) Given

$$y(t) = e^{2x(t)}$$

$$y(t) = T[x(t)] = e^{2x(t)}$$

The output due to input delayed by  $T$  sec is:

$$y(t, T) = T[x(t - T)] = y(t)|_{x(t)=x(t-T)} = e^{2x(t-T)}$$

The output delayed by  $T$  sec is:

$$y(t - T) = y(t)|_{t=t-T} = e^{2x(t-T)}$$

$$y(t, T) = y(t - T)$$

i.e. the delayed output is equal to the output due to delayed input.  
Therefore, the system is time-invariant.

(f) Given

$$y(n) = x\left(\frac{n}{2}\right)$$

$$y(n) = T[x(n)] = x\left(\frac{n}{2}\right)$$

The output due to input delayed by  $k$  units is:

$$y(n, k) = T[x(n - k)] = y(n)|_{x(n)=x(n-k)} = x\left(\frac{n}{2} - k\right)$$

The output delayed by  $k$  units is:

$$y(n - k) = y(n)|_{n=n-k} = x\left(\frac{n-k}{2}\right)$$

$$y(n, k) \neq y(n - k)$$

i.e. the delayed output is not equal to the output due to delayed input.  
Therefore, the system is time-variant.

(g) Given

$$y(n) = x(n)$$

$$y(n) = T[x(n)] = x(n)$$

The output due to input delayed by  $k$  units is:

$$y(n, k) = T[x(n - k)] = y(n)|_{x(n)=x(n-k)} = x(n - k)$$

The output delayed by  $k$  units is:

$$y(n - k) = y(n)|_{n=n-k} = x(n - k)$$

$$y(n, k) = y(n - k)$$

i.e. the delayed output is equal to the output due to delayed input.  
Therefore, the system is time-invariant.

(h) Given

$$y(n) = x^2(n - 2)$$

$$y(n) = T[x(n)] = x^2(n - 2)$$

The output due to input delayed by  $k$  units is:

$$y(n, k) = T[x(n - k)] = y(n)|_{x(n)=x(n-k)} = x^2(n - 2 - k)$$

The output delayed by  $k$  units is:

$$y(n - k) = y(n)|_{n=n-k} = x^2(n - 2 - k)$$

$$y(n, k) = y(n - k)$$

i.e. the delayed output is equal to the output due to delayed input.  
Therefore, the system is time-invariant.

(i) Given

$$y(n) = x(n) + nx(n - 2)$$

$$y(n) = T[x(n)] = x(n) + nx(n - 2)$$

The output due to input delayed by  $k$  units is:

$$y(n, k) = T[x(n - k)] = y(n)|_{x(n)=x(n-k)} = x(n - k) + nx(n - 2 - k)$$

The output delayed by  $k$  units is:

$$y(n - k) = y(n)|_{n=n-k} = x(n - k) + (n - k)x(n - k - 2)$$

$$y(n, k) \neq y(n - k)$$

i.e. the delayed output is not equal to the output due to delayed input.  
Therefore, the system is time-variant.

**EXAMPLE 2.5** Show that the following systems are linear time-invariant systems:

$$(a) \quad y(t) = x\left(\frac{t}{2}\right)$$

$$(b) \quad y(t) = \begin{cases} x(t) + x(t-2) & \text{for } t \geq 0 \\ 0 & \text{for } t < 0 \end{cases}$$

**Solution:** To show that a given system is a linear time-invariant system we have to show separately that it is linear and time-invariant.

(a) Given

$$y(t) = x\left(\frac{t}{2}\right)$$

For inputs  $x_1(t)$  and  $x_2(t)$ ,

$$y_1(t) = x_1\left(\frac{t}{2}\right)$$

$$y_2(t) = x_2\left(\frac{t}{2}\right)$$

The weighted sum of outputs is:

$$ay_1(t) + by_2(t) = ax_1\left(\frac{t}{2}\right) + bx_2\left(\frac{t}{2}\right)$$

The output due to weighted sum of inputs is:

$$y_3(t) = T[ax_1(t) + bx_2(t)] = ax_1\left(\frac{t}{2}\right) + bx_2\left(\frac{t}{2}\right)$$

$$y_3(t) = ay_1(t) + by_2(t)$$

So the system is linear.

$$y(t, T) = y(t)|_{x(t)=x(t-T)} = x\left(\frac{t}{2} - T\right)$$

$$y(t-T) = y(t)|_{t=t-T} = x\left(\frac{t-T}{2}\right)$$

$$y(t, T) \neq y(t-T)$$

So the system is time varying.

Hence the given system is linear but time varying. It is not a linear time-invariant system.

(b) Given

$$y(t) = \begin{cases} x(t) + x(t-2) & \text{for } t \geq 0 \\ 0 & \text{for } t < 0 \end{cases}$$

For inputs  $x_1(t)$  and  $x_2(t)$ ,

$$y_1(t) = x_1(t) + x_1(t-2) \quad \text{for } t \geq 0$$

$$y_2(t) = x_2(t) + x_2(t-2) \quad \text{for } t \geq 0$$

The weighted sum of outputs is:

$$ay_1(t) + by_2(t) = a[x_1(t) + x_1(t-2)] + b[x_2(t) + x_2(t-2)]$$

The output due to weighted sum of inputs is:

$$y_3(t) = T[ax_1(t) + bx_2(t)] = [ax_1(t) + bx_2(t)] + ax_1(t-2) + bx_2(t-2)$$

$$y_3(t) = ay_1(t) + by_2(t)$$

So the system is linear.

$$y(t, T) = y(t) \Big|_{x(t)=x(t-T)} = x(t-T) + x(t-2-T)$$

$$y(t-T) = y(t) \Big|_{t=t-T} = x(t-T) + x(t-T-2)$$

$$y(t, T) = y(t-T)$$

So the system is time-invariant. Hence the given system is linear time-invariant.

**EXAMPLE 2.6** Check whether the following systems are:

1. Static or dynamic
2. Linear or non-linear
3. Causal or non-causal
4. Time-invariant or time-variant

$$(a) \frac{d^3y(t)}{dt^3} + 2\frac{d^2y(t)}{dt^2} + 4\frac{dy(t)}{dt} + 3y^2(t) = x(t+1)$$

$$(b) \frac{d^2y(t)}{dt^2} + 2y(t)\frac{dy(t)}{dt} + 3t y(t) = x(t)$$

$$(c) y(t) = ev\{x(t)\}$$

$$(d) y(t) = at^2 x(t) + bt x(t-4)$$

$$(e) y(n) = x(n) x(n-2)$$

$$(f) y(n) = \log_{10}|x(n)|$$

$$(g) y(n) = a^n u(n)$$

$$(h) y(n) = x^2(n) + \frac{1}{x^2(n-1)}$$

**Solution:**

(a) Given

$$\frac{d^3y(t)}{dt^3} + 2\frac{d^2y(t)}{dt^2} + 4\frac{dy(t)}{dt} + 3y^2(t) = x(t+1)$$

1. The system is described by a differential equation. Hence the system is dynamic.
2. There is a square term of output [i.e.  $y^2(t)$ ]. So the system is non-linear. This can be proved.

Let an input  $x_1(t)$  produce an output  $y_1(t)$ . So the differential equation becomes

$$\frac{d^3y_1(t)}{dt^3} + 2\frac{d^2y_1(t)}{dt^2} + 4\frac{dy_1(t)}{dt} + 3y_1^2(t) = x_1(t+1)$$

Let an input  $x_2(t)$  produce an output  $y_2(t)$ . So the differential equation becomes

$$a \frac{d^3 y_2(t)}{dt^3} + 2 \frac{d^2 y_2(t)}{dt^2} + 4 \frac{dy_2(t)}{dt} + 3y_2^2(t) = x_2(t+1)$$

The linear combination of the above equations becomes

$$\begin{aligned} & a \frac{d^3 y_1(t)}{dt^3} + a2 \frac{d^2 y_1(t)}{dt^2} + a4 \frac{dy_1(t)}{dt} + a3y_1^2(t) \\ & + b \frac{d^3 y_2(t)}{dt^3} + b2 \frac{d^2 y_2(t)}{dt^2} + b4 \frac{dy_2(t)}{dt} + b3y_2^2(t) \\ & = ax_1(t+1) + bx_2(t+1) \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned} \text{i.e. } & \frac{d^3}{dt^3} [ay_1(t) + by_2(t)] + 2 \frac{d^2}{dt^2} [ay_1(t) + by_2(t)] + 4 \frac{d}{dt} [ay_1(t) + by_2(t)] \\ & + \underbrace{3[ay_1^2(t) + by_2^2(t)]}_{\substack{\text{Not a weighted} \\ \text{sum of outputs}}} = ax_1(t+1) + bx_2(t+1) \end{aligned}$$

Since one term in LHS is not a weighted sum of outputs, the superposition principle is not valid. Hence the system is non-linear.

3. The output depends on future values of input. Hence the system is non-causal.
4. All the coefficients of the differential equation are constant. Hence the system is time-invariant.

So the given system is dynamic, non-linear, non-causal and time-invariant.

$$(b) \text{ Given } \frac{d^2 y(t)}{dt^2} + 2y(t) \frac{dy(t)}{dt} + 3t y(t) = x(t)$$

1. The system is described by a differential equation. Hence the system is dynamic.
2. There is a term with product of output and its derivative {i.e.  $y(t)[dy(t)/dt]$ }. Hence the system is non-linear. This can be proved.

Let an input  $x_1(t)$  produce an output  $y_1(t)$

$$\text{Then } \frac{d^2 y_1(t)}{dt^2} + 2y_1(t) \frac{dy_1(t)}{dt} + 3t y_1(t) = x_1(t)$$

Let an input  $x_2(t)$  produce an output  $y_2(t)$ .

$$\text{Then } \frac{d^2 y_2(t)}{dt^2} + 2y_2(t) \frac{dy_2(t)}{dt} + 3t y_2(t) = x_2(t)$$

The linear combination of the above equations gives

$$\begin{aligned} & a \frac{d^2 y_1(t)}{dt^2} + a2 y_1(t) \frac{dy_1(t)}{dt} + a3 t y_1(t) + \frac{bd^2 y_2(t)}{dt^2} + b2 y_2(t) \frac{dy_2(t)}{dt} + b3 t y_2(t) \\ & = ax_1(t) + bx_2(t) \end{aligned}$$

$$\text{i.e. } \frac{d^2}{dt^2} [ay_1(t) + by_2(t)] + 2 \underbrace{\left[ ay_1(t) \frac{dy_1(t)}{dt} + by_2(t) \frac{dy_2(t)}{dt} \right]}_{\text{Not a weighted sum of outputs}} + 3t[ay_1(t) + by_2(t)] \\ = [ax_1(t) + bx_2(t)]$$

Since one term in LHS is not a weighted sum of outputs, the superposition principle is not valid. Hence the system is non-linear.

3. The output depends on present input only. Hence the system is causal.
4. All the coefficients of the differential equation are not constants. One coefficient is a function of time. Hence the system is time-variant.

So the given system is dynamic, non-linear, causal and time-variant.

(c) Given

$$y(t) = ev\{x(t)\}$$

$$y(t) = ev\{x(t)\} = \frac{1}{2}[x(t) + x(-t)]$$

1. For positive values of  $t$ , the output depends on past values of input and for negative values of  $t$ , the output depends on future values of input. Hence the system is dynamic.

$$2. \quad y(t) = T[x(t)] = \frac{1}{2}[x(t) + x(-t)]$$

For an input  $x_1(t)$ ,

$$y_1(t) = \frac{1}{2}[x_1(t) + x_1(-t)]$$

For an input  $x_2(t)$ ,

$$y_2(t) = \frac{1}{2}[x_2(t) + x_2(-t)]$$

The weighted sum of outputs is:

$$ay_1(t) + by_2(t) = a \frac{1}{2}[x_1(t) + x_1(-t)] + b \frac{1}{2}[x_2(t) + x_2(-t)] \\ = \frac{1}{2}\{[ax_1(t) + bx_2(t)] + [ax_1(-t) + bx_2(-t)]\}$$

The output due to weighted sum of inputs is:

$$y_3(t) = T[ax_1(t) + bx_2(t)] = \frac{1}{2}\{[ax_1(t) + bx_2(t)] + [ax_1(-t) + bx_2(-t)]\}$$

$$y_3(t) = ay_1(t) + by_2(t)$$

The weighted sum of outputs is equal to the output due to weighted sum of inputs. Hence superposition principle is valid and the system is linear.

3.  $y(-2) = \frac{1}{2}[x(-2) + x(2)]$

i.e. for negative values of  $t$ , the output depends on future values of input. Hence the system is non-causal.

4. Given  $y(t) = \frac{1}{2}[x(t) + x(-t)]$

The output due to input delayed by  $T$  units is:

$$y(t, T) = T[x(t - T)] = y(t)|_{x(t)=x(t-T)} = \frac{1}{2}[x(t - T) + x(-t - T)]$$

The output delayed by  $T$  units is:

$$y(t - T) = y(t)|_{t=t-T} = \frac{1}{2}[x(t - T) + x(-t + T)]$$

$$y(t, T) \neq y(t - T)$$

So the system is time-variant.

So the given system is dynamic, linear, non-causal and time-variant.

(d) Given  $y(t) = at^2 x(t) + bt x(t - 4)$

1. The output depends on past inputs. So it requires memory. Hence it is a dynamic system.

2. Given  $y(t) = at^2 x(t) + bt x(t - 4)$

For an input  $x_1(t)$ ,

$$y_1(t) = at^2 x_1(t) + btx_1(t - 4)$$

For an input  $x_2(t)$ ,

$$y_2(t) = at^2 x_2(t) + btx_2(t - 4)$$

The weighted sum of outputs is:

$$\begin{aligned} py_1(t) + qy_2(t) &= pat^2 x_1(t) + pbt x_1(t - 4) + quat^2 x_2(t) + qbt x_2(t - 4) \\ &= at^2[px_1(t) + qx_2(t)] + bt[px_1(t - 4) + qx_2(t - 4)] \end{aligned}$$

The output due to weighted sum of inputs is:

$$y_3(t) = T[px_1(t) + qx_2(t)] = at^2[px_1(t) + qx_2(t)] + bt[px_1(t - 4) + qx_2(t - 4)]$$

$$y_3(t) = ay_1(t) + by_2(t)$$

Superposition principle is satisfied. Hence the system is linear.

3. The output depends only on the present and past inputs. It does not depend on future inputs. Hence the system is causal.

4. Given  $y(t) = T[x(t)] = at^2 x(t) + bt x(t - 4)$

The output due to input delayed by  $T$  sec is:

$$y(t, T) = T[x(t - T)] = y(t)|_{x(t)=x(t-T)} = at^2 x(t - T) + bt x(t - 4 - T)$$

The output delayed by  $T$  sec is:

$$\begin{aligned} y(t - T) &= y(t)|_{t=t-T} = a(t - T)^2 x(t - T) + b(t - T)x(t - T - 4) \\ y(t, T) &\neq y(t - T) \end{aligned}$$

Hence the system is time-variant.

So the given system is dynamic, linear, causal and time-variant.

(e) Given

$$y(n) = x(n) x(n - 2)$$

1. The output depends on past values of input. So it requires memory. Hence the system is dynamic.
2. The only term contains the product of input and delayed input. So the system is non-linear. This can be proved.

Let an input  $x_1(n)$  produce an output  $y_1(n)$ .

Then

$$y_1(n) = x_1(n) x_1(n - 2)$$

Let an input  $x_2(n)$  produce an output  $y_2(n)$ .

Then

$$y_2(n) = x_2(n) x_2(n - 2)$$

The weighted sum of outputs is:

$$ay_1(n) + by_2(n) = ax_1(n) x_1(n - 2) + bx_2(n) x_2(n - 2)$$

The output due to weighted sum of inputs is:

$$y_3(n) = T[ax_1(n) + bx_2(n)] = [ax_1(n) + bx_2(n)][ax_1(n - 2) + bx_2(n - 2)]$$

$$y_3(n) \neq ay_1(n) + by_2(n)$$

Hence the system is non-linear.

3. The output depends only on the present and past values of input. It does not depend on future values of input. So the system is causal.

4. Given

$$y(n) = x(n) x(n - 2)$$

The output due to input delayed by  $k$  units is:

$$y(n, k) = y(n)|_{x(n)=x(n-k)} = x(n - k) x(n - 2 - k)$$

The output delayed by  $k$  units is:

$$y(n - k) = y(n)|_{n=n-k} = x(n - k) x(n - k - 2)$$

$$y(n, k) = y(n - k)$$

Hence the system is time-invariant.

So the given system is dynamic, non-linear, causal and time-invariant.

(f) Given

$$y(n) = \log_{10} |x(n)|$$

1. The output depends on present value of input only. Hence the system is static.
2. Given

$$y(n) = \log_{10} |x(n)|$$

Let an input  $x_1(n)$  produce an output  $y_1(n)$ .

Then

$$y_1(n) = \log_{10} |x_1(n)|$$

Let an input  $x_2(n)$  produce an output  $y_2(n)$ .

Then

$$y_2(n) = \log_{10} |x_2(n)|$$

The weighted sum of outputs is:

$$ay_1(n) + by_2(n) = a \log_{10} |x_1(n)| + b \log_{10} |x_2(n)|$$

The output due to weighted sum of inputs is:

$$y_3(n) = T[ax_1(n) + bx_2(n)] = \log_{10} |ax_1(n) + bx_2(n)|$$

$$y_3(n) \neq ay_1(n) + by_2(n)$$

Hence the system is non-linear.

3. The output does not depend upon future inputs. Hence the system is causal.

- 4.

$$y(n) = T[x(n)] = \log_{10} |x(n)|$$

The output due to input delayed by  $k$  units is:

$$y(n, k) = T[x(n - k)] = y(n)|_{x(n)=x(n-k)} = \log_{10} |x(n - k)|$$

The output delayed by  $k$  units is:

$$y(n - k) = y(n)|_{n=n-k} = \log_{10} |x(n - k)|$$

$$y(n, k) = y(n - k)$$

Hence the system is time-invariant.

So the given system is static, non-linear, causal and time-invariant.

(g) Given

$$y(n) = a^n x(n)$$

1. The output at any instant depends only on the present values of input. Hence the system is static.

2. Given

$$y(n) = a^n x(n)$$

For an input  $x_1(n)$ ,

$$y_1(n) = a^n x_1(n)$$

For an input  $x_2(n)$ ,

$$y_2(n) = a^n x_2(n)$$

The weighted sum of outputs is:

$$py_1(n) + qy_2(n) = pa^n x_1(n) + qa^n x_2(n) = a^n [px_1(n) + qx_2(n)]$$

The output due to weighted sum of inputs is:

$$y_3(n) = T[px_1(n) + qx_2(n)] = a^n[px_1(n) + qx_2(n)]$$

$$y_3(n) = py_1(n) + qy_2(n)$$

Hence the system is linear.

3. The output depends only on the present input. It does not depend on future inputs.  
Hence the system is causal.

4. Given  $y(n) = T[x(n)] = a^n x(n)$

The output due to input delayed by  $k$  units is:

$$y(n, k) = T[x(n - k)] = y(n)|_{x(n)=x(n-k)} = a^n x(n - k)$$

The output delayed by  $k$  units is:

$$y(n - k) = y(n)|_{n=n-k} = a^{n-k} x(n - k)$$

$$y(n, k) \neq y(n - k)$$

Hence the system is time-variant.

So the given system is static, linear, causal and time-variant.

(h) Given

$$y(n) = x^2(n) + \frac{1}{x^2(n-1)}$$

1. The output at any instant depends upon past input. So memory is required. Hence the system is dynamic.

2. Given

$$y(n) = x^2(n) + \frac{1}{x^2(n-1)}$$

There are square terms of input. So the system is non-linear. This can be proved.

For an input  $x_1(n)$ ,

$$y_1(n) = x_1^2(n) + \frac{1}{x_1^2(n-1)}$$

For an input  $x_2(n)$ ,

$$y_2(n) = x_2^2(n) + \frac{1}{x_2^2(n-1)}$$

The weighted sum of outputs is:

$$ay_1(n) + by_2(n) = ax_1^2(n) + \frac{a}{x_1^2(n-1)} + bx_2^2(n) + \frac{b}{x_2^2(n-1)}$$

The output due to weighted sum of inputs is:

$$y_3(n) = T[ax_1(n) + bx_2(n)] = [ax_1(n) + bx_2(n)]^2 + \frac{1}{[ax_1(n-1) + bx_2(n-1)]^2}$$

$$y_3(n) \neq ay_1(n) + by_2(n)$$

Hence the system is non-linear.

3. The output does not depend on future values of input. Hence the system is causal.

4. Given

$$y(n) = T[x(n)] = x^2(n) + \frac{1}{x^2(n-1)}$$

The output due to input delayed by  $k$  units is:

$$y(n, k) = T[x(n-k)] = y(n)|_{x(n)=x(n-k)} = x^2(n-k) + \frac{1}{x^2(n-1-k)}$$

The output delayed by  $k$  units is:

$$y(n-k) = y(n)|_{n=n-k} = x^2(n-k) + \frac{1}{x^2(n-k-1)}$$

$$y(n, k) = y(n-k)$$

Hence the system is time-invariant.

So the given system is dynamic, non-linear, causal and time-invariant.

## 2.2.6 Stable and Unstable Systems

A bounded signal is a signal whose magnitude is always a finite value. For example, a sinewave is a bounded signal. A system is said to be bounded-input, bounded-output (BIBO) stable, if and only if every bounded input produces a bounded output. The output of a stable system does not diverge or does not grow unreasonably large.

Let the input signal  $x(t)$  be bounded (finite), i.e.

$$|x(t)| \leq M_x < \infty \text{ for all } t$$

where  $M_x$  is a positive real number.

If

$$|y(t)| \leq M_y < \infty$$

i.e. if  $y(t)$  is also bounded, then the system is BIBO stable. Otherwise, the system is unstable. That is, we say that a system is unstable even if one bounded input produces an unbounded output.

It is very important to know about the stability of the system. Stability indicates the usefulness of the system. The stability can be found from the impulse response of the system which is nothing but the output of the system for a unit impulse input. If the impulse response is absolutely integrable for a continuous-time system or absolutely summable for a discrete-time system, then the system is stable.

### BIBO stability criterion

The necessary and sufficient condition for a system to be BIBO stable is given by the expression

$$\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} |h(t)| dt < \infty$$

where  $h(t)$  is the impulse response of the system. This is called BIBO stability criterion.

*Proof:* Consider a linear time-invariant system with  $x(t)$  as input and  $y(t)$  as output. The input and output of the system are related by the convolution integral.

$$y(t) = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} x(\tau) h(t - \tau) d\tau$$

Taking absolute values on both sides, we have

$$|y(t)| = \left| \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} x(\tau) h(t - \tau) d\tau \right|$$

Using the fact that the absolute value of the integral of the product of two terms is always less than or equal to the integral of the product of their absolute values, we have

$$\left| \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} x(\tau) h(t - \tau) d\tau \right| \leq \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} |x(\tau)| |h(t - \tau)| d\tau$$

If the input  $x(\tau)$  is bounded, i.e. there exists a finite number  $M_x$  such that,

$$|x(\tau)| \leq M_x < \infty$$

$$|y(t)| \leq M_x \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} |h(t - \tau)| d\tau$$

Changing the variables by  $m = t - \tau$ , the output is bounded if

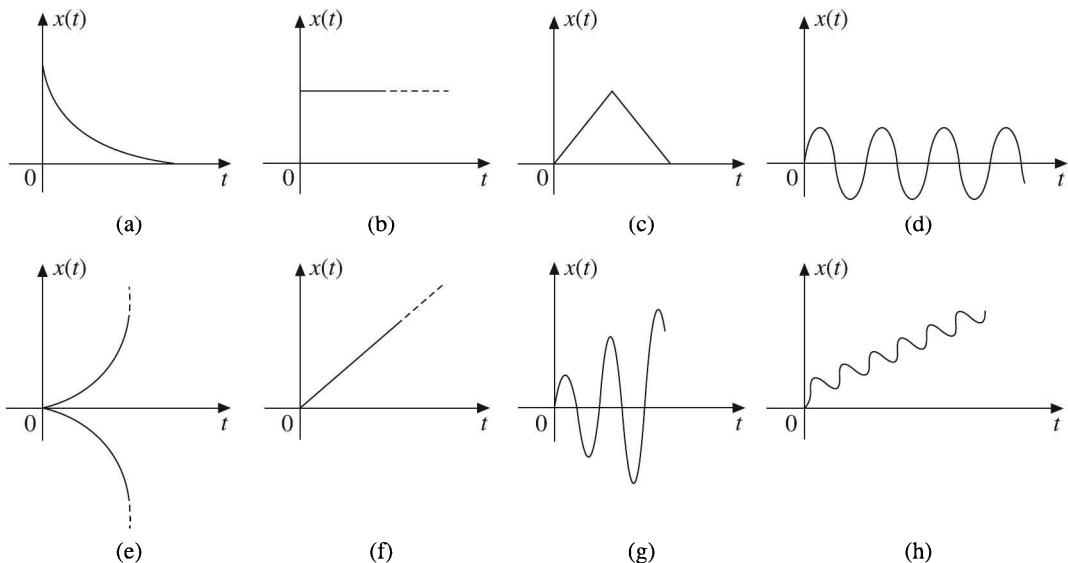
$$\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} |h(m)| dm < \infty$$

Replacing  $m$  by  $t$ , we have

$$\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} |h(t)| dt < \infty$$

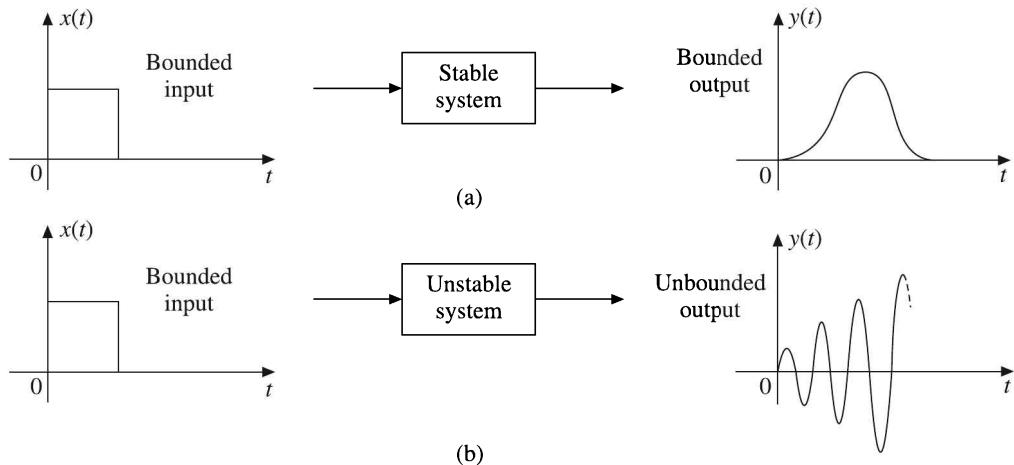
which is the necessary and sufficient condition for a system to be BIBO stable.

Figure 2.5 shows bounded and unbounded signals.



**Figure 2.5** (a), (b), (c), (d) Bounded signals, (e), (f), (g), (h) Unbounded signals.

Figure 2.6 shows stable and unstable systems.



**Figure 2.6** (a) Stable system, (b) Unstable system.

**EXAMPLE 2.7** Find whether the following systems are stable or not:

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| (a) $y(t) = e^{x(t)}$ ; $ x(t)  \leq 8$      | (b) $y(t) = (t + 5) u(t)$                |
| (c) $h(t) = (2 + e^{-3t}) u(t)$              | (d) $h(t) = e^{2t} u(t)$                 |
| (e) $y(t) = \int_{-\infty}^t x(\tau) d\tau$  | (f) $h(t) = \frac{1}{RC} e^{-t/RC} u(t)$ |
| (g) $h(t) = \omega_0  \sin \omega_0 t u(t) $ |  |

**Solution:**

(a) Given

$$y(t) = e^{x(t)}; |x(t)| \leq 8$$

Here the input is bounded,  $|x(t)| \leq 8$

Therefore for stability, the output must be bounded.

The output  $y(t)$  becomes

$$e^{-8} \leq y(t) \leq e^8$$

Hence  $y(t)$  is also bounded. Therefore, the system is stable.

(b) Given

$$y(t) = (t + 5) u(t)$$

$\therefore$

$$y(t) = t + 5 \quad \text{for } t \geq 0$$

So, as  $t \rightarrow \infty$ ,  $y(t) \rightarrow \infty$

Hence the output grows without any bound and hence the given system is unstable.

(c) Given

$$h(t) = (2 + e^{-3t}) u(t)$$

For a system to be stable,

$$\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} |h(t)| dt < \infty$$

$$\text{Here } \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} |h(t)| dt = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} (2 + e^{-3t}) u(t) dt = \int_0^{\infty} (2 + e^{-3t}) dt = \left[ 2t + \frac{e^{-3t}}{-3} \right]_0^{\infty} = \infty$$

Since the impulse response is not absolutely integrable, i.e. since  $\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} |h(t)| dt = \infty$ ,  
the system is unstable.

(d) Given

$$h(t) = e^{2t} u(t)$$

$\therefore$

$$\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} |h(t)| dt = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} |e^{2t} u(t)| dt = \int_0^{\infty} e^{2t} dt = \left[ \frac{e^{2t}}{2} \right]_0^{\infty} = \infty$$

Since the impulse response is not absolutely integrable, i.e. since  $\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} |h(t)| dt = \infty$ ,  
the system is unstable.

(e) Given

$$y(t) = \int_{-\infty}^t x(\tau) d\tau$$

For an input  $\delta(t)$ ,

$$y(t) = h(t)$$

Therefore,

$$h(t) = \int_{-\infty}^t \delta(\tau) d\tau = u(t)$$

For stability,

$$\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} |h(t)| dt < \infty$$

In this case,

$$\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} |h(t)| dt = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} u(t) dt = \infty$$

Therefore, the impulse response is unbounded and the system is unstable.

(f) Given

$$h(t) = \frac{1}{RC} e^{-t/RC} u(t)$$

For stability,

$$\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} |h(t)| dt < \infty$$

In this case,

$$\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} |h(t)| dt = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \left| \frac{1}{RC} e^{-t/RC} u(t) \right| dt = \int_0^{\infty} \left| \frac{1}{RC} e^{-t/RC} \right| dt = 1$$

Therefore, the system is stable.

(g) Given

$$h(t) = \omega_0 |\sin \omega_0 t| u(t)$$

$$\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} |h(\tau)| d\tau = \omega_0 \int_0^{\infty} |\sin \omega_0 \tau| d\tau$$

This integral does not converge and so output is not bounded. Hence the system is unstable.

**EXAMPLE 2.8** Check the stability of the system defined by

(a)  $y(n) = ax(n - 7)$

(b)  $y(n) = x(n) + \frac{1}{2} x(n - 1) + \frac{1}{4} x(n - 2)$

(c)  $h(n) = a^n \quad \text{for } 0 < n < 11$

(d)  $h(n) = 2^n u(n)$

(e)  $h(n) = u(n)$

**Solution:**

(a) Given

$$y(n) = ax(n - 7)$$

Let

$$x(n) = \delta(n)$$

Then

$$y(n) = h(n)$$

$\therefore$

$$h(n) = a\delta(n - 7)$$

A system is stable if its impulse response  $h(n)$  is absolutely summable.

i.e.

$$\sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} |h(n)| < \infty$$

In this case,

$$\sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} |h(n)| = \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} a\delta(n-7) = a \quad \text{for } n=7$$

Hence the given system is stable if the value of  $a$  is finite.

(b) Given  $y(n) = x(n) + \frac{1}{2}x(n-1) + \frac{1}{4}x(n-2)$

Let  $x(n) = \delta(n)$

Then  $y(n) = h(n)$

$$\therefore h(n) = \delta(n) + \frac{1}{2}\delta(n-1) + \frac{1}{4}\delta(n-2)$$

A discrete-time system is stable if

$$\sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} |h(n)| < \infty$$

The given  $h(n)$  has a value only at  $n = 0$ ,  $n = 1$ , and  $n = 2$ . For all other values of  $n$  from  $-\infty$  to  $\infty$ ,  $h(n) = 0$ .

$$\text{At } n = 0, h(0) = \delta(0) + \frac{1}{2}\delta(0-1) + \frac{1}{4}\delta(0-2) = \delta(0) + \frac{1}{2}\delta(-1) + \frac{1}{4}\delta(-2) = 1$$

$$\text{At } n = 1, h(1) = \delta(1) + \frac{1}{2}\delta(1-1) + \frac{1}{4}\delta(1-2) = \delta(1) + \frac{1}{2}\delta(0) + \frac{1}{4}\delta(-1) = \frac{1}{2}$$

$$\text{At } n = 2, h(2) = \delta(2) + \frac{1}{2}\delta(2-1) + \frac{1}{4}\delta(2-2) = \delta(2) + \frac{1}{2}\delta(1) + \frac{1}{4}\delta(0) = \frac{1}{4}$$

$$\therefore \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} |h(n)| = 1 + \frac{1}{2} + \frac{1}{4} = \frac{7}{4} < \infty \quad (\text{a finite value})$$

Hence the system is stable.

(c) Given  $h(n) = a^n \quad \text{for } 0 < n < 11$

$$\sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} |h(n)| = \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} |a^n| = \sum_{n=0}^{11} a^n = \frac{1-a^{12}}{1-a}$$

This value is finite for finite value of  $a$ . Hence the system is stable if  $a$  is finite.

(d) Given

$$h(n) = 2^n u(n)$$

$$\sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} |h(n)| = \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} |2^n u(n)| = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} 2^n = \infty$$

The impulse response is not absolutely summable. Hence this system is unstable.

(e) Given

$$h(n) = u(n)$$

For stability,

$$\sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} |h(n)| < \infty$$

In this case,

$$\sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} |h(n)| = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} 1 = 1 + 1 + 1 + \dots = \infty$$

So the output is not bounded and the system is unstable.

**EXAMPLE 2.9** Check whether the following digital systems are BIBO stable or not:

- (a)  $y(n) = ax(n+1) + bx(n-1)$
- (b)  $y(n) = \text{maximum of } [x(n), x(n-1), x(n-2)]$
- (c)  $y(n) = ax(n) + b$
- (d)  $y(n) = e^{-x(n)}$
- (e)  $y(n) = ax(n) + bx^2(n-1)$

**Solution:**

- (a) Given  $y(n) = ax(n+1) + bx(n-1)$

If  $x(n) = \delta(n)$

Then  $y(n) = h(n)$

Hence the impulse response is:

$$h(n) = a\delta(n+1) + b\delta(n-1)$$

When  $n = 0, h(0) = a\delta(1) + b\delta(-1) = 0$

When  $n = 1, h(1) = a\delta(2) + b\delta(0) = b$

When  $n = 2, h(2) = a\delta(3) + b\delta(1) = 0$

In general,

$$h(n) = \begin{cases} b & \text{for } n = 1 \\ 0 & \text{otherwise} \end{cases}$$

$$\therefore \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} |h(n)| = b$$

The necessary and sufficient condition for BIBO stability is:

$$\sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} |h(n)| < \infty$$

So the system is BIBO stable if  $|b| < \infty$ .

- (b) Given  $y(n) = \text{maximum of } [x(n), x(n-1), x(n-2)]$
- If  $x(n) = \delta(n)$
- Then  $y(n) = h(n)$
- $\therefore h(n) = \text{maximum of } [\delta(n), \delta(n-1), \delta(n-2)]$
- $h(0) = \text{maximum of } [\delta(0), \delta(-1), \delta(-2)] = 1$
- $h(1) = \text{maximum of } [\delta(1), \delta(0), \delta(-1)] = 1$
- $h(2) = \text{maximum of } [\delta(2), \delta(1), \delta(0)] = 1$
- $h(3) = \text{maximum of } [\delta(3), \delta(2), \delta(1)] = 0$
- Similarly  $h(4) = 0 = h(5) = h(6) \dots$
- $\therefore \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} |h(n)| = |h(0)| + |h(1)| + |h(2)| + \dots$
- $$= 1 + 1 + 1 + 0 + 0 + \dots = 3$$

So the given system is BIBO stable.

- (c) Given  $y(n) = ax(n) + b$
- If  $x(n) = \delta(n)$
- Then  $y(n) = h(n)$

Hence the impulse response is:

$$h(n) = a\delta(n) + b$$

When  $n = 0, h(0) = a\delta(0) + b = a + b$

When  $n = 1, h(1) = a\delta(1) + b = b$

Here,  $h(1) = h(2) = \dots = h(n) = b$

Therefore,

$$h(n) = \begin{cases} a + b & \text{when } n = 0 \\ b & \text{when } n \neq 0 \end{cases}$$

The necessary and sufficient condition for BIBO stability is:

$$\sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} |h(n)| < \infty$$

Therefore,  $\sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} |h(n)| = |h(0)| + |h(1)| + |h(2)| + \dots + |h(n)| + \dots + \dots$

$$= |a + b| + |b| + |b| + \dots + |b| + \dots$$

This series never converges since the ratio between the successive terms is one.  
Hence the given system is BIBO unstable.

- (d) Given  $y(n) = e^{-x(n)}$
- If  $x(n) = \delta(n)$
- Then  $y(n) = h(n)$

Hence the impulse response is:

$$h(n) = e^{-\delta(n)}$$

When  $n = 0, h(0) = e^{-\delta(0)} = e^{-1}$

When  $n = 1, h(1) = e^{-\delta(1)} = e^0 = 1$

In general,

$$h(n) = \begin{cases} e^{-1} & \text{when } n = 0 \\ 1 & \text{when } n \neq 0 \end{cases}$$

The necessary and sufficient condition for BIBO stability is:

$$\sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} |h(n)| < \infty$$

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Therefore, } \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} |h(n)| &= |h(0)| + |h(1)| + |h(2)| + \dots + |h(n)| + \dots \\ &= e^{-1} + 1 + 1 + 1 + \dots + 1 + \dots \end{aligned}$$

Since the given sequence never converges, it is BIBO unstable.

(e) Given  $y(n) = ax(n) + bx^2(n-1)$

If  $x(n) = \delta(n)$

Then  $y(n) = h(n)$

Hence the impulse response is:

$$h(n) = a\delta(n) + b\delta^2(n-1)$$

When  $n = 0, h(0) = a\delta(0) + b\delta^2(-1) = a$

When  $n = 1, h(1) = a\delta(1) + b\delta^2(0) = b$

When  $n = 2, h(2) = a\delta(2) + b\delta^2(1) = 0$

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Hence, } \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} |h(n)| &= |h(0)| + |h(1)| + |h(2)| + \dots + |h(n)| + \dots \\ &= |a| + |b| + 0 + 0 + \dots \end{aligned}$$

Hence, the given system is BIBO stable if  $|a| + |b| < \infty$ .

**EXAMPLE 2.10** Determine whether each of the system with impulse response/output listed below is (i) causal (ii) stable.

(a)  $h(n) = 3^n u(-n)$

(b)  $h(n) = \cos \frac{n\pi}{2}$

(c)  $h(n) = \delta(n) + \cos n\pi$

(d)  $h(n) = e^{3n} u(n-2)$

(e)  $y(n) = \cos x(n)$

(f)  $y(n) = \sum_{k=-\infty}^{n+5} x(k)$

(g)  $y(n) = \log|x(n)|$

(i)  $h(n) = 4^n u(2-n)$

(h)  $h(n) = [u(n) - u(n-15)] 2^n$

(j)  $h(n) = e^{-5|n|}$

**Solution:**

(a) Given

$$h(n) = 3^n u(-n)$$

 $u(-n)$  exists for  $-\infty < n \leq 0$ . Hence  $h(n) \neq 0$  for  $n < 0$ . So the system is non-causal.

For stability

$$\begin{aligned} \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} |h(n)| &< \infty \\ \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} 3^n u(-n) &= \sum_{n=-\infty}^0 3^n = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} 3^{-n} = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \left(\frac{1}{3}\right)^n \\ &= 1 + \frac{1}{3} + \left(\frac{1}{3}\right)^2 + \left(\frac{1}{3}\right)^3 + \dots \\ &= \left(1 - \frac{1}{3}\right)^{-1} = \frac{1}{1 - (1/3)} = \frac{3}{2} < \infty \end{aligned}$$

So the system is stable.

(b) Given

$$h(n) = \cos \frac{n\pi}{2}$$

 $\cos(n\pi/2)$  exists for  $-\infty < n < \infty$ . So  $h(n) \neq 0$  for  $n < 0$ . Therefore, the system is non-causal.

For stability

$$\sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} |h(n)| < \infty$$

$$\sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} \left|\cos \frac{n\pi}{2}\right| = \infty$$

because for odd values of  $n$ ,  $\left|\cos \frac{n\pi}{2}\right| = 0$  and for even values of  $n$ ,  $\left|\cos \frac{n\pi}{2}\right| = 1$ .

So the system is unstable.

(c) Given

$$h(n) = \delta(n) + \cos n\pi$$

 $\delta(n) = 1$  for  $n = 0$  and  $\delta(n) = 0$  for  $n \neq 0$ .  $|\cos n\pi| = 1$  for all values of  $n$ .

For stability

$$\sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} |h(n)| < \infty$$

$$\begin{aligned} \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} |h(n)| &= |h(-\infty)| + \dots + |h(-1)| + |h(0)| + |h(1)| + \dots + |h(\infty)| \\ &= 1 + \dots + 1 + 2 + 1 + \dots + 1 = \infty \end{aligned}$$

Therefore, the system is unstable.

- (d) Given  $h(n) = e^{3n}u(n-2)$   
 $u(n-2)$  exists only for  $n \geq 2$ . So  $h(n) = 0$  for  $n < 0$ . Hence the system is causal.

For stability

$$\sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} |h(n)| < \infty$$

$$\begin{aligned} \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} |h(n)| &= \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} |e^{3n}u(n-2)| = \sum_{n=2}^{\infty} e^{3n} \\ &= e^6 + e^9 + e^{12} + \dots \\ &= \infty \end{aligned}$$

Therefore, the system is unstable.

- (e) Given  $y(n) = \cos x(n)$

For the system to be stable, it has to satisfy the following condition:

$$\sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} |h(n)| < \infty$$

If  $x(n) = \delta(n)$ , then the impulse response is:

$$h(n) = \cos \delta(n)$$

For  $n = 0, h(0) = \cos \delta(0) = \cos 1 = 0.54$

For  $n = 1, h(1) = \cos \delta(1) = \cos 0 = 1$

For  $n = 2, h(2) = \cos \delta(2) = \cos 0 = 1$

For  $n = -1, h(-1) = \cos \delta(-1) = \cos 0 = 1$

For  $n = -2, h(-2) = \cos \delta(-2) = \cos 0 = 1$

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Then } \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} |h(n)| &= |h(-\infty)| + \dots + |h(-2)| + |h(-1)| + |h(0)| + |h(1)| + |h(2)| + \dots + |h(\infty)| \\ &= 1 + 1 + \dots + 1 + 0.54 + 1 + 1 + \dots + 1 \\ &= \infty \end{aligned}$$

The system is unstable.

- (f) Given  $y(n) = \sum_{k=-\infty}^{n+5} x(k)$

For the system to be stable,

$$\sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} |h(n)| < \infty$$

Let  $x(n) = \delta(n)$ , then  $y(n) = h(n)$ . So for the given system.

$$h(n) = \sum_{k=-\infty}^{n+5} \delta(k)$$

For  $n = -6$       
$$h(-6) = \sum_{k=-\infty}^{-1} \delta(k) = 0$$

For  $n = -5$       
$$h(-5) = \sum_{k=-\infty}^0 \delta(k) = 1$$

For  $n = 1$       
$$h(1) = \sum_{k=-\infty}^6 \delta(k) = 1$$

For  $n = -\infty$  to  $n = -6$ ,  $h(n) = 0$  and for  $n = -5$  to  $n = \infty$ ,  $h(n) = 1$

$$\therefore \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} |h(n)| = 0 + 0 + \cdots + 1 + 1 + 1 + \cdots = \infty$$

So the given system is unstable.

(g) Given       $y(n) = \log_{10} |x(n)|$

The output depends only on the present input. Hence the system is causal. The impulse response is:

$$h(n) = \log_{10} |\delta(n)|$$

$$h(0) = \log_{10} |\delta(0)| = \log_{10} 1 = 0$$

$$h(1) = \log_{10} |\delta(1)| = \log_{10} 0 = 0$$

$$h(2) = \log_{10} |\delta(2)| = \log_{10} 0 = 0$$

$$\therefore \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} |h(n)| = 0 + 0 + \cdots = 0$$

(h) Given      
$$h(n) = [u(n) - u(n-15)] 2^n$$

$h(n) = 0$  for  $n < 0$ . So the system is causal.

$$\begin{aligned} \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} |h(n)| &= \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} [u(n) - u(n-15)] 2^n \\ &= \sum_{n=0}^{14} (1) 2^n = 1 + 2 + 2^2 + 2^3 + \cdots + 2^{14} < \infty \end{aligned}$$

Therefore, the system is stable.

(i) Given      
$$h(n) = 4^n u(2-n)$$

$h(n) \neq 0$  for  $n < 0$ . So the system is non-causal.

$$\begin{aligned} \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} |h(n)| &= \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} 4^n u(2-n) = \sum_{n=-\infty}^2 4^n = \sum_{n=-\infty}^0 4^n + \sum_{n=1}^2 4^n \\ &= \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} 4^{-n} + \sum_{n=1}^2 4^n = \left(1 - \frac{1}{4}\right)^{-1} + 4 + 4^2 = \left\{ \frac{1}{[1 - (1/4)]} + 20 \right\} < \infty \end{aligned}$$

Therefore, the system is stable.

(j) Given  $h(n) = e^{-5|n|}$

The system is non-causal since  $h(n) \neq 0$  for  $n < 0$ .

$$\begin{aligned}\sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} |h(n)| &= \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} e^{-5n} = \sum_{n=-\infty}^{-1} e^{5n} + \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} e^{-5n} = \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} e^{-5n} + \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} e^{-5n} \\ &= \frac{e^{-5}}{1-e^{-5}} + \frac{1}{1-e^{-5}} = \frac{1+e^{-5}}{1-e^{-5}} < \infty\end{aligned}$$

Therefore, the system is stable.

**EXAMPLE 2.11** Comment about the linearity, stability, time invariance and causality for the following filter:

$$y(n) = 2x(n+1) + [x(n-1)]^2$$

**Solution:** Given  $y(n) = 2x(n+1) + [x(n-1)]^2$

1. There is a square term of delayed input [i.e.,  $x(n-1)^2$ ] in the difference equation. So the system is nonlinear.
2. The output depends on the future value of input [i.e.,  $2x(n+1)$ ]. So the system is non-causal.
3. For  $x(n) = \delta(n)$ ,  $y(n) = h(n)$

$$\therefore h(n) = 2\delta(n+1) + \{\delta(n-1)\}^2$$

$$h(0) = 2\delta(1) + \{\delta(-1)\}^2 = 0 + 0 = 0$$

$$h(1) = 2\delta(2) + \{\delta(0)\}^2 = 0 + 1 = 1$$

$$h(-1) = 2\delta(0) + \{\delta(-2)\}^2 = 2 + 0 = 2$$

$$h(-2) = 2\delta(-1) + \{\delta(-3)\}^2 = 0 + 0 = 0$$

$$h(n) = 0, \text{ for any other } n$$

$$\sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} |h(n)| = 0 + 1 + 2 + 0 + 0 + \dots = 3 < \infty$$

Impulse response is absolutely summable. So the system is stable. Also we can say that since the output depends only on the delayed and advanced inputs, if the input is bounded, the output is bounded. So the system is BIBO stable.

4. The output due to delayed input is given by

$$y(n, k) = 2x(n+1-k) + \{x(n-1-k)\}^2$$

The delayed output is

$$y(n-k) = 2x(n+1-k) + \{x(n-k-1)\}^2$$

$$\therefore y(n, k) = y(n-k)$$

Therefore, the system is time-invariant.

Also, we can say that since the system is described by constant coefficient difference equation, the system is time-invariant. So the given system is non-linear, stable, time-invariant and non-causal.

**EXAMPLE 2.12** State whether the following system is linear, causal, time-invariant and stable:

$$y(n) + y(n-1) = x(n) + x(n-2)$$

**Solution:** Given  $y(n) = -y(n-1) + x(n) + x(n-2)$

1. Let an input  $x_1(n)$  produce an output  $y_1(n)$  and an input  $x_2(n)$  produce an output  $y_2(n)$ . Therefore, the weighted sum of outputs is:

$$\begin{aligned} ay_1(n) + by_2(n) &= -[ay_1(n-1) + by_2(n-1)] + [ax_1(n) + bx_2(n)] \\ &\quad + [ax_1(n-2) + bx_2(n-2)] \end{aligned}$$

The output due to weighted sum of inputs is:

$$\begin{aligned} y_3(n) &= -\{ay_1(n-1) + by_2(n-1)\} + \{ax_1(n) + bx_2(n)\} + \{ax_1(n-2) + bx_2(n-2)\} \\ y_3(n) &= ay_1(n) + by_2(n) \end{aligned}$$

So the system is linear.

2. The output depends only on the present and past inputs and past outputs. So the system is causal.
3. All the coefficients of the differential equation are constants. So the system is time-invariant.
4. For  $x(n) = \delta(n)$ ,  $y(n) = h(n)$

$$\begin{aligned} \therefore h(n) &= -h(n-1) + \delta(n) + \delta(n-2) \\ h(0) &= -h(-1) + \delta(0) + \delta(-2) = 1 \\ h(1) &= -h(0) + \delta(1) + \delta(-1) = -1 \\ h(2) &= -h(1) + \delta(2) + \delta(0) = 1 + 0 + 1 = 2 \\ h(3) &= -h(2) + \delta(3) + \delta(1) = -2 + 0 + 0 = -2 \\ \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} |h(n)| &= 1 + 1 + 2 + 2 + \dots = \infty \end{aligned}$$

i.e., the impulse response is not absolutely summable. So the system is unstable. Therefore, the given system is non-linear, causal, time-variant and unstable.

**EXAMPLE 2.13** Determine whether the following system is linear, stable, causal and time-invariant using appropriate tests:

$$y(n) = nx(n) + x(n+2) + y(n-2)$$

**Solution:** Given  $y(n) = nx(n) + x(n+2) + y(n-2)$

1. Let an input  $x_1(n)$  produce an output  $y_1(n)$  and an input  $x_2(n)$  produce an output  $y_2(n)$ . Then the weighted sum of outputs is:

$$\begin{aligned} ay_1(n) + by_2(n) &= n[ax_1(n) + bx_2(n)] + [ax_1(n+2) + bx_2(n+2)] \\ &\quad + [ay_1(n-2) + by_2(n-2)] \end{aligned}$$

The output due to weighted sum of inputs is:

$$\begin{aligned}y_3(n) &= n\{ax_1(n) + bx_2(n)\} + \{ax_1(n+2) + bx_2(n+2)\} + \{ay_1(n-2) + by_2(n-2)\} \\y_3(n) &= ay_1(n) + by_2(n)\end{aligned}$$

So the system is linear.

2. For  $x(n) = \delta(n)$ ,  $y(n) = h(n)$

$$\begin{aligned}\therefore \quad h(n) &= n\delta(n) + \delta(n+2) + h(n-2) \\h(-2) &= -2\delta(-2) + \delta(0) + h(-4) = 1 \\h(0) &= 0\delta(0) + \delta(2) + h(-2) = 0 + 0 + 1 = 1 \\h(1) &= 1\delta(1) + \delta(3) + h(-1) = 0 \\h(2) &= 2\delta(2) + \delta(4) + h(0) = 1 \\h(3) &= 3\delta(3) + \delta(5) + h(1) = 0 \\h(4) &= 4\delta(4) + \delta(6) + h(2) = 1 \\&\sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} |h(n)| = 1 + 0 + 1 + 0 + \dots = \infty\end{aligned}$$

So the system is unstable.

3.  $y(2) = 2x(2) + x(4) + y(0)$

The output depends on future inputs. So the system is non-causal.

4. The coefficient of  $x(n)$  is a function of time. So it is a time-varying system.  
Therefore, the given system is linear, unstable, non-causal and time-varying.

**EXAMPLE 2.14** Find the linearity, invariance, causality of the following systems:

(a)  $y(n) = -ax(n-1) + x(n)$

(b)  $y(n) = x(n^2) + x(-n)$

**Solution:**

(a) Given

$$y(n) = -ax(n-1) + x(n)$$

1. Let an input  $x_1(n)$  produce an output  $y_1(n)$  and an input  $x_2(n)$  produce an output  $y_2(n)$ . Then the weighted sum of outputs is:

$$py_1(n) + qy_2(n) = -a[p x_1(n-1) + q x_2(n-1)] + [p x_1(n) + q x_2(n)]$$

The output due to weighted sum of inputs is:

$$y_3(n) = -a[p x_1(n-1) + q x_2(n-1)] + [p x_1(n) + q x_2(n)]$$

$$y_3(n) = py_1(n) + qy_2(n)$$

So the system is linear.

2. The output depends only on the present and past inputs. So the system is causal.  
3. The output due to delayed input is:

$$y(n, k) = -ax(n-1-k) + x(n-k)$$

The delayed output is:

$$y(n-k) = -ax(n-1-k) + x(n-k)$$

$$y(n, k) = y(n - k)$$

So the system is time-invariant. Therefore, the given system is linear, causal and time invariant.

(b) Given

$$y(n) = x(n^2) + x(-n)$$

1. Let an input  $x_1(n)$  produce an output  $y_1(n)$  and an input  $x_2(n)$  produce an output  $y_2(n)$ . Then the weighted sum of outputs is:

$$ay_1(n) + by_2(n) = [ax_1(n^2) + bx_2(n^2)] + [ax_1(-n) + bx_2(-n)]$$

The output due to weighted sum of inputs is:

$$y_3(n) = \{ax_1(n^2) + bx_2(n^2)\} + \{ax_1(-n) + bx_2(-n)\}$$

$$y_3(n) = ay_1(n) + by_2(n)$$

So the system is linear.

$$2. \quad y(-2) = x(4) + x(2)$$

$$y(2) = x(4) + x(-2)$$

The output depends upon future inputs. So the system is non-causal.

3. The output due to delayed input is:

$$y(n, k) = x(n^2 - k) + x(-n - k)$$

The delayed output is:

$$y(n - k) = x\{(n - k)^2\} + x\{-(n - k)\}$$

$$y(n, k) \neq y(n - k)$$

So the system is time-variant. Therefore, the system is linear, non-causal and time variant.

**EXAMPLE 2.15** Test the causality and stability of the following system:

$$y(n) = x(n) - x(-n - 1) + x(n - 1)$$

**Solution:** Given  $y(n) = x(n) - x(-n - 1) + x(n - 1)$

$$1. \quad y(-2) = x(-2) - x(1) + x(-3)$$

For negative values of  $n$ , the output depends on future values of input. So the system is non-causal.

$$2. \quad \text{For } x(n) = \delta(n), y(n) = h(n)$$

$$\therefore h(n) = \delta(n) - \delta(-n - 1) + \delta(n - 1)$$

$$h(0) = \delta(0) - \delta(-1) + \delta(-1) = 1 - 0 + 0 = 1$$

$$h(1) = \delta(1) - \delta(-2) + \delta(0) = 0 - 0 + 1 = 1$$

$$h(-1) = \delta(-1) - \delta(0) + \delta(-2) = 0 - 1 + 0 = -1$$

$$h(n) = 0 \text{ for any other value of } n$$

$$\sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} |h(n)| = 1 + 1 + 1 + 0 + 0 + \dots = 3 < \infty$$

i.e., the impulse response is absolutely summable. So the system is stable.

**EXAMPLE 2.16** If a system is represented by the following difference equation:

$$y(n) = 3y^2(n-1) - nx(n) + 4x(n-1) - x(n+1), n \geq 0$$

- (a) Is the system linear? Explain.
- (b) Is the system shift-invariant? Explain.
- (c) Is the system causal? Why or why not?

**Solution:** Given  $y(n) = 3y^2(n-1) - nx(n) + 4x(n-1) - x(n+1), n \geq 0$

- (a) No, the system is non-linear because there is a square term of delayed output in the difference equation.
- (b) No, the system is shift variant because the coefficient of  $x(n)$  is not a constant. It is a function of time.
- (c) No, the system is non-causal because the output depends on future inputs.

**EXAMPLE 2.17** Test the following systems for linearity, time invariance, stability and causality:

$$(a) \quad y(n) = a^{\{x(n)\}}$$

$$(b) \quad y(n) = \sin\left\{\frac{2\pi b f n}{F}\right\} x(n)$$

**Solution:**

$$(a) \quad \text{Given}$$

$$y(n) = a^{\{x(n)\}}$$

1. Let an input  $x_1(n)$  produce an output  $y_1(n)$  and an input  $x_2(n)$  produce an output  $y_2(n)$ . Then the weighted sum of outputs is:

$$py_1(n) + qy_2(n) = pa^{\{x_1(n)\}} + qa^{\{x_2(n)\}}$$

The output due to weighted sum of inputs is:

$$y_3(n) = a^{\{px_1(n) + qx_2(n)\}}$$

$$y_3(n) \neq py_1(n) + qy_2(n)$$

So the system is non-linear.

2. The output due to delayed input is:

$$y(n, k) = a^{\{x(n-k)\}}$$

The delayed output is:

$$y(n-k) = a^{\{x(n-k)\}}$$

$$y(n, k) = y(n-k)$$

So the system is shift-invariant.

3. When input  $x(n) = \delta(n)$ ,  $y(n) = h(n)$

$$h(n) = a^{\{\delta(n)\}}$$

$$h(0) = a^{\{\delta(0)\}} = a$$

$$h(n) = a^0 = 1 \quad (\text{for any other } n)$$

$$\sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} |h(n)| = 1 + 1 + \dots + a + 1 + 1 + \dots + = \infty$$

The impulse response is not absolutely summable. So the system is unstable.

4. The output depends only on the present input. So the system is causal. Therefore, the given system is nonlinear, shift invariant, unstable and causal.

(b) Given

$$y(n) = \sin \left\{ \frac{2\pi bfn}{F} \right\} x(n) = \sin \frac{n\omega b}{F} x(n)$$

1. Let an input  $x_1(n)$  produce an output  $y_1(n)$  and an input  $x_2(n)$  produce an output  $y_2(n)$ . Then the weighted sum of outputs is:

$$\begin{aligned} py_1(n) + qy_2(n) &= p \sin \left( \frac{n\omega b}{F} \right) x_1(n) + q \sin \left( \frac{n\omega b}{F} \right) x_2(n) \\ &= \sin \left( \frac{n\omega b}{F} \right) [px_1(n) + qx_2(n)] \end{aligned}$$

The output due to weighted sum of inputs is:

$$y_3(n) = \sin \left( \frac{n\omega b}{F} \right) [px_1(n) + qx_2(n)]$$

$$\therefore y_3(n) = py_1(n) + qy_2(n)$$

So the system is linear.

2. The output due to delayed input is:

$$y(n, k) = \sin \left( \frac{n\omega b}{F} \right) x(n - k)$$

The delayed output is:

$$\begin{aligned} y(n - k) &= \sin \left[ \frac{(n - k)\omega b}{F} \right] x(n - k) \\ y(n, k) &\neq y(n - k) \end{aligned}$$

So the system is shift invariant.

3. When  $x(n) = \delta(n)$ ,  $y(n) = h(n)$

$$\therefore h(n) = \sin \left( \frac{n\omega b}{F} \right) \delta(n)$$

$$h(0) = \sin(0) \delta(0) = 0$$

$$h(1) = \sin \left( \frac{\omega b}{F} \right) \delta(1) = 0$$

$$h(-1) = \sin \left( \frac{-\omega b}{F} \right) \delta(-1) = 0$$

$$h(n) = 0 \quad \text{for all other } n$$

$$\sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} |h(n)| = 0. \text{ So the system is stable.}$$

4. The output depends upon present input only. So the system is causal. Therefore, the given system is linear, shift invariant, stable and causal.

### 2.2.7 Invertible and Non-invertible Systems

If a system has a unique relationship between its input  $x(t)$  [or  $x(n)$ ] and output  $y(t)$  [or  $y(n)$ ], the system is known as invertible. Therefore, for an invertible system if  $y(t)$  [or  $y(n)$ ] is known,  $x(t)$  [or  $x(n)$ ] can be found out unambiguously and uniquely. On the other hand, if the system does not have a unique relationship between its input and output, the system is said to be non-invertible.

In other words a system is known as invertible only if an inverse system exists which when cascaded with the original system produces an output equal to the input of the first system.

For  $y(t) = 3x(t)$  [or  $y(n) = 3x(n)$ ], the system is said to be invertible, whereas for  $y(t) = 2x^2(t)$  [or  $y(n) = 2x^2(n)$ ], the system is said to be non-invertible. Mathematically, a system is to be invertible if

$$x(t) = T^{-1}\{T[x(t)]\}$$

or

$$x(n) = T^{-1}\{T[x(n)]\}$$

The block diagram representation of both an invertible and non-invertible system is shown in Figure 2.7.

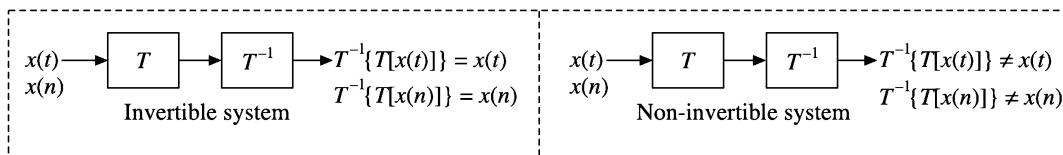


Figure 2.7 Invertibility property in continuous domain.

### 2.2.8 FIR and IIR Systems

Linear time invariant systems can be classified according to the type of impulse response. If the impulse response sequence is of finite duration, the system is called a finite impulse response(FIR) system and if the impulse response sequence is of infinite duration, the system is called an infinite impulse response(IIR) system.

An example of FIR system is described by

$$h(n) = \begin{cases} -2 & n = 2, 4 \\ 2 & n = 1, 3 \\ 0 & \text{otherwise} \end{cases}$$

An example of IIR system is described by

$$h(n) = 2^n u(n)$$

---

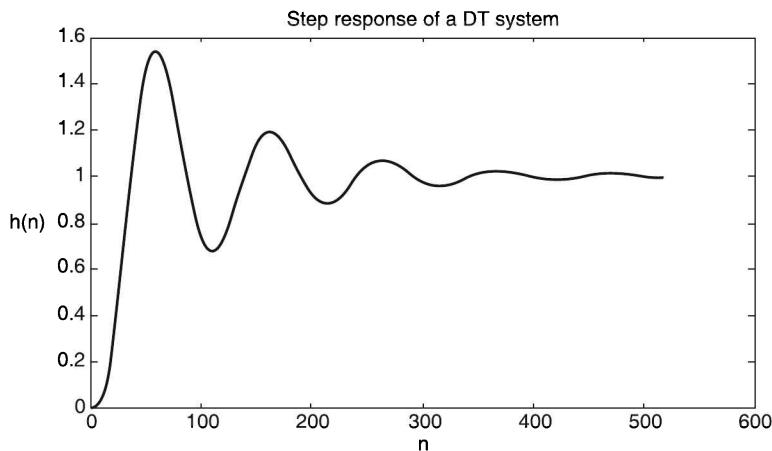
## MATLAB PROGRAMS

### Program 2.1

```
% Step response of a continuous-time system with transfer function H(s)
clc;clear all;close all;
num=input('enter coefficients of numerator polynomial');
den=input('enter coefficients of denominator polynomial');
[h,t]=step(num,den);
%y=step(num,den,n);
plot(h);
xlabel('n');ylabel('h(n)');
title('Step response of a DT system')
```

Output:

```
enter coefficients of numerator polynomial[1]
enter coefficients of denominator polynomial[1 2 1 1]
```

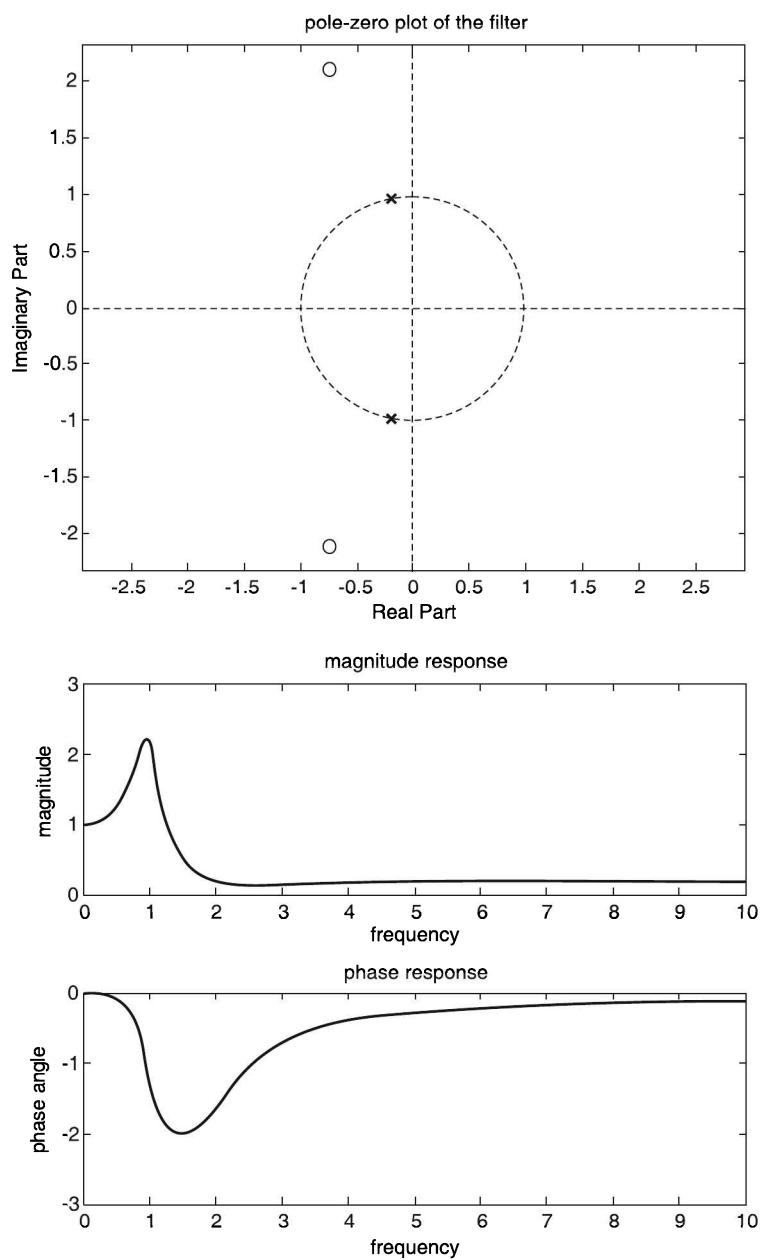


### Program 2.2

```
% Frequency response of an analog filter
clc;clear all;close all;
% numerator coefficients of the filter
num=[0.2 0.3 1];
% denominator coefficients of the filter
den=[1 0.4 1];
zplane(num,den);
title('pole-zero plot of the filter')
w=logspace(-1,1);
[H,w]=freqs(num,den,w);
Hm=abs(H);
figure;
subplot(2,1,1);plot(w,Hm);
```

```
xlabel('frequency'); ylabel('magnitude');
title('magnitude response');
Ha=angle(H);
subplot(2,1,2); plot(w,Ha);
xlabel('frequency'); ylabel('phase angle');
title('phase response');
```

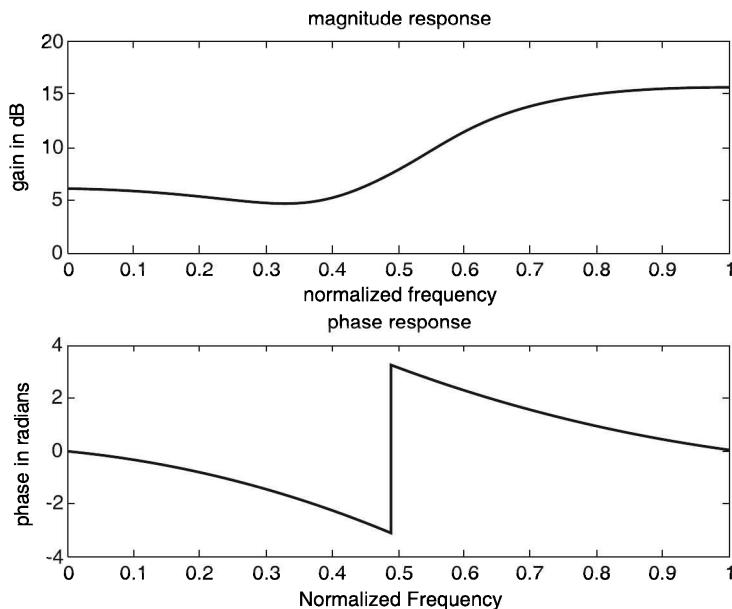
Output:



### Program 2.3

```
%Frequency response of the given system
clc; clear all; close all;
num=[1 -1 3];
den=[1 1/3 1/6];
[h,om]=freqz(num,den);
subplot(2,1,1);plot(om/pi,20*log10(abs(h)));
xlabel('normalized frequency')
ylabel('gain in dB')
title('magnitude response')
subplot(2,1,2);plot(om/pi,angle(h));
xlabel('Normalized Frequency')
ylabel('phase in radians')
title('phase response')
```

Output:

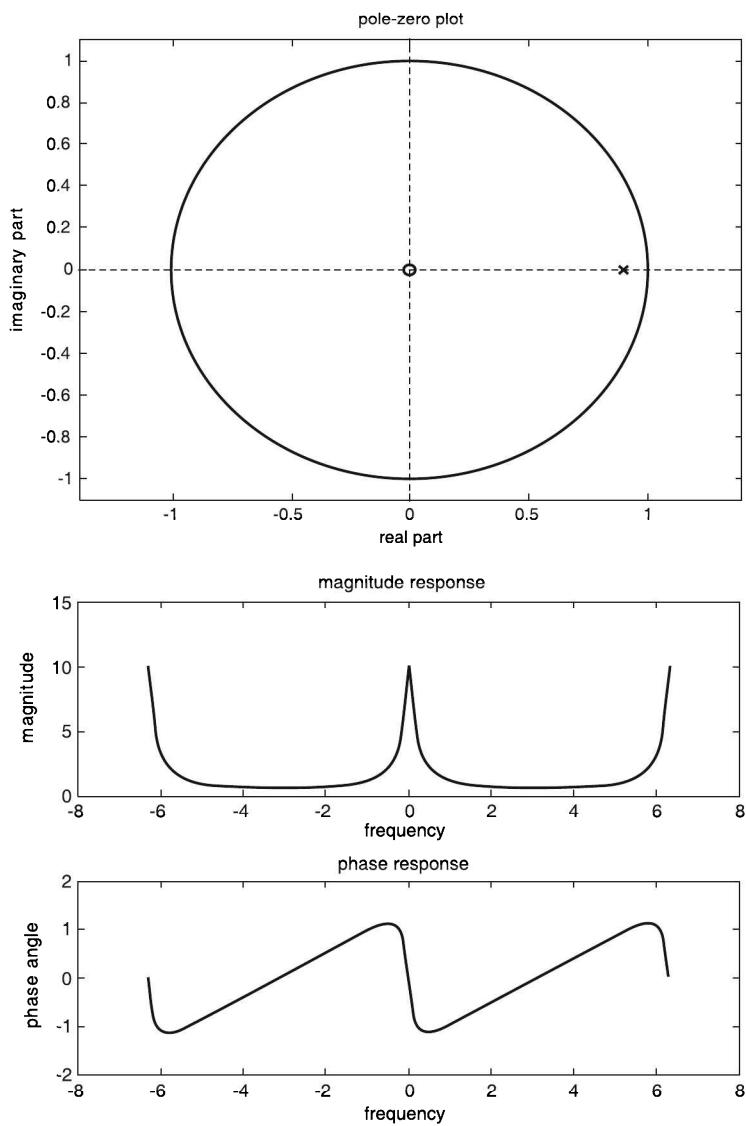


### Program 2.4

```
% Frequency response of a discrete-time system
% y(n)=0.9y(n-1)+x(n)
clc;
% pole-zero plot
num=[1];den=[1 -0.9];
zplane(num,den);
xlabel('real part');ylabel('imaginary part');
title('pole-zero plot');
% frequency response
w=-2*pi:pi/100:2*pi;
[H,w]=freqz(num,den,w);
```

```
% magnitude response
Hm=abs(H);
figure;
subplot(2,1,1);plot(w,Hm);
xlabel('frequency');ylabel('magnitude');
title('magnitude response');
% phase response
Ha=angle(H);
subplot(2,1,2);plot(w,Ha);
xlabel('frequency');ylabel('phase angle');
title('phase response');
```

Output:

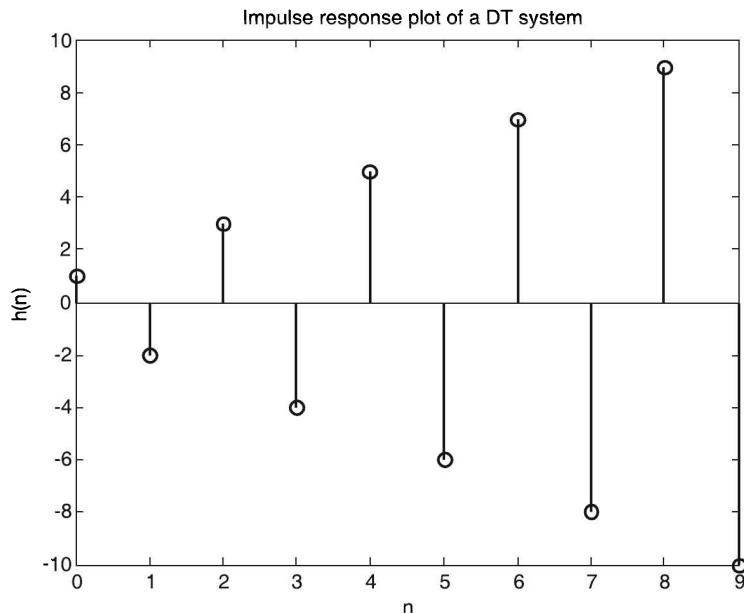


### Program 2.5

```
% Impulse response of a discrete-time system with transfer function H(z)
clc;clear all;close all;
num=input('enter coefficients of numerator polynomial');
den=input('enter coefficients of denominator polynomial');
[h,n]=impz(num,den);
stem(n,h);
xlabel('n');ylabel('h(n)');
title('Impulse response plot of a DT system');
disp('Impulse response of a DT system');
disp(h)
```

Output:

```
enter coefficients of numerator polynomial      [1]
enter coefficients of denominator polynomial    [1 2 1]
Impulse response of a DT system
[ 1 -2 3 -4 5 -6 7 -8 9 -10]
```

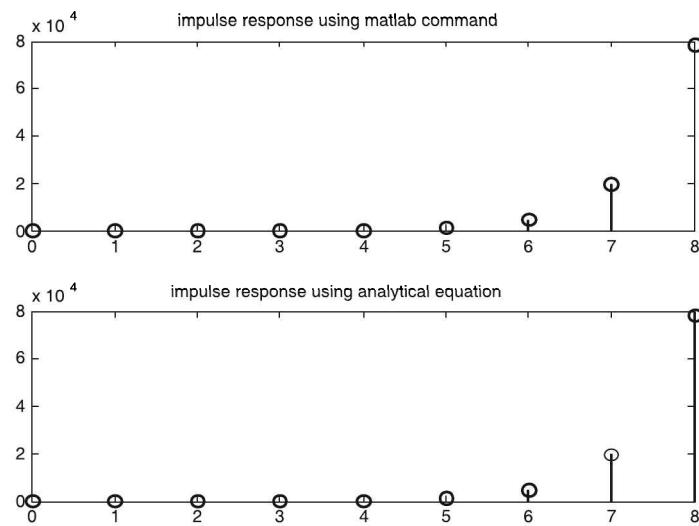


### Program 2.6

```
% Impulse response of a discrete-time system
% y(n)-3y(n-1)-4y(n-2)=x(n)+2x(n-1)
clc;close all;clear all;
```

```
syms n z
num=[1 2];
den=[1 -3 -4];
% Transfer function
H=tf('z');
Ts=[];
H=tf(num,den,Ts)
% Impulse response
%h=iztrans(H,z,n)
[h,n]=impz(num,den)
subplot(2,1,1);stem(n,h);
title('impulse response using matlab command');
% analytical equation of impulse response
ha=1.2*4.^n-0.2*(-1).^n;
subplot(2,1,2);stem(n,ha)
title('impulse response using analytical equation');
```

Output:



### Program 2.7

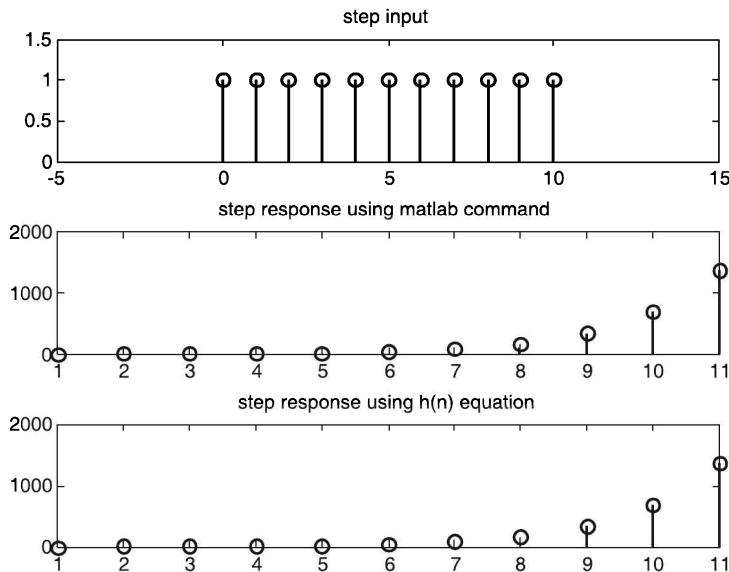
```
% Step response of a discrete-time system
clc;close all;clear all;
% step input
n=0:1:10;
x=ones(1,length(n));
subplot(3,1,1);stem(n,x);
axis([-5 15 0 1.5]);
```

```

title('step input');
% System specifications
num=[0 1 2];
den=[1 -1 -2];
% step response using matlab command
y=filter(num,den,x);
subplot(3,1,2);stem(y);
title('step response using matlab command');
% step response using analytical equation
y=(4/3)*(2).^n+(1/6)*(-1).^n-(3/2);
subplot(3,1,3);stem(y);
title('step response using h(n) equation');

```

Output:



### Program 2.8

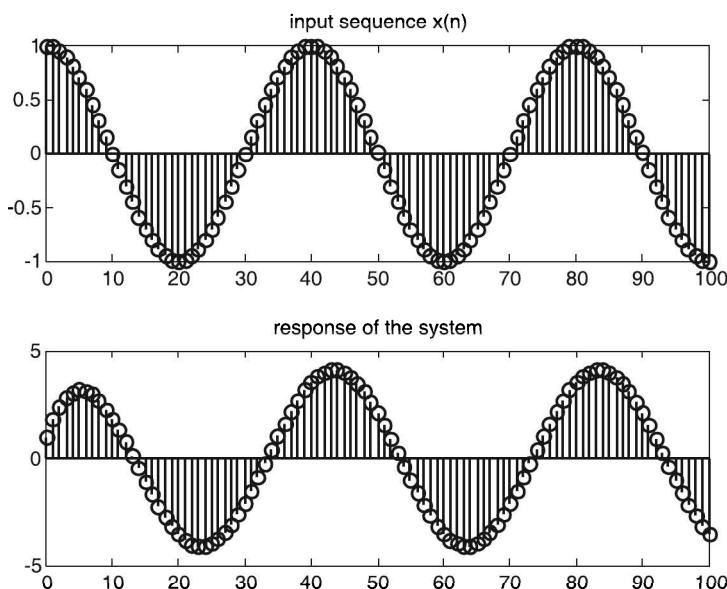
```

% Response of a discrete-time system
% y(n)=0.8y(n-1)+x(n) for the input x(n)=cos(0.05*pi*n)u(n)
clc;close all;clear all;
% input x(n)=cos(0.05*pi*n)u(n)
n=0:1:100;
x=cos(0.05*pi*n);
subplot(2,1,1);stem(n,x);
title('input sequence x(n)');
% System specifications
num=[1];

```

```
den=[ 1 -0.8 ];  
% response of the system  
y=filter(num,den,x);  
subplot(2,1,2);stem(n,y);  
title('response of the system');
```

Output:



### SHORT QUESTIONS WITH ANSWERS

1. Define a system.

*Ans.* A system is defined as a physical device, that generates a response or output signal for a given input signal.

2. How are systems classified?

*Ans.* The systems are classified as follows:

1. Continuous-time and discrete-time systems
2. Lumped parameter and distributed parameter systems.
3. Static (memoryless) and dynamic (memory) systems
4. Causal and non-causal systems
5. Linear and non-linear systems
6. Time-invariant and time varying systems
7. Stable and unstable systems.
8. Invertible and non-invertible systems

3. Define a continuous-time system.

*Ans.* A continuous-time system is a system which transforms continuous-time input signals into continuous-time output signals.

4. Define a discrete-time system.

*Ans.* A discrete-time system is a system which transforms discrete-time input signals into discrete-time output signals.

5. Define a lumped parameter system.

*Ans.* A lumped parameter system is a system in which each component is lumped at one point in space. These systems are described by ordinary differential equations.

6. Define a distributed parameter system.

*Ans.* A distributed parameter system is a system in which the signals are functions of space as well as time. These systems are described by partial differential equations.

7. Define a static system.

*Ans.* A static or memoryless system is a system in which the response at any instant is due to present input alone, i.e. for a static or memoryless system, the output at any instant  $t$  (or  $n$ ) depends only on the input applied at that instant  $t$  (or  $n$ ) but not on the past or future values of input.

8. Define a dynamic system.

*Ans.* A dynamic or memory system is a system in which the response at any instant depends upon past or future inputs.

9. Define a causal system.

*Ans.* A causal (or non-anticipative) system is a system whose output at any time  $t$  depends only on the present and past values of the input but not on future inputs.

10. Define a non-causal system.

*Ans.* A non-causal (anticipative) system is a system whose output at any time  $t$  depends on future inputs.

11. What is homogeneity property?

*Ans.* Homogeneity property means a system which produces an output  $y(t)$  for an input  $x(t)$  must produce an output  $ay(t)$  for an input  $ax(t)$ .

12. What is superposition property?

*Ans.* Superposition property means a system which produces an output  $y_1(t)$  for an input  $x_1(t)$  and an output  $y_2(t)$  for an input  $x_2(t)$  must produce an output  $y_1(t) + y_2(t)$  for an input  $x_1(t) + x_2(t)$ .

13. Define a linear system.

*Ans.* A linear system is a system which obeys the principle of superposition and principle of homogeneity.

14. Define a non-linear system.

*Ans.* A non-linear system is a system which does not obey the principle of superposition and principle of homogeneity.

15. Define a time-invariant system.

*Ans.* A time-invariant (or shift-invariant) system is a system whose input/output characteristics do not change with time, i.e. a system for which a time shift in the input results in a corresponding time shift in the output.

16. Define a time-variant system.

*Ans.* A time-variant (or shift-variant) system is a system whose input/output characteristics change with time, i.e. a system for which a time shift in the input does not result in a corresponding time shift in the output.

17. Define a bounded input-bounded output stable system.

*Ans.* A bounded input-bounded output stable system is a system which produces a bounded output for every bounded input.

18. Define an unstable system.

*Ans.* An unstable system is a system which produces an unbounded output for a bounded input.

19. What is an invertible system?

*Ans.* An invertible system is a system which has a unique relation between its input and output.

20. What is a non-invertible system?

*Ans.* A non-invertible system is a system which does not have a unique relation between its input and output.

## REVIEW QUESTIONS

1. Define a system. How are systems classified? Define each one of them.

2. Distinguish between

1. Continuous-time and discrete-time systems
2. Lumped parameter and distributed parameter systems
3. Static (memoryless) and dynamic (memory) systems
4. Causal and non-causal systems
5. Linear and non-linear systems
6. Time-invariant and time varying systems
7. Stable and unstable systems

## FILL IN THE BLANKS

1. \_\_\_\_\_ systems are described by ordinary differential equations.

2. \_\_\_\_\_ systems are described by partial differential equations.

3. For a static system, the output does not depend on the \_\_\_\_\_ values of input.

4. For a dynamic system, the output depends on the \_\_\_\_\_ and/or \_\_\_\_\_ values of input.

5. Static systems are also called \_\_\_\_\_ systems.
6. Dynamic systems are also called \_\_\_\_\_ systems.
7. A causal system is one whose output depends on \_\_\_\_\_ values of input.
8. A non-causal system is one whose output depends on \_\_\_\_\_ values of input.
9. A causal system is also known as a \_\_\_\_\_ system.
10. A non-causal system is also known as an \_\_\_\_\_ system.
11. A \_\_\_\_\_ system is definitely a dynamic system.
12. A \_\_\_\_\_ system obeys the principle of superposition.
13. A \_\_\_\_\_ system does not obey the principle of superposition.
14. An LTI system is one which satisfies the properties of \_\_\_\_\_ and \_\_\_\_\_.
15. For a time-invariant system, its \_\_\_\_\_ do not change with time.
16. For a time-variant system, its \_\_\_\_\_ change with time.
17. For a \_\_\_\_\_ system, the coefficients of the differential equation are constants.
18. For a \_\_\_\_\_ system, the coefficients of the differential equation are functions of time.
19. A system is said to be stable if every \_\_\_\_\_ input produces a bounded output.
20. For a continuous-time system to be stable, its impulse response must be \_\_\_\_\_.
21. For a discrete-time system to be stable, its impulse response must be \_\_\_\_\_.
22. A system which has a unique relation between its input and output is called \_\_\_\_\_.
23. A system which does not have a unique relation between its input and output is called \_\_\_\_\_.

### OBJECTIVE TYPE QUESTIONS

1. A system is a
 

(a) physical device	(b) mathematical model
(c) linear model	(d) ideal device
2. A lumped parameter system is described by
 

(a) ordinary differential equations	(b) partial differential equations
(c) both (a) and (b)	(d) none of the above
3. A distributed parameter system is described by
 

(a) ordinary differential equations	(b) partial differential equations
(c) both (a) and (b)	(d) none of the above
4. A system whose output depends on future inputs is a
 

(a) static system	(b) dynamic system
(c) non-causal system	(d) both (b) and (c)
5. A non-anticipative system is a
 

(a) static system	(b) dynamic system
(c) causal system	(d) non-causal system

6.  $y(n) = x(n + 2)$  is for a  
(a) linear system  
(c) both linear and dynamic system

(b) dynamic system  
(d) non-linear system

7.  $y(t) = x^2(t)$  is for a  
(a) linear time-invariant system  
(c) linear time varying system

(b) non-linear time-invariant system  
(d) non-causal system

8.  $y(n) = x(2n)$  is for a  
(a) time-invariant system  
(c) linear, time varying, dynamic system

(b) time varying, dynamic system  
(d) linear, time-invariant, static system

9.  $y(n) = x(-n)$  is for a  
(a) non-causal system  
(b) linear, causal, time-invariant system

(c) linear, non-causal, time-invariant system  
(d) linear, non-causal, time varying, dynamic system

10.  $\frac{dy(t)}{dt} + 2t y(t) = t^2 x(t)$  is for a  
(a) linear system  
(c) linear, time varying, static system

(b) non-linear system  
(d) linear, time varying, dynamic system

11.  $y(t) = t^2 x(t)$  is for a  
(a) linear system  
(c) causal system

(b) time varying system  
(d) linear, time varying and causal system

12.  $y(n) = x(n) + nx(n - 1)$  is for a  
(a) dynamic system  
(c) linear system

(b) causal system  
(d) all the above

13.  $y(n) = x(n) u(n)$  is for a  
(a) static, linear system  
(c) both (a) and (b)

(b) causal, time-invariant system  
(d) none of the above

14.  $y(t) = |x(t)|$  is for a  
(a) static, linear system  
(b) static, non-linear system

(c) static, non-linear, causal system  
(d) dynamic, non-linear, time-invariant system

15.  $y(t) = x(t^2)$  is for a  
(a) non-causal, dynamic system  
(b) non-causal, time-variant system

(c) non-causal, time-variant, non-linear system  
(d) non-causal, linear, time-invariant system

16.  $y(t) = \text{od}\{x(t)\}$  is for a  
 (a) dynamic, time-variant system      (b) non-causal, time-variant system  
 (c) linear, non-causal system      (d) all the above
17. A system which has a unique relation between its input and output is called  
 (a) linear system      (b) causal system  
 (c) time-invariant system      (d) invertible system
18. A system which does not have a unique relation between its input and output is called  
 (a) non-linear system      (b) non-causal system  
 (c) time-variant system      (d) non-invertible system

## PROBLEMS

1. Find whether the following systems are dynamic or not:

(a) $y(t) = \frac{dx(t)}{dt} + 2x(t)$ (c) $y(t) = 4x(t) + 2x(t - 2)$ (e) $y(n) = x(n) + x(n + 2)$	(b) $y(t) = 2x^3(t)$ (d) $y(n) = nx^2(n)$ (f) $y(n) = nx(2n)$
---	---

2. Check whether the following systems are causal or not:

(a) $y(t) = x^2(t) + x(t - 3)$ (c) $y(t) = x(t + 2)$ (e) $y(n) = x(-2n)$	(b) $y(t) = \int_{-\infty}^t x(\tau) d\tau$ (d) $y(n) = x(n) + \frac{1}{2x(n - 2)}$ (f) $y(n) = \sum_{k=-\infty}^{n+2} x(k)$
--	--

3. Check whether the following systems are linear or not.

(a) $\frac{dy(t)}{dt} + 2t^2 y(t) = t x(t)$ (c) $\frac{d^2y(t)}{dt^2} + 5\frac{dy(t)}{dt} + 3y(t) = x(t) \frac{dx(t)}{dt}$ (e) $y(n) = 2x(n) + \frac{1}{x(n - 3)}$	(b) $\frac{dy(t)}{dt} + y^2(t) = 3x(t)$ (d) $y(n) = Ax(n) + B$ (f) $y(n) = n^2 x(2n)$
--	---

4. Determine whether the following systems are time-invariant or not.

(a) $y(t) = x(t) + tx(t - 1)$ (c) $y(t) = x\left(-\frac{t}{4}\right)$ (e) $y(n) = x^2(n - 2)$	(b) $y(t) = x(t) \cos 20t$ (d) $y(n) = x(n) + nx(n - 3)$ (f) $y(n) = \sin [x(n)]$
---	---

5. Determine whether the following systems are stable or not.

(a)  $y(t) = r(t) + 2$

(b)  $y(t) = 5e^{-2t} u(t)$

(c)  $h(t) = (1 + e^{-5t}) u(t)$

(d)  $y(n) = 8x(n - 4)$

(e)  $y(n) = nu(n) + \delta(n - 2)$

(f)  $h(n) = 2^{-n} u(n)$

6. Check whether the following systems are

1. Static or dynamic

2. Linear or non-linear

3. Causal or non-causal

4. Time-invariant or time-variant

(a)  $\frac{d^3y(t)}{dt^3} + 5\frac{d^2y(t)}{dt^2} + 6t\frac{dy(t)}{dt} + 2y(t) = x^2(t)$

(b)  $y(t) = atx(t) + bt^2x(t - 2)$

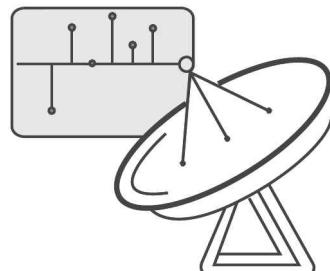
(c)  $y(t) = od[x(t)]$

(d)  $y(n) = \sum_{k=-\infty}^{n+4} x(k)$

(e)  $y(n) = |x(n)|$

(f)  $y(n) = 2x(n + 2) - x(n - 2)$

# 3



## Signal Analysis

### 3.1 INTRODUCTION

It is very easy to understand or remember a new problem when it is associated with a familiar phenomenon. So while studying a new problem, we always search for analogies between that problem and a familiar phenomenon. Some insight into the new problem can be gained from the knowledge of the analogous phenomenon. For example, there is a perfect analogy between electrical and mechanical systems. If we are familiar with electrical systems, mechanical systems can be easily understood by using the analogy between them. We are familiar with vectors and in this book we want to discuss signal analysis. There is a perfect analogy between vectors and signals. In this chapter, using the analogy between vectors and signals, we try to understand signal analysis in a better way.

### 3.2 ANALOGY BETWEEN VECTORS AND SIGNALS

#### *Vectors*

A vector is specified by magnitude and direction. We shall denote all vectors by boldface type and their magnitudes by light face type. Consider two vectors  $\mathbf{V}_1$  and  $\mathbf{V}_2$  as shown in Figure 3.1. The vector  $\mathbf{V}_1$  can be expressed in terms of vector  $\mathbf{V}_2$  in infinite ways by drawing a line from the end of  $\mathbf{V}_1$  on to  $\mathbf{V}_2$ . In each representation,  $\mathbf{V}_1$  is represented in terms of  $\mathbf{V}_2$  plus another vector which will be called the *error vector*. In Figure 3.1(a),  $\mathbf{V}_1$  is approximated by  $C_1\mathbf{V}_2$  with an error  $\mathbf{V}_{e_1}$ , i.e.  $\mathbf{V}_1 = C_1\mathbf{V}_2 + \mathbf{V}_{e_1}$ . In Figure 3.1(b),  $\mathbf{V}_1$  is approximated by  $C_2\mathbf{V}_2$  with an error  $\mathbf{V}_{e_2}$  as  $\mathbf{V}_1 = C_2\mathbf{V}_2 + \mathbf{V}_{e_2}$ . In Figure 3.1(c),  $\mathbf{V}_1$  is approximated by  $C_{12}\mathbf{V}_2$  with an error  $\mathbf{V}_e$  as  $\mathbf{V}_1 = C_{12}\mathbf{V}_2 + \mathbf{V}_e$ . Geometrically the component of a vector  $\mathbf{V}_1$  along vector  $\mathbf{V}_2$  is obtained by drawing a perpendicular from the end of  $\mathbf{V}_1$  onto  $\mathbf{V}_2$ . In this case, error vector  $\mathbf{V}_e$  is the minimum. The component of a vector  $\mathbf{V}_1$  along

another vector  $\mathbf{V}_2$  is given by  $C_{12}\mathbf{V}_2$ , where  $C_{12}$  is chosen such that the error vector is minimum. The magnitude of  $C_{12}$  is an indication of the similarity of the two vectors. If  $C_{12}$  is zero, then vector  $\mathbf{V}_1$  has no component along the other vector  $\mathbf{V}_2$ , and hence two vectors  $\mathbf{V}_1$  and  $\mathbf{V}_2$  are mutually perpendicular. The vectors which are mutually perpendicular to each other are called *orthogonal vectors*. Orthogonal vectors are thus independent vectors. If the vectors are orthogonal, then the parameter  $C_{12}$  is zero.

The component

$$\mathbf{V}_1 \text{ along } \mathbf{V}_2 = \frac{\mathbf{V}_1 \cdot \mathbf{V}_2}{\mathbf{V}_2} = C_{12}\mathbf{V}_2$$

Therefore,

$$C_{12} = \frac{\mathbf{V}_1 \cdot \mathbf{V}_2}{\mathbf{V}_2^2} = \frac{\mathbf{V}_1 \cdot \mathbf{V}_2}{\mathbf{V}_2 \cdot \mathbf{V}_2}$$

When vectors  $\mathbf{V}_1$  and  $\mathbf{V}_2$  are orthogonal, their dot product

$$\mathbf{V}_1 \cdot \mathbf{V}_2 = 0$$

and

$$C_{12} = 0$$

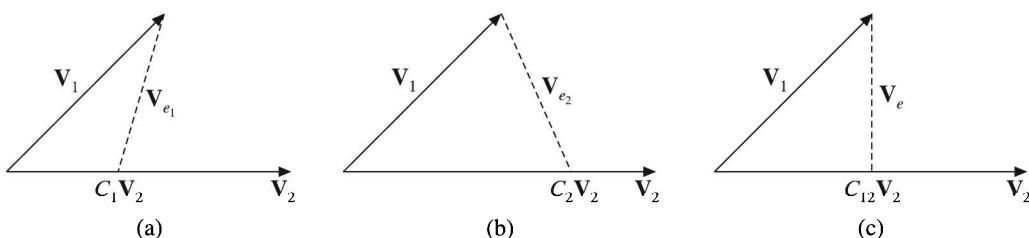


Figure 3.1 One vector in terms of another.

### Signals

The concept of vector comparison and orthogonality can be extended to signals. Consider two signals  $x_1(t)$  and  $x_2(t)$ . We can approximate  $x_1(t)$  in terms of  $x_2(t)$  over a certain interval ( $t_1 < t < t_2$ ) as follows:

$$x_1(t) \approx C_{12}x_2(t) \quad \text{for } (t_1 < t < t_2)$$

[This is similar to  $\mathbf{V}_1 \approx C_{12}\mathbf{V}_2$  in the case of vectors.]

Like in vectors, the main criterion in selecting  $C_{12}$  is to minimise the error between the actual function and the approximated function over the interval ( $t_1 < t < t_2$ ).

The error function  $x_e(t)$  is defined as:

$$x_e(t) = x_1(t) - C_{12}x_2(t)$$

If we choose to minimise the error  $x_e(t)$  over the interval  $t_1$  to  $t_2$  by minimising the average value of  $x_e(t)$  over this interval, i.e. by minimising

$$\frac{1}{t_2 - t_1} \int_{t_1}^{t_2} x_e(t) dt, \quad \text{i.e. } \frac{1}{t_2 - t_1} \int_{t_1}^{t_2} [x_1(t) - C_{12}x_2(t)] dt$$

it may give wrong results.

This is because there can be large positive and negative errors present in interval  $t_1$  to  $t_2$  that may cancel one another in the process of averaging and give the false indication that the error is zero. To overcome this we choose to minimise the mean square of the error instead of the error itself. Let us designate the average of squared error [ $x_e^2(t)$ ] by  $\varepsilon$ .

$$\varepsilon = \frac{1}{t_2 - t_1} \int_{t_1}^{t_2} x_e^2(t) dt = \frac{1}{t_2 - t_1} \int_{t_1}^{t_2} [x_1(t) - C_{12}x_2(t)]^2 dt$$

The value of  $C_{12}$  which minimises  $\varepsilon$  can be found from  $(d\varepsilon/dC_{12}) = 0$ .

$$\frac{d\varepsilon}{dC_{12}} = \frac{d}{dC_{12}} \left[ \frac{1}{(t_2 - t_1)} \int_{t_1}^{t_2} [x_1(t) - C_{12}x_2(t)]^2 dt \right] = 0$$

$$\text{i.e. } \frac{d}{dC_{12}} \left\{ \frac{1}{(t_2 - t_1)} \left[ \int_{t_1}^{t_2} [x_1^2(t) - 2C_{12}x_1(t)x_2(t) + C_{12}^2x_2^2(t)] dt \right] \right\} = 0$$

Changing the order of integration and differentiation, we get

$$\frac{1}{(t_2 - t_1)} \left[ \int_{t_1}^{t_2} \frac{d}{dC_{12}} [x_1^2(t)] dt - 2 \int_{t_1}^{t_2} \frac{d}{dC_{12}} [C_{12}x_1(t)x_2(t)] dt + \int_{t_1}^{t_2} \frac{d}{dC_{12}} [C_{12}^2x_2^2(t)] dt \right] = 0$$

$$\text{i.e. } \frac{1}{(t_2 - t_1)} \left[ 0 - 2 \int_{t_1}^{t_2} x_1(t)x_2(t) dt + \int_{t_1}^{t_2} 2C_{12}x_2^2(t) dt \right] = 0$$

$$\therefore \int_{t_1}^{t_2} x_1(t)x_2(t) dt = C_{12} \int_{t_1}^{t_2} x_2^2(t) dt$$

$$\therefore C_{12} = \frac{\int_{t_1}^{t_2} x_1(t)x_2(t) dt}{\int_{t_1}^{t_2} x_2^2(t) dt}$$

For vectors, we had	$C_{12} = \frac{\mathbf{V}_1 \cdot \mathbf{V}_2}{V_2^2}$
---------------------	--

By analogy with vectors, we say that  $x_1(t)$  has a component of waveform  $x_2(t)$  [i.e.  $C_{12}x_2(t)$ ] and this component has a magnitude  $C_{12}$ . If  $C_{12} = 0$ , then the signal  $x_1(t)$  contains no component of the signal  $x_2(t)$ , and we say that the two functions are orthogonal over the interval  $(t_1, t_2)$ . So we can say that the two functions  $x_1(t)$  and  $x_2(t)$  are orthogonal over an interval  $(t_1, t_2)$  if

$$\int_{t_1}^{t_2} x_1(t) x_2(t) dt = 0$$

[Two vectors  $\mathbf{V}_1$  and  $\mathbf{V}_2$  are orthogonal if  $\mathbf{V}_1 \cdot \mathbf{V}_2 = 0$ ]

Thus, we can conclude that in the case of vectors,

$$C_{12} = \frac{\mathbf{V}_1 \cdot \mathbf{V}_2}{V_2^2}$$

and in the case of signals,

$$C_{12} = \frac{\int_{t_1}^{t_2} x_1(t) x_2(t) dt}{\sqrt{\int_{t_1}^{t_2} x_2^2(t) dt}}$$

In both cases for orthogonality,  $C_{12} = 0$ .

Two vectors  $\mathbf{V}_1$  and  $\mathbf{V}_2$  are orthogonal if their dot product is zero, i.e.  $\mathbf{V}_1 \cdot \mathbf{V}_2 = 0$ . Two signals  $x_1(t)$  and  $x_2(t)$  are orthogonal if the integral of the product of those signals is zero, i.e.

$$\int_{t_1}^{t_2} x_1(t) x_2(t) dt = 0$$

In the analogy of vectors and signals, the dot product of two vectors is analogous to the integral of the product of two signals, that is

$$\mathbf{A} \cdot \mathbf{B} \sim \int_{t_1}^{t_2} x_A(t) x_B(t) dt$$

The square of the length  $A$  of vector  $\mathbf{A}$  is analogous to the integral of the square of a function, that is

$$\mathbf{A} \cdot \mathbf{A} = A^2 \sim \int_{t_1}^{t_2} x_A^2(t) dt$$

We can easily show that the functions  $\sin n\omega_0 t$ ,  $\sin m\omega_0 t$ ,  $\cos n\omega_0 t$ ,  $\cos m\omega_0 t$ , and  $\sin n\omega_0 t$ ,  $\cos m\omega_0 t$  are orthogonal over any interval  $[t_0, t_0 + (2\pi/\omega_0)]$  for integral values of  $m$  and  $n$ .

**EXAMPLE 3.1** Show that the following signals are orthogonal over an interval  $[0, 1]$ :

$$x_1(t) = 2$$

$$x_2(t) = \sqrt{3}(1 - 2t)$$

**Solution:** We know that two signals  $x_1(t)$  and  $x_2(t)$  are orthogonal over an interval  $(t_1, t_2)$ , if

$$\int_{t_1}^{t_2} x_1(t) x_2(t) dt = 0$$

In this case,

$$\begin{aligned}
 \int_{t_1}^{t_2} x_1(t) x_2(t) dt &= \int_0^1 2[\sqrt{3}(1-2t)] dt \\
 &= 2\sqrt{3} \int_0^1 dt - 4\sqrt{3} \int_0^1 t dt = 2\sqrt{3} [t]_0^1 - 4\sqrt{3} \left[ \frac{t^2}{2} \right]_0^1 \\
 &= 2\sqrt{3} [1-0] - 4\sqrt{3} \left[ \frac{1}{2} - 0 \right] \\
 &= 0
 \end{aligned}$$

This shows that the two given signals are orthogonal over an interval  $[0, 1]$ .

**EXAMPLE 3.2** Show that the functions  $\sin n\omega_0 t$  and  $\cos m\omega_0 t$  are orthogonal over any interval  $\{t_0 \text{ to } [t_0 + (2\pi/\omega_0)]\}$  for integral values of  $n$  and  $m$ .

**Solution:** To show that the functions  $\sin n\omega_0 t$  and  $\cos m\omega_0 t$  are orthogonal over any interval  $\{t_0 \text{ to } [t_0 + (2\pi/\omega_0)]\}$  for integral values of  $n$  and  $m$ , we have to show that the integral

$$\begin{aligned}
 I &= \int_{t_0}^{t_0 + (2\pi/\omega_0)} \sin n\omega_0 t \cos m\omega_0 t dt = 0 \\
 I &= \int_{t_0}^{t_0 + (2\pi/\omega_0)} \sin n\omega_0 t \cos m\omega_0 t dt \\
 &= \int_{t_0}^{t_0 + (2\pi/\omega_0)} \frac{1}{2} [\sin(n+m)\omega_0 t + \sin(n-m)\omega_0 t] dt \\
 &= \frac{1}{2} \left[ -\frac{\cos(n+m)\omega_0 t}{n+m} - \frac{\cos(n-m)\omega_0 t}{n-m} \right]_{t_0}^{t_0 + (2\pi/\omega_0)} \\
 &= -\frac{1}{2} \left\{ \left[ \frac{\cos(n+m)\omega_0[t_0 + (2\pi/\omega_0)] - \cos(n+m)\omega_0 t_0}{n+m} \right] \right. \\
 &\quad \left. + \left[ \frac{\cos(n-m)\omega_0[t_0 + (2\pi/\omega_0)] - \cos(n-m)\omega_0 t_0}{n-m} \right] \right\} \\
 &= -\frac{1}{2} \left\{ \left[ \frac{\cos(n+m)\omega_0 t_0 - \cos(n+m)\omega_0 t_0}{n+m} \right] + \left[ \frac{\cos(n-m)\omega_0 t_0 - \cos(n-m)\omega_0 t_0}{n-m} \right] \right\} \\
 &= 0
 \end{aligned}$$

This shows that the functions  $\sin n\omega_0 t$  and  $\cos m\omega_0 t$  are mutually orthogonal.

**EXAMPLE 3.3** Prove that the complex exponential signals are orthogonal functions.

**Solution:** Consider two complex exponential signals,

$$x_1(t) = e^{jn\omega_0 t} \quad \text{and} \quad x_2(t) = e^{jm\omega_0 t}$$

Let the interval be  $t_0$  to  $t_0 + T$ , i.e. from  $t_0$  to  $t_0 + (2\pi/\omega_0)$ .  $x_1(t)$  and  $x_2(t)$  are orthogonal over

the interval  $t_0$  to  $t_0 + (2\pi/\omega_0)$ , if  $I = \int_{t_0}^{t_0 + (2\pi/\omega_0)} x_1(t) x_2^*(t) dt = 0$ .

Here  $x_1(t) = e^{jn\omega_0 t}$  and  $x_2^*(t) = [e^{jm\omega_0 t}]^* = e^{-jm\omega_0 t}$

$$\begin{aligned} \therefore I &= \int_{t_0}^{t_0 + (2\pi/\omega_0)} e^{jn\omega_0 t} e^{-jm\omega_0 t} dt \\ &= \int_{t_0}^{t_0 + (2\pi/\omega_0)} e^{j(n-m)\omega_0 t} dt = \left[ \frac{e^{j(n-m)\omega_0 t}}{j(n-m)\omega_0} \right]_{t_0}^{t_0 + (2\pi/\omega_0)} \\ &= \left[ \frac{e^{j(n-m)\omega_0 [t_0 + (2\pi/\omega_0)]} - e^{j(n-m)\omega_0 t_0}}{j(n-m)\omega_0} \right] = \frac{e^{j(n-m)\omega_0 t_0} e^{j(n-m)2\pi} - e^{j(n-m)\omega_0 t_0}}{j(n-m)\omega_0} \\ &= \frac{e^{j(n-m)\omega_0 t_0} - e^{j(n-m)\omega_0 t_0}}{j(n-m)\omega_0} \quad \boxed{e^{j(n-m)2\pi} = \cos(n-m)2\pi + j \sin(n-m)2\pi = 1} \\ &= 0 \end{aligned}$$

$$\therefore \int_{t_0}^{t_0+T} e^{jn\omega_0 t} (e^{jm\omega_0 t})^* dt = 0$$

This proves that the complex exponential signals are orthogonal functions.

**EXAMPLE 3.4** Prove that the functions  $x_p(t)$  and  $x_q(t)$  where  $x_r(t) = \frac{1}{\sqrt{T}} (\cos r\omega_0 t + \sin r\omega_0 t)$ ,  $T = (2\pi/\omega_0)$  are orthogonal over the period (0 to  $T$ ).

**Solution:** Given  $x_r(t) = \frac{1}{\sqrt{T}} (\cos r\omega_0 t + \sin r\omega_0 t)$

where  $T = \frac{2\pi}{\omega_0}$ , i.e.  $\omega_0 = \frac{2\pi}{T}$

$$\therefore x_p(t) = \frac{1}{\sqrt{T}} (\cos p\omega_0 t + \sin p\omega_0 t)$$

and  $x_q(t) = \frac{1}{\sqrt{T}} (\cos q\omega_0 t + \sin q\omega_0 t)$

We know that the signals  $x_p(t)$  and  $x_q(t)$  are orthogonal over the period (0 to  $T$ ), if

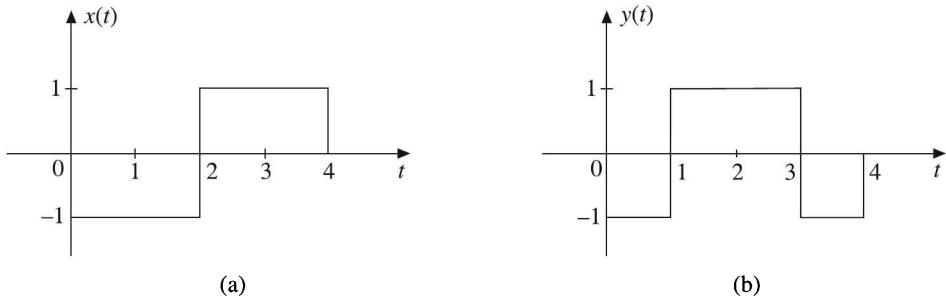
$$\int_0^T x_p(t) x_q(t) dt = 0$$

In this case,

$$\begin{aligned} x_p(t) x_q(t) &= \frac{1}{\sqrt{T}} [\cos p\omega_0 t + \sin p\omega_0 t] \frac{1}{\sqrt{T}} [\cos q\omega_0 t + \sin q\omega_0 t] \\ &= \frac{1}{T} [\cos p\omega_0 t \cos q\omega_0 t + \sin p\omega_0 t \sin q\omega_0 t + \cos p\omega_0 t \sin q\omega_0 t + \sin p\omega_0 t \cos q\omega_0 t] \\ &= \frac{1}{T} [\cos(p-q)\omega_0 t + \sin(p+q)\omega_0 t] \\ \therefore I &= \int_{t_0}^{t_0+T} x_p(t) x_q(t) dt \\ &= \int_0^T \frac{1}{T} [\cos(p-q)\omega_0 t + \sin(p+q)\omega_0 t] dt \\ &= \frac{1}{T} \left[ \frac{\sin(p-q)\omega_0 t}{(p-q)\omega_0} - \frac{\cos(p+q)\omega_0 t}{(p+q)\omega_0} \right]_0^T \\ &= \frac{1}{T} \left[ \frac{\sin(p-q)\omega_0 T - \sin 0}{(p-q)\omega_0} - \frac{\cos(p+q)\omega_0 T - \cos 0}{(p+q)\omega_0} \right] \\ &= \frac{1}{T} \left[ \frac{\sin(p-q)\omega_0(2\pi/\omega_0) - \sin 0}{(p-q)\omega_0} - \frac{\cos(p+q)\omega_0(2\pi/\omega_0) - \cos 0}{(p+q)\omega_0} \right] \\ &= \frac{1}{T} \left[ \frac{\sin(p-q)2\pi - \sin 0}{(p-q)\omega_0} - \frac{\cos(p+q)2\pi - \cos 0}{(p+q)\omega_0} \right] \\ &= \frac{1}{T} \left[ \frac{0-0}{(p-q)\omega_0} - \frac{1-1}{(p+q)\omega_0} \right] \\ &= 0 \\ \therefore \int_0^T x_p(t) x_q(t) dt &= 0 \end{aligned}$$

Thus, the functions  $x_p(t)$  and  $x_q(t)$  are orthogonal over the period [0 to  $T$ ].

**EXAMPLE 3.5** Prove that the signals  $x(t)$  and  $y(t)$  shown in Figure 3.2 are orthogonal over the interval [0, 4].



**Figure 3.2** Waveforms for Example 3.5.

**Solution:** The signals  $x(t)$  and  $y(t)$  shown in Figure 3.2 can be mathematically expressed as:

$$x(t) = \begin{cases} -1 & \text{for } 0 < t < 2 \\ 1 & \text{for } 2 < t < 4 \end{cases}$$

$$y(t) = \begin{cases} -1 & \text{for } 0 < t < 1 \\ 1 & \text{for } 1 < t < 3 \\ -1 & \text{for } 3 < t < 4 \end{cases}$$

We know that  $x(t)$  and  $y(t)$  are orthogonal over the interval  $[0, 4]$  if  $\int_0^4 x(t) y(t) dt = 0$ .

In this case,

$$\begin{aligned}
\int_0^4 x(t) y(t) dt &= \int_0^1 x(t) y(t) dt + \int_1^2 x(t) y(t) dt + \int_2^3 x(t) y(t) dt + \int_3^4 x(t) y(t) dt \\
&= \int_0^1 (-1)(-1) dt + \int_1^2 (-1)(1) dt + \int_2^3 (1)(1) dt + \int_3^4 (1)(-1) dt \\
&= \int_0^1 dt - \int_1^2 dt + \int_2^3 dt - \int_3^4 dt \\
&= [t]_0^1 - [t]_1^2 + [t]_2^3 - [t]_3^4 \\
&= [1 - 0] - [2 - 1] + [3 - 2] - [4 - 3] \\
&= 1 - 1 + 1 - 1 \\
&= 0
\end{aligned}$$

$$\therefore \int_0^4 x(t) y(t) dt = 0$$

This proves that the given signals are orthogonal over the interval  $[0, 4]$ .

**EXAMPLE 3.6** A rectangular function is defined as:

$$x(t) = \begin{cases} A & \text{for } 0 < t < \frac{\pi}{2} \\ -A & \text{for } \frac{\pi}{2} < t < \frac{3\pi}{2} \\ A & \text{for } \frac{3\pi}{2} < t < 2\pi \end{cases}$$

Approximate the above function by  $A \cos t$  between the intervals  $(0, 2\pi)$  such that the mean square error is minimum.

**Solution:** The given function  $x(t)$  can be approximated by  $A \cos t$  over the interval  $(0, 2\pi)$  as:

$$x(t) \approx C_{12} A \cos t$$

$C_{12}$  has to be found such that the mean square error is minimum over the interval  $(0, 2\pi)$  as:

$$\begin{aligned} C_{12} &= \frac{\int_0^{2\pi} x(t) A \cos t dt}{\int_0^{2\pi} [A \cos t]^2 dt} \\ &= \frac{\int_0^{\pi/2} (A) A \cos t dt + \int_{\pi/2}^{3\pi/2} (-A) A \cos t dt + \int_{3\pi/2}^{2\pi} (A) A \cos t dt}{\int_0^{2\pi} A^2 \frac{[1 + \cos 2t]}{2} dt} \\ &= \frac{A^2 \left[ \int_0^{\pi/2} \cos t dt - \int_{\pi/2}^{3\pi/2} \cos t dt + \int_{3\pi/2}^{2\pi} \cos t dt \right]}{\frac{A^2}{2} \left[ \int_0^{2\pi} (1 + \cos 2t) dt \right]} = \frac{[\sin t]_0^{\pi/2} - [\sin t]_{\pi/2}^{3\pi/2} + [\sin t]_{3\pi/2}^{2\pi}}{\frac{1}{2} \left[ t + \frac{\sin 2t}{2} \right]_0^{2\pi}} \\ &= \frac{\left[ \sin \frac{\pi}{2} - \sin 0 \right] - \left[ \sin \frac{3\pi}{2} - \sin \frac{\pi}{2} \right] + \left[ \sin 2\pi - \sin \frac{3\pi}{2} \right]}{\frac{1}{2} \left[ (2\pi - 0) + \frac{\sin 4\pi - \sin 0}{2} \right]} \\ &= \frac{(1 - 0) - (-1 - 1) + [0 - (-1)]}{\pi + \frac{0 - 0}{2}} = \frac{4}{\pi} \\ \therefore C_{12} &= \frac{4}{\pi} \end{aligned}$$

$$\therefore x(t) \approx \frac{4}{\pi} A \cos t$$

So the given function  $x(t)$  can be approximated by  $A \cos t$  as  $x(t) \approx (4/\pi) A \cos t$  over the interval  $(0, 2\pi)$  such that the mean square error is minimum. The rectangular function  $x(t)$ , the cosine waveform  $A \cos t$ , and the approximation of the rectangular function in terms of the cosine waveform are shown in Figure 3.3.

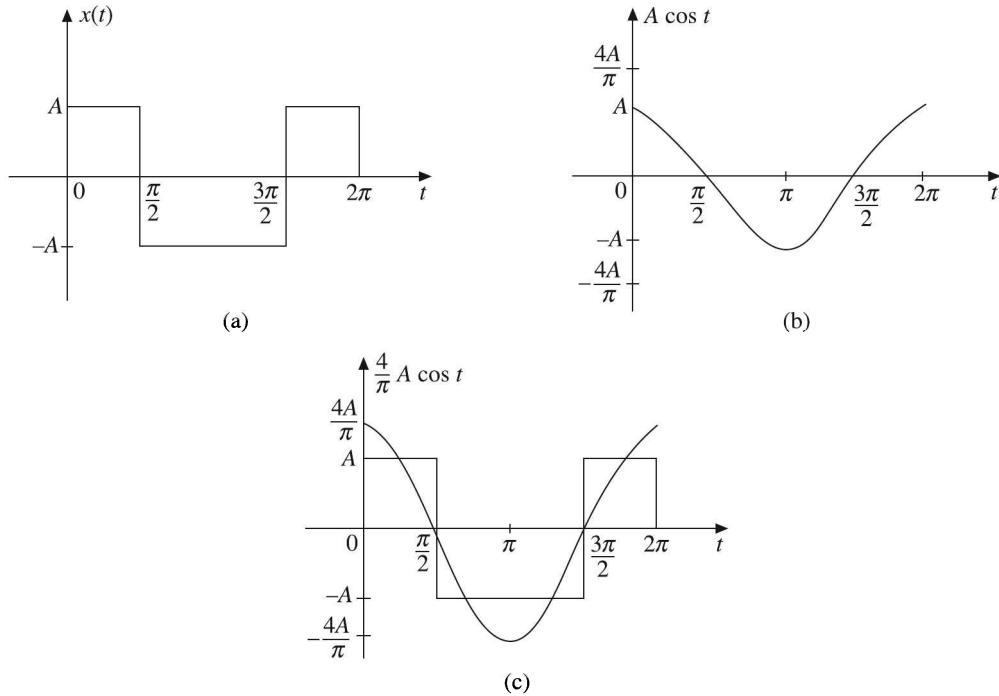


Figure 3.3 (a) Rectangular function, (b) Cosine wave, (c) Approximation.

### 3.3 GRAPHICAL EVALUATION OF A COMPONENT OF ONE FUNCTION IN THE OTHER

In the previous section, we discussed that the component of a function  $x_1(t)$  in another function  $x_2(t)$  can be evaluated analytically using the equation

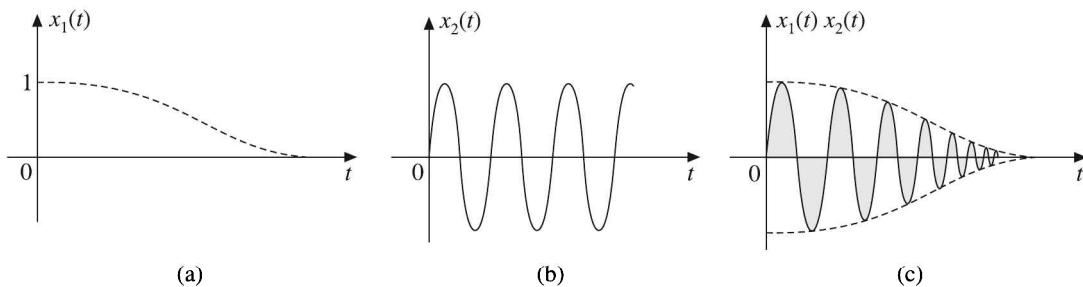
$$C_{12} = \frac{\int_{t_1}^{t_2} x_1(t) x_2(t) dt}{\int_{t_1}^{t_2} x_2^2(t) dt}$$

In this section, we discuss how to evaluate the component of a function in the other function by graphical means using the same equation.

Suppose two functions  $x_1(t)$  and  $x_2(t)$  are known graphically, and it is desired to evaluate the component of waveform  $x_2(t)$  contained in function  $x_1(t)$  over a period  $(0, T)$ . We know that it is equal to  $C_{12}x_2(t)$ .

The integral  $\left( \int_{t_1}^{t_2} x_1(t) x_2(t) dt \right)$  in the numerator of the above equation for  $C_{12}$  can be

found by multiplying the two functions and evaluating the area under the product curve. The denominator integral can be evaluated by finding the area under the function  $[x_2^2(t)]$  in a similar way. From these values,  $C_{12}$  and  $C_{12}x_2(t)$  can be found. The functions  $x_1(t)$  and  $x_2(t)$  are shown in Figure 3.4[(a) and (b)]. The area under the product  $[x_1(t) x_2(t)]$  curve is shown in Figure 3.4(c).



**Figure 3.4** Graphical evaluation of the component of signal  $x_2(t)$  in signal  $x_1(t)$ .

### 3.4 ORTHOGONAL VECTOR SPACE

We discuss about a general  $n$ -dimensional vector space. Such a physical space, of course, does not exist in nature. Nevertheless there are many analogous problems that may be viewed as  $n$ -dimensional problems. For example, a linear equation in  $n$ -independent variables may be viewed as a vector expressed in terms of its components along  $n$  mutually perpendicular co-ordinates.

If unit vectors along these  $n$  mutually perpendicular co-ordinates are designated as  $x_1, x_2, \dots, x_n$ , and a general vector  $\mathbf{A}$  in this  $n$ -dimensional space has components  $C_1, C_2, \dots, C_n$  respectively along these  $n$ -co-ordinates, then

$$\mathbf{A} = C_1 x_1 + C_2 x_2 + C_3 x_3 + \dots + C_n x_n$$

All the vectors  $x_1, x_2, \dots, x_n$  are mutually orthogonal, and the set must be complete in order for any general vector  $\mathbf{A}$  to be represented by this equation.

The condition of orthogonality implies that the dot product of any two vectors  $x_n$  and  $x_m$  must be zero, and the dot product of any vector with itself must be unity. This can be expressed as:

$$x_m \cdot x_n = \begin{cases} 0 & m \neq n \\ 1 & m = n \end{cases}$$

The constants  $C_1, C_2, C_3, \dots, C_n$  in the equation for  $\mathbf{A}$  represent the magnitudes of the components of  $\mathbf{A}$  along the vectors  $x_1, x_2, x_3, \dots, x_n$  respectively.

The dot product of both sides of the equation for  $\mathbf{A}$  with vector  $x_r$ , gives

$$\mathbf{A} \cdot x_r = C_1 x_1 \cdot x_r + C_2 x_2 \cdot x_r + \dots + C_r x_r \cdot x_r + \dots + C_n x_n \cdot x_r$$

Since  $x_m \cdot x_n = 0$  for  $m \neq n$  and  $x_m \cdot x_n = 1$  for  $m = n$ , we get all the terms of the form  $C_j x_j \cdot x_r (j \neq r)$  are zero. Therefore,

$$\mathbf{A} \cdot x_r = C_r x_r \cdot x_r = C_r$$

This set of vectors  $(x_1, x_2, \dots, x_n)$  which are mutually perpendicular to each other are called an *orthogonal vector space*. In general, the product  $x_m \cdot x_n$  can be some constant  $k_m$  instead of unity. When  $k_m$  is unity, the set is called *normalized orthogonal set*, or *orthonormal vector space*. Therefore, in general, for orthogonal vector space  $\{x_r\} \dots (r = 1, 2, \dots, n)$ , we have

$$x_m \cdot x_r = \begin{cases} 0 & m \neq n \\ k_m & m = n \end{cases}$$

For an orthogonal vector space, the equation for  $\mathbf{A} \cdot x_r$  is modified to

$$\mathbf{A} \cdot x_r = C_r x_r \cdot x_r = C_r k_r$$

and

$$C_r = \frac{\mathbf{A} \cdot x_r}{k_r}$$

The *summary* of the above discussion for vector space is:

For an orthogonal vector space  $\{x_r\} \dots (r = 1, 2, \dots, n)$

$$x_m \cdot x_n = \begin{cases} 0 & m \neq n \\ k_m & m = n \end{cases}$$

If this vector space is complete, then any vector  $\mathbf{F}$  can be expressed as:

$$\mathbf{F} = C_1 x_1 + C_2 x_2 + \dots + C_r x_r$$

where

$$C_r = \frac{\mathbf{F} \cdot x_r}{k_r} = \frac{\mathbf{F} \cdot x_r}{x_r \cdot x_r}$$

### 3.5 ORTHOGONAL SIGNAL SPACE

In the case of vectors, we have discussed that any vector  $\mathbf{A}$  can be expressed as a sum of its components along a set of  $n$  mutually orthogonal vectors, provided these vectors form a complete set of co-ordinate system. Similarly, in the case of signals, any signal  $x(t)$  can be expressed as a sum of its components along a set of  $n$  mutually orthogonal functions if these functions form a complete set.

### 3.5.1 Approximation of a Function by a Set of Mutually Orthogonal Functions

Consider a set of  $n$  functions  $g_1(t), g_2(t), \dots, g_n(t)$  which are orthogonal to one another over an interval  $t_1$  to  $t_2$ , that is

$$\int_{t_1}^{t_2} g_j(t) g_k(t) dt = 0 \quad j \neq k$$

and let

$$\int_{t_1}^{t_2} g_j^2(t) dt = K_j$$

Let an arbitrary signal  $x(t)$  be approximated over an interval  $(t_1, t_2)$  by a linear combination of these  $n$  mutually orthogonal signals.

$$x(t) \approx C_1 g_1(t) + C_2 g_2(t) + \dots + C_k g_k(t) + \dots + C_n g_n(t)$$

$$= \sum_{r=1}^n C_r g_r(t)$$

For the best approximation we must find the proper values of constants  $C_1, C_2, \dots, C_n$  such that  $\varepsilon$ , the mean square of error  $x_e(t)$  is minimised.

By definition,

$$x_e(t) = x(t) - \sum_{r=1}^n C_r g_r(t)$$

and

$$\varepsilon = \frac{1}{t_2 - t_1} \int_{t_1}^{t_2} \left[ x(t) - \sum_{r=1}^n C_r g_r(t) \right]^2 dt$$

This equation shows that  $\varepsilon$  is a function of  $C_1, C_2, \dots, C_n$  and to minimise  $\varepsilon$ , we must have

$$\frac{\partial \varepsilon}{\partial C_1} = \frac{\partial \varepsilon}{\partial C_2} = \dots = \frac{\partial \varepsilon}{\partial C_j} = \dots = \frac{\partial \varepsilon}{\partial C_n} = 0$$

Consider the equation,

$$\frac{\partial \varepsilon}{\partial C_j} = 0$$

Since  $(t_2 - t_1)$  is a constant, we can write

$$\frac{\partial}{\partial C_j} \left\{ \int_{t_1}^{t_2} \left[ x(t) - \sum_{r=1}^n C_r g_r(t) \right]^2 dt \right\} = 0$$

i.e.

$$\frac{\partial}{\partial C_j} \left\{ \int_{t_1}^{t_2} \left[ x^2(t) - 2 \sum_{r=1}^n x(t) C_r g_r(t) + \sum_{r=1}^n C_r^2 g_r^2(t) \right] dt \right\} = 0$$

In this expansion, all the terms arising due to the cross product of the orthogonal functions are zero by virtue of orthogonality, that is, all the terms of the form  $\int g_j(t) g_k(t) dt$  are zero. Similarly, the derivative with respect to  $C_j$  of all the terms that do not contain  $C_j$  are zero, that is

$$\frac{\partial}{\partial C_j} \int_{t_1}^{t_2} x^2(t) dt = \frac{\partial}{\partial C_j} \int_{t_1}^{t_2} C_r^2 g_r^2(t) dt = \frac{\partial}{\partial C_j} \int_{t_1}^{t_2} C_r x(t) g_r(t) dt = 0$$

This leaves only two non-zero terms in the equation  $\partial \mathcal{E}/\partial C_j = 0$  as follows:

$$\frac{\partial}{\partial C_j} \int_{t_1}^{t_2} [-2C_j x(t) g_j(t) + C_j^2 g_j^2(t)] dt = 0$$

Changing the order of differentiation and integration, we get

$$2 \int_{t_1}^{t_2} x(t) g_j(t) dt = 2C_j \int_{t_1}^{t_2} g_j^2(t) dt$$

$$\int_{t_1}^{t_2} x(t) g_j(t) dt$$

Therefore,

$$C_j = \frac{\int_{t_1}^{t_2} x(t) g_j(t) dt}{\int_{t_1}^{t_2} g_j^2(t) dt}$$

$$= \frac{1}{K_j} \int_{t_1}^{t_2} x(t) g_j(t) dt$$

This result may be summarised as follows:

Given a set of  $n$  functions  $g_1(t), g_2(t), \dots, g_n(t)$  mutually orthogonal over the interval  $(t_1, t_2)$ , it is possible to approximate an arbitrary function  $x(t)$  over this interval by a linear combination of these  $n$  functions

$$x(t) \approx C_1 g_1(t) + C_2 g_2(t) + \dots + C_n g_n(t)$$

$$= \sum_{r=1}^n C_r g_r(t)$$

For the best approximation, that is, the one that will minimize the mean of the square error over the interval, we must choose the coefficients  $C_1, C_2, \dots, C_n$  as given by

$$C_j = \frac{\int_{t_1}^{t_2} x(t) g_j(t) dt}{\int_{t_1}^{t_2} g_j^2(t) dt} = \frac{1}{K_j} \int_{t_1}^{t_2} x(t) g_j(t) dt$$

### 3.5.2 Evaluation of Mean Square Error

Let us now find the values of  $\varepsilon$  when optimum values of coefficients  $C_1, C_2, \dots, C_n$  are chosen according to the equation for  $C_j$  given in section 3.5.1.

By definition,

$$\begin{aligned}\varepsilon &= \frac{1}{t_2 - t_1} \int_{t_1}^{t_2} \left[ x(t) - \sum_{r=1}^n C_r g_r(t) \right]^2 dt \\ &= \frac{1}{t_2 - t_1} \left[ \int_{t_1}^{t_2} x^2(t) dt + \sum_{r=1}^n C_r^2 \int_{t_1}^{t_2} g_r^2(t) dt - 2 \sum_{r=1}^n C_r \int_{t_1}^{t_2} x(t) g_r(t) dt \right]\end{aligned}$$

But from the equation for  $C_j$ , we have

$$\int_{t_1}^{t_2} x(t) g_r(t) dt = C_r \int_{t_1}^{t_2} g_r^2(t) dt = C_r K_r$$

Substituting this in the equation for  $\varepsilon$ , we have

$$\begin{aligned}\varepsilon &= \frac{1}{t_2 - t_1} \left[ \int_{t_1}^{t_2} x^2(t) dt + \sum_{r=1}^n C_r^2 K_r - 2 \sum_{r=1}^n C_r^2 K_r \right] \\ &= \frac{1}{t_2 - t_1} \left[ \int_{t_1}^{t_2} x^2(t) dt - \sum_{r=1}^n C_r^2 K_r \right] \\ &= \frac{1}{t_2 - t_1} \left[ \int_{t_1}^{t_2} x^2(t) dt - (C_1^2 K_1 + C_2^2 K_2 + \dots + C_n^2 K_n) \right]\end{aligned}$$

The mean square error can therefore be evaluated using this equation for  $\varepsilon$ .

### 3.5.3 Representation of a Function by a Closed or a Complete Set of Mutually Orthogonal Functions

From the equation for mean square error  $\varepsilon$ , i.e. from the equation

$$\varepsilon = \frac{1}{t_2 - t_1} \left[ \int_{t_1}^{t_2} x^2(t) dt - (C_1^2 K_1 + C_2^2 K_2 + \dots + C_n^2 K_n) \right]$$

We can observe that if we increase  $n$ , that is, if we approximate  $x(t)$  by a larger number of orthogonal functions, the error will become smaller. But  $\varepsilon$ , which is mean of squared error is

a positive quantity; hence in the limit as the number of terms is made infinity, the sum

$$\sum_{r=1}^n C_r^2 K_r \text{ may converge to the integral}$$

$$\int_{t_1}^{t_2} x^2(t) dt$$

and then  $\varepsilon$  vanishes. Thus,

$$\int_{t_1}^{t_2} x^2(t) dt = \sum_{r=1}^{\infty} C_r^2 K_r$$

Under these conditions,  $x(t)$  is represented by the infinite series

$$x(t) = C_1 g_1(t) + C_2 g_2(t) + \cdots + C_r g_r(t) + \cdots$$

The infinite series on the right-hand side of this equation for  $x(t)$  converges to  $x(t)$  such that the mean square of the error is zero. The series is said to converge in the mean. The representation of  $x(t)$  is now exact.

A set of functions  $g_1(t), g_2(t), \dots, g_r(t)$  mutually orthogonal over the interval  $(t_1, t_2)$  is said to be a complete or a closed set if there exists no function  $y(t)$  for which it is true that

$$\int_{t_1}^{t_2} y(t) g_k(t) dt = 0 \quad \text{for } k = 1, 2, \dots$$

If a function  $y(t)$  could be found such that the above integral is zero, then obviously  $y(t)$  is orthogonal to each member of the set  $\{g_r(t)\}$  and consequently, is itself a member of the set. So the set cannot be complete without  $y(t)$  being its member.

### **Summary of the results of the discussion**

For a set  $\{g_r(t)\} (r = 1, 2, \dots)$  mutually orthogonal over the interval  $(t_1, t_2)$ ,

$$\int_{t_1}^{t_2} g_m(t) g_n(t) dt = \begin{cases} 0 & \text{if } m \neq n \\ K_m & \text{if } m = n \end{cases}$$

If this function set is complete, then any function  $x(t)$  can be expressed as:

$$x(t) = C_1 g_1(t) + C_2 g_2(t) + \cdots + C_r g_r(t) + \cdots$$

$$\int_{t_1}^{t_2} x(t) g_r(t) dt = \int_{t_1}^{t_2} x(t) g_r(t) dt$$

$$\text{where } C_r = \frac{\int_{t_1}^{t_2} x(t) g_r(t) dt}{\int_{t_1}^{t_2} g_r^2(t) dt}$$

Representation of a function  $x(t)$  by a set of infinite mutually orthogonal functions is called *generalised Fourier series representation of  $x(t)$* .

### 3.6 ORTHOGONALITY IN COMPLEX FUNCTIONS

Till now we have considered only real functions of real variable. If  $x_1(t)$  and  $x_2(t)$  are complex functions of real variable  $t$ ,  $x_1(t)$  can be approximated by  $C_{12}x_2(t)$  over an interval  $(t_1, t_2)$

$$x_1(t) \approx C_{12}x_2(t)$$

The optimum value of  $C_{12}$  to minimise the mean square error magnitude is given by

$$C_{12} = \frac{\int_{t_1}^{t_2} x_1(t) x_2^*(t) dt}{\int_{t_1}^{t_2} x_2(t) x_2^*(t) dt}$$

where  $x_2^*(t)$  is complex conjugate of  $x_2(t)$ .

For the complex functions to be orthogonal over the interval  $(t_1, t_2)$ ,  $C_{12} = 0$ .

$$\therefore \int_{t_1}^{t_2} x_1(t) x_2^*(t) dt = \int_{t_1}^{t_2} x_1^*(t) x_2(t) dt = 0$$

For a set of complex functions  $\{g_r(t)\}$ , ( $r = 1, 2, \dots$ ) mutually orthogonal over the interval  $(t_1, t_2)$ ,

$$\int_{t_1}^{t_2} g_m(t) g_n^*(t) dt = \begin{cases} 0 & \text{if } m \neq n \\ K_m & \text{if } m = n \end{cases}$$

If this set of functions is complete, then any function  $x(t)$  can be expressed as:

$$x(t) = C_1 g_1(t) + C_2 g_2(t) + \dots + C_r g_r(t) + \dots$$

$$\text{where } C_r = \frac{1}{K_r} \int_{t_1}^{t_2} x(t) g_r^*(t) dt$$

**EXAMPLE 3.7** A rectangular function  $x(t)$  is defined by

$$x(t) = \begin{cases} 1 & \text{for } 0 < t < \pi \\ -1 & \text{for } \pi < t < 2\pi \end{cases}$$

Approximate the above rectangular function by a single sinusoid  $\sin t$  over the interval  $[0, 2\pi]$  such that the mean square error is minimum. Evaluate the mean square error in this approximation. Also show what happens when more number of sinusoids is used for approximation.

**Solution:** The given rectangular function  $x(t)$  is shown in Figure 3.5(a). This function  $x(t)$  can be approximated over the interval  $[0, 2\pi]$  as:

$$x(t) \approx C_{12} \sin t$$

We shall find the optimum value of  $C_{12}$  which will minimise the mean square error in this approximation.

In general, the optimum value of  $C_{12}$  is:

$$C_{12} = \frac{\int_{t_1}^{t_2} x_1(t) x_2(t) dt}{\int_{t_1}^{t_2} x_2^2(t) dt}$$

In this case,

$$x_1(t) = x(t) = \begin{cases} 1 & \text{for } 0 < t < \pi \\ -1 & \text{for } \pi < t < 2\pi \end{cases}$$

as shown in Figure 3.5(a) and  $x_2(t) = \sin t$  as shown in Figure 3.5(b).

$$\begin{aligned} \therefore C_{12} &= \frac{\int_0^{2\pi} x(t) \sin t dt}{\int_0^{2\pi} \sin^2(t) dt} \\ &= \frac{\int_0^\pi (1) \sin t dt + \int_\pi^{2\pi} (-1) \sin t dt}{\int_0^{2\pi} \left[ \frac{1 - \cos 2t}{2} \right] dt} = \frac{[-\cos t]_0^\pi - [-\cos t]_\pi^{2\pi}}{\frac{1}{2} \left[ t - \frac{\sin 2t}{2} \right]_0^{2\pi}} \\ &= \frac{-[\cos \pi - \cos 0] + [\cos 2\pi - \cos \pi]}{\frac{1}{2} \left[ (2\pi - 0 - \frac{\sin 4\pi - \sin 0}{2}) \right]} = \frac{-[-1 - 1] + [1 - (-1)]}{\frac{1}{2}[2\pi]} \\ &= \frac{4}{\pi} \end{aligned}$$

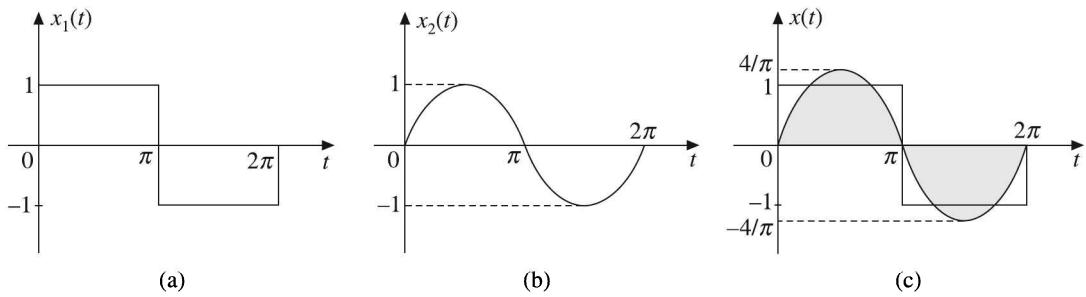
Thus,  $x(t) \approx \frac{4}{\pi} \sin t$

Thus, the best approximation of the rectangular function  $x(t)$  by a sinusoidal function  $\sin t$  with minimum mean square error is shown in Figure 3.5(c) and is given as:

$$x(t) \approx \frac{4}{\pi} \sin t$$

The mean square error can be evaluated using the formula

$$\mathcal{E} = \frac{1}{t_2 - t_1} \left[ \int_{t_1}^{t_2} x^2(t) dt - C_{12}^2 \int_{t_1}^{t_2} \sin^2(t) dt \right]$$



**Figure 3.5** (a) Rectangular function, (b) Sine wave, (c) Approximation.

Here  $t_1 = 0$  and  $t_2 = 2\pi$ .

$$\begin{aligned}
 \therefore \varepsilon &= \frac{1}{2\pi - 0} \left[ \int_0^{2\pi} 1 dt - \left( \frac{4}{\pi} \right)^2 \int_0^{2\pi} \left( \frac{1 - \cos 2t}{2} \right) dt \right] \\
 &= \frac{1}{2\pi} \left[ \int_0^{2\pi} dt - \frac{16}{\pi^2} \int_0^{2\pi} \left( \frac{1 - \cos 2t}{2} \right) dt \right] \\
 &= \frac{1}{2\pi} \left[ [t]_0^{2\pi} - \frac{16}{2\pi^2} \left[ t - \frac{\sin 2t}{2} \right]_0^{2\pi} \right] \\
 &= \frac{1}{2\pi} \left\{ (2\pi - 0) - \frac{8}{\pi^2} \left[ (2\pi - 0) - \frac{(\sin 4\pi - \sin 0)}{2} \right] \right\} \\
 &= \frac{1}{2\pi} \left[ 2\pi - \frac{16}{\pi} \right] \\
 &= 1 - \frac{8}{\pi^2} \\
 &= 0.189
 \end{aligned}$$

$\therefore$  Mean square error  $\varepsilon = 0.189 = 18.9\%$ .

### Approximation using a finite series of sinusoids

When the given rectangular function  $x(t)$  is approximated using a finite series of sinusoids, we get

$$x(t) = \sum_{r=1}^n C_r \sin rt$$

where  $C_r = \frac{\int_0^{2\pi} x(t) \sin rt dt}{\int_0^{2\pi} \sin^2 rt dt}$

$$\begin{aligned} &= \frac{\int_0^\pi (1) \sin rt dt + \int_\pi^{2\pi} (-1) \sin rt dt}{\int_0^{2\pi} \left( \frac{1 - \cos 2rt}{2} \right) dt} \\ &= \frac{\int_0^\pi \sin rt dt - \int_\pi^{2\pi} \sin rt dt}{\frac{1}{2} \left\{ \int_0^{2\pi} (1 - \cos 2rt) dt \right\}} = \frac{\left[ -\frac{\cos rt}{r} \right]_0^\pi + \left[ \frac{\cos rt}{r} \right]_\pi^{2\pi}}{\frac{1}{2} \left[ t - \frac{\sin 2rt}{2r} \right]_0^{2\pi}} \\ &= \frac{\frac{1}{r} [-\cos r\pi + \cos 0 + \cos 2r\pi - \cos r\pi]}{\frac{1}{2} \left[ 2\pi - 0 - \frac{\sin 4\pi r - \sin 0}{2r} \right]} \end{aligned}$$

We have

$$\cos r\pi = (-1)^r$$

$$\cos 2r\pi = 1$$

$$\sin 4r\pi = 0$$

$$\begin{aligned} \therefore C_r &= \frac{\frac{1}{r} [-(-1)^r + 1 + 1 - (-1)^r]}{\frac{1}{2} [2\pi - 0]} \\ &= \frac{2}{r\pi} [1 - (-1)^r] \\ C_r &= \frac{2}{r\pi} [1 + (-1)^{r+1}] \\ C_r &= \begin{cases} 4/r\pi & r = \text{odd} \\ 0 & r = \text{even} \end{cases} \end{aligned}$$

Thus, the approximated function is given by

$$x(t) = \sum_{r=1}^n C_r \sin rt = \frac{4}{\pi} \sin t + \frac{4}{3\pi} \sin 3t + \frac{4}{5\pi} \sin 5t + \dots$$

Now, to evaluate the MSE, we have

$$\epsilon = \frac{1}{t_2 - t_1} \left[ \int_{t_1}^{t_2} x^2(t) dt - \sum_{r=1}^n C_r^2 k_r \right]$$

where

$$k_r = \int_{t_1}^{t_2} \sin^2 rt dt$$

$$\therefore \epsilon = \frac{1}{2\pi} \left[ \int_0^{2\pi} x^2(t) dt - \sum_{r=1}^n C_r^2 k_r \right]$$

$$x^2(t) = 1 \quad \text{for } 0 < t < 2\pi$$

$$\therefore \int_0^{2\pi} x^2(t) dt = \int_0^{2\pi} dt = [t]_0^{2\pi} = 2\pi$$

$$C_r = \begin{cases} 4/r\pi & \text{for odd } r \\ 0 & \text{for even } r \end{cases}$$

$$\begin{aligned} k_r &= \int_0^{2\pi} \sin^2 rt dt = \int_0^{2\pi} \left( \frac{1 - \cos 2rt}{2} \right) dt \\ &= \frac{1}{2} \left[ t - \frac{\sin 2rt}{2r} \right]_0^{2\pi} = \frac{1}{2} \left[ 2\pi - 0 - \frac{\sin 4\pi r - \sin 0}{2r} \right] \\ &= \frac{1}{2} [2\pi - 0] \end{aligned}$$

$$\therefore k_r = \pi$$

First approximate  $x(t)$  by a single sinusoid as:

$$x(t) = \frac{4}{\pi} \sin t$$

and

$$\text{MSE}_1 = \frac{1}{2\pi} \left[ 2\pi - \left( \frac{4}{\pi} \right)^2 \pi \right] = \frac{1}{2\pi} \left[ 2\pi - \frac{16}{\pi} \right] = 0.189$$

Now, approximate  $x(t)$  by two sinusoids. Therefore,

$$x(t) = \frac{4}{\pi} \sin t + \frac{4}{3\pi} \sin 3t$$

$$\text{MSE}_2 = \frac{1}{2\pi} \left\{ 2\pi - \left[ \left( \frac{4}{\pi} \right)^2 + \left( \frac{4}{3\pi} \right)^2 \right] \pi \right\}$$

and

$$= \frac{1}{2\pi} \left[ 2\pi - \left( \frac{16}{\pi} + \frac{16}{9\pi} \right) \right]$$

$$\therefore \text{MSE}_2 = 0.099$$

Similarly for three sinusoids, the approximation becomes

$$x(t) = \frac{4}{\pi} \sin t + \frac{4}{3\pi} \sin 3t + \frac{4}{5\pi} \sin 5t$$

and

$$\text{MSE}_3 = \frac{1}{2\pi} \left\{ 2\pi - \left[ \left( \frac{4}{\pi} \right)^2 + \left( \frac{4}{3\pi} \right)^2 + \left( \frac{4}{5\pi} \right)^2 \right] \pi \right\}$$

$$= \frac{1}{2\pi} \left[ 2\pi - \left( \frac{16}{\pi} + \frac{16}{9\pi} + \frac{16}{25\pi} \right) \right]$$

$$\therefore \text{MSE}_3 = 0.066$$

We observe that as the number of sinusoids in the approximation increases, the MSE decreases. If the number of sinusoids is increased to infinity, then the MSE becomes zero.

**EXAMPLE 3.8** Discuss how an unknown function  $x(t)$  can be expressed using infinite mutually orthogonal functions. Hence show the representation of a waveform  $x(t)$  using trigonometric Fourier series.

**Solution:**

#### Expression of function $x(t)$ in terms of infinite mutually orthogonal functions

We know that an arbitrary function  $x(t)$  can be represented as a sum of its components along a set of mutually orthogonal functions if these functions form a complete set.

Consider a set of infinite mutually orthogonal functions  $x_1(t), x_2(t), \dots, x_n(t), \dots$ . Then the condition for them to be orthogonal over the interval  $(t_1$  to  $t_2)$  is:

$$\int_{t_1}^{t_2} x_p(t) x_q(t) dt = \begin{cases} 0 & \text{if } p \neq q \\ k_p & \text{if } p = q \end{cases}$$

If  $x_1(t), x_2(t), \dots, x_n(t)$  is complete, then any unknown function  $x(t)$  can be expressed in terms of infinite sum of orthogonal functions as:

$$x(t) = C_1 x_1(t) + C_2 x_2(t) + \dots + C_n x_n(t) + \dots$$

$$\int_{t_1}^{t_2} x(t) x_n(t) dt$$

where

$$C_n = \frac{\int_{t_1}^{t_2} x(t) x_n(t) dt}{\int_{t_1}^{t_2} x_n^2(t) dt}$$

### **Representation of a waveform $x(t)$ using trigonometric Fourier series**

Trigonometric Fourier series is the representation of any unknown signal by cosine and sine terms.

We know that the functions  $\sin \omega_0 t$ ,  $\sin 2\omega_0 t$ , ... form an orthogonal set over any interval  $[t_0, t_0 + (2\pi/\omega_0)]$ .

The set, however, is not complete because there exists a function  $\cos n\omega_0 t$ ,  $n = 1, 2, \dots$  orthogonal to  $\sin m\omega_0 t$ ,  $m = 1, 2, \dots$ .

So now the complete set of orthogonal functions is 1,  $\cos \omega_0 t$ ,  $\cos 2\omega_0 t$ , ...,  $\sin \omega_0 t$ ,  $\sin 2\omega_0 t$ , ... etc.

Any arbitrary function  $x(t)$  can be expressed by the sum of its components along this set of mutually orthogonal functions, i.e.

$$x(t) = a_0 + a_1 \cos \omega_0 t + a_2 \cos 2\omega_0 t + \dots + b_1 \sin \omega_0 t + b_2 \sin 2\omega_0 t + \dots$$

$$= a_0 + \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} a_n \cos n\omega_0 t + b_n \sin n\omega_0 t; \quad t_0 \leq t \leq t_0 + \frac{2\pi}{\omega_0}; \quad T = \frac{2\pi}{\omega_0}$$

where  $a_n = \frac{\int_{t_0}^{t_0+T} x(t) \cos n\omega_0 t \, dt}{\int_{t_0}^{t_0+T} \cos^2 n\omega_0 t \, dt} = \frac{2}{T} \int_{t_0}^{t_0+T} x(t) \cos n\omega_0 t \, dt$

and  $b_n = \frac{\int_{t_0}^{t_0+T} x(t) \sin n\omega_0 t \, dt}{\int_{t_0}^{t_0+T} \sin^2 n\omega_0 t \, dt} = \frac{2}{T} \int_{t_0}^{t_0+T} x(t) \sin n\omega_0 t \, dt$

and  $a_0 = \frac{1}{T} \int_{t_0}^{t_0+T} x(t) \, dt$

## **MATLAB PROGRAMS**

### **Program 3.1**

```
% Testing orthogonality between two signals
clc; clear;
syms t
x1=input('Enter the first signal =');
x2=input('Enter the second signal =');
t1=input('tmin =');
```

```
t2=input('tmax =');
y1=int(x1*x2, t1, t2)
if (y1==0)
    disp('orthogonal')
else
    disp('Not orthogonal')
end
```

Output:

**Example 1:**

```
Enter the first signal =sin(2*pi*t)
Enter the second signal =cos(3*pi*t)
tmin =0
tmax =2
y1 =
0
Orthogonal
```

**Example 2:**

```
Enter the first signal =sin(2*pi*t)
Enter the second signal =cos(0.3*pi*t)
tmin =0
tmax =2
y1 =
(50*5^(1/2) + 150)/(391*pi)
Not orthogonal
```

### Program 3.2

```
% Testing the orthogonality between the signals
% Example 1
f=0.5;n1=2;
x1=sin(n1*2*pi*f*t)
n2=4;
x2=cos(n2*2*pi*f*t)
t1=0
t2=2
y=int(x1*x2,t1,t2)
if (y==0)
    disp('orthogonal')
else
    disp('Not orthogonal')
end
% Example 2
f=1;n1=1;
```

---

```

x1=exp(j*n1*2*pi*f*t)
n2=2;
x2=cos(n2*2*pi*f*t)
t1=0
t2=0.5
y=int(x1*x2,t1,t2)
if (y==0)
    disp('orthogonal')
else
    disp('Not orthogonal')
end

```

**Output:**

**Example 1**

```

x1 =
sin(2*pi*t)
x2 =
cos(4*pi*t)
t1 =
0
t2 =
2
y =
0
orthogonal

```

**Example 2**

```

x1 =
exp(2*pi*t*i)
x2 =
cos(4*pi*t)
t1 =
0
t2 =
0.5000
y =
-i/(3*pi)
Not orthogonal

```

**Program 3.3**

```

% Evaluation of mean square error between two signals
clc;clear;
syms t

```

```
x1=input('Enter the first signal =');
x2=input('Enter the second signal =');
t1=input('tmin =');
t2=input('tmax =');
y1=int((x1-x2)^2/(t2-t1),t1,t2);
y1=simplify(y1)
```

Output:

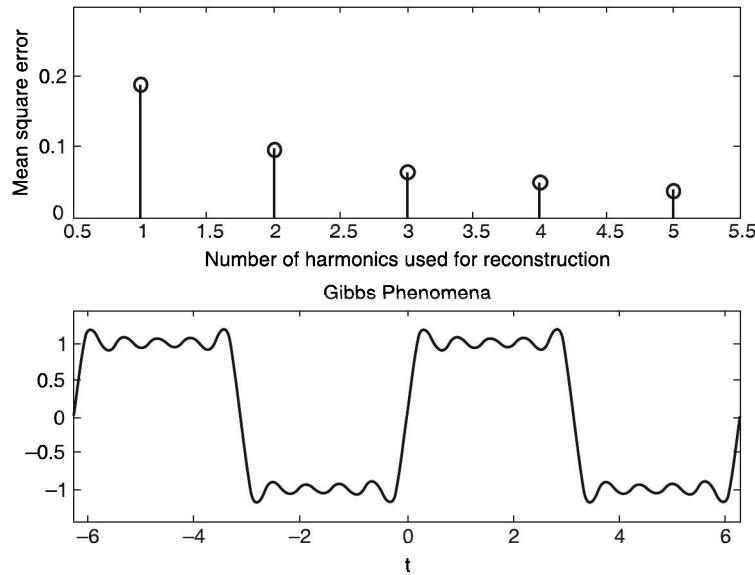
```
Enter the first signal =t % ramp signal
Enter the second signal =sin(t)
tmin =0
tmax =2*pi
mse in this approximation is
y1 =
(4*pi^2)/3 + 5/2
```

### Program 3.4

```
%Mean square error with increasing harmonics for a square wave of
%period T
clc;clear;close;
syms t
N=input('Enter the number of harmonics =');
T=2*pi;
x=heaviside(t)-2*heaviside(t-T/2)+heaviside(t-T);
y=0;ys=0;
for n=1:N
    ys=ys+(4/((2*n-1)*pi))*sin( 2*pi*(1/T)*(2*n-1)*t );
    y=double(y+((4/((2*n-1)*pi))^2)*int((sin(2*pi*(1/T)*(2*n-1)*t
    ))^2,0,T));
    y1(1,n)=simplify(double(int((x)^2,0,T)- y)/T);
end
subplot(2,1,1);stem([1:N],y1);
xlabel('Number of harmonics used for reconstruction');ylabel
('Mean square error');
axis([0.5 5.5 0 0.3]);
subplot(2,1,2);ezplot(ys);title('Gibbs Phenomena')
```

Output:

```
Enter the number of harmonics
=5
```



### Program 3.5

```
% Evaluation of mean square error in the approximation of sine wave
with unit step function in the interval 0 to 2*pi.
clc;clear;
syms t
x1=sin(t)
x2=heaviside(t)
tmin=0;
tmax=2*pi;
y1=int((x1-x2)^2/(tmax-tmin),tmin,tmax);
disp('mse in this approximation is')
y1=simplify(y1)
Output:
x1 =
sin(t)
x2 =
heaviside(t)
mse in this approximation is
y1 =
3/2
```

### SHORT QUESTIONS WITH ANSWERS

1. Why do we search for analogies while studying a new problem?

*Ans.* A problem is better understood or better remembered if it can be associated with some familiar phenomenon. Therefore, we always search for analogies while studying a new problem.

2. Which analogy helps in signal analysis?

*Ans.* There is a perfect analogy between vectors and signals. This leads to better understanding of signal analysis. So the analogy between vectors and signals helps in signal analysis.

3. How is a vector specified?

*Ans.* A vector is specified by magnitude and direction.

4. How is the component of one vector along another vector obtained?

*Ans.* The component of one vector along another vector is obtained by drawing a perpendicular from the end of that vector to another vector.

5. What are orthogonal vectors?

*Ans.* The vectors which are mutually perpendicular to each other are called orthogonal vectors.

6. What is the criterion for choosing error function?

*Ans.* The criterion for choosing error function is the mean square error must be minimum.

7. Why the mean square error criterion and not the average error criterion is chosen for minimising the error over an interval?

*Ans.* The average error criterion is inadequate because there can be large positive and negative errors present over the interval that may cancel one another in the process of averaging and give false indication that the error is zero. To correct this situation mean square error criterion is used.

8. What are orthogonal functions?

*Ans.* Two functions  $x_1(t)$  and  $x_2(t)$  are said to be orthogonal over the interval  $(t_1, t_2)$ , if

$$\int_{t_1}^{t_2} x_1(t) x_2(t) dt = 0$$

that is  $x_1(t)$  has no component of  $x_2(t)$  and vice versa.  $C_{12} = 0$ .

9. In the case of vectors, what does orthogonality imply?

*Ans.* In the case of vectors, orthogonality implies that one vector has no component along the other.

10. In the case of signals, what does orthogonality imply?

*Ans.* In the case of signals, orthogonality implies that a function does not contain a component of the form of the function which is orthogonal to it.

11. What does the condition of orthogonality of a set of vectors  $x_1, x_2, \dots, x_n$  imply?

*Ans.* The condition of orthogonality of a set of vectors  $x_1, x_2, \dots, x_n$  implies that the dot product of any two vectors  $x_n$  and  $x_m$  must be zero, and the dot product of any vector with itself must be unity.

12. What is orthogonal vector space?

*Ans.* The set of vectors  $\{x_1, x_2, \dots, x_n\}$  is called orthogonal vector space if

$$x_m \cdot x_n = \begin{cases} 0 & m \neq n \\ k_m & m = n \end{cases}$$

13. What is orthonormal vector space?

*Ans.* The set of vectors  $\{x_1, x_2, \dots, x_n\}$  is called orthonormal vector space or orthogonal set if

$$x_m \cdot x_n = \begin{cases} 0 & m \neq n \\ 1 & m = n \end{cases}$$

14. When can a vector be expressed in terms of its components along  $n$  mutually orthogonal vectors?

*Ans.* Any vector can be expressed as a sum of its components along  $n$  mutually orthogonal vectors, provided these vectors form a closed or complete set of co-ordinate system.

15. When can a function be expressed in terms of its components along  $n$  mutually orthogonal functions?

*Ans.* Any function can be expressed as a sum of its components along  $n$  mutually orthogonal functions provided these functions form a closed or complete set.

16. What is a closed or complete set of functions?

*Ans.* A set of functions  $g_1(t), g_2(t), \dots, g_r(t)$  mutually orthogonal over the interval  $(t_1, t_2)$  is said to be a closed or a complete set, if there exists no function  $x(t)$  for which it is true that

$$\int_{t_1}^{t_2} x(t) g_k(t) dt = 0 \quad \text{for } k = 1, 2, \dots$$

17. What is orthogonal signal space?

*Ans.* A set of  $n$  functions,  $g_1(t), g_2(t), \dots, g_n(t)$ , which are orthogonal to one another over an interval  $t_1$  to  $t_2$ , is called orthogonal signal space, if

$$\int_{t_1}^{t_2} g_j(t) g_k(t) dt = 0 \quad \text{for } j \neq k \quad \text{and} \quad \int_{t_1}^{t_2} g_j^2(t) dt = k_j$$

18. The dot product of two vectors is analogous to what in the case of signals?

*Ans.* In the analogy of vectors and signals, the dot product of two vectors is analogous to the integral of the product of two signals.

19. The square of the length of a vector is analogous to what in the case of signals?

*Ans.* In the analogy between vectors and signals, the square of the length of the vector is analogous to the integral of the square of the function.

20. What is generalised Fourier series representation?

*Ans.* Representation of a function  $x(t)$  by a set of infinite mutually orthogonal functions is called generalised Fourier series representation.

21. When are a set of complex functions mutually orthogonal over the interval  $(t_1, t_2)$ ?

*Ans.* A set of complex functions  $\{g_r(t)\}$ , ( $r = 1, 2, \dots$ ) are mutually orthogonal over the interval  $(t_1, t_2)$  if

$$\int_{t_1}^{t_2} g_m(t) g_n(t) dt = \begin{cases} 0 & \text{if } m \neq n \\ k_m & \text{if } m = n \end{cases}$$

## REVIEW QUESTIONS

1. Explain the analogy between vectors and signals.
2. Define orthogonal signal space and bring out clearly its application in representing a signal.
3. Obtain the condition under which two signals  $x_1(t)$  and  $x_2(t)$  are said to be orthogonal to each other. Hence, prove that  $\sin n\omega_0 t$  and  $\sin m\omega_0 t$  are orthogonal to each other for all integral values of  $m, n$ .
4. Explain orthogonality property between two complex functions  $x_1(t)$  and  $x_2(t)$  for a real variable  $t$ .
5. Define and discuss the conditions for orthogonality of functions.
6. Prove that sinusoidal functions are orthogonal functions.
7. Prove that complex exponential functions are orthogonal functions.
8. Write short notes on orthogonal functions.
9. Estimate the mean square error value of a function  $x(t)$ .

## FILL IN THE BLANKS

1. A vector is specified by \_\_\_\_\_ and \_\_\_\_\_.
2. The component of a vector  $\mathbf{V}_1$  along vector  $\mathbf{V}_2$  is obtained by drawing a \_\_\_\_\_ from the end of  $\mathbf{V}_1$  on vector  $\mathbf{V}_2$ .
3. The component of a vector  $\mathbf{V}_1$  along vector  $\mathbf{V}_2$  is given by  $C_{12}\mathbf{V}_2$ , where  $C_{12}$  is chosen such that the \_\_\_\_\_ is minimum.
4. Two mutually perpendicular vectors are called \_\_\_\_\_.
5. Orthogonal vectors are \_\_\_\_\_ vectors.
6. If the vectors are orthogonal, then the parameter  $C_{12}$  is \_\_\_\_\_.
7. If the dot product of two vectors is zero, then they are \_\_\_\_\_.
8. If the integral of the product of two signals is zero, then they are \_\_\_\_\_.
9. Two functions  $x_1(t)$  and  $x_2(t)$  are orthogonal over an interval  $(t_1, t_2)$ , if \_\_\_\_\_.
10. The functions  $\sin n\omega_0 t$  and  $\sin m\omega_0 t$  are orthogonal over any interval  $[t_0, t_0 + (2\pi/\omega_0)]$  for \_\_\_\_\_ values of  $m$  and  $n$ .
11. If  $C_{12}$  is the magnitude of the function  $x_2(t)$  contained in  $x_1(t)$ , then  $C_{12}$  is given by \_\_\_\_\_.
12. The condition of orthogonality implies that the dot product of any two vectors must be \_\_\_\_\_ and the dot product of any vector with itself must be \_\_\_\_\_.

13. If  $x_m \cdot x_n = \begin{cases} 0 & m \neq n \\ k_m & m = n \end{cases}$ , then the vector space  $\{x_r\} \dots (r = 1, 2, \dots, n)$  is called \_\_\_\_\_ vector space.

14. If  $x_m \cdot x_n = \begin{cases} 0 & m \neq n \\ 1 & m = n \end{cases}$ , then the vector space  $\{x_r\} \dots (r = 1, 2, \dots, n)$  is called \_\_\_\_\_ vector space.

15. If we approximate  $x(t)$  by a \_\_\_\_\_ number of orthogonal functions, the error will become smaller.

16. Any vector can be expressed as a sum of its components along  $n$  mutually orthogonal vectors, provided these vectors form a \_\_\_\_\_ or \_\_\_\_\_ set.

17. Any function can be expressed as a sum of its components along  $n$  mutually orthogonal functions, provided these functions form a \_\_\_\_\_ or \_\_\_\_\_ set.

18. The dot product of two vectors is analogous to the \_\_\_\_\_ of two signals.

19. The square of the length of a vector is analogous to the \_\_\_\_\_ of a function.

20. The representation of a function  $x(t)$  by a set of infinite mutually orthogonal functions is called \_\_\_\_\_ representation of  $x(t)$ .

## **OBJECTIVE TYPE QUESTIONS**



$$(a) \quad x_m \cdot x_n = \begin{cases} 0 & m \neq n \\ k_m & m = n \end{cases}$$

$$(b) \quad x_m \cdot x_n = \begin{cases} k_m & m \neq n \\ 0 & m = n \end{cases}$$

$$(c) \quad x_m \cdot x_n = \begin{cases} 0 & m \neq n \\ 1 & m = n \end{cases}$$

$$(d) \quad x_m \cdot x_n = \begin{cases} 1 & m \neq n \\ 0 & m = n \end{cases}$$

6. Two complex functions  $x_1(t)$  and  $x_2(t)$  are orthogonal over the interval  $(t_1, t_2)$ , if

(a)  $\int_{t_1}^{t_2} x_1^*(t) x_2^*(t) dt = 0$

(b)  $\int_{t_1}^{t_2} x_1^*(t) x_2(t) dt = 0$

(c)  $\int_{t_1}^{t_2} x_1(t) x_2^*(t) dt = 0$

(d) both (b) and (c)

7. A set of functions  $\{g_r(t)\}$  mutually orthogonal over the interval  $[t_1, t_2]$  is called a closed or complete set, if there exists no function  $x(t)$  such that

(a)  $\int_{t_1}^{t_2} x(t) g_r(t) dt = 0$

(b)  $\int_{t_1}^{t_2} x(t) g_r(t) dt = \infty$

(c)  $\int_{t_1}^{t_2} x(t) dt = 0$

(d)  $\int_{t_1}^{t_2} x(t) dt = 1$

8. For a set  $\{g_r(t)\}$ , ( $r = 1, 2, \dots, n$ ) mutually orthogonal over the interval  $(t_1, t_2)$ ,

(a)  $\int_{t_1}^{t_2} g_m(t) g_n(t) dt = \begin{cases} 0 & m = n \\ k_m & m \neq n \end{cases}$

(b)  $\int_{t_1}^{t_2} g_m(t) g_n(t) dt = \begin{cases} 0 & m \neq n \\ k_m & m = n \end{cases}$

(c)  $\int_{t_1}^{t_2} g_m(t) g_n(t) dt = \begin{cases} 0 & m = n \\ 1 & m \neq n \end{cases}$

(d)  $\int_{t_1}^{t_2} g_m(t) g_n(t) dt = \begin{cases} 0 & m \neq n \\ 1 & m = n \end{cases}$

## PROBLEMS

- Show that  $x(t)$  is orthogonal to signals  $\cos t, \cos 2t, \dots, \cos nt$  for all non-zero integer values of  $n$  over the interval 0 to  $2\pi$  if  $x(t) = \begin{cases} 1 & 0 \leq t \leq \pi \\ -1 & \pi \leq t \leq 2\pi \end{cases}$ .
- If  $x_e(t)$  and  $x_o(t)$  are respectively the even and odd parts of a signal  $x(t)$ , show that they are orthogonal over the interval  $-T$  to  $T$  for any  $T$ .
- Prove that  $\cos n\omega_0 t$  and  $\cos m\omega_0 t$  are orthogonal to each other for all integers  $m, n$ .
- Prove that  $\sin n\omega_0 t$  and  $\sin m\omega_0 t$  are orthogonal to each other for all integers  $m, n$ .
- Prove that the signals  $x(t)$  and  $y(t)$  given in Figure 3.6 are orthogonal over the interval  $[0, 4]$ .

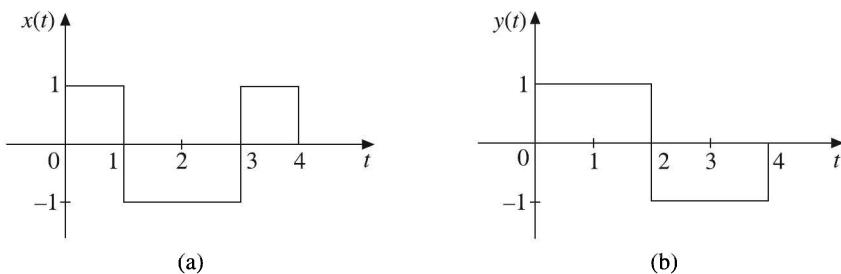
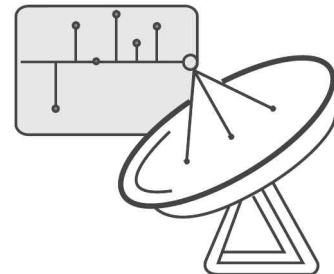


Figure 3.6

# 4

## Fourier Series Representation of Periodic Signals



### 4.1 INTRODUCTION

A signal is said to be a continuous-time signal if it is available at all instants of time. A real time naturally available signal is in the form of time domain. However, the analysis of a signal is far more convenient in the frequency domain. There are three important classes of transformation methods available for continuous-time systems. They are:

1. Fourier series
2. Fourier transform
3. Laplace transform

Out of these three methods, the Fourier series is applicable only to periodic signals, i.e. signals which repeat periodically over  $-\infty < t < \infty$ . Not all periodic signals can be represented by Fourier series. In this chapter, we discuss the conditions to be satisfied for a periodic signal to be represented by Fourier series, different types of Fourier series representations, conversion from one type to other and analysis of signals using these representations. Different types of symmetry present in the waveforms are also discussed and their utilisation in simplifying the computations is illustrated.

### 4.2 REPRESENTATION OF FOURIER SERIES

The representation of signals over a certain interval of time in terms of the linear combination of orthogonal functions is called *Fourier series*. The Fourier analysis is also sometimes called the harmonic analysis. Fourier series is applicable only for periodic signals. It cannot be applied to non-periodic signals. A periodic signal is one which repeats itself at regular intervals of time, i.e. periodically over  $-\infty$  to  $\infty$ . Three important classes of Fourier series methods are available. They are:

- 
- 1. Trigonometric form
  - 2. Cosine form
  - 3. Exponential form

In the representation of signals over a certain interval of time in terms of the linear combination of orthogonal functions, if the orthogonal functions are exponential functions, then it is called *exponential Fourier series*.

Similarly, in the representation of signals over a certain interval of time in terms of the linear combination of orthogonal functions, if the orthogonal functions are trigonometric functions, then it is called *trigonometric Fourier series*.

### 4.3 EXISTENCE OF FOURIER SERIES

For the Fourier series to exist for a periodic signal, it must satisfy certain conditions.

The conditions under which a periodic signal can be represented by a Fourier series are known as *Dirichlet's conditions* named after the mathematician Dirichlet who first found them. They are as follows:

In each period,

- 1. The function  $x(t)$  must be a single valued function.
- 2. The function  $x(t)$  has only a finite number of maxima and minima.
- 3. The function  $x(t)$  has a finite number of discontinuities.
- 4. The function  $x(t)$  is absolutely integrable over one period, that is  $\int_0^T |x(t)| dt < \infty$ .

These are the sufficient but not necessary conditions for the existence of the Fourier series of a periodic function  $x(t)$ . Condition 4 is known as the *weak Dirichlet condition*. If a function satisfies the weak Dirichlet condition, the existence of Fourier series is guaranteed, but the series may not converge at every point. Conditions 2 and 3 are known as *strong Dirichlet conditions*. If these are satisfied, the convergence is also guaranteed.

### 4.4 TRIGONOMETRIC FORM OF FOURIER SERIES

A sinusoidal signal,  $x(t) = A \sin \omega_0 t$  is a periodic signal with period  $T = 2\pi/\omega_0$ . Also, the sum of two sinusoids is periodic provided that their frequencies are integral multiples of a fundamental frequency  $\omega_0$ . We can show that a signal  $x(t)$ , a sum of sine and cosine functions whose frequencies are integral multiples of  $\omega_0$ , is a periodic signal.

Let the signal  $x(t)$  be

$$\begin{aligned} x(t) &= a_0 + a_1 \cos \omega_0 t + a_2 \cos 2\omega_0 t + \cdots + a_k \cos k\omega_0 t \\ &\quad + b_1 \sin \omega_0 t + b_2 \sin 2\omega_0 t + \cdots + b_k \sin k\omega_0 t \end{aligned}$$

i.e.

$$x(t) = a_0 + \sum_{n=1}^k a_n \cos \omega_0 n t + b_n \sin \omega_0 n t$$

where  $a_0, a_1, a_2, \dots, a_k$  and  $b_0, b_1, \dots, b_k$  are constants, and  $\omega_0$  is the fundamental frequency.

For the signal  $x(t)$  to be periodic, it must satisfy the condition  $x(t) = x(t + T)$  for all  $t$ , i.e.

$$\begin{aligned}
 x(t + T) &= a_0 + \sum_{n=1}^k a_n \cos \omega_0 n(t + T) + b_n \sin \omega_0 n(t + T) \\
 &= a_0 + \sum_{n=1}^k a_n \cos \omega_0 n \left( t + \frac{2\pi}{\omega_0} \right) + b_n \sin \omega_0 n \left( t + \frac{2\pi}{\omega_0} \right) \\
 &= a_0 + \sum_{n=1}^k a_n \cos (\omega_0 nt + 2n\pi) + b_n \sin (\omega_0 nt + 2n\pi) \\
 &= a_0 + \sum_{n=1}^k a_n \cos \omega_0 nt + b_n \sin \omega_0 nt \\
 &= x(t)
 \end{aligned}$$

This proves that the signal  $x(t)$ , which is a summation of sine and cosine functions of frequencies  $0, \omega_0, 2\omega_0, \dots, k\omega_0$ , is a periodic signal with period  $T$ . By changing  $a_n$ s and  $b_n$ s, we can construct any periodic signal with period  $T$ . If  $k \rightarrow \infty$  in the expression for  $x(t)$ , we obtain the Fourier series representation of any periodic signal  $x(t)$ . That is, any periodic signal can be represented as an infinite sum of sine and cosine functions which themselves are periodic signals of angular frequencies  $0, \omega_0, 2\omega_0, \dots, k\omega_0$ . This set of harmonically related sine and cosine functions, i.e.  $\sin n\omega_0 t$  and  $\cos n\omega_0 t$ ,  $n = 0, 1, \dots$  forms a complete orthogonal set over the interval  $t_0$  to  $t_0 + T$  where  $T = 2\pi/\omega_0$ .

The infinite series of sine and cosine terms of frequencies  $0, \omega_0, 2\omega_0, \dots, k\omega_0$  is known as *trigonometric form of Fourier series* and can be written as:

$$\begin{aligned}
 x(t) &= \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} a_n \cos n\omega_0 t + b_n \sin n\omega_0 t \\
 \text{or} \quad x(t) &= a_0 + \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} a_n \cos n\omega_0 t + b_n \sin n\omega_0 t
 \end{aligned}$$

where  $a_n$  and  $b_n$  are constants; the coefficient  $a_0$  is called the dc component;  $a_1 \cos \omega_0 t + b_1 \sin \omega_0 t$  the first harmonic,  $a_2 \cos 2\omega_0 t + b_2 \sin 2\omega_0 t$  the second harmonic and  $a_n \cos n\omega_0 t + b_n \sin n\omega_0 t$  the  $n$ th harmonic. The constant  $b_0 = 0$  because  $\sin n\omega_0 t = 0$  for  $n = 0$ .

#### 4.4.1 Evaluation of Fourier Coefficients of the Trigonometric Fourier Series

The constants  $a_0, a_1, \dots, a_n, b_0, b_1, \dots, b_n$  are called Fourier coefficients. To evaluate  $a_0$ , we shall integrate both sides of the equation for  $x(t)$  over one period ( $t_0$  to  $t_0 + T$ ) at an arbitrary time  $t_0$ . Thus,

$$\begin{aligned} \int_{t_0}^{t_0+T} x(t) dt &= a_0 \int_{t_0}^{t_0+T} dt + \int_{t_0}^{t_0+T} \left[ \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} [a_n \cos n\omega_0 t + b_n \sin n\omega_0 t] dt \right] \\ &= a_0 T + \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} a_n \int_{t_0}^{t_0+T} \cos n\omega_0 t dt + \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} b_n \int_{t_0}^{t_0+T} \sin n\omega_0 t dt \end{aligned}$$

We know that  $\int_{t_0}^{t_0+T} \cos n\omega_0 t dt = 0$  and  $\int_{t_0}^{t_0+T} \sin n\omega_0 t dt = 0$ , since the net areas of sinusoids over complete periods are zero for any nonzero integer  $n$  and any time  $t_0$ . Hence, each of the integrals in the above summation is zero.

Thus, we obtain

$$\int_{t_0}^{t_0+T} x(t) dt = a_0 T$$

or

$$a_0 = \frac{1}{T} \int_{t_0}^{t_0+T} x(t) dt$$

To evaluate  $a_n$  and  $b_n$ , we can use the following results:

$$\begin{aligned} \int_{t_0}^{t_0+T} \cos n\omega_0 t \cos m\omega_0 t dt &= \begin{cases} 0 & \text{for } m \neq n \\ T/2 & \text{for } m = n \neq 0 \end{cases} \\ \int_{t_0}^{t_0+T} \sin n\omega_0 t \sin m\omega_0 t dt &= \begin{cases} 0 & \text{for } m \neq n \\ T/2 & \text{for } m = n \neq 0 \end{cases} \\ \int_{t_0}^{t_0+T} \sin n\omega_0 t \cos m\omega_0 t dt &= 0 \quad \text{for all } m \text{ and } n \end{aligned}$$

To find Fourier coefficients  $a_n$ , multiply the equation for  $x(t)$  by  $\cos m\omega_0 t$  and integrate over one period. That is,

$$\begin{aligned} \int_{t_0}^{t_0+T} x(t) \cos m\omega_0 t dt &= a_0 \int_{t_0}^{t_0+T} \cos m\omega_0 t dt + \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} a_n \int_{t_0}^{t_0+T} \cos n\omega_0 t \cos m\omega_0 t dt \\ &\quad + \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} b_n \int_{t_0}^{t_0+T} \sin n\omega_0 t \cos m\omega_0 t dt \end{aligned}$$

The first and third integrals in the above equation are equal to zero and the second integral is equal to  $T/2$  when  $m = n$ . Therefore,

$$\int_{t_0}^{t_0+T} x(t) \cos m\omega_0 t dt = a_m \frac{T}{2}$$

i.e.

$$a_m = \frac{2}{T} \int_{t_0}^{t_0+T} x(t) \cos m\omega_0 t dt$$

or

$$a_n = \frac{2}{T} \int_{t_0}^{t_0+T} x(t) \cos n\omega_0 t dt$$

To find  $b_n$ , multiply both sides of equation for  $x(t)$  by  $\sin m\omega_0 t$  and integrate over one period. Then

$$\begin{aligned} \int_{t_0}^{t_0+T} x(t) \sin m\omega_0 t dt &= a_0 \int_{t_0}^{t_0+T} \sin m\omega_0 t dt + \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} a_n \int_{t_0}^{t_0+T} \cos n\omega_0 t \sin m\omega_0 t dt \\ &\quad + \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} b_n \int_{t_0}^{t_0+T} \sin n\omega_0 t \sin m\omega_0 t dt \end{aligned}$$

The first and second integrals in the above equation are zero, and the third integral is equal to  $T/2$  when  $m = n$ . Thus, we have

$$\int_{t_0}^{t_0+T} x(t) \sin m\omega_0 t dt = b_m \frac{T}{2}$$

∴

$$b_m = \frac{2}{T} \int_{t_0}^{t_0+T} x(t) \sin m\omega_0 t dt$$

or

$$b_n = \frac{2}{T} \int_{t_0}^{t_0+T} x(t) \sin n\omega_0 t dt$$

$a_0$ ,  $a_n$  and  $b_n$  are called *trigonometric Fourier series coefficients*.

A periodic signal has the same Fourier series for the entire interval  $-\infty$  to  $\infty$  as for the interval  $t_0$  to  $t_0 + T$ , since the same function repeats after every  $T$  seconds. The Fourier series expansion of a periodic function is unique irrespective of the location of  $t_0$  of the signal.

**EXAMPLE 4.1** Find the Fourier series expansion of the half wave rectified sine wave shown in Figure 4.1.

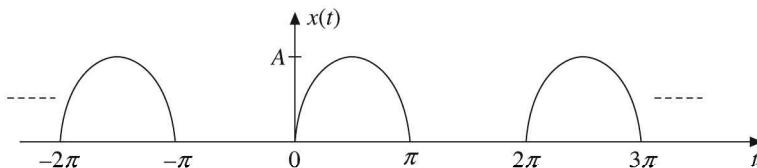


Figure 4.1 Waveform for Example 4.1.

**Solution:** The periodic waveform shown in Figure 4.1 with period  $2\pi$  is half of a sine wave with period  $2\pi$ .

$$x(t) = \begin{cases} A \sin \omega t = A \sin \frac{2\pi}{2\pi}t = A \sin t & 0 \leq t \leq \pi \\ 0 & \pi \leq t \leq 2\pi \end{cases}$$

Now the fundamental period  $T = 2\pi$

$$\text{Fundamental frequency } \omega_0 = \frac{2\pi}{T} = \frac{2\pi}{2\pi} = 1$$

Let

$$t_0 = 0, \quad t_0 + T = T = 2\pi$$

$$\begin{aligned} a_0 &= \frac{1}{T} \int_0^T x(t) dt = \frac{1}{2\pi} \int_0^{2\pi} x(t) dt = \frac{1}{2\pi} \int_0^\pi A \sin t dt \\ &= \frac{A}{2\pi} [-\cos t]_0^\pi = \frac{A}{2\pi} [-(\cos \pi - \cos 0)] = \frac{2A}{2\pi} = \frac{A}{\pi} \end{aligned}$$

$$\therefore a_0 = \frac{A}{\pi}$$

$$\begin{aligned} a_n &= \frac{2}{T} \int_0^T x(t) \cos n\omega_0 t dt = \frac{2}{2\pi} \int_0^{2\pi} x(t) \cos nt dt \\ &= \frac{1}{\pi} \int_0^\pi A \sin t \cos nt dt = \frac{A}{\pi} \int_0^\pi \sin t \cos nt dt \\ &= \frac{A}{2\pi} \int_0^\pi [\sin(1+n)t + \sin(1-n)t] dt = \frac{A}{2\pi} \left[ -\frac{\cos(1+n)t}{1+n} - \frac{\cos(1-n)t}{1-n} \right]_0^\pi \\ &= -\frac{A}{2\pi} \left[ \frac{\cos(1+n)\pi - \cos 0}{1+n} + \frac{\cos(1-n)\pi - \cos 0}{1-n} \right] \\ &= -\frac{A}{2\pi} \left\{ \left[ \frac{(-1)^{n+1} - 1}{1+n} \right] + \frac{(-1)^{n-1} - 1}{1-n} \right\} \end{aligned}$$

$$\text{For odd } n, \quad a_n = -\frac{A}{2\pi} \left[ \frac{1-1}{1+n} + \frac{1-1}{1-n} \right] = 0$$

$$\text{For even } n, \quad a_n = -\frac{A}{2\pi} \left[ \frac{-1-1}{1+n} + \frac{-1-1}{1-n} \right] = \frac{A}{2\pi} \left[ \frac{2}{n+1} - \frac{2}{n-1} \right] = -\frac{2A}{\pi(n^2-1)}$$

$$\therefore a_n = -\frac{2A}{\pi(n^2-1)} \quad (\text{for even } n)$$

$$\begin{aligned}
 b_n &= \frac{2}{T} \int_0^T x(t) \sin n\omega_0 t dt = \frac{2}{2\pi} \int_0^{2\pi} x(t) \sin nt dt \\
 &= \frac{1}{\pi} \int_0^\pi A \sin t \sin nt dt = \frac{A}{\pi} \int_0^\pi \sin t \sin nt dt \\
 &= \frac{A}{2\pi} \int_0^\pi [\cos(n-1)t - \cos(n+1)t] dt \\
 &= \frac{A}{2\pi} \left[ \frac{\sin(n-1)t}{n-1} - \frac{\sin(n+1)t}{n+1} \right]_0^\pi
 \end{aligned}$$

This is zero for all values of  $n$  except for  $n = 1$ .

$$\text{For } n = 1, \quad b_1 = \frac{A}{2\pi}$$

Therefore, the trigonometric Fourier series is:

$$\begin{aligned}
 x(t) &= a_0 + \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} a_n \cos n\omega_0 t + b_n \sin n\omega_0 t \\
 &= a_0 + b_1 \sin t + \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} a_n \cos nt \\
 &= \frac{A}{\pi} + \frac{A}{2\pi} \sin t - \sum_{n=\text{even}}^{\infty} \frac{2A}{\pi(n^2 - 1)} \cos nt
 \end{aligned}$$

**EXAMPLE 4.2** Obtain the trigonometric Fourier series for the waveform shown in Figure 4.2

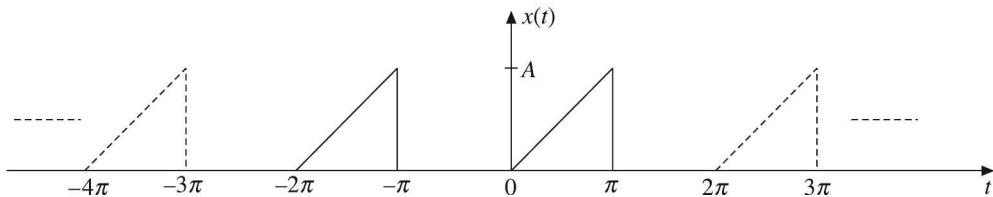


Figure 4.2 Waveform for Example 4.2.

**Solution:** The waveform shown in Figure 4.2 is periodic with a period  $T = 2\pi$ .

Let

$$t_0 = 0, t_0 + T = 2\pi$$

$$\text{Then, Fundamental frequency } \omega_0 = \frac{2\pi}{T} = \frac{2\pi}{2\pi} = 1$$

The waveform is described by

$$\begin{aligned}
 x(t) &= \begin{cases} (A/\pi)t & \text{for } 0 \leq t \leq \pi \\ 0 & \text{for } \pi \leq t \leq 2\pi \end{cases} \\
 a_0 &= \frac{1}{T} \int_0^T x(t) dt = \frac{1}{2\pi} \int_0^{2\pi} x(t) dt \\
 &= \frac{1}{2\pi} \int_0^\pi \frac{A}{\pi} t dt = \frac{A}{2\pi^2} \left[ \frac{t^2}{2} \right]_0^\pi = \frac{A}{4} \\
 a_n &= \frac{2}{T} \int_0^T x(t) \cos n\omega_0 t dt \\
 &= \frac{2}{2\pi} \int_0^\pi \frac{A}{\pi} t \cos nt dt = \frac{A}{\pi^2} \int_0^\pi t \cos nt dt \\
 &= \frac{A}{\pi^2} \left[ \left[ \frac{t \sin nt}{n} \right]_0^\pi - \int_0^\pi \frac{\sin nt}{n} dt \right] = \frac{A}{\pi^2} \left[ \frac{0 - 0}{n} + \left( \frac{\cos nt}{n^2} \right)_0^\pi \right] \\
 &= \frac{A}{\pi^2 n^2} (\cos n\pi - \cos 0) \\
 \therefore a_n &= \begin{cases} -(2A/\pi^2 n^2) & \text{for odd } n \\ 0 & \text{for even } n \end{cases} \\
 b_n &= \frac{2}{T} \int_0^T x(t) \sin n\omega_0 t dt \\
 &= \frac{2}{2\pi} \int_0^\pi x(t) \sin nt dt = \frac{1}{\pi} \int_0^\pi \frac{A}{\pi} t \sin nt dt \\
 &= \frac{A}{\pi^2} \int_0^\pi t \sin nt dt = \frac{A}{\pi^2} \left[ \left[ \frac{t(-\cos nt)}{n} \right]_0^\pi - \int_0^\pi \frac{-\cos nt}{n} dt \right] \\
 &= \frac{A}{\pi^2} \left[ -\pi \frac{\cos n\pi}{n} + \left( \frac{\sin nt}{n^2} \right)_0^\pi \right] \\
 &= -\frac{A}{n\pi} \cos n\pi = \frac{A}{n\pi} (-1)^{n+1} \\
 \therefore b_n &= \begin{cases} A/n\pi & \text{for odd } n \\ -(A/n\pi) & \text{for even } n \end{cases}
 \end{aligned}$$

The trigonometric Fourier series is:

$$\begin{aligned}
 x(t) &= a_0 + \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} a_n \cos n\omega_0 t + b_n \sin n\omega_0 t \\
 &= \frac{A}{4} - \frac{2A}{\pi^2} \sum_{n=\text{odd}}^{\infty} \frac{\cos nt}{n^2} + \frac{A}{\pi} \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} (-1)^{n+1} \frac{\sin nt}{n} \\
 &= \frac{A}{4} - \frac{2A}{\pi^2} \left[ \cos t + \frac{1}{3^2} \cos 3t + \frac{1}{5^2} \cos 5t + \dots \right] \\
 &\quad + \frac{A}{\pi} \left[ \sin t - \frac{1}{2} \sin 2t + \frac{1}{3} \sin 3t - \frac{1}{4} \sin 4t + \dots \right]
 \end{aligned}$$

#### 4.5 COSINE REPRESENTATION (ALTERNATE FORM OF THE TRIGONOMETRIC REPRESENTATION)

The trigonometric Fourier series of  $x(t)$  contains sine and cosine terms of the same frequency.

$$\begin{aligned}
 \text{i.e. } x(t) &= a_0 + \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} a_n \cos n\omega_0 t + b_n \sin n\omega_0 t \\
 &= a_0 + \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \sqrt{a_n^2 + b_n^2} \left( \frac{a_n}{\sqrt{a_n^2 + b_n^2}} \cos n\omega_0 t + \frac{b_n}{\sqrt{a_n^2 + b_n^2}} \sin n\omega_0 t \right)
 \end{aligned}$$

Substituting the values  $A_0 = a_0$ ,  $A_n = \sqrt{a_n^2 + b_n^2}$ ,  $\cos \theta_n = \frac{a_n}{\sqrt{a_n^2 + b_n^2}}$  and  $\sin \theta_n = -\frac{b_n}{\sqrt{a_n^2 + b_n^2}}$ ,

$\left( \text{i.e. } \theta_n = -\tan^{-1} \frac{b_n}{a_n} \right)$ , we have

$$\begin{aligned}
 x(t) &= A_0 + \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} A_n [\cos \theta_n \cos n\omega_0 t - \sin \theta_n \sin n\omega_0 t] \\
 &= A_0 + \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} A_n [\cos(n\omega_0 t + \theta_n)]
 \end{aligned}$$

This is the cosine representation of  $x(t)$  which contains sinusoids of frequencies  $\omega_0, 2\omega_0, \dots$ .

The term  $A_0$  is called the dc component, and the term  $A_n \cos(n\omega_0 t + \theta_n)$  is called the  $n$ th harmonic component of  $x(t)$ . The first harmonic component  $A_1 \cos(\omega_0 t + \theta_1)$  is commonly called the fundamental component as it has the same fundamental period as  $x(t)$ .

The number  $A_n$  represents *amplitude coefficients* or *harmonic amplitudes* or *spectral amplitudes* of the Fourier series and the number  $\theta_n$  represents the *phase coefficients* or *phase angles* or *spectral phase* of the Fourier series.

The cosine form is also called the *Harmonic form Fourier series* or *Polar form Fourier series*.

**EXAMPLE 4.3** Find the cosine Fourier series for the waveform shown in Figure 4.3.

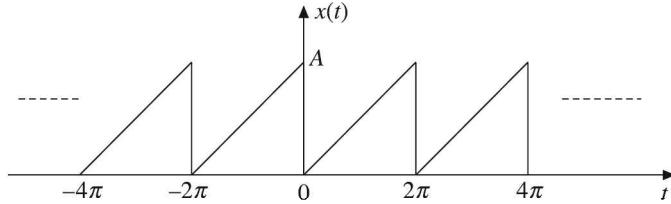


Figure 4.3 Waveform for Example 4.3.

**Solution:** The waveform shown in Figure 4.3 is given by

$$x(t) = \frac{A}{2\pi} t, \quad \text{for } 0 \leq t \leq 2\pi$$

Let

$$t_0 = 0$$

∴

$$t_0 + T = T = 2\pi$$

and

$$\text{Fundamental frequency } \omega_0 = \frac{2\pi}{T} = \frac{2\pi}{2\pi} = 1$$

### Trigonometric Fourier series

$$\begin{aligned} x(t) &= a_0 + \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} a_n \cos n\omega_0 t + b_n \sin n\omega_0 t \\ &= a_0 + \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} a_n \cos nt + b_n \sin nt \end{aligned}$$

The coefficients are evaluated as follows:

$$\begin{aligned} a_0 &= \frac{1}{T} \int_{t_0}^{t_0+T} x(t) dt = \frac{1}{T} \int_0^T x(t) dt \\ &= \frac{1}{2\pi} \int_0^{2\pi} \frac{A}{2\pi} t dt = \frac{A}{(2\pi)^2} \left[ \frac{t^2}{2} \right]_0^{2\pi} = \frac{A}{2} \\ a_n &= \frac{2}{T} \int_{t_0}^{t_0+T} x(t) \cos n\omega_0 t dt = \frac{2}{2\pi} \int_0^{2\pi} \left( \frac{A}{2\pi} t \right) \cos nt dt \\ &= \frac{2A}{(2\pi)^2} \int_0^{2\pi} t \cos nt dt = \frac{2A}{(2\pi)^2} \left\{ \left[ \frac{t(\sin nt)}{n} \right]_0^{2\pi} - \int_0^{2\pi} \frac{\sin nt}{n} dt \right\} \\ &= \frac{2A}{(2\pi)^2} \left[ 0 - 0 - \frac{1}{n} \left( -\frac{\cos nt}{n} \right)_0^{2\pi} \right] = \frac{2A}{(2\pi)^2} \left[ 0 - 0 + \frac{1}{n} \frac{(1-1)}{n} \right] = 0 \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
 b_n &= \frac{2}{T} \int_{t_0}^{t_0+T} x(t) \sin n\omega_0 t \, dt = \frac{2}{2\pi} \int_0^{2\pi} \left( \frac{A}{2\pi} t \right) \sin nt \, dt \\
 &= \frac{2A}{(2\pi)^2} \int_0^{2\pi} t \sin nt \, dt = \frac{2A}{(2\pi)^2} \left\{ \left[ \frac{t(-\cos nt)}{n} \right]_0^{2\pi} - \int_0^{2\pi} \left( -\frac{\cos nt}{n} \right) dt \right\} \\
 &= \frac{2A}{(2\pi)^2} \left\{ \left[ \frac{t(-\cos nt)}{n} \right]_0^{2\pi} + \frac{1}{n} \left( \frac{\sin nt}{n} \right)_0^{2\pi} \right\} = \frac{2A}{(2\pi)^2} \left[ -2\pi \frac{[1]}{n} - 0 + \frac{1}{n} \frac{(0-0)}{n} \right] \\
 &= \frac{2A}{(2\pi)^2} \left( -\frac{2\pi}{n} \right) = -\frac{A}{\pi n} \\
 \therefore \quad a_0 &= \frac{A}{2}; \quad a_n = 0 \text{ and } b_n = -\frac{A}{\pi n}
 \end{aligned}$$

are the trigonometric Fourier series coefficients.

$$\therefore \quad x(t) = \frac{A}{2} + \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} -\frac{A}{n\pi} \sin nt = \frac{A}{2} - \frac{A}{\pi} \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{\sin nt}{n} \quad 0 \leq t \leq 2\pi$$

is the trigonometric Fourier series representation.

*Cosine form of representation*

$$\begin{aligned}
 x(t) &= A_0 + \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} A_n \cos(n\omega_0 t + \theta_n) \\
 A_0 &= a_0 = \frac{A}{2} \\
 A_n &= \sqrt{a_n^2 + b_n^2} = \sqrt{0^2 + \left( -\frac{A}{\pi n} \right)^2} = \frac{A}{n\pi} \\
 \theta_n &= -\tan^{-1} \frac{b_n}{a_n} = -\tan^{-1} \left( \frac{-A/n\pi}{0} \right) = -\frac{\pi}{2} \\
 \therefore \quad x(t) &= \frac{A}{2} + \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{A}{n\pi} \cos \left( nt - \frac{\pi}{2} \right) \text{ is the cosine representation}
 \end{aligned}$$

## 4.6 WAVE SYMMETRY

If the periodic signal  $x(t)$  has some type of symmetry, then some of the trigonometric Fourier series coefficients may become zero and calculation of the coefficients becomes simple.

There are following four types of symmetry a function  $x(t)$  can have:

- |                       |                          |
|-----------------------|--------------------------|
| 1. Even symmetry      | 2. Odd symmetry          |
| 3. Half wave symmetry | 4. Quarter wave symmetry |

If  $x(t)$  has *even symmetry* (also called *mirror symmetry*), then  $b_n = 0$  and only  $a_0$  and  $a_n$  are to be evaluated.

On the other hand, if  $x(t)$  has *odd symmetry* (also called *rotation symmetry*), then  $a_0 = 0$  and  $a_n = 0$ . Only  $b_n$  is to be evaluated.

If  $x(t)$  has *half wave symmetry*, then  $a_0 = 0$  and only odd harmonics exist.

If  $x(t)$  has *quarter wave symmetry*, then  $a_0 = 0$  and either only  $a_n$  or only  $b_n$  exists, that too only for odd values of  $n$ .

A function  $x(t)$  is said to be even      if  $x(t) = x(-t)$

A function  $x(t)$  is said to be odd      if  $x(t) = -x(-t)$

We know that any signal  $x(t)$  can be split into even and odd functions. That is,

$$x(t) = x_e(t) + x_o(t)$$

So the even and odd parts of the signal  $x(t)$  can be obtained from the following relations:

$$x_e(t) = \frac{1}{2} [x(t) + x(-t)]$$

$$x_o(t) = \frac{1}{2} [x(t) - x(-t)]$$

These relations can be used to find the Fourier coefficients. To have a convenient form, we choose the interval of integration from  $-(T/2)$  to  $(T/2)$  instead of from  $t_0$  to  $t_0 + T$ . Also we know that

Odd function  $\times$  Odd function = Even function

Even function  $\times$  Even function = Even function

Odd function  $\times$  Even function = Odd function

and for any even function  $x_e(t)$ ,

$$\int_{-T/2}^{T/2} x_e(t) dt = 2 \int_0^{T/2} x_e(t) dt$$

and for any odd function  $x_o(t)$ ,

$$\int_{-T/2}^{T/2} x_o(t) dt = 0$$

Based on these relations, we can easily calculate the Fourier series coefficients.

We have

$$a_n = \frac{2}{T} \int_{-T/2}^{T/2} x(t) \cos n\omega_0 t dt$$

and

$$b_n = \frac{2}{T} \int_{-T/2}^{T/2} x(t) \sin n\omega_0 t dt$$

Substituting  $x(t) = x_e(t) + x_o(t)$  in the above equations for  $a_n$  and  $b_n$ , we have

$$a_n = \frac{2}{T} \left( \int_{-T/2}^{T/2} x_e(t) \cos n\omega_0 t dt + \int_{-T/2}^{T/2} x_o(t) \cos n\omega_0 t dt \right)$$

and

$$b_n = \frac{2}{T} \left( \int_{-T/2}^{T/2} x_e(t) \sin n\omega_0 t dt + \int_{-T/2}^{T/2} x_o(t) \sin n\omega_0 t dt \right)$$

#### 4.6.1 Even or Mirror Symmetry

A function  $x(t)$  is said to have even or mirror symmetry, if

$$x(t) = x(-t)$$

The waveforms of some even functions are shown in Figure 4.4. The sum of two or more even functions is always even. If a constant is added, the even nature of the function still persists. These types of functions are always symmetrical with respect to the vertical axis. The product of two even functions is always even.

If  $x(t)$  is an even function, then  $x_o(t) = 0$  and  $x(t) = x_e(t)$ . Therefore,

$$\begin{aligned} a_n &= \frac{2}{T} \int_{-T/2}^{T/2} x(t) \cos n\omega_0 t dt = \frac{2}{T} \left( \int_{-T/2}^{T/2} x_e(t) \cos n\omega_0 t dt \right) \\ &= \frac{2}{T} \left( 2 \int_0^{T/2} x_e(t) \cos n\omega_0 t dt \right) \\ &= \frac{4}{T} \int_0^{T/2} x(t) \cos n\omega_0 t dt \end{aligned}$$

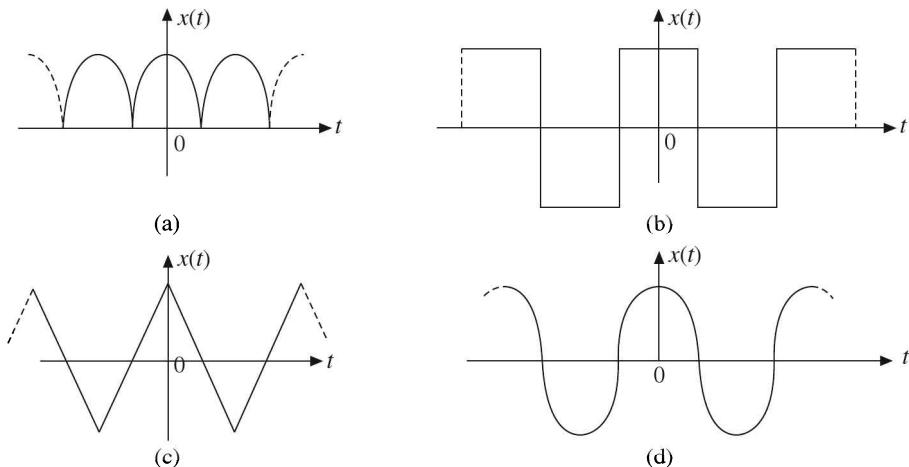


Figure 4.4 Waveforms of even functions.

$$\begin{aligned} a_0 &= \frac{1}{T} \int_{-T/2}^{T/2} x(t) dt = \frac{1}{T} \int_{-T/2}^{T/2} x_e(t) dt = \frac{1}{T} \left( 2 \int_0^{T/2} x_e(t) dt \right) \\ &= \frac{2}{T} \int_0^{T/2} x(t) dt \end{aligned}$$

and  $b_n = \frac{2}{T} \left( \int_{-T/2}^{T/2} x_e(t) \sin n\omega_0 t dt \right) = 0$

because  $x_e(t) \sin n\omega_0 t$  is an odd function.

Thus, the Fourier series expansion of an even periodic function contains only cosine terms and a constant.

When even or mirror symmetry exists, the trigonometric Fourier series coefficients are

$$a_0 = \frac{2}{T} \int_0^{T/2} x(t) dt, \quad a_n = \frac{4}{T} \int_0^{T/2} x(t) \cos n\omega_0 t dt \quad \text{and} \quad b_n = 0$$

If the average value is 0, the coefficient  $a_0$  will be absent, i.e.  $a_0 = 0$ . The even function shows the mirror symmetry with respect to the vertical axis. Thus, the waveform having even symmetry contains only cosine terms and  $a_0$  may be present.

**EXAMPLE 4.4** Find the Fourier series expansion for the waveform shown in Figure 4.5.

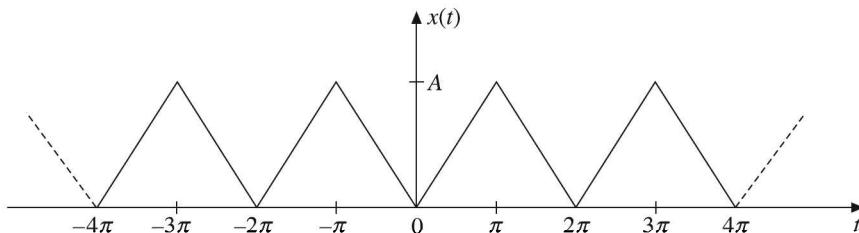


Figure 4.5 Waveform for Example 4.4.

**Solution:** The given waveform of Figure 4.5 is periodic with period  $T = 2\pi$ . For the computational convenience, choose one cycle of the waveform from  $-\pi$  to  $\pi$ . Let

$$t_0 = -\pi, \quad t_0 + T = \pi$$

Then Fundamental frequency  $\omega_0 = \frac{2\pi}{T} = \frac{2\pi}{2\pi} = 1$

The waveform is described by

$$x(t) = \begin{cases} -\frac{A}{\pi}t & \text{for } -\pi \leq t \leq 0 \\ \frac{A}{\pi}t & \text{for } 0 \leq t \leq \pi \end{cases}$$

The given waveform has even symmetry because  $x(t) = x(-t)$ .

$$\therefore a_0 = \frac{2}{T} \int_0^{T/2} x(t) dt, \quad a_n = \frac{4}{T} \int_0^{T/2} x(t) \cos n\omega_0 t dt \quad \text{and} \quad b_n = 0$$

$$\text{Now, } a_0 = \frac{2}{T} \int_0^{T/2} x(t) dt = \frac{2}{2\pi} \int_0^{\pi} \frac{A}{\pi} t dt$$

$$= \frac{A}{\pi^2} \int_0^{\pi} t dt = \frac{A}{\pi^2} \left( \frac{t^2}{2} \right)_0^{\pi}$$

$$= \frac{A}{\pi^2} \left( \frac{\pi^2}{2} \right) = \frac{A}{2}$$

By observation also we can say that the average value  $a_0 = A/2$ .

$$\begin{aligned} a_n &= \frac{4}{T} \int_0^{T/2} x(t) \cos n\omega_0 t dt = \frac{4}{2\pi} \int_0^{\pi} \frac{A}{\pi} t \cos nt dt \\ &= \frac{2A}{\pi^2} \left[ \left( \frac{t \sin nt}{n} \right)_0^{\pi} - \int_0^{\pi} \frac{\sin nt}{n} dt \right] \\ &= \frac{2A}{\pi^2} \left[ (\pi \sin n\pi - 0) + \left( \frac{\cos nt}{n^2} \right)_0^{\pi} \right] = \frac{2A}{\pi^2 n^2} (\cos n\pi - \cos 0) \\ &= \frac{2A}{n^2 \pi^2} [(-1)^n - 1] \\ a_n &= \begin{cases} -\frac{4A}{n^2 \pi^2} & \text{for odd } n \\ 0 & \text{for even } n \end{cases} \end{aligned}$$

The Trigonometric Fourier series is:

$$\begin{aligned} x(t) &= a_0 + \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} a_n \cos n\omega_0 t + b_n \sin n\omega_0 t \\ &= \frac{A}{2} + \sum_{n=\text{odd}}^{\infty} \frac{-4A}{n^2 \pi^2} \cos nt \\ &= \frac{A}{2} - \frac{4A}{\pi^2} \sum_{n=\text{odd}}^{\infty} \frac{\cos nt}{n^2} \end{aligned}$$

**EXAMPLE 4.5** Obtain the Fourier components of the periodic rectangular waveform shown in Figure 4.6.

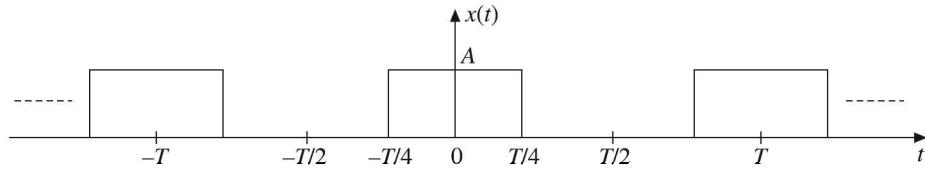


Figure 4.6 Waveform for Example 4.5.

**Solution:** The waveform shown in Figure 4.6 is a periodic waveform with period =  $T$  and can be expressed as:

$$x(t) = \begin{cases} 0 & \text{for } \frac{-T}{2} \leq t \leq \frac{T}{4} \\ A & \text{for } \frac{-T}{4} \leq t \leq \frac{T}{4} \\ 0 & \text{for } \frac{T}{4} \leq t \leq \frac{T}{2} \end{cases}$$

Let

$$t_0 = -\frac{T}{2}$$

∴

$$t_0 + T = \frac{T}{2}$$

and

$$\text{Fundamental frequency } \omega_0 = \frac{2\pi}{T}$$

The given function has even symmetry because  $x(t) = x(-t)$ .

$$\therefore a_0 = \frac{2}{T} \int_0^{T/2} x(t) dt, \quad a_n = \frac{4}{T} \int_0^{T/2} x(t) \cos n\omega_0 t dt \text{ and } b_n = 0$$

$$\text{Now, } a_0 = \frac{1}{T} \int_{t_0}^{t_0+T} x(t) dt = \frac{1}{T} \int_{-T/2}^{T/2} x(t) dt = \frac{2}{T} \int_0^{T/4} A dt = \frac{2A}{T} [t]_0^{T/4} = \frac{A}{2}$$

$$\begin{aligned} a_n &= \frac{2}{T} \int_{t_0}^{t_0+T} x(t) \cos n\omega_0 t dt = \frac{2}{T} \int_{-T/2}^{T/2} x(t) \cos n\omega_0 t dt \\ &= \frac{4}{T} \int_0^{T/4} A \cos n \frac{2\pi}{T} t dt = \frac{4A}{T} \left[ \frac{\sin n(2\pi/T)t}{n(2\pi/T)} \right]_0^{T/4} \\ &= \frac{2A}{n\pi} \left[ \sin \frac{n\pi}{2} - \sin(0) \right] = \frac{2A}{n\pi} \sin \frac{n\pi}{2} \end{aligned}$$

$$a_n = \begin{cases} 2A/n\pi & \text{for } n = 1, 5, 9, \dots \\ -2A/n\pi & \text{for } n = 3, 7, 11, \dots \\ 0 & \text{for even } n \end{cases}$$

The trigonometric Fourier series is:

$$\begin{aligned} x(t) &= a_0 + \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} a_n \cos n\omega_0 t + b_n \sin n\omega_0 t \, dt \\ \text{i.e. } x(t) &= \frac{A}{2} + \sum_{n=\text{odd}}^{\infty} \frac{2A}{n\pi} \sin \frac{n\pi}{2} \cos \frac{n2\pi}{T} t \end{aligned}$$

#### 4.6.2 Odd or Rotation Symmetry

A function  $x(t)$  is said to have odd or rotation symmetry, if

$$x(t) = -x(-t)$$

The waveforms of some odd functions are shown in Figure 4.7. The sum of two or more odd functions is always odd. If a constant is added, the odd nature of the function is removed. These types of functions are always antisymmetrical with respect to the vertical axis. The product of two odd functions is odd.

If  $x(t)$  is an odd function, then  $x_e(t) = 0$  and  $x(t) = x_o(t)$

$$\therefore a_0 = \frac{1}{T} \int_{-T/2}^{T/2} x(t) \, dt = \frac{1}{T} \int_{-T/2}^{T/2} x_o(t) \, dt = 0$$

$$\text{and } a_n = \frac{2}{T} \int_{-T/2}^{T/2} x(t) \cos n\omega_0 t \, dt = \frac{2}{T} \int_{-T/2}^{T/2} x_o(t) \cos n\omega_0 t \, dt = 0$$

because  $x_o(t) \cos n\omega_0 t$  is an odd function.

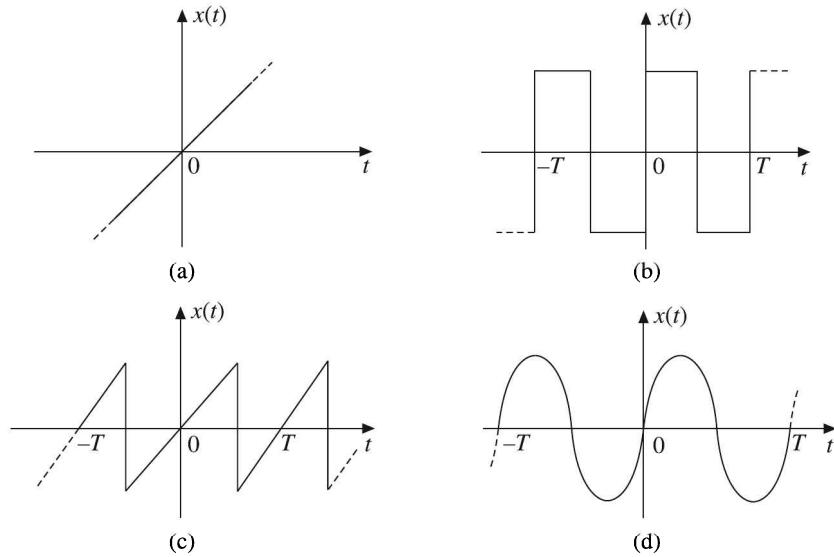
$$\begin{aligned} b_n &= \frac{2}{T} \int_{-T/2}^{T/2} x(t) \sin n\omega_0 t \, dt = \frac{2}{T} \int_{-T/2}^{T/2} x_o(t) \sin n\omega_0 t \, dt \\ &= \frac{2}{T} \left( 2 \int_0^{T/2} x_o(t) \sin n\omega_0 t \, dt \right) \\ &= \frac{4}{T} \left[ \int_0^{T/2} x(t) \sin n\omega_0 t \, dt \right] \end{aligned}$$

Thus, the Fourier series expansion of an odd periodic function contains only sine terms.

When odd or rotation symmetry exists, the trigonometric Fourier series coefficients are:

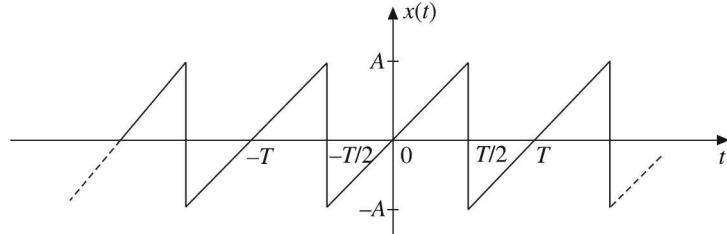
$$a_0 = 0, \quad a_n = 0, \quad \text{and} \quad b_n = \frac{4}{T} \int_0^{T/2} x(t) \sin n\omega_0 t \, dt$$

Thus, the waveform having odd symmetry contains only sine terms.



**Figure 4.7** Waveforms of odd functions.

**EXAMPLE 4.6** Obtain the trigonometric Fourier series for the waveform shown in Figure 4.8.



**Figure 4.8** Waveform for Example 4.6.

**Solution:** The waveform shown in Figure 4.8 is periodic with period  $= T$ . For computational simplicity, consider the period from  $-T/2$  to  $T/2$ . Let

$$t_0 = -\frac{T}{2}, \quad t_0 + T = \frac{T}{2}$$

In the interval,  $-\frac{T}{2} \leq t \leq \frac{T}{2}$

$$x(t) = \frac{A}{T/2} t = \frac{2A}{T} t$$

Then

$$\text{Fundamental frequency } \omega_0 = \frac{2\pi}{T}$$

The waveform has odd symmetry because  $x(t) = -x(-t)$ .

$$\begin{aligned}
 \therefore a_0 &= 0, \quad a_n = 0, \quad \text{and} \quad b_n = \frac{4}{T} \int_0^{T/2} x(t) \sin n\omega_0 t \, dt \\
 b_n &= \frac{4}{T} \int_0^{T/2} x(t) \sin n\omega_0 t \, dt \\
 &= \frac{4}{T} \int_0^{T/2} \frac{2A}{T} t \sin n \frac{2\pi}{T} t \, dt = \frac{8A}{T^2} \left( \int_0^{T/2} t \sin n \frac{2\pi}{T} t \, dt \right) \\
 &= \frac{8A}{T^2} \left\{ \left[ \frac{t \left( -\cos n \frac{2\pi}{T} t \right)}{n \frac{2\pi}{T}} \right]_0^{T/2} - \int_0^{T/2} \left[ \frac{\left( -\cos n \frac{2\pi}{T} t \right)}{n \frac{2\pi}{T}} \right] dt \right\} \\
 &= \frac{8A}{T^2} \left[ \frac{-\frac{T}{2} \cos \left( n \frac{2\pi}{T} \frac{T}{2} \right) - 0}{n \frac{2\pi}{T}} + \left[ \frac{\sin \left( n \frac{2\pi}{T} t \right)}{\left( n \frac{2\pi}{T} \right)^2} \right]_0^{T/2} \right] \\
 &= \frac{8A}{T^2} \left[ -\frac{T^2}{4n\pi} (-1)^n + \frac{[\sin n\pi - \sin 0]}{\left( n \frac{2\pi}{T} \right)^2} \right] \\
 &= \frac{2A}{n\pi} (-1)^{n+1}
 \end{aligned}$$

The trigonometric Fourier series is:

$$\begin{aligned}
 x(t) &= a_0 + \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} a_n \cos n\omega_0 t + b_n \sin n\omega_0 t \\
 &= \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{2A}{n\pi} (-1)^{n+1} \sin n \frac{2\pi}{T} t
 \end{aligned}$$

**EXAMPLE 4.7** Obtain the trigonometric Fourier series for the waveform shown in Figure 4.9.

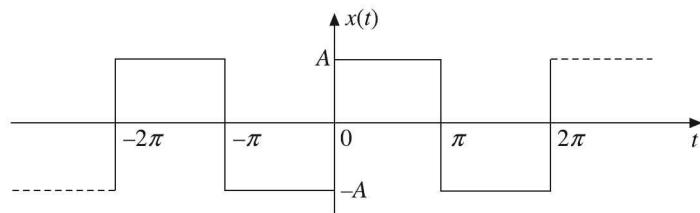


Figure 4.9 Waveform for Example 4.7.

**Solution:** The periodic waveform shown in Figure 4.9 with a period  $T = 2\pi$  can be expressed as:

$$x(t) = \begin{cases} A & 0 \leq t \leq \pi \\ -A & \pi \leq t \leq 2\pi \end{cases}$$

Let

$$t_0 = 0$$

∴

$$t_0 + T = 2\pi$$

and

$$\text{Fundamental frequency } \omega_0 = \frac{2\pi}{T} = \frac{2\pi}{2\pi} = 1$$

The waveform has odd symmetry because  $x(t) = -x(-t)$ . So

$$a_0 = 0, a_n = 0 \quad \text{and} \quad b_n = \frac{4}{T} \int_{t_0}^{t_0+T/2} x(t) \sin n\omega_0 t \, dt$$

Now,

$$\begin{aligned} b_n &= \frac{4}{T} \int_0^{T/2} x(t) \sin n\omega_0 t \, dt = \frac{4}{2\pi} \int_0^{\pi} A \sin nt \, dt \\ &= \frac{2A}{\pi} \left( -\frac{\cos nt}{n} \right)_0^{\pi} = -\frac{2A}{\pi} \left[ \frac{\cos n\pi - \cos 0}{n} \right] \\ &= -\frac{2A}{n\pi} [(-1)^n - 1] = \frac{2A}{n\pi} [1 - (-1)^n] \end{aligned}$$

$$b_n = \begin{cases} 4A/n\pi & \text{for odd } n \\ 0 & \text{for even } n \end{cases}$$

The trigonometric Fourier series is:

$$\begin{aligned} x(t) &= a_0 + \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} a_n \cos n\omega_0 t + b_n \sin n\omega_0 t = \sum_{n=\text{odd}}^{\infty} b_n \sin n\omega_0 t \\ \therefore x(t) &= \sum_{n=\text{odd}}^{\infty} \frac{4A}{n\pi} \sin nt = \frac{4A}{\pi} \sum_{n=\text{odd}}^{\infty} \frac{1}{n} \sin nt \\ &= \frac{4A}{\pi} \sin t + \frac{4A}{3\pi} \sin 3t + \frac{4A}{5\pi} \sin 5t + \dots \end{aligned}$$

### 4.6.3 Half Wave Symmetry

A periodic signal  $x(t)$  which satisfies the condition:

$$x(t) = -x\left(t \pm \frac{T}{2}\right)$$

is said to have half wave symmetry. Figure 4.10 shows a function having half wave symmetry. This function is neither purely odd nor purely even. For such functions,  $a_0 = 0$ . The Fourier series expansion of such a type of periodic signal contains odd harmonics only, that is  $\omega_0, 3\omega_0, \dots$ , etc.

As  $x(t)$  contains only odd harmonic terms, when  $n$  is even  $a_n = b_n = 0$ .  
When  $n$  is odd,

$$a_n = \frac{4}{T} \int_0^{T/2} x(t) \cos n\omega_0 t \, dt$$

and

$$b_n = \frac{4}{T} \int_0^{T/2} x(t) \sin n\omega_0 t \, dt$$

This can be proved as follows:

$$\begin{aligned} a_n &= \frac{2}{T} \int_0^T x(t) \cos n\omega_0 t \, dt \\ &= \frac{2}{T} \left( \int_0^{T/2} x(t) \cos n\omega_0 t \, dt + \int_{T/2}^T x(t) \cos n\omega_0 t \, dt \right) \end{aligned}$$

Changing the variable from  $t$  to  $(t + T/2)$  in the second integral, we get

$$a_n = \frac{2}{T} \left( \int_0^{T/2} x(t) \cos n\omega_0 t \, dt + \int_0^{T/2} x(t + T/2) \cos n\omega_0 (t + T/2) \, dt \right)$$

Using the property  $x(t) = -x(t \pm T/2)$ , we get

$$\begin{aligned} a_n &= \frac{2}{T} \int_0^{T/2} [x(t) \cos n\omega_0 t - x(t) \cos n\omega_0 t \cos n\pi] \, dt \\ &= \begin{cases} 0 & \text{(for even } n\text{)} \\ \frac{4}{T} \int_0^{T/2} x(t) \cos n\omega_0 t \, dt & \text{(for odd } n\text{)} \end{cases} \end{aligned}$$

Similarly, it can be shown that

$$b_n = \begin{cases} 0 & \text{(for even } n\text{)} \\ \frac{4}{T} \int_0^{T/2} x(t) \sin n\omega_0 t \, dt & \text{(for odd } n\text{)} \end{cases}$$

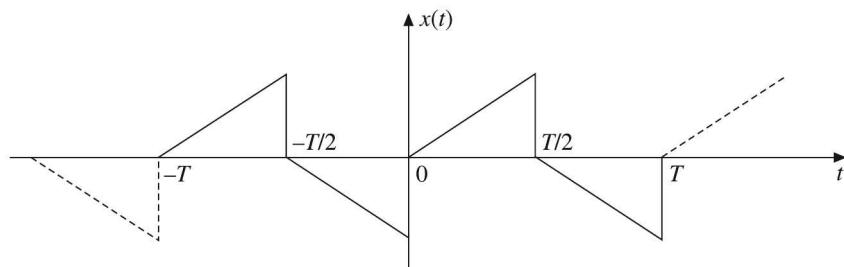


Figure 4.10 Half wave symmetry.

**EXAMPLE 4.8** Find the trigonometric Fourier series for the waveform shown in Figure 4.11.

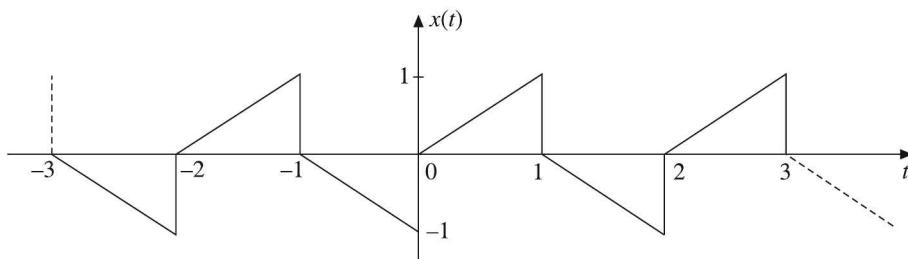


Figure 4.11 Waveform for Example 4.8.

**Solution:** The given waveform is periodic with period  $T = 2$ . So the fundamental frequency is:

$$\omega_0 = \frac{2\pi}{T} = \frac{2\pi}{2} = \pi$$

Let

$$t_0 = 0$$

$\therefore$

$$t_0 + T = 2$$

Consider the waveform from  $t = -1$  to  $t = 1$ ,

$$\begin{aligned} x(t) &= -(t+1) && \text{for } -1 \leq t \leq 0 \\ &= t && \text{for } 0 \leq t \leq 1 \end{aligned}$$

Looking at Figure 4.11, we can observe that the given waveform has half wave symmetry because

$$x(t) = -x\left(t \pm \frac{T}{2}\right)$$

Therefore,  $a_0 = 0$  and only odd harmonics exist.

$$\therefore x(t) = \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} a_n \cos n\omega_0 t + b_n \sin n\omega_0 t = \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} a_n \cos n\pi t + b_n \sin n\pi t$$

$$\begin{aligned}
 a_n &= \frac{4}{T} \int_0^{T/2} x(t) \cos n\pi t \, dt \\
 &= \frac{4}{2} \int_0^1 t \cos n\pi t \, dt = 2 \left[ \left( t \frac{\sin n\pi t}{n\pi} \right)_0^1 - \int_0^1 \frac{\sin n\pi t}{n\pi} \, dt \right] \\
 &= 2 \left\{ \frac{\sin n\pi - 0}{n\pi} + \left[ \frac{\cos n\pi t}{(n\pi)^2} \right]_0^1 \right\} = \frac{2}{n^2\pi^2} [\cos n\pi - \cos 0] \\
 &= \frac{2}{n^2\pi^2} [(-1)^n - 1] = -\frac{4}{n^2\pi^2} \quad (\text{for odd } n) \\
 b_n &= \frac{4}{T} \int_0^{T/2} x(t) \sin n\pi t \, dt \\
 &= \frac{4}{2} \int_0^1 x(t) \sin n\pi t \, dt = 2 \int_0^1 t \sin n\pi t \, dt \\
 &= 2 \left\{ \left[ \frac{t(-\cos n\pi t)}{n\pi} \right]_0^1 - \int_0^1 \frac{-\cos n\pi t}{n\pi} \, dt \right\} \\
 &= \frac{2}{n\pi} \left[ -\cos n\pi - 0 + \left( \frac{\sin n\pi t}{n^2\pi^2} \right)_0^1 \right] \\
 &= \frac{2}{n\pi} (-1) (-1)^n = \frac{2(-1)^{n+1}}{n\pi} \quad (\text{for odd } n) \\
 \therefore a_0 &= 0, \quad a_n = -\frac{4}{n^2\pi^2} \quad \text{and} \quad b_n = \frac{2(-1)^{n+1}}{n\pi} \quad (\text{for odd } n) \\
 \therefore x(t) &= \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \left[ \left( \frac{-4}{n^2\pi^2} \right) \cos n\pi t + \frac{2}{n\pi} (-1)^{n+1} \sin n\pi t \right] \quad (\text{for odd } n)
 \end{aligned}$$

#### 4.6.4 Quarter Wave Symmetry

A function  $x(t)$  is said to have quarter wave symmetry, if

$$x(t) = x(-t) \quad \text{or} \quad x(t) = -x(-t) \quad \text{and also} \quad x(t) = -x\left(t \pm \frac{T}{2}\right)$$

i.e. a function  $x(t)$  which has either even symmetry or odd symmetry along with half wave symmetry is said to have quarter wave symmetry. Figure 4.12 shows the examples of such functions.

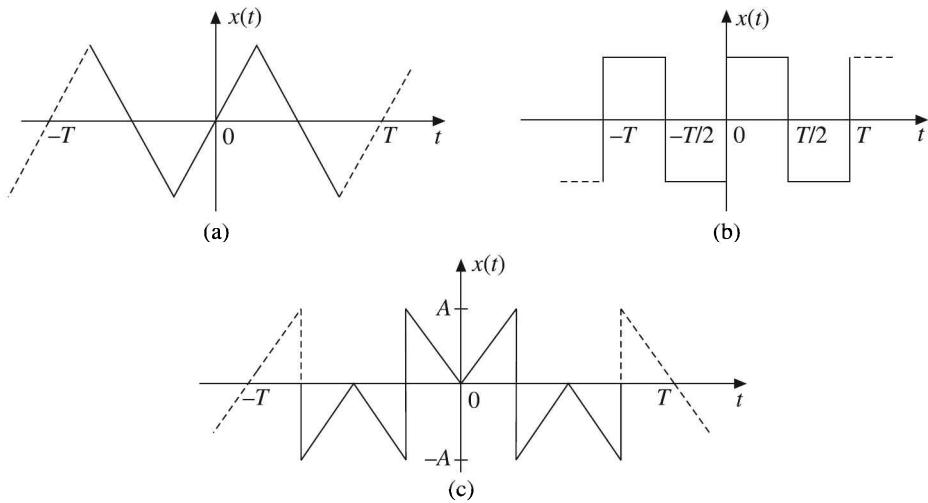


Figure 4.12 Quarter wave symmetry.

The following two cases are discussed below for the waveforms having quarter wave symmetry.

**CASE 1**

$$x(t) = -x(-t) \quad \text{and} \quad x(t) = -x\left(t \pm \frac{T}{2}\right)$$

$$a_0 = 0$$

$$a_n = 0$$

$$b_n = \frac{8}{T} \int_0^{T/4} x(t) \sin n\omega_0 t \, dt \quad (\text{when } n \text{ is odd.})$$

**CASE 2**

$$x(t) = x(-t) \quad \text{and} \quad x(t) = -x\left(t \pm \frac{T}{2}\right)$$

$$a_0 = 0$$

$$a_n = \frac{8}{T} \int_0^{T/4} x(t) \cos n\omega_0 t \, dt$$

$$b_n = 0 \quad (\text{when } n \text{ is even.})$$

**EXAMPLE 4.9** Obtain the trigonometric Fourier series for the waveform shown in Figure 4.13 using quarter wave symmetry.

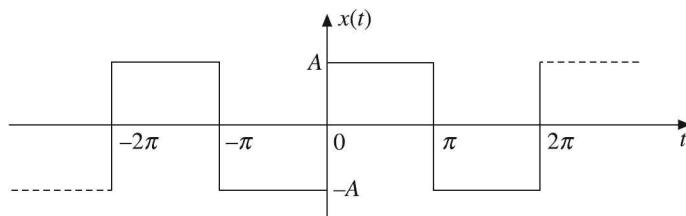


Figure 4.13 Waveform for Example 4.9.

**Solution:** The waveform shown in Figure 4.13 has odd symmetry as well as half wave symmetry because  $x(t) = -x(-t)$  and also  $x(t) = -x[t \pm (T/2)]$ . That means it has quarter wave symmetry.

$$\therefore a_0 = 0, a_n = 0 \text{ and } b_n = \frac{8}{T} \int_0^{T/4} x(t) \sin n\omega_0 t dt$$

and only odd harmonics exist. The period of the waveform  $T = 2\pi$ . The fundamental frequency  $\omega_0 = (2\pi/T) = (2\pi/2\pi) = 1$ .

$$b_n = \frac{8}{T} \int_0^{T/4} x(t) \sin n\omega_0 t dt$$

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Now, } b_n &= \frac{8}{2\pi} \int_0^{\pi/2} A \sin nt dt = \frac{4A}{\pi} \left[ -\frac{\cos nt}{n} \right]_0^{\pi/2} \\ &= -\frac{4A}{n\pi} \left[ \cos \frac{n\pi}{2} - \cos 0 \right] \end{aligned}$$

$$\text{or } b_n = \begin{cases} \frac{4A}{n\pi} & \text{when } n \text{ is odd.} \\ 0 & \text{when } n \text{ is even.} \end{cases}$$

$$\therefore x(t) = \frac{4A}{\pi} \sin t + \frac{4A}{3\pi} \sin 3t + \frac{4A}{5\pi} \sin 5t + \dots$$

**EXAMPLE 4.10** Find the trigonometric Fourier series representation of the triangular wave shown in Figure 4.14.

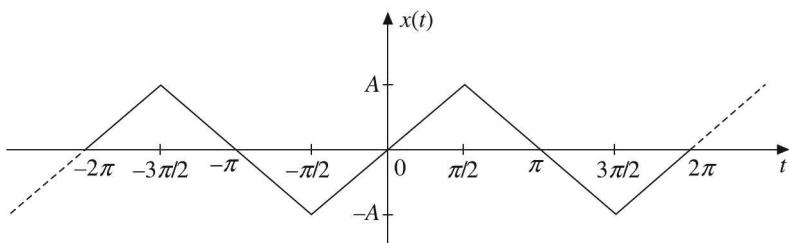


Figure 4.14 Waveform for Example 4.10.

**Solution:** The waveform shown in Figure 4.14 has a period  $T = 2\pi$ . For convenience of computation, let

$$t_0 = -\frac{\pi}{2}$$

$$\therefore t_0 + T = \frac{3\pi}{2}, \quad \omega_0 = \frac{2\pi}{T} = \frac{2\pi}{2\pi} = 1$$

The given signal has odd symmetry because  $x(t) = -x(-t)$ .

$$\therefore a_0 = 0, a_n = 0 \text{ and } b_n = \frac{4}{T} \int_0^{T/2} x(t) \sin n\omega_0 t dt$$

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Now, } b_n &= \frac{4}{T} \int_0^{T/2} x(t) \sin n\omega_0 t dt = \frac{4}{2\pi} \int_{-\pi/2}^{\pi/2} \frac{2A}{\pi} t \sin nt dt \\ &= \frac{4A}{\pi^2} \left\{ \left[ t \frac{(-\cos nt)}{n} \right]_{-\pi/2}^{\pi/2} - \int_{-\pi/2}^{\pi/2} \frac{-\cos nt}{n} dt \right\} \\ &= \frac{4A}{\pi^2 n} \left\{ - \left[ \frac{\pi}{2} \cos \frac{n\pi}{2} + \frac{\pi}{2} \cos \left( -\frac{n\pi}{2} \right) \right] + \left( \frac{\sin nt}{n} \right)_{-\pi/2}^{\pi/2} \right\} \\ &= \frac{4A}{\pi^2 n} \left\{ - \left[ \frac{\pi}{2} \cos \frac{n\pi}{2} + \frac{\pi}{2} \cos \left( -\frac{n\pi}{2} \right) \right] + \frac{1}{n} \left[ \sin \frac{n\pi}{2} - \sin \left( -\frac{n\pi}{2} \right) \right] \right\} \\ &= \frac{4A}{\pi^2 n} \left( -\pi \cos \frac{n\pi}{2} + \frac{2}{n} \sin \frac{n\pi}{2} \right) \quad (\text{for all } n) \\ &= \frac{4A}{\pi^2 n} \left( \frac{2}{n} \sin \frac{n\pi}{2} \right) \quad (\text{for odd } n) \\ &= \frac{8A}{\pi^2 n^2} \left[ \frac{\sin(n\pi/2)}{n^2} \right] \\ &= \frac{8A}{\pi^2 n^2} \quad (\text{for } n = 1, 5, 9, \dots) \\ &= -\frac{8A}{\pi^2 n^2} \quad (\text{for } n = 3, 7, 11, \dots) \\ \therefore x(t) &= \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{8A}{\pi^2 n^2} \sin nt \quad (\text{for odd } n) \\ &= \frac{8A}{\pi^2} \left[ \sin t - \frac{1}{3^2} \sin 3t + \frac{1}{5^2} \sin 5t - \frac{1}{7^2} \sin 7t + \dots \right] \end{aligned}$$

In fact the given signal has quarter wave symmetry because it has odd symmetry as well as half wave symmetry, i.e.  $x(t) = -x(-t)$  and  $x(t) = -x\left(t \pm \frac{T}{2}\right)$ .

$$\therefore a_0 = 0, a_n = 0 \text{ and } b_n = \frac{8}{T} \int_0^{T/4} x(t) \sin n\omega_0 t dt \quad (\text{for odd } n)$$

$$\begin{aligned}
 \text{Then, } b_n &= \frac{8}{T} \int_0^{T/4} x(t) \sin n\omega_0 t \, dt \quad (\text{for odd } n) \\
 &= \frac{8}{2\pi} \int_0^{\pi/2} \frac{2A}{\pi} t \sin nt \, dt = \frac{8A}{\pi^2} \left\{ \left[ t \frac{(-\cos nt)}{n} \right]_0^{\pi/2} - \int_0^{\pi/2} \frac{(-\cos nt)}{n} \, dt \right\} \\
 &= \frac{8A}{\pi^2} \left[ \frac{1}{n} \left( -\frac{\pi}{2} \cos \frac{n\pi}{2} \right) + \left( \frac{\sin nt}{n^2} \right)_0^{\pi/2} \right] = \frac{8A}{\pi^2} \left[ -\frac{\pi}{2n} (0) + \frac{\sin n(\pi/2)}{n^2} \right] \quad (\text{for odd } n) \\
 &= \frac{8A}{\pi^2 n^2} \sin \frac{n\pi}{2}
 \end{aligned}$$

### Hidden symmetry

Sometimes we come across a periodic function without any apparent form of symmetry, as it possesses a Fourier series containing only sine or cosine terms. Example 4.3 (Figure 4.3) illustrates this point. Here the periodic function does not satisfy either of the symmetry conditions, yet the Fourier series consists of a dc term and sine terms alone. The reason for this behaviour is that the symmetry of the function is obscured by the dc term. If we subtract a constant  $A/2$  from this function, the new function  $x_n(t)$  is antisymmetrical, i.e.

$$x_n(t) = x(t) - \frac{A}{2}$$

The subtraction of a constant term from  $x(t)$  merely shifts the horizontal axis upwards by the amount  $A/2$ . It is evident that  $x_n(t)$  is an odd periodic function, and hence the Fourier series of  $x_n(t)$  consists entirely of sine terms. Therefore, the Fourier series for  $x(t)$  consists of a dc term ( $A/2$ ) and sine terms alone.

## 4.7 EXPONENTIAL FOURIER SERIES

The exponential Fourier series is the most widely used form of Fourier series. In this, the function  $x(t)$  is expressed as a weighted sum of the complex exponential functions. Although the trigonometric form and the cosine representation are the common forms of Fourier series, the complex exponential form is more general and usually more convenient and more compact. So, it is used almost exclusively, and it finds extensive application in communication theory.

The set of complex exponential functions

$$\{e^{j n \omega_0 t}, n = 0, \pm 1, \pm 2, \dots\}$$

forms a closed orthogonal set over an interval  $(t_0, t_0 + T)$  where  $T = (2\pi/\omega_0)$  for any value of  $t_0$ , and therefore it can be used as a Fourier series. Using Euler's identity, we can write

$$A_n \cos(n\omega_0 t + \theta_n) = A_n \left[ \frac{e^{j(n\omega_0 t + \theta_n)} + e^{-j(n\omega_0 t + \theta_n)}}{2} \right]$$

Substituting this in the definition of the cosine Fourier representation, we obtain

$$\begin{aligned}
 x(t) &= A_0 + \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{A_n}{2} \left[ e^{j(n\omega_0 t + \theta_n)} + e^{-j(n\omega_0 t + \theta_n)} \right] \\
 &= A_0 + \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{A_n}{2} \left[ e^{jn\omega_0 t} e^{j\theta_n} + e^{-jn\omega_0 t} e^{-j\theta_n} \right] \\
 &= A_0 + \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \left( \frac{A_n}{2} e^{j\omega_0 n t} e^{j\theta_n} \right) + \left( \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{A_n}{2} e^{-j\omega_0 n t} e^{-j\theta_n} \right) \\
 &= A_0 + \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \left( \frac{A_n}{2} e^{j\theta_n} \right) e^{j\omega_0 n t} + \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \left( \frac{A_n}{2} e^{j(-\theta_n)} \right) e^{-j\omega_0 n t}
 \end{aligned}$$

Letting  $n = -k$  in the second summation of the above equation, we have

$$x(t) = A_0 + \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \left( \frac{A_n}{2} e^{j\theta_n} \right) e^{j\omega_0 n t} + \sum_{k=-1}^{-\infty} \left( \frac{A_k}{2} e^{j\theta_k} \right) e^{jk\omega_0 t}$$

On comparing the above two equations for  $x(t)$ , we get

$$\begin{aligned}
 A_n &= A_k; \quad (-\theta_n) = \theta_k \quad n > 0 \\
 k &< 0
 \end{aligned}$$

Let us define

$$\begin{aligned}
 C_0 &= A_0; \quad C_n = \frac{A_n}{2} e^{j\theta_n}, \quad n > 0 \\
 \therefore x(t) &= A_0 + \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{A_n}{2} e^{j\theta_n} e^{j\omega_0 n t} + \sum_{n=-1}^{-\infty} \frac{A_n}{2} e^{j\theta_n} e^{jn\omega_0 t} \\
 \text{i.e. } x(t) &= \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} C_n e^{jn\omega_0 t}
 \end{aligned}$$

This is known as exponential form of Fourier series. The above equation is called the *synthesis equation*.

So the exponential series from cosine series is:

$$\begin{aligned}
 C_0 &= A_0 \\
 C_n &= \frac{A_n}{2} e^{j\theta_n}
 \end{aligned}$$

#### 4.7.1 Determination of the Coefficients of Exponential Fourier Series

We have

$$x(t) = \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} C_n e^{jn\omega_0 t}; \quad \omega_0 = \frac{2\pi}{T}$$

Multiplying both sides by  $e^{-jk\omega_0 t}$  and integrating over one period, we get

$$\int_{t_0}^{t_0+T} x(t) e^{-jk\omega_0 t} dt = \int_{t_0}^{t_0+T} \left( \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} C_n e^{jn\omega_0 t} \right) e^{-jk\omega_0 t} dt = \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} C_n \int_{t_0}^{t_0+T} e^{jn\omega_0 t} e^{-jk\omega_0 t} dt$$

We know that

$$\int_{t_0}^{t_0+T} e^{jn\omega_0 t} e^{-jk\omega_0 t} dt = \begin{cases} 0 & \text{for } k \neq n \\ T & \text{for } k = n \end{cases}$$

$$\therefore \int_{t_0}^{t_0+T} x(t) e^{-jk\omega_0 t} dt = T C_k$$

or  $C_k = \frac{1}{T} \int_{t_0}^{t_0+T} x(t) e^{-jk\omega_0 t} dt$

or  $C_n = \frac{1}{T} \int_{t_0}^{t_0+T} x(t) e^{-jn\omega_0 t} dt$

where  $C_n$  are the Fourier coefficients of the exponential series. The above equation is called the *analysis equation*.

$$C_0 = A_0 = \frac{1}{T} \int_{t_0}^{t_0+T} x(t) dt$$

The Fourier coefficients of  $x(t)$  have only a discrete spectrum because values of  $C_n$  exist only for discrete values of  $n$ . As it represents a complex spectrum, it has both magnitude and phase spectra. The following points may be noted:

1. The magnitude line spectrum is always an even function of  $n$ .
2. The phase line spectrum is always an odd function of  $n$ .

#### 4.7.2 Trigonometric Fourier Series from Exponential Fourier Series

The complex exponential Fourier series is given by

$$\begin{aligned} x(t) &= \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} C_n e^{jn\omega_0 t} = C_0 + \sum_{n=-\infty}^{-1} C_n e^{jn\omega_0 t} + \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} C_n e^{jn\omega_0 t} \\ &= C_0 + \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} (C_{-n} e^{-jn\omega_0 t} + C_n e^{jn\omega_0 t}) \\ &= C_0 + \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} C_{-n} (\cos n\omega_0 t - j \sin n\omega_0 t) + C_n (\cos n\omega_0 t + j \sin n\omega_0 t) \end{aligned}$$

$$\therefore x(t) = C_0 + \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} (C_n + C_{-n}) \cos n\omega_0 t + j(C_n - C_{-n}) \sin n\omega_0 t$$

Comparing this  $x(t)$  with the standard trigonometric Fourier series, i.e. with

$$x(t) = a_0 + \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} a_n \cos n\omega_0 t + \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} b_n \sin n\omega_0 t$$

we get the formulae for conversion of exponential Fourier series to trigonometric Fourier series as:

$$\begin{aligned} a_0 &= C_0 \\ a_n &= C_n + C_{-n} \\ b_n &= j(C_n - C_{-n}) \end{aligned}$$

Similarly, an exponential Fourier series can be derived from the trigonometric Fourier series (section 4.7.3).

### 4.7.3 Exponential Fourier Series from Trigonometric Fourier Series

From the exponential Fourier series, we know that

$$\begin{aligned} C_n &= \frac{1}{T} \int_0^T x(t) e^{-jn\omega_0 t} dt = \frac{1}{T} \int_0^T x(t) [\cos n\omega_0 t - j \sin n\omega_0 t] dt \\ &= \frac{1}{2} \left( \frac{2}{T} \int_0^T x(t) \cos n\omega_0 t dt - j \frac{2}{T} \int_0^T x(t) \sin n\omega_0 t dt \right) = \frac{1}{2} [a_n - jb_n] \\ C_{-n} &= \frac{1}{T} \int_0^T x(t) e^{jn\omega_0 t} dt = \frac{1}{T} \int_0^T x(t) [\cos n\omega_0 t + j \sin n\omega_0 t] dt \\ &= \frac{1}{2} \left( \frac{2}{T} \int_0^T x(t) \cos n\omega_0 t dt + j \frac{2}{T} \int_0^T x(t) \sin n\omega_0 t dt \right) = \frac{1}{2} [a_n + jb_n] \\ C_0 &= \frac{1}{T} \int_0^T x(t) dt = a_0 \end{aligned}$$

So, the formulae for conversion of trigonometric series to exponential series are:

$$C_0 = a_0$$

$$C_n = \frac{1}{2} (a_n - jb_n)$$

$$C_{-n} = \frac{1}{2} (a_n + jb_n)$$

#### 4.7.4 Cosine Fourier Series from Exponential Fourier Series

We know that

$$\begin{aligned}
 A_0 &= a_0 = C_0 \\
 A_n &= \sqrt{a_n^2 + b_n^2} = \sqrt{(C_n + C_{-n})^2 + [j(C_n - C_{-n})]^2} \\
 &= \sqrt{(C_n^2 + C_{-n}^2 + 2C_n C_{-n}) - (C_n^2 + C_{-n}^2 - 2C_n C_{-n})} \\
 &= \sqrt{4C_n C_{-n}} \\
 &= 2|C_n| \\
 \therefore A_0 &= C_0 \\
 A_n &= 2|C_n|
 \end{aligned}$$

### 4.8 FOURIER SPECTRUM

The Fourier spectrum of a periodic signal  $x(t)$  is a plot of its Fourier coefficients versus frequency  $\omega$ . It is in two parts: (a) Amplitude spectrum and (b) Phase spectrum. The plot of the amplitude of Fourier coefficients versus frequency is known as the *amplitude spectra*, and the plot of the phase of Fourier coefficients versus frequency is known as the *phase spectra*. The two plots together are known as Fourier frequency spectra of  $x(t)$ . This type of representation is also called frequency domain representation. The Fourier spectrum exists only at discrete frequencies  $n\omega_0$ , where  $n = 0, 1, 2, \dots$ . Hence it is known as discrete spectrum or line spectrum. The envelope of the spectrum depends only upon the pulse shape, but not upon the period of repetition.

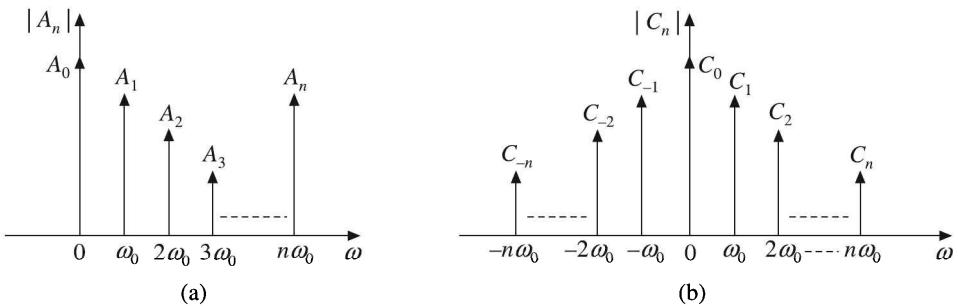
The trigonometric representation of a periodic signal  $x(t)$  contains both sine and cosine terms with positive and negative amplitude coefficients ( $a_n$  and  $b_n$ ) but with no phase angles.

The cosine representation of a periodic signal contains only positive amplitude coefficients with phase angle  $\theta_n$ . Therefore, we can plot amplitude spectra ( $A_n$  versus  $\omega$ ) and phase spectra ( $\theta_n$  versus  $\omega$ ). Since, in this representation, Fourier coefficients exist only for positive frequencies, this spectra is called *single-sided spectra*.

The exponential representation of a periodic signal  $x(t)$  contains amplitude coefficients  $C_n$  which are complex. Hence, they can be represented by magnitude and phase. Therefore, we can plot two spectra; the magnitude spectrum ( $|C_n|$  versus  $\omega$ ) and phase spectrum ( $\angle C_n$  versus  $\omega$ ). The spectra can be plotted for both positive and negative frequencies. Hence, it is called a *two-sided spectra*.

Figure 4.15(a) represents the spectrum of a trigonometric Fourier series extending from 0 to  $\infty$ , producing a one-sided spectrum as no negative frequencies exist here. Figure 4.15(b) represents the spectrum of a complex exponential Fourier series extending from  $-\infty$  to  $\infty$ , producing a two-sided spectrum.

The amplitude spectrum of the exponential Fourier series is symmetrical about the vertical axis. This is true for all periodic functions.



**Figure 4.15** Complex frequency spectrum for (a) Trigonometric Fourier series and (b) Complex exponential Fourier series.

If  $C_n$  is a general complex number, then

$$C_n = |C_n|e^{j\theta_n}$$

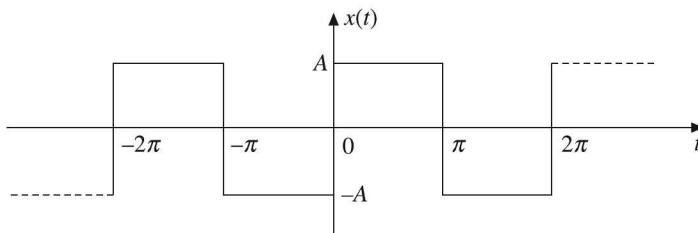
$$C_{-n} = |C_n|e^{-j\theta_n}$$

$$|C_n| = |C_{-n}|$$

The magnitude spectrum is symmetrical about the vertical axis passing through the origin, and the phase spectrum is antisymmetrical about the vertical axis passing through the origin. So the magnitude spectrum exhibits even symmetry and phase spectrum exhibits odd symmetry.

When  $x(t)$  is real, then  $C_{-n} = C_n^*$ , the complex conjugate of  $C_n$ .

**EXAMPLE 4.11** Obtain the exponential Fourier series for the waveform shown in Figure 4.16. Also draw the frequency spectrum.



**Figure 4.16** Waveform for Example 4.11.

**Solution:** The periodic waveform shown in Figure 4.16 with a period  $T = 2\pi$  can be expressed as:

$$x(t) = \begin{cases} A & 0 \leq t \leq \pi \\ -A & \pi \leq t \leq 2\pi \end{cases}$$

Let

$$t_0 = 0$$

$$\therefore t_0 + T = 2\pi$$

and      Fundamental frequency  $\omega_0 = \frac{2\pi}{T} = \frac{2\pi}{2\pi} = 1$

*Exponential Fourier series*

$$\begin{aligned} C_0 &= \frac{1}{T} \int_0^T x(t) dt = \frac{1}{2\pi} \left( \int_0^\pi A dt + \int_\pi^{2\pi} -A dt \right) = \frac{A}{2\pi} \left[ (\pi)_0^\pi - (t)_\pi^{2\pi} \right] = 0 \\ C_n &= \frac{1}{T} \int_0^T x(t) e^{-j n \omega_0 t} dt \\ &= \frac{1}{2\pi} \left( \int_0^\pi A e^{-j n t} dt + \int_\pi^{2\pi} -A e^{-j n t} dt \right) = \frac{A}{2\pi} \left[ \left( \frac{e^{-j n t}}{-j n} \right)_0^\pi - \left( \frac{e^{-j n t}}{-j n} \right)_\pi^{2\pi} \right] \\ &= -\frac{A}{j 2n\pi} \left[ (e^{-jn\pi} - e^0) - (e^{-j2n\pi} - e^{-jn\pi}) \right] \\ &= -\frac{A}{j 2n\pi} \left[ (-1)^n - 1 \right] - \left[ 1 - (-1)^n \right] = -j \frac{2A}{n\pi} \end{aligned}$$

$$\therefore C_n = \begin{cases} -j \frac{2A}{n\pi} & \text{for odd } n \\ 0 & \text{for even } n \end{cases}$$

$$\therefore x(t) = C_0 + \sum_{\substack{n=-\infty \\ n \neq 0}}^{\infty} C_n e^{j n \omega_0 t} = \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} -j \frac{2A}{n\pi} e^{j n t} \quad \text{for odd } n$$

$$\therefore C_0 = 0, C_1 = C_{-1} = \frac{2A}{\pi}, \quad C_3 = C_{-3} = \frac{2A}{3\pi}, \quad C_5 = C_{-5} = \frac{2A}{5\pi}$$

The frequency spectrum is shown in Figure 4.17.

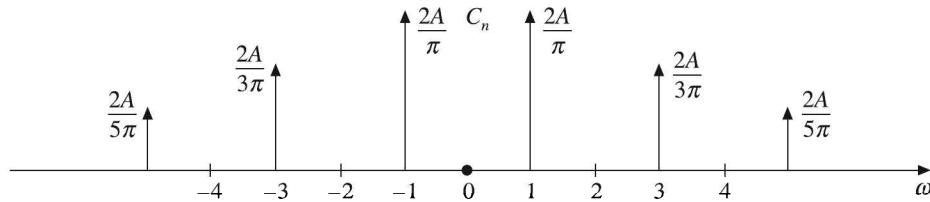


Figure 4.17 Frequency spectrum.

**EXAMPLE 4.12** Find the exponential Fourier series and plot the frequency spectrum for the full wave rectified sine wave given in Figure 4.18.

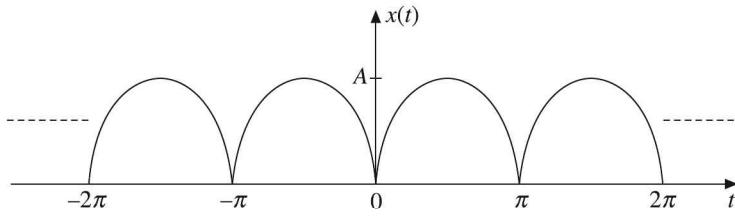


Figure 4.18 Waveform for Example 4.12.

**Solution:** The waveform shown in Figure 4.18 can be expressed over one period (0 to  $\pi$ ) as:

$$x(t) = A \sin \omega t \quad \text{where } \omega = \frac{2\pi}{2\pi} = 1$$

because it is part of a sine wave with period =  $2\pi$ .

$$x(t) = A \sin t \quad 0 \leq t \leq \pi$$

The full wave rectified sine wave is periodic with period  $T = \pi$ .

Let  $t_0 = 0$

$$\therefore t_0 + T = 0 + \pi = \pi$$

and Fundamental frequency  $\omega_0 = \frac{2\pi}{T} = \frac{2\pi}{\pi} = 2$

The exponential Fourier series is:

$$x(t) = \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} C_n e^{jn\omega_0 t} = \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} C_n e^{j2nt}$$

where

$$C_n = \frac{1}{T} \int_{t_0}^{t_0+T} x(t) e^{-jn\omega_0 t} dt$$

$$= \frac{1}{\pi} \int_0^\pi A \sin t e^{-j2nt} dt = \frac{A}{\pi} \int_0^\pi \sin t e^{-j2nt} dt$$

$$= \frac{A}{\pi} \int_0^\pi \left( \frac{e^{jt} - e^{-jt}}{2j} \right) e^{-j2nt} dt = \frac{A}{j2\pi} \left( \int_0^\pi e^{j(1-2n)t} - e^{-j(1+2n)t} \right) dt$$

$$= \frac{A}{j2\pi} \left( \frac{e^{j(1-2n)\pi} - e^0}{j(1-2n)} - \frac{e^{-j(1+2n)\pi} - e^0}{-j(1+2n)} \right)$$

$$= \frac{A}{j2\pi} \left[ \frac{e^{j(1-2n)\pi} - e^0}{j(1-2n)} - \frac{e^{-j(1+2n)\pi} - e^0}{-j(1+2n)} \right]$$

$$\therefore C_n = \frac{2A}{\pi(1-4n^2)}$$

$$C_0 = \frac{1}{T} \int_0^T x(t) dt = \frac{1}{\pi} \int_0^\pi A \sin t dt = \frac{A}{\pi} [-\cos t]_0^\pi = \frac{A}{\pi} [-(\cos \pi - \cos 0)] = \frac{2A}{\pi}$$

The exponential Fourier series is given by

$$x(t) = \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} \frac{2A}{\pi(1-4n^2)} e^{j2nt} = \frac{2A}{\pi} + \frac{2A}{\pi} \sum_{\substack{n=-\infty \\ n \neq 0}}^{\infty} \left( \frac{e^{j2nt}}{1-4n^2} \right)$$

$$\therefore C_0 = \frac{2A}{\pi}$$

$$C_1 = C_{-1} = \frac{2A}{\pi[1-4(1)^2]} = -\frac{2A}{3\pi}$$

$$C_2 = C_{-2} = \frac{2A}{\pi[1-4(2)^2]} = -\frac{2A}{15\pi}$$

$$C_3 = C_{-3} = \frac{2A}{\pi[1-4(3)^2]} = -\frac{2A}{35\pi}$$

The frequency spectrum is shown in Figure 4.19.

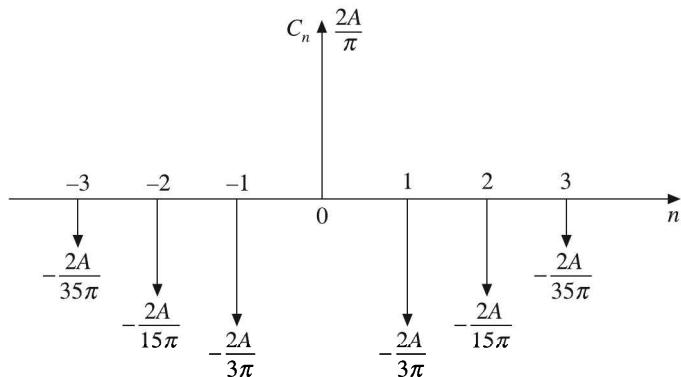


Figure 4.19 Frequency spectrum.

**EXAMPLE 4.13** Find the exponential Fourier series for the rectified sine wave shown in Figure 4.20

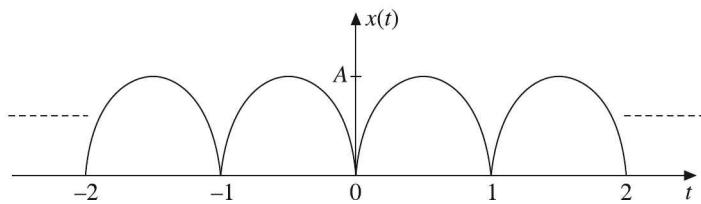


Figure 4.20 Waveform for Example 4.13.

**Solution:** The waveform shown in Figure 4.20 is a part of a sine wave with period = 2.

$$\therefore x(t) = A \sin \omega t \quad 0 \leq t \leq 1, \text{ i.e. } \omega = \frac{2\pi}{2} = \pi$$

Hence

$$x(t) = A \sin \pi t \quad \text{for } 0 \leq t \leq 1$$

The period of the rectified sine wave is  $T = 1$ .

Let

$$t_0 = 0$$

$\therefore$

$$t_0 + T = 1$$

The fundamental frequency of the rectified sine wave is:

$$\omega_0 = \frac{2\pi}{T} = 2\pi$$

The exponential Fourier series is:

$$x(t) = \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} C_n e^{jn\omega_0 t} = \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} C_n e^{j2n\pi t}$$

where

$$\begin{aligned} C_n &= \frac{1}{T} \int_{t_0}^{t_0+T} x(t) e^{-jn\omega_0 t} dt = \frac{1}{1} \int_0^1 A \sin \pi t e^{-j2n\pi t} dt \\ &= \frac{A}{2j} \int_0^1 \left[ e^{j\pi t} e^{-j2n\pi t} - e^{-j\pi t} e^{-j2n\pi t} \right] dt = \frac{A}{2j} \left[ \int_0^1 e^{j\pi(1-2n)t} dt - \int_0^1 e^{-j\pi(1+2n)t} dt \right] \\ &= \frac{A}{2j} \left[ \left( \frac{e^{j\pi(1-2n)t}}{j\pi(1-2n)} \right)_0^1 - \left( \frac{e^{-j\pi(1+2n)t}}{-j\pi(1+2n)} \right)_0^1 \right] \\ &= \frac{2A}{\pi(1-4n^2)} \\ C_0 &= \frac{1}{T} \int_{t_0}^{t_0+T} x(t) dt = \frac{1}{1} \int_0^1 A \sin \pi t dt = A \left[ \frac{-\cos \pi t}{\pi} \right]_0^1 = \frac{2A}{\pi} \end{aligned}$$

The exponential Fourier series is:

$$x(t) = \frac{2A}{\pi} + \sum_{\substack{n=-\infty \\ n \neq 0}}^{\infty} \frac{2A}{\pi(1-4n^2)} e^{j2n\pi t}$$

**EXAMPLE 4.14** Derive the exponential Fourier series from the trigonometric Fourier series for the waveform shown in Figure 4.2 (Example 4.2). Also find the exponential Fourier series directly.

**Solution:** Derivation of exponential series from trigonometric series

In Example 4.2, we got the trigonometric Fourier coefficients as:

$$a_0 = \frac{A}{4}, \quad a_n = -\frac{2A}{n^2\pi^2} \quad (\text{for odd } n) \quad \text{and} \quad b_n = \frac{A}{n\pi}(-1)^{n+1}$$

$$C_0 = a_0 = \frac{A}{4}$$

$$C_n = \frac{1}{2}[a_n - jb_n] = \frac{1}{2}\left[-\frac{2A}{n^2\pi^2} - j\frac{A}{n\pi}(-1)^{n+1}\right]$$

Direct derivation of exponential Fourier series

$$\begin{aligned} x(t) &= C_0 + \sum_{\substack{n=-\infty \\ n \neq 0}}^{\infty} C_n e^{jn\omega_0 t} = C_0 + \sum_{\substack{n=-\infty \\ n \neq 0}}^{\infty} C_n e^{jnt} \\ C_0 &= \frac{1}{T} \int_0^T x(t) dt = \frac{1}{2\pi} \int_0^{2\pi} x(t) dt = \frac{1}{2\pi} \int_0^{\pi} \frac{A}{\pi} t dt = \frac{A}{2\pi^2} \left(\frac{t^2}{2}\right)_0^{\pi} = \frac{A}{4} \\ C_n &= \frac{1}{T} \int_0^T x(t) e^{-jn\omega_0 t} dt = \frac{1}{2\pi} \int_0^{2\pi} x(t) e^{-jnt} dt = \frac{1}{2\pi} \int_0^{\pi} \frac{A}{\pi} t e^{-jnt} dt \\ &= \frac{A}{2\pi^2} \left[ \left( t \frac{e^{-jnt}}{-jn} \right)_0^{\pi} - \int_0^{\pi} \frac{e^{-jnt}}{-jn} dt \right] = \frac{A}{2\pi^2} \left[ \left( \frac{\pi e^{-jn\pi}}{-jn} - 0 \right) + \frac{1}{jn} \left( \frac{e^{-jnt}}{-jn} \right)_0^{\pi} \right] \\ &= \frac{A}{2\pi^2} \left[ -\frac{\pi}{jn} (-1)^n - \frac{1}{(jn)^2} (e^{-jn\pi} - 1) \right] \\ &= \frac{A}{2\pi^2} \left\{ -\frac{\pi}{jn} (-1)^n - \frac{1}{(jn)^2} [(-1)^n - 1] \right\} \\ \therefore x(t) &= \frac{A}{4} + \sum_{\substack{n=-\infty \\ n \neq 0}}^{\infty} \frac{A}{2\pi^2} \left[ -\frac{\pi}{jn} (-1)^n - \frac{1}{(jn)^2} [(-1)^n - 1] \right] e^{-jnt} \end{aligned}$$

**EXAMPLE 4.15** Derive the exponential Fourier series from the trigonometric Fourier series for the waveform shown in Figure 4.3 (Example 4.3). Also determine the exponential series directly.

**Solution:** In Example 4.3, we got the trigonometric Fourier coefficients as:

$$a_0 = \frac{A}{2}, \quad a_n = 0 \quad \text{and} \quad b_n = -\frac{A}{\pi n}$$

Determination of exponential Fourier series from trigonometric Fourier series

$$\begin{aligned}
 C_0 &= a_0 = \frac{A}{2} \\
 C_n &= \frac{1}{2}(a_n - jb_n) = \frac{1}{2} \left[ 0 - j \left( -\frac{A}{\pi n} \right) \right] = j \frac{A}{2\pi n} \\
 C_{-n} &= \frac{1}{2}(a_n + jb_n) = \frac{1}{2} \left[ 0 + j \left( -\frac{A}{\pi n} \right) \right] = -j \frac{A}{2\pi n} \\
 \therefore x(t) &= C_0 + \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} C_n e^{jn\omega_0 t} \\
 &= \frac{A}{2} + \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} \frac{jA}{2\pi n} e^{jnt} \\
 &= \frac{A}{2} + j \frac{A}{2\pi} \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{e^{jnt}}{n}
 \end{aligned}$$

Direct determination of exponential Fourier series

$$\begin{aligned}
 x(t) &= C_0 + \sum_{\substack{n=-\infty \\ n \neq 0}}^{\infty} C_n e^{jn\omega_0 t} = C_0 + \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} C_n e^{jnt} \\
 C_0 &= \frac{1}{T} \int_0^T x(t) dt = \frac{1}{2\pi} \int_0^{2\pi} \left( \frac{A}{2\pi} t \right) dt = \frac{A}{(2\pi)^2} \left( \frac{t^2}{2} \right)_0^{2\pi} = \frac{A}{2} \\
 C_n &= \frac{1}{T} \int_0^T x(t) e^{-jnt} dt = \frac{1}{2\pi} \int_0^{2\pi} \frac{A}{2\pi} t e^{-jnt} dt \\
 &= \frac{A}{(2\pi)^2} \left[ \left( t \frac{e^{-jnt}}{-jn} \right)_0^{2\pi} - \int_0^{2\pi} \frac{e^{-jnt}}{-jn} dt \right] \\
 &= \frac{A}{(2\pi)^2} \left\{ -\frac{1}{jn} \left[ 2\pi e^{-j2n\pi} - 0 + \left( \frac{e^{-jnt}}{jn} \right)_0^{2\pi} \right] \right\} \\
 &= \frac{A}{(2\pi)^2} \left\{ -\frac{1}{jn} \left[ 2\pi(1) + \frac{1}{jn} (e^{-j2n\pi} - e^0) \right] \right\} \\
 &= \frac{A}{(2\pi)^2} \left[ -\frac{1}{jn} 2\pi + \frac{1}{jn} (1 - 1) \right] = j \frac{A}{2\pi n}
 \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}\therefore x(t) &= \frac{A}{2} + \sum_{\substack{n=-\infty \\ n \neq 0}}^{\infty} \frac{jA}{2\pi n} e^{jnt} \\ &= \frac{A}{2} + j \frac{A}{2\pi} \sum_{\substack{n=-\infty \\ n \neq 0}}^{\infty} \frac{e^{jnt}}{n}\end{aligned}$$

is the exponential Fourier series.

**EXAMPLE 4.16** Derive the exponential Fourier series from the trigonometric Fourier series for the waveform shown in Figure 4.8 (Example 4.6). Also determine the exponential series directly.

**Solution:** In Example 4.6, we got the trigonometric Fourier coefficients as:

$$\begin{aligned}a_0 &= 0, \quad a_n = 0 \quad \text{and} \quad b_n = \frac{2A}{n\pi} (-1)^{n+1} \\ \therefore C_0 &= a_0 = 0, \quad C_n = \frac{1}{2} [a_n - jb_n] = \frac{1}{2} \left[ 0 - j \frac{2A}{n\pi} (-1)^{n+1} \right] = -j \frac{A}{n\pi} (-1)^{n+1}\end{aligned}$$

*Exponential Fourier series*

$$\begin{aligned}C_0 &= \frac{1}{T} \int_{t_0}^{t_0+T} x(t) dt = \frac{1}{T} \int_{-T/2}^{T/2} \frac{2A}{T} t dt \\ &= \frac{2A}{T^2} \left( \frac{t^2}{2} \right)_{-T/2}^{T/2} = \frac{2A}{2T^2} \left[ \left( \frac{T}{2} \right)^2 - \left( -\frac{T}{2} \right)^2 \right] = 0 \\ C_n &= \frac{1}{T} \int_0^T x(t) e^{jn\omega_0 t} dt = \frac{1}{T} \int_{-T/2}^{T/2} \frac{2A}{T} t e^{jn\omega_0 t} dt \\ &= \frac{2A}{T^2} \left[ \left( \frac{te^{jn\omega_0 t}}{jn\omega_0} \right)_{-T/2}^{T/2} - \int_{-T/2}^{T/2} \frac{e^{jn\omega_0 t}}{jn\omega_0} dt \right] \\ &= \frac{2A}{T^2} \left\{ \frac{\frac{T}{2} e^{jn\pi} + \frac{T}{2} e^{-jn\pi}}{jn\omega_0} - \left[ \frac{e^{jn\omega_0 t}}{(jn\omega_0)^2} \right]_{-T/2}^{T/2} \right\} \\ &= \frac{2A}{T^2} \left\{ \frac{T[\cos n\pi]}{jn(2\pi/T)} - \frac{e^{jn\pi} - e^{-jn\pi}}{[jn(2\pi/T)]^2} \right\} \\ &= \frac{A}{jn\pi} (-1)^n = j \frac{A}{n\pi} (-1)^{n+1}\end{aligned}$$

The exponential Fourier series is:

$$x(t) = \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} C_n e^{jn\omega_0 t} = \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} j \frac{A}{n\pi} (-1)^{n+1} e^{jn(2\pi/T)t}$$

## 4.9 POWER REPRESENTATION USING THE FOURIER SERIES

If  $I$  is the current flowing through a resistance of  $R$  ohms and  $V$  is the voltage across it, then the power dissipated in the resistor is given by  $I^2R$  and  $V^2/R$ . If the current signal is not constant, then the power varies at every instant, and the expressions for instantaneous power become  $i^2(t)R$  and  $v^2(t)/R$ , where  $i(t)$  and  $v(t)$  are the corresponding instantaneous values. If the resistance  $R$  is equal to 1 ohm, then the instantaneous power can be represented as  $i^2(t)$  and  $v^2(t)$ . Therefore, the instantaneous power of a signal  $x(t)$  can be represented by  $x^2(t)$ . The mean (average) power over a given time interval (period) is given by

$$\text{Mean power} = \frac{1}{T} \int_0^T x^2(t) dt$$

Using Parseval's theorem, we have

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{1}{T} \int_0^T |x(t)|^2 dt &= \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} |C_n|^2 = C_0^2 + \sum_{\substack{n=-\infty \\ n \neq 0}}^{\infty} C_n^2 \\ &= C_0^2 + \sum_{\substack{n=-\infty \\ n \neq 0}}^{\infty} C_n C_n^* = a_0^2 + \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} 2 [\operatorname{Re}(C_n^2) + \operatorname{Im}(C_n^2)] \\ &= a_0^2 + \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{a_n^2}{2} + \frac{b_n^2}{2} \end{aligned}$$

or Mean power over a period of time

$$\begin{aligned} &= (\text{dc term})^2 + \text{Sum of mean square values of cosine terms} \\ &\quad + \text{Sum of mean square values of sine terms} \end{aligned}$$

**EXAMPLE 4.17** Find the average power of the signal.

$$x(t) = \cos^2(5000\pi t) \sin(20000\pi t)$$

If this signal is transmitted through a telephone system which blocks dc and frequencies above 14 kHz, then compute the ratio of received power to transmitted power.

**Solution:**

$\cos^2 \theta = \frac{1 + \cos 2\theta}{2}$
$\sin A \cos B = \left[ \frac{\sin(A+B) + \sin(A-B)}{2} \right]$

Given  $x(t) = \cos^2(5000\pi t) \sin(20000\pi t)$

$$\begin{aligned} &= \frac{(1 + \cos 10000\pi t)}{2} \sin(20000\pi t) \\ &= \frac{1}{2} \sin(20000\pi t) + \frac{1}{2} \sin(20000\pi t) \cos(10000\pi t) \\ &= \frac{1}{2} \sin(20000\pi t) + \frac{1}{4} \sin(30000\pi t) + \frac{1}{4} \sin(10000\pi t) \end{aligned}$$

$$\text{Then average transmitted power } P_t = \frac{(1/2)^2}{2} + \frac{(1/4)^2}{2} + \frac{(1/4)^2}{2} = \frac{1}{8} + \frac{1}{32} + \frac{1}{32} = \frac{3}{16} \text{ W}$$

When this signal is transmitted through a telephone system, it blocks the components  $(1/4) \sin(30000\pi t)$ , as its frequency is greater than 14 kHz [i.e.  $\omega = 28000\pi$ ]. Therefore, the signal at the receiver end is:

$$y(t) = \frac{1}{2} \sin(20000\pi t) + \frac{1}{4} \sin(10000\pi t)$$

The average received power is given by

$$P_r = \frac{(1/2)^2}{2} + \frac{(1/4)^2}{2} = \frac{1}{8} + \frac{1}{32} = \frac{5}{32} \text{ W}$$

$$\text{Ratio of received power to transmitted power} = \frac{P_r}{P_t} = \frac{5/32}{3/16} = \frac{5}{6}$$

## 4.10 GIBBS PHENOMENON

Gibbs discovered that for a periodic signal with discontinuities, if the signal is reconstructed by adding the Fourier series, overshoots appear around the edges. These overshoots decay outwards in a damped oscillatory manner away from the edges. This is called Gibbs phenomenon and is illustrated in Figure 4.21.

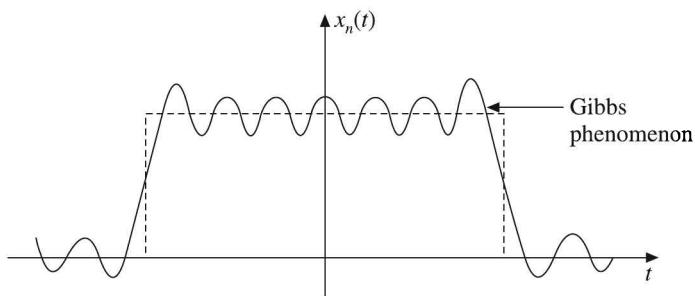


Figure 4.21 Illustration of Gibbs phenomenon.

The overshoots at the discontinuity according to Gibbs are found to be around 9 per cent of the height of discontinuity irrespective of the number of terms in the Fourier series. It

has also been observed that as more number of terms in the series are added, the frequency increases, overshoots get sharper, but the adjoining oscillation amplitude reduces. That is, the error between the original signal  $x(t)$  and the truncated signal  $x_n(t)$  reduces except at the edges as  $n$  increases. Thus, the truncated Fourier series approaches  $x(t)$  as the number of terms in the approximation increases.

## 4.11 PROPERTIES OF CONTINUOUS-TIME FOURIER SERIES

The Fourier series representation possesses a number of important properties that are useful for various purposes during the transformation of signals from one form to the other. Some of the properties are listed below.

[ $x_1(t)$  and  $x_2(t)$ ] are two periodic signals with period  $T$  and with Fourier series coefficients  $C_n$  and  $D_n$  respectively].

### 4.11.1 Linearity Property

The linearity property states that, if

$$x_1(t) \xrightarrow{\text{FS}} C_n \quad \text{and} \quad x_2(t) \xrightarrow{\text{FS}} D_n$$

then

$$Ax_1(t) + Bx_2(t) \xrightarrow{\text{FS}} AC_n + BD_n$$

*Proof:* From the definition of Fourier series, we have

$$\begin{aligned} \text{FS}[Ax_1(t) + Bx_2(t)] &= \frac{1}{T} \int_{t_0}^{t_0+T} [Ax_1(t) + Bx_2(t)] e^{-j\omega_0 t} dt \\ &= A \left( \frac{1}{T} \int_{t_0}^{t_0+T} x_1(t) e^{-j\omega_0 t} dt \right) + B \left( \frac{1}{T} \int_{t_0}^{t_0+T} x_2(t) e^{-j\omega_0 t} dt \right) \\ &= AC_n + BD_n \end{aligned}$$

or

$$\boxed{Ax_1(t) + Bx_2(t) \xrightarrow{\text{FS}} AC_n + BD_n} \text{ proved.}$$

### 4.11.2 Time Shifting Property

The time shifting property states that, if

$$x(t) \xrightarrow{\text{FS}} C_n$$

then

$$x(t - t_0) \xrightarrow{\text{FS}} e^{-j\omega_0 t_0} C_n$$

*Proof:* From the definition of Fourier series, we have

$$\begin{aligned}
 x(t) &= \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} C_n e^{jn\omega_0 t} \\
 \therefore [x(t - t_0)] &= \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} C_n e^{jn\omega_0(t-t_0)} \\
 &= \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} \left[ C_n e^{-jn\omega_0 t_0} \right] e^{jn\omega_0 t} \\
 &= \text{FS}^{-1} \left[ C_n e^{-jn\omega_0 t_0} \right] \\
 \therefore \boxed{x(t - t_0) \xrightarrow{\text{FS}} C_n e^{-jn\omega_0 t_0}} \quad &\text{proved.}
 \end{aligned}$$

### 4.11.3 Time Reversal Property

The time reversal property states that, if

$$\begin{aligned}
 x(t) &\xrightarrow{\text{FS}} C_n \\
 \text{then } x(-t) &\xrightarrow{\text{FS}} C_{-n}
 \end{aligned}$$

*Proof:* From the definition of Fourier series, we have

$$\begin{aligned}
 x(t) &= \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} C_n e^{jn\omega_0 t} \\
 \therefore x(-t) &= \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} C_n e^{jn\omega_0(-t)}
 \end{aligned}$$

Substituting  $n = -p$  in the right hand side, we get

$$x(-t) = \sum_{p=\infty}^{-\infty} C_{-p} e^{j(-p)\omega_0(-t)} = \sum_{p=-\infty}^{\infty} C_{-p} e^{jp\omega_0 t}$$

Substituting  $p = n$ , we get

$$\begin{aligned}
 x(-t) &= \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} C_{-n} e^{jn\omega_0 t} = \text{FS}^{-1}[C_{-n}] \\
 \therefore \boxed{x(-t) \xrightarrow{\text{FS}} C_{-n}} \quad &\text{proved.}
 \end{aligned}$$

#### 4.11.4 Time Scaling Property

The time scaling property states that, if

$$x(t) \xleftrightarrow{\text{FS}} C_n$$

then

$$x(\alpha t) \xleftrightarrow{\text{FS}} C_n \text{ with } \omega_0 \rightarrow \alpha\omega_0$$

*Proof:* From the definition of Fourier series, we have

$$x(t) = \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} C_n e^{jn\omega_0 t}$$

$$\therefore x(\alpha t) = \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} C_n e^{jn\omega_0 \alpha t} = \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} C_n e^{jn(\alpha\omega_0)t} = \text{FS}^{-1}[C_n]$$

where  $\omega_0 \rightarrow \alpha\omega_0$ .

$$\therefore \boxed{x(\alpha t) \xleftrightarrow{\text{FS}} C_n \text{ with fundamental frequency of } \alpha\omega_0} \text{ proved.}$$

#### 4.11.5 Time Differentiation Property

The time differentiation property states that, if

$$x(t) \xleftrightarrow{\text{FS}} C_n$$

then

$$\frac{dx(t)}{dt} \xleftrightarrow{\text{FS}} jn\omega_0 C_n$$

*Proof:* From the definition of Fourier series, we have

$$x(t) = \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} C_n e^{jn\omega_0 t}$$

Differentiating both sides with respect to  $t$ , we get

$$\frac{dx(t)}{dt} = \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} C_n \frac{d(e^{jn\omega_0 t})}{dt} = \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} C_n (jn\omega_0) e^{jn\omega_0 t}$$

$$= \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} (jn\omega_0 C_n) e^{jn\omega_0 t} = \text{FS}^{-1}[jn\omega_0 C_n]$$

$$\therefore \boxed{\frac{dx(t)}{dt} \xleftrightarrow{\text{FS}} jn\omega_0 C_n} \text{ proved.}$$

#### 4.11.6 Time Integration Property

The time integration property states that, if

$$x(t) \xleftrightarrow{\text{FS}} C_n$$

then  $\int_{-\infty}^t x(\tau) d\tau \xrightarrow{\text{FS}} \frac{C_n}{jn\omega_0}$  (if  $C_0 = 0$ )

*Proof:* From the definition of Fourier series, we have

$$\begin{aligned} x(t) &= \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} C_n e^{j n \omega_0 t} \\ \therefore \int_{-\infty}^t x(\tau) d\tau &= \int_{-\infty}^t \left[ \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} C_n e^{j n \omega_0 \tau} \right] d\tau \end{aligned}$$

Interchanging the order of integration and summation, we get

$$\begin{aligned} \int_{-\infty}^t x(\tau) d\tau &= \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} C_n \int_{-\infty}^t e^{j n \omega_0 \tau} d\tau \\ &= \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} C_n \left( \frac{e^{j n \omega_0 \tau}}{jn\omega_0} \right) \Big|_{-\infty}^t \\ &= \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} \left( \frac{C_n}{jn\omega_0} \right) e^{j n \omega_0 t} = \text{FS}^{-1} \left( \frac{C_n}{jn\omega_0} \right) \\ \therefore \boxed{\int_{-\infty}^t x(\tau) d\tau \xrightarrow{\text{FS}} \frac{C_n}{jn\omega_0}, \quad C_0 = 0} &\text{ proved.} \end{aligned}$$

#### 4.11.7 Convolution Theorem or Property

The convolution theorem or property states that, “The Fourier series of the convolution of two time domain functions  $x_1(t)$  and  $x_2(t)$  is equal to the multiplication of their Fourier series coefficients,” i.e. “Convolution of two functions in time domain is equivalent to multiplication of their Fourier coefficients in frequency domain.”

The convolution property states that, if

$$x_1(t) \xrightarrow{\text{FS}} C_n \quad \text{and} \quad x_2(t) \xrightarrow{\text{FS}} D_n$$

then

$$x_1(t) * x_2(t) \xrightarrow{\text{FS}} T C_n D_n$$

*Proof:* From the definition of Fourier series, we have

$$\text{FS}[x_1(t) * x_2(t)] = \frac{1}{T} \int_{t_0}^{t_0+T} [x_1(t) * x_2(t)] e^{-jn\omega_0 t} dt = \frac{1}{T} \int_0^T [x_1(t) * x_2(t)] e^{-jn\omega_0 t} dt$$

But from the convolution integral for a periodic signal, we have

$$x_1(t) * x_2(t) = \int_0^T x_1(\tau) x_2(t - \tau) d\tau \quad \text{or} \quad x_1(t) * x_2(t) = \int_0^T x_1(t - \tau) x_2(\tau) d\tau$$

Substituting back, we get

$$\text{FS}[x_1(t) * x_2(t)] = \frac{1}{T} \int_0^T \left( \int_0^T x_1(\tau) x_2(t-\tau) d\tau \right) e^{-jn\omega_0 t} dt$$

Interchanging the order of integration, we get

$$\text{FS}[x_1(t) * x_2(t)] = \frac{1}{T} \int_0^T x_1(\tau) \left[ \int_0^T x_2(t-\tau) e^{-jn\omega_0 t} dt \right] d\tau$$

Substituting  $t - \tau = t'$  in RHS, we have  $dt = dt'$ . Substituting back, we get

$$\begin{aligned} \text{FS}[x_1(t) * x_2(t)] &= \frac{1}{T} \int_0^T x_1(\tau) \left[ \int_{-\tau}^{T-\tau} x_2(t') e^{-jn\omega_0(t'+\tau)} dt' \right] d\tau \\ &= T \left( \frac{1}{T} \int_0^T x_1(\tau) e^{-jn\omega_0 \tau} d\tau \right) \left( \frac{1}{T} \int_{-\tau}^{T-\tau} x_2(t') e^{-jn\omega_0 t'} dt' \right) \\ &= T(C_n)(D_n) \end{aligned}$$

0 to  $T$  or  $-\tau$  to  $T - \tau$  or  $t_0$  to  $t_0 + T$  will have the same period.

$$\therefore \boxed{x_1(t) * x_2(t) \xrightarrow{\text{FS}} T C_n D_n} \text{ proved.}$$

#### 4.11.8 Modulation or Multiplication Property

The modulation or multiplication property states that, if

$$x_1(t) \xrightarrow{\text{FS}} C_n \text{ and } x_2(t) \xrightarrow{\text{FS}} D_n$$

then

$$x_1(t) x_2(t) \xrightarrow{\text{FS}} \sum_{l=-\infty}^{\infty} C_l D_{n-l}$$

*Proof:* From the definition of Fourier series, we have

$$\begin{aligned} \text{FS}[x_1(t) x_2(t)] &= \frac{1}{T} \int_{t_0}^{t_0+T} [x_1(t) x_2(t)] e^{-jn\omega_0 t} dt \\ &= \frac{1}{T} \int_{t_0}^{t_0+T} x_1(t) \left( \sum_{l=-\infty}^{\infty} C_l e^{jl\omega_0 t} \right) e^{-jn\omega_0 t} dt \\ &= \frac{1}{T} \int_{t_0}^{t_0+T} x_1(t) \left( \sum_{l=-\infty}^{\infty} C_l e^{-j(n-l)\omega_0 t} dt \right) \end{aligned}$$

Interchanging the order of integration and summation, we have

$$\begin{aligned} \text{FS}[x_1(t)x_2(t)] &= \sum_{l=-\infty}^{\infty} C_l \left( \frac{1}{T} \int_{t_0}^{t_0+T} x_1(t) e^{-j(n-l)\omega_0 t} dt \right) = \sum_{l=-\infty}^{\infty} C_l D_{n-l} \\ \therefore \boxed{x_1(t) x_2(t) \xrightarrow{\text{FS}} \sum_{l=-\infty}^{\infty} C_l D_{n-l}} \quad &\text{proved.} \end{aligned}$$

#### 4.11.9 Conjugation and Conjugate Symmetry Property

If

$$x(t) \xleftrightarrow{\text{FS}} C_n$$

then the conjugation property states that

$$x^*(t) \xleftrightarrow{\text{FS}} C_{-n}^* \quad [\text{for complex } x(t)]$$

and the conjugate symmetry property states that

$$C_{-n} = C_n^* \quad [\text{for real } x(t)]$$

*Proof: Conjugation property*

From the definition of Fourier series, we have

$$\begin{aligned} \text{FS}[x^*(t)] &= \frac{1}{T} \int_{t_0}^{t_0+T} x^*(t) e^{-jn\omega_0 t} dt = \left( \frac{1}{T} \int_{t_0}^{t_0+T} x(t) e^{jn\omega_0 t} dt \right)^* \\ &= \left( \frac{1}{T} \int_{t_0}^{t_0+T} x(t) e^{-j(-n)\omega_0 t} dt \right)^* = [C_{-n}]^* \end{aligned}$$

$$\therefore \boxed{x^*(t) \xleftrightarrow{\text{FS}} C_{-n}^*} \quad \text{proved.}$$

#### 4.11.10 Parseval's Relation or Theorem or Property

If

$$x_1(t) \xleftrightarrow{\text{FS}} C_n \quad [\text{for complex } x_1(t)]$$

and

$$x_2(t) \xleftrightarrow{\text{FS}} D_n \quad [\text{for complex } x_2(t)]$$

then, the Parseval's relation states that

$$\frac{1}{T} \int_{t_0}^{t_0+T} x_1(t) x_2^*(t) dt = \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} C_n D_n^* \quad [\text{for complex } x_1(t) \text{ and } x_2(t)]$$

and Parseval's identity states that

$$\frac{1}{T} \int_{t_0}^{t_0+T} |x(t)|^2 dt = \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} |C_n|^2 \quad \text{if } x_1(t) = x_2(t) = x(t)$$

*Proof:* Parseval's relation

$$\text{LHS} = \frac{1}{T} \int_{t_0}^{t_0+T} x_1(t) x_2^*(t) dt = \frac{1}{T} \int_{t_0}^{t_0+T} \left( \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} C_n e^{jn\omega_0 t} \right) x_2^*(t) dt$$

Interchanging the order of integration and summation in the RHS, we have

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{1}{T} \int_{t_0}^{t_0+T} x_1(t) x_2^*(t) dt &= \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} C_n \left[ \frac{1}{T} \int_{t_0}^{t_0+T} x_2^*(t) e^{jn\omega_0 t} dt \right] \\ &= \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} C_n \left[ \frac{1}{T} \int_{t_0}^{t_0+T} x_2(t) e^{-jn\omega_0 t} dt \right]^* = \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} C_n [D_n]^* \\ \therefore \boxed{\frac{1}{T} \int_{t_0}^{t_0+T} x_1(t) x_2^*(t) dt = \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} C_n D_n^*} \text{ proved.} \end{aligned}$$

*Parseval's identity*

If  $x_1(t) = x_2(t) = x(t)$ , then the relation changes to

$$\frac{1}{T} \int_{t_0}^{t_0+T} x(t) x^*(t) dt = \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} C_n C_n^*$$

Since  $|x(t)|^2 = x(t) x^*(t)$  and  $|C_n|^2 = C_n C_n^*$ , substituting these values in above equation, we get

$$\boxed{\frac{1}{T} \int_{t_0}^{t_0+T} |x(t)|^2 dt = \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} |C_n|^2} \text{ proved.}$$

The summary of the properties of continuous-time Fourier series is given in Appendix B (Table B.1).

**EXAMPLE 4.18** Show that the magnitude spectrum of every periodic function is symmetrical about the vertical axis passing through the origin and the phase spectrum is antisymmetrical about the vertical axis passing through the origin.

**Solution:** The coefficient  $C_n$  of exponential Fourier series is given by

$$C_n = \frac{1}{T} \int_{-T/2}^{T/2} x(t) e^{-jn\omega_0 t} dt$$

and

$$C_{-n} = \frac{1}{T} \int_{-T/2}^{T/2} x(t) e^{jn\omega_0 t} dt$$

It is evident from these equations that the coefficients  $C_n$  and  $C_{-n}$  are complex conjugate of each other, that is

$$C_n = C_{-n}^*$$

Hence

$$|C_n| = |C_{-n}|$$

It, therefore, follows that the magnitude spectrum is symmetrical about the vertical axis passing through the origin, and hence is an even function of  $\omega$ .

If  $C_n$  is real, then  $C_{-n}$  is also real and  $C_n$  is equal to  $C_{-n}$ . If  $C_n$  is complex, let

$$C_n = |C_n| e^{j\theta_n}$$

then

$$C_{-n} = |C_n| e^{-j\theta_n}$$

The phase of  $C_n$  is  $\theta_n$ ; however, the phase of  $C_{-n}$  is  $-\theta_n$ . Hence, it is obvious that the phase spectrum is antisymmetrical (an odd function), and the magnitude spectrum is symmetrical (an even function) about the vertical axis passing through the origin.

**EXAMPLE 4.19** With regard to Fourier series representation, justify the following statements:

- (a) Odd functions have only sine terms.
- (b) Even functions have no sine terms.
- (c) Functions with half wave symmetry have only odd harmonics.

**Solution:** We know that the trigonometric Fourier series of a periodic function  $x(t)$  in any interval  $t_0$  to  $t_0 + T$  or 0 to  $T$  or  $-T/2$  to  $T/2$  is given by

$$x(t) = a_0 + \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} (a_n \cos n\omega_0 t + b_n \sin n\omega_0 t)$$

where

$$a_0 = \frac{1}{T} \int_{-T/2}^{T/2} x(t) dt$$

$$a_n = \frac{2}{T} \int_{-T/2}^{T/2} x(t) \cos n\omega_0 t dt$$

and

$$b_n = \frac{2}{T} \int_{-T/2}^{T/2} x(t) \sin n\omega_0 t dt$$

- (a) For an odd function

$$x(t) = -x(-t)$$

Also even part is zero, i.e.  $x_e(t) = 0$  and  $x(t) = x_o(t)$

$$\therefore a_0 = \frac{1}{T} \int_{-T/2}^{T/2} x(t) dt = \frac{1}{T} \int_{-T/2}^{T/2} x_o(t) dt = 0$$

since the integration of an odd function (antisymmetrical about the origin), over one cycle is always zero.

$$a_n = \frac{2}{T} \int_{-T/2}^{T/2} x(t) \cos n\omega_0 t dt = \frac{2}{T} \int_{-T/2}^{T/2} x_o(t) \cos n\omega_0 t dt$$

Here  $x_o(t)$  is odd and  $\cos n\omega_0 t$  is even. So  $x_o(t) \cos n\omega_0 t$ , i.e. the product of an odd function and even function is odd. So integration over one cycle is zero. Therefore,

$$a_n = 0$$

$$\text{Now, } b_n = \frac{2}{T} \int_{-T/2}^{T/2} x(t) \sin n\omega_0 t dt = \frac{2}{T} \int_{-T/2}^{T/2} x_o(t) \sin n\omega_0 t dt$$

Now,  $x_o(t)$  is odd and  $\sin n\omega_0 t$  is also odd. Therefore, the product  $x_o(t) \sin n\omega_0 t$  is even. So we have to evaluate the integral:

$$\begin{aligned} b_n &= \frac{2}{T} \int_{-T/2}^{T/2} x(t) \sin n\omega_0 t dt = \frac{4}{T} \int_0^{T/2} x(t) \sin n\omega_0 t dt \\ \therefore x(t) &= \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} b_n \sin n\omega_0 t \end{aligned}$$

Thus, the Fourier series of odd functions contains only sine terms.

(b) For an even function,

$$x(t) = x(-t)$$

Also odd part is zero, i.e.  $x(t) = x_e(t)$

$$\therefore a_0 = \frac{1}{T} \int_{-T/2}^{T/2} x(t) dt = \frac{1}{T} \int_{-T/2}^{T/2} x_e(t) dt = \frac{2}{T} \int_0^{T/2} x(t) dt$$

$$a_n = \frac{2}{T} \int_{-T/2}^{T/2} x(t) \cos n\omega_0 t dt = \frac{2}{T} \int_{-T/2}^{T/2} x_e(t) \cos n\omega_0 t dt$$

$x_e(t)$  is even and also  $\cos n\omega_0 t$  is even. So  $x_e(t) \cos n\omega_0 t$  i.e. the product of two even functions is even, and we have to evaluate the integral:

$$a_n = \frac{2}{T} \int_{-T/2}^{T/2} x_e(t) \cos n\omega_0 t dt = \frac{4}{T} \int_0^{T/2} x(t) \cos n\omega_0 t dt$$

$$b_n = \frac{2}{T} \int_{-T/2}^{T/2} x(t) \sin n\omega_0 t dt = \frac{2}{T} \int_{-T/2}^{T/2} x_e(t) \sin n\omega_0 t dt$$

Here  $x_e(t)$  is even and  $\sin n\omega_0 t$  is odd. So the product  $x_e(t) \sin n\omega_0 t$  is odd. Thus, the integral over one complete cycle is zero.

$$\therefore b_n = 0$$

$$x(t) = a_0 + \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} a_n \cos n\omega_0 t$$

Thus, the Fourier series of even function contains no sine terms.

(c) For a half wave symmetric function,

$$x(t) = -x\left(t \pm \frac{T}{2}\right)$$

$$\text{Therefore, } a_0 = 0$$

$$\begin{aligned} a_n &= \frac{2}{T} \int_0^T x(t) \cos n\omega_0 t dt \\ &= \frac{2}{T} \left[ \int_0^{T/2} x(t) \cos n\omega_0 t dt + \int_{T/2}^T x(t) \cos n\omega_0 t dt \right] \end{aligned}$$

To have the limits of second integration also from 0 to  $T/2$ , change the variable  $t$  by  $t + (T/2)$  in the second integration.

$$\therefore a_n = \frac{2}{T} \left[ \int_0^{T/2} x(t) \cos n\omega_0 t dt + \int_0^{T/2} x\left(t + \frac{T}{2}\right) \cos n\omega_0 \left(t + \frac{T}{2}\right) dt \right]$$

$$\text{But } x(t) = -x\left(t \pm \frac{T}{2}\right)$$

$$\begin{aligned} \therefore a_n &= \frac{2}{T} \left[ \int_0^{T/2} x(t) \cos n\omega_0 t dt + \int_0^{T/2} -x(t) \cos(n\omega_0 t + n\pi) dt \right] \\ &= \frac{2}{T} \left[ \int_0^{T/2} x(t) \cos n\omega_0 t dt - x(t) \cos n\omega_0 t \cos n\pi \right] dt \end{aligned}$$

$$\therefore a_n = \begin{cases} 0 & \text{for even } n \\ \frac{4}{T} \int_0^{T/2} x(t) \cos n\omega_0 t dt & \text{for odd } n \end{cases}$$

$$\text{Now, } b_n = \frac{2}{T} \int_0^T x(t) \sin n\omega_0 t dt$$

$$= \frac{2}{T} \left[ \int_0^{T/2} x(t) \sin n\omega_0 t dt + \int_{T/2}^T x(t) \sin n\omega_0 t dt \right]$$

To have the limits of second integration also from 0 to  $T/2$  change the variable  $t$  by  $t + (T/2)$  in the second integration.

$$\therefore b_n = \frac{2}{T} \left[ \int_0^{T/2} x(t) \sin n\omega_0 t dt + \int_0^{T/2} x\left(t + \frac{T}{2}\right) \sin n\omega_0 \left(t + \frac{T}{2}\right) dt \right]$$

But  $x(t) = -x\left(t \pm \frac{T}{2}\right)$

$$\therefore b_n = \frac{2}{T} \left[ \int_0^{T/2} x(t) \sin n\omega_0 t dt + \int_0^{T/2} -x(t) \sin (n\omega_0 t + n\pi) dt \right]$$

$$= \frac{2}{T} \left[ \int_0^{T/2} x(t) \sin n\omega_0 t dt - \int_0^{T/2} x(t) \sin n\omega_0 t \cos n\pi dt \right]$$

$$\therefore b_n = \begin{cases} 0 & \text{for } n = \text{even} \\ \frac{4}{T} \int_0^{T/2} x(t) \sin n\omega_0 t dt & \text{for } n = \text{odd} \end{cases}$$

Thus, the Fourier series of half wave symmetric function consists of only odd harmonics.

**EXAMPLE 4.20** Find the trigonometric Fourier series and the complex exponential Fourier series for the waveform shown in Figure 4.22.

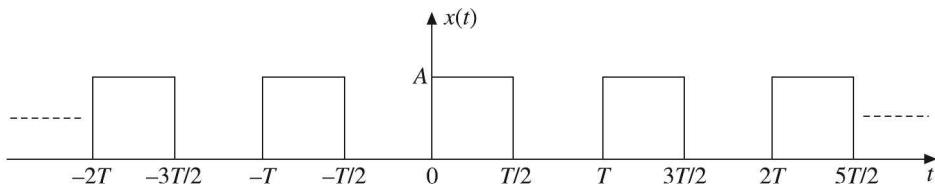


Figure 4.22 Waveform for Example 4.20.

**Solution:** The waveform shown in Figure 4.22 is periodic with period  $= T$  and can be expressed as:

$$\begin{aligned} x(t) &= A && \text{for } 0 \leq t \leq \frac{T}{2} \\ &= 0 && \text{for } \frac{T}{2} \leq t \leq T \end{aligned}$$

Fundamental frequency  $\omega_0 = (2\pi/T)$

*Trigonometric Fourier series:*

$$a_0 = \frac{1}{T} \int_0^T x(t) dt = \frac{1}{T} \int_0^{T/2} A dt = \frac{A}{T} [t]_0^{T/2} = \frac{A}{T} \left( \frac{T}{2} - 0 \right) = \frac{A}{2}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
 a_n &= \frac{2}{T} \int_0^T x(t) \cos n\omega_0 t dt = \frac{2}{T} \int_0^{T/2} A \cos n \frac{2\pi}{T} t dt \\
 &= \frac{2A}{T} \left( \frac{\sin n(2\pi/T)t}{2n(\pi/T)} \right)_0^{T/2} = \frac{A}{n\pi} [\sin n\pi - \sin 0] = 0 \\
 b_n &= \frac{2}{T} \int_0^T x(t) \sin n\omega_0 t dt = \frac{2}{T} \int_0^{T/2} A \sin \frac{n2\pi t}{T} dt \\
 &= \frac{2A}{T} \left( \frac{-\cos n(2\pi/T)t}{2n(\pi/T)} \right)_0^{T/2} = \frac{A}{n\pi} [-(\cos n\pi - \cos 0)] \\
 &= -\frac{A}{n\pi} [(-1)^n - 1] \\
 \therefore b_n &= \begin{cases} 2A/n\pi & \text{for odd } n \\ 0 & \text{for even } n \end{cases}
 \end{aligned}$$

The trigonometric Fourier series is:

$$\begin{aligned}
 x(t) &= a_0 + \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} a_n \cos n \frac{2\pi}{T} t + b_n \sin n \frac{2\pi}{T} t \\
 &= \frac{A}{2} + \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{2A}{n\pi} \sin \frac{n2\pi}{T} t \quad \text{for odd } n
 \end{aligned}$$

*Exponential Fourier series*

$$\begin{aligned}
 C_0 &= \frac{1}{T} \int_0^T x(t) dt = \frac{1}{T} \int_0^{T/2} A dt = \frac{A}{T} [t]_0^{T/2} = \frac{A}{T} \left( \frac{T}{2} - 0 \right) = \frac{A}{2} \\
 C_n &= \frac{1}{T} \int_0^T x(t) e^{-jn\omega_0 t} dt = \frac{1}{T} \int_0^{T/2} A e^{-jn(2\pi/T)t} dt \\
 &= \frac{A}{T} \left( \frac{e^{-jn(2\pi/T)t}}{-jn(2\pi/T)} \right)_0^{T/2} = -\frac{A}{jn2\pi} [e^{-jn\pi} - 1] \\
 &= \frac{A}{jn2\pi} [1 - e^{-jn\pi}] = \frac{A}{jn2\pi} [1 - (-1)^n] \\
 \therefore C_n &= \begin{cases} 0 & \text{for even } n \\ A/jn\pi & \text{for odd } n \end{cases} \\
 \therefore x(t) &= \frac{A}{2} + \sum_{n=\text{odd}}^{\infty} \left( \frac{A}{jn\pi} \right) e^{-j2n\pi/T}
 \end{aligned}$$

**EXAMPLE 4.21** Find the trigonometric and exponential Fourier series for the waveform shown in Figure 4.23.

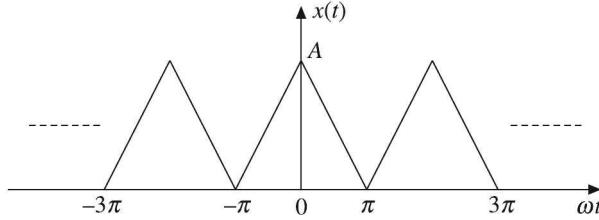


Figure 4.23 Waveform for Example 4.21.

**Solution:** The waveform shown in Figure 4.23 is periodic with period  $T = 2\pi$ , and it can be expressed as:

$$\begin{aligned} x(t) &= \frac{A}{\pi}(\omega t + \pi) \quad \text{for } -\pi \leq \omega t \leq 0 \\ &= -\frac{A}{\pi}(\omega t - \pi) \quad \text{for } 0 \leq \omega t \leq \pi \end{aligned}$$

Let  $t_0 = -\pi$ , then

$$t_0 + T = \pi$$

Fundamental frequency  $\omega_0 = \frac{2\pi}{T} = \frac{2\pi}{2\pi} = 1$

#### Trigonometric Fourier series

The independent variable is not  $t$ . It is  $\omega t$ . The given waveform has even symmetry because

$$x(\omega t) = x(-\omega t)$$

$$\therefore b_n = 0$$

$$a_0 = \frac{2}{T} \int_0^{T/2} x(t) d\omega t \quad \text{and} \quad a_n = \frac{4}{T} \int_0^{T/2} x(t) \cos n\omega_0 \omega t d\omega t$$

$$\text{Now, } a_0 = \frac{2}{T} \int_0^{T/2} x(t) d\omega t = \frac{2}{2\pi} \int_{-\pi}^0 \frac{A}{\pi}(\omega t + \pi) d\omega t = \frac{A}{\pi} \int_{-\pi}^0 \left( \frac{1}{\pi} \omega t + 1 \right) d\omega t$$

$$= \frac{A}{\pi} \left\{ \frac{1}{\pi} \left[ \frac{(\omega t)^2}{2} \right] \Big|_{-\pi}^0 + [\omega t] \Big|_{-\pi}^0 \right\} = \frac{A}{\pi} \left[ \frac{1}{\pi} \left( 0 - \frac{\pi^2}{2} \right) + (\pi) \right] = \frac{A}{2}$$

$$a_n = \frac{4}{T} \int_0^{T/2} x(t) \cos n\omega_0 \omega t d\omega t = \frac{4}{T} \int_0^{T/2} x(t) \cos n\omega t d\omega t$$

$$= \frac{4}{2\pi} \int_{-\pi}^0 \frac{A}{\pi}(\omega t + \pi) \cos n\omega t d\omega t = \frac{2A}{\pi} \int_{-\pi}^0 \left( \frac{1}{\pi} \omega t \cos n\omega t + \cos n\omega t \right) d\omega t$$

$$\begin{aligned}
 &= \frac{2A}{\pi} \left\{ \frac{1}{\pi} \left[ \left( \omega t \frac{\sin n\omega t}{n} \right)_{-\pi}^0 - \int_{-\pi}^0 \frac{\sin n\omega t}{n} d\omega t \right] + \left( \frac{\sin n\omega t}{n} \right)_{-\pi}^0 \right\} \\
 &= \frac{2A}{\pi} \left[ \frac{1}{\pi} \left( \frac{\cos n\omega t}{n^2} \right)_{-\pi}^0 \right] = \frac{2A}{\pi^2 n^2} [\cos 0 - \cos n\pi] = \frac{2A}{\pi^2 n^2} [1 - (-1)^n] \\
 \therefore a_n &= \begin{cases} \frac{4A}{\pi^2 n^2} & \text{for odd } n \\ 0 & \text{for even } n \end{cases}
 \end{aligned}$$

The trigonometric Fourier series is:

$$x(t) = \frac{A}{2} + \sum_{n=\text{odd}}^{\infty} \frac{4A}{\pi^2 n^2} \cos n\omega_0 \omega t = \frac{A}{2} + \sum_{n=\text{odd}}^{\infty} \frac{4A}{\pi^2 n^2} \cos n\omega t$$

*Exponential Fourier series*

$$\begin{aligned}
 C_0 &= \frac{1}{T} \int_0^T x(t) dt = \frac{1}{2\pi} \left( \int_{-\pi}^0 \frac{A}{\pi} (\omega t + \pi) d\omega t + \int_0^\pi -\frac{A}{\pi} (\omega t - \pi) d\omega t \right) \\
 &= \frac{A}{2\pi} \left[ \int_{-\pi}^0 \left( \frac{1}{\pi} (\omega t) d\omega t + d\omega t \right) + \int_0^\pi \left( -\frac{1}{\pi} (\omega t) d\omega t + d\omega t \right) \right] \\
 &= \frac{A}{2\pi} \left[ \left\{ \frac{1}{\pi} \left[ \frac{(\omega t)^2}{2} \right]_{-\pi}^0 + [\omega t]_{-\pi}^0 \right\} + \left\{ -\frac{1}{\pi} \left[ \frac{(\omega t)^2}{2} \right]_0^\pi + [\omega t]_0^\pi \right\} \right] \\
 &= \frac{A}{2\pi} \left[ \left\{ \frac{1}{\pi} \left( \frac{0 - \pi^2}{2} \right) + \pi \right\} + \left\{ -\frac{1}{\pi} \left( \frac{\pi^2 - 0}{2} \right) + \pi \right\} \right] = \frac{A}{2}
 \end{aligned}$$

By inspection also we can say that the average value of the waveform over one cycle is:

$$\begin{aligned}
 a_0 &= C_0 = \frac{A}{2} \\
 C_n &= \frac{1}{T} \int_0^T x(t) e^{-jn\omega_0 \omega t} d\omega t \\
 &= \frac{1}{2\pi} \left( \int_{-\pi}^0 \frac{A}{\pi} (\omega t + \pi) e^{-jn\omega t} d\omega t + \int_0^\pi -\frac{A}{\pi} (\omega t - \pi) e^{-jn\omega t} d\omega t \right) \\
 &= \frac{A}{2\pi} \left( \int_{-\pi}^0 \frac{1}{\pi} (\omega t) e^{-jn\omega t} d\omega t + \int_{-\pi}^0 e^{-jn\omega t} d\omega t + \int_0^\pi -\frac{1}{\pi} (\omega t) e^{-jn\omega t} d\omega t + \int_0^\pi e^{-jn\omega t} d\omega t \right)
 \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
 &= \frac{A}{2\pi^2} \left( \int_{-\pi}^0 (\omega t) e^{-jn\omega t} d\omega t - \int_0^\pi (\omega t) e^{-jn\omega t} d\omega t \right) + \frac{A}{2\pi} \int_{-\pi}^\pi e^{-jn\omega t} d\omega t \\
 &= \frac{A}{2\pi^2} \left\{ \left[ \frac{e^{-jn\omega t} (-jn\omega t - 1)}{(-jn)^2} \right]_{-\pi}^0 - \left[ \frac{e^{-jn\omega t} (-jn\omega t - 1)}{(-jn)^2} \right]_0^\pi \right\} + 0 \\
 \therefore C_n &= \frac{A}{n^2 \pi^2} (1 - e^{jn\pi}) \\
 \int te^{-nt} dt &= \boxed{\frac{e^{-nt} (-nt - 1)}{(-n)^2}}
 \end{aligned}$$

$$\therefore C_n = \begin{cases} 0 & \text{for even } n \\ \frac{2A}{n^2 \pi^2} & \text{for odd } n \end{cases}$$

$$\therefore x(t) = \frac{A}{2} + \sum_{\substack{n=-\infty \\ n \neq 0}}^{\infty} \frac{2A}{n^2 \pi^2} e^{jn\omega t}$$

**EXAMPLE 4.22** (a) Determine the trigonometric Fourier series of a full wave rectified cosine function shown in Figure 4.24.

- (b) Derive the corresponding exponential Fourier series.
- (c) Draw the complex Fourier spectrum.
- (d) Find the exponential Fourier series directly.

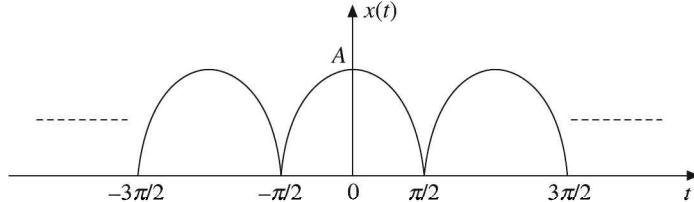


Figure 4.24 Waveform for Example 4.22.

**Solution:** The periodic waveform shown in Figure 4.24 is half of a cosine wave with period  $= 2\pi$ . Therefore,

$$x(t) = A \cos \omega t = A \cos \frac{2\pi}{2\pi} t = A \cos t$$

Let

$$t_0 = -\frac{\pi}{2}$$

then

$$t_0 + T = \frac{\pi}{2}$$

The period of the given waveform is from  $-\frac{\pi}{2}$  to  $\frac{\pi}{2}$ . Therefore,  $T = \pi$ .

So      Fundamental frequency  $\omega_0 = \frac{2\pi}{T} = \frac{2\pi}{\pi} = 2$

(a) Trigonometric Fourier series

The given function  $x(t)$  is even, So  $b_n = 0$ .

$$\begin{aligned} \therefore x(t) &= a_0 + \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} a_n \cos n\omega_0 t = a_0 + \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} a_n \cos 2nt \\ a_0 &= \frac{1}{T} \int_{t_0}^{t_0+T} x(t) dt = \frac{1}{\pi} \int_{-\pi/2}^{\pi/2} A \cos t dt \\ &= \frac{A}{\pi} [\sin t]_{-\pi/2}^{\pi/2} = \frac{A}{\pi} \left[ \sin \frac{\pi}{2} - \sin \left( -\frac{\pi}{2} \right) \right] \\ &= \frac{2A}{\pi} \sin \frac{\pi}{2} = \frac{2A}{\pi} \\ \therefore a_0 &= \frac{2A}{\pi} \\ a_n &= \frac{2}{T} \int_{t_0}^{t_0+T} x(t) \cos n\omega_0 t dt \\ &= \frac{2}{\pi} \int_{-\pi/2}^{\pi/2} A \cos t \cos 2nt dt = \frac{A}{\pi} \int_{-\pi/2}^{\pi/2} [\cos(2n+1)t + \cos(2n-1)t] dt \\ &= \frac{A}{\pi} \left\{ \left[ \frac{\sin(2n+1)t}{2n+1} \right]_{-\pi/2}^{\pi/2} + \left[ \frac{\sin(2n-1)t}{2n-1} \right]_{-\pi/2}^{\pi/2} \right\} \\ &= \frac{A}{\pi} \left[ \frac{\sin(2n+1)\frac{\pi}{2} - \sin(2n+1)\left(-\frac{\pi}{2}\right)}{2n+1} + \frac{\sin(2n-1)\frac{\pi}{2} - \sin(2n-1)\left(-\frac{\pi}{2}\right)}{2n-1} \right] \\ &= \frac{A}{\pi} \left[ \frac{2 \sin(2n+1)\frac{\pi}{2}}{(2n+1)} + \frac{2 \sin(2n-1)\frac{\pi}{2}}{(2n-1)} \right] = \frac{2A}{\pi} \left[ \frac{(-1)^n}{2n+1} + \frac{(-1)^{n+1}}{2n-1} \right] \\ \therefore a_n &= \frac{2A}{\pi} \left[ \frac{(-1)^n}{2n+1} + \frac{(-1)^{n+1}}{2n-1} \right] \\ \therefore x(t) &= \frac{2A}{\pi} + \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{2A}{\pi} \left[ \frac{(-1)^n}{2n+1} + \frac{(-1)^{n+1}}{2n-1} \right] \cos 2nt \end{aligned}$$

## (b) Derivation of exponential Fourier series from trigonometric Fourier series

We know that

$$C_0 = a_0$$

Also, we know that

$$C_n = \frac{1}{2} (a_n - jb_n)$$

In this case,

$$b_n = 0$$

∴

$$C_n = \frac{a_n}{2}$$

and

$$\begin{aligned} C_n &= \frac{1}{2} \left\{ \frac{2A}{\pi} \left[ \frac{(-1)^n}{2n+1} + \frac{(-1)^{n+1}}{2n-1} \right] \right\} \\ &= \frac{A}{\pi} \left[ \frac{(-1)^n}{2n+1} + \frac{(-1)^{n+1}}{2n-1} \right] \end{aligned}$$

So the exponential Fourier series is:

$$\begin{aligned} x(t) &= C_0 + \sum_{\substack{n=-\infty \\ n \neq 0}}^{\infty} C_n e^{jn\omega_0 t} \\ \text{i.e. } x(t) &= \frac{2A}{\pi} + \sum_{\substack{n=-\infty \\ n \neq 0}}^{\infty} \frac{A}{\pi} \left[ \frac{(-1)^n}{2n+1} + \frac{(-1)^{n+1}}{2n-1} \right] e^{j2nt} \end{aligned}$$

To draw the frequency spectrum,

$$C_0 = \frac{2A}{\pi}$$

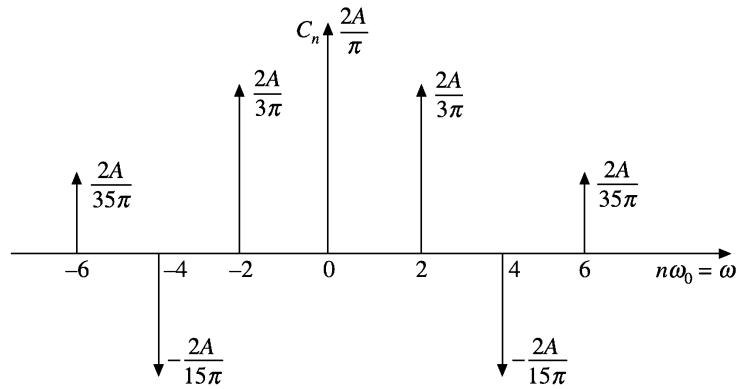
$$C_1 = C_{-1} = \frac{A}{\pi} \left[ \frac{(-1)^1}{2 \times 1 + 1} + \frac{(-1)^{1+1}}{2 \times 1 - 1} \right] = \frac{A}{\pi} \left( \frac{-1}{3} + \frac{1}{1} \right) = \frac{2A}{3\pi}$$

$$C_2 = C_{-2} = \frac{A}{\pi} \left[ \frac{(-1)^2}{2 \times 2 + 1} + \frac{(-1)^{2+1}}{2 \times 2 - 1} \right] = \frac{A}{\pi} \left( \frac{1}{5} - \frac{1}{3} \right) = -\frac{2A}{15\pi}$$

$$C_3 = C_{-3} = \frac{A}{\pi} \left[ \frac{(-1)^3}{2 \times 3 + 1} + \frac{(-1)^{3+1}}{2 \times 3 - 1} \right] = \frac{A}{\pi} \left( \frac{-1}{7} + \frac{1}{5} \right) = \frac{2A}{35\pi}$$

## (c) Complex Fourier spectrum

It is a plot between  $C_n$  and  $n\omega_0 = \omega$ . As  $C_n$  is real, only amplitude plot is sufficient. The amplitude versus frequency plot, called the amplitude spectrum, is shown in Figure 4.25.



**Figure 4.25** Amplitude spectrum.

(d) Direct determination of exponential Fourier series

$$\begin{aligned}
 C_0 &= \frac{1}{T} \int_{t_0}^{t_0+T} x(t) dt = \frac{1}{\pi} \int_{-\pi/2}^{\pi/2} A \cos t dt = \frac{A}{\pi} [\sin t]_{-\pi/2}^{\pi/2} = \frac{2A}{\pi} \\
 C_n &= \frac{1}{T} \int_{t_0}^{t_0+T} x(t) e^{jn\omega_0 t} dt = \frac{1}{\pi} \int_{-\pi/2}^{\pi/2} A \cos t e^{j2nt} dt \\
 &= \frac{A}{\pi} \int_{-\pi/2}^{\pi/2} \frac{e^{jt} + e^{-jt}}{2} e^{j2nt} dt = \frac{A}{2\pi} \left[ \int_{-\pi/2}^{\pi/2} e^{j(2n+1)t} dt + \int_{-\pi/2}^{\pi/2} e^{j(2n-1)t} dt \right] \\
 &= \frac{A}{2\pi} \left\{ \left[ \frac{e^{j(2n+1)t}}{j(2n+1)} \right]_{-\pi/2}^{\pi/2} + \left[ \frac{e^{j(2n-1)t}}{j(2n-1)} \right]_{-\pi/2}^{\pi/2} \right\} \\
 &= \frac{A}{2\pi} \left[ \frac{2j \sin(2n+1) \frac{\pi}{2}}{j(2n+1)} + \frac{2j \sin(2n-1) \frac{\pi}{2}}{j(2n-1)} \right] = \frac{A}{\pi} \left[ \frac{(-1)^n}{2n+1} + \frac{(-1)^{n+1}}{2n-1} \right] \\
 \therefore x(t) &= \frac{2A}{\pi} + \sum_{\substack{n=-\infty \\ n \neq 0}}^{\infty} \frac{A}{\pi} \left[ \frac{(-1)^n}{2n+1} + \frac{(-1)^{n+1}}{2n-1} \right]
 \end{aligned}$$

**EXAMPLE 4.23** For the periodic gate function shown in Figure 4.26,

- (a) Find the trigonometric Fourier series.
- (b) Derive the corresponding exponential Fourier series.
- (c) Find the exponential Fourier series directly.
- (d) Plot the magnitude and phase spectra.

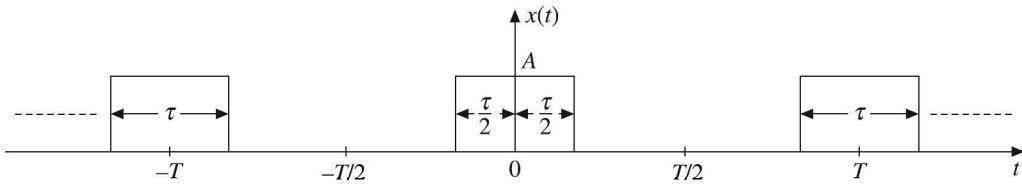


Figure 4.26 Waveform for Example 4.23.

**Solution:** The waveform shown in Figure 4.26 is a periodic gate function with period  $T$ . It is given by

$$x(t) = A \Pi\left(\frac{t}{\tau}\right) = A \operatorname{rect}\left(\frac{t}{\tau}\right) = \begin{cases} A & \text{for } -(\tau/2) \leq t \leq (\tau/2) \\ 0 & \text{elsewhere} \end{cases}$$

Let

$$t_0 = -\frac{T}{2}$$

Then

$$t_0 + T = \frac{T}{2}$$

Fundamental frequency  $\omega_0 = (2\pi/T)$

(a) *Trigonometric Fourier series*

$$x(t) = a_0 + \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} a_n \cos n\omega_0 t + b_n \sin n\omega_0 t$$

The waveform has even symmetry, therefore,  $b_n = 0$ .

$$\therefore x(t) = a_0 + \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} a_n \cos n\omega_0 t$$

$$a_0 = \frac{1}{T} \int_{t_0}^{t_0+T} x(t) dt = \frac{1}{T} \int_{-T/2}^{T/2} x(t) dt = \frac{1}{T} \int_{-\tau/2}^{\tau/2} A dt = \frac{A}{T} [t]_{-\tau/2}^{\tau/2} = \frac{A}{T} \left[ \frac{\tau}{2} - \left( -\frac{\tau}{2} \right) \right] = \frac{A\tau}{T}$$

$$a_n = \frac{2}{T} \int_{t_0}^{t_0+T} x(t) \cos n\omega_0 t dt = \frac{2}{T} \int_{-\tau/2}^{\tau/2} A \cos n\omega_0 t dt$$

$$= \frac{2A}{T} \left[ \frac{\sin n\omega_0 t}{n\omega_0} \right]_{-\tau/2}^{\tau/2} = \frac{2A}{T} \left\{ \frac{\sin n\omega_0 \frac{\tau}{2} - \sin [-n\omega_0 (\tau/2)]}{n\omega_0} \right\}$$

$$= \frac{2A}{T} \left[ \frac{2 \sin n\omega_0 (\tau/2)}{n\omega_0 (\tau/2)} \right] \frac{\tau}{2} = \frac{2A}{T} \tau \operatorname{sinc}\left(n\omega_0 \frac{\tau}{2}\right)$$

$$\therefore x(t) = \frac{A\tau}{T} + \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{2A}{T} \tau \operatorname{sinc}\left(n\omega_0 \frac{\tau}{2}\right) \cos n\omega_0 t$$

(b) Exponential Fourier series from the trigonometric Fourier series

$$\begin{aligned}
 C_0 &= a_0 = \frac{A\tau}{T} \\
 C_n &= \frac{1}{2}(a_n - jb_n) = \frac{a_n}{2} = \frac{1}{2} \left[ \frac{2A}{T} \tau \operatorname{sinc}\left(n\omega_0 \frac{\tau}{2}\right) \right] = \frac{A}{T} \tau \operatorname{sinc}\left(n\omega_0 \frac{\tau}{2}\right) \\
 \therefore x(t) &= C_0 + \sum_{\substack{n=-\infty \\ n \neq 0}}^{\infty} C_n e^{jn\omega_0 t} \\
 &= \frac{A\tau}{T} + \sum_{\substack{n=-\infty \\ n \neq 0}}^{\infty} \frac{A}{T} \tau \operatorname{sinc}\left(n\omega_0 \frac{\tau}{2}\right) e^{jn\omega_0 t} \\
 &= \frac{A\tau}{T} + \frac{A}{T} \tau \sum_{\substack{n=-\infty \\ n \neq 0}}^{\infty} \operatorname{sinc}\left(n\omega_0 \frac{\tau}{2}\right) e^{jn\omega_0 t}
 \end{aligned}$$

(c) Direct determination of exponential Fourier series

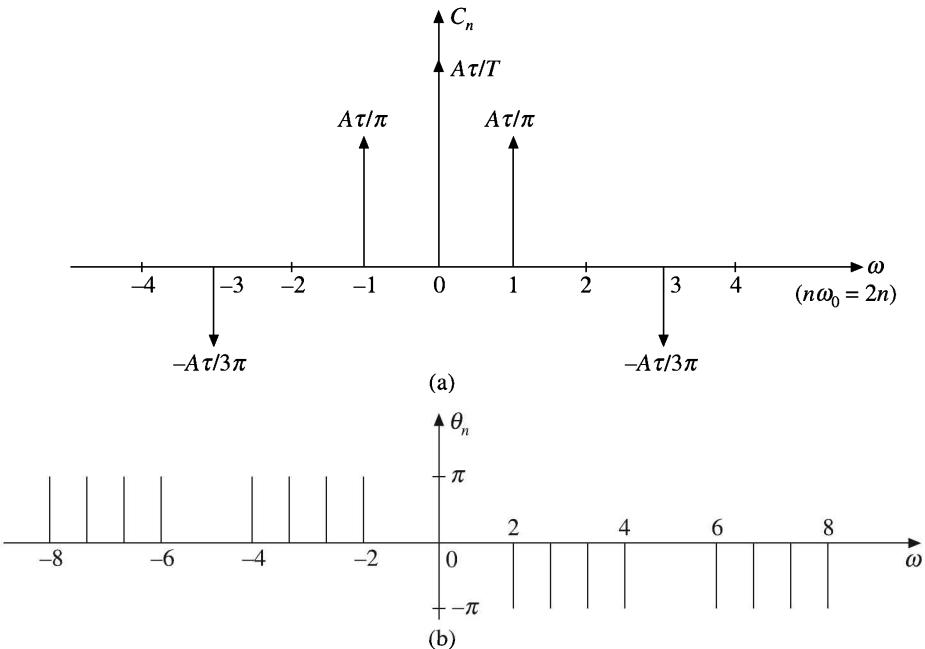
$$\begin{aligned}
 x(t) &= \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} C_n e^{jn\omega_0 t} \\
 C_0 &= \frac{1}{T} \int_{t_0}^{t_0+T} x(t) dt = \frac{1}{T} \int_{-\tau/2}^{\tau/2} A dt = \frac{A}{T} [t]_{-\tau/2}^{\tau/2} = \frac{A\tau}{T} \\
 C_n &= \frac{1}{T} \int_{t_0}^{t_0+T} x(t) e^{-jn\omega_0 t} dt = \frac{1}{T} \int_{-\tau/2}^{\tau/2} A e^{-jn\omega_0 t} dt \\
 &= \frac{A}{T} \left[ \frac{e^{-jn\omega_0 t}}{-jn\omega_0} \right]_{-\tau/2}^{\tau/2} = \frac{A}{T} \left[ \frac{e^{-jn\omega_0(\tau/2)} - e^{jn\omega_0(\tau/2)}}{-jn\omega_0} \right] \\
 &= \frac{2A}{n\omega_0 T} \left[ \frac{e^{jn\omega_0(\tau/2)} - e^{-jn\omega_0(\tau/2)}}{2j} \right] = \frac{A}{T} \left[ \frac{\sin n\omega_0(\tau/2)}{n\omega_0(\tau/2)} \right] \tau \\
 &= \frac{A}{T} \tau \operatorname{sinc}\left(n\omega_0 \frac{\tau}{2}\right)
 \end{aligned}$$

The exponential Fourier series is:

$$x(t) = \frac{A}{T} \tau + \sum_{\substack{n=-\infty \\ n \neq 0}}^{\infty} \frac{A\tau}{T} \operatorname{sinc}\left(n\omega_0 \frac{\tau}{2}\right) e^{jn\omega_0 t}$$

(d) Amplitude and phase spectra

The amplitude and phase spectra are shown in Figures 4.27(a) and (b) respectively.



Figures 4.27 (a) Magnitude spectrum, (b) Phase spectrum.

**EXAMPLE 4.24** Find the complex exponential Fourier series and the trigonometric Fourier series of unit impulse train  $\delta_T(t)$  shown in Figure 4.28.

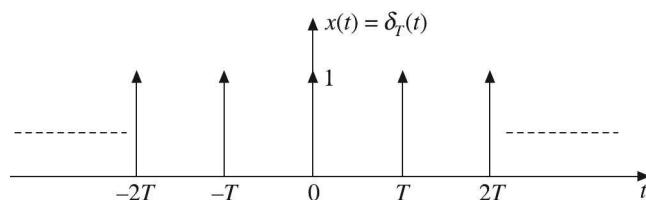


Figure 4.28 Waveform for Example 4.24.

**Solution:** The periodic waveform shown in Figure 4.28 with period  $T$  can be expressed as:

$$x(t) = \delta_T(t) = \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} \delta(t - nT)$$

Let

$$t_0 = -\frac{T}{2}$$

So

$$t_0 + T = \frac{T}{2}$$

In one period, only  $\delta(t)$  exists.

∴ Fundamental frequency  $\omega_0 = (2\pi/T)$

$$\begin{aligned}
 C_n &= \frac{1}{T} \int_{t_0}^{t_0+T} x(t) e^{-jn\omega_0 t} dt \\
 &= \frac{1}{T} \int_{-T/2}^{T/2} \delta(t) e^{-jn\omega_0 t} dt \quad \boxed{\begin{array}{ll} \delta(t) = 1 & \text{at } t = 0 \\ & = 0 \quad \text{elsewhere} \end{array}} \\
 &= \frac{1}{T} e^0 = \frac{1}{T} \\
 \therefore C_n &= \frac{1}{T}
 \end{aligned}$$

The exponential Fourier series is:

$$x(t) = \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} C_n e^{jn\omega_0 t} = \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} \frac{1}{T} e^{jn(2\pi/T)t} = \frac{1}{T} \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} e^{jn(2\pi/T)t}$$

To get the trigonometric Fourier coefficients, we have

$$\begin{aligned}
 a_0 &= C_0 = \frac{1}{T} \\
 a_n &= \frac{2}{T} \int_0^T x(t) \cos n\omega_0 t dt = \frac{2}{T} \int_0^T \delta(t) \cos n\omega_0 t dt = \frac{2}{T} \\
 b_n &= \frac{2}{T} \int_0^T x(t) \sin n\omega_0 t dt = \frac{2}{T} \int_0^T \delta(t) \sin n\omega_0 t dt = 0
 \end{aligned}$$

Therefore, the trigonometric Fourier series is:

$$x(t) = a_0 + \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} a_n \cos n\omega_0 t + b_n \sin n\omega_0 t = \frac{1}{T} + \frac{2}{T} \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \cos n\omega_0 t$$

The complex Fourier series coefficients are:

$$C_n = \frac{1}{T} \quad \text{for all } n$$

The magnitude and phase spectrums are:

$$|C_n| = \left| \frac{1}{T} \right| \quad \text{for all } n$$

$$\underline{|C_n| = 0^\circ} \quad \text{for all } n$$

The frequency spectra are plotted in Figure 4.29.

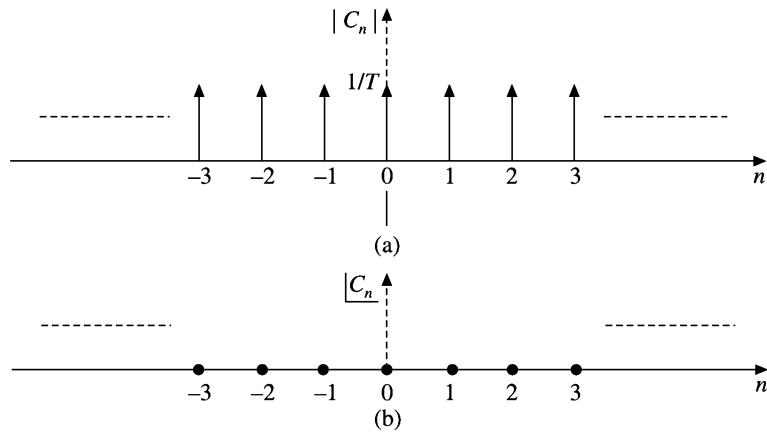


Figure 4.29 (a) Magnitude spectrum, (b) Phase spectrum.

**EXAMPLE 4.25** Find the complex exponential Fourier series representation of the following signals:

(a)  $x(t) = 4 \cos 2\omega_0 t$

(b)  $x(t) = 3 \sin 4\omega_0 t$

(c)  $x(t) = \sin\left(2t + \frac{\pi}{4}\right)$

(d)  $x(t) = \cos^2 t$

**Solution:**

(a) Given

$$x(t) = 4 \cos 2\omega_0 t = 4 \left[ \frac{e^{j2\omega_0 t} + e^{-j2\omega_0 t}}{2} \right]$$

$$\therefore x(t) = 2e^{j2\omega_0 t} + 2e^{-j2\omega_0 t}$$

is the complex exponential Fourier series representation. Comparing this with the general complex exponential Fourier series

$$x(t) = \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} C_n e^{jn\omega_0 t}$$

we get the exponential Fourier series coefficients

$$C_2 = 2 = C_{-2}, \quad C_n = 0 \quad \text{for } n \neq 2$$

(b) Given

$$x(t) = 3 \sin 4\omega_0 t = 3 \left[ \frac{e^{j4\omega_0 t} - e^{-j4\omega_0 t}}{2j} \right]$$

$$\therefore x(t) = \frac{3}{2j} e^{j4\omega_0 t} - \frac{3}{2j} e^{-j4\omega_0 t}$$

is the complex exponential Fourier series representation. Comparing this with the general complex exponential Fourier series

$$x(t) = \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} C_n e^{jn\omega_0 t}$$

we get the exponential Fourier series coefficients

$$C_4 = \frac{3}{2j}, C_{-4} = \frac{-3}{2j}, C_n = 0 \quad \text{for } n \neq 4$$

(c) Given  $x(t) = \sin\left(2t + \frac{\pi}{4}\right) = \frac{e^{j[2t+(\pi/4)]} - e^{-j[2t+(\pi/4)]}}{2j}$

$$\therefore x(t) = \left[ \frac{1}{j2} e^{j(\pi/4)} \right] e^{j2t} + \left[ -\frac{1}{j2} e^{-j(\pi/4)} \right] e^{-j2t}$$

is the complex exponential form.

Comparing it with  $x(t) = \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} C_n e^{jn\omega_0 t}$ , we have the complex exponential Fourier coefficients

$$C_2 = \frac{1}{j2} e^{j(\pi/4)} = -0.5 j e^{j(\pi/4)}, C_{-2} = -\frac{1}{j2} e^{-j(\pi/4)} = 0.5 j e^{-j(\pi/4)}$$

and

$$C_n = 0 \quad \text{for } |n| \neq 2$$

(d) Given  $x(t) = \cos^2 t = \left[ \frac{e^{jt} + e^{-jt}}{2} \right]^2 = \frac{1}{4} [e^{j2t} + 2 + e^{-j2t}]$

$$\therefore x(t) = \frac{1}{4} e^{-j2t} + \frac{1}{2} + \frac{1}{4} e^{j2t}$$

is the complex exponential form.

Comparing it with  $x(t) = \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} C_n e^{jn\omega_0 t}$ , we have the complex exponential Fourier coefficients

$$C_{-2} = \frac{1}{4}, C_0 = \frac{1}{2}, C_2 = \frac{1}{4} \quad \text{and} \quad C_n = 0, \text{ when } n \neq 0 \text{ and } n \neq 2$$

**EXAMPLE 4.26** For the continuous-time periodic signal  $x(t) = 2 + \cos 2t + \sin 4t$ , determine the fundamental frequency  $\omega_0$  and the Fourier series coefficients  $C_n$  such that

$$x(t) = \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} C_n e^{jn\omega_0 t}$$

**Solution:** Given  $x(t) = 2 + \cos 2t + \sin 4t$

The time period of the signal  $\cos 2t$  is:

$$T_1 = \frac{2\pi}{2} = \pi \text{ sec}$$

The time period of the signal  $\sin 4t$  is:

$$T_2 = \frac{2\pi}{4} = \frac{\pi}{2} \text{ sec}$$

$$\therefore \frac{T_1}{T_2} = \frac{\pi}{\pi/2} = 2$$

$$\therefore T_1 = 2T_2$$

The fundamental period of the signal  $x(t)$  is:

$$T = T_1 = 2T_2 = \pi \text{ sec}$$

and      Fundamental frequency  $\omega_0 = \frac{2\pi}{T} = \frac{2\pi}{\pi} = 2$

Now,

$$\begin{aligned} x(t) &= 2 + \cos 2t + \sin 4t \\ &= 2 + \frac{e^{j2t} + e^{-j2t}}{2} + \frac{e^{j4t} - e^{-j4t}}{2j} \\ &= -\frac{1}{2j} e^{-j4t} + \frac{1}{2} e^{-j2t} + 2 + \frac{1}{2} e^{j2t} + \frac{1}{2j} e^{j4t} \\ &= -\frac{1}{2j} e^{-j2(2)t} + \frac{1}{2} e^{-j1(2)t} + 2 + \frac{1}{2} e^{j1(2)t} + \frac{1}{2j} e^{j2(2)t} \\ &= C_{-2} e^{-j2(\omega_0)t} + C_{-1} e^{-j1(\omega_0)t} + C_0 + C_1 e^{j1(\omega_0)t} + C_2 e^{j2(\omega_0)t} \end{aligned}$$

The exponential Fourier coefficients are:

$$C_{-2} = -\frac{1}{2j}, \quad C_{-1} = \frac{1}{2}, \quad C_0 = 2, \quad C_1 = \frac{1}{2}, \quad C_2 = \frac{1}{2j}$$

**EXAMPLE 4.27** Determine the Fourier series representation of the signal  $x(t) = 3 \cos\left(\frac{\pi t}{2} + \frac{\pi}{4}\right)$  using the method of inspection.

**Solution:** Looking at the given signal  $x(t) = 3 \cos\left(\frac{\pi t}{2} + \frac{\pi}{4}\right)$ , by inspection, we can say that, it is cosine form of representation. Comparing it with the cosine representation

$$x(t) = A_0 + \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} A_n \cos(n\omega_0 t + \theta_n)$$

we get       $A_0 = 0, \quad A_1 = 3, \quad \omega_0 = \frac{\pi}{2}, \quad \theta_1 = \frac{\pi}{4}$

$$\therefore T = \frac{2\pi}{\omega_0} = \frac{2\pi}{\pi/2} = 4$$

Trigonometric form

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Given } x(t) &= 3 \cos \left[ \left( \frac{\pi t}{2} + \frac{\pi}{4} \right) \right] = 3 \left[ \cos \left( \frac{\pi t}{2} \right) \cos \left( \frac{\pi}{4} \right) - \sin \left( \frac{\pi t}{2} \right) \sin \left( \frac{\pi}{4} \right) \right] \\ &= \frac{3}{\sqrt{2}} \left[ \cos \left( \frac{\pi t}{2} \right) - \sin \left( \frac{\pi t}{2} \right) \right] \end{aligned}$$

Comparing this with the trigonometric Fourier series

$$x(t) = a_0 + \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} (a_n \cos n\omega_0 t + b_n \sin n\omega_0 t)$$

we get  $a_0 = 0$ ,  $a_1 = \frac{3}{\sqrt{2}}$ ,  $b_1 = -\frac{3}{\sqrt{2}}$ , other coefficients are zero

$$\omega_0 = \frac{\pi}{2}$$

$$\therefore T = \frac{2\pi}{\omega_0} = \frac{2\pi}{\pi/2} = 4$$

**EXAMPLE 4.28** Find the Fourier series of the signal  $x(t) = e^{-t}$  with  $T = 1$  sec as shown in Figure 4.30. Draw its magnitude and phase spectra.

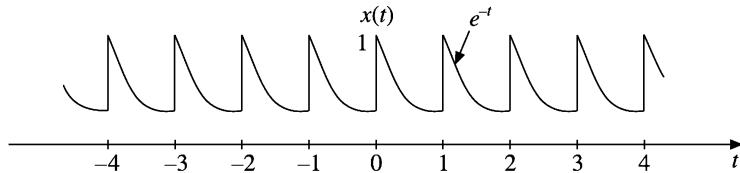


Figure 4.30 Waveform for Example 4.28.

**Solution:** Given signal

$$x(t) = e^{-t}$$

Period  $T = 1$  sec

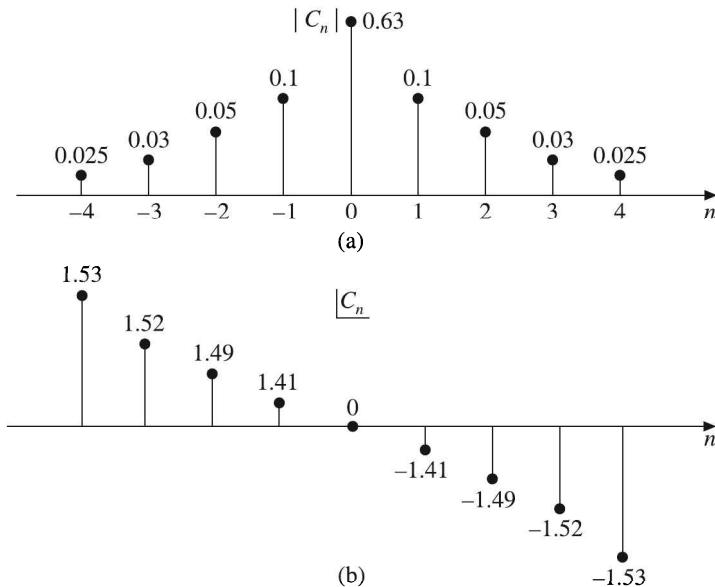
$$\therefore \text{Fundamental frequency } \omega_0 = \frac{2\pi}{T} = \frac{2\pi}{1} = 2\pi$$

The exponential Fourier series is:

$$\begin{aligned} C_n &= \frac{1}{T} \int_0^T x(t) e^{-jn\omega_0 t} dt = \frac{1}{1} \int_0^1 e^{-t} e^{-jn2\pi t} dt \\ &= \int_0^1 e^{-(1+j2n\pi)t} dt = \left[ \frac{e^{-(1+j2n\pi)t}}{-(1+j2n\pi)} \right]_0^1 \\ &= \frac{e^{-(1+j2n\pi)} - 1}{-(1+j2n\pi)} = \frac{1 - e^{-1} e^{-j2n\pi}}{1 + j2n\pi} = \frac{1 - e^{-1}}{1 + j2n\pi} \end{aligned}$$

$$\therefore x(t) = \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} C_n e^{jn\omega_0 t} = \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} \left( \frac{1 - e^{-1}}{1 + j2n\pi} \right) e^{jn2\pi t}$$

The spectra are shown in Figure 4.31.



**Figure 4.31** (a) Amplitude spectrum, (b) Phase spectrum for Example 4.28.

**EXAMPLE 4.29** Find the Fourier series for the periodic signal  $x(t) = t$  for  $0 \leq t \leq 1$  so that it repeats every 1 second.

**Solution:** Given

$$x(t) = t \quad \text{for } 0 \leq t \leq 1$$

Period  $T = 1$  sec

$$\therefore \text{Fundamental frequency } \omega_0 = \frac{2\pi}{T} = 2\pi$$

To get the exponential Fourier series, we have

$$\begin{aligned} C_0 &= \frac{1}{T} \int_0^T x(t) dt = \frac{1}{1} \int_0^1 t dt = \left[ \frac{t^2}{2} \right]_0^1 = \frac{1}{2} \\ C_n &= \frac{1}{T} \int_0^T x(t) e^{-j n \omega_0 t} dt = \frac{1}{1} \int_0^1 t e^{-j n 2\pi t} dt = \left[ t \frac{e^{-j n 2\pi t}}{-j 2\pi} \right]_0^1 - \int_0^1 \frac{e^{-j n 2\pi t}}{-j 2\pi} dt \\ &= \frac{e^{-j n 2\pi} - 0}{-j 2\pi} + \frac{1}{j 2\pi} \left[ \frac{e^{-j n 2\pi t}}{-j 2\pi} \right]_0^1 = -\frac{1}{j 2\pi} + \frac{1}{4\pi^2 n^2} [e^{-j n 2\pi} - e^0] \\ &= -\frac{1}{j 2\pi} = j \frac{1}{2\pi n} \end{aligned}$$

Therefore, the exponential Fourier series is:

$$\begin{aligned} x(t) &= \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} C_n e^{jn\omega_0 t} = \frac{1}{2} + \sum_{\substack{n=-\infty \\ n \neq 0}}^{\infty} \left( j \frac{1}{2n\pi} \right) e^{jn\omega_0 t} \\ &= -j \frac{1}{4\pi} e^{-j2\omega_0 t} - j \frac{1}{2\pi} e^{-j\omega_0 t} + \frac{1}{2} + j \frac{1}{2\pi} e^{j\omega_0 t} + j \frac{1}{4\pi} e^{j2\omega_0 t} + \dots \end{aligned}$$

For the trigonometric Fourier series, we have

$$\begin{aligned} a_0 &= C_0 = \frac{1}{2} \\ a_n &= C_n + C_{-n} = j \frac{1}{2n\pi} + \left( -j \frac{1}{2n\pi} \right) = 0 \\ b_n &= j[C_n - C_{-n}] = j \left[ j \frac{1}{2n\pi} - j \frac{1}{-2n\pi} \right] = -\frac{1}{n\pi} \end{aligned}$$

Therefore, the trigonometric Fourier series is:

$$\begin{aligned} x(t) &= a_0 + \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} a_n \cos n\omega_0 t + b_n \sin n\omega_0 t \\ &= \frac{1}{2} + \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \left( -\frac{1}{n\pi} \right) \sin n\omega_0 t \\ &= \frac{1}{2} - \frac{1}{\pi} \sin(\omega_0 t) - \frac{1}{2\pi} \sin(2\omega_0 t) - \frac{1}{3\pi} \sin(3\omega_0 t) - \frac{1}{4\pi} \sin(4\omega_0 t) - \dots \end{aligned}$$

**EXAMPLE 4.30** Determine the time signal corresponding to the magnitude and phase spectra shown in Figure 4.32 with  $\omega_0 = \pi$ .

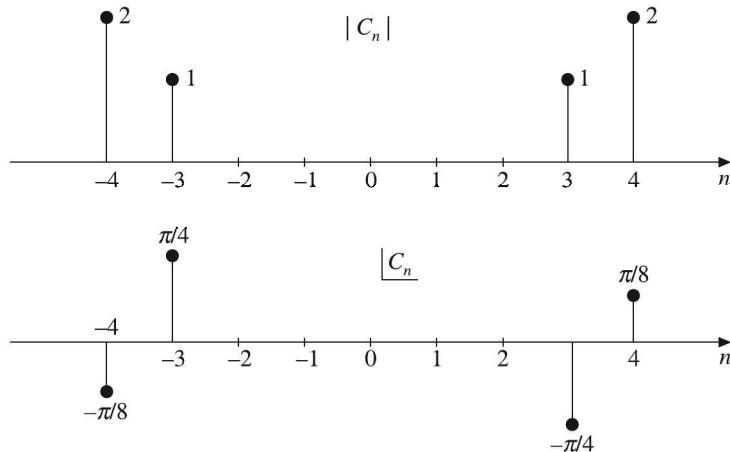


Figure 4.32 Spectra for Example 4.30.

**Solution:** From Figure 4.32, we have

$$C_3 = 1 \left| \frac{-\pi}{4} \right| = 1e^{-j\pi/4}$$

$$C_{-3} = 1 \left| \frac{\pi}{4} \right| = 1e^{j\pi/4}$$

$$C_4 = 2 \left| \frac{\pi}{8} \right| = 2e^{j\pi/8}$$

$$C_{-4} = 2 \left| \frac{-\pi}{8} \right| = 2e^{-j\pi/8}$$

By definition, the exponential Fourier series is:

$$\begin{aligned} x(t) &= \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} C_n e^{jn\omega_0 t} \\ &= 2e^{-j\pi/8} e^{-j4\omega_0 t} + 1e^{j\pi/4} e^{-j3\omega_0 t} + e^{-j\pi/4} e^{j3\omega_0 t} + 2e^{j\pi/8} e^{j4\omega_0 t} \\ &= 2 \left\{ e^{-j[(\pi/8)+4\pi t]} + e^{j[(\pi/8)+4\pi t]} \right\} + \left\{ e^{j[(\pi/4)-3\pi t]} + e^{-j[(\pi/4)-3\pi t]} \right\} \\ &= 4 \cos \left( 4\pi t + \frac{\pi}{8} \right) + 2 \cos \left( 3\pi t - \frac{\pi}{4} \right) \end{aligned}$$

**EXAMPLE 4.31** Find the time domain signal whose Fourier series coefficient is given by

$$C_n = j\delta(n-1) - j\delta(n+1) + \delta(n-3) + \delta(n+3), \omega_0 = \pi$$

**Solution:** We have

$$x(t) = \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} C_n e^{jn\omega_0 t}$$

∴

$$\begin{aligned} x(t) &= \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} C_n e^{jn\pi t} \\ &= je^{j\pi t} - je^{-j\pi t} + e^{j3\pi t} + e^{-j3\pi t} \\ &= 2 \cos 3\pi t - 2 \sin \pi t \end{aligned}$$

**EXAMPLE 4.32** Find the Fourier series coefficient  $C_n$  for the signal

$$x(t) = \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} \left[ \delta \left( t - \frac{1}{2}n \right) + \delta \left( t - \frac{3}{2}n \right) \right]$$

Also sketch the amplitude and phase spectra.

**Solution:** The sketch of  $x(t)$  is shown in Figure 4.33.

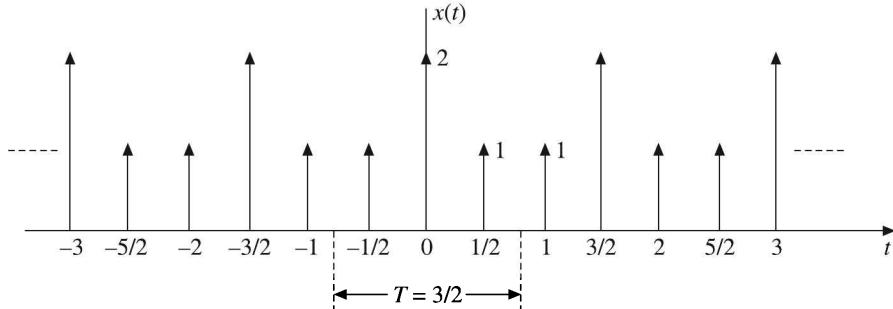


Figure 4.33 Signal for Example 4.32.

From Figure 4.33, we observe that  $T = 3/2$ .

$$\therefore \omega_0 = \frac{2\pi}{T} = \frac{4\pi}{3}$$

The expression for  $x(t)$  over one period is:

$$x(t) = \delta\left(t + \frac{1}{2}\right) + 2\delta(t) + \delta\left(t - \frac{1}{2}\right)$$

$$\text{We have } C_n = \frac{1}{T} \int_{-T/2}^{T/2} x(t) e^{-jn\omega_0 t} dt = \frac{1}{3/2} \int_{-3/4}^{3/4} \left[ \delta\left(t + \frac{1}{2}\right) + 2\delta(t) + \delta\left(t - \frac{1}{2}\right) \right] e^{-jn(4\pi/3)t} dt$$

$$\begin{aligned} \therefore C_n &= \frac{2}{3} \left\{ e^{-jn(4\pi/3)(-(1/2))} + 2e^{-jn(4\pi/3)(0)} + e^{-jn(4\pi/3)(1/2)} \right\} \\ &= \frac{2}{3} \left[ e^{jn(2\pi/3)} + e^{-jn(2\pi/3)} + 2 \right] \\ &= \frac{4}{3} \left[ 1 + \cos \frac{2n\pi}{3} \right] \end{aligned}$$

The magnitude spectrum is shown in Figure 4.34. Since the given signal  $x(t)$  is real and even, the phase spectrum is null spectrum.

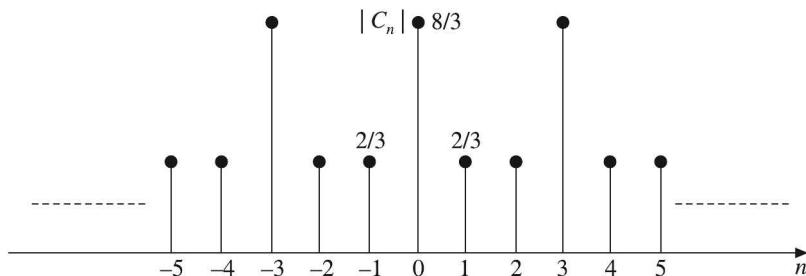


Figure 4.34 Spectrum for Example 4.32.

**EXAMPLE 4.33** Find the time domain signal corresponding to

$$C_n = \left(-\frac{1}{2}\right)^{|n|}; \omega_0 = 1$$

**Solution:** We have

$$x(t) = \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} C_n e^{jn\omega_0 t}$$

$$\begin{aligned} \therefore x(t) &= \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} \left(-\frac{1}{2}\right)^{|n|} e^{jnt} \\ &= \sum_{n=-\infty}^{-1} \left(-\frac{1}{2}\right)^{-n} e^{jnt} + \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \left(-\frac{1}{2}\right)^n e^{jnt} \\ &= \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \left(\frac{1}{2}\right)^n e^{-jnt} + \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \left(\frac{1}{2}\right)^n e^{jnt} \\ &= \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \left(\frac{1}{2}\right)^n e^{-jnt} - \left[ \left(\frac{1}{2}\right)^n e^{-jnt} \right]_{n=0} + \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \left(\frac{1}{2}\right)^n e^{jnt} \\ &= \frac{-(1/2) e^{-jt}}{1 + (1/2)e^{-jt}} + \frac{1}{1 + (1/2)e^{jt}} = \frac{3/4}{(5/4) + \cos t} \end{aligned}$$

**EXAMPLE 4.34** For the signal shown in Figure 4.35 obtain the Fourier series representation using time differentiation property.

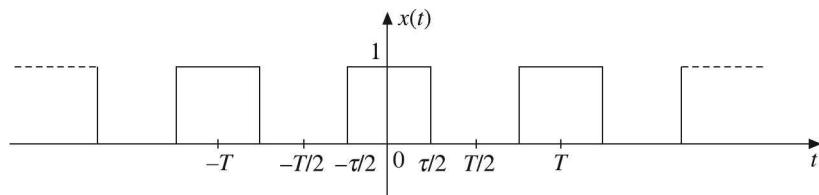


Figure 4.35 Waveform for Example 4.34.

**Solution:** Differentiating  $x(t)$  with respect to time, we get the signal  $y(t)$  as shown in Figure 4.36.

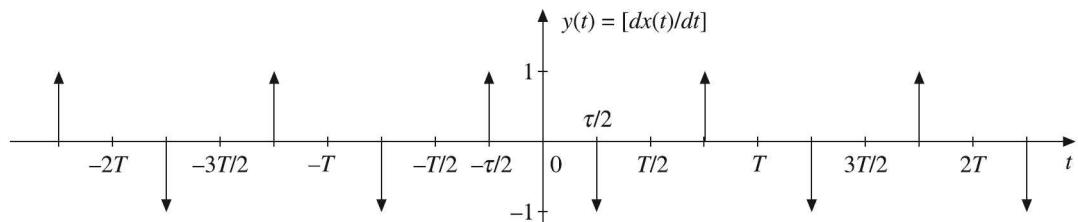


Figure 4.36 Signal  $y(t) = [dx(t)/dt]$ .

Here

$$\omega_0 = \frac{2\pi}{T}$$

Fourier series of  $y(t)$  is given by

$$\begin{aligned} D_n &= \frac{1}{T} \int_{-T/2}^{T/2} y(t) e^{-jn\omega_0 t} dt \\ &= \frac{1}{T} \int_{-T/2}^{T/2} \left[ \delta\left(t + \frac{\tau}{2}\right) - \delta\left(t - \frac{\tau}{2}\right) \right] e^{-jn\omega_0 t} dt \\ &= \frac{1}{T} \left[ \int_{-T/2}^{T/2} \delta\left(t + \frac{\tau}{2}\right) e^{-jn\omega_0 t} dt - \int_{-T/2}^{T/2} \delta\left(t - \frac{\tau}{2}\right) e^{-jn\omega_0 t} dt \right] \\ &= \frac{1}{T} \left[ e^{jn\frac{2\pi\tau}{T}} - e^{-jn\frac{2\pi\tau}{T}} \right] \\ \therefore D_n &= \frac{2j}{T} \left[ \sin\left(\frac{n\pi}{T}\tau\right) \right] \end{aligned}$$

We have

$$y(t) = \frac{d}{dt} x(t)$$

Let  $C_n$  be the Fourier series of  $x(t)$ . Using time differentiation property, we get

$$\begin{aligned} D_n &= jn\omega_0 C_n \\ C_n &= \frac{1}{jn\omega_0} D_n \\ &= \left( \frac{1T}{jn2\pi} \right) \left[ \frac{2j}{T} \sin\left(\frac{n\pi}{T}\tau\right) \right] = \frac{1}{n\pi} \sin\left(\frac{n\pi}{T}\tau\right) \\ \therefore &= \frac{\tau}{T} \frac{\sin(n\pi/T)\tau}{(n\pi/T)\tau} = \frac{\tau}{T} \operatorname{sinc}\left(\frac{n\pi}{T}\tau\right) \end{aligned}$$

**EXAMPLE 4.35** The voltage  $v(t)$  having the waveform shown in Figure 4.37 is applied to the circuit shown in Figure 4.38(a). Determine the current  $i(t)$  using Fourier series.

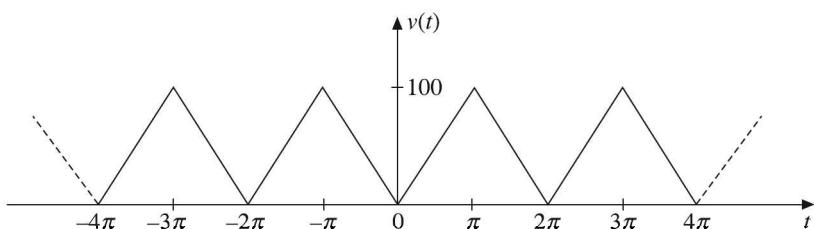
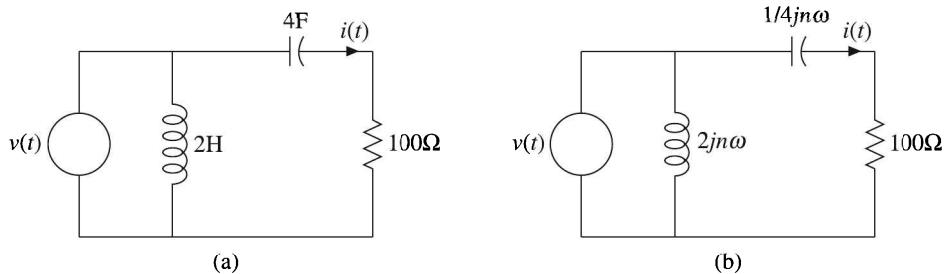


Figure 4.37 Signal for Example 4.35.



**Figure 4.38** (a) Circuit for Example 4.35 (b) Its equivalent.

**Solution:** The Fourier series of the signal shown in Figure 4.37 can be found as:

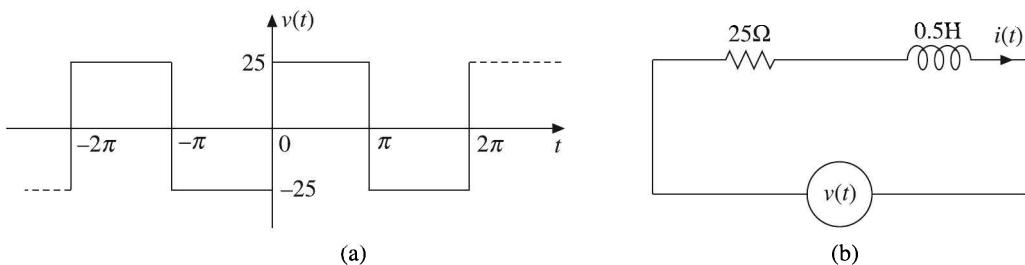
[Refer Example 4.4]  $v(t) = \frac{100}{2} - \frac{4(100)}{\pi^2} \sum_{n=1,3,5,\dots}^{\infty} \frac{\cos nt}{n^2}$

Since the capacitor in the circuit shown in Figure 4.38(a) does not allow the dc current, the dc term in the input can be neglected and only harmonic components are to be considered. So the given network can be redrawn as shown in Figure 4.38(b).

$$\therefore v(t) = -\frac{4(100)}{\pi^2} \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{\cos nt}{n^2}$$

$$\therefore i(t) = \frac{v(t)}{100 + \left(\frac{1}{4jn\omega}\right)} = \frac{v(t)}{100 - \frac{j}{4n\omega}} = \frac{4n\omega v(t)}{400n\omega - j} = \frac{4n\omega v(t)}{\sqrt{1 + 160000n^2\omega^2}} \left| -\tan^{-1}\left(\frac{1}{400n\omega}\right)\right.$$

**EXAMPLE 4.36** The waveform shown in Figure 4.39(a) is applied to the circuit shown in Figure 4.39(b). Determine the third harmonic frequency current using Fourier series.



**Figure 4.39** (a) Voltage waveform (b) Circuit diagram for Example 4.36.

**Solution:** The trigonometric Fourier series representation of the voltage waveform shown in Figure 4.39(a) is given by [Refer Example 4.7]

$$x(t) = \sum_{n=\text{odd}}^{\infty} \frac{100}{n\pi} \sin nt = \frac{100}{\pi} \sin t + \frac{100}{3\pi} \sin 3t + \frac{100}{5\pi} \sin 5t$$

The third harmonic component of voltage signal =  $(100/3\pi) \sin 3t$ .

The impedance of third harmonic is:

$$Z = R + j3\omega L = 25 + j3(1)(0.5) = 25 + j1.5$$

$$\therefore I_m = \frac{100/3\pi}{\sqrt{(25)^2 + (1.5)^2}}$$

$$I_{\text{rms}} = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}} \frac{100/3\pi}{\sqrt{(25)^2 + (0.5)^2}}$$

## MATLAB PROGRAMS

### Program 4.1

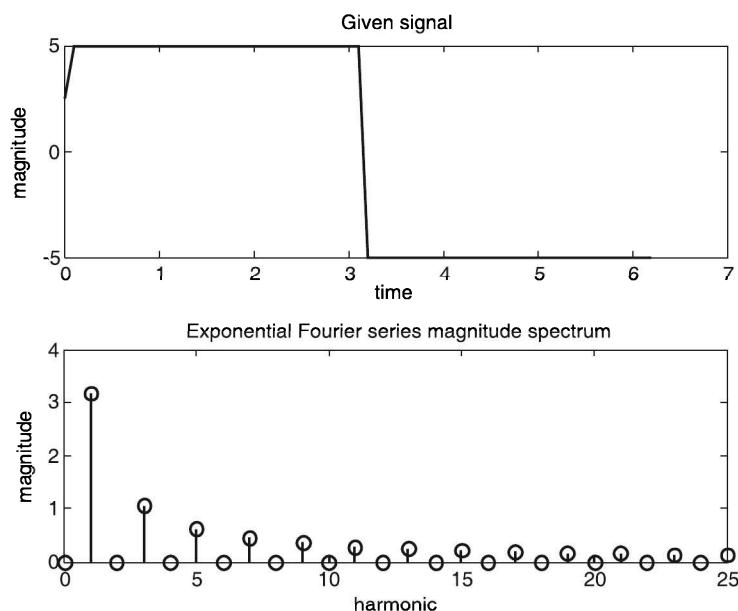
```
% Finding Exponential Fourier series of various periodic signals
clc;close all;clear all;
syms Cn C0 Kernal t M M1
% obtain FS coefficients useful for rectangular,triangular, exponential
N=input('Enter the number of coefficients required')
X1=input('Enter the equation for first half')
X2=input('Enter the equation for second half')
t1=input('Enter the moment of first discontinuity')
t2=input('Enter the moment of second discontinuity')
t3=input('enter the moment of third discontinuity')
T=input('Enter period of the signal')
%signal plotting
y1=subs(X1,t,[t1:0.1:t2]);
y2=subs(X2,t,[t2+.1:0.1:t3]);
t4=t1:0.1:t3; [a b]=size(t4);
y3=[y1,y2];
subplot(2,1,1);plot(t4,y3(1,1:b));title('Given signal');xlabel
('time');ylabel('magnitude')
%Fourier series generation
for n=1:N+1
    w=2*pi*(1/T);
    Kernal= exp(-j*w*(n-1)*t);
    Cn=(1/T)*simplify(int(X1*Kernal,t1,t2)+int(X2*Kernal,t2,t3));
    M(1,n)=abs(simplify(Cn));
    %C0=double((1/T)*[int(X1,t1,t2)+int(X2,t2,t3)]);
    %M1(1,n)=subs(atan(imag(Cn)/real(Cn)),n);
end
subplot(2,1,2);stem([0:N],simplify(double(M)));title('Exponential
Fourier series magnitude spectrum');xlabel('harmonic'); ylabel
('magnitude')
```

```
%subplot(3,1,3);stem(double(M1));title('Exponential Fourier series
phase spectrum'); xlabel('harmonic');ylabel('phase')
```

Output:

**Example 1:**

```
Enter the number of coefficients required 25
N =
25
Enter the equation for first half 5*heaviside(t)
X1 =
5*heaviside(t)
Enter the equation for second half -5*heaviside(t)
X2 =
(-5)*heaviside(t)
Enter the moment of first discontinuity 0
t1 =
0
Enter the moment of second discontinuity pi
t2 =
3.1416
enter the moment of third discontinuity 2*pi
t3 =
6.2832
Enter period of the signal 2*pi
T =
6.2832
```



**Example 2:**

Enter the number of coefficients required 30

N =  
30

Enter the equation for first half t

X1 =  
t

Enter the equation for second half (2-t)

X2 =  
2 - t

Enter the moment of first discontinuity 0

t1 =  
0

Enter the moment of second discontinuity 1

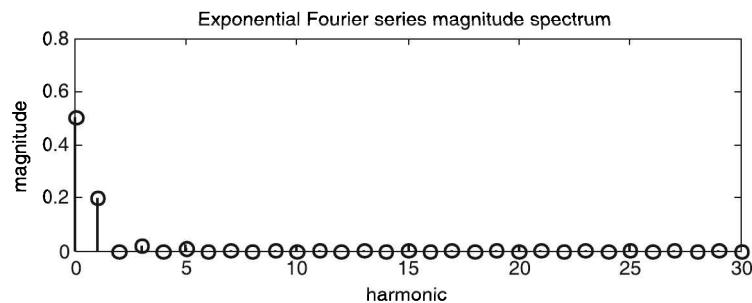
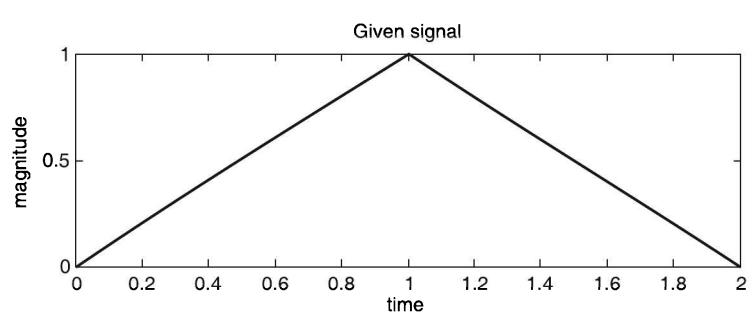
t2 =  
1

Enter the moment of third discontinuity 2

t3 =  
2

Enter period of the signal 2

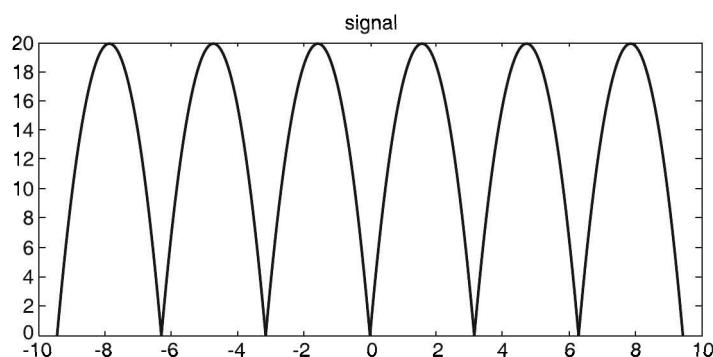
T =  
2

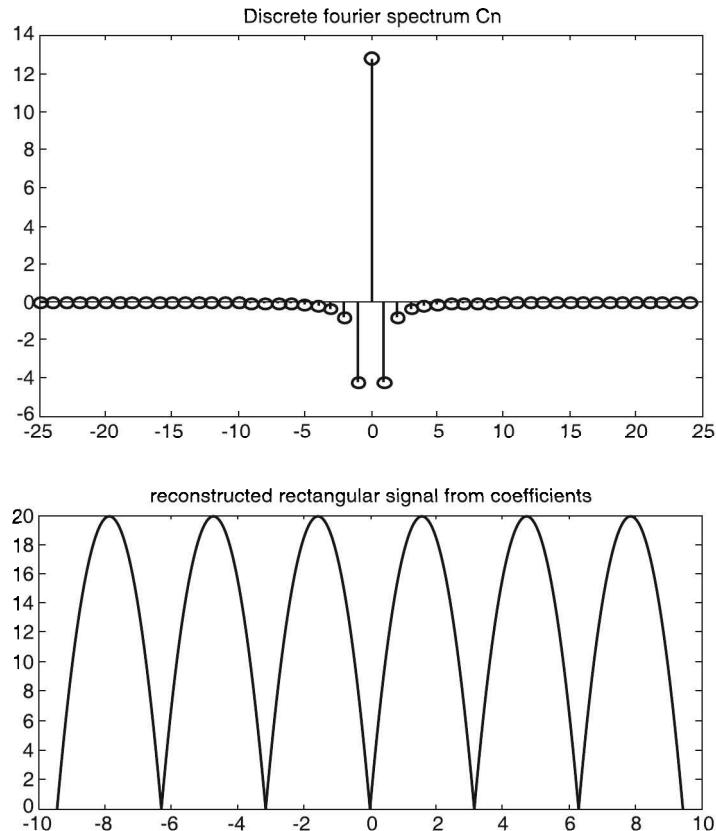


**Program 4.2**

```
%Generation of Exponential Fourier series of a periodic Fullwave
rectified signal
clc;close all;clear all;
t=-3*pi:0.001:3*pi;
% periodic rectangular pulse
A=20;
w=1;
y=A*sin(w*t);
figure; plot(t,abs(y));
title('signal')
% number of harmonics in the series
N=25;
%generate fourier coefficients and basis functions
for i=1:N
    %y1(0)=2*A/pi;
    cp(i)=2*A/(pi*(1-4*(i-1)^2));
    cn(i)=2*A/(pi*(1-4*(-i)^2));
    cn1=fliplr(cn);
    y2(i,:)=cp(i)*(exp(j*2*w*(i-1)*t));
    y3(i,:)=cn(i)*(exp(-j*2*w*(i)*t));
end
%plotting of Discrete fourier spectrum
figure;stem([-N:N-1],[cn1, cp]);
title('Discrete fourier spectrum Cn')
% reconstruction of the signal from coefficients
y4(1,:)=sum(y2)+sum(y3);
figure;plot(t,y4)
title('reconstructed rectangular signal from coefficients')
```

Output:



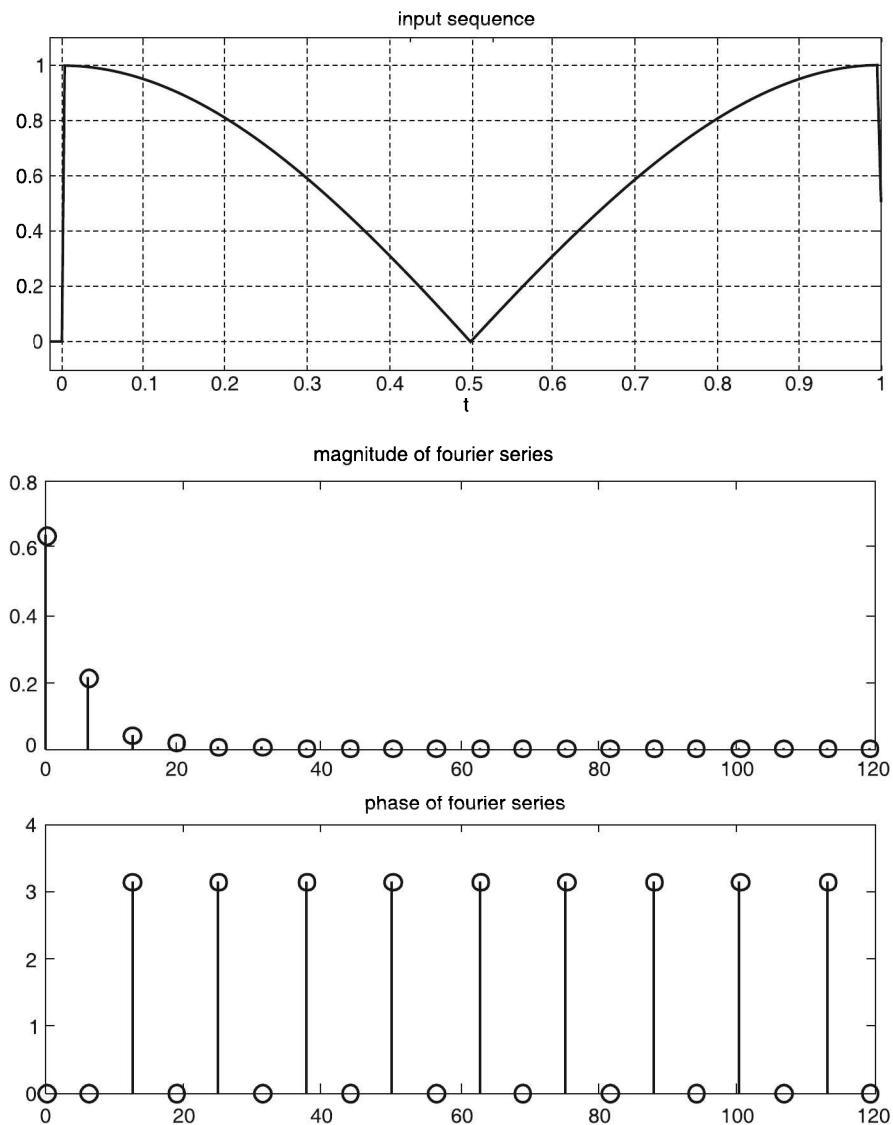


### Program 4.3

```
% Exponential Fourier series representation of Fullwave rectified
% signal
clc;clear all;close all
syms t
T0 = 1;
m = heaviside(t)-heaviside(t- T0);
x = abs(cos(pi*t))*m;
N=20;
% computation of N Fourier series coefficients
for k = 1:N,
X1(k) = int(x*exp(-j* 2 *pi*(k-1)*t/T0), t, 0, T0)/T0;
X(k) = subs(X1(k));
w(k) = (k-1)*2*pi/T0; % harmonic frequencies
end
ezplot(x),grid
```

```
title('input sequence')
figure
subplot(2,1,1), stem(w,abs(X))
title('magnitude of fourier series')
subplot(2,1,2), stem(w,angle(X))
title('phase of fourier series')
```

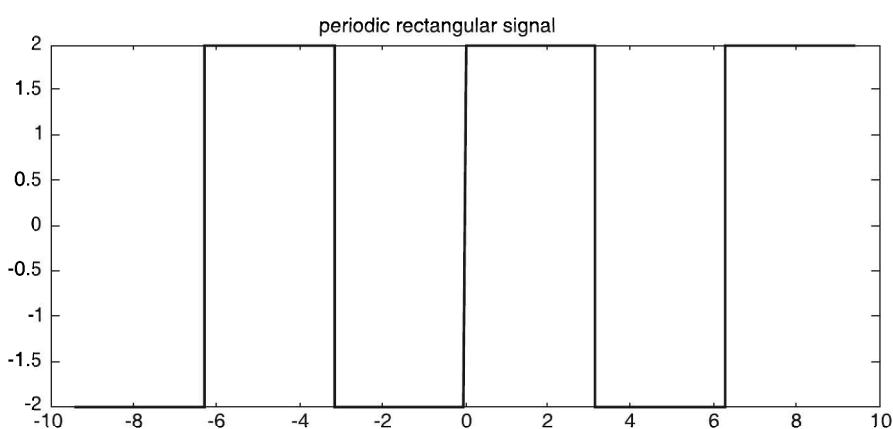
Output:

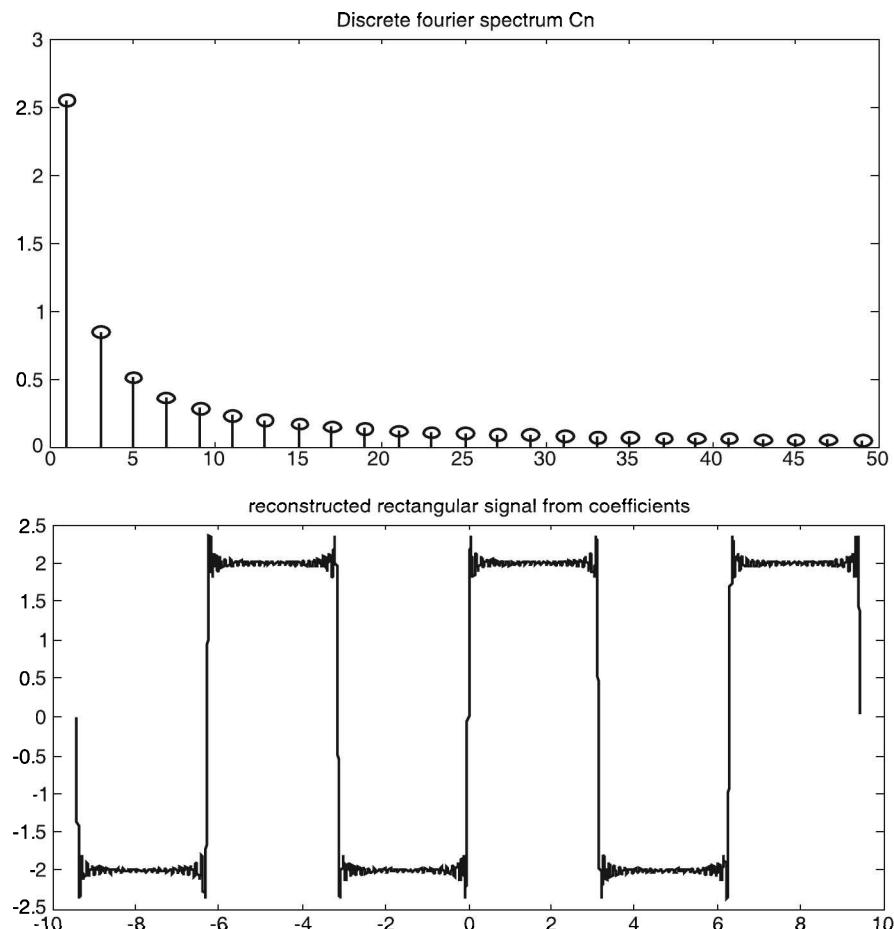


### Program 4.4

```
%Program to generate Trigonometric Fourier series of a periodic
rectangular signal
clc;close all;clear all;
t=-3*pi:0.001:3*pi;
% periodic rectangular pulse
A=2;
f=1/(2*pi);
y=A*square(2*pi*f*t);
plot(t,y);
title('periodic rectangular signal')
% number of harmonics in the series
N=25;
%generate fourier coefficients and basis functions
n=0:N-1;
n1=2*n+1;
for i=1:N
    y1(i)=4*A/(pi*n1(i));
    y2(i,:)=((4*A)/(pi*n1(i)))*(sin(2*pi*f*n1(i)*t));
end
%plotting of Discrete fourier spectrum
figure;stem(n1,y1);
title('Discrete fourier spectrum Cn')
% reconstruction of the signal from coefficients
y3(1,:)=sum(y2);
figure;plot(t,y3)
title('reconstructed rectangular signal from coefficients')
```

Output:



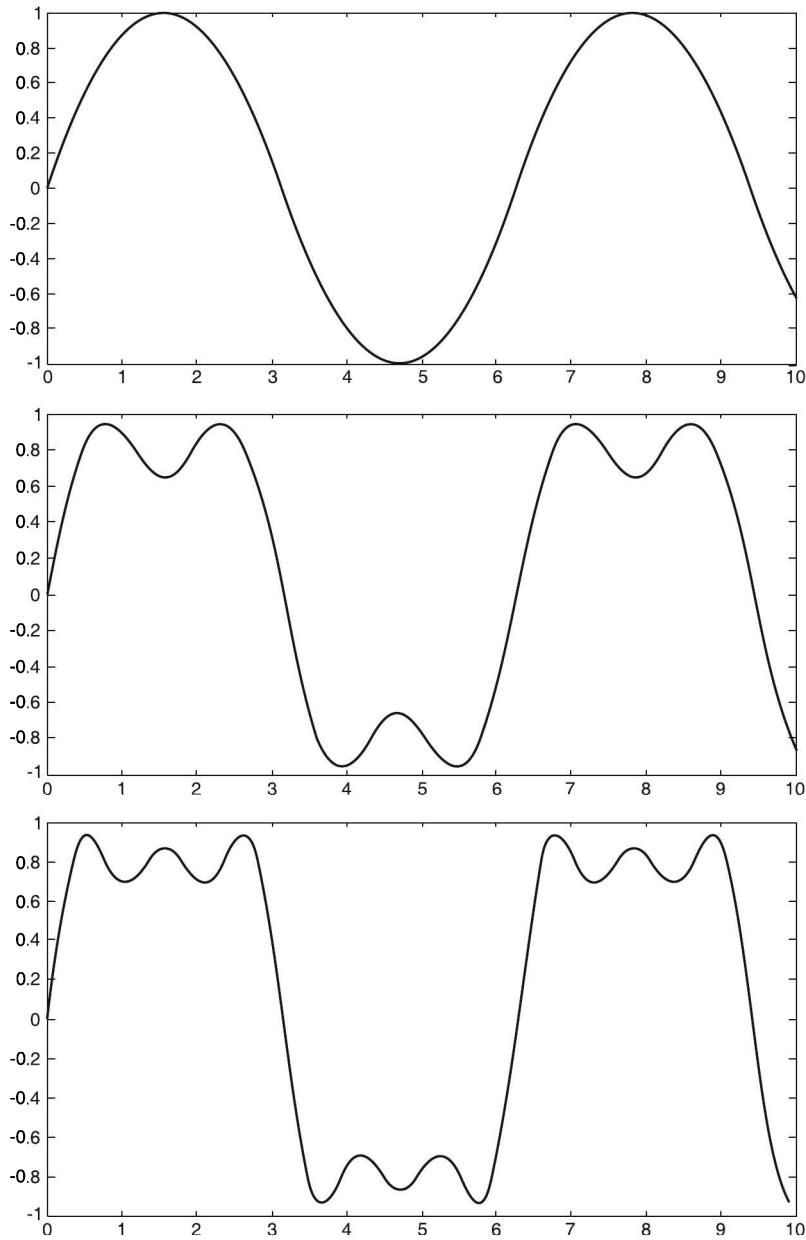


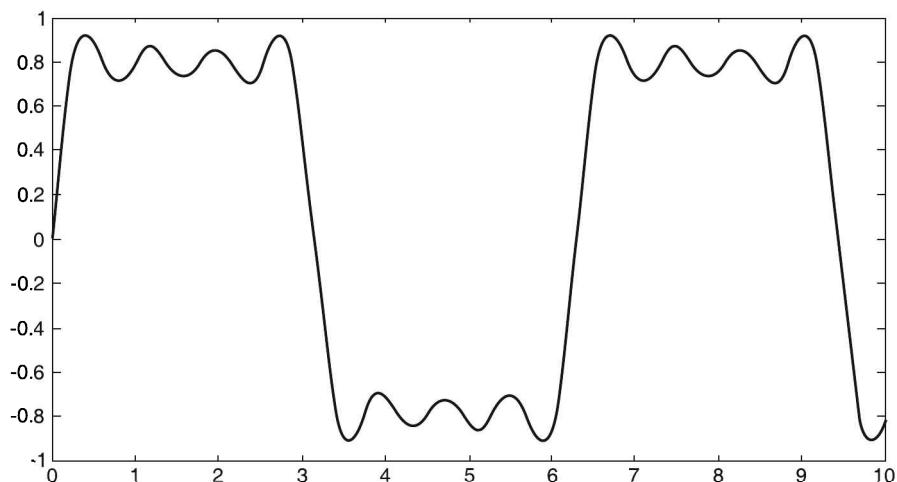
### Program 4.5

```
% Verification of the Gibb's phenomena
clc; clear all; close all;
t = 0:.1:10;
y1= sin(t);
plot(t,y1)
y2 = sin(t) + sin(3*t)/3;
figure, plot(t,y2)
y3 = sin(t) + sin(3*t)/3 + sin(5*t)/5 ;
figure, plot(t,y3)
y4= sin(t) + sin(3*t)/3 + sin(5*t)/5 + sin(7*t)/7;
figure, plot(t,y4)
t = 0:.02:3.14;
y = zeros(10,length(t));
x = zeros(size(t));
for k=1:2:19
```

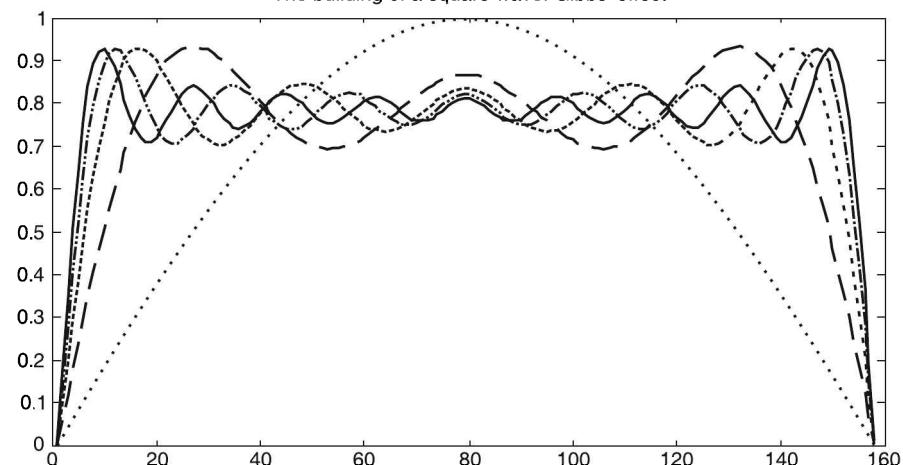
```
x = x + sin(k*t)/k;
y5((k+1)/2,:) = x;
end
figure, plot(y5(1:2:9,:)')
title('The building of a square wave: Gibbs'' effect')
```

Output:





The building of a square wave: Gibbs' effect



### SHORT QUESTIONS WITH ANSWERS

1. What are the three important classes of transformation methods available for continuous-time systems?

*Ans.* The three important classes of transformation methods available for continuous-time systems are:

- |                       |                           |
|-----------------------|---------------------------|
| (a) Fourier series    | (b) Fourier transform and |
| (c) Laplace transform |                           |

2. What is Fourier series?

*Ans.* The representation of signals over a certain interval of time in terms of the linear combination of orthogonal functions is called Fourier series.

3. What are the three important classes of Fourier series methods available?

*Ans.* The three important classes of Fourier series methods available are:

- (a) Trigonometric form
- (b) Cosine form and
- (c) Exponential form

4. What is exponential Fourier series?

*Ans.* In the representation of signals over a certain interval of time in terms of the linear combination of orthogonal functions, if the orthogonal functions are exponential functions, then it is called exponential Fourier series.

5. What is trigonometric Fourier series?

*Ans.* In the representation of signals over a certain interval of time in terms of the linear combination of orthogonal functions, if the orthogonal functions are trigonometric functions, then it is called trigonometric Fourier series.

6. What are Dirichlet's conditions? State them.

*Ans.* The conditions under which a periodic signal can be represented by a Fourier series are known as Dirichlet's conditions named after the mathematician Dirichlet who first found them. They are as follows:

In each period,

- (a) The function  $x(t)$  must be a single valued function.
- (b) The function  $x(t)$  has only a finite number of maxima and minima.
- (c) The function  $x(t)$  has a finite number of discontinuities.

$$(d) \text{ The function } x(t) \text{ is absolutely integrable over one period, that is } \int_0^T |x(t)| dt < \infty.$$

These are the sufficient but not necessary conditions for the existence of the Fourier series of a periodic function  $x(t)$ .

7. What are the types of symmetry that may be present in a waveform?

*Ans.* The types of symmetry that may be present in a waveform are:

- (a) Even symmetry
- (b) Odd symmetry
- (c) Half wave symmetry
- (d) Quarter wave symmetry

8. What is even symmetry? How does it help in simplification of calculations?

*Ans.* A function  $x(t)$  is said to have even symmetry, if  $x(t) = x(-t)$ .

When even symmetry exists, the calculations become simple because we have to calculate only

$$a_0 = \frac{2}{T} \int_0^{T/2} x(t) dt, \quad a_n = \frac{4}{T} \int_0^{T/2} x(t) \cos n\omega_0 t dt \quad \text{and} \quad b_n = 0$$

9. What is odd symmetry? How does it help in simplification of calculations?

*Ans.* A function  $x(t)$  is said to have odd symmetry, if  $x(t) = -x(-t)$ .

When odd symmetry exists, the calculations become simple because we have to calculate only

$$b_n = \frac{4}{T} \int_0^{T/2} x(t) \sin n\omega_0 t dt \quad \text{and} \quad a_0 = 0 \quad \text{and} \quad a_n = 0$$

10. What is half wave symmetry? What is its effect?

*Ans.* A function  $x(t)$  is said to have half wave symmetry, if  $x(t) = -x\left(t \pm \frac{T}{2}\right)$ .

When half wave symmetry exists, only odd harmonics will be present.

11. What is quarter wave symmetry? How is it useful?

*Ans.* A function  $x(t)$  is said to have quarter wave symmetry, if  $x(t) = -x\left(t \pm \frac{T}{2}\right)$  in addition to either even symmetry or odd symmetry.

For odd and half wave symmetry,  $a_0 = 0$ ,  $a_n = 0$ , and  $b_n = \frac{8}{T} \int_0^{T/4} x(t) \cos n\omega_0 t dt$

For even and half wave symmetry,  $a_0 = 0$ ,  $b_n = 0$ , and  $a_n = \frac{8}{T} \int_0^{T/4} x(t) \sin n\omega_0 t dt$

12. How do you obtain exponential Fourier series coefficients from trigonometric Fourier series coefficients?

*Ans.* This conversion can be done using the relations:

$$C_n = \frac{1}{2} [a_n - jb_n], \quad C_{-n} = \frac{1}{2} [a_n + jb_n], \quad C_0 = a_0$$

13. How do you obtain trigonometric Fourier series coefficients from exponential Fourier series coefficients?

*Ans.* This conversion can be done using the relations:

$$a_0 = C_0, \quad a_n = C_n + C_{-n}, \quad b_n = j[C_n - C_{-n}]$$

14. How do you obtain cosine Fourier series from exponential Fourier series?

*Ans.* This conversion can be done using the relations:

$$A_0 = C_0, \quad A_n = 2|C_n|$$

15. Write short notes on exponential Fourier series?

*Ans.* The exponential Fourier series is the most widely used form of Fourier series. In this, the function  $x(t)$  is expressed as a weighted sum of the complex exponential functions. Although the trigonometric form and the cosine representation are the common forms of Fourier series, the complex exponential form is more general and usually more convenient and more compact. So, it is used almost exclusively, and it finds extensive application in communication theory.

16. What is Fourier spectrum?

*Ans.* The Fourier spectrum of a periodic signal  $x(t)$  is a plot of its Fourier coefficients versus frequency  $\omega$ . It is in two parts: (a) The amplitude spectrum and (b) The phase spectrum. The plot of the amplitude of Fourier coefficients versus frequency is known as the amplitude spectra, and the plot of the phase of Fourier coefficients versus frequency is known as the phase spectra. The two plots together are known as Fourier frequency spectra of  $x(t)$ .

17. What do you mean by Gibbs phenomenon?

*Ans.* Gibbs discovered that for a periodic signal with discontinuities, if the signal is reconstructed by adding the Fourier series, overshoots appear around the edges. These overshoots decay outwards in a damped oscillatory manner away from the edges. This is called Gibbs phenomenon.

### REVIEW QUESTIONS

1. Explain the conditions under which any periodic waveform can be expressed using Fourier series.
2. Show that the sum of two sinusoids is periodic provided that their frequencies are integral multiples of a fundamental frequency  $\omega_0$ .
3. Derive the expressions for the trigonometric Fourier series coefficients.
4. Discuss the types of symmetry present in waveforms? How does it help in simplifying the calculations?
5. Discuss the cosine form of representation of Fourier series.
6. (a) Obtain trigonometric Fourier series from exponential Fourier series.  
 (b) Obtain exponential Fourier series from trigonometric Fourier series.  
 (c) Obtain Cosine Fourier series from trigonometric Fourier series.  
 (d) Obtain Exponential Fourier series from cosine Fourier series.
7. State the properties of the Fourier series.
8. Write a short note on complex Fourier spectrum.
9. Show that the magnitude spectrum of every periodic function is symmetrical about the vertical axis passing through the origin, and the phase spectrum is antisymmetrical about the vertical axis passing through the origin.
10. Explain Gibbs phenomenon.

### FILL IN THE BLANKS

1. The three important classes of transformation methods available for continuous time systems are \_\_\_\_\_, \_\_\_\_\_ and \_\_\_\_\_.
2. The representation of signals over a certain interval of time in terms of the linear combination of orthogonal signals is called \_\_\_\_\_.

3. The three important classes of Fourier series methods are \_\_\_\_\_, \_\_\_\_\_ and \_\_\_\_\_.
4. Fourier series applies only to \_\_\_\_\_ signals.
5. The conditions to be satisfied for the Fourier series of a function to exist are called \_\_\_\_\_ conditions.
6. The Dirichlet's conditions are the \_\_\_\_\_ conditions but not the \_\_\_\_\_ conditions for the existence of Fourier series.
7. The sum of two sinusoids is periodic provided that their frequencies are \_\_\_\_\_ of a fundamental frequency.
8. The infinite series of sine and cosine terms of frequencies  $0, \omega_0, 2\omega_0, \dots, k\omega_0, \dots$ , is known as \_\_\_\_\_ form of Fourier series.
9. The net areas of sinusoids over complete periods are \_\_\_\_\_.
10. The Fourier series expansion of a periodic signal is \_\_\_\_\_.
11. If  $x(t)$  has even symmetry, also called \_\_\_\_\_ symmetry, then only \_\_\_\_\_ are to be evaluated.
12. If  $x(t)$  has odd symmetry, also called \_\_\_\_\_ symmetry, then only \_\_\_\_\_ is to be evaluated.
13. For an even function  $x(t) = \text{_____}$  and for an odd function  $x(t) = \text{_____}$ .
14. The Fourier series expansion of an \_\_\_\_\_ periodic function contains only cosine terms and a constant.
15. The Fourier series expansion of an \_\_\_\_\_ periodic function contains only sine terms.
16. The even function shows the mirror symmetry with respect to the \_\_\_\_\_ axis.
17. The Fourier series expansion of a periodic signal having \_\_\_\_\_ symmetry contains odd harmonics only.
18. Quarter wave symmetry is a combination of \_\_\_\_\_ symmetry and \_\_\_\_\_ or \_\_\_\_\_ symmetry.
19. The cosine form is also called the \_\_\_\_\_ form or \_\_\_\_\_ form.
20. The \_\_\_\_\_ Fourier series is the most widely used Fourier series.
21. The magnitude line spectrum is always an \_\_\_\_\_ function of  $n$ .
22. The phase line spectrum is always an \_\_\_\_\_ function of  $n$ .
23. The formulae for the conversion of exponential Fourier series to trigonometric Fourier series are \_\_\_\_\_, \_\_\_\_\_ and \_\_\_\_\_.
24. The formulae for the conversion of trigonometric Fourier series to exponential Fourier series are \_\_\_\_\_, \_\_\_\_\_ and \_\_\_\_\_.
25. The mean power over a period of time in terms of trigonometric Fourier series coefficients is given by \_\_\_\_\_.

26. The mean power over a period of time in terms of exponential Fourier series coefficients is given by \_\_\_\_\_.
27. The Fourier spectrum of a periodic signal  $x(t)$  is a plot of its \_\_\_\_\_ versus \_\_\_\_\_.
28. The amplitude spectra and phase spectra together is called \_\_\_\_\_.
29. The Fourier spectrum exists only at \_\_\_\_\_ frequencies.
30. The spectrum of the trigonometric Fourier series is \_\_\_\_\_ sided.
31. The spectrum of the exponential Fourier series is \_\_\_\_\_ sided.
32. The magnitude spectrum exhibits \_\_\_\_\_ symmetry and the phase spectrum exhibits \_\_\_\_\_ symmetry.
33. The Fourier analysis is also sometimes called the \_\_\_\_\_ analysis.
34. The envelope of the spectrum depends only upon the \_\_\_\_\_ but not upon the \_\_\_\_\_.

### OBJECTIVE TYPE QUESTIONS

1. Fourier series applies to
 

(a) only periodic signals	(b) only aperiodic signals
(c) both periodic and aperiodic signals	(d) only random signals
2. For the existence of Fourier series, Dirichlet's conditions are
 

(a) necessary	(b) sufficient
(c) necessary and sufficient	(d) none of these
3. The net areas of sinusoids over complete periods are
 

(a) finite	(b) infinite	(c) zero	(d) none of these
------------	--------------	----------	-------------------
4. Even symmetry is also called
 

(a) rotation symmetry	(b) mirror symmetry
(c) full symmetry	(d) half symmetry
5. The exponential Fourier series representation of a signal  $x(t)$  over the interval  $t_0$  to  $t_0 + T$  is given by
 

(a) $\sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} C_n e^{-jn\omega_0 t}$	(b) $\sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} C_n e^{jn\omega_0 t}$	(c) $\sum_{n=0}^{\infty} C_n e^{-jn\omega_0 t}$	(d) $\sum_{n=0}^{\infty} C_n e^{jn\omega_0 t}$
---	--	---	--
6. The exponential Fourier series coefficient  $C_n$  is given by
 

(a) $\frac{1}{T} \int_{t_0}^{t_0+T} x(t) e^{jn\omega_0 t} dt$	(b) $\frac{1}{T} \int_{t_0}^{t_0+T} x(t) e^{-jn\omega_0 t} dt$
(c) $\int_{t_0}^{t_0+T} x(t) e^{-jn\omega_0 t} dt$	(d) $T \int_{t_0}^{t_0+T} x(t) e^{jn\omega_0 t} dt$



18. The exponential Fourier series coefficient  $C_{-n}$  in terms of trigonometric Fourier coefficients is
- (a)  $C_{-n} = \frac{1}{2}(a_n + jb_n)$       (b)  $C_{-n} = \frac{1}{2}(a_n - jb_n)$   
 (c)  $C_{-n} = (a_n - jb_n)$       (d)  $C_{-n} = (a_n + jb_n)$
19. The trigonometric Fourier series coefficient  $a_n$  in terms of exponential Fourier series coefficients is
- (a)  $a_n = C_n + C_{-n}$       (b)  $a_n = C_n - C_{-n}$       (c)  $a_n = C_n + jC_{-n}$       (d)  $a_n = C_n - jC_{-n}$
20. The trigonometric Fourier series coefficient  $b_n$  in terms of exponential Fourier series coefficients is
- (a)  $b_n = j(C_n + C_{-n})$       (b)  $b_n = j(C_n - C_{-n})$       (c)  $C_n + C_{-n}$       (d)  $C_n - C_{-n}$
21. The frequency spectrum of a periodic signal is
- (a) continuous      (b) discrete  
 (c) both continuous and discrete      (d) none
22. The frequency spectrum of an aperiodic signal is
- (a) continuous      (b) discrete  
 (c) both continuous and discrete      (d) none
23. The amplitude spectrum of exponential Fourier series is \_\_\_\_\_ about vertical axis.
- (a) symmetrical      (b) antisymmetrical      (c) both (a) and (b)      (d) none
24. The phase spectrum of exponential Fourier series is \_\_\_\_\_ about vertical axis.
- (a) symmetrical      (b) antisymmetrical      (c) both (a) and (b)      (d) none
25. The time domain representation of a signal graphically is called
- (a) waveform      (b) spectrum      (c) magnitude      (d) phase
26. The frequency domain representation of a signal graphically is called
- (a) waveform      (b) spectrum      (c) magnitude      (d) phase
27. The cosine Fourier series is called
- (a) polar      (b) harmonic      (c) both (a) and (b)      (d) none

## PROBLEMS

1. Find the trigonometric Fourier series for the periodic signal  $x(t)$  shown in Figure 4.40.

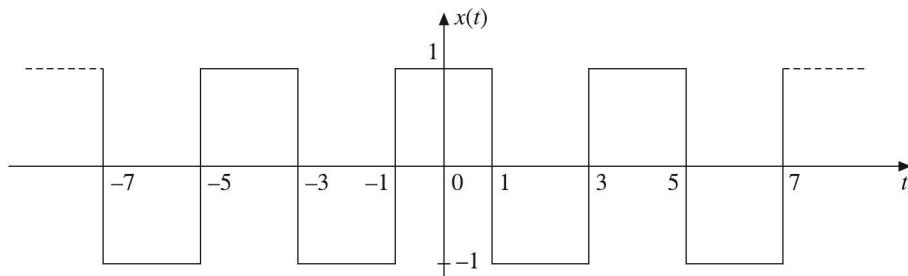
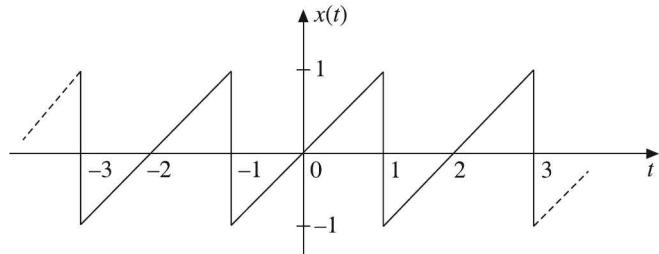


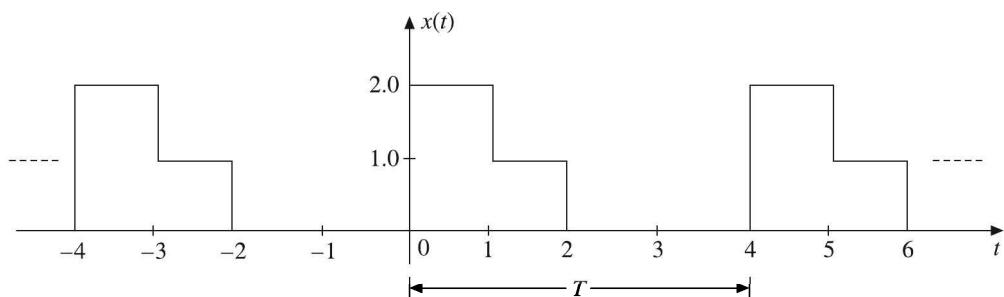
Figure 4.40 Periodic signal for Problem 1.

2. Find the trigonometric Fourier series for the periodic signal  $x(t)$  shown in Figure 4.41.



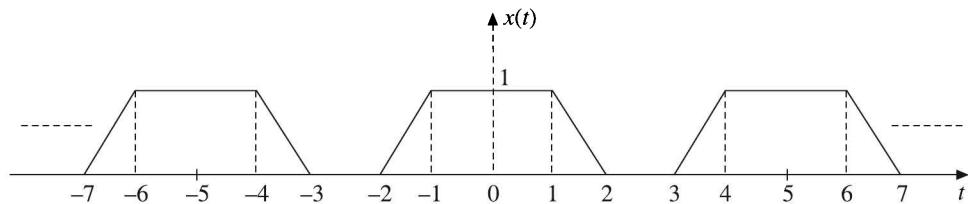
**Figure 4.41** Periodic signal for Problem 2.

3. Compute the exponential Fourier series of the signal shown in Figure 4.42.



**Figure 4.42** Periodic signal for Problem 3.

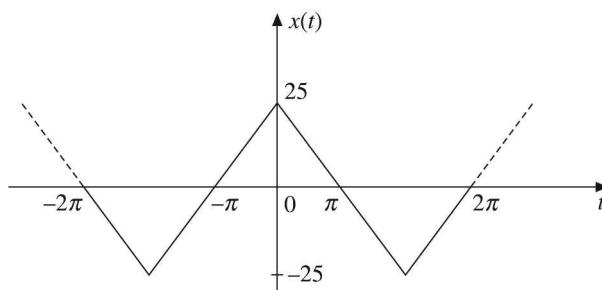
4. Find the exponential series of the signal shown in Figure 4.43.



**Figure 4.43** Periodic signal for Problem 4.

5. Find the trigonometric Fourier series of  $x(t) = t^2$  over the interval  $(-1, 1)$ .

6. Find the exponential series of the triangular waveform shown in Figure 4.44.



**Figure 4.44** Periodic signal for Problem 6.

7. Determine the Fourier series representation for  $x(t) = 2 \sin(2\pi t - 3) + \sin 6\pi t$ .

8. Find the exponential Fourier series coefficient of the signal

$$x(t) = 2 + \cos\left(\frac{2\pi t}{3}\right) + 4 \sin\left(\frac{5\pi}{3}t\right)$$

9. Find the complex exponential Fourier series coefficients for

(a)  $x(t) = 3 \cos 4\omega_0 t$

(b)  $x(t) = 2 \sin 3\omega_0 t$

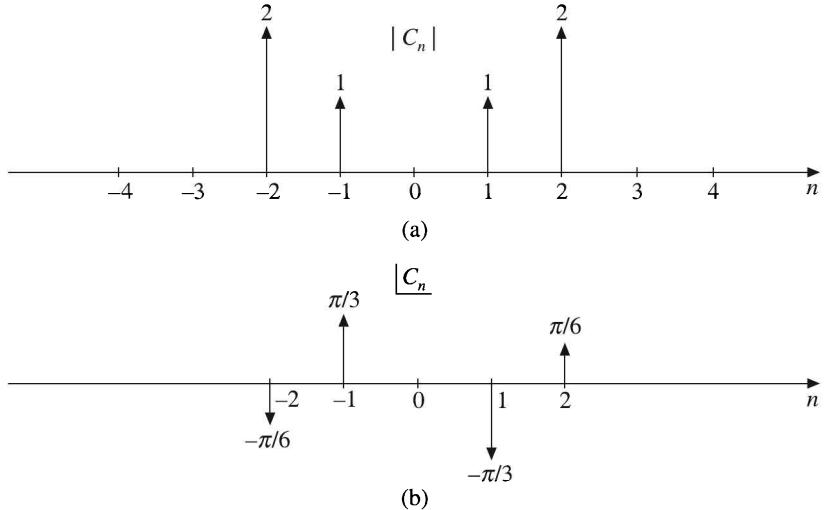
(c)  $x(t) = \sin\left(3t + \frac{\pi}{3}\right)$

(d)  $x(t) = \sin^2 t$

10. Find the Fourier series of the signal  $x(t) = e^{2t}$  with  $T = 2$ .

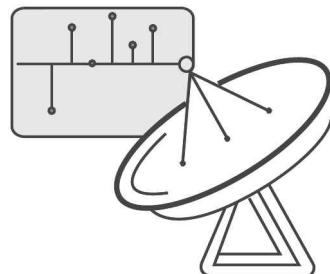
11. Find the Fourier series for the periodic signal  $x(t) = t^2$  for  $0 \leq t \leq 1$ , so that it repeats every 1 sec.

12. Determine the time signal corresponding to the magnitude and phase spectra shown in Figure 4.45 with  $\omega_0 = \pi$ .



**Figure 4.45** (a) Magnitude and (b) Phase spectra for Problem 12.

13. Find the time domain signal corresponding to  $C_n = \left(-\frac{1}{3}\right)^{|n|}$ ,  $\omega_0 = 1$ .



# Fourier Transforms

## 5.1 INTRODUCTION

In Chapter 4 we discussed about the use of Fourier series to analyse periodic signals. Using exponential form of Fourier series, any continuous-time periodic signal  $x(t)$  can be represented as a linear combination of complex exponentials and the Fourier coefficients (spectrum) are discrete. Fourier series can deal only with the periodic signals. This is the major drawback of Fourier series. However, all the naturally produced signals which need processing will be in the form of nonperiodic or aperiodic signals. Therefore, the applicability of the Fourier series is limited.

In this chapter, we discuss about Fourier transform which is mostly used to analyse aperiodic signals and can be used to analyse periodic signals also. So it overcomes the limitation of Fourier series.

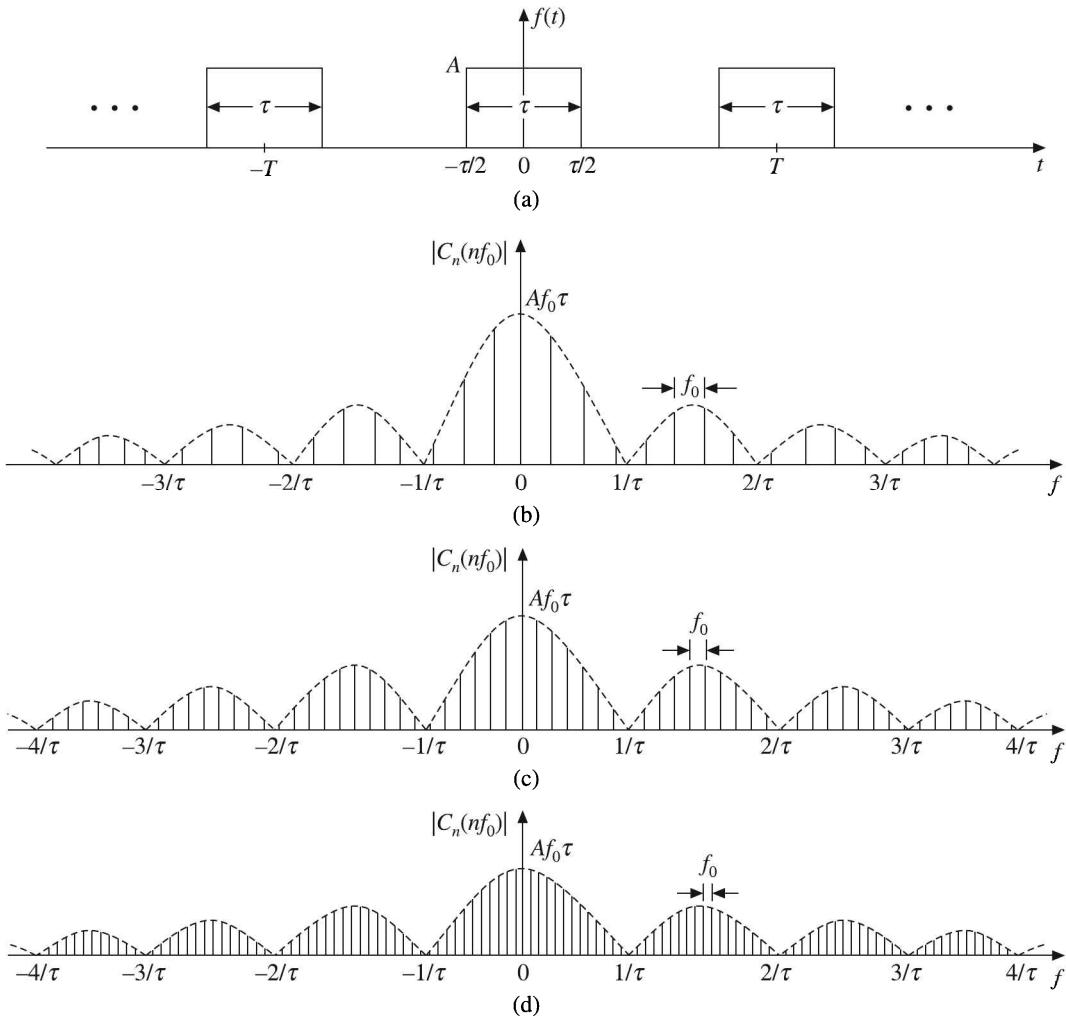
*Fourier transform* is a transformation technique which transforms signals from the continuous-time domain to the corresponding frequency domain and vice versa, and which applies for both periodic as well as aperiodic signals. Fourier transform can be developed by finding the Fourier series of a periodic function and then tending  $T$  to infinity.

The Fourier transform derived in this chapter is called the continuous-time Fourier transform (CTFT) to distinguish it from its several variants like discrete-time Fourier transform (DTFT), discrete Fourier transform (DFT) etc. However, for the sake of convenience we shall call it here only as Fourier transform.

The Fourier transform is an extremely useful mathematical tool and is extensively used in the analysis of linear time-invariant (LTI) systems, cryptography, signal analysis, signal processing, astronomy, etc. Several applications ranging from RADAR to spread spectrum communication employ Fourier transform.

## 5.2 FOURIER TRANSFORM REPRESENTATION OF NON-PERIODIC FUNCTIONS

In Chapter 4, we had derived the Fourier series of a periodic function. Now, we shall try to arrive at the Fourier transform through Fourier series. For this purpose, consider an arbitrary periodic function  $x(t)$  with a fundamental period  $T$  as shown in Figure 5.1(a). We know that the spectrum of such a periodic signal will be a discrete one with spectral lines at frequencies  $0, f_0, 2f_0, \dots$ , with the adjacent spectral lines separated by a frequency interval of  $f_0 = 1/T$ . A plot of the amplitude spectrum of signal  $x(t)$  is given in Figure 5.1(b).



**Figure 5.1** (a) Signal, (b) Its amplitude spectrum, (c) Spectrum when  $T$  is doubled, (d) Spectrum when  $T$  is increased by four times.

Suppose we now increase the fundamental period  $T$  of the periodic signal  $x(t)$ . Let us say double the period. Then the amplitude spectrum will appear as shown in Figure 5.1(c). When the period is increased by four times, the spectrum will be as shown in Figure 5.1(d). Observe that the amplitude of the spectrum is decreased but the general shape remains unchanged.

As can be seen from Figure 5.1[(c) and (d)], an increase in fundamental period  $T$  results in a spectrum in which the spectral lines become closer and closer. This is to be expected, since  $f_0 = 1/T$  and so, as  $T$  goes on increasing,  $f_0$  goes on decreasing and the spacing between adjacent spectral lines becomes smaller and smaller.

On the other hand, as the pulses in  $x(t)$  are separated by  $T$  seconds, as  $T$  increases, the interval between adjacent pulses becomes longer and longer. Finally, as  $T$  tends to infinity, adjacent pulses become separated by an infinite amount of time, i.e.  $x(t)$  becomes a non-periodic function. At the same time, separation between the spectral lines becomes infinitesimally small, or, in other words, a non-periodic signal will be having a continuous spectrum. The envelope of the spectrum depends only upon the pulse shape but not upon the period of repetition.

### 5.2.1 Derivation of the Fourier Transform of a Non-periodic Signal from the Fourier Series of a Periodic Signal

Let  $x(t)$  be a non-periodic function and,  $x_T(t)$  be periodic with period  $T$ , and let their relation is given by

$$x(t) = \text{Lt}_{T \rightarrow \infty} x_T(t)$$

The Fourier series of a periodic signal  $x_T(t)$  is:

$$x_T(t) = \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} C_n e^{jn\omega_0 t}$$

where  $C_n = \frac{1}{T} \int_{-T/2}^{T/2} x_T(t) e^{-jn\omega_0 t} dt$  and  $\omega_0 = \frac{2\pi}{T}$

[The term  $C_n$  represents the amplitude of the component of frequency  $n\omega_0$ .]

$$\therefore T C_n = \int_{-T/2}^{T/2} x_T(t) e^{-jn\omega_0 t} dt$$

Let  $n\omega_0 = \omega$  at  $T \rightarrow \infty$ . As  $T \rightarrow \infty$ , we have  $\omega_0 = (2\pi/T) \rightarrow 0$  and the discrete Fourier spectrum becomes continuous. Further, the summation becomes integral and  $x_T(t) \rightarrow x(t)$ .

Thus, as  $T \rightarrow \infty$ ,

$$\begin{aligned} T C_n &= \text{Lt}_{T \rightarrow \infty} \int_{-T/2}^{T/2} x_T(t) e^{-j\omega t} dt = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \left[ \text{Lt}_{T \rightarrow \infty} x_T(t) \right] e^{-j\omega t} dt = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} x(t) e^{-j\omega t} dt = X(\omega) \\ \therefore X(\omega) &= \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} x(t) e^{-j\omega t} dt \end{aligned}$$

[ $X(\omega)$  represents the frequency spectrum of  $x(t)$  and is called the spectral density function.]

Hence,  $X(\omega)$  is called the Fourier transform or the Fourier integral of  $x(t)$ .

$$\begin{aligned}
 x_T(t) &= \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} C_n e^{jn\omega_0 t} \\
 &= \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} \frac{X(\omega)}{T} e^{jn\omega_0 t} \quad \left[ \because C_n = \frac{TC_n}{T} = \frac{X(\omega)}{T} \right] \\
 &= \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} \frac{X(\omega)}{2\pi} e^{jn\omega_0 t} \omega_0 \quad \left[ n\omega_0 = \omega, T = \frac{2\pi}{\omega_0} \right] \\
 \therefore x(t) &= \text{Lt}_{T \rightarrow \infty} x_T(t) = \text{Lt}_{T \rightarrow \infty} \frac{1}{2\pi} \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} X(\omega) e^{jn\omega_0 t} \omega_0
 \end{aligned}$$

As  $T \rightarrow \infty$ ,  $\omega_0 = (2\pi/T)$  becomes infinitesimally small and may be represented by  $d\omega$ . Also the summation becomes integration.

$$\therefore x(t) = \frac{1}{2\pi} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} X(\omega) e^{j\omega t} d\omega$$

Hence,  $x(t)$  is called the *inverse Fourier transform* of  $X(\omega)$ .

The equations

$$\begin{aligned}
 X(\omega) &= \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} x(t) e^{-j\omega t} dt \\
 \text{and} \quad x(t) &= \frac{1}{2\pi} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} X(\omega) e^{j\omega t} d\omega
 \end{aligned}$$

for  $X(\omega)$  and  $x(t)$  are known as *Fourier transform pair* and can be denoted as:

$$\begin{aligned}
 X(\omega) &= F[x(t)] \\
 \text{and} \quad x(t) &= F^{-1}[X(\omega)]
 \end{aligned}$$

The other notation that can be used to represent the Fourier transform pair is:

$$x(t) \xleftrightarrow{\text{FT}} X(\omega)$$

### 5.3 MAGNITUDE AND PHASE REPRESENTATION OF FOURIER TRANSFORM

The magnitude and phase representation of the Fourier transform is the tool used to analyse the transformed signal.

In general,  $X(\omega)$  is a complex valued function of  $\omega$ . Therefore,  $X(\omega)$  can be written as:

$$X(\omega) = X_R(\omega) + jX_I(\omega)$$

where  $X_R(\omega)$  is the real part of  $X(\omega)$  and  $X_I(\omega)$  is the imaginary part of  $X(\omega)$ .

The magnitude of  $X(\omega)$  is given by

$$|X(\omega)| = \sqrt{X_R(\omega)^2 + X_I(\omega)^2}$$

and the phase of  $X(\omega)$  is given by

$$\underline{X(\omega)} = \tan^{-1} \frac{X_I(\omega)}{X_R(\omega)}$$

The plot of  $|X(\omega)|$  versus  $\omega$  is known as *amplitude spectrum*, and the plot of  $\underline{X(\omega)}$  versus  $\omega$  is known as *phase spectrum*. The amplitude spectrum and phase spectrum together is called *frequency spectrum*.

## 5.4 EXISTENCE OF FOURIER TRANSFORMS

The Fourier transform does not exist for all aperiodic functions. The conditions for a function  $x(t)$  to have Fourier transform, called Dirichlet's conditions, are:

1.  $x(t)$  is absolutely integrable over the interval  $-\infty$  to  $\infty$ , that is

$$\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} |x(t)| dt < \infty$$

2.  $x(t)$  has a finite number of discontinuities in every finite time interval. Further, each of these discontinuities must be finite.
3.  $x(t)$  has a finite number of maxima and minima in every finite time interval.

Almost all the signals that we come across in physical problems satisfy all the above conditions except possibly the absolute integrability condition.

Dirichlet's condition is a sufficient condition but not necessary condition. This means, Fourier transform will definitely exist for functions which satisfy these conditions. On the other hand, in some cases, Fourier transform can be found with the use of impulses even for functions like step function, sinusoidal function, etc. which do not satisfy the convergence condition.

## 5.5 FOURIER TRANSFORMS OF STANDARD SIGNALS

### 5.5.1 Impulse Function $\delta(t)$

Given  $x(t) = \delta(t)$ ,

$$\delta(t) = \begin{cases} 1 & \text{for } t = 0 \\ 0 & \text{for } t \neq 0 \end{cases}$$

Then

$$\begin{aligned} X(\omega) &= \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} x(t) e^{-j\omega t} dt = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \delta(t) e^{-j\omega t} dt \\ &= e^{-j\omega t} \Big|_{t=0} = 1 \end{aligned}$$

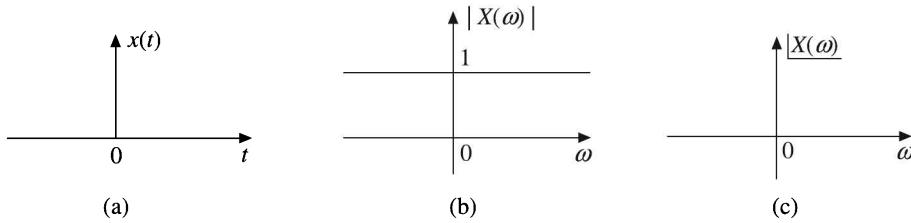
$$\therefore \boxed{F[\delta(t)] = 1 \quad \text{or} \quad \boxed{\delta(t) \xleftarrow{\text{FT}} 1}}$$

Hence, the Fourier transform of a unit impulse function is unity.

$$|X(\omega)| = 1 \quad \text{for all } \omega$$

$$\underline{|X(\omega)| = 0 \quad \text{for all } \omega}$$

The impulse function with its magnitude and phase spectra are shown in Figure 5.2.



**Figure 5.2** (a) Impulse function, (b) Its magnitude spectrum, (c) Its phase spectrum.

$$\text{Similarly, } F[\delta(t - t_0)] = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \delta(t - t_0) e^{-j\omega t} dt = e^{-j\omega t_0} \text{ i.e. } \boxed{\delta(t - t_0) \xleftarrow{\text{FT}} e^{-j\omega t_0}}$$

### 5.5.2 Single-sided Real Exponential Function $e^{-at} u(t)$

$$\text{Given } x(t) = e^{-at} u(t), \quad u(t) = \begin{cases} 1 & \text{for } t \geq 0 \\ 0 & \text{for } t < 0 \end{cases}$$

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Then } X(\omega) &= \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} x(t) e^{-j\omega t} dt = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} e^{-at} u(t) e^{-j\omega t} dt \\ &= \int_0^{\infty} e^{-at} e^{-j\omega t} dt = \int_0^{\infty} e^{-(a+j\omega)t} dt = \left[ \frac{e^{-(a+j\omega)t}}{-(a+j\omega)} \right]_0^{\infty} = \frac{e^{-\infty} - e^0}{-(a+j\omega)} \\ &= \frac{0 - 1}{-(a+j\omega)} = \frac{1}{a+j\omega} \end{aligned}$$

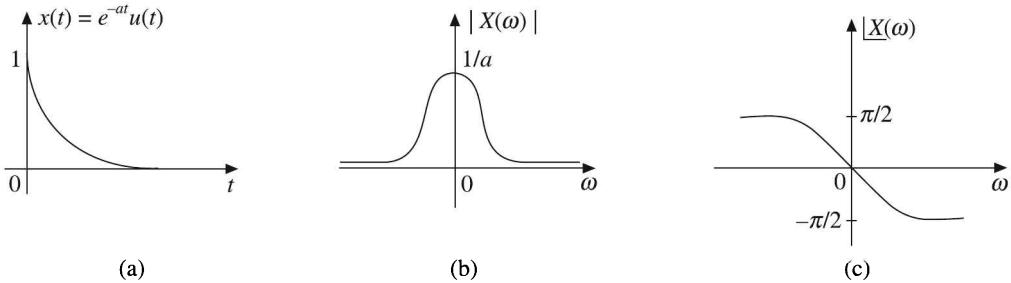
$$\therefore \boxed{F[e^{-at} u(t)] = \frac{1}{a+j\omega} \quad \text{or} \quad \boxed{e^{-at} u(t) \xleftarrow{\text{FT}} \frac{1}{a+j\omega}}}$$

$$\text{Now, } X(\omega) = \frac{1}{a+j\omega} = \frac{a-j\omega}{(a+j\omega)(a-j\omega)}$$

$$= \frac{a-j\omega}{a^2+\omega^2} = \frac{a}{a^2+\omega^2} - j \frac{\omega}{a^2+\omega^2} = \frac{1}{\sqrt{a^2+\omega^2}} \left[ -\tan^{-1} \frac{\omega}{a} \right]$$

$$\therefore \boxed{|X(\omega)| = \frac{1}{\sqrt{a^2+\omega^2}}, \quad \underline{|X(\omega)| = -\tan^{-1} \frac{\omega}{a} \quad \text{for all } \omega}}$$

Figure 5.3 shows the single-sided exponential function with its magnitude and phase spectra.



**Figure 5.3** (a) One-sided exponential function, (b) Its amplitude spectrum, and (c) Its phase spectrum.

### 5.5.3 Double-sided Real Exponential Function $e^{-a|t|}$

Given  $x(t) = e^{-a|t|}$

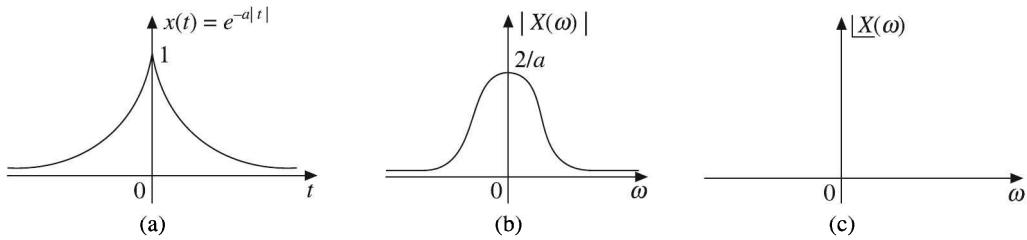
$$\begin{aligned} \therefore x(t) &= e^{-a|t|} = \begin{cases} e^{-a(-t)} = e^{at} & \text{for } t \leq 0 \\ e^{-a(t)} = e^{-at} & \text{for } t \geq 0 \end{cases} \\ &= e^{-a(-t)} u(-t) + e^{-at} u(t) \\ &= e^{at} u(-t) + e^{-at} u(t) \\ X(\omega) &= \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} x(t) e^{-j\omega t} dt \\ &= \int_{-\infty}^0 e^{at} e^{-j\omega t} dt + \int_0^{\infty} e^{-at} e^{-j\omega t} dt = \int_{-\infty}^0 e^{(a-j\omega)t} dt + \int_0^{\infty} e^{-(a+j\omega)t} dt \\ &= \int_0^{\infty} e^{-(a-j\omega)t} dt + \int_0^{\infty} e^{-(a+j\omega)t} dt = \left[ \frac{e^{-(a-j\omega)t}}{-(a-j\omega)} \right]_0^{\infty} + \left[ \frac{e^{-(a+j\omega)t}}{-(a+j\omega)} \right]_0^{\infty} \\ &= \frac{e^{-\infty} - e^0}{-(a-j\omega)} + \frac{e^{-\infty} - e^0}{-(a+j\omega)} = \frac{1}{a-j\omega} + \frac{1}{a+j\omega} = \frac{2a}{a^2 + \omega^2} \end{aligned}$$

$$\therefore F(e^{-a|t|}) = \frac{2a}{a^2 + \omega^2} \quad \text{or} \quad \boxed{e^{-a|t|} \xleftrightarrow{\text{FT}} \frac{2a}{a^2 + \omega^2}}$$

$$\therefore |X(\omega)| = \frac{2a}{a^2 + \omega^2} \text{ for all } \omega$$

and  $\underline{X}(\omega) = 0$  for all  $\omega$

A two-sided exponential function and its amplitude and phase spectra are shown in Figure 5.4.



**Figure 5.4** (a) Two-sided exponential function, (b) Its magnitude spectrum, and (c) Its phase spectrum.

#### 5.5.4 Complex Exponential Function $e^{j\omega_0 t}$

To find the Fourier transform of complex exponential function  $e^{j\omega_0 t}$ , consider finding the inverse Fourier transform of  $\delta(\omega - \omega_0)$ . Let

$$\begin{aligned} X(\omega) &= \delta(\omega - \omega_0) \\ x(t) &= F^{-1}[X(\omega)] = F^{-1}[\delta(\omega - \omega_0)] = \frac{1}{2\pi} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} X(\omega) e^{j\omega t} d\omega \\ \therefore &= \frac{1}{2\pi} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \delta(\omega - \omega_0) e^{j\omega t} d\omega = \frac{1}{2\pi} e^{j\omega_0 t} \\ \therefore &F^{-1}[\delta(\omega - \omega_0)] = \frac{e^{j\omega_0 t}}{2\pi} \quad \text{or} \quad F^{-1}[2\pi\delta(\omega - \omega_0)] = e^{j\omega_0 t} \\ \therefore &F[e^{j\omega_0 t}] = 2\pi\delta(\omega - \omega_0) \\ \text{or} &\boxed{e^{j\omega_0 t} \xleftrightarrow{\text{FT}} 2\pi\delta(\omega - \omega_0)} \end{aligned}$$

#### 5.5.5 Constant Amplitude (1)

Since  $x(t) = 1$  is not absolutely integrable, we cannot find its Fourier transform directly. So the Fourier transform of  $x(t) = 1$  is determined through inverse Fourier transform of  $\delta(\omega)$ . We know that

$$\begin{aligned} x(t) &= \frac{1}{2\pi} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} X(\omega) e^{j\omega t} d\omega \\ \text{Consider } X(\omega) = \delta(\omega) &\quad \delta(\omega) = \begin{cases} 1 & \text{for } \omega = 0 \\ 0 & \text{for } \omega \neq 0 \end{cases} \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned} x(t) &= F^{-1}[X(\omega)] = F^{-1}[\delta(\omega)] \\ \therefore &= \frac{1}{2\pi} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \delta(\omega) e^{j\omega t} d\omega = \frac{1}{2\pi}(1) = \frac{1}{2\pi} \end{aligned}$$

$$\therefore F^{-1}[\delta(\omega)] = \frac{1}{2\pi} \quad \text{or} \quad F^{-1}[2\pi\delta(\omega)] = 1$$

$$\therefore F[1] = 2\pi\delta(\omega)$$

or

$$1 \xrightarrow{\text{FT}} 2\pi\delta(\omega)$$

Similarly,

$$F[A] = 2\pi A\delta(\omega)$$

### Alternate method

Let

$$x(t) = 1$$

$$\therefore X(\omega) = F[1] = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} (1) e^{-j\omega t} dt$$

We have

$$\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} e^{-jxt} dx = 2\pi\delta(t)$$

$\therefore$

$$\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} e^{-j\omega t} dt = 2\pi\delta(\omega)$$

$\therefore$

$$F[1] = 2\pi\delta(\omega)$$

### Another alternate method

Let

$$x(t) = 1 \quad -\infty \leq t \leq \infty$$

The waveform of a constant function is shown in Figure 5.5. Let us consider a small section of the constant function, say, of duration  $\tau$ . If we extend the small duration to infinity, we will get back the original function. Therefore,

$$x(t) = \lim_{\tau \rightarrow \infty} \left[ \text{rect}\left(\frac{t}{\tau}\right) \right]$$

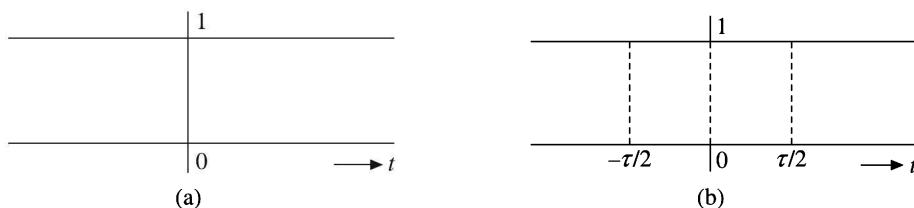


Figure 5.5 (a) Constant function, (b) Small section of the constant function.

where

$$\text{rect}\left(\frac{t}{\tau}\right) = \begin{cases} 1 & \text{for } -\frac{\tau}{2} \leq t \leq \frac{\tau}{2} \\ 0 & \text{elsewhere} \end{cases}$$

By definition, the Fourier transform of  $x(t)$  is:

$$\begin{aligned}
 X(\omega) &= F[x(t)] = F\left[\lim_{\tau \rightarrow \infty} \text{rect}\left(\frac{t}{\tau}\right)\right] = \lim_{\tau \rightarrow \infty} F\left[\text{rect}\left(\frac{t}{\tau}\right)\right] \\
 &= \lim_{\tau \rightarrow \infty} \int_{-\tau/2}^{\tau/2} (1) e^{-j\omega t} dt = \lim_{\tau \rightarrow \infty} \left[ \frac{e^{-j\omega t}}{-j\omega} \right]_{-\tau/2}^{\tau/2} \\
 &= \lim_{\tau \rightarrow \infty} \left[ \frac{e^{-j\omega(\tau/2)} - e^{j\omega(\tau/2)}}{-j\omega} \right] = \lim_{\tau \rightarrow \infty} \left\{ \frac{2 \sin[\omega(\tau/2)]}{\omega} \right\} \\
 &= \lim_{\tau \rightarrow \infty} \left\{ \tau \frac{\sin[\omega(\tau/2)]}{\omega(\tau/2)} \right\} = \lim_{\tau \rightarrow \infty} \tau \text{Sa}\left(\omega \frac{\tau}{2}\right) = 2\pi \left[ \lim_{\tau \rightarrow \infty} \frac{\tau/2}{\pi} \text{Sa}\left(\omega \frac{\tau}{2}\right) \right]
 \end{aligned}$$

Using the sampling property of the delta function  $\left\{ \text{i.e. } \lim_{\tau \rightarrow \infty} \left[ \frac{\tau/2}{\pi} \text{Sa}\left(\omega \frac{\tau}{2}\right) \right] = \delta(\omega) \right\}$ , we get

$$X(\omega) = F\left[\lim_{\tau \rightarrow \infty} \text{rect}\left(\frac{t}{\tau}\right)\right] = 2\pi\delta(\omega)$$

### 5.5.6 Signum Function $\text{sgn}(t)$

The signum function is denoted by  $\text{sgn}(t)$  and is defined by

$$\text{sgn}(t) = \begin{cases} 1 & \text{for } t > 0 \\ -1 & \text{for } t < 0 \end{cases}$$

This function is not absolutely integrable. So we cannot directly find its Fourier transform. Therefore, let us consider the function  $e^{-a|t|} \text{sgn}(t)$  and substitute the limit  $a \rightarrow 0$  to obtain the above  $\text{sgn}(t)$ .

$$\text{Given } x(t) = \text{sgn}(t) = \lim_{a \rightarrow 0} e^{-a|t|} \text{sgn}(t) = \lim_{a \rightarrow 0} [e^{-at} u(t) - e^{at} u(-t)]$$

$$\begin{aligned}
 \therefore X(\omega) &= F[\text{sgn}(t)] = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \left[ \lim_{a \rightarrow 0} [e^{-at} u(t) - e^{at} u(-t)] \right] e^{-j\omega t} dt \\
 &= \lim_{a \rightarrow 0} \left[ \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} e^{-at} e^{-j\omega t} u(t) dt - \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} e^{at} e^{-j\omega t} u(-t) dt \right] \\
 &= \lim_{a \rightarrow 0} \left[ \int_0^{\infty} e^{-(a+j\omega)t} dt - \int_{-\infty}^0 e^{(a-j\omega)t} dt \right] = \lim_{a \rightarrow 0} \left[ \int_0^{\infty} e^{-(a+j\omega)t} dt - \int_0^{\infty} e^{-(a-j\omega)t} dt \right] \\
 &= \lim_{a \rightarrow 0} \left\{ \left[ \frac{e^{-(a+j\omega)t}}{-(a+j\omega)} \right]_0^{\infty} - \left[ \frac{e^{-(a-j\omega)t}}{-(a-j\omega)} \right]_0^{\infty} \right\} = \lim_{a \rightarrow 0} \left[ \frac{e^{-\infty} - e^0}{-(a+j\omega)} - \frac{e^{-\infty} - e^0}{-(a-j\omega)} \right] \\
 &= \lim_{a \rightarrow 0} \left[ \frac{1}{a+j\omega} - \frac{1}{a-j\omega} \right] = \frac{1}{j\omega} - \frac{1}{-j\omega} = \frac{2}{j\omega}
 \end{aligned}$$

$$\therefore F[\text{sgn}(t)] = \frac{2}{j\omega}$$

or

$$\boxed{\text{sgn}(t) \xleftarrow{\text{FT}} \frac{2}{j\omega}}$$

$$\therefore |X(\omega)| = \frac{2}{\omega} \quad \text{and} \quad |X(\omega)| = \frac{\pi}{2} \quad \text{for } \omega < 0 \quad \text{and} \quad -\frac{\pi}{2} \quad \text{for } \omega > 0$$

Figure 5.6 shows the signum function and its magnitude and phase spectra.

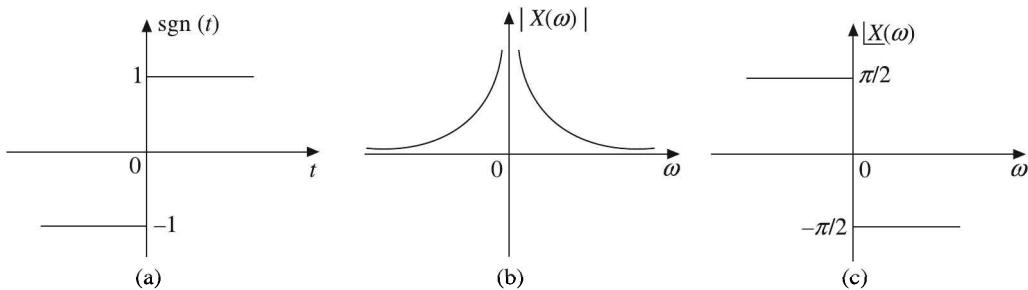


Figure 5.6 (a) Signum function, (b) Its amplitude spectrum, (c) Its phase spectrum.

### 5.5.7 Unit Step Function $u(t)$

The unit step function is defined by

$$u(t) = \begin{cases} 1 & \text{for } t \geq 0 \\ 0 & \text{for } t < 0 \end{cases}$$

Since the unit step function is not absolutely integrable, we cannot directly find its Fourier transform. So express the unit step function in terms of signum function as:

$$u(t) = \frac{1}{2} + \frac{1}{2} \text{sgn}(t)$$

Given

$$x(t) = u(t) = \frac{1}{2} [1 + \text{sgn}(t)]$$

$$\begin{aligned} X(\omega) &= F[u(t)] = F\left\{\frac{1}{2}[1 + \text{sgn}(t)]\right\} \\ &= \frac{1}{2} \left\{F[1] + F[\text{sgn}(t)]\right\} \end{aligned}$$

We know that

$$F[1] = 2\pi\delta(\omega) \quad \text{and} \quad F[\text{sgn}(t)] = \frac{2}{j\omega}$$

$$\therefore F[u(t)] = \frac{1}{2} \left[ 2\pi\delta(\omega) + \frac{2}{j\omega} \right] = \pi\delta(\omega) + \frac{1}{j\omega}$$

$$\therefore \mathcal{F}[u(t)] = \pi\delta(\omega) + \frac{1}{j\omega}$$

or

$$u(t) \xleftarrow{\text{FT}} \pi\delta(\omega) + \frac{1}{j\omega}$$

$\therefore |X(\omega)| = \infty$  at  $\omega = 0$  and is equal to 0 at  $\omega = -\infty$  and  $\omega = \infty$ .

Figure 5.7 shows the unit step function and its spectrum.

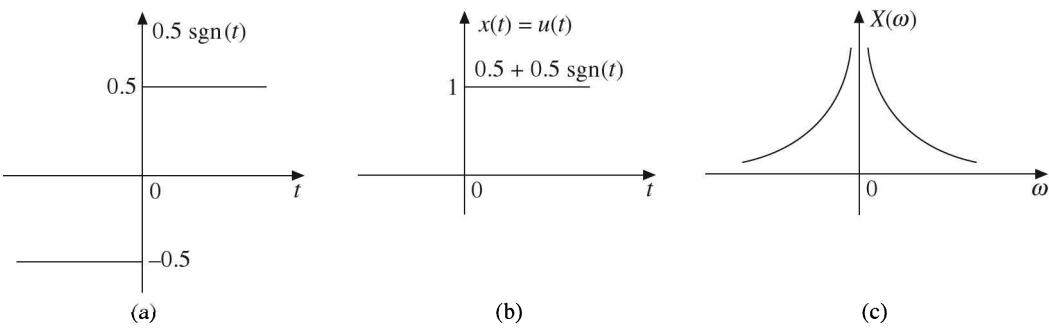


Figure 5.7 (a)  $0.5 \operatorname{sgn}(t)$ , (b)  $u(t)$ , (c) Spectrum of  $u(t)$ .

### 5.5.8 Rectangular Pulse (Gate pulse) $\Pi\left(\frac{t}{\tau}\right)$ or $\operatorname{rect}\left(\frac{t}{\tau}\right)$

Consider a rectangular pulse as shown in Figure 5.8. This is called a unit gate function and is defined as:

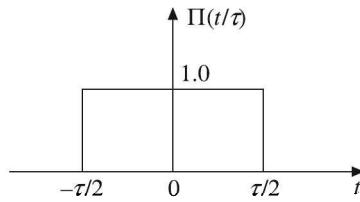


Figure 5.8 Unit gate function.

$$x(t) = \operatorname{rect}\left(\frac{t}{\tau}\right) = \Pi\left(\frac{t}{\tau}\right) = \begin{cases} 1 & \text{for } |t| \leq \tau/2 \\ 0 & \text{otherwise} \end{cases}$$

$$\therefore X(\omega) = \mathcal{F}\left[\Pi\left(\frac{t}{\tau}\right)\right] = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \Pi\left(\frac{t}{\tau}\right) e^{-j\omega t} dt$$

$$= \int_{-\tau/2}^{\tau/2} (1) e^{-j\omega t} dt = \left[ \frac{e^{-j\omega t}}{-j\omega} \right]_{-\tau/2}^{\tau/2}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
 &= \frac{e^{-j\omega(\tau/2)} - e^{j\omega(\tau/2)}}{-j\omega} = \frac{e^{j\omega(\tau/2)} - e^{-j\omega(\tau/2)}}{j\omega} \\
 &= \frac{\tau}{\omega(\tau/2)} \left[ \frac{e^{j\omega(\tau/2)} - e^{-j\omega(\tau/2)}}{2j} \right] = \tau \left[ \frac{\sin \omega(\tau/2)}{\omega(\tau/2)} \right] \\
 &= \tau \operatorname{sinc} \frac{\omega\tau}{2} \\
 &= \tau \operatorname{Sa} \frac{\omega\tau}{2}
 \end{aligned}$$

$\therefore F\left[\Pi\left(\frac{t}{\tau}\right)\right] = \tau \operatorname{sinc} \frac{\omega\tau}{2}$ , that is

$$\boxed{\operatorname{rect}\left(\frac{t}{\tau}\right) = \Pi\left(\frac{t}{\tau}\right) \xleftrightarrow{\text{FT}} \tau \operatorname{sinc} \frac{\omega\tau}{2}}$$

Figure 5.9 shows the spectra of the gate function.

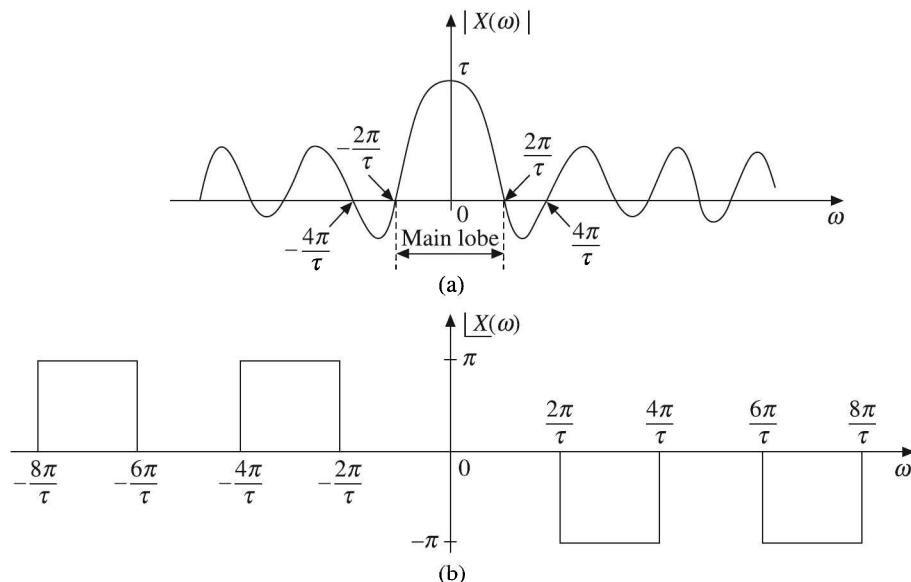


Figure 5.9 (a) Amplitude spectrum, and (b) Phase spectrum of  $\Pi(t/\tau)$ .

The amplitude spectrum is obtained as follows:

At  $\omega = 0$ ,  $\operatorname{sinc}(\omega\tau/2) = 1$ . Therefore,  $|X(\omega)|$  at  $\omega = 0$  is equal to  $\tau$ . At  $(\omega\tau/2) = \pm n\pi$ , i.e. at

$$\omega = \pm \frac{2n\pi}{\tau}, n = 1, 2, \dots, \operatorname{sinc}\left(\frac{\omega\tau}{2}\right) = 0$$

The phase spectrum is:

$$\begin{aligned} X(\omega) &= 0 && \text{if } \text{sinc}(\omega\tau/2) > 0 \\ &= \pm\pi && \text{if } \text{sinc}(\omega\tau/2) < 0 \end{aligned}$$

The amplitude response between the first two zero crossings is known as main lobe and the portions of the response for  $\omega < -(2\pi/\tau)$  and  $\omega > (2\pi/\tau)$  are known as side lobes. From the amplitude spectrum, we can find that majority of the energy of the signal is contained in the main lobe. The first zero crossing occurs at  $\omega = (2\pi/\tau)$  or at  $f = (1/\tau)$  Hz. As the width of the rectangular pulse is made longer, the main lobe becomes narrower. The phase spectrum is odd function of  $\omega$ . If the amplitude spectrum is positive, then phase is zero, and if the amplitude spectrum is negative, then the phase is  $-\pi$  or  $\pi$ .

### 5.5.9 Triangular Pulse $\Delta\left(\frac{t}{\tau}\right)$

Consider the triangular pulse as shown in Figure 5.10. It is defined as:

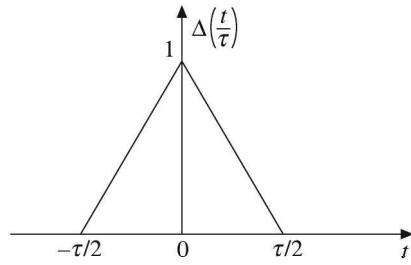


Figure 5.10 Triangular function.

$$x(t) = \Delta\left(\frac{t}{\tau}\right) = \begin{cases} \frac{1}{\tau/2} \left( t + \frac{\tau}{2} \right) = \left( 1 + 2 \frac{t}{\tau} \right) & \text{for } -\frac{\tau}{2} < t < 0 \\ \frac{1}{\tau/2} \left( t - \frac{\tau}{2} \right) = \left( 1 - 2 \frac{t}{\tau} \right) & \text{for } 0 < t < \frac{\tau}{2} \\ 0 & \text{elsewhere} \end{cases}$$

i.e. as  $x(t) = \Delta\left(\frac{t}{\tau}\right) = \begin{cases} 1 - \frac{2|t|}{\tau} & \text{for } |t| < \frac{\tau}{2} \\ 0 & \text{otherwise} \end{cases}$

$$\begin{aligned} \therefore X(\omega) &= F[x(t)] = F\left[\Delta\left(\frac{t}{\tau}\right)\right] = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \Delta\left(\frac{t}{\tau}\right) e^{-j\omega t} dt \\ &= \int_{-\tau/2}^{0} \left( 1 + \frac{2t}{\tau} \right) e^{-j\omega t} dt + \int_{0}^{\tau/2} \left( 1 - \frac{2t}{\tau} \right) e^{-j\omega t} dt \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
 &= \int_0^{\tau/2} \left(1 - \frac{2t}{\tau}\right) e^{j\omega t} dt + \int_0^{\tau/2} \left(1 - \frac{2t}{\tau}\right) e^{-j\omega t} dt \\
 &= \int_0^{\tau/2} e^{j\omega t} dt - \int_0^{\tau/2} \frac{2t}{\tau} e^{j\omega t} dt + \int_0^{\tau/2} e^{-j\omega t} dt - \int_0^{\tau/2} \frac{2t}{\tau} e^{-j\omega t} dt \\
 &= \int_0^{\tau/2} [e^{j\omega t} + e^{-j\omega t}] dt - \frac{2}{\tau} \int_0^{\tau/2} t [e^{j\omega t} + e^{-j\omega t}] dt \\
 &= \int_0^{\tau/2} 2 \cos \omega t dt - \frac{2}{\tau} \int_0^{\tau/2} 2t \cos \omega t dt \\
 &= 2 \left[ \frac{\sin \omega t}{\omega} \right]_0^{\tau/2} - \frac{4}{\tau} \left[ \left[ t \frac{\sin \omega t}{\omega} \right]_0^{\tau/2} - \int_0^{\tau/2} \frac{\sin \omega t}{\omega} dt \right] \\
 &= 2 \left[ \frac{\sin \omega t}{\omega} \right]_0^{\tau/2} - \frac{4}{\tau} \left[ \left[ t \frac{\sin \omega t}{\omega} \right]_0^{\tau/2} + \left[ \frac{\cos \omega t}{\omega^2} \right]_0^{\tau/2} \right] \\
 &= \frac{2}{\omega} \left[ \sin \omega \frac{\tau}{2} \right] - \frac{4}{\omega \tau} \left[ \frac{\tau}{2} \sin \frac{\omega \tau}{2} \right] - \frac{4}{\omega^2 \tau} \left[ \cos \frac{\omega \tau}{2} - 1 \right] \\
 &= \frac{4}{\omega^2 \tau} \left[ 1 - \cos \frac{\omega \tau}{2} \right] = \frac{4}{\omega^2 \tau} \left[ 2 \sin^2 \frac{\omega \tau}{4} \right] \\
 &= \frac{8}{\omega^2 \tau} \left( \frac{\omega \tau}{4} \right)^2 \frac{\sin^2 (\omega \tau / 4)}{(\omega \tau / 4)^2} = \frac{\tau}{2} \operatorname{sinc}^2 \frac{\omega \tau}{4} \\
 \therefore F\left[\Delta\left(\frac{t}{\tau}\right)\right] &= \frac{\tau}{2} \operatorname{sinc}^2 \frac{\omega \tau}{4}
 \end{aligned}$$

or

$\boxed{\Delta\left(\frac{t}{\tau}\right) \xleftrightarrow{\text{FT}} \frac{\tau}{2} \operatorname{sinc}^2 \frac{\omega \tau}{4}}$

Figure 5.11 shows the amplitude spectrum of a triangular pulse.

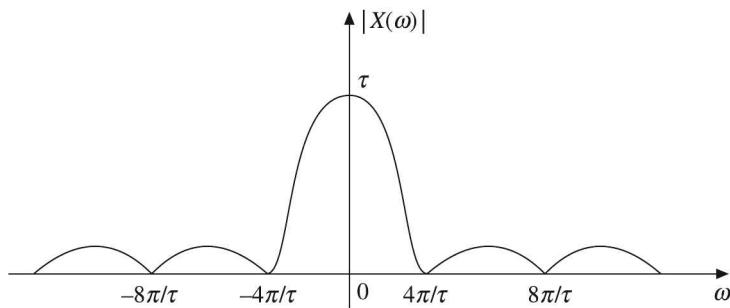


Figure 5.11 Amplitude spectrum of a triangular pulse.

### 5.5.10 Cosine Wave $\cos \omega_0 t$

Given

$$x(t) = \cos \omega_0 t$$

Then

$$\begin{aligned} X(\omega) &= F[x(t)] = F[\cos \omega_0 t] = F\left[\frac{1}{2}(e^{j\omega_0 t} + e^{-j\omega_0 t})\right] \\ &= \frac{1}{2}\left[F(e^{j\omega_0 t}) + F(e^{-j\omega_0 t})\right] = \frac{1}{2}[2\pi\delta(\omega - \omega_0) + 2\pi\delta(\omega + \omega_0)] \\ &= \pi[\delta(\omega + \omega_0) + \delta(\omega - \omega_0)] \end{aligned}$$

$$\therefore F[\cos \omega_0 t] = \pi[\delta(\omega + \omega_0) + \delta(\omega - \omega_0)] \text{ or } \boxed{\cos \omega_0 t \xrightarrow{\text{FT}} \pi[\delta(\omega + \omega_0) + \delta(\omega - \omega_0)]}$$

Figure 5.12 shows the cosine wave and its amplitude and phase spectra.

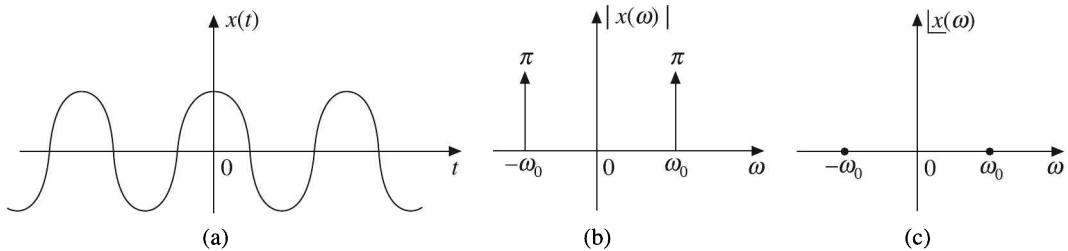


Figure 5.12 (a) Cosine wave, (b) Its magnitude spectrum, (c) Its phase spectrum.

### 5.5.11 Sine Wave $\sin \omega_0 t$

Given

$$x(t) = \sin \omega_0 t$$

Then

$$\begin{aligned} F[x(t)] &= X(\omega) = F[\sin \omega_0 t] = F\left[\frac{e^{j\omega_0 t} - e^{-j\omega_0 t}}{2j}\right] \\ &= \frac{1}{2j}\left[F[e^{j\omega_0 t}] - F[e^{-j\omega_0 t}]\right] = \frac{1}{2j}[2\pi\delta(\omega - \omega_0) - 2\pi\delta(\omega + \omega_0)] \\ &= -j\pi[\delta(\omega - \omega_0) - \delta(\omega + \omega_0)] \end{aligned}$$

$$\therefore F[\sin \omega_0 t] = -j\pi[\delta(\omega - \omega_0) + \delta(\omega + \omega_0)] \text{ or } \boxed{\sin \omega_0 t \xrightarrow{\text{FT}} -j\pi[\delta(\omega - \omega_0) - \delta(\omega + \omega_0)]}$$

Figure 5.13 shows the sine wave signal and its amplitude and phase spectra.

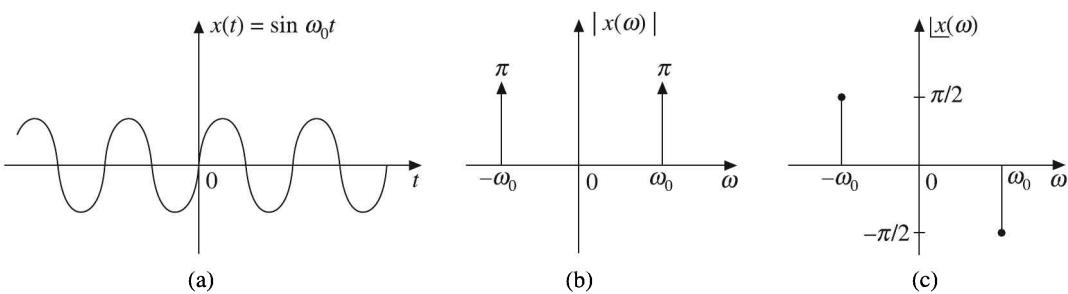


Figure 5.13 (a) Sinusoidal signal, (b) Its amplitude spectrum, (c) Its phase spectrum.

## 5.6 PROPERTIES OF CONTINUOUS TIME FOURIER TRANSFORM

The Fourier transform has a number of important properties. These properties are useful for deriving Fourier transform pairs as well as for deducing general frequency domain relationships. These also help to find the effect of various time domain operations on the frequency domain. Some of the important properties are discussed as follows:

### 5.6.1 Linearity Property

The linearity property states that the Fourier transform of a weighted sum of two signals is equal to the weighted sum of their individual Fourier transforms.

i.e. If  $x_1(t) \xrightarrow{\text{FT}} X_1(\omega)$  and  $x_2(t) \xrightarrow{\text{FT}} X_2(\omega)$

Then  $ax_1(t) + bx_2(t) \xrightarrow{\text{FT}} aX_1(\omega) + bX_2(\omega)$

where  $a$  and  $b$  are constants.

*Proof:* By definition,

$$\begin{aligned} F[ax_1(t) + bx_2(t)] &= \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} [ax_1(t) + bx_2(t)] e^{-j\omega t} dt \\ &= \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} ax_1(t) e^{-j\omega t} dt + \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} bx_2(t) e^{-j\omega t} dt \\ &= a \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} x_1(t) e^{-j\omega t} dt + b \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} x_2(t) e^{-j\omega t} dt \\ &= aX_1(\omega) + bX_2(\omega) \end{aligned}$$

$$\therefore \boxed{ax_1(t) + bx_2(t) \xrightarrow{\text{FT}} aX_1(\omega) + bX_2(\omega)}$$

### 5.6.2 Time Shifting Property

The time shifting property states that if a signal  $x(t)$  is shifted by  $t_0$  sec, the spectrum is modified by a linear phase shift of slope  $-\omega t_0$ , i.e.

If  $x(t) \xrightarrow{\text{FT}} X(\omega)$

Then  $x(t - t_0) \xrightarrow{\text{FT}} e^{-j\omega t_0} X(\omega)$

*Proof:* By definition,

$$F[x(t - t_0)] = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} x(t - t_0) e^{-j\omega t} dt$$

Let

$$t - t_0 = p$$

$\therefore t = p + t_0$  and  $dt = dp$

$$\begin{aligned} \therefore \mathcal{F}[x(t - t_0)] &= \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} x(p) e^{-j\omega(p+t_0)} dp \\ &= e^{-j\omega t_0} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} x(p) e^{-j\omega p} dp \\ &= e^{-j\omega t_0} X(\omega) \\ \therefore \boxed{x(t - t_0) \xrightarrow{\text{FT}} e^{-j\omega t_0} X(\omega)} \end{aligned}$$

Similarly,

$$x(t + t_0) \xrightarrow{\text{FT}} e^{j\omega t_0} X(\omega)$$

This property has a very important implication. That is

$$|e^{-j\omega t_0} X(\omega)| = |X(\omega)|$$

and

$$\boxed{e^{-j\omega t_0} X(\omega) = e^{-j\omega t_0} + X(\omega) = [-\omega t_0] + X(\omega)}$$

This shows that shifting a function by  $t_0$  results in multiplying its Fourier transform by  $e^{-j\omega t_0}$ . Thus, there is no change in magnitude spectrum but the phase spectrum is linearly shifted.

### 5.6.3 Frequency Shifting Property (Multiplication by an Exponential)

Frequency shifting property states that the multiplication of a time domain signal  $x(t)$  by  $e^{-j\omega_0 t}$  results in the frequency spectrum shifted by  $\omega_0$ , i.e.

If

$$x(t) \xrightarrow{\text{FT}} X(\omega)$$

Then

$$e^{j\omega_0 t} x(t) \xrightarrow{\text{FT}} X(\omega - \omega_0)$$

*Proof:* By definition,

$$\begin{aligned} \mathcal{F}[e^{j\omega_0 t} x(t)] &= \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} e^{j\omega_0 t} x(t) e^{-j\omega t} dt \\ &= \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} x(t) e^{-j(\omega - \omega_0)t} dt \\ &= X(\omega - \omega_0) \end{aligned}$$

$\therefore$

$$\boxed{e^{j\omega_0 t} x(t) \xrightarrow{\text{FT}} X(\omega - \omega_0)}$$

Similarly,

$$e^{-j\omega_0 t} x(t) \xrightarrow{\text{FT}} X(\omega + \omega_0)$$

### 5.6.4 Time Reversal Property

The time reversal property states that

If

$$x(t) \xrightarrow{\text{FT}} X(\omega)$$

Then

$$x(-t) \xrightarrow{\text{FT}} X(-\omega)$$

*Proof:* By definition,

$$\mathcal{F}[x(-t)] = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} x(-t) e^{-j\omega t} dt$$

Replacing  $t$  by  $-t$  in the RHS of the above expression for  $\mathcal{F}[x(-t)]$ , we have

$$\mathcal{F}[x(-t)] = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} x(t) e^{j\omega t} dt = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} x(t) e^{-j(-\omega)t} dt = X(-\omega)$$

∴

$$\boxed{x(-t) \xrightarrow{\text{FT}} X(-\omega)}$$

### 5.6.5 Time Scaling Property

Let  $x(at)$  is a compressed version of  $x(t)$  when  $a > 1$  or expanded version of  $x(t)$  when  $a < 1$ .

If

$$x(t) \xrightarrow{\text{FT}} X(\omega)$$

Then

$$x(at) \xrightarrow{\text{FT}} \frac{1}{|a|} X\left(\frac{\omega}{a}\right)$$

*Proof:* By definition,

$$\mathcal{F}[x(at)] = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} x(at) e^{-j\omega t} dt$$

Let

$$at = p$$

∴

$$t = \frac{p}{a} \quad \text{and} \quad dt = \frac{dp}{a}$$

$$\mathcal{F}[x(at)] = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} x(p) e^{-j\omega(p/a)} \frac{dp}{a}$$

∴

$$= \frac{1}{a} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} x(p) e^{-j(\omega/a)p} dp$$

**CASE 1** When  $a > 0$ ,

$$\mathcal{F}[x(at)] = \frac{1}{a} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} x(p) e^{-j(\omega/a)p} dp = \frac{1}{a} X\left(\frac{\omega}{a}\right)$$

**CASE 2** When  $a < 0$ ,

$$\begin{aligned}
 F[at] &= \frac{1}{-a} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} x(p) e^{j(\omega/a)p} dp = \frac{1}{-a} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} x(p) e^{-j[-(\omega/a)]p} dp \\
 &= -\frac{1}{a} X\left(-\frac{\omega}{a}\right) \\
 &= \frac{1}{|a|} X\left(\frac{\omega}{a}\right) \\
 \therefore &\boxed{x(at) \xleftrightarrow{\text{FT}} \frac{1}{|a|} X\left(\frac{\omega}{a}\right)}
 \end{aligned}$$

### 5.6.6 Differentiation in Time Domain Property

The differentiation in time domain property states that the differentiation of a function in time domain is equivalent to the multiplication of its Fourier transform by a factor  $j\omega$ , i.e.

If  $x(t) \xleftrightarrow{\text{FT}} X(\omega)$

Then  $\frac{d}{dt} x(t) \xleftrightarrow{\text{FT}} j\omega X(\omega)$

*Proof:* By definition,

$$x(t) = \frac{1}{2\pi} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} X(\omega) e^{j\omega t} d\omega$$

Differentiating both sides w.r.t.  $t$ , we have

$$\begin{aligned}
 \frac{d}{dt} x(t) &= \frac{1}{2\pi} \frac{d}{dt} \left[ \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} X(\omega) e^{j\omega t} d\omega \right] \\
 &= \frac{1}{2\pi} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} X(\omega) \frac{d}{dt} [e^{j\omega t}] d\omega = \frac{1}{2\pi} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} X(\omega) j\omega e^{j\omega t} d\omega \\
 &= j\omega \left[ \frac{1}{2\pi} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} X(\omega) e^{j\omega t} d\omega \right] \\
 &= j\omega F^{-1}[X(\omega)] \\
 \therefore &F\left[\frac{d}{dt} x(t)\right] = j\omega X(\omega) \\
 \therefore &\boxed{\frac{dx(t)}{dt} \xleftrightarrow{\text{FT}} j\omega X(\omega)}
 \end{aligned}$$

In general,

$$\frac{d^n x(t)}{dt^n} \xleftarrow{\text{FT}} (j\omega)^n X(\omega)$$

### 5.6.7 Differentiation in Frequency Domain Property

The differentiation in frequency domain property states that the multiplication of a signal  $x(t)$  by  $t$  is equivalent to differentiation of its Fourier transform in frequency domain, i.e.

If

$$x(t) \xleftarrow{\text{FT}} X(\omega)$$

Then

$$tx(t) \xleftarrow{\text{FT}} j \frac{d}{d\omega} X(\omega)$$

*Proof:* By definition,

$$X(\omega) = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} x(t) e^{-j\omega t} dt$$

Differentiating both sides w.r.t.  $\omega$ , we have

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{d}{d\omega} [X(\omega)] &= \frac{d}{d\omega} \left[ \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} x(t) e^{-j\omega t} dt \right] = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} x(t) \frac{d}{d\omega} (e^{-j\omega t}) dt = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} x(t) (-jt) e^{-j\omega t} dt \\ &= -j \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} [tx(t)] e^{-j\omega t} dt = -jF[tx(t)] \\ \therefore F[tx(t)] &= j \frac{d}{d\omega} X(\omega) \\ \therefore \boxed{tx(t) \xleftarrow{\text{FT}} j \frac{d}{d\omega} X(\omega)} \end{aligned}$$

### 5.6.8 Time Integration Property

The time integration property states that the integration of a function  $x(t)$  in time domain is equivalent to the division of its Fourier transform by  $j\omega$ , i.e.

If

$$x(t) \xleftarrow{\text{FT}} X(\omega)$$

Then

$$\int_{-\infty}^t x(\tau) d\tau \xleftarrow{\text{FT}} \frac{1}{j\omega} X(j\omega), \text{ if } X(0)=0$$

*Proof:* If  $X(0)=0$ , this property can be easily proved by using integration by parts as in the case of the differentiation property.

By definition,

$$x(t) = \frac{1}{2\pi} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} X(\omega) e^{j\omega t} d\omega$$

Replacing  $t$  by a dummy variable  $\tau$ , we have

$$x(\tau) = \frac{1}{2\pi} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} X(\omega) e^{j\omega\tau} d\omega$$

Integrating both sides over  $-\infty$  to  $t$ , we have

$$\int_{-\infty}^t x(\tau) d\tau = \int_{-\infty}^t \left[ \frac{1}{2\pi} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} X(\omega) e^{j\omega\tau} d\omega \right] d\tau$$

Interchanging the order of integration, we have

$$\begin{aligned} \int_{-\infty}^t x(\tau) d\tau &= \frac{1}{2\pi} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} X(\omega) \left( \int_{-\infty}^t e^{j\omega\tau} d\tau \right) d\omega \\ &= \frac{1}{2\pi} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} X(\omega) \left[ \frac{e^{j\omega t}}{j\omega} \right]_{-\infty}^t d\omega \\ &= \frac{1}{2\pi} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \left[ \frac{X(\omega)}{j\omega} \right] e^{j\omega t} d\omega = F^{-1} \left[ \frac{X(\omega)}{j\omega} \right] \\ \therefore & F \left[ \int_{-\infty}^t x(\tau) d\tau \right] = \frac{1}{j\omega} X(\omega) \\ \therefore & \boxed{\int_{-\infty}^t x(\tau) d\tau \xrightarrow{\text{FT}} \frac{1}{j\omega} X(\omega)} \end{aligned}$$

If  $X(0) \neq 0$  then  $x(t)$  is not an energy function, and the Fourier transform of  $\int_{-\infty}^t x(\tau) d\tau$  includes an impulse function, that is

$$F \left[ \int_{-\infty}^t x(\tau) d\tau \right] = \frac{1}{j\omega} X(\omega) + \pi X(0) \delta(\omega)$$

### 5.6.9 Convolution Property or Theorem

The convolution property or theorem states that the convolution of two signals in time domain is equivalent to the multiplication of their spectra in frequency domain. This is called the *time convolution theorem*.

If  $x_1(t) \xrightarrow{\text{FT}} X_1(\omega)$  and  $x_2(t) \xrightarrow{\text{FT}} X_2(\omega)$

Then  $x_1(t) * x_2(t) \xrightarrow{\text{FT}} X_1(\omega) X_2(\omega)$

*Proof:* We know that the convolution of two signals  $x_1(t)$  and  $x_2(t)$  is given by

$$x_1(t) * x_2(t) = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} x_1(\tau) x_2(t - \tau) d\tau$$

$$\therefore F[x_1(t) * x_2(t)] = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \left[ \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} x_1(\tau) x_2(t - \tau) d\tau \right] e^{-j\omega t} dt$$

Interchanging the order of integration, we have

$$F[x_1(t) * x_2(t)] = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} x_1(\tau) \left[ \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} x_2(t - \tau) e^{-j\omega t} dt \right] d\tau$$

Substituting  $t - \tau = p$  in the second integration, we have

$$t = p + \tau \quad \text{and} \quad dt = dp$$

$$\therefore F[x_1(t) * x_2(t)] = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} x_1(\tau) \left[ \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} x_2(p) e^{-j\omega(p+\tau)} dp \right] d\tau$$

$$= \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} x_1(\tau) \left[ \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} x_2(p) e^{-j\omega p} dp \right] e^{-j\omega\tau} d\tau$$

$$= \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} x_1(\tau) X_2(\omega) e^{-j\omega\tau} d\tau$$

$$= \left[ \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} x_1(\tau) e^{-j\omega\tau} d\tau \right] X_2(\omega) = X_1(\omega) X_2(\omega)$$

$$\therefore \boxed{x_1(t) * x_2(t) \xleftrightarrow{\text{FT}} X_1(\omega) X_2(\omega)}$$

### 5.6.10 Multiplication Property or Theorem

The multiplication property or theorem states that the multiplication of two functions in time domain is equivalent to the convolution of their spectra in the frequency domain. This is called the frequency convolution theorem.

If  $x_1(t) \xleftrightarrow{\text{FT}} X_1(\omega)$  and  $x_2(t) \xleftrightarrow{\text{FT}} X_2(\omega)$

Then  $x_1(t) x_2(t) \xleftrightarrow{\text{FT}} \frac{1}{2\pi} X_1(\omega) * X_2(\omega)$

*Proof:* We know that

$$F[x(t)] = X(\omega) = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} x(t) e^{-j\omega t} dt$$

and

$$F^{-1}[X(\omega)] = x(t) = \frac{1}{2\pi} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} X(\omega) e^{j\omega t} d\omega$$

$$\begin{aligned} F[x_1(t) x_2(t)] &= \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} x_1(t) x_2(t) e^{-j\omega t} dt \\ &= \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \left[ \frac{1}{2\pi} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} X_1(\lambda) e^{j\lambda t} d\lambda \right] x_2(t) e^{-j\omega t} dt \end{aligned}$$

Interchanging the order of integration, we get

$$\begin{aligned} F[x_1(t) x_2(t)] &= \frac{1}{2\pi} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} X_1(\lambda) \left[ \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} x_2(t) e^{j\lambda t} e^{-j\omega t} dt \right] d\lambda \\ &= \frac{1}{2\pi} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} X_1(\lambda) \left[ \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} x_2(t) e^{-j(\omega-\lambda)t} dt \right] d\lambda \\ &= \frac{1}{2\pi} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} X_1(\lambda) X_2(\omega - \lambda) d\lambda \\ &= \frac{1}{2\pi} X_1(\omega) * X_2(\omega) \end{aligned}$$

∴

$$x_1(t) x_2(t) \xrightarrow{\text{FT}} \frac{1}{2\pi} X_1(\omega) * X_2(\omega)$$

or

$$2\pi x_1(t) x_2(t) \xrightarrow{\text{FT}} X_1(\omega) * X_2(\omega)$$

or

$$x_1(t) x_2(t) \xrightarrow{\text{FT}} X_1(f) * X_2(f)$$

### 5.6.11 Duality (Symmetry) Property

In spectrum analysis, the duality between the time and the frequency is exhibited. The duality (symmetry) property states that

If

$$x(t) \xrightarrow{\text{FT}} X(\omega)$$

Then

$$X(t) \xrightarrow{\text{FT}} 2\pi x(-\omega)$$

*Proof:* By definition,

$$x(t) = \frac{1}{2\pi} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} X(\omega) e^{j\omega t} d\omega$$

$$\therefore 2\pi x(t) = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} X(\omega) e^{j\omega t} d\omega$$

$$\text{or } 2\pi x(-t) = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} X(\omega) e^{-j\omega t} d\omega$$

Interchanging  $t$  and  $\omega$ , we have

$$2\pi x(-\omega) = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} X(t) e^{-j\omega t} dt = F[X(t)]$$

$$\therefore F[X(t)] = 2\pi x(-\omega)$$

i.e. 
$$X(t) \xrightarrow{\text{FT}} 2\pi x(-\omega)$$

For even functions,

$$x(-\omega) = x(\omega)$$

$$\therefore X(t) \xrightarrow{\text{FT}} 2\pi x(\omega)$$

### 5.6.12 Modulation Property

The modulation property states that, if a signal  $x(t)$  is multiplied by  $\cos \omega_c t$ , its spectrum gets translated up and down in frequency by  $\omega_c$ , i.e.

If 
$$x(t) \xrightarrow{\text{FT}} X(\omega)$$

Then 
$$x(t) \cos \omega_c t \xrightarrow{\text{FT}} \frac{1}{2} [X(\omega - \omega_c) + X(\omega + \omega_c)]$$

Proof: 
$$x(t) \cos \omega_c t = x(t) \left[ \frac{e^{j\omega_c t} + e^{-j\omega_c t}}{2} \right]$$

$$\begin{aligned} \therefore F[x(t) \cos \omega_c t] &= F \left[ \frac{x(t)}{2} [e^{j\omega_c t} + e^{-j\omega_c t}] \right] \\ &= \frac{1}{2} F[x(t) e^{j\omega_c t}] + \frac{1}{2} F[x(t) e^{-j\omega_c t}] = \frac{1}{2} X[\omega - \omega_c] + \frac{1}{2} X[\omega + \omega_c] \\ &= \frac{1}{2} [X[\omega - \omega_c] + X[\omega + \omega_c]] \end{aligned}$$

$$\therefore x(t) \cos \omega_c t \xrightarrow{\text{FT}} \frac{1}{2} [X(\omega - \omega_c) + X(\omega + \omega_c)]$$

Similarly, 
$$x(t) \sin \omega_c t \xrightarrow{\text{FT}} \frac{1}{2j} [X(\omega - \omega_c) - X(\omega + \omega_c)]$$

### 5.6.13 Conjugation Property

The conjugation property states that

If  $x(t) \xrightarrow{\text{FT}} X(\omega)$

Then  $x^*(t) \xrightarrow{\text{FT}} X^*(-\omega)$

*Proof:* By definition,

$$\begin{aligned} X(\omega) &= \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} x(t) e^{-j\omega t} dt \\ \therefore X^*(\omega) &= \left[ \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} x(t) e^{-j\omega t} dt \right]^* = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} x^*(t) e^{j\omega t} dt \end{aligned}$$

Replacing  $\omega$  by  $-\omega$ , we get

$$\begin{aligned} X^*(-\omega) &= \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} x^*(t) e^{-j\omega t} dt = F[x^*(t)] \\ \therefore \boxed{x^*(t) \xrightarrow{\text{FT}} X^*(-\omega)} \end{aligned}$$

### 5.6.14 Autocorrelation Property

The autocorrelation property states that the Fourier transform of the autocorrelation of a time domain signal is equal to the square of the modulus of its spectra.

If  $x(t) \xrightarrow{\text{FT}} X(\omega)$

Then  $R(\tau) \xrightarrow{\text{FT}} |X(\omega)|^2$

*Proof:* We know that the autocorrelation of a signal  $x(t)$  is:

$$\begin{aligned} R(\tau) &= \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} x(t) x^*(t - \tau) dt \\ \therefore F[R(\tau)] &= \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \left[ \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} x(t) x^*(t - \tau) dt \right] e^{-j\omega\tau} d\tau \end{aligned}$$

Interchanging the order of integration, we have

$$F[R(\tau)] = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} x(t) \left[ \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} x^*(t - \tau) e^{-j\omega\tau} d\tau \right] dt$$

Let us substitute  $t - \tau = p$  in the second integration, we have  $d\tau = dp$ .

$$\begin{aligned}\therefore \quad \mathcal{F}[R(\tau)] &= \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} x(t) \left[ \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} x^*(p) e^{-j\omega(t-p)} dp \right] dt \\ &= \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} x(t) e^{-j\omega t} dt \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} x^*(p) e^{j\omega p} dp = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} x(t) e^{-j\omega t} dt \left[ \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} x(p) e^{-j\omega p} dp \right]^* \\ &= X(\omega) X^*(\omega) = |X(\omega)|^2 \\ \therefore \quad &\boxed{R(\tau) \xrightarrow{\text{FT}} |X(\omega)|^2}\end{aligned}$$

### 5.6.15 Parseval's Relation or Theorem or Property

If  $x_1(t) \xrightarrow{\text{FT}} X_1(\omega)$  and  $x_2(t) \xrightarrow{\text{FT}} X_2(\omega)$

then, the Parseval's relation or theorem or property states that

$$\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} x_1(t) x_2^*(t) dt = \frac{1}{2\pi} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} X_1(\omega) X_2^*(\omega) d\omega$$

for complex  $x_1(t)$  and  $x_2(t)$ .

The Parseval's identity states that the energy content of the signal  $x(t)$  is:

$$E = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} |x(t)|^2 dt = \frac{1}{2\pi} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} |X(\omega)|^2 d\omega$$

*Proof:*

*Parseval's relation*

$$\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} x_1(t) x_2^*(t) dt = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \left\{ \frac{1}{2\pi} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} X_1(\omega) e^{j\omega t} d\omega \right\} x_2^*(t) dt$$

Interchanging the order of integration, we have

$$\begin{aligned}\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} x_1(t) x_2^*(t) dt &= \frac{1}{2\pi} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} X_1(\omega) \left\{ \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} x_2^*(t) e^{j\omega t} dt \right\} d\omega \\ &= \frac{1}{2\pi} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} X_1(\omega) \left\{ \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} x_2(t) e^{-j\omega t} dt \right\}^* d\omega \\ &= \frac{1}{2\pi} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} X_1(\omega) \{X_2(\omega)\}^* d\omega = \text{RHS}\end{aligned}$$

$$\therefore \boxed{\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} x_1(t) x_2^*(t) dt = \frac{1}{2\pi} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} X_1(\omega) X_2^*(\omega) d\omega} \text{ proved.}$$

*Parseval's identity*

If  $x_1(t) = x_2(t) = x(t)$ , then the energy of the signal is given by

$$E = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} x(t) x^*(t) dt = \frac{1}{2\pi} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} X(\omega) X^*(\omega) d\omega$$

Since,  $|x(t)|^2 = x(t) x^*(t)$  and  $|X(\omega)|^2 = X(\omega) X^*(\omega)$ , we get

$$\boxed{E = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} |x(t)|^2 dt = \frac{1}{2\pi} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} |X(\omega)|^2 d\omega} \text{ proved.}$$

The Parseval's identity is also called *energy theorem* or *Rayleigh's energy theorem*. The quantity  $|X(\omega)|^2$  is called the *energy density spectrum* of the signal  $x(t)$ . Hence, the Parseval's relation states that, the energy [if  $x(t)$  is not periodic] or power [if  $x(t)$  is periodic] in the time domain representation of a signal is equal to the energy or power in the frequency domain representation.

### 5.6.16 Area under the Curve

1. The area under a function  $x(t)$  is equal to the value of its Fourier transform  $X(\omega)$  at  $\omega = 0$ , i.e.

$$\text{If } x(t) \xrightarrow{\text{FT}} X(\omega)$$

$$\text{Then } \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} x(t) dt = \frac{1}{2\pi} X(0)$$

2. The area under the Fourier transform  $X(\omega)$  of a function  $x(t)$  is equal to the value of the function  $x(t)$  at  $t = 0$ ,

$$\text{i.e. } \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} X(\omega) d\omega = x(0)$$

### 5.6.17 Fourier Transform of Complex and Real Functions

If the signal  $x(t)$  is complex, it can be represented as:

$$x(t) = x_R(t) + jx_I(t)$$

The Fourier transform of  $x(t)$  is given by

$$\begin{aligned} F[x(t)] = X(\omega) &= \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} x(t) e^{-j\omega t} dt = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} [x_R(t) + jx_I(t)] [\cos \omega t - j \sin \omega t] dt \\ &= \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} [x_R(t) \cos \omega t + x_I(t) \sin \omega t] dt + j \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} [x_I(t) \cos \omega t - x_R(t) \sin \omega t] dt \\ &= X_R(\omega) + jX_I(\omega) \end{aligned}$$

where

$$X_R(\omega) = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} [x_R(t) \cos \omega t + x_I(t) \sin \omega t] dt$$

and

$$X_I(\omega) = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} [x_I(t) \cos \omega t - x_R(t) \sin \omega t] dt$$

The inverse Fourier transform of  $X(\omega)$  is obtained from

$$\begin{aligned} x(t) &= \frac{1}{2\pi} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} X(\omega) e^{j\omega t} d\omega \\ &= \frac{1}{2\pi} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} [X_R(\omega) + jX_I(\omega)] [\cos \omega t + j \sin \omega t] d\omega \\ &= x_R(t) + jx_I(t) \end{aligned}$$

where

$$x_R(t) = \frac{1}{2\pi} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} [X_R(\omega) \cos \omega t - X_I(\omega) \sin \omega t] d\omega$$

and

$$x_I(t) = \frac{1}{2\pi} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} [X_R(\omega) \sin \omega t + X_I(\omega) \cos \omega t] d\omega$$

**CASE 1**  $x(t)$  is real.

If  $x(t)$  is real, then  $X_I(t) = 0$  and  $X(-\omega) = X^*(\omega)$ .

Then

$$\begin{aligned} X_R(\omega) &= \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} x(t) \cos \omega t dt \\ X_I(\omega) &= - \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} x(t) \sin \omega t dt \end{aligned}$$

**CASE 2**  $x(t)$  is even and real.

Let

$$x(t) = x_e(t)$$

$$X_R(\omega) = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} x_e(t) \cos \omega t dt = 2 \int_0^{\infty} x_e(t) \cos \omega t dt$$

$$\begin{aligned} X_I(\omega) &= 0 \\ \therefore X(\omega) &= 2 \int_0^{\infty} x_e(t) \cos \omega t dt \end{aligned}$$

**CASE 3**  $x(t)$  is odd and real.

Let

$$x(t) = x_o(t)$$

$$X_R(\omega) = 0$$

$$X_I(\omega) = jX(\omega) = -j \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} x_o(t) \sin \omega t dt = -j2 \int_0^{\infty} x_o(t) \sin \omega t dt$$

For a non-symmetrical function

$$\begin{aligned} F[x(t)] &= X(\omega) = X_R(\omega) + jX_I(\omega) \\ &= \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} x_e(t) \cos \omega t dt - j \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} x_o(t) \sin \omega t dt \\ &= X_e(\omega) + X_o(\omega) \end{aligned}$$

Table B.2 (Appendix B) summarises the properties of Fourier transform. Table B.3 (Appendix B) summarises the commonly used Fourier transform pairs. Table B.4 (Appendix B) summarises the commonly used Fourier transform of signals.

## 5.7 FOURIER TRANSFORM OF A PERIODIC SIGNAL

Till now we have discussed that the periodic functions can be analysed using Fourier series and that non-periodic functions can be analysed using Fourier transform. But we can find the Fourier transform of a periodic function also. This means that the Fourier transform can be used as a universal mathematical tool in the analysis of both non-periodic and periodic waveforms over the entire interval. Fourier transform of periodic functions may be found using the concept of impulse function.

We know that using Fourier series, any periodic signal can be represented as a sum of complex exponentials. Therefore, we can represent a periodic signal using the Fourier integral. Let us consider a periodic signal  $x(t)$  with period  $T$ . Then, we can express  $x(t)$  in terms of exponential Fourier series as:

$$x(t) = \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} C_n e^{jn\omega_0 t}$$

The Fourier transform of  $x(t)$  is:

$$\begin{aligned} X(\omega) &= F[x(t)] = F \left[ \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} C_n e^{jn\omega_0 t} \right] \\ &= \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} C_n F[e^{jn\omega_0 t}] \end{aligned}$$

Using the frequency shifting theorem, we have

$$\begin{aligned} F[1e^{jn\omega_0 t}] &= F[1] \Big|_{\omega=\omega-n\omega_0} = 2\pi\delta(\omega - n\omega_0) \\ \therefore X(\omega) &= 2\pi \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} C_n \delta(\omega - n\omega_0) \end{aligned}$$

where  $C_n$ s are the Fourier coefficients associated with  $x(t)$  and are given by

$$C_n = \frac{1}{T} \int_{-T/2}^{T/2} x(t) e^{-jn\omega_0 t} dt$$

Thus, the Fourier transform of a periodic function consists of a train of equally spaced impulses. These impulses are located at the harmonic frequencies of the signal and the strength (area) of each impulse is given as  $2\pi C_n$ .

**EXAMPLE 5.1** What are the merits and limitations of Fourier transform?

**Solution:**

**Merits:** Some of the merits of the Fourier transform are:

1. The original time function can be uniquely recovered from it.
2. Convolution integrals can be evaluated using the Fourier transform.
3. The Fourier transform is the most useful tool for analysing signals involved in communication systems because here the amplitude and phase characteristics are readily known.

**Limitations:** The following are the limitations of Fourier transform:

1. It is less powerful than the Laplace transform because in the Fourier transform, the damping factor  $\sigma = 0$ , but in the Laplace transform, the damping factor  $\sigma$  is finite.
2. There are many functions for which the Laplace transform exists, but the Fourier transform does not exist. In fact, Fourier transform is a special case of Laplace transform with  $s = j\omega$ , that is Fourier transform is the Laplace transform evaluated along the imaginary axis of the s-plane.

**EXAMPLE 5.2** Distinguish between the exponential form of the Fourier series and the Fourier transform. What is the nature of the ‘transform pair’ in the above two cases?

**Solution:** The exponential Fourier series representation of a continuous-time periodic signal  $x(t)$  is given by

$$\begin{aligned} x(t) &= \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} C_n e^{jn\omega_0 t} \\ \text{where } \omega_0 &= \frac{2\pi}{T} \quad \text{and} \quad C_n = \frac{1}{T} \int_{-T/2}^{T/2} x(t) e^{-jn\omega_0 t} dt \end{aligned}$$

Here the set of coefficients  $\{C_n\}$  is called the set of the Fourier series coefficients or the spectral coefficients of  $x(t)$ .

These complex coefficients measure the portion of the signal  $x(t)$ , that is at each harmonic of the fundamental component.

The coefficient  $C_0$  is the dc component of  $x(t)$  and is given by

$$C_0 = \frac{1}{T} \int_{-T/2}^{T/2} x(t) dt$$

which is simply the average value of  $x(t)$  over one period.

The Fourier series coefficients or the spectral coefficients of  $x(t)$  are discrete in nature and we get a discrete (line) spectrum.

The Fourier transform of a continuous-time aperiodic signal  $x(t)$  is given by

$$X(\omega) = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} x(t) e^{-j\omega t} dt$$

The inverse Fourier transform is given by

$$x(t) = \frac{1}{2\pi} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} X(\omega) e^{j\omega t} d\omega$$

$X(\omega)$  is called the Fourier transform or Fourier integral of  $x(t)$ , and  $x(t)$  is the inverse Fourier transform of  $X(\omega)$ , i.e.  $x(t)$  and  $X(\omega)$  form a Fourier transform pair, i.e.

$$x(t) \xleftarrow{\text{FT}} X(\omega)$$

Equation  $x(t) = \frac{1}{2\pi} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} X(\omega) e^{j\omega t} d\omega$  plays a role for aperiodic signals similar to equation

$x(t) = \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} C_n e^{jn\omega_0 t}$  for periodic signals as both represent the linear combination of complex exponentials.

For periodic signals, these spectral coefficients have amplitudes  $\{C_n\}$  as given by

$$C_n = \frac{1}{T} \int_{-T/2}^{T/2} x(t) e^{-jn\omega_0 t} dt$$

and occur at discrete set of harmonically related frequencies  $n\omega_0$ ,  $n = 0, \pm 1, \pm 2, \dots$ .

For aperiodic signals, the complex exponentials occur at continuous frequencies with amplitude  $[X(\omega) d\omega]/2\pi$ . The transform  $X(\omega)$  of an aperiodic signal  $x(t)$  is called the spectrum of  $x(t)$ .

**EXAMPLE 5.3** Find the Fourier transform of the following signals:

- |                            |                                      |
|----------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| (a) $e^{3t} u(t)$          | (b) $\cos \omega_0 t u(t)$           |
| (c) $\sin \omega_0 t u(t)$ | (d) $e^{-t} \sin 5t u(t)$            |
| (e) $e^{-2t} \cos 5t u(t)$ | (f) $e^{- t } \sin 5 t $ for all $t$ |
| (g) $e^{at} u(-t)$         | (h) $te^{-at} u(t)$                  |

**Solution:**

(a) Given

$$x(t) = e^{3t} u(t)$$

The given signal is not absolutely integrable. That is  $\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} e^{3t} u(t) dt = \infty$ . Therefore,

Fourier transform of  $x(t) = e^{3t} u(t)$  does not exist.

(b) Given

$$x(t) = \cos \omega_0 t u(t)$$

i.e.

$$x(t) = \frac{e^{j\omega_0 t} + e^{-j\omega_0 t}}{2} u(t)$$

$$\therefore X(\omega) = F[\cos \omega_0 t u(t)] = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \frac{e^{j\omega_0 t} + e^{-j\omega_0 t}}{2} u(t) e^{-j\omega t} dt$$

$$= \frac{1}{2} \left[ \int_0^{\infty} e^{-j(\omega - \omega_0)t} dt + \int_0^{\infty} e^{-j(\omega + \omega_0)t} dt \right]$$

$$= \frac{1}{2} \left[ \frac{e^{-j(\omega - \omega_0)t}}{-j(\omega - \omega_0)} + \frac{e^{-j(\omega + \omega_0)t}}{-j(\omega + \omega_0)} \right]_0^{\infty}$$

$$= \frac{1}{2} \left[ \frac{-e^0}{-j(\omega - \omega_0)} + \frac{-e^0}{-j(\omega + \omega_0)} \right]$$

with impulses of strength  $\pi$  at  $\omega = \omega_0$  and  $\omega = -\omega_0$ .

$$\begin{aligned} \therefore X(\omega) &= \frac{1}{2} \left[ \frac{1}{j(\omega - \omega_0)} + \frac{1}{j(\omega + \omega_0)} + \pi\delta(\omega - \omega_0) + \pi\delta(\omega + \omega_0) \right] \\ &= \frac{1}{2} \left[ \frac{j2\omega}{(j\omega)^2 + \omega_0^2} + \pi\delta(\omega - \omega_0) + \pi\delta(\omega + \omega_0) \right] \\ &= \frac{j\omega}{(j\omega)^2 + \omega_0^2} + \frac{1}{2} [\pi\delta(\omega - \omega_0) + \pi\delta(\omega + \omega_0)] \end{aligned}$$

(c) Given

$$x(t) = \sin \omega_0 t u(t)$$

i.e.

$$x(t) = \frac{e^{j\omega_0 t} - e^{-j\omega_0 t}}{2j} u(t)$$

$$\begin{aligned}
 \therefore X(\omega) &= F[\sin \omega_0 t u(t)] = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \frac{e^{j\omega_0 t} - e^{-j\omega_0 t}}{2j} u(t) e^{-j\omega t} dt \\
 &= \frac{1}{2j} \left[ \int_0^{\infty} e^{-j(\omega - \omega_0)t} dt - \int_0^{\infty} e^{-j(\omega + \omega_0)t} dt \right] \\
 &= \frac{1}{2j} \left[ \frac{e^{-j(\omega - \omega_0)t}}{-j(\omega - \omega_0)} - \frac{e^{-j(\omega + \omega_0)t}}{-j(\omega + \omega_0)} \right]_0^{\infty} \\
 &= \frac{1}{2j} \left[ \frac{-e^0}{-j(\omega - \omega_0)} - \frac{-e^0}{-j(\omega + \omega_0)} \right]
 \end{aligned}$$

with impulses of strength  $\pi$  at  $\omega = \omega_0$  and  $\omega = -\omega_0$ .

$$\begin{aligned}
 \therefore X(\omega) &= \frac{1}{2j} \left[ \frac{1}{j(\omega - \omega_0)} - \frac{1}{j(\omega + \omega_0)} + \pi\delta(\omega - \omega_0) - \pi\delta(\omega + \omega_0) \right] \\
 &= \frac{1}{2j} \left[ \frac{2j\omega_0}{(j\omega)^2 + \omega_0^2} + \pi\delta(\omega - \omega_0) - \pi\delta(\omega + \omega_0) \right] \\
 &= \frac{\omega_0}{(j\omega)^2 + \omega_0^2} - j\frac{\pi}{2} [\delta(\omega - \omega_0) - \delta(\omega + \omega_0)]
 \end{aligned}$$

(d) Given

$$x(t) = e^{-t} \sin 5t u(t)$$

$$\begin{aligned}
 x(t) &= e^{-t} \left( \frac{e^{j5t} - e^{-j5t}}{2j} \right) u(t) \\
 \therefore X(\omega) &= F[e^{-t} \sin 5t u(t)] = F \left[ e^{-t} \left( \frac{e^{j5t} - e^{-j5t}}{2j} \right) u(t) \right] \\
 &= \frac{1}{2j} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} [e^{-t} (e^{j5t} - e^{-j5t}) u(t)] e^{-j\omega t} dt \\
 &= \frac{1}{2j} \left[ \int_0^{\infty} [e^{-[1+j(\omega-5)]t} dt - \int_0^{\infty} [e^{-[1+j(\omega+5)]t} dt \right] \\
 &= \frac{1}{2j} \left[ \frac{e^{-[1+j(\omega-5)]t}}{-[1+j(\omega-5)]} - \frac{e^{-[1+j(\omega+5)]t}}{-[1+j(\omega+5)]} \right]_0^{\infty} \\
 &= \frac{1}{2j} \left[ \frac{1}{1+j(\omega-5)} - \frac{1}{1+j(\omega+5)} \right] \\
 &= \frac{5}{[1+j(\omega-5)][1+j(\omega+5)]} = \frac{5}{(1+j\omega)^2 + 5^2} \quad [\text{neglecting impulses}]
 \end{aligned}$$

(e) Given

$$x(t) = e^{-2t} \cos 5t u(t)$$

$$\begin{aligned} x(t) &= e^{-2t} \left( \frac{e^{j5t} + e^{-j5t}}{2} \right) u(t) \\ \therefore X(\omega) &= F[e^{-2t} \cos 5t u(t)] = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} e^{-2t} \left( \frac{e^{j5t} + e^{-j5t}}{2} \right) e^{-j\omega t} u(t) dt \\ &= \frac{1}{2} \left[ \int_0^{\infty} e^{-2t} e^{j5t} e^{-j\omega t} dt + \int_0^{\infty} e^{-2t} e^{-j5t} e^{-j\omega t} dt \right] \\ &= \frac{1}{2} \left[ \int_0^{\infty} e^{-[2+j(\omega-5)]t} dt + \int_0^{\infty} e^{-[2+j(\omega+5)]t} dt \right] \\ &= \frac{1}{2} \left[ \frac{e^{-[2+j(\omega-5)]t}}{-[2+j(\omega-5)]} + \frac{e^{-[2+j(\omega+5)]t}}{-[2+j(\omega+5)]} \right]_0^{\infty} \\ &= \frac{1}{2} \left[ \frac{e^{-\infty} - e^0}{-[2+j(\omega-5)]} + \frac{e^{-\infty} - e^0}{-[2+j(\omega+5)]} \right] \\ &= \frac{1}{2} \left[ \frac{1}{(2+j\omega)-j5} + \frac{1}{(2+j\omega)+j5} \right] = \frac{1}{2} \left[ \frac{2(2+j\omega)}{(2+j\omega)^2 + 5^2} \right] \\ &= \frac{2+j\omega}{(2+j\omega)^2 + 5^2} \quad [\text{neglecting impulses}] \end{aligned}$$

(f) Given

$$x(t) = e^{-|t|} \sin 5|t| \text{ for all } t$$

i.e.

$$x(t) = \begin{cases} e^{-(-t)} \sin 5(-t) = -e^t \sin 5t & \text{for } t < 0 \\ e^{-(t)} \sin 5(t) = e^{-t} \sin 5t & \text{for } t > 0 \end{cases}$$

i.e.

$$x(t) = -e^t \sin 5t u(-t) + e^{-t} \sin 5t u(t)$$

$$\begin{aligned} \therefore X(\omega) &= \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \left[ -e^t \frac{(e^{j5t} - e^{-j5t})}{2j} u(-t) + e^{-t} \left( \frac{e^{j5t} - e^{-j5t}}{2j} \right) u(t) \right] e^{-j\omega t} dt \\ &= -\frac{1}{2j} \left\{ \int_{-\infty}^0 \left[ e^{[1-j(\omega-5)]t} - e^{[1-j(\omega+5)]t} \right] dt \right\} \\ &\quad + \frac{1}{2j} \left\{ \int_0^{\infty} \left[ e^{-[1+j(\omega-5)]t} - e^{-[1+j(\omega+5)]t} \right] dt \right\} \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
 &= -\frac{1}{2j} \left\{ \int_0^\infty [e^{-[1-j(\omega-5)]t} - e^{-[1-j(\omega+5)]t}] dt \right\} \\
 &\quad + \frac{1}{2j} \left\{ \int_0^\infty [e^{-[1+j(\omega-5)]t} - e^{-[1+j(\omega+5)]t}] dt \right\} \\
 &= -\frac{1}{2j} \left[ \frac{e^{-[1-j(\omega-5)]t}}{-[1-j(\omega-5)]} - \frac{e^{-[1-j(\omega+5)]t}}{-[1-j(\omega+5)]} \right]_0^\infty \\
 &\quad + \frac{1}{2j} \left[ \frac{e^{-[1+j(\omega-5)]t}}{-[1+j(\omega-5)]} - \frac{e^{-[1+j(\omega+5)]t}}{-[1+j(\omega+5)]} \right]_0^\infty \\
 &= -\frac{1}{2j} \left[ \frac{1}{1-j(\omega-5)} - \frac{1}{1-j(\omega+5)} \right] + \frac{1}{2j} \left[ \frac{1}{1+j(\omega-5)} - \frac{1}{1+j(\omega+5)} \right] \\
 &= -\frac{1}{2j} \left[ \frac{1-j\omega-j5-1+j\omega-j5}{(1-j\omega)^2+5^2} \right] + \frac{1}{2j} \left[ \frac{1+j\omega+j5-1-j\omega+j5}{(1+j\omega)^2+5^2} \right] \\
 &= \frac{5}{(1-j\omega)^2+5^2} + \frac{5}{(1+j\omega)^2+5^2} \quad [\text{neglecting impulses}]
 \end{aligned}$$

(g) Given

$$x(t) = e^{at} u(-t)$$

$$\begin{aligned}
 X(\omega) &= F[e^{at} u(-t)] = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} e^{at} u(-t) e^{-j\omega t} dt = \int_{-\infty}^0 e^{at} e^{-j\omega t} dt \\
 \therefore &= \int_{-\infty}^0 e^{(a-j\omega)t} dt = \int_0^{\infty} e^{-(a-j\omega)t} dt = \left[ \frac{e^{-(a-j\omega)t}}{-(a-j\omega)} \right]_0^{\infty} = \frac{1}{a-j\omega}
 \end{aligned}$$

(h) Given

$$x(t) = te^{-at} u(t)$$

$$\begin{aligned}
 \therefore X(\omega) &= F[te^{-at} u(t)] = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} te^{-at} u(t) e^{-j\omega t} dt \\
 &= \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} te^{-(a+j\omega)t} dt = \left[ t \frac{e^{-(a+j\omega)t}}{-(a+j\omega)} \right]_0^{\infty} - \int_0^{\infty} \frac{e^{-(a+j\omega)t}}{-(a+j\omega)} dt \\
 &= \left[ t \frac{e^{-(a+j\omega)t}}{-(a+j\omega)} \right]_0^{\infty} - \left[ \frac{e^{-(a+j\omega)t}}{(a+j\omega)^2} \right]_0^{\infty} = 0 - 0 - 0 + \frac{1}{(a+j\omega)^2} \\
 &= \frac{1}{(a+j\omega)^2}
 \end{aligned}$$

**EXAMPLE 5.4** Using properties of Fourier transform, find the Fourier transform of the following:

- |   |                            |                      |                       |
|---|----------------------------|----------------------|-----------------------|
| (a) $e^{-at} u(t)$  | (b) $te^{-2t} u(t)$        | (c) $e^{j2t} u(t)$   | (d) $e^{j\omega_0 t}$ |
| (e) $\cos \omega_0 t u(t)$                                  | (f) $\sin \omega_0 t u(t)$ | (g) $e^{-3t} u(t-2)$ | (h) $e^{-a t-2 }$     |
| (i) $\cos \omega_0 t$                                       | (j) $\sin \omega_0 t$      | (k) $u(-t)$          |                       |
| (l) $\delta(t+2) + \delta(t+1) + \delta(t-1) + \delta(t-2)$ |                            |                      |                       |

**Solution:**

(a) Given  $x(t) = e^{-at} u(t)$

We know that

$$F[e^{at} u(-t)] = \frac{1}{a - j\omega}$$

The signal  $x(t) = e^{-at} u(t)$  is the time reversal of the signal  $e^{at} u(-t)$ . Therefore, using time reversal property [i.e.  $x(-t) \xrightarrow{\text{FT}} X(-\omega)$ ], we have

$$\begin{aligned} F[e^{-at} u(t)] &= F[e^{at} u(-t)] \Big|_{\omega=-\omega} = \frac{1}{a - j\omega} \Big|_{\omega=-\omega} = \frac{1}{a + j\omega} \\ \therefore e^{-at} u(t) &\xrightarrow{\text{FT}} \frac{1}{a + j\omega} \end{aligned}$$

(b) Given  $x(t) = te^{-2t} u(t)$

Let

$$x_1(t) = e^{-2t} u(t)$$

$$\therefore X_1(\omega) = F[e^{-2t} u(t)] = \frac{1}{2 + j\omega}$$

By using the property for differentiation in frequency

i.e.  $tx(t) \xrightarrow{\text{FT}} j \frac{d}{d\omega} X(\omega)$

We have

$$\begin{aligned} F[te^{-2t} u(t)] &= j \frac{d}{d\omega} F[e^{-2t} u(t)] \\ &= j \frac{d}{d\omega} \frac{1}{2 + j\omega} = j \frac{-1(j)}{(2 + j\omega)^2} = \frac{1}{(2 + j\omega)^2} \end{aligned}$$

On similar lines,

$$te^{-at} u(t) \xrightarrow{\text{FT}} \frac{1}{(a + j\omega)^2}$$

(c) Given

$$x(t) = e^{j2t} u(t)$$

The Fourier transform of a unit step function  $u(t)$  is given by

$$F[u(t)] = \pi\delta(\omega) + \frac{1}{j\omega}$$

By using frequency shifting property [ $e^{j\omega_0 t} x(t) \xrightarrow{\text{FT}} X(\omega - \omega_0)$ ], we have

$$\begin{aligned} F[e^{j2t} u(t)] &= F[u(t)]|_{\omega=\omega-2} \\ &= \left[ \pi\delta(\omega) + \frac{1}{j\omega} \right]_{\omega=\omega-2} = \pi\delta(\omega-2) + \frac{1}{j(\omega-2)} \end{aligned}$$

On similar lines,  $e^{j\omega_0 t} u(t) \xrightarrow{\text{FT}} \pi\delta(\omega - \omega_0) + \frac{1}{j(\omega - \omega_0)}$

(d) Given

$$x(t) = e^{j\omega_0 t}$$

The Fourier transform of a constant 1 is given by

$$F[1] = 2\pi\delta(\omega)$$

By using the frequency shift property [i.e.  $e^{j\omega_0 t} x(t) \xrightarrow{\text{FT}} X(\omega - \omega_0)$ ], we have

$$F[e^{j\omega_0 t}] = F[e^{j\omega_0 t}(1)] = F[1]|_{\omega=\omega-\omega_0} = 2\pi\delta(\omega)|_{\omega=\omega-\omega_0} = 2\pi\delta(\omega - \omega_0)$$

(e) Given

$$x(t) = \cos \omega_0 t u(t)$$

$$F[\cos \omega_0 t u(t)] = F\left[ \frac{e^{j\omega_0 t} + e^{-j\omega_0 t}}{2} u(t) \right]$$

Using linearity property [i.e.  $a x_1(t) + b x_2(t) \xrightarrow{\text{FT}} a X_1(\omega) + b X_2(\omega)$ ], we have

$$F[\cos \omega_0 t u(t)] = \frac{1}{2} F[e^{j\omega_0 t} u(t)] + \frac{1}{2} F[e^{-j\omega_0 t} u(t)]$$

Using frequency shift property [i.e.  $e^{j\omega_0 t} x(t) \xrightarrow{\text{FT}} X(\omega - \omega_0)$ ], we have

$$\begin{aligned} F[\cos \omega_0 t u(t)] &= \frac{1}{2} \{F[u(t)]\}|_{\omega=\omega-\omega_0} + \frac{1}{2} \{F[u(t)]\}|_{\omega=\omega+\omega_0} \\ &= \frac{1}{2} \left[ \pi\delta(\omega - \omega_0) + \frac{1}{j(\omega - \omega_0)} + \pi\delta(\omega + \omega_0) + \frac{1}{j(\omega + \omega_0)} \right] \\ &= \frac{1}{2} \left[ \pi\delta(\omega - \omega_0) + \pi\delta(\omega + \omega_0) + \frac{2j\omega}{\omega_0^2 - \omega^2} \right] \\ &= \frac{j\omega}{\omega_0^2 + (j\omega)^2} + \frac{\pi}{2} \delta(\omega - \omega_0) + \frac{\pi}{2} \delta(\omega + \omega_0) \end{aligned}$$

(f) Given

$$x(t) = \sin \omega_0 t u(t)$$

$$F[\sin \omega_0 t u(t)] = F\left[\frac{e^{j\omega_0 t} - e^{-j\omega_0 t}}{2j} u(t)\right]$$

Using linearity property [i.e.  $ax_1(t) + bx_2(t) \xrightarrow{\text{FT}} aX_1(\omega) + bX_2(\omega)$ ], we have

$$F[\sin \omega_0 t u(t)] = \frac{1}{2j} \{F[e^{j\omega_0 t} u(t)]\} - \frac{1}{2j} \{F[e^{-j\omega_0 t} u(t)]\}$$

Using frequency shift property [i.e.  $e^{j\omega_0 t} x(t) \xrightarrow{\text{FT}} X(\omega - \omega_0)$ ], we have

$$\begin{aligned} F[\sin \omega_0 t u(t)] &= \frac{1}{2j} \{F[u(t)]\}_{\omega=\omega-\omega_0} - \frac{1}{2j} \{F[u(t)]\}_{\omega=\omega+\omega_0} \\ &= \frac{1}{2j} \left\{ \left[ \pi\delta(\omega - \omega_0) + \frac{1}{j(\omega - \omega_0)} \right] - \left[ \pi\delta(\omega + \omega_0) + \frac{1}{j(\omega + \omega_0)} \right] \right\} \\ &= \frac{\omega_0}{\omega_0^2 + (j\omega)^2} + \frac{1}{2j} [\pi\delta(\omega - \omega_0) - \pi\delta(\omega + \omega_0)] \\ \therefore F[\sin \omega_0 t u(t)] &= \frac{\omega_0}{\omega_0^2 + (j\omega)^2} + \frac{\pi}{j2} [\delta(\omega - \omega_0) - \delta(\omega + \omega_0)] \end{aligned}$$

(g) Given

$$x(t) = e^{-3t} u(t-2)$$

So

$$x(t) = e^{-3t} u(t-2) = e^{-3(t-2)} u(t-2) e^{-6}$$

We know that

$$F[e^{-3t} u(t)] = \frac{1}{3 + j\omega}$$

Using time shift property [i.e.  $x(t - t_0) \xrightarrow{\text{FT}} e^{-j\omega t_0} X(\omega)$ ], we have

$$F[e^{-3(t-2)} u(t-2)] = e^{-j2\omega} F[e^{-3t} u(t)] = \frac{e^{-j2\omega}}{3 + j\omega}$$

Using linearity property [i.e.  $ax(t) \xrightarrow{\text{FT}} aX(\omega)$ ], we have

$$F[x(t)] = F[e^{-6} e^{-3(t-2)} u(t-2)] = e^{-6} F[e^{-3(t-2)} u(t-2)] = e^{-6} \frac{e^{-j2\omega}}{3 + j\omega}$$

$\therefore$

$$F[x(t)] = \frac{e^{-2(3+j\omega)}}{3 + j\omega}$$

(h) Given

$$x(t) = e^{-a|t-2|}$$

We have

$$\mathcal{F}[e^{-a|t|}] = \frac{2a}{a^2 + \omega^2}$$

Using time shifting property [i.e.  $x(t - t_0) \xrightarrow{\text{FT}} e^{-j\omega t_0} X(\omega)$ ], we have

$$\mathcal{F}[e^{-a|t-2|}] = e^{-j2\omega} \frac{2a}{a^2 + \omega^2}$$

(i) Given

$$x(t) = \cos \omega_0 t$$

Let

$$x(t) = x_1(t) \cos \omega_0 t$$

where

$$x_1(t) = 1$$

Using modulation property, we have

$$\mathcal{F}[x_1(t) \cos \omega_0 t] = \frac{1}{2} [X_1(\omega + \omega_0) + X_1(\omega - \omega_0)]$$

$$x_1(t) = 1$$

∴

$$X_1(\omega) = 2\pi\delta(\omega)$$

∴

$$\mathcal{F}[(1) \cos \omega_0 t] = \frac{1}{2} [2\pi\delta(\omega + \omega_0) + 2\pi\delta(\omega - \omega_0)]$$

i.e.

$$\mathcal{F}[\cos \omega_0 t] = \pi[\delta(\omega + \omega_0) + \delta(\omega - \omega_0)]$$

(j) Given

$$x(t) = \sin \omega_0 t$$

Let

$$x(t) = x_1(t) \sin \omega_0 t$$

where

$$x_1(t) = 1$$

∴

$$\mathcal{F}[x_1(t)] = \mathcal{F}[1] = 2\pi\delta(\omega)$$

Using modulation property, we have

$$\mathcal{F}[x_1(t) \sin \omega_0 t] = \frac{j}{2} [X_1(\omega + \omega_0) - X_1(\omega - \omega_0)]$$

∴

$$\mathcal{F}[(1) \sin \omega_0 t] = \frac{j}{2} [2\pi\delta(\omega + \omega_0) - 2\pi\delta(\omega - \omega_0)]$$

i.e.

$$\mathcal{F}[\sin \omega_0 t] = j[\pi\delta(\omega + \omega_0) - \pi\delta(\omega - \omega_0)]$$

(k) Given

$$x(t) = u(-t)$$

We know that

$$\mathcal{F}[u(t)] = \pi\delta(\omega) + \frac{1}{j\omega}$$

Using time reversal property [i.e.  $x(-t) \xrightarrow{\text{FT}} X(-\omega)$ ], we have

$$\begin{aligned} \mathcal{F}[u(-t)] &= \mathcal{F}[u(t)] \Big|_{\omega=-\omega} \\ &= \pi\delta(\omega) + \frac{1}{j\omega} \Big|_{\omega=-\omega} = \pi\delta(-\omega) + \frac{1}{j(-\omega)} \\ &= \pi\delta(\omega) - \frac{1}{j\omega} \end{aligned}$$

(l) Given  $x(t) = \delta(t+2) + \delta(t+1) + \delta(t-1) + \delta(t-2)$

$$\begin{aligned} X(\omega) &= \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} [\delta(t+2) + \delta(t+1) + \delta(t-1) + \delta(t-2)] e^{-j\omega t} dt \\ &= \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \delta(t+2) e^{-j\omega t} dt + \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \delta(t+1) e^{-j\omega t} dt + \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \delta(t-1) e^{-j\omega t} dt \\ &\quad + \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \delta(t-2) e^{-j\omega t} dt \\ &= e^{j2\omega} + e^{j\omega} + e^{-j\omega} + e^{-j2\omega} = 2 \left[ \frac{e^{j\omega} + e^{-j\omega}}{2} + \frac{e^{j2\omega} + e^{-j2\omega}}{2} \right] \\ &= 2 [\cos \omega + \cos 2\omega] \end{aligned}$$

**EXAMPLE 5.5** Find the Fourier transform of the signal

$$\begin{aligned} x(t) &= e^{-|t|} \quad \text{for } -2 \leq t \leq 2 \\ &= 0 \quad \text{otherwise} \end{aligned}$$

**Solution:** Given

$$x(t) = e^{-|t|} \quad \text{for } -2 \leq t \leq 2$$

$$\begin{aligned} X(\omega) &= \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} e^{-|t|} e^{-j\omega t} dt \\ &= \int_{-2}^0 e^{-(-t)} e^{-j\omega t} dt + \int_0^2 e^{-(t)} e^{-j\omega t} dt \\ &= \int_{-2}^0 e^t e^{-j\omega t} dt + \int_0^2 e^{-t} e^{-j\omega t} dt \\ &= \int_0^2 e^{-(1-j\omega)t} dt + \int_0^2 e^{-(1+j\omega)t} dt \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
&= \left[ \frac{e^{-(1-j\omega)t}}{-(1-j\omega)} \right]_0^2 + \left[ \frac{e^{-(1+j\omega)t}}{-(1+j\omega)} \right]_0^2 \\
&= \frac{e^{-2(1-j\omega)} - 1}{-(1-j\omega)} + \frac{e^{-2(1+j\omega)} - 1}{-(1+j\omega)} \\
&= \frac{1}{1-j\omega} [1 - e^{-2(1-j\omega)}] + \frac{1}{1+j\omega} [1 - e^{-2(1+j\omega)}] \\
&= \frac{1}{1-j\omega} + \frac{1}{1+j\omega} - e^{-2} \left( \frac{e^{j2\omega}}{1-j\omega} + \frac{e^{-j2\omega}}{1+j\omega} \right) \\
&= \frac{2}{1+\omega^2} - \frac{e^{-2}}{1+\omega^2} (e^{j2\omega} + j\omega e^{j2\omega} + e^{-j2\omega} - j\omega e^{-j2\omega}) \\
&= \frac{2}{1+\omega^2} - \frac{e^{-2}}{1+\omega^2} [2 \cos 2\omega - 2\omega \sin 2\omega]
\end{aligned}$$

**EXAMPLE 5.6** Find the Fourier transform of the function

$$x(t) = [u(t+2) - u(t-2)] \cos 2\pi t$$

**Solution:** The given waveform is shown in Figure 5.14.

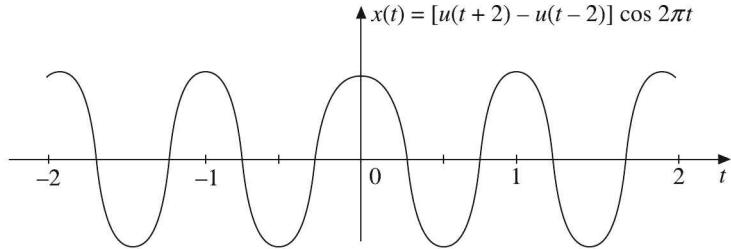


Figure 5.14 Waveform for Example 5.6.

Now,

$$F[\cos 2\pi t] = \pi\delta(\omega - 2\pi) + \pi\delta(\omega + 2\pi)$$

$$\begin{aligned}
F[u(t+2) - u(t-2)] &= \int_{-2}^2 (1) e^{-j\omega t} dt = \left[ \frac{e^{-j\omega t}}{-j\omega} \right]_{-2}^2 \\
&= -\frac{1}{j\omega} [e^{-j2\omega} - e^{j2\omega}] = \frac{e^{j2\omega} - e^{-j2\omega}}{j\omega} \\
&= 2 \frac{e^{j2\omega} - e^{-j2\omega}}{2j\omega} = 4 \frac{\sin 2\omega}{2\omega} = 4 \text{Sa}(2\omega)
\end{aligned}$$

$$F[x(t)] = F\{[u(t+2) - u(t-2)] \cos 2\pi t\}$$

Using multiplication property [i.e.  $x_1(t)x_2(t) \xleftarrow{\text{FT}} \frac{1}{2\pi} X_1(\omega) * X_2(\omega)$ ], we have

$$\begin{aligned} X(\omega) &= \frac{1}{2\pi} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \frac{4 \sin 2\lambda}{2\lambda} \{ \pi\delta(\omega - 2\pi - \lambda) + \pi\delta(\omega + 2\pi - \lambda) \} d\lambda \\ &= \frac{1}{2\pi} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \frac{4 \sin 2\lambda}{2\lambda} \pi\delta(\omega - 2\pi - \lambda) d\lambda + \frac{1}{2\pi} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \frac{4 \sin 2\lambda}{2\lambda} \pi\delta(\omega + 2\pi - \lambda) d\lambda \\ &= 2 \frac{\sin 2(\omega - 2\pi)}{2(\omega - 2\pi)} + 2 \frac{\sin 2(\omega + 2\pi)}{2(\omega + 2\pi)} \\ &= 2\text{Sa}[2(\omega - 2\pi)] + 2\text{Sa}[2(\omega + 2\pi)] \end{aligned}$$

**EXAMPLE 5.7** Find the Fourier transform of

$$x(t) = f(t - 2) + f(t + 2)$$

**Solution:** Given

$$x(t) = f(t - 2) + f(t + 2)$$

Using linearity property [i.e.  $ax_1(t) + bx_2(t) \xleftarrow{\text{FT}} aX_1(\omega) + bX_2(\omega)$ ], we have

$$\mathcal{F}[x(t)] = \mathcal{F}[f(t - 2)] + \mathcal{F}[f(t + 2)]$$

Using time shifting property [i.e.  $x(t - t_0) \xleftarrow{\text{FT}} e^{-j\omega t_0} X(\omega)$ ], we have

$$\begin{aligned} \mathcal{F}[x(t)] &= \mathcal{F}[f(t)] e^{-j2\omega} + \mathcal{F}[f(t)] e^{j2\omega} \\ &= e^{-j2\omega} \mathcal{F}(\omega) + e^{j2\omega} \mathcal{F}(\omega) \\ &= \mathcal{F}(\omega) [e^{j2\omega} + e^{-j2\omega}] \\ &= 2\mathcal{F}(\omega) \cos 2\omega \end{aligned}$$

**EXAMPLE 5.8** Show that  $\frac{1}{a+jt} \xleftarrow{\text{FT}} 2\pi e^{a\omega} u(-\omega)$ .

To use the duality property, let

$$X(t) = \frac{1}{a+jt}$$

$$\therefore X(\omega) = \frac{1}{a+j\omega}$$

and

$$x(t) = e^{-at} u(t)$$

Using duality property, we have

$$\mathcal{F}[X(t)] = \mathcal{F}\left(\frac{1}{a+jt}\right) = 2\pi e^{-at} u(t) \Big|_{t=-\omega} = 2\pi e^{a\omega} u(-\omega)$$

$$\therefore \frac{1}{a+jt} \xrightarrow{\text{FT}} 2\pi e^{a\omega} u(-\omega)$$

**EXAMPLE 5.9** Show that  $\frac{j}{\pi t} \xrightarrow{\text{FT}} \text{sgn}(\omega)$

*Solution:* To use the duality property [i.e.  $X(t) \xrightarrow{\text{FT}} 2\pi x(-\omega)$ ], let  $x(t) = \text{sgn}(t)$ . The Fourier transform of  $\text{sgn}(t)$  is:

$$X(\omega) = F[\text{sgn}(t)] = \frac{2}{j\omega}$$

$$\therefore X(t) = \frac{2}{jt}$$

As per duality property [i.e.  $X(t) \xrightarrow{\text{FT}} 2\pi x(-\omega)$ ], we have

$$F\left(\frac{2}{jt}\right) = 2\pi \text{sgn}(-\omega) = -2\pi \text{sgn}(\omega)$$

$$\therefore \frac{2}{jt} \xrightarrow{\text{FT}} -2\pi \text{sgn}(\omega)$$

$$\text{i.e. } -\frac{1}{j\pi t} \xrightarrow{\text{FT}} \text{sgn}(\omega)$$

$$\text{i.e. } \frac{j}{\pi t} \xrightarrow{\text{FT}} \text{sgn}(\omega)$$

**EXAMPLE 5.10** Find the Fourier transform of a signal

$$(a) \quad x(t) = \frac{1}{a^2 + t^2} \qquad (ii) \quad x(t) = \frac{1}{t}$$

*Solution:*

$$(a) \quad \text{We have} \quad F[e^{-a|t|}] = \frac{2a}{a^2 + \omega^2}$$

Applying duality theorem [i.e.  $X(t) \xrightarrow{\text{FT}} 2\pi x(-\omega)$ ], we have

$$F\left(\frac{2a}{a^2 + t^2}\right) = 2\pi e^{-a|\omega|}$$

$$\therefore F\left(\frac{1}{a^2 + t^2}\right) = \frac{1}{2a} 2\pi e^{-a|\omega|} = \frac{\pi}{a} e^{-a|\omega|}$$

(b) We have

$$\text{sgn}(t) \xleftarrow{\text{FT}} \frac{2}{j\omega}$$

Hence, from linearity property of Fourier transform, we get

$$\frac{j}{2} \text{sgn}(t) \xleftarrow{\text{FT}} \frac{1}{\omega}$$

Now, from duality theorem [i.e.  $X(t) \xleftarrow{\text{FT}} 2\pi x(-\omega)$ ], we have

$$\frac{1}{t} \xleftarrow{\text{FT}} 2\pi \frac{j}{2} \text{sgn}(-\omega) = -j\pi \text{sgn}(\omega)$$

**EXAMPLE 5.11** Find the inverse Fourier transform of  $X(\omega) = \frac{j\omega}{(2 + j\omega)^2}$ .

**Solution:** We know that

$$\mathcal{F}[te^{-at} u(t)] = \frac{1}{(a + j\omega)^2}$$

$$\therefore \mathcal{F}[te^{-2t} u(t)] = \frac{1}{(2 + j\omega)^2}$$

Let

$$te^{-2t} u(t) = x_1(t)$$

Then

$$\frac{1}{(2 + j\omega)^2} = X_1(\omega)$$

Using differentiation in time domain property  $\left[ \text{i.e. } \frac{d}{dt} x(t) \xleftarrow{\text{FT}} j\omega X(\omega) \right]$ , we have

$$\mathcal{F}\left[\frac{d}{dt} x_1(t)\right] = j\omega X_1(\omega)$$

$$\therefore \mathcal{F}^{-1}[j\omega X_1(\omega)] = \frac{d}{dt}[x_1(t)] = \frac{d}{dt}[te^{-2t} u(t)]$$

**EXAMPLE 5.12** Find the inverse Fourier transform of  $X(\omega) = e^{-|\omega|}$ .

**Solution:** We know that

$$\mathcal{F}[e^{-|t|}] = \frac{2}{1 + \omega^2}$$

Using duality property [i.e.  $X(t) = 2\pi x(-\omega)$ ], we have

$$\mathcal{F}\left(\frac{2}{1 + t^2}\right) = 2\pi [e^{-|-\omega|}] = 2\pi e^{-|\omega|}$$

$$\begin{aligned}\therefore e^{-|\omega|} &= \frac{1}{2\pi} F\left(\frac{2}{1+t^2}\right) \\ \therefore F^{-1}[e^{-|\omega|}] &= \frac{1}{2\pi} \frac{2}{1+t^2} = \frac{1}{\pi(1+t^2)}\end{aligned}$$

**EXAMPLE 5.13** Find the inverse Fourier transform of  $X(\omega) = e^{-2\omega} u(\omega)$ .

**Solution:** We know that

$$F[e^{-2t} u(t)] = \frac{1}{2 + j\omega}$$

Using duality property [i.e.  $X(t) \xrightarrow{\text{FT}} 2\pi x(-\omega)$ ], we have

$$F\left(\frac{1}{2+jt}\right) = 2\pi e^{-2(-\omega)} u(-\omega) = 2\pi e^{2\omega} u(-\omega)$$

Using time reversal property, [i.e.  $x(-t) = X(-\omega)$ ], we have

$$\begin{aligned}F\left(\frac{1}{2-jt}\right) &= 2\pi e^{-2\omega} u(\omega) \\ \therefore e^{-2\omega} u(\omega) &= \frac{1}{2\pi} F\left(\frac{1}{2-jt}\right) \\ \therefore F^{-1}[e^{-2\omega} u(\omega)] &= \frac{1}{2\pi(2-jt)}\end{aligned}$$

**Alternative method**

We have

$$\begin{aligned}x(t) &= \frac{1}{2\pi} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} X(\omega) e^{j\omega t} d\omega \\ \therefore x(t) &= \frac{1}{2\pi} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} e^{-2\omega} u(\omega) e^{j\omega t} d\omega \\ &= \frac{1}{2\pi} \int_0^{\infty} e^{-2\omega} e^{j\omega t} d\omega = \frac{1}{2\pi} \int_0^{\infty} e^{-(2-jt)\omega} d\omega \\ &= \frac{1}{2\pi} \left[ \frac{e^{-(2-jt)\omega}}{-(2-jt)} \right]_0^{\infty} = \frac{1}{2\pi(2-jt)}\end{aligned}$$

**EXAMPLE 5.14** Show that the Fourier transform of a train of impulses of unit height separated by  $T$  sec [ $\text{comb}_T(t)$ ] is also a train of impulses of height  $\omega_0$ , separated by  $\omega_0$ , where  $\omega_0 = (2\pi/T)$ .

**Solution:** The function representation of a train of impulses of unit height, separated by  $T$  sec is:

$$\text{comb}_T(t) = \delta_T(t) = \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} \delta(t - nT)$$

Since the signal is periodic, it can be expressed in Fourier series as follows:

$$\sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} \delta(t - nT) = \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} C_n e^{jn\omega_0 t}$$

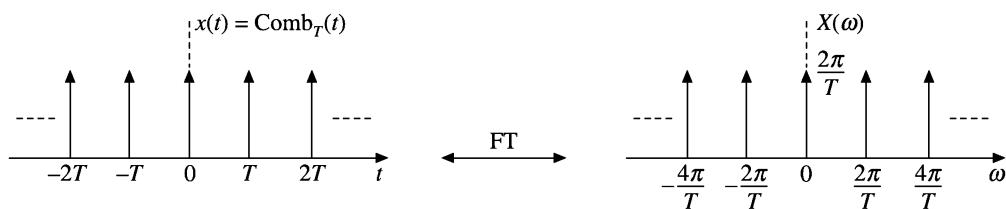
where  $C_n = \frac{1}{T} \int_{-T/2}^{T/2} \delta(t) e^{jn\omega_0 t} dt = \frac{1}{T}$

[ $\because$  In the interval  $-(T/2)$  to  $(T/2)$ , the signal is  $\delta(t)$ ]

i.e.  $\sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} \delta(t - nT) = \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} \frac{1}{T} e^{jn\omega_0 t} = \frac{1}{T} \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} e^{jn\omega_0 t}$

$$\begin{aligned} \therefore F[x(t)] &= F[\text{comb}_T(t)] = F\left[ \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} \delta(t - nT) \right] \\ &= F\left[ \frac{1}{T} \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} e^{jn\omega_0 t} \right] = \frac{1}{T} \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} F[e^{jn\omega_0 t}] \\ &= \frac{2\pi}{T} \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} \delta(\omega - n\omega_0) = \frac{2\pi}{T} \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} \delta\left(\omega - \frac{2\pi}{T}n\right) \\ &= \frac{2\pi}{T} \text{comb}_{2\pi/T}(\omega) \end{aligned}$$

It is a train of impulses of height  $2\pi/T$  spaced  $2\pi/T$  apart. The graphical representation of the given impulse train, both in time domain and frequency domain is shown in Figure 5.15.



**Figure 5.15** Graphical representation of  $\sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} \delta(t - nT) \xleftrightarrow{\text{FT}} \omega_0 \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} \delta(\omega - n\omega_0)$ .

**EXAMPLE 5.15** Find the Fourier transform of the following:

- (a) Gaussian signal  $x(t) = e^{-at^2}$
- (b) Gaussian modulated signal  $x(t) = e^{-at^2} \cos \omega_c t$

**Solution:**

(a) Given  $x(t) = e^{-at^2}$

The Fourier transform of the given signal is:

$$X(\omega) = F[e^{-at^2}] = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} e^{-at^2} e^{-j\omega t} dt = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} e^{-(at^2 + j\omega t)} dt = e^{-\omega^2/4a} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} e^{-(t\sqrt{a} + (j\omega/2\sqrt{a}))^2} dt$$

Let

$$p = t\sqrt{a} + \frac{j\omega}{2\sqrt{a}}$$

∴

$$dp = \sqrt{a} dt$$

$$\begin{aligned} \therefore X(\omega) &= \frac{e^{-\omega^2/4a}}{\sqrt{a}} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} e^{-p^2} dp \\ &= \frac{e^{-\omega^2/4a}}{\sqrt{a}} \sqrt{\pi} \quad \left( \because \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} e^{-p^2} dp = \sqrt{\pi} \right) \\ &= \sqrt{\frac{\pi}{a}} e^{-\omega^2/4a} \end{aligned}$$

$$\therefore F[e^{-at^2}] = \sqrt{\frac{\pi}{a}} e^{-\omega^2/4a} \quad \text{or} \quad e^{-at^2} \xleftrightarrow{\text{FT}} \sqrt{\frac{\pi}{a}} e^{-\omega^2/4a}$$

(b) Given Gaussian modulated signal  $x(t) = e^{-at^2} \cos \omega_c t$

$$= e^{-at^2} \left( \frac{e^{j\omega_c t} + e^{-j\omega_c t}}{2} \right)$$

$$\therefore X(\omega) = \frac{1}{2} \left\{ \left[ F(e^{-at^2} e^{j\omega_c t}) \right] + \left[ F(e^{-at^2} e^{-j\omega_c t}) \right] \right\}$$

By using frequency shifting property [i.e.  $e^{-j\omega_0 t} x(t) \xleftrightarrow{\text{FT}} X(\omega + \omega_0)$ ], we have

$$F(e^{-at^2} e^{j\omega_c t}) = F(e^{-at^2}) \Big|_{\omega=\omega-\omega_c}$$

and

$$F(e^{-at^2} e^{-j\omega_c t}) = F[e^{-at^2}] \Big|_{\omega=\omega+\omega_c}$$

$$\therefore X(\omega) = \frac{1}{2} \left[ \sqrt{\frac{\pi}{a}} e^{-(\omega-\omega_c)^2/4a} + \sqrt{\frac{\pi}{a}} e^{-(\omega+\omega_c)^2/4a} \right]$$

The graphical representation of Gaussian signal and its spectrum are shown in Figure 5.16. The graphical representation of Gaussian modulated signal and its spectrum are shown in Figure 5.17.

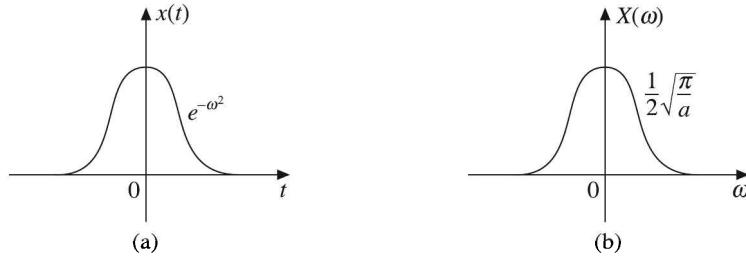


Figure 5.16 (a) Gaussian signal, (b) Its spectrum.

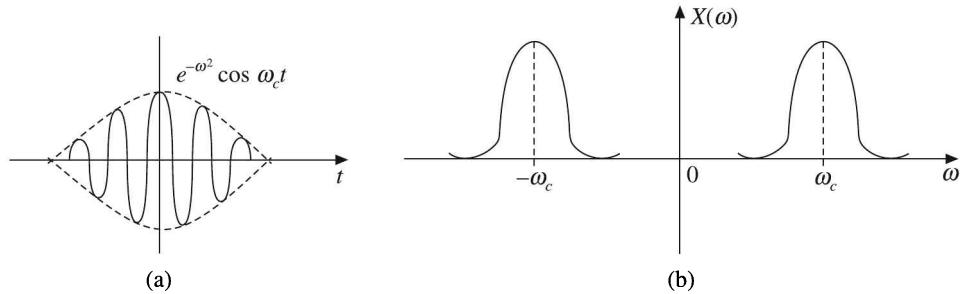


Figure 5.17 (a) Gaussian modulated signal, (b) Its spectrum.

**EXAMPLE 5.16** Find the Fourier transform of the rectangular pulse shown in Figure 5.18.

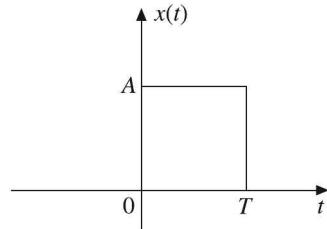


Figure 5.18 Signal for Example 5.16.

**Solution:** From Figure 5.18, we have

$$x(t) = \begin{cases} A, & \text{for } 0 < t < T \\ 0, & \text{elsewhere} \end{cases}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
\therefore X(\omega) &= F[x(t)] = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} x(t) e^{-j\omega t} dt \\
&= \int_0^T A e^{-j\omega t} dt = A \left[ \frac{e^{-j\omega t}}{-j\omega} \right]_0^T = A \left( \frac{e^{-j\omega T} - 1}{-j\omega} \right) \\
&= A \left( \frac{1 - e^{-j\omega T}}{j\omega} \right) = A e^{-j\omega(T/2)} \left[ \frac{e^{j\omega(T/2)} - e^{-j\omega(T/2)}}{j\omega} \right] \\
&= \frac{2A}{\omega} e^{-j\omega(T/2)} \left[ \frac{e^{j\omega(T/2)} - e^{-j\omega(T/2)}}{2j} \right] = \frac{2A}{\omega} e^{-j\omega(T/2)} \sin \frac{\omega T}{2} \\
&= AT e^{-j\omega(T/2)} \left[ \frac{\sin(\omega T/2)}{(\omega T/2)} \right]
\end{aligned}$$

$$\therefore X(\omega) = AT e^{-j\omega(T/2)} \operatorname{sinc} \frac{\omega T}{2}$$

The amplitude spectra of the function is shown in Figure 5.19.

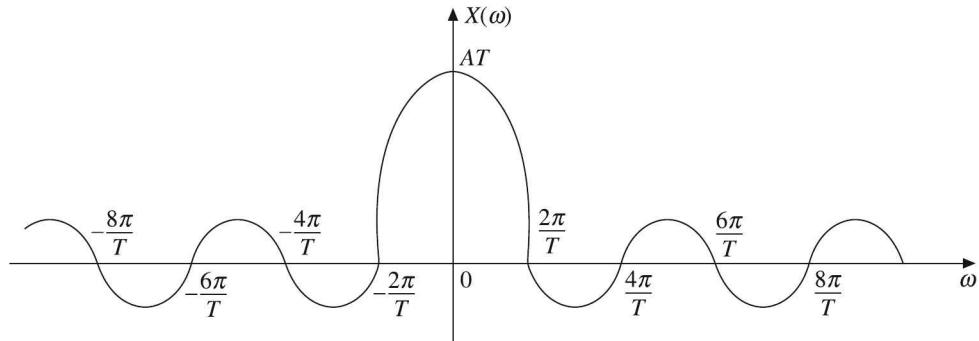


Figure 5.19 Amplitude spectrum of signal in Figure 5.18.

**EXAMPLE 5.17** Find the Fourier transform of the signal  $x(t) = e^{-a|t|} \operatorname{sgn}(t)$ .

**Solution:** Given signal is:

$$x(t) = e^{-a|t|} \operatorname{sgn}(t)$$

i.e.

$$x(t) = e^{-a|t|} \operatorname{sgn}(t) = \begin{cases} e^{-a(-t)} (-1) = -e^{at} & \text{for } t < 0 \\ e^{-a(t)} (1) = e^{-at} & \text{for } t > 0 \end{cases}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
 \therefore F[x(t)] = X(\omega) &= \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} x(t) e^{-j\omega t} dt \\
 &= \int_{-\infty}^0 -e^{at} e^{-j\omega t} dt + \int_0^{\infty} e^{-at} e^{-j\omega t} dt \\
 &= - \int_{-\infty}^0 e^{(a-j\omega)t} dt + \int_0^{\infty} e^{-(a+j\omega)t} dt \\
 &= - \int_0^{\infty} e^{-(a-j\omega)t} dt + \int_0^{\infty} e^{-(a+j\omega)t} dt \\
 &= \left[ -\frac{e^{-(a-j\omega)t}}{-(a-j\omega)} + \frac{e^{-(a+j\omega)t}}{-(a+j\omega)} \right]_0^{\infty} \\
 &= \left[ -\frac{e^{-\infty} - e^0}{-(a-j\omega)} + \frac{e^{-\infty} - e^0}{-(a+j\omega)} \right] = -\frac{1}{a-j\omega} + \frac{1}{a+j\omega} = \frac{-a - j\omega + a - j\omega}{a^2 + \omega^2} \\
 \therefore X(\omega) &= \frac{-2j\omega}{a^2 + \omega^2}
 \end{aligned}$$

**EXAMPLE 5.18** Compute the Fourier transform of the signal

$$x(t) = \begin{cases} 1 + \cos \pi t & |t| < 1 \\ 0 & |t| > 1 \end{cases}$$

**Solution:** Given  $x(t) = 1 + \cos \pi t \quad |t| < 1$

$$\begin{aligned}
 \therefore X(\omega) &= \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} x(t) e^{-j\omega t} dt \\
 &= \int_{-1}^1 (1 + \cos \pi t) e^{-j\omega t} dt \\
 &= \int_{-1}^1 e^{-j\omega t} dt + \int_{-1}^1 \left( \frac{e^{j\pi t} + e^{-j\pi t}}{2} \right) e^{-j\omega t} dt \\
 &= \int_{-1}^1 e^{-j\omega t} dt + \frac{1}{2} \int_{-1}^1 e^{j(\pi-\omega)t} dt + \frac{1}{2} \int_{-1}^1 e^{-j(\pi+\omega)t} dt \\
 &= \frac{2 \sin \omega}{\omega} + \frac{\sin(\pi - \omega)}{(\pi - \omega)} - \frac{\sin(\pi + \omega)}{(\pi + \omega)} \\
 &= 2 \operatorname{sinc}(\omega) + \operatorname{sinc}(\pi - \omega) - \operatorname{sinc}(\pi + \omega)
 \end{aligned}$$

**EXAMPLE 5.19** Find the magnitude and phase spectrum of the signal shown in Figure 5.20.

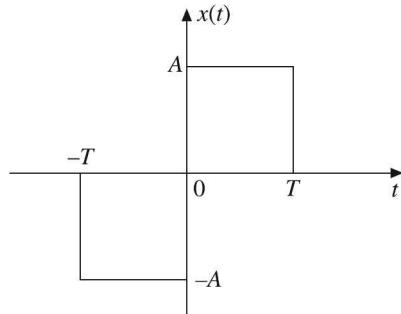


Figure 5.20 Signal for Example 5.19.

**Solution:** The signal shown in Figure 5.20 is expressed as:

$$x(t) = \begin{cases} -A & \text{for } -T < t < 0 \\ A & \text{for } 0 < t < T \\ 0 & \text{elsewhere} \end{cases}$$

$$\begin{aligned} \therefore X(\omega) &= \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} x(t) e^{-j\omega t} dt \\ &= \int_{-T}^{0} -A e^{-j\omega t} dt + \int_{0}^{T} A e^{-j\omega t} dt = - \int_{0}^{T} A e^{j\omega t} dt + \int_{0}^{T} A e^{-j\omega t} dt \\ &= -A \left[ \frac{e^{j\omega t}}{j\omega} \right]_0^T + A \left[ \frac{e^{-j\omega t}}{-j\omega} \right]_0^T = -\frac{A}{j\omega} [(e^{j\omega T} - e^0) + (e^{-j\omega T} - e^0)] \\ &= \frac{A}{j\omega} [2 - (e^{j\omega T} + e^{-j\omega T})] = \frac{A}{j\omega} [2 - 2 \cos \omega T] = \frac{2A}{j\omega} [1 - \cos \omega T] \end{aligned}$$

Therefore, the magnitude of  $X(\omega)$  is:

$$|X(\omega)| = \frac{2A}{\omega} [1 - \cos \omega T]$$

Therefore,

$$|X(\omega)| = 0, \quad \text{when } 1 - \cos \omega T = 0$$

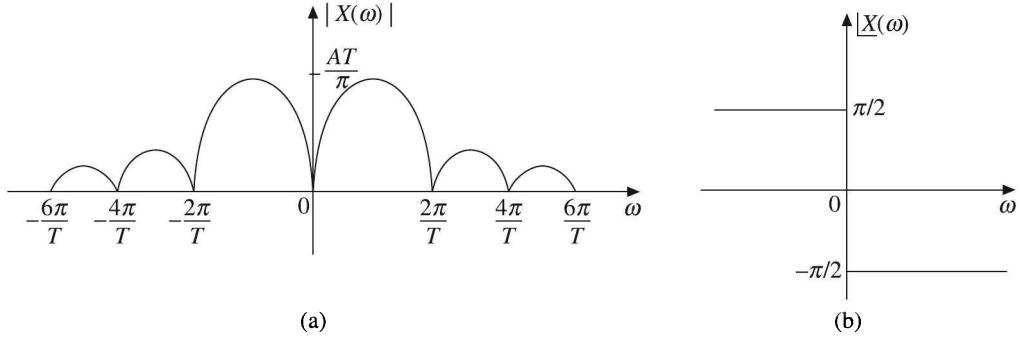
i.e.

$$\omega T = 2n\pi \quad \text{or} \quad \omega = \frac{2n\pi}{T}$$

Phase angle of  $X(\omega)$  is:

$$\begin{aligned} \underline{|X(\omega)|} &= -(\pi/2) \quad \text{for } \omega > 0 \\ &= (\pi/2) \quad \text{for } \omega < 0 \end{aligned}$$

The magnitude and phase plots are shown in Figure 5.21.



**Figure 5.21** Magnitude and phase spectrum of Example 5.19.

**EXAMPLE 5.20** Find the Fourier transform of

$$x(t) = \begin{cases} 1-t^2 & 0 < t < 1 \\ 0 & \text{otherwise} \end{cases}$$

**Solution:** Given

$$x(t) = \begin{cases} 1-t^2 & 0 < t < 1 \\ 0 & \text{otherwise} \end{cases}$$

$$\begin{aligned} X(\omega) &= \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} x(t) e^{-j\omega t} dt \\ &= \int_0^1 (1-t^2) e^{-j\omega t} dt = \int_0^1 e^{-j\omega t} dt - \int_0^1 t^2 e^{-j\omega t} dt \\ &= \left[ \frac{e^{-j\omega t}}{-j\omega} \right]_0^1 - \left\{ \left[ \frac{t^2 e^{-j\omega t}}{-j\omega} \right]_0^1 - \left[ \int_0^1 \frac{e^{-j\omega t}}{-j\omega} 2t dt \right]_0^1 \right\} \\ &= \frac{e^{-j\omega} - 1}{-j\omega} - \frac{e^{-j\omega}}{-j\omega} - \frac{2}{j\omega} \left\{ \left[ \frac{te^{-j\omega t}}{(-j\omega)} \right]_0^1 - \int_0^1 \frac{e^{-j\omega t}}{(-j\omega)} dt \right\} \\ &= \frac{1}{j\omega} - \frac{2}{j\omega} \left\{ \frac{e^{-j\omega}}{(-j\omega)} - \left[ \frac{e^{-j\omega t}}{(j\omega)^2} \right]_0^1 \right\} \\ &= \frac{1}{j\omega} - \frac{2}{j\omega} \left[ \frac{e^{-j\omega}}{(-j\omega)} - \frac{e^{-j\omega}}{(j\omega)^2} + \frac{1}{(j\omega)^2} \right] \\ &= \frac{1}{j\omega} - \frac{2}{(j\omega)^3} + \frac{2}{(j\omega)^2} \left( e^{-j\omega} + \frac{e^{-j\omega}}{j\omega} \right) \end{aligned}$$

**EXAMPLE 5.21** Find the Fourier transform of the signal  $x(t)$  shown in Figure 5.22 using time differentiation property.

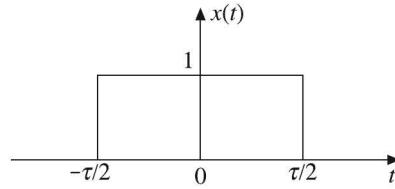


Figure 5.22 Signal for Example 5.21.

**Solution:** The given signal is a rectangular pulse function  $\Pi(t/\tau)$ . The plot of  $dx(t)/dt$  is shown in Figure 5.23.

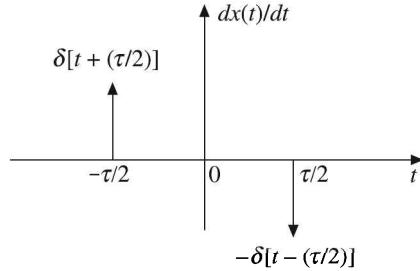


Figure 5.23 Plot of  $dx(t)/dt$ .

From Figure 5.23, we have

$$\frac{dx(t)}{dt} = \delta\left(t + \frac{\tau}{2}\right) - \delta\left(t - \frac{\tau}{2}\right)$$

Also

$$x(t) = u\left(t + \frac{\tau}{2}\right) - u\left(t - \frac{\tau}{2}\right)$$

$$\therefore \frac{dx(t)}{dt} = \frac{d}{dt} \left[ u\left(t + \frac{\tau}{2}\right) \right] - \frac{d}{dt} \left[ u\left(t - \frac{\tau}{2}\right) \right] = \delta\left(t + \frac{\tau}{2}\right) - \delta\left(t - \frac{\tau}{2}\right)$$

Taking Fourier transform using time differentiation property [i.e.  $\frac{dx(t)}{dt} \xrightarrow{\text{FT}} j\omega X(\omega)$ ], we get

$$j\omega X(\omega) = e^{j\omega(\tau/2)} - e^{-j\omega(\tau/2)}$$

$$\therefore X(\omega) = \frac{e^{j\omega(\tau/2)} - e^{-j\omega(\tau/2)}}{j\omega} = \frac{2 \sin \omega(\tau/2)}{\omega} = \tau \frac{\sin \omega(\tau/2)}{\omega(\tau/2)} = \tau \operatorname{sinc} \omega \frac{\tau}{2}$$

$$\therefore \Pi\left(\frac{t}{\tau}\right) \xleftrightarrow{\text{FT}} \tau \operatorname{sinc} \omega \frac{\tau}{2}$$

**EXAMPLE 5.22** Find the Fourier transform of the signal  $x(t)$  shown in Figure 5.24 using the time differentiation property.

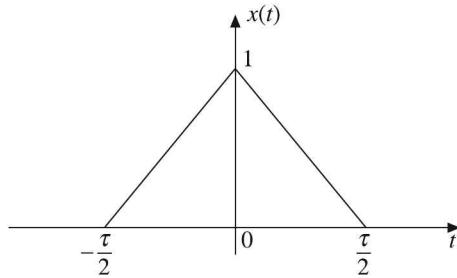


Figure 5.24 Signal for Example 5.22.

**Solution:** The given signal is nothing but a triangular pulse  $\Delta(t/\tau)$ . The plots of  $dx(t)/dt$  and  $d^2x(t)/dt^2$  are shown in Figure 5.25[(a) and (b)].

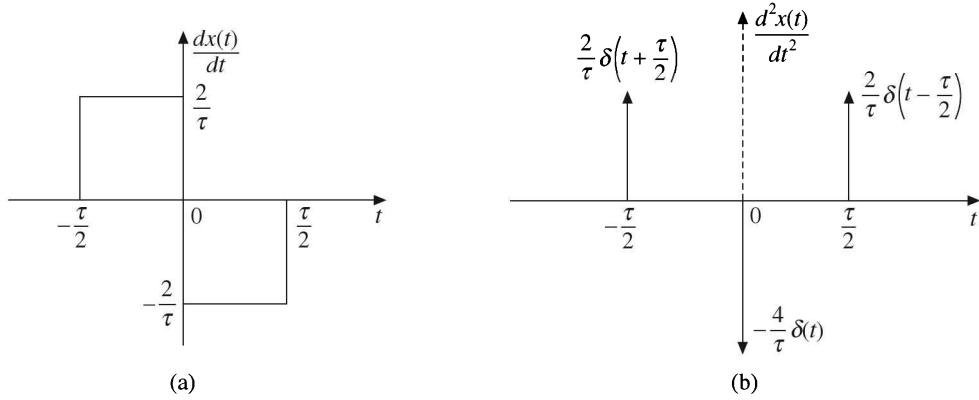


Figure 5.25 Plots of (a)  $dx(t)/dt$ , and (b)  $d^2x(t)/dt^2$ .

From Figure 5.25(b), we have

$$\frac{d^2x(t)}{dt^2} = \frac{2}{\tau} \delta\left(t + \frac{\tau}{2}\right) - \frac{4}{\tau} \delta(t) + \frac{2}{\tau} \delta\left(t - \frac{\tau}{2}\right)$$

Also

$$x(t) = \frac{2}{\tau} r\left(t + \frac{\tau}{2}\right) - \frac{4}{\tau} r(t) + \frac{2}{\tau} r\left(t - \frac{\tau}{2}\right)$$

$$\therefore \frac{dx(t)}{dt} = \frac{2}{\tau} \frac{d}{dt} \left[ r\left(t + \frac{\tau}{2}\right) \right] - \frac{4}{\tau} \frac{d}{dt} r(t) + \frac{2}{\tau} \frac{d}{dt} \left[ r\left(t - \frac{\tau}{2}\right) \right] = \frac{2}{\tau} u\left(t + \frac{\tau}{2}\right) - \frac{4}{\tau} u(t) + \frac{2}{\tau} u\left(t - \frac{\tau}{2}\right)$$

and

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{d^2x(t)}{dt^2} &= \frac{d}{dt} \left[ \frac{dx(t)}{dt} \right] = \frac{d}{dt} \left[ \frac{2}{\tau} u\left(t + \frac{\tau}{2}\right) - \frac{4}{\tau} u(t) + \frac{2}{\tau} u\left(t - \frac{\tau}{2}\right) \right] \\ &= \frac{2}{\tau} \delta\left(t + \frac{\tau}{2}\right) - \frac{4}{\tau} \delta(t) + \frac{2}{\tau} \delta\left(t - \frac{\tau}{2}\right) \end{aligned}$$

Taking Fourier transform on both sides using time differentiation property, we get

$$\begin{aligned}
 (j\omega)^2 X(\omega) &= \frac{2}{\tau} e^{j\omega(\tau/2)} - \frac{4}{\tau} + \frac{2}{\tau} e^{-j\omega(\tau/2)} \\
 \therefore X(\omega) &= \frac{2}{\tau} \left[ \frac{2 - (e^{j\omega(\tau/2)} + e^{-j\omega(\tau/2)})}{\omega^2} \right] \\
 &= \frac{4}{\tau} \left[ \frac{1 - \cos \omega(\tau/2)}{\omega^2} \right] = \frac{8}{\tau} \left[ \frac{\sin^2 \omega(\tau/4)}{\omega^2} \right] \\
 &= \frac{8}{\tau} \left[ \frac{\sin \omega(\tau/4)}{\omega(\tau/4)} \right]^2 \left( \frac{\tau}{4} \right)^2 = \frac{\tau}{2} \operatorname{sinc}^2 \left( \omega \frac{\tau}{4} \right) \\
 \therefore \Delta \left( \frac{t}{\tau} \right) &\xleftrightarrow{\text{FT}} \frac{\tau}{2} \operatorname{sinc}^2 \left( \omega \frac{\tau}{4} \right)
 \end{aligned}$$

**EXAMPLE 5.23** Find the Fourier transform of the signal  $x(t)$  shown in Figure 5.26 using differentiation property of Fourier transforms.

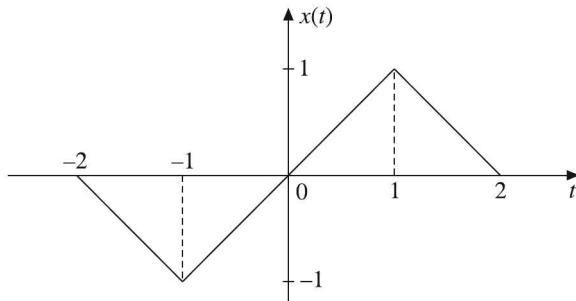


Figure 5.26 Waveform for Example 5.23.

**Solution:** The first and second derivatives of the signal  $x(t)$  are shown in Figure 5.27[(a) and (b)].

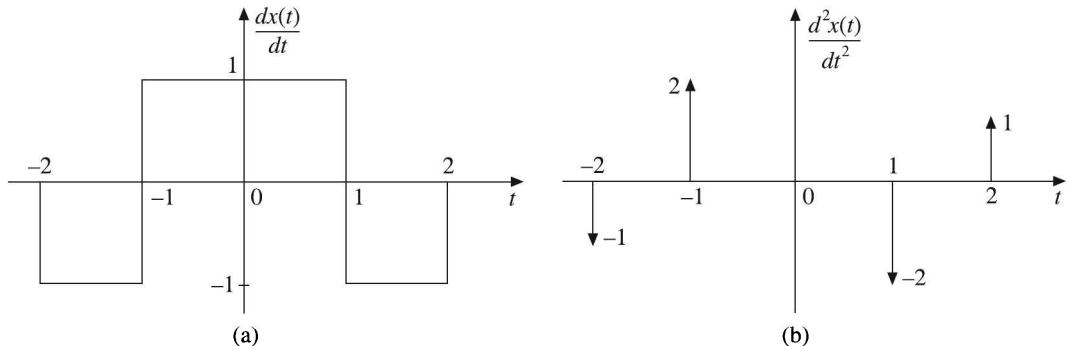


Figure 5.27 Plots of (a)  $dx(t)/dt$  and (b)  $d^2x(t)/dt^2$  of the signal  $x(t)$  of Example 5.23.

From Figure 5.27(b), we find that

$$\frac{d^2x(t)}{dt^2} = -\delta(t+2) + 2\delta(t+1) - 2\delta(t-1) + \delta(t-2)$$

Also

$$x(t) = -r(t+2) + 2r(t+1) - 2r(t-1) + r(t-2)$$

∴

$$\begin{aligned}\frac{dx(t)}{dt} &= \frac{d}{dt}[-r(t+2) + 2r(t+1) - 2r(t-1) + r(t-2)] \\ &= -u(t+2) + 2u(t+1) - 2u(t-1) + u(t-2)\end{aligned}$$

and

$$\begin{aligned}\frac{d^2x(t)}{dt^2} &= \frac{d}{dt}\left[\frac{dx(t)}{dt}\right] = \frac{d}{dt}[-u(t+2) + 2u(t+1) - 2u(t-1) + u(t-2)] \\ &= -\delta(t+2) + 2\delta(t+1) - 2\delta(t-1) + \delta(t-2)\end{aligned}$$

Taking Fourier transform on both sides using differentiation property of Fourier transform, we have

$$\begin{aligned}(j\omega)^2 X(\omega) &= -e^{j2\omega} + 2e^{j\omega} - 2e^{-j\omega} + e^{-j2\omega} \\ \therefore X(\omega) &= \frac{2(e^{j\omega} - e^{-j\omega}) - (e^{j2\omega} - e^{-j2\omega})}{-\omega^2} \\ &= \frac{1}{\omega^2} \left[ 2 \left\{ \frac{e^{j2\omega} - e^{-j2\omega}}{2} \right\} - 4 \left\{ \frac{e^{j\omega} - e^{-j\omega}}{2} \right\} \right] \\ &= j \frac{1}{\omega^2} [2 \sin 2\omega - 4 \sin \omega]\end{aligned}$$

**EXAMPLE 5.24** Find the Fourier transform of the trapezoidal pulse shown in Figure 5.28.

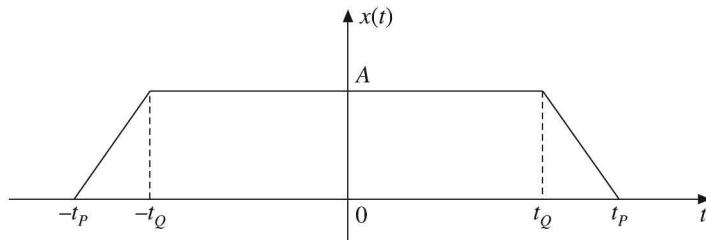
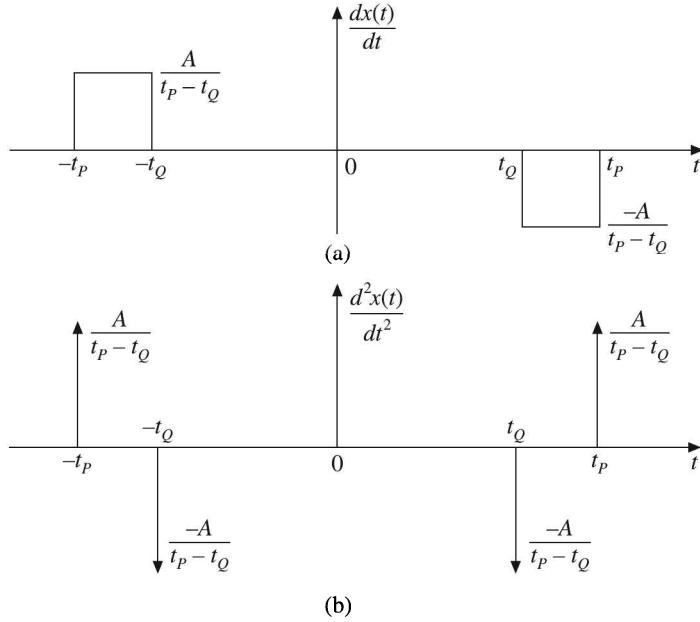


Figure 5.28 Signal for Example 5.24.

**Solution:** Figure 5.29[(a) and (b)] shows the first and second derivatives of the signal of Figure 5.28.

From Figure 5.29(b), we have

$$\frac{d^2x(t)}{dt^2} = \frac{A}{t_p - t_Q} \delta(t + t_p) - \frac{A}{t_p - t_Q} \delta(t + t_Q) - \frac{A}{t_p - t_Q} \delta(t - t_Q) + \frac{A}{t_p - t_Q} \delta(t - t_p)$$



**Figure 5.29** Plots for (a) First derivative, and (b) Second derivative of signal of Example 5.24.

Also $x(t) = \frac{A}{t_p - t_Q} [r(t + t_p)] - \frac{A}{t_p - t_Q} [r(t + t_Q)] - \frac{A}{t_p - t_Q} [r(t - t_Q)] + \frac{A}{t_p - t_Q} [r(t - t_p)]$	
$\therefore \frac{dx(t)}{dt} = \frac{A}{t_p - t_Q} \left[ \frac{d}{dt} \{ [r(t + t_p)] - [r(t + t_Q)] - [r(t - t_Q)] + [r(t - t_p)] \} \right]$	
$= \frac{A}{t_p - t_Q} [u(t + t_p) - u(t + t_Q) - u(t - t_Q) + u(t - t_p)]$	
and $\frac{d^2x(t)}{dt^2} = \frac{d}{dt} \left[ \frac{dx(t)}{dt} \right] = \frac{A}{t_p - t_Q} \left[ \frac{d}{dt} \{ u(t + t_p) - u(t + t_Q) - u(t - t_Q) + u(t - t_p) \} \right]$	
	$= \frac{A}{t_p - t_Q} [\delta(t + t_p) - \delta(t + t_Q) - \delta(t - t_Q) + \delta(t - t_p)]$

Taking Fourier transform on both sides using differentiation property of Fourier transform, we have

$$\begin{aligned}
(j\omega)^2 X(\omega) &= \frac{A}{t_p - t_Q} [e^{j\omega t_p} - e^{j\omega t_Q} - e^{-j\omega t_Q} + e^{-j\omega t_p}] \\
\text{or } X(\omega) &= -\frac{1}{\omega^2} \frac{A}{t_p - t_Q} [(e^{j\omega t_p} + e^{-j\omega t_p}) - (e^{j\omega t_Q} + e^{-j\omega t_Q})] \\
&= \frac{2A}{\omega^2 (t_p - t_Q)} [\cos \omega t_Q - \cos \omega t_p]
\end{aligned}$$

**EXAMPLE 5.25** Determine the Fourier transform of the signal shown in Figure 5.30.

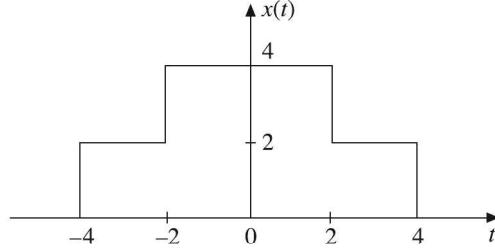


Figure 5.30 Signal for Example 5.25.

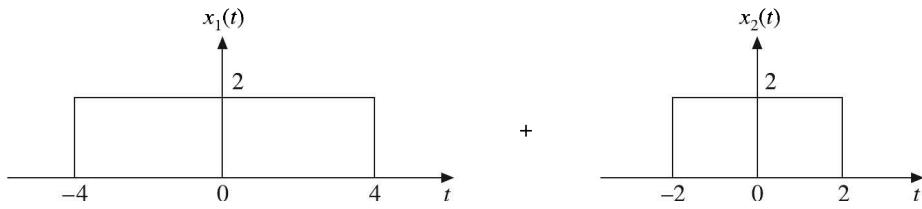
**Solution:** The signal shown in Figure 5.30 can be expressed as:

$$x(t) = \begin{cases} 2 & \text{for } -4 < t < -2 \\ 4 & \text{for } -2 < t < 0 \\ 2 & \text{for } 0 < t < 2 \\ 0 & \text{otherwise} \end{cases}$$

$$\begin{aligned} \therefore X(\omega) &= F[x(t)] = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} x(t) e^{-j\omega t} dt \\ &= \int_{-4}^{-2} 2e^{-j\omega t} dt + \int_{-2}^{0} 4e^{-j\omega t} dt + \int_{0}^{2} 2e^{-j\omega t} dt \\ &= \left[ 2 \frac{e^{-j\omega t}}{-j\omega} \right]_{-4}^{-2} + \left[ 4 \frac{e^{-j\omega t}}{-j\omega} \right]_{-2}^{0} + \left[ 2 \frac{e^{-j\omega t}}{-j\omega} \right]_{0}^{2} \\ &= -\frac{2}{j\omega} [e^{j2\omega} - e^{-j4\omega} + 2e^{-j2\omega} - 2e^{j2\omega} + e^{-j4\omega} - e^{-j2\omega}] \\ &= -\frac{2}{j\omega} [-e^{j2\omega} + e^{-j2\omega} + e^{-j4\omega} - e^{j4\omega}] \\ &= \frac{4}{\omega} \left[ \frac{e^{j2\omega} - e^{-j2\omega}}{2j} + \frac{e^{j4\omega} - e^{-j4\omega}}{2j} \right] \\ &= \frac{4}{\omega} [\sin 2\omega + \sin 4\omega] \\ &= \frac{8 \sin 2\omega}{2\omega} + \frac{16 \sin 4\omega}{4\omega} = 8 \operatorname{sinc} 2\omega + 16 \operatorname{sinc} 4\omega \end{aligned}$$

#### Alternative method

The given signal can be obtained by adding the signals in Figure 5.31.



**Figure 5.31** Decomposition of signal in Figure 5.30 into two.

The signals in Figure 5.31 can be expressed as:

$$x_1(t) = 2\text{Pi}\left(\frac{t}{8}\right); \quad x_2(t) = 2\text{Pi}\left(\frac{t}{4}\right)$$

$$x(t) = x_1(t) + x_2(t) = 2\text{Pi}\left(\frac{t}{8}\right) + 2\text{Pi}\left(\frac{t}{4}\right)$$

We know that

$$\mathcal{F}\left[\text{Pi}\left(\frac{t}{\tau}\right)\right] = \tau \text{sinc}\left(\frac{\omega\tau}{2}\right)$$

$$\therefore \mathcal{F}\left[\text{Pi}\left(\frac{t}{8}\right)\right] = 8 \text{sinc}\left(\omega\frac{8}{2}\right) = 8 \text{sinc } 4\omega \quad [\text{for } \tau = 8]$$

and  $\mathcal{F}\left[\text{Pi}\left(\frac{t}{4}\right)\right] = 4 \text{sinc}\left(\omega\frac{4}{2}\right) = 4 \text{sinc } 2\omega \quad [\text{for } \tau = 4]$

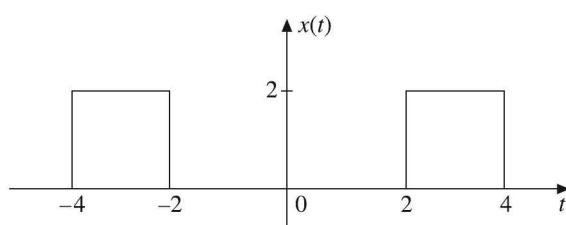
$$\therefore X_1(\omega) = \mathcal{F}\left[2\text{Pi}\left(\frac{t}{8}\right)\right] = 16 \text{sinc } 4\omega$$

and  $X_2(\omega) = \mathcal{F}\left[2\text{Pi}\left(\frac{t}{4}\right)\right] = 8 \text{sinc } 2\omega$

$$\therefore X(\omega) = X_1(\omega) + X_2(\omega) = 16 \text{sinc } 4\omega + 8 \text{sinc } 2\omega$$

Observe that the result is same by both the methods.

**EXAMPLE 5.26** Find the Fourier transform of the signal shown in Figure 5.32.



**Figure 5.32** Signal for Example 5.26.

**Solution:** The signal shown in Figure 5.32 can be expressed as:

$$\begin{aligned}
 x(t) &= \begin{cases} 2, & \text{for } -4 < t < -2 \\ 2, & \text{for } 2 < t < 4 \\ 0, & \text{elsewhere} \end{cases} \\
 \therefore X(\omega) &= F[x(t)] = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} x(t) e^{-j\omega t} dt \\
 &= \int_{-4}^{-2} 2e^{-j\omega t} dt + \int_2^4 2e^{-j\omega t} dt \\
 &= 2 \left\{ \left[ \frac{e^{-j\omega t}}{-j\omega} \right]_{-4}^{-2} + \left[ \frac{e^{-j\omega t}}{-j\omega} \right]_2^4 \right\} \\
 &= \frac{2}{-j\omega} [e^{j2\omega} - e^{j4\omega} + e^{-j4\omega} - e^{-j2\omega}] \\
 &= \frac{4}{\omega} \left( \frac{e^{j4\omega} - e^{-j4\omega}}{2j} - \frac{e^{j2\omega} - e^{-j2\omega}}{2j} \right) \\
 &= \frac{4}{\omega} (\sin 4\omega - \sin 2\omega) \\
 &= 16 \operatorname{sinc} 4\omega - 8 \operatorname{sinc} 2\omega
 \end{aligned}$$

#### Alternate method

The given signal can be expressed as linear combination of the shifted versions of the rectangular pulse.

$$\begin{aligned}
 \therefore x(t) &= 2 \left[ \Pi \left( \frac{t}{2} - 3 \right) \right] + 2 \left[ \Pi \left( \frac{t}{2} + 3 \right) \right] \\
 \therefore X(\omega) &= 2 \left( 2 \operatorname{sinc} \omega \frac{2}{2} \right) e^{j3\omega} + 2 \left( 2 \operatorname{sinc} \omega \frac{2}{2} \right) e^{-j3\omega} \\
 &= 4 \operatorname{sinc} \omega \cdot e^{j3\omega} + 4 \operatorname{sinc} \omega \cdot e^{-j3\omega} \\
 &= 4 \operatorname{sinc} \omega [e^{j3\omega} + e^{-j3\omega}] \\
 &= 8 \operatorname{sinc} \omega \cos 3\omega
 \end{aligned}$$

Observe that the result is same by both the methods.

**EXAMPLE 5.27** Compute the Fourier transform for the signal  $x(t)$  shown in Figure 5.33.

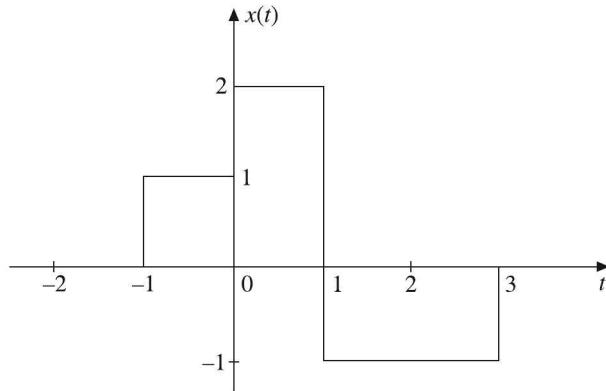


Figure 5.33 Signal for Example 5.27.

**Solution:** From Figure 5.33, we have

$$x(t) = \begin{cases} 1 & -1 < t < 0 \\ 2 & 0 < t < 1 \\ -1 & 1 < t < 3 \\ 0 & \text{otherwise} \end{cases}$$

$$\begin{aligned} \therefore X(\omega) &= \mathcal{F}[x(t)] = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} x(t) e^{-j\omega t} dt \\ &= \int_{-1}^0 (1) e^{-j\omega t} dt + \int_0^1 (2) e^{-j\omega t} dt + \int_1^3 (-1) e^{-j\omega t} dt \\ &= \left[ \frac{e^{-j\omega t}}{-j\omega} \right]_{-1}^0 + \left[ \frac{2e^{-j\omega t}}{-j\omega} \right]_0^1 - \left[ \frac{e^{-j\omega t}}{-j\omega} \right]_1^3 \\ &= -\frac{1}{j\omega} [1 - e^{j\omega} + 2e^{-j\omega} - 2 - e^{-j3\omega} + e^{-j\omega}] \\ &= \frac{1}{j\omega} [1 + e^{j\omega} - 3e^{-j\omega} + e^{-j3\omega}] \end{aligned}$$

**EXAMPLE 5.28** By using partial fraction expansion, find the inverse Fourier transform of the following:

$$(a) X(\omega) = \frac{4(j\omega) + 6}{(j\omega)^2 + 6(j\omega) + 8} \quad (b) X(\omega) = \frac{1 + 3(j\omega)}{(j\omega + 3)^2}$$

**Solution:**

(a) Given

$$X(\omega) = \frac{4(j\omega) + 6}{(j\omega)^2 + 6(j\omega) + 8}$$

Taking partial fractions, we get

$$X(\omega) = \frac{4(j\omega) + 6}{(j\omega)^2 + 6(j\omega) + 8} = \frac{4(j\omega) + 6}{(j\omega + 2)(j\omega + 4)} = \frac{A}{j\omega + 2} + \frac{B}{j\omega + 4}$$

$$\text{where } A = \left. \frac{4(j\omega) + 6}{j\omega + 4} \right|_{j\omega=-2} = -1 \quad \text{and} \quad B = \left. \frac{4(j\omega) + 6}{j\omega + 2} \right|_{j\omega=-4} = 5$$

∴

$$X(\omega) = -\frac{1}{j\omega + 2} + \frac{5}{j\omega + 4}$$

Taking inverse Fourier transform, we get

$$x(t) = -e^{-2t}u(t) + 5e^{-4t}u(t)$$

(b) Given

$$X(\omega) = \frac{1 + 3(j\omega)}{(j\omega + 3)^2}$$

Taking partial fractions, we have

$$X(\omega) = \frac{3(j\omega) + 1}{(j\omega + 3)^2} = \frac{A}{j\omega + 3} + \frac{B}{(j\omega + 3)^2} = \frac{3}{j\omega + 3} - \frac{8}{(j\omega + 3)^2}$$

Taking inverse Fourier transform, we get

$$x(t) = 3e^{-3t}u(t) - 8te^{-3t}u(t)$$

**EXAMPLE 5.29** Using Fourier transform, find the convolution of the signals

$$x_1(t) = e^{-2t}u(t) \quad \text{and} \quad x_2(t) = e^{-3t}u(t)$$

**Solution:** The convolution property of Fourier transform says that

$$x_1(t) * x_2(t) \xrightarrow{\text{FT}} X_1(\omega) X_2(\omega)$$

$$\therefore x_1(t) * x_2(t) = F^{-1}[X_1(\omega) X_2(\omega)]$$

Given

$$x_1(t) = e^{-2t}u(t)$$

∴

$$X_1(\omega) = \frac{1}{j\omega + 2}$$

and

$$x_2(t) = e^{-3t}u(t)$$

∴

$$X_2(\omega) = \frac{1}{j\omega + 3}$$

$$\begin{aligned}\therefore x_1(t) * x_2(t) &= F^{-1}[X_1(\omega) X_2(\omega)] = F^{-1}\left[\frac{1}{(j\omega+2)(j\omega+3)}\right] \\ &= \frac{1}{(j\omega+2)(j\omega+3)} = \frac{A}{j\omega+2} + \frac{B}{j\omega+3} = \frac{1}{j\omega+2} - \frac{1}{j\omega+3} \\ \therefore x_1(t) * x_2(t) &= F^{-1}\left[\frac{1}{(j\omega+2)} - \frac{1}{(j\omega+3)}\right] = e^{-2t}u(t) - e^{-3t}u(t)\end{aligned}$$

**EXAMPLE 5.30** Using Fourier transform, find the convolution of the signals

$$x_1(t) = te^{-t}u(t) \quad \text{and} \quad x_2(t) = te^{-2t}u(t)$$

**Solution:** Given

$$x_1(t) = te^{-t}u(t)$$

$$\therefore X_1(\omega) = \frac{1}{(j\omega+1)^2}$$

and

$$x_2(t) = te^{-2t}u(t)$$

$$\therefore X_2(\omega) = \frac{1}{(j\omega+2)^2}$$

We know that

$$\begin{aligned}x_1(t) * x_2(t) &\xrightarrow{\text{FT}} X_1(\omega) X_2(\omega) \\ \therefore x_1(t) * x_2(t) &= F^{-1}[X_1(\omega) X_2(\omega)] = F^{-1}\left[\frac{1}{(j\omega+1)^2 (j\omega+2)^2}\right]\end{aligned}$$

Taking partial fractions, we have

$$\begin{aligned}X(\omega) &= \frac{1}{(j\omega+1)^2 (j\omega+2)^2} = \frac{A}{j\omega+1} + \frac{B}{(j\omega+1)^2} + \frac{C}{j\omega+2} + \frac{D}{(j\omega+2)^2} \\ &= \frac{-2}{j\omega+1} + \frac{1}{(j\omega+1)^2} + \frac{2}{j\omega+2} + \frac{1}{(j\omega+2)^2}\end{aligned}$$

Taking inverse Fourier transform, we get

$$x(t) = -2e^{-t}u(t) + te^{-t}u(t) + 2e^{-2t}u(t) + te^{-2t}u(t)$$

**EXAMPLE 5.31** Find the Fourier transform of  $x(t) = 5 \sin^2(3t)$ .

**Solution:** Given

$$x(t) = 5 \sin^2(3t)$$

$$\begin{aligned}&= \frac{5[1 - \cos 6t]}{2} \\ &= \frac{5}{2} - \frac{5}{2} \cos 6t\end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
 \text{Now, } X(\omega) &= F[x(t)] = F\left(\frac{5}{2} - \frac{5}{2} \cos 6t\right) = F\left(\frac{5}{2}\right) - F\left(\frac{5}{2} \cos 6t\right) \\
 &= \frac{5}{2} F(1) - \frac{5}{2} F(\cos 6t) \\
 &= \frac{5}{2} 2\pi\delta(\omega) - \frac{5}{2} [\pi\{\delta(\omega - 6) + \delta(\omega + 6)\}] \\
 \therefore X(\omega) &= 5\pi\delta(\omega) - \frac{5\pi}{2} \delta(\omega - 6) - \frac{5\pi}{2} \delta(\omega + 6)
 \end{aligned}$$

**EXAMPLE 5.32** Find the Fourier transform of  $x(t) = \sin(8t + 0.1\pi)$ .

**Solution:** Let

$$x_1(t) = \sin(t + 0.1\pi)$$

$\therefore$

$$x_1(8t) = \sin(8t + 0.1\pi) = x(t)$$

We know that

$$F(\sin t) = j\pi [\delta(\omega + 1) - \delta(\omega - 1)]$$

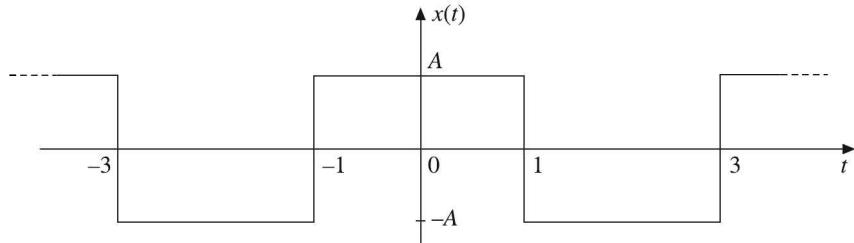
Using time shifting property [i.e.  $x(t - t_0) \xrightarrow{\text{FT}} e^{-j\omega t_0} X(\omega)$ ], we have

$$F[\sin(t + 0.1\pi)] = e^{j\omega(0.1\pi)} F(\sin t) = e^{j\omega(0.1\pi)} j\pi [\delta(\omega + 1) - \delta(\omega - 1)]$$

Using time scaling property  $\left[ \text{i.e. } x(at) \xrightarrow{\text{FT}} \frac{1}{|a|} X\left(\frac{\omega}{a}\right) \right]$ , we have

$$\begin{aligned}
 F[\sin(8t + 0.1\pi)] &= \frac{1}{|8|} F[\sin(t + 0.1\pi)] \Big|_{\omega=(\omega/8)} \\
 &= \frac{1}{|8|} \left[ e^{j\omega(0.1\pi)} j\pi [\delta(\omega + 1) - \delta(\omega - 1)] \right] \Big|_{\omega=(\omega/8)} \\
 &= \frac{1}{|8|} e^{j(\omega/8)(0.1\pi)} j\pi \left[ \delta\left(\frac{\omega}{8} + 1\right) - \delta\left(\frac{\omega}{8} - 1\right) \right]
 \end{aligned}$$

**EXAMPLE 5.33** Find the Fourier transform of a square wave of Figure 5.34.



**Figure 5.34** Signal for Example 5.33.

**Solution:** Looking at Figure 5.34, we observe that  $x(t)$  is a periodic waveform with period  $T = 4$ . For simplicity take one period of the waveform from  $-1$  to  $3$ . Since  $x(t)$  is periodic, it can be expressed as exponential Fourier series, i.e.

$$x(t) = \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} C_n e^{jn\omega_0 t}$$

where

$$\omega_0 = \frac{2\pi}{T} = \frac{2\pi}{4} = \frac{\pi}{2}$$

$$\begin{aligned} \text{and } C_n &= \frac{1}{T} \int_{-T/2}^{T/2} x(t) e^{-jn\omega_0 t} dt = \frac{1}{4} \left[ \int_{-1}^1 A e^{-jn\omega_0 t} dt + \int_1^3 (-A) e^{-jn\omega_0 t} dt \right] \\ &= \frac{A}{4} \left\{ \left[ \frac{e^{-jn\omega_0 t}}{-jn\omega_0} \right]_{-1}^1 - \left[ \frac{e^{-jn\omega_0 t}}{-jn\omega_0} \right]_1^3 \right\} = \frac{A}{-2n\omega_0} \left( \frac{e^{-jn\omega_0} - e^{jn\omega_0}}{2j} - \frac{e^{-j3n\omega_0} - e^{-jn\omega_0}}{2j} \right) \\ &= \frac{A}{2n(\pi/2)} \left\{ \frac{e^{jn(\pi/2)} - e^{-jn(\pi/2)}}{2j} - \frac{e^{-2jn(\pi/2)} [e^{jn(\pi/2)} - e^{-jn(\pi/2)}]}{2j} \right\} \\ &= \frac{A}{n\pi} \sin \frac{n\pi}{2} (1 - e^{-jn\pi}) \end{aligned}$$

$$\therefore C_n = \frac{A}{n\pi} \sin \frac{n\pi}{2} [1 - (-1)^n]$$

For even  $n$ ,  $C_n = 0$

$$\begin{aligned} \text{and for odd } n, \quad C_n &= \frac{A}{n\pi} \sin \frac{n\pi}{2} [1 - (-1)] = \frac{2A}{n\pi} \sin \frac{n\pi}{2} = \frac{2A}{n\pi} \quad \text{for } n = 1, 5, 9, \dots \\ &= \frac{-2A}{n\pi} \quad \text{for } n = 3, 7, 11, \dots \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned} C_0 &= \frac{1}{T} \int_{-T/2}^{T/2} x(t) dt = \frac{1}{4} \int_{-1}^3 x(t) dt \\ &= \frac{1}{4} \left[ \int_{-1}^1 A dt + \int_1^3 (-A) dt \right] = \frac{A}{4} \left\{ [t]_{-1}^1 + [-t]_1^3 \right\} = \frac{A}{4} \{ [1 - (-1)] - (3 - 1) \} = 0 \end{aligned}$$

$$\therefore x(t) = \sum_{n=\text{odd}} \frac{2A}{n\pi} \sin \frac{n\pi}{2} e^{jn\omega_0 t}$$

$$\therefore X(\omega) = F[x(t)] = F \left[ \sum_{n=\text{odd}} \frac{2A}{n\pi} \sin \frac{n\pi}{2} e^{jn\omega_0 t} \right]$$

**EXAMPLE 5.34** Find the Fourier transform of the signal  $x(t)$  shown in Figure 5.35.

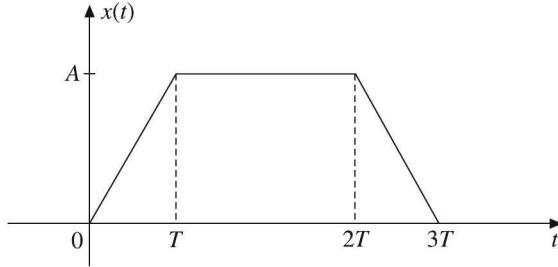


Figure 5.35 Signal for Example 5.34.

**Solution:** The signal shown in Figure 5.35 can be expressed as:

$$x(t) = \begin{cases} (A/T)t & \text{for } 0 < t < T \\ A & \text{for } T < t < 2T \\ -(A/T)(t - 3T) & \text{for } 2T < t < 3T \end{cases}$$

$$\begin{aligned} \therefore X(\omega) = F[x(t)] &= \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} x(t) e^{-j\omega t} dt \\ &= \int_0^T \frac{A}{T} t e^{-j\omega t} dt + \int_T^{2T} A e^{-j\omega t} dt + \int_{2T}^{3T} -\frac{A}{T} (t - 3T) e^{-j\omega t} dt \\ &= \frac{A}{T} \left( \int_0^T t e^{-j\omega t} dt - \int_{2T}^{3T} t e^{-j\omega t} dt + \int_{2T}^{3T} 3Te^{-j\omega t} dt \right) + A \int_T^{2T} e^{-j\omega t} dt \\ &= \frac{A}{T} \left[ \left\{ \left[ \frac{te^{-j\omega t}}{-j\omega} \right]_0^T - \int_0^T \frac{e^{-j\omega t}}{-j\omega} dt \right\} - \left\{ \left[ \frac{te^{-j\omega t}}{-j\omega} \right]_{2T}^{3T} - \int_{2T}^{3T} \frac{e^{-j\omega t}}{-j\omega} dt \right\} \right] + 3A \left[ \frac{e^{-j\omega t}}{-j\omega} \right]_{2T}^{3T} + A \left[ \frac{e^{-j\omega t}}{-j\omega} \right]_T^{2T} \\ &= \frac{A}{T} \left[ -T \frac{e^{-j\omega T}}{j\omega} - \frac{e^{-j\omega T}}{(j\omega)^2} + \frac{1}{(j\omega)^2} + \frac{3Te^{-j3\omega T}}{j\omega} - \frac{2Te^{-j2\omega T}}{j\omega} + \frac{e^{-j3\omega T}}{(j\omega)^2} - \frac{e^{-j2\omega T}}{(j\omega)^2} \right] \\ &\quad + \frac{3A}{-j\omega} e^{-j3\omega T} + \frac{3A}{j\omega} e^{-j2\omega T} + \frac{Ae^{-j2\omega T}}{-j\omega} + \frac{Ae^{-j\omega T}}{j\omega} \\ &= \frac{A}{T(j\omega)^2} [1 - e^{-j\omega T} - e^{-j2\omega T} + e^{-j3\omega T}] = \frac{A}{T(j\omega)^2} [(1 - e^{-j\omega T}) - e^{-j2\omega T} (1 - e^{-j\omega T})] \\ &= \frac{A}{T} \frac{1}{(j\omega)^2} [(1 - e^{-j\omega T}) (1 - e^{-j2\omega T})] \\ &= \frac{4A}{T(j\omega)^2} e^{-j(3/2)\omega T} \cos\left(\frac{\omega T}{2}\right) \cos(\omega T) \end{aligned}$$

**EXAMPLE 5.35** Find the Fourier transform of the periodic pulse train shown in Figure 5.36

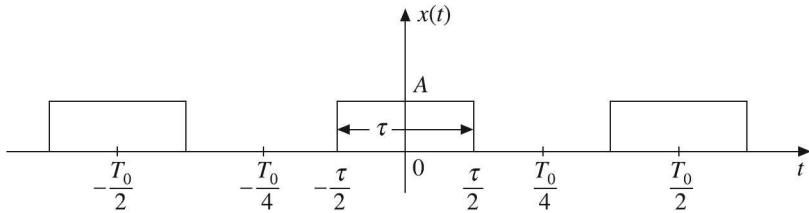


Figure 5.36 Signal for Example 5.35.

**Solution:** The signal shown in Figure 5.36 has a period  $T = (T_0/2)$  extending from  $-T_0/4$  to  $T_0/4$  and is expressed over one period as:

$$x(t) = A, \quad \text{for } -\frac{\tau}{2} < t < \frac{\tau}{2}$$

$$\omega_0 = \frac{2\pi}{T} = \frac{2\pi}{T_0/2} = \frac{4\pi}{T_0}$$

Using Exponential form of Fourier series, we have

$$x(t) = \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} C_n e^{jn\omega_0 t}$$

where  $C_n = \frac{1}{T} \int_{-T/2}^{T/2} x(t) e^{-jn\omega_0 t} dt$

$$\begin{aligned} C_n &= \frac{1}{(T_0/2)} \int_{-\tau/2}^{\tau/2} A e^{-jn\omega_0 t} dt \\ &= \frac{2A}{T_0} \left[ \frac{e^{-jn\omega_0 t}}{-jn\omega_0} \right]_{-\tau/2}^{\tau/2} = -\frac{2A}{jn\omega_0 T_0} [e^{-jn\omega_0(\tau/2)} - e^{jn\omega_0(\tau/2)}] \\ \therefore &= \frac{4A}{n\omega_0 T_0} \left[ \frac{e^{jn\omega_0(\tau/2)} - e^{-jn\omega_0(\tau/2)}}{2j} \right] = \frac{4A}{n\omega_0 T_0} \sin\left(\frac{n\omega_0 \tau}{2}\right) \\ &= \frac{2A\tau}{T_0} \frac{\sin(n\omega_0 \tau/2)}{(n\omega_0 \tau/2)} = \frac{2A\tau}{T_0} \text{Sa}(n\omega_0 \tau/2) \end{aligned}$$

$$\therefore x(t) = \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} \frac{2A\tau}{T_0} \text{Sa}(n\omega_0 \tau/2) e^{jn\omega_0 t}$$

The Fourier transform of a periodic function  $x(t)$  is given by

$$X(\omega) = 2\pi \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} C_n \delta(\omega - n\omega_0)$$

$$\therefore X(\omega) = 2\pi \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} \frac{2A\tau}{T_0} \text{Sa}\left(\omega - n\omega_0 \frac{\tau}{2}\right) \delta(\omega - n\omega_0)$$

**EXAMPLE 5.36** Find the Fourier transform of the sinusoidal pulse shown in Figure 5.37.

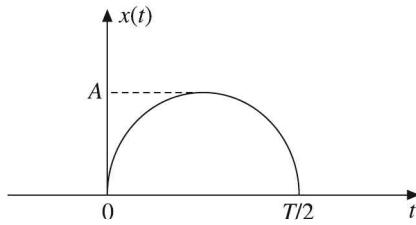


Figure 5.37 Signal for Example 5.36.

**Solution:** The signal shown in Figure 5.37 can be expressed as:

$$x(t) = \begin{cases} A \sin \omega_0 t, & 0 < t < T/2 \\ 0, & \text{elsewhere} \end{cases}$$

$$\begin{aligned} \therefore X(\omega) &= F[x(t)] = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} x(t) e^{-j\omega t} dt \\ &= \int_0^{T/2} A \sin \omega_0 t e^{-j\omega t} dt = A \int_0^{T/2} \left( \frac{e^{j\omega_0 t} - e^{-j\omega_0 t}}{2j} \right) e^{-j\omega t} dt \\ &= \frac{A}{2j} \left[ \int_0^{T/2} e^{-j(\omega - \omega_0)t} dt - \int_0^{T/2} e^{-j(\omega + \omega_0)t} dt \right] = \frac{A}{2j} \left[ \frac{e^{-j(\omega - \omega_0)t}}{-j(\omega - \omega_0)} - \frac{e^{-j(\omega + \omega_0)t}}{-j(\omega + \omega_0)} \right]_0^{T/2} \\ &= \frac{A}{2j} \left[ \frac{e^{-j(\omega - \omega_0)T/2} - 1}{-j(\omega - \omega_0)} - \frac{e^{-j(\omega + \omega_0)T/2} - 1}{-j(\omega + \omega_0)} \right] \\ &= \frac{A}{2} \left[ \frac{1}{\omega + \omega_0} - \frac{1}{\omega - \omega_0} + \frac{e^{-j\omega(T/2)} e^{j\omega_0(T/2)}}{\omega - \omega_0} - \frac{e^{-j\omega(T/2)} e^{-j\omega_0(T/2)}}{\omega + \omega_0} \right] \\ &= \frac{A}{2} \left[ \frac{-2\omega_0}{\omega^2 - \omega_0^2} - \frac{e^{-j\omega(T/2)}}{\omega - \omega_0} + \frac{e^{-j\omega(T/2)}}{\omega + \omega_0} \right] \quad \{e^{j\omega_0(T/2)} = e^{j\pi} = -1\} \\ &= \frac{A}{2} \left\{ \frac{-2\omega_0}{\omega^2 - \omega_0^2} + \left[ \frac{(\omega - \omega_0) - (\omega + \omega_0)}{\omega^2 - \omega_0^2} \right] e^{-j\omega T/2} \right\} = \frac{A}{2} \left[ \frac{2\omega_0}{\omega_0^2 - \omega^2} (1 + e^{-j\omega T/2}) \right] \\ &= \frac{A\omega_0}{\omega_0^2 - \omega^2} e^{-j\omega T/4} (e^{j\omega T/4} + e^{-j\omega T/4}) = \frac{2A\omega_0}{\omega_0^2 - \omega^2} e^{-j\omega T/4} \cos \omega \frac{T}{4} \end{aligned}$$

**EXAMPLE 5.37** Find the Fourier transform of the cosinusoidal pulse shown in Figure 5.38.

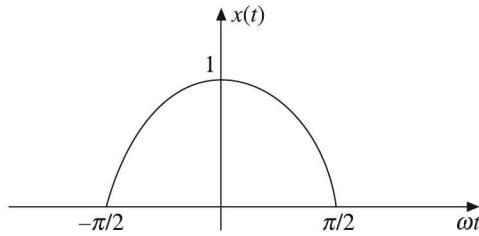


Figure 5.38 Signal for Example 5.37.

**Solution:** Since the independent variable is  $\omega t$ , the signal shown in Figure 5.38 can be expressed as:

$$x(t) = \cos \omega_0 \omega t \quad -\frac{\pi}{2} < \omega t < \frac{\pi}{2} \quad \left( \text{where } \omega_0 = \frac{2\pi}{T} = \frac{2\pi}{2\pi} = 1 \right)$$

i.e.

$$x(t) = \cos \omega t \quad -\frac{\pi}{2} < \omega t < \frac{\pi}{2}$$

$$\begin{aligned} \therefore X(\omega) = F[x(t)] &= \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} x(t) e^{-j\omega t} d(\omega t) \\ &= \int_{-\pi/2}^{\pi/2} \cos \omega t e^{-j\omega t} d(\omega t) \end{aligned}$$

Since  $\cos \omega t$  is an even function,

$$\begin{aligned} X(\omega) &= 2 \int_0^{\pi/2} \cos \omega t e^{-j\omega t} d(\omega t) \\ &= 2 \int_0^{\pi/2} \left( \frac{e^{j\omega t} + e^{-j\omega t}}{2} \right) e^{-j\omega t} d(\omega t) \\ &= \int_0^{\pi/2} d(\omega t) + \int_0^{\pi/2} e^{-j2\omega t} d(\omega t) \\ &= [\omega t]_0^{\pi/2} + \left[ \frac{e^{-j2\omega t}}{-2j} \right]_0^{\pi/2} \\ &= \frac{\pi}{2} - \frac{1}{2j} (e^{-j\pi} - 1) \\ &= \frac{\pi}{2} - \frac{1}{2j} (-1 - 1) = \frac{\pi}{2} - j \end{aligned}$$

**EXAMPLE 5.38** Determine the inverse Fourier transform of the spectrum given in Figure 5.39.

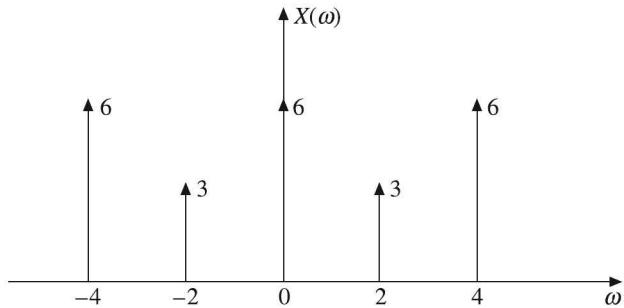


Figure 5.39 Spectrum for Example 5.38.

**Solution:** The spectrum shown in Figure 5.39 can be expressed as:

$$X(\omega) = 6\delta(\omega) + 3[\delta(\omega + 2) + \delta(\omega - 2)] + 6[\delta(\omega + 4) + \delta(\omega - 4)]$$

We have

$$\begin{aligned} 1 &\xleftrightarrow{\text{FT}} 2\pi\delta(\omega) \\ e^{-j\omega_0 t} &\xleftrightarrow{\text{FT}} 2\pi\delta(\omega + \omega_0) \end{aligned}$$

$$\therefore F^{-1}[\delta(\omega)] = \frac{1}{2\pi}$$

$$F^{-1}[\delta(\omega + 2)] = \frac{1}{2\pi}e^{-j2t}$$

$$F^{-1}[\delta(\omega - 2)] = \frac{1}{2\pi}e^{j2t}$$

$$F^{-1}[\delta(\omega + 4)] = \frac{1}{2\pi}e^{-j4t}$$

$$F^{-1}[\delta(\omega - 4)] = \frac{1}{2\pi}e^{j4t}$$

Inverse Fourier transform of  $X(\omega)$  is:

$$\begin{aligned} x(t) &= \frac{6}{2\pi} + 3\left(\frac{e^{-j2t} + e^{j2t}}{2\pi}\right) + 6\left(\frac{e^{-j4t} + e^{j4t}}{2\pi}\right) \\ &= \frac{3}{\pi}[1 + \cos 2t + 2 \cos 4t] \end{aligned}$$

**EXAMPLE 5.39** Find the time domain signal corresponding to the spectrum shown in Figure 5.40.

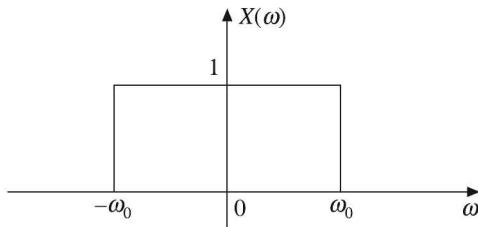


Figure 5.40 Spectrum for Example 5.39.

**Solution:** From Figure 5.40, we have

$$X(\omega) = \begin{cases} 1 & \text{for } -\omega_0 < \omega < \omega_0 \\ 0 & \text{elsewhere} \end{cases}$$

We know that

$$\begin{aligned} x(t) &= \frac{1}{2\pi} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} X(\omega) e^{j\omega t} d\omega \\ &= \frac{1}{2\pi} \int_{-\omega_0}^{\omega_0} (1) e^{j\omega t} d\omega = \frac{1}{2\pi} \left[ \frac{e^{j\omega_0 t}}{jt} \right]_{-\omega_0}^{\omega_0} \\ &= \frac{1}{\pi t} \left( \frac{e^{j\omega_0 t} - e^{-j\omega_0 t}}{2j} \right) \\ &= \frac{\sin \omega_0 t}{\pi t} = \frac{\omega_0}{\pi} \operatorname{sinc} \omega_0 t \end{aligned}$$

The signal  $x(t)$  is shown in Figure 5.41

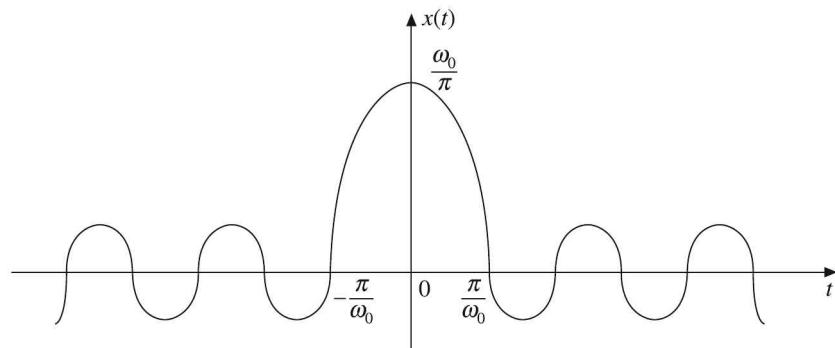


Figure 5.41 Signal for the spectrum of Figure 5.40.

**EXAMPLE 5.40** Find the inverse Fourier transform of  $X(\omega)$  for the spectra shown in Figure 5.42.

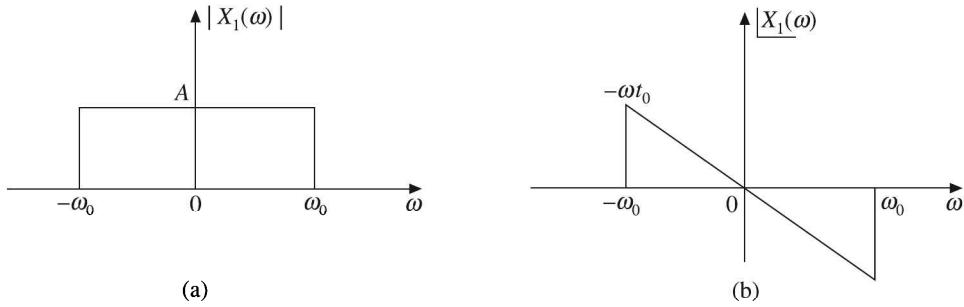


Figure 5.42 Spectra for Example 5.40.

**Solution:** Given  $X_1(\omega) = |X_1(\omega)| e^{-j|X_1(\omega)|} = Ae^{-j\omega t_0}$  for  $-\omega_0 < \omega < \omega_0$

$$\begin{aligned} \therefore x_1(t) &= \frac{1}{2\pi} \int_{-\omega_0}^{\omega_0} Ae^{-j\omega t_0} e^{j\omega t} d\omega \\ &= \frac{A}{2\pi} \int_{-\omega_0}^{\omega_0} e^{j\omega(t-t_0)} d\omega = \frac{A}{2\pi} \left[ \frac{e^{j\omega(t-t_0)}}{j(t-t_0)} \right]_{-\omega_0}^{\omega_0} \\ &= \frac{A}{2\pi j(t-t_0)} [e^{j\omega_0(t-t_0)} - e^{-j\omega_0(t-t_0)}] \\ &= \frac{A}{\pi(t-t_0)} [\sin \omega_0(t-t_0)] \\ &= \frac{A\omega_0}{\pi} \operatorname{sinc} [\omega_0(t-t_0)] \end{aligned}$$

**EXAMPLE 5.41** Find the inverse Fourier transform of  $X(\omega)$  for the spectra shown in Figure 5.43.

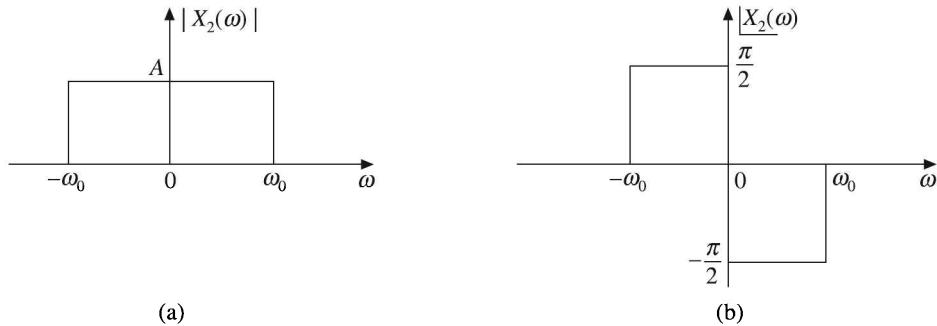


Figure 5.43 Spectra for Example 5.41.

**Solution:** Given  $X_2(\omega) = |X_2(\omega)| e^{-j|X_2(\omega)} = \begin{cases} Ae^{-j(\pi/2)} & \text{for } 0 \leq \omega \leq \omega_0 \\ Ae^{j(\pi/2)} & \text{for } -\omega_0 \leq \omega \leq 0 \end{cases}$

We know that  $x_2(t) = \frac{1}{2\pi} \int_{-\omega}^{\omega} X_2(\omega) e^{j\omega t} d\omega$

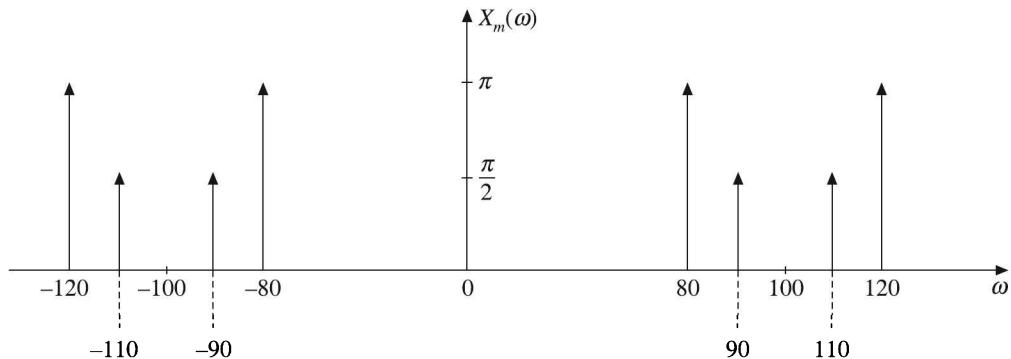
$$\begin{aligned} \therefore x_2(t) &= \frac{1}{2\pi} \left[ \int_{-\omega_0}^0 Ae^{j(\pi/2)} e^{j\omega t} d\omega + \int_0^{\omega_0} Ae^{-j(\pi/2)} e^{j\omega t} d\omega \right] \\ &= \frac{A}{2\pi} \left[ \int_0^{\omega_0} (j) e^{-j\omega t} d\omega + \int_0^{\omega_0} (-j) e^{j\omega t} d\omega \right] \\ &= \frac{A}{2\pi} j \left[ \frac{e^{-j\omega_0 t}}{-jt} - \frac{e^{j\omega_0 t}}{jt} \right]_0^{\omega_0} \\ &= \frac{-A}{2\pi t} [e^{-j\omega_0 t} - 1 + e^{j\omega_0 t} - 1] \\ &= -\frac{A}{2\pi t} [-2 + e^{j\omega_0 t} + e^{-j\omega_0 t}] \\ &= \frac{A}{\pi t} [1 - \cos \omega_0 t] \end{aligned}$$

**EXAMPLE 5.42** A signal  $x(t) = \cos 10t + 2 \cos 20t$  modulates the carrier signal  $x_c(t) = \cos 100t$ . Find the spectrum of the modulated signal.

**Solution:** The modulated signal is given as:

$$\begin{aligned} x_m(t) &= x_c(t) x(t) = \cos 100t [\cos 10t + 2 \cos 20t] \\ &= \cos 100t \cos 10t + 2 \cos 100t \cos 20t \\ &= \frac{1}{2} [\cos 110t + \cos 90t] + [\cos 120t + \cos 80t] \\ \therefore X_m(\omega) &= \frac{1}{2} [F(\cos 110t) + F(\cos 90t)] + [F(\cos 120t) + F(\cos 80t)] \\ &= \frac{\pi}{2} [\delta(\omega - 110) + \delta(\omega + 110) + \delta(\omega - 90) + \delta(\omega + 90)] \\ &\quad + \pi [\delta(\omega - 120) + \delta(\omega + 120) + \delta(\omega - 80) + \delta(\omega + 80)] \end{aligned}$$

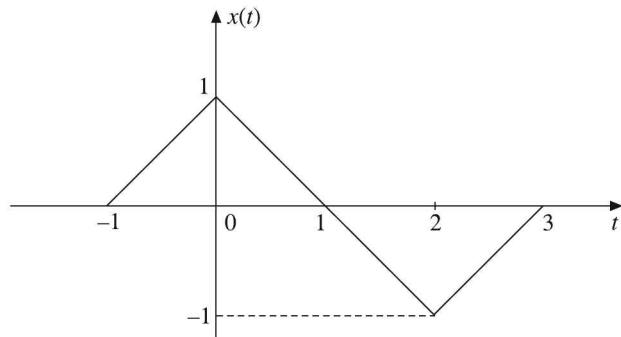
The frequency spectrum of the modulated signal is shown in Figure 5.44



**Figure 5.44** Spectrum of Example 5.42.

**EXAMPLE 5.43** For the signal  $x(t)$  shown in Figure 5.45, evaluate the following quantities without explicitly computing  $X(\omega)$ :

$$(a) \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} X(\omega) d\omega \quad (b) \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} |X(\omega)|^2 d\omega \quad (c) \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} X(\omega) e^{j2\omega} d\omega \quad (d) X(0)$$



**Figure 5.45** Signal for Example 5.43.

**Solution:**

(a) We have

$$x(t) = \frac{1}{2\pi} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} X(\omega) e^{j\omega t} d\omega$$

$$\therefore \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} X(\omega) e^{j\omega t} d\omega = 2\pi x(t)$$

Substituting  $t = 0$  in the above equation, we get

$$\begin{aligned} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} X(\omega) d\omega &= 2\pi x(0) \\ &= 2\pi(1) \\ &= 2\pi \end{aligned}$$

(b) From Parsavel's theorem, we have

$$\begin{aligned} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} |x(t)|^2 dt &= \frac{1}{2\pi} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} |X(\omega)|^2 d\omega \\ \therefore \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} |X(\omega)|^2 d\omega &= 2\pi \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} |x(t)|^2 dt = 2\pi \left[ \int_{-1}^0 (t+1)^2 dt + \int_0^2 (1-t)^2 dt + \int_2^3 (t-3)^2 dt \right] \\ &= \frac{8\pi}{3} \end{aligned}$$

(c) We have  $\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} X(\omega) e^{j\omega t} d\omega = 2\pi x(t)$

Substituting  $t = 2$ , we get

$$\begin{aligned} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} X(\omega) e^{j2\omega} d\omega &= 2\pi x(2) \\ &= 2\pi(-1) = -2\pi \end{aligned}$$

(d) We have

$$X(\omega) = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} x(t) e^{-j\omega t} dt$$

Substituting  $\omega = 0$ , we get

$$\begin{aligned} X(0) &= \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} x(t) dt \\ &= 0 \quad [\because x(t) \text{ is a shifted odd signal.}] \end{aligned}$$

## 5.8 SYSTEM ANALYSIS WITH FOURIER TRANSFORM

Consider an LTI system described by the differential equation

$$\sum_{k=0}^N a_k \frac{d^k y(t)}{dt^k} = \sum_{k=0}^M b_k \frac{d^k x(t)}{dt^k}$$

Taking Fourier transform on both sides, we have

$$\mathcal{F} \left[ \sum_{k=0}^N a_k \frac{d^k y(t)}{dt^k} \right] = \mathcal{F} \left[ \sum_{k=0}^M b_k \frac{d^k x(t)}{dt^k} \right]$$

Using linearity property, we have

$$\sum_{k=0}^N a_k \mathcal{F} \left[ \frac{d^k y(t)}{dt^k} \right] = \sum_{k=0}^M b_k \mathcal{F} \left[ \frac{d^k x(t)}{dt^k} \right]$$

By using differentiation property, we can write

$$\begin{aligned} \sum_{k=0}^N a_k (j\omega)^k Y(\omega) &= \sum_{k=0}^M b_k (j\omega)^k X(\omega) \\ \text{i.e. } Y(\omega) \sum_{k=0}^N a_k (j\omega)^k &= X(\omega) \sum_{k=0}^M b_k (j\omega)^k \end{aligned}$$

Thus, the system transfer function of the system is:

$$H(\omega) = \frac{Y(\omega)}{X(\omega)} = \frac{\sum_{k=0}^M b_k (j\omega)^k}{\sum_{k=0}^N a_k (j\omega)^k}$$

$H(\omega)$  is also called the frequency response of the system.

When  $x(t) = \delta(t)$ ,  $X(\omega) = 1$  and  $Y(\omega) = H(\omega)$ . The  $\mathcal{F}^{-1}[H(\omega)] = h(t)$  is called the impulse response of the system.

In general,

$$H(\omega) = |H(\omega)| e^{j\angle H(\omega)}$$

where,  $|H(\omega)|$  is called the magnitude response and  $\angle H(\omega)$  is the phase response.

The Fourier transform of the impulse response is called the frequency response or transfer function of the system.

**EXAMPLE 5.44** An LTI filter has the frequency response  $|H(\omega)|$  as shown in Figure 5.47. Determine the filter output corresponding to the input  $r(t) = e^{j2t}$ .

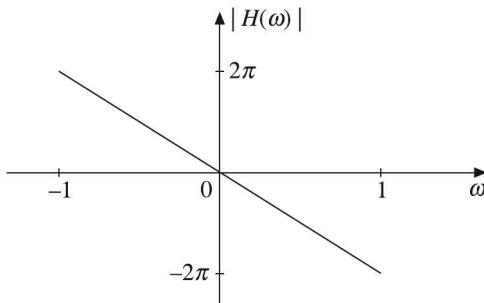


Figure 5.47 Magnitude response  $|H(\omega)|$ .

**Solution:** The frequency response of the LTI filter shown in Figure 5.47 is given as:

$$|H(\omega)| = -2\pi\omega$$

Input to the filter is:

$$r(t) = e^{j2t}$$

Taking the Fourier transform, we get

$$R(\omega) = 2\pi\delta(\omega - 2)$$

Thus, the output from filter  $Y(\omega)$  is given as:

$$Y(\omega) = H(\omega) R(\omega) = -2\pi\omega [2\pi\delta(\omega - 2)] = -4\pi^2\omega\delta(\omega - 2)$$

**EXAMPLE 5.45** Using Fourier transform, find the differential equation description for the system having impulse response

$$h(t) = [3e^{-3t} - 2e^{-2t}] u(t)$$

**Solution:** Given  $h(t) = [3e^{-3t} - 2e^{-2t}] u(t)$

Taking Fourier transform on both sides, we get the frequency response (transfer function)

$$H(\omega) = 3 \frac{1}{j\omega + 3} - 2 \frac{1}{j\omega + 2} = \frac{j\omega}{(j\omega + 3)(j\omega + 2)} = \frac{j\omega}{(j\omega)^2 + 5(j\omega) + 6}$$

$$\therefore H(\omega) = \frac{Y(\omega)}{X(\omega)} = \frac{j\omega}{(j\omega)^2 + 5(j\omega) + 6}$$

$$\text{i.e. } (j\omega)^2 Y(\omega) + 5(j\omega) Y(\omega) + 6Y(\omega) = (j\omega) X(\omega)$$

Taking inverse Fourier transform, we get the differential equation

$$\frac{d^2y(t)}{dt^2} + 5 \frac{dy(t)}{dt} + 6y(t) = \frac{dx(t)}{dt}$$

**EXAMPLE 5.46** The input and the output of a causal LTI system are related by the differential equation

$$\frac{d^2y(t)}{dt^2} + 5 \frac{dy(t)}{dt} + 6y(t) = x(t)$$

- (a) Find the impulse response of the system.
- (b) What is the response of this system if

$$x(t) = te^{-4t} u(t).$$

**Solution:**

- (a) Given system is described by

$$\frac{d^2y(t)}{dt^2} + 5 \frac{dy(t)}{dt} + 6y(t) = x(t)$$

Taking Fourier transform on both sides, we get

$$(j\omega)^2 Y(\omega) + 5(j\omega) Y(\omega) + 6Y(\omega) = X(\omega)$$

$$Y(\omega) [(j\omega)^2 + 5(j\omega) + 6] = X(\omega)$$

The transfer function of the system is:

$$H(\omega) = \frac{Y(\omega)}{X(\omega)} = \frac{1}{(j\omega)^2 + 5(j\omega) + 6}$$

The impulse response  $h(t)$  of the system is the inverse Fourier transform of the transfer function  $H(\omega)$  of the system.

$$\therefore h(t) = F^{-1}[H(\omega)] = F^{-1}\left[\frac{1}{(j\omega)^2 + 5(j\omega) + 6}\right]$$

$$H(\omega) = \frac{1}{(j\omega)^2 + 5(j\omega) + 6} = \frac{1}{(j\omega + 3)(j\omega + 2)} = \frac{1}{j\omega + 2} - \frac{1}{j\omega + 3}$$

$$\therefore h(t) = F^{-1}[H(\omega)] = F^{-1}\left(\frac{1}{j\omega + 2}\right) - F^{-1}\left(\frac{1}{j\omega + 3}\right) = e^{-2t} u(t) - e^{-3t} u(t)$$

(b) Given  $x(t) = e^{-4t} u(t)$

$$\therefore X(\omega) = \frac{1}{j\omega + 4}$$

$$\begin{aligned} \therefore Y(\omega) &= X(\omega) H(\omega) = \frac{1}{(j\omega + 4)} \frac{1}{(j\omega + 3)(j\omega + 2)} \\ &= \frac{A}{j\omega + 2} + \frac{B}{j\omega + 3} + \frac{C}{j\omega + 4} = \frac{1/2}{j\omega + 2} - \frac{1}{j\omega + 3} - \frac{1/2}{j\omega + 4} \end{aligned}$$

Taking inverse Fourier transform on both sides, the response of the given system for input  $x(t) = e^{-4t} u(t)$  is:

$$y(t) = \frac{1}{2} e^{-2t} u(t) - e^{-3t} u(t) - \frac{1}{2} e^{-4t} u(t)$$

**EXAMPLE 5.47** Find the frequency response of an LTI system described by the differential equation

$$\frac{d^3 y(t)}{dt^3} + \frac{6d^2 y(t)}{dt^2} + \frac{5dy(t)}{dt} + 4y(t) = 3x(t)$$

**Solution:** Given differential equation is:

$$\frac{d^3y(t)}{dt^3} + \frac{6d^2y(t)}{dt^2} + \frac{5dy(t)}{dt} + 4y(t) = 3x(t)$$

Taking Fourier transform on both sides, we get

$$(j\omega)^3 Y(\omega) + 6(j\omega)^2 Y(\omega) + 5(j\omega) Y(\omega) + 4Y(\omega) = 3X(\omega)$$

i.e. 
$$Y(\omega)[(j\omega)^3 + 6(j\omega)^2 + 5(j\omega) + 4] = 3X(\omega)$$

The frequency response of the system is:

$$H(\omega) = \frac{Y(\omega)}{X(\omega)} = \frac{3}{(j\omega)^3 + 6(j\omega)^2 + 5(j\omega) + 4}$$

**EXAMPLE 5.48** The input and output of a causal LTI system are described by the differential equation

$$\frac{d^2y(t)}{dt^2} + \frac{3dy(t)}{dt} + 2y(t) = x(t)$$

- (a) Find the frequency response of the system.
- (b) Find the impulse response of the system.
- (c) What is the response of the system if  $x(t) = te^{-t} u(t)$ ?

**Solution:**

- (a) The given system is described by the differential equation

$$\frac{d^2y(t)}{dt^2} + 3\frac{dy(t)}{dt} + 2y(t) = x(t)$$

Taking Fourier transform on both sides, we get

$$(j\omega)^2 Y(\omega) + 3(j\omega) Y(\omega) + 2Y(\omega) = X(\omega)$$

i.e. 
$$[(j\omega)^2 + 3(j\omega) + 2] Y(\omega) = X(\omega)$$

The frequency response (transfer function of the system) is:

$$H(\omega) = \frac{Y(\omega)}{X(\omega)} = \frac{1}{(j\omega)^2 + 3(j\omega) + 2} = \frac{1}{(j\omega + 2)(j\omega + 1)}$$

- (b) The impulse response  $h(t)$  is the inverse Fourier transform of  $H(\omega)$

$$\therefore h(t) = F^{-1}[H(\omega)]$$

$$H(\omega) = \frac{1}{(j\omega + 2)(j\omega + 1)} = \frac{1}{j\omega + 1} - \frac{1}{j\omega + 2}$$

Taking inverse Fourier transform on both sides, we get

$$h(t) = F^{-1}[H(\omega)] = F^{-1}\left(\frac{1}{j\omega+1}\right) - F^{-1}\left(\frac{1}{j\omega+2}\right) = e^{-t}u(t) - e^{-2t}u(t)$$

(c) Given

$$x(t) = te^{-t}u(t)$$

$$X(\omega) = \frac{1}{(1+j\omega)^2}$$

Therefore, the output transform  $Y(\omega)$  is:

$$\begin{aligned} Y(\omega) &= X(\omega) H(\omega) = \frac{1}{(1+j\omega)^2} \frac{1}{(1+j\omega)(2+j\omega)} = \frac{1}{(j\omega+1)^3(j\omega+2)} \\ &= \frac{A}{j\omega+1} + \frac{B}{(j\omega+1)^2} + \frac{C}{(j\omega+1)^3} + \frac{D}{(j\omega+2)} \\ &= \frac{1}{j\omega+1} - \frac{1}{(j\omega+1)^2} + \frac{1}{(j\omega+1)^3} - \frac{1}{j\omega+2} \end{aligned}$$

Taking inverse Fourier transform on both sides, we get the response of the system

$$y(t) = e^{-t}u(t) - te^{-t}u(t) + \frac{t^2}{2}e^{-t}u(t) - e^{-2t}u(t)$$

**EXAMPLE 5.49** Consider a causal LTI system with impulse response  $h(t) = e^{-4t}u(t)$ . Find the output of the system for an input  $x(t) = 3e^{-t}u(t)$ .

**Solution:** The impulse response of the system is:

$$h(t) = e^{-4t}u(t)$$

The transfer function of the system is:

$$H(\omega) = F[e^{-4t}u(t)] = \frac{1}{j\omega+4}$$

The input to the system is:

$$x(t) = 3e^{-t}u(t)$$

$$\therefore X(\omega) = 3F[e^{-t}u(t)] = 3 \frac{1}{j\omega+1}$$

The output transform is:

$$Y(\omega) = H(\omega) X(\omega) = \frac{1}{j\omega+4} \frac{3}{j\omega+1} = \frac{3}{(j\omega+4)(j\omega+1)}$$

So the output of the system is:

$$y(t) = F^{-1}[Y(\omega)]$$

$$Y(\omega) = \frac{3}{(j\omega + 4)(j\omega + 1)} = \frac{A}{j\omega + 4} + \frac{B}{j\omega + 1} = \frac{1}{j\omega + 1} - \frac{1}{j\omega + 4}$$

Taking inverse Fourier transform on both sides, we get the output of the system

$$\therefore y(t) = e^{-t} u(t) - e^{-4t} u(t)$$

**EXAMPLE 5.50** Consider a causal LTI system with frequency response  $H(\omega) = 1/(j\omega + 3)$ . For a particular input  $x(t)$ , this system is observed to produce the output  $y(t) = e^{-t} u(t) - e^{-2t} u(t)$ . Determine  $x(t)$ .

**Solution:** Given Frequency response  $H(\omega) = \frac{1}{j\omega + 3}$

$$\text{Output } y(t) = e^{-t} u(t) - e^{-2t} u(t)$$

Taking Fourier transform on both sides, the transformed output is:

$$Y(\omega) = \frac{1}{j\omega + 1} - \frac{1}{j\omega + 2} = \frac{1}{(j\omega + 1)(j\omega + 2)}$$

We know that

$$\begin{aligned} Y(\omega) &= X(\omega) H(\omega) \\ \therefore X(\omega) &= \frac{Y(\omega)}{H(\omega)} = \frac{j\omega + 3}{(j\omega + 1)(j\omega + 2)} \end{aligned}$$

Taking partial fractions, we have

$$X(\omega) = \frac{j\omega + 3}{(j\omega + 1)(j\omega + 2)} = \frac{2}{j\omega + 1} - \frac{1}{j\omega + 2}$$

Taking inverse Fourier transform, we get the input

$$x(t) = 2e^{-t} u(t) - e^{-2t} u(t)$$

**EXAMPLE 5.51** Find the frequency response of the RC circuit shown in Figure 5.48. Plot the magnitude and phase response for  $RC = 1$ . Also find the impulse response of the circuit.

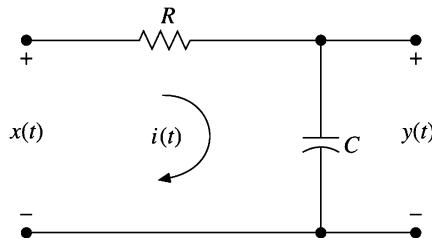


Figure 5.48 Circuit for Example 5.51.

**Solution:** The differential equation governing the response of the circuit is:

$$x(t) = Ri(t) + \frac{1}{C} \int i(t) dt$$

$$y(t) = \frac{1}{C} \int i(t) dt$$

Taking Fourier transform on both sides of the above equations, we get

$$X(\omega) = RI(\omega) + \frac{1}{C} \frac{I(\omega)}{j\omega}$$

and

$$Y(\omega) = \frac{1}{C} \frac{I(\omega)}{j\omega}$$

i.e.

$$\left( R + \frac{1}{j\omega C} \right) I(\omega) = X(\omega)$$

and

$$\frac{1}{j\omega C} I(\omega) = Y(\omega)$$

The frequency response of the circuit is:

$$\begin{aligned} H(\omega) &= \frac{Y(\omega)}{X(\omega)} \\ &= \frac{I(\omega)/j\omega C}{\{I(\omega)[1 + j\omega CR]/j\omega C\}} = \frac{1}{1 + j\omega RC} \end{aligned}$$

The impulse response is:

$$h(t) = F^{-1}[H(\omega)] = F^{-1}\left(\frac{1}{1 + j\omega RC}\right) = F^{-1}\left\{\frac{1}{RC[j\omega + (1/RC)]}\right\} = \frac{1}{RC} e^{-(1/RC)t} u(t)$$

When  $RC = 1$ ,  $h(t) = e^{-t} u(t)$ .

Then      Frequency response  $H(\omega) = \frac{1}{1 + j\omega RC}$

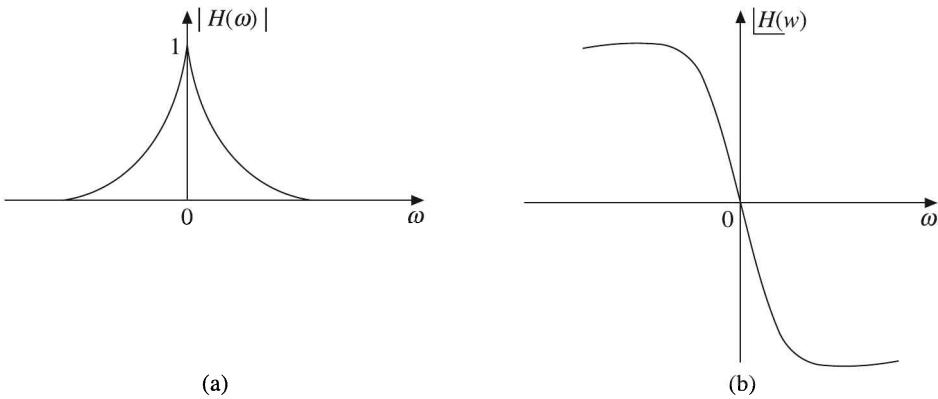
Magnitude response  $|H(\omega)| = \frac{1}{\sqrt{1 + (\omega RC)^2}}$

Phase response  $\angle H(\omega) = -\tan^{-1} \omega RC$

For  $RC = 1$ ,

$$|H(\omega)| = \frac{1}{\sqrt{1 + \omega^2}}, \quad \angle H(\omega) = -\tan^{-1} \omega$$

The magnitude spectrum, i.e.  $|H(\omega)|$  versus  $\omega$  and the phase spectrum, i.e.  $\angle H(\omega)$  versus  $\omega$  are shown in Figure 5.49[(a) and (b) respectively].



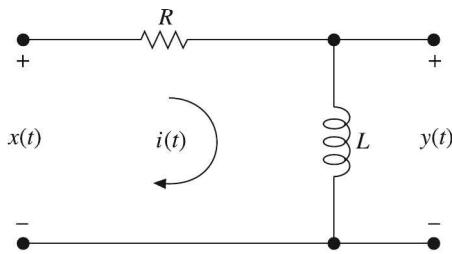
**Figure 5.49** Amplitude and phase spectra for Example 5.51.

For different values of  $\omega$ , the values of  $|H(\omega)|$  and  $\angle H(\omega)$  are tabulated in Table 5.1.

**Table 5.1** Values of  $|H(\omega)|$  and  $\underline{H}(\omega)$

$\omega$ (radians)	0	2	4	6	8	10	50	100	$\infty$
$ H(\omega) $	1	0.45	0.24	0.16	0.12	0.10	0.02	0.01	0
$ H(\omega)$ (rad)	0	-1.11	-1.32	-1.40	-1.45	-1.47	-1.55	-1.56	-1.57
$\omega$	$\infty$	-100	-50	-10	-8	-6	-4	-2	0
$ H(\omega) $	0	0.01	0.02	0.10	0.12	0.16	0.24	0.45	1
$ H(\omega)$	1.57	1.56	1.55	1.47	1.45	1.40	1.32	1.11	0

**EXAMPLE 5.52** Find the frequency response of the RL network shown in Figure 5.50.



**Figure 5.50** Circuit for Example 5.52.

**Solution:** The differential equation describing the behaviour of the network is:

$$x(t) = Ri(t) + L \frac{di(t)}{dt}$$

$$y(t) = L \frac{di(t)}{dt}$$

Taking Fourier transform on both sides of the above equations for  $x(t)$  and  $y(t)$ , we get

$$X(\omega) = RI(\omega) + L(j\omega) I(\omega)$$

and

$$Y(\omega) = L(j\omega) I(\omega)$$

The frequency response of the network is:

$$H(\omega) = \frac{Y(\omega)}{X(\omega)} = \frac{L(j\omega)}{R + j\omega L} = \frac{j\omega}{j\omega + (R/L)}$$

The impulse response of the network is given by

$$\begin{aligned} h(t) &= F^{-1}[H(\omega)] = F^{-1}\left[\frac{j\omega}{j\omega + (R/L)}\right] \\ &= \frac{d}{dt}[e^{-(R/L)t} u(t)] = -\frac{R}{L} e^{-(R/L)t} u(t) \end{aligned}$$

## 5.9 INTRODUCTION TO HILBERT TRANSFORM

When the phase angles of all the positive frequency spectral components of a given signal are shifted by  $-90^\circ$  and the phase angles of all the negative frequency spectral components are shifted by  $+90^\circ$ , the resulting function of time is called the Hilbert transform of the signal. The amplitude spectrum of the signal is unchanged by Hilbert transform operation. Only phase spectrum of the signal is changed. Hilbert transform differs from other transforms like Fourier transform, Laplace transform, Discrete-time Fourier transform and  $z$ -transform in the sense that Hilbert transforming a signal does not bring about a change of domain. The Hilbert transformed signal is also a time domain signal. Consider a real signal  $x(t)$  with the Fourier transform  $X(\omega)$ .

The *Hilbert transform*  $\hat{x}(t)$  of a signal  $x(t)$  is obtained by convolving  $x(t)$  with  $1/\pi t$ , i.e.

$$\begin{aligned} \hat{x}(t) &= x(t) * \frac{1}{\pi t} \\ \therefore \hat{x}(t) &= \frac{1}{\pi} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \frac{x(\tau)}{t - \tau} d\tau \quad \text{or} \quad \hat{x}(t) = \frac{1}{\pi} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \frac{x(t - \tau)}{\tau} d\tau \end{aligned}$$

This clearly shows that Hilbert transform operation of  $x(t)$  is a linear operation.

The above definition of a Hilbert transform is applicable to all signals that are Fourier transformable.

The *Inverse Hilbert transform*, by means of which the original signal  $x(t)$  is recovered from  $\hat{x}(t)$  is defined by

$$x(t) = -\frac{1}{\pi} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \frac{\hat{x}(\tau)}{t - \tau} d\tau$$

The functions  $x(t)$  and  $\hat{x}(t)$  are said to constitute a *Hilbert transform pair*.

From the definition of Hilbert transform,  $\hat{x}(t)$  can be interpreted as the convolution of  $x(t)$  with the time function  $1/\pi t$ .

From the convolution property of Fourier transform, the convolution of two functions in time domain is transformed into the multiplication of their Fourier transform in the frequency domain.

For the time function  $1/\pi t$ , we have

$$\frac{1}{\pi t} \xleftrightarrow{\text{FT}} -j \operatorname{sgn}(\omega)$$

where  $\operatorname{sgn}(\omega)$  is the signum function in the frequency domain given by

$$\operatorname{sgn}(\omega) = \begin{cases} 1 & \omega > 0 \\ -1 & \omega < 0 \end{cases}$$

The Fourier transform pair  $[1/\pi t \xleftrightarrow{\text{FT}} -j \operatorname{sgn}(\omega)]$  is obtained by applying duality property of the Fourier transform to

$$\operatorname{sgn}(t) \xleftrightarrow{\text{FT}} \frac{2}{j\omega}$$

The Fourier transform  $\hat{X}(\omega)$  of  $\hat{x}(t)$  is given by

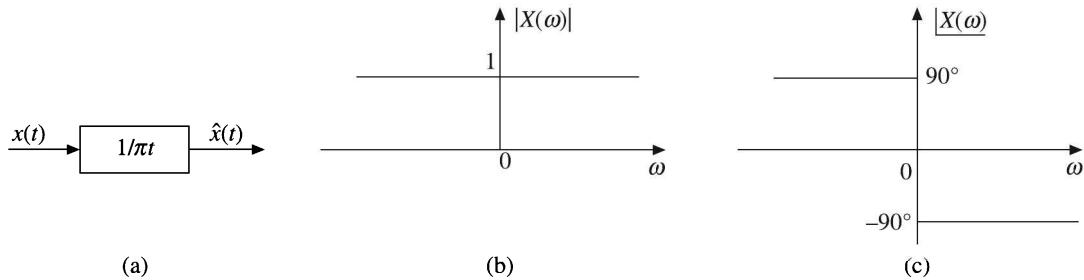
$$\hat{X}(\omega) = -j \operatorname{sgn}(\omega) X(\omega)$$

This implies that

$$\hat{X}(\omega) = \begin{cases} -jX(\omega); & \omega > 0 \\ jX(\omega); & \omega < 0 \end{cases}$$

This equation states that given a signal  $x(t)$ , we may obtain its Hilbert transform  $\hat{x}(t)$  by passing  $x(t)$  through a linear two port device whose transfer function is  $-j \operatorname{sgn}(\omega)$ .

Since  $\hat{X}(\omega)$  is the spectrum of  $\hat{x}(t)$  and  $X(\omega)$  is the spectrum of  $x(t)$ , this device may be considered as one that produces a phase shift of  $-90^\circ$  for all positive frequencies of the input signal and  $+90^\circ$  for all negative frequencies as shown in Figure 5.51.



**Figure 5.51** (a) Hilbert transformer, (b) Its magnitude response, (c) Its phase response.

The amplitudes of all frequency components in the signal are unaffected by transmission through the device, i.e.

$$|\hat{X}(\omega)| = |X(\omega)|$$

Such an ideal device is called *Hilbert transformer*. The Hilbert transformer may be viewed as an ideal all pass  $90^\circ$  phase-shifter. It is not causal and hence is not physically realizable.

### **Properties of Hilbert transform**

The Hilbert transform differs from the Fourier transform in that it operates exclusively in the time domain.

**Property 1:** Hilbert transform does not change the domain of a signal.

**Property 2:** Hilbert transform does not alter the amplitude spectrum of a signal.

A signal  $x(t)$  and its Hilbert transform  $\hat{x}(t)$  have the same amplitude spectrum, i.e. they have the same energy density spectrum and autocorrelation function.

**Property 3:** A signal  $x(t)$  and its Hilbert transform  $\hat{x}(t)$  are orthogonal to each other, i.e.

$$\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} x(t) \hat{x}(t) dt = 0$$

**Property 4:** If  $\hat{x}(t)$  is the Hilbert transform of  $x(t)$ , the Hilbert transform of  $\hat{x}(t)$  is  $-x(t)$ .

### **Applications of Hilbert transform**

The Hilbert transform finds extensive applications in the areas of signal processing, analysis and synthesis of signals, design of filters etc.

Some of the important applications are given as follows:

- To realize phase selectivity in the generation of single side band (SSB) modulation systems.
- To represent band pass signals.
- To relate the gain and phase characteristics of linear communication channels and filters of minimum phase type.

The Hilbert transform of the product of a low pass signal and very high pass signal is equal to the product of the low pass signal with the Hilbert transform of the high pass signal, i.e. if  $x(t)$  is a low pass signal and  $y(t)$  is a very high pass signal and if the spectra of  $x(t)$  and  $y(t)$  are non overlapping, then

$$\widehat{x(t) \cdot y(t)} = x(t) \cdot \widehat{y(t)}$$

**EXAMPLE 5.53** State and prove the properties of Hilbert transform.

**Solution:** The statements and proofs of the properties of the Hilbert transform are as follows:

**Property 1:** Hilbert transform does not change the domain of a signal.

*Proof:* The given signal  $x(t)$  is in time domain. The Hilbert transform of  $x(t)$ , i.e.  $\hat{x}(t)$  is obtained by the convolution of  $x(t)$  and  $1/\pi t$ . So  $\hat{x}(t)$  is also in domain. It proves that Hilbert transform does not change the domain of a signal.

**Property 2:** Hilbert transform does not alter the amplitude spectrum of a signal.

*Proof:* The Fourier transform of  $\hat{x}(t)$

$$\hat{X}(\omega) = -j \operatorname{sgn}(\omega) X(\omega)$$

But we know that

$$|-j \operatorname{sgn}(\omega)| = 1$$

$$\therefore |\hat{X}(\omega)| = |X(\omega)|$$

This proves that  $x(t)$  and  $\hat{x}(t)$  have the same amplitude spectrum, i.e. Hilbert transform does not alter the amplitude spectrum of a signal.

It automatically follows that  $x(t)$  and  $\hat{x}(t)$  have the same energy density function and same autocorrelation function.

If the signal  $x(t)$  is band limited, then its Hilbert transform  $\hat{x}(t)$  is also band limited.

**Property 3:** A signal  $x(t)$  and its Hilbert transform  $\hat{x}(t)$  are orthogonal to each other.

*Proof:* To prove that  $x(t)$  and  $\hat{x}(t)$  are orthogonal to each other, we have to show that

$$\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} x(t) \hat{x}(t) dt = 0$$

As per Rayleigh's energy theorem, we have

$$\begin{aligned} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} x(t) \hat{x}(t) dt &= \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} x(t) \hat{x}^*(t) dt \\ &= \frac{1}{2\pi} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} X(\omega) \hat{X}^*(\omega) d\omega \\ &= \frac{1}{2\pi} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} X(\omega) \left| j \operatorname{sgn}(\omega) \hat{X}^*(\omega) \right| d\omega \\ &= j \frac{1}{2\pi} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \operatorname{sgn}(\omega) |X(\omega)|^2 d\omega \end{aligned}$$

Since  $\operatorname{sgn}(\omega)$  is an odd function of  $\omega$  while  $|X(\omega)|^2$  is an even function, the RHS integral is zero. Hence

$$\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} x(t) \hat{x}(t) dt = 0$$

This proves that  $x(t)$  and  $\hat{x}(t)$  are orthogonal over the entire interval  $-\infty$  to  $\infty$ .

**Property 4:** If  $\hat{x}(t)$  is Hilbert transform of  $x(t)$ , then the Hilbert transform of  $\hat{x}(t)$  is  $-x(t)$ .

*Proof:* Hilbert transforming a signal  $x(t)$  is equivalent to passing the signal  $x(t)$  through a linear device with a transfer function equal to  $-j \operatorname{sgn}(\omega)$ .

A double Hilbert transformation is therefore equivalent to passing  $x(t)$  through a cascade of two such devices.

The overall transfer function of such a device is

$$[-j \operatorname{sgn}(\omega)]^2 = -1 [\operatorname{sgn}(\omega)]^2 = -1(1) = -1 \text{ for all frequencies.}$$

Thus the resulting output is  $-x(t)$ . Therefore the Hilbert transform of  $\hat{x}(t)$  is  $-x(t)$ .

Intuitively also we can say that if Hilbert transforming  $x(t)$  merely produces a  $-90^\circ$  phase shift, Hilbert transforming it a second time should produce  $-180^\circ$  phase shift, i.e., it should give us  $-x(t)$ .

**EXAMPLE 5.54** Find the Hilbert transform of  $x(t) = \sin \omega_0 t$ .

**Solution:** Given  $x(t) = \sin \omega_0 t$

We know that  $X(\omega) = F[\sin \omega_0 t] = -j\pi[\delta(\omega - \omega_0) - \delta(\omega + \omega_0)]$

$$\begin{aligned} F[\hat{x}(t)] &= \hat{X}(\omega) = -j \operatorname{sgn}(\omega) X(\omega) \\ &= -j \{-j\pi[\delta(\omega - \omega_0) - \delta(\omega + \omega_0)]\} \operatorname{sgn}(\omega) \\ \therefore &= -\pi[\delta(\omega - \omega_0) - \delta(\omega + \omega_0)] \operatorname{sgn}(\omega) \\ &= -\pi[\delta(\omega - \omega_0) + \delta(\omega + \omega_0)] \\ \therefore &\hat{x}(t) = F^{-1}\{-\pi[\delta(\omega - \omega_0) + \delta(\omega + \omega_0)]\} = \cos \omega_0 t \\ \therefore &\widehat{\sin \omega_0 t} = -\cos \omega_0 t \end{aligned}$$

**EXAMPLE 5.55** Find the Hilbert transform of  $x(t) = \cos \omega_0 t$ .

**Solution:** Given  $x(t) = \cos \omega_0 t$

We know that  $X(\omega) = F[\cos \omega_0 t] = \pi[\delta(\omega + \omega_0) + \delta(\omega - \omega_0)]$

$$\begin{aligned} F[\hat{x}(t)] &= \hat{X}(\omega) = -j \operatorname{sgn}(\omega) X(\omega) \\ &= -j \{\pi[\delta(\omega + \omega_0) + \delta(\omega - \omega_0)]\} \operatorname{sgn}(\omega) \\ &= j\{\pi[-\delta(\omega + \omega_0) + \delta(\omega - \omega_0)]\} \\ \therefore &= -j\pi[\delta(\omega - \omega_0) - \delta(\omega + \omega_0)] \\ &= \sin \omega_0 t \\ \therefore &\widehat{\cos \omega_0 t} = \sin \omega_0 t \end{aligned}$$

**EXAMPLE 5.56** Find the Hilbert transform of the signal  $x(t) = e^{j\omega_0 t}$

**Solution:** Given  $x(t) = e^{j\omega_0 t} = \cos \omega_0 t + j \sin \omega_0 t$

$$\therefore \hat{x}(t) = \widehat{\cos \omega_0 t} + j \widehat{\sin \omega_0 t} = \hat{x}_1(t) + j\hat{x}_2(t)$$

Now

$$F[x_1(t)] = F(\cos \omega_0 t) = X_1(\omega) = \pi[\delta(\omega - \omega_0) + \delta(\omega + \omega_0)]$$

Hence

$$\hat{X}_1(\omega) = -j \operatorname{sgn}(\omega) \pi[\delta(\omega - \omega_0) + \delta(\omega + \omega_0)]$$

$\therefore$  If  $\omega_0 > 0$ ,

$$\hat{X}_1(\omega) = -j\pi[\delta(\omega - \omega_0) - \delta(\omega + \omega_0)]$$

$\therefore$  If  $\omega_0 > 0$ ,

$$\hat{x}_1(t) = \sin \omega_0 t$$

But if  $\omega_0 > 0$ ,

$$\hat{X}_1(\omega) = -j\pi[-\delta(\omega - \omega_0) + \delta(\omega + \omega_0)]$$

$$= j\pi[\delta(\omega - \omega_0) - \delta(\omega + \omega_0)]$$

i.e. If  $\omega_0 < 0$ ,

$$\hat{x}_1(t) = -\sin \omega_0 t$$

Now

$$F[x_2(t)] = F(\sin \omega_0 t) = X_2(\omega) = -j\pi[\delta(\omega - \omega_0) - \delta(\omega + \omega_0)]$$

Hence

$$\hat{X}_2(\omega) = -j \operatorname{sgn}(\omega) \{-j\pi[\delta(\omega - \omega_0) - \delta(\omega + \omega_0)]\}$$

$$= -\pi[\delta(\omega - \omega_0) - \delta(\omega + \omega_0)] \operatorname{sgn}(\omega)$$

$\therefore$  If  $\omega_0 > 0$ ,

$$\hat{X}_2(\omega) = -\pi[\delta(\omega - \omega_0) + \delta(\omega + \omega_0)]$$

$\therefore$  If  $\omega_0 > 0$ ,

$$\hat{x}_2(t) = -\cos \omega_0 t$$

But if  $\omega_0 < 0$ ,

$$\hat{X}_2(\omega) = \pi[\delta(\omega - \omega_0) + \delta(\omega + \omega_0)]$$

i.e. If  $\omega_0 < 0$

$$\hat{x}_2(t) = \cos \omega_0 t$$

Hence if  $\omega_0 > 0$

$$e^{\widehat{j\omega_0 t}} = \sin \omega_0 t - j \cos \omega_0 t$$

$$= -j[\cos \omega_0 t + j \sin \omega_0 t] = -je^{j\omega_0 t}$$

But if  $\omega_0 < 0$   $e^{\widehat{j\omega_0 t}} = -\sin \omega_0 t + j \cos \omega_0 t = j[\cos \omega_0 t + j \sin \omega_0 t] = je^{j\omega_0 t}$

$\therefore$  We may write

$$e^{\widehat{j\omega_0 t}} = -j \operatorname{sgn}(\omega) e^{j\omega_0 t}$$

**EXAMPLE 5.57**  $x(t)$  is a speech signal band limited to a frequency of  $\omega_1$  Hz; i.e.  $X(\omega) = 0$  for  $|\omega| \geq \omega_1$ . If  $\omega_c$  the carrier frequency is very much greater than  $\omega_1$ , find the Hilbert transform of the modulated signal

$$x_c = x(t) \cos \omega_c t$$

**Solution:** Given that  $x(t)$  is a signal band limited to  $\omega_1$  and the carrier frequency  $\omega_c$  is very much greater than  $\omega_1$ , then the Hilbert transform

$$\hat{x}_c(t) = \widehat{x(t) \cos \omega_c t} = x(t) \widehat{\cos \omega_c t} = x(t) \sin \omega_c t$$

## MATLAB PROGRAMS

### Program 5.1

```
% Fourier transform and Inverse Fourier transform of a given
sequence
clc; clear all; close all;
syms t;
x1 = exp(-t^2);
disp('The input equation is')
disp(x1)
X1=fourier(x1);
disp('The fourier transform of the input equation is')
disp(X1)
x11=ifourier(X1);
disp('The Inverse fourier transform is')
disp(x11)
```

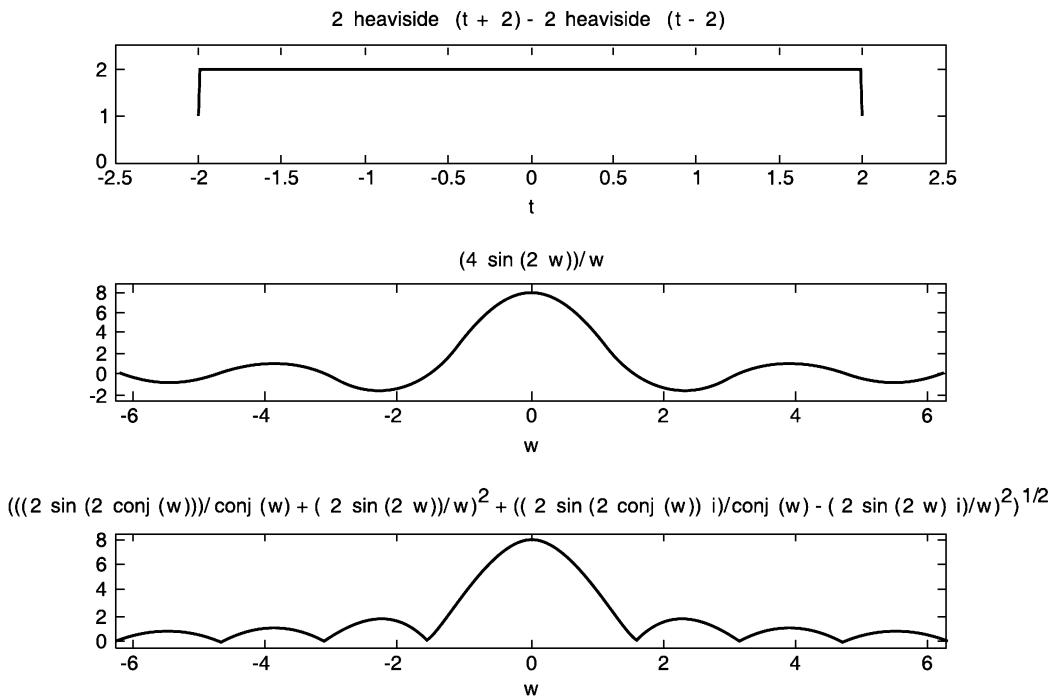
Output:

```
The input equation is
1/exp(t^2)
The fourier transform of the input equation is
pi^(1/2)/exp(w^2/4)
The Inverse fourier transform is
1/exp(x^2)
```

### Program 5.2

```
% Fourier transform of a rectangular pulse
clc;close all;clear all;
syms t w
% input signal x(t)
x=2*(heaviside(t+2)-heaviside(t-2));
subplot(3,1,1);ezplot(x,[-2 2]);
axis([-2.5 2.5 0 2.5]);
% fourier transform
X=int(x*exp(-li*w*t),t,-5,5);
X=simplify(X);
disp('the fourier transform of x(t) is')
disp(X)
subplot(3,1,2);ezplot(X);
% magnitude response
Xm=sqrt((real(X).^2)+(imag(X).^2))
subplot(3,1,3);ezplot(Xm);
```

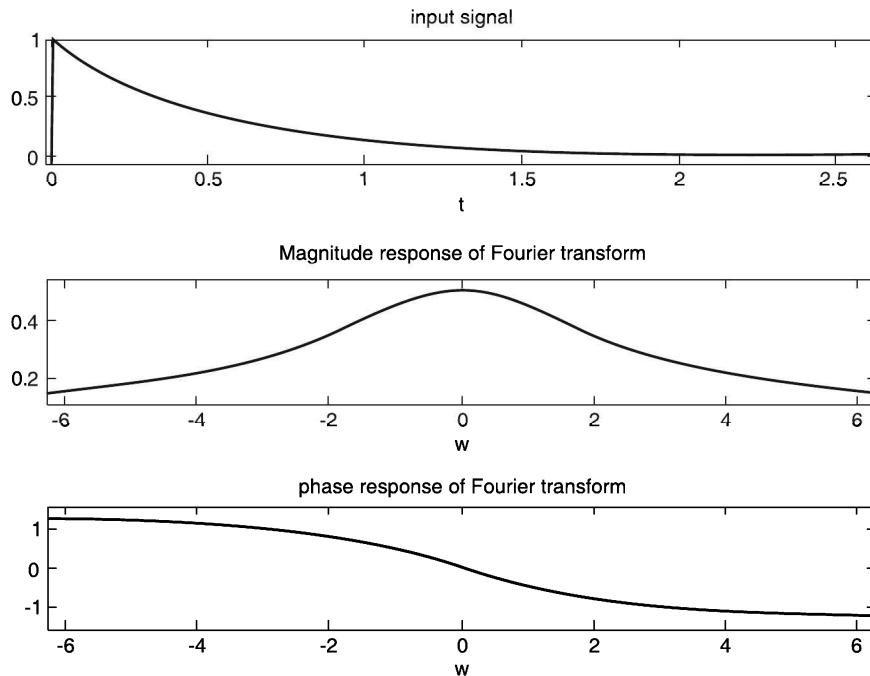
Output:



### Program 5.3

```
% Fourier transform of a signal
clc; close all; clear all;
syms t w
% input signal x(t)
x=exp(-2*t).*heaviside(t);
subplot(3,1,1);ezplot(x);
title('input signal')
% fourier transform
disp('the fourier transform of x(t) is')
X=fourier(x)
X=simplify(X);
% frequency response
subplot(3,1,2);ezplot(abs(X));
title('Magnitude response of Fourier transform')
subplot(3,1,3);ezplot(atan((imag(X))/(real(X))))
title('phase response of Fourier transform')
```

Output:

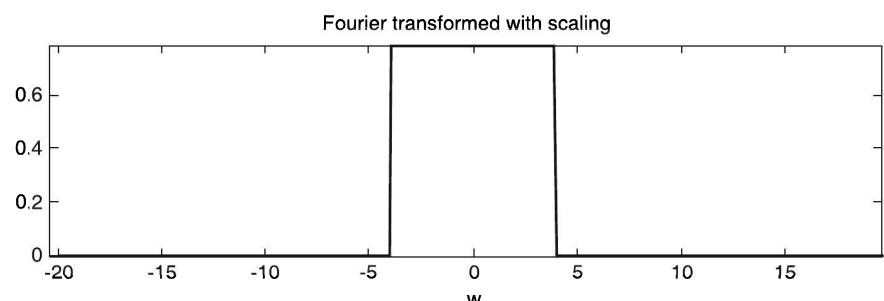
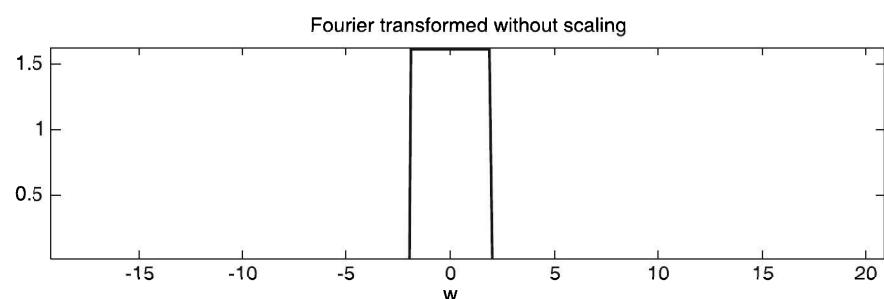
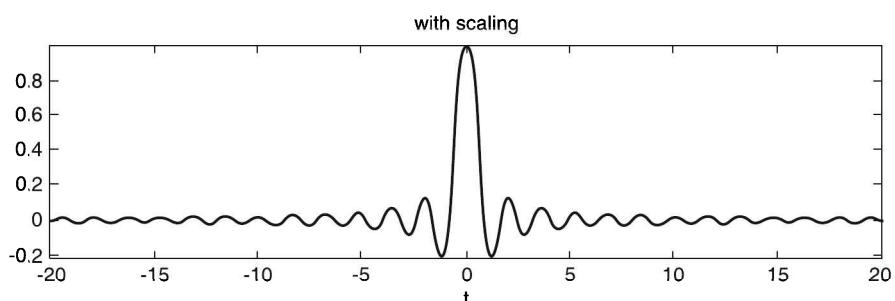
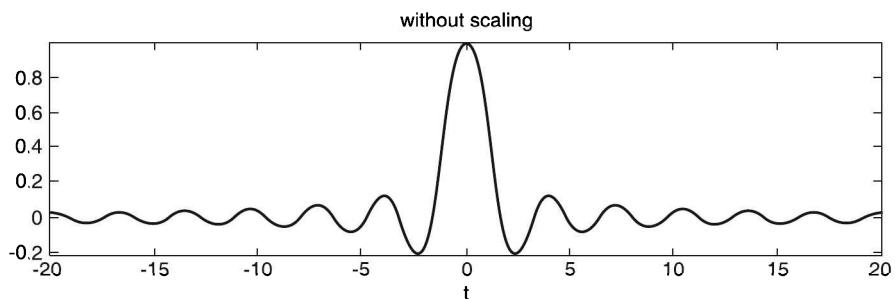


#### Program 5.4

```
% Time scaling property of Fourier transform for sinc signal
% user is asked to enter scaling factor
clear all; close all; clc;
syms t w
a=input('Input scaling factor please ');
x=sinc(2*pi*0.1*t);
X=fourier(x);
X=simplify(X);
x1=sinc(2*pi*a*0.1*t);
X1=fourier(x1);
X1=simplify(X1);
figure; subplot(2,1,1);ezplot(x,[-20,20]);
title('without scaling');axis tight;
subplot(2,1,2);ezplot(x1,[-20,20]);
title('with scaling');axis tight;
figure; subplot(2,1,1);ezplot(X,[-20,20]);
title('Fourier transformed without scaling');axis tight;
subplot(2,1,2);ezplot(X1,[-20,20]);
title('Fourier transformed with scaling');axis tight;
```

Output:

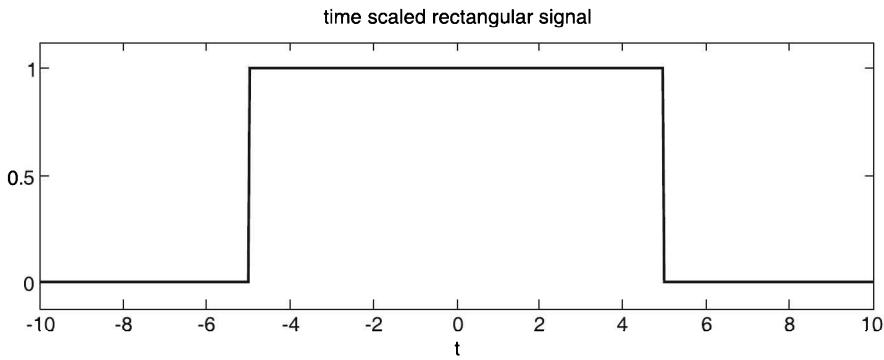
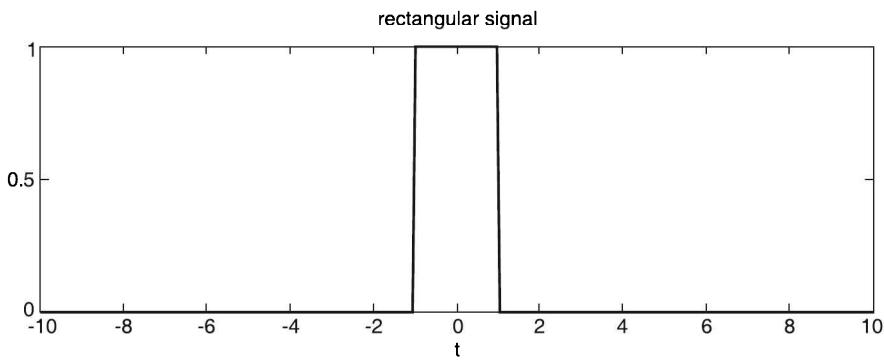
Input scaling factor please 2

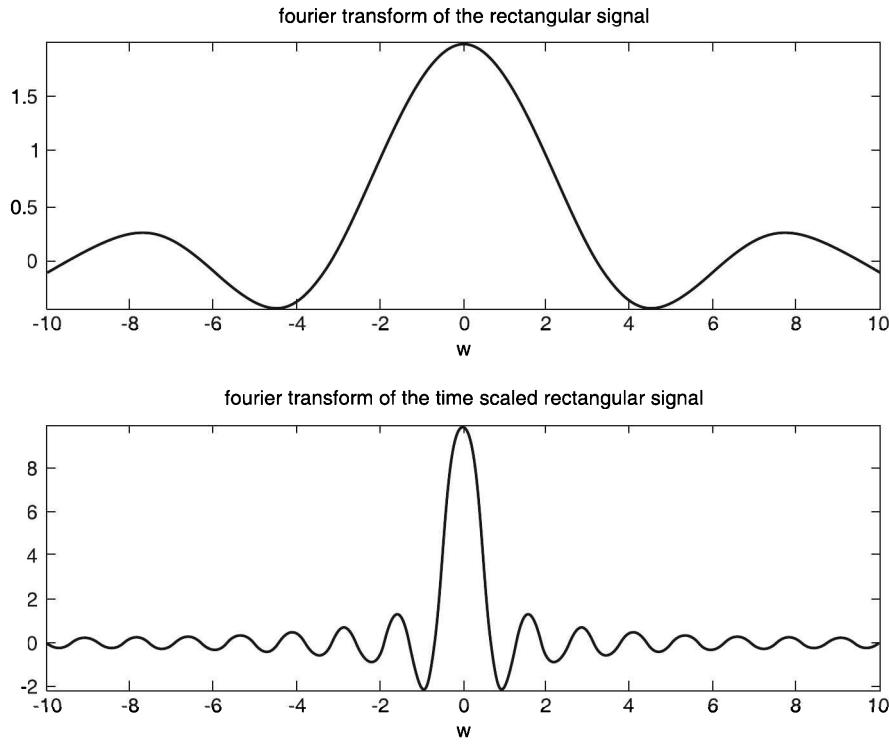


**Program 5.5**

```
% Time scaling property of Fourier transform for rectangular signal
syms t w
x1=heaviside(t+1)-heaviside(t-1);
x2=heaviside(t+5)-heaviside(t-5);
X1=fourier(x1)
X2=fourier(x2)
subplot(2,1,1);ezplot(x1,[-10 10]);
title('rectangular signal');
subplot(2,1,2);ezplot(x2,[-10 10]);
title('time scaled rectangular signal');
figure;subplot(2,1,1);ezplot(X1,[-10 10]);
title('fourier transform of the rectangular signal')
axis tight;
subplot(2,1,2);ezplot(X2,[-10 10]);
title('fourier transform of the time scaled rectangular signal')
axis tight;
```

Output:



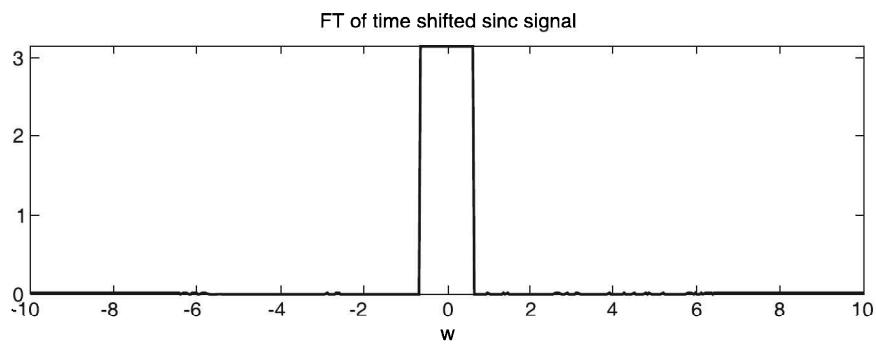
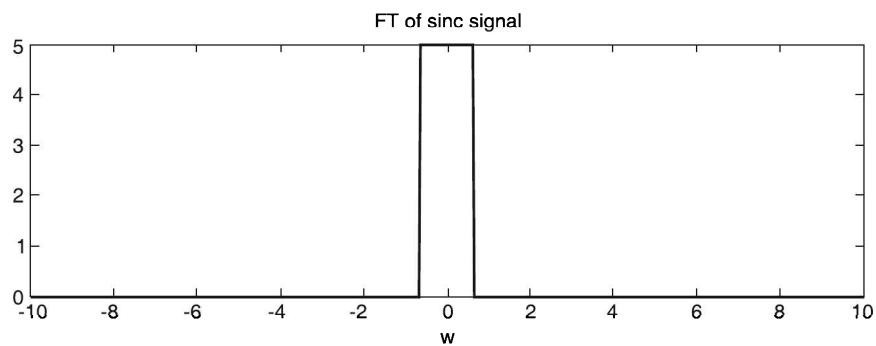
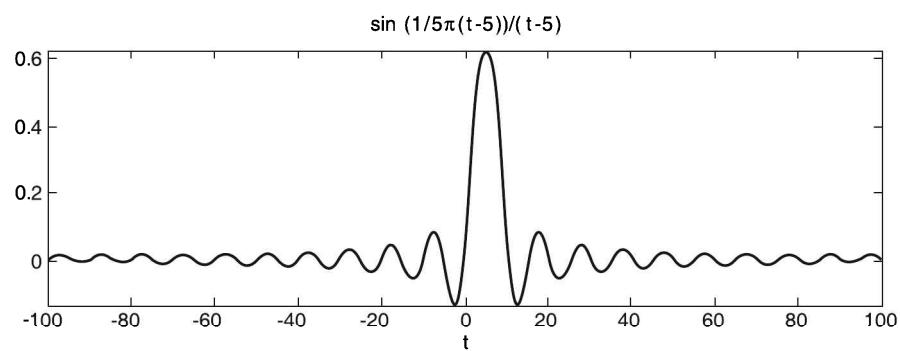
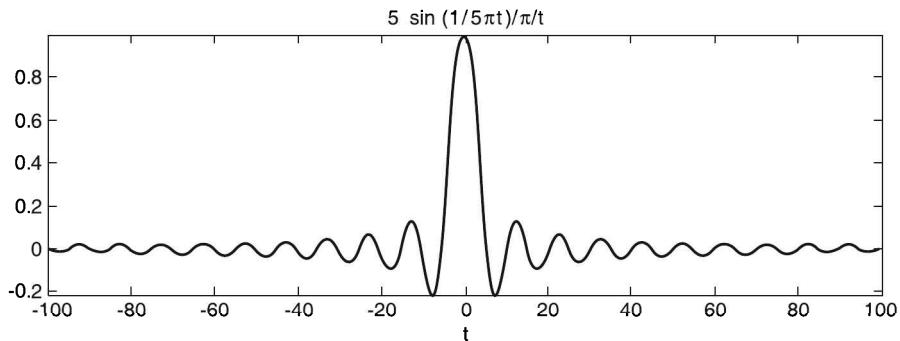


### Program 5.6

```
%Time shifting property of Fourier transform.
% Conclusion: No modification on Magnitude spectra
clc;close;clear;
T=input('Enter time delay')
syms t
y=sin(.2*pi*t)/(.2*pi*t);
y1=sin(.2*pi*(t-T))/(t-T);
figure;subplot(2,1,1);ezplot(y,[-100 100]);axis tight;
subplot(2,1,2);ezplot(y1,[-100 100]);axis tight;
Y=fourier(y);Y1=fourier(y1);
figure;subplot(2,1,1);ezplot(simplify(abs(Y)), [-10 10]);axis tight;
title('FT of sinc signal')
subplot(2,1,2);ezplot(simplify(abs(Y1)), [-10 10]);axis tight;
title('FT of time shifted sinc signal')
```

### Output:

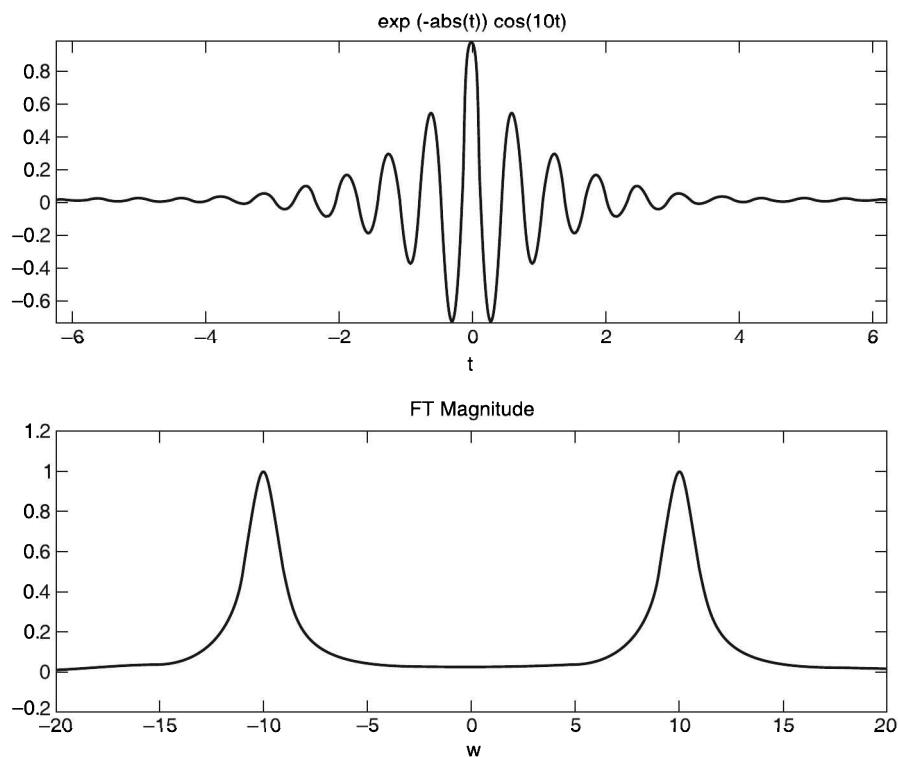
```
Enter time delay 5
T =
5
```



### Program 5.7

```
% Modulation property of Fourier transform
clc;close all;clear all;
syms t w
x1=exp(-abs(t));
x2=cos(10*t);
y=x1*x2;
subplot(2,1,1);ezplot(y);axis tight;
Y=fourier(y)
Yp=atan((imag(Y))/(real(Y)))
subplot(2,1,2);ezplot(abs(Y), [-25,25]);title('FT Magnitude');
axis([-20 20 -0.2 1.2]);
```

Output:



### Program 5.8

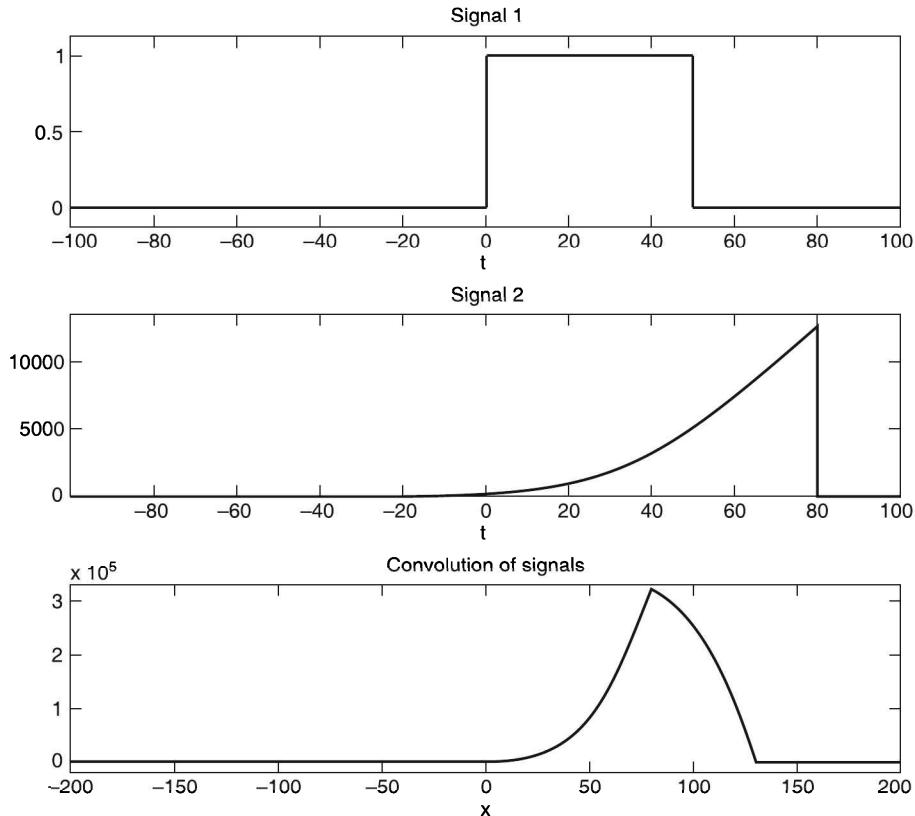
```
%Convolution using Fourier transform symbolic
clc;clear;close;
syms t
```

```

y=(heaviside(t)-heaviside(t-50)); % $(\sin(2\pi \cdot 0.1 \cdot t))/(2\pi \cdot 0.1 \cdot t)$ ;
y1=2*t^2*(heaviside(t)-heaviside(t-80));
subplot(3,1,1);ezplot(y,[-100 100]);title('Signal 1'); %axis
tight;
hold on;subplot(3,1,2);ezplot(y1,[-100 100]);title('Signal 2');
%axis tight;
Y=fourier(y);
Y1=fourier(y1);
Y2=ifourier(simplify(Y*Y1));
hold on;subplot(3,1,3);ezplot(simplify(abs(Y2)), [-200 200]);
title('Convolution of signals');

```

Output:



### Program 5.9

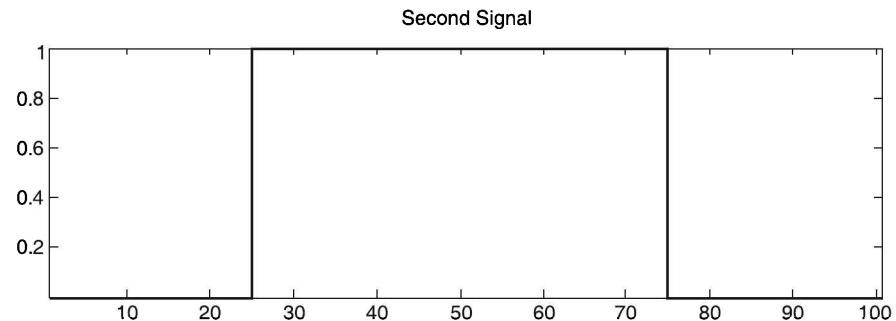
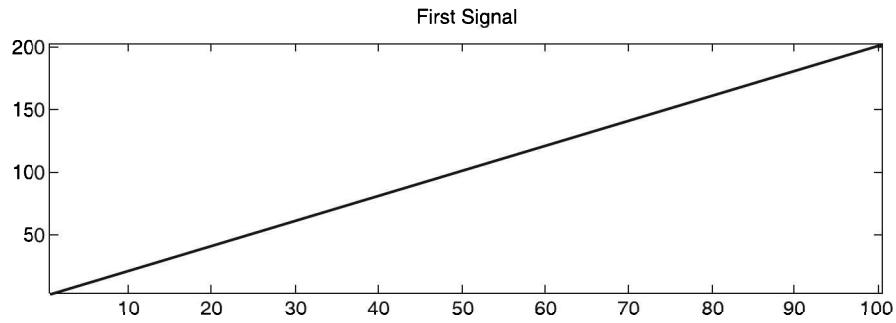
```

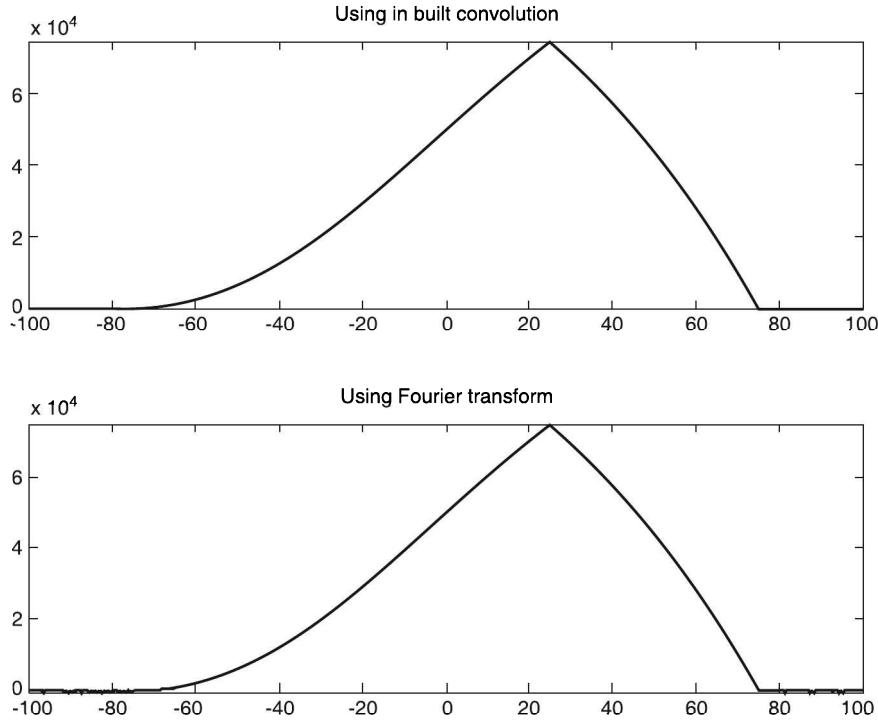
% Convolution of signals(Ramp and pulse) using Fourier transform
clc;close all;clear;
tmax=100;

```

```
t=0:0.1:tmax;
y=2*t;
y1=[zeros(1,250),ones(1,500),zeros(1,251)];
subplot(2,1,1);plot(t,y);
title('First Signal')
subplot(2,1,2);plot(t,y1);
title('Second Signal')
Y=fft([y,zeros(1,1000)]);
Y1=(fft([zeros(1,1000),y1]));
Y2=fftshift(ifft(Y.*Y1));
Yc=conv(y,y1);
t2=-tmax:0.1:tmax;
figure; subplot(2,1,1);plot(t2,Yc);
title('Using in built convolution');axis tight
subplot(2,1,2);plot(t2,Y2);
title('Using Fourier transform');axis tight
```

Output:

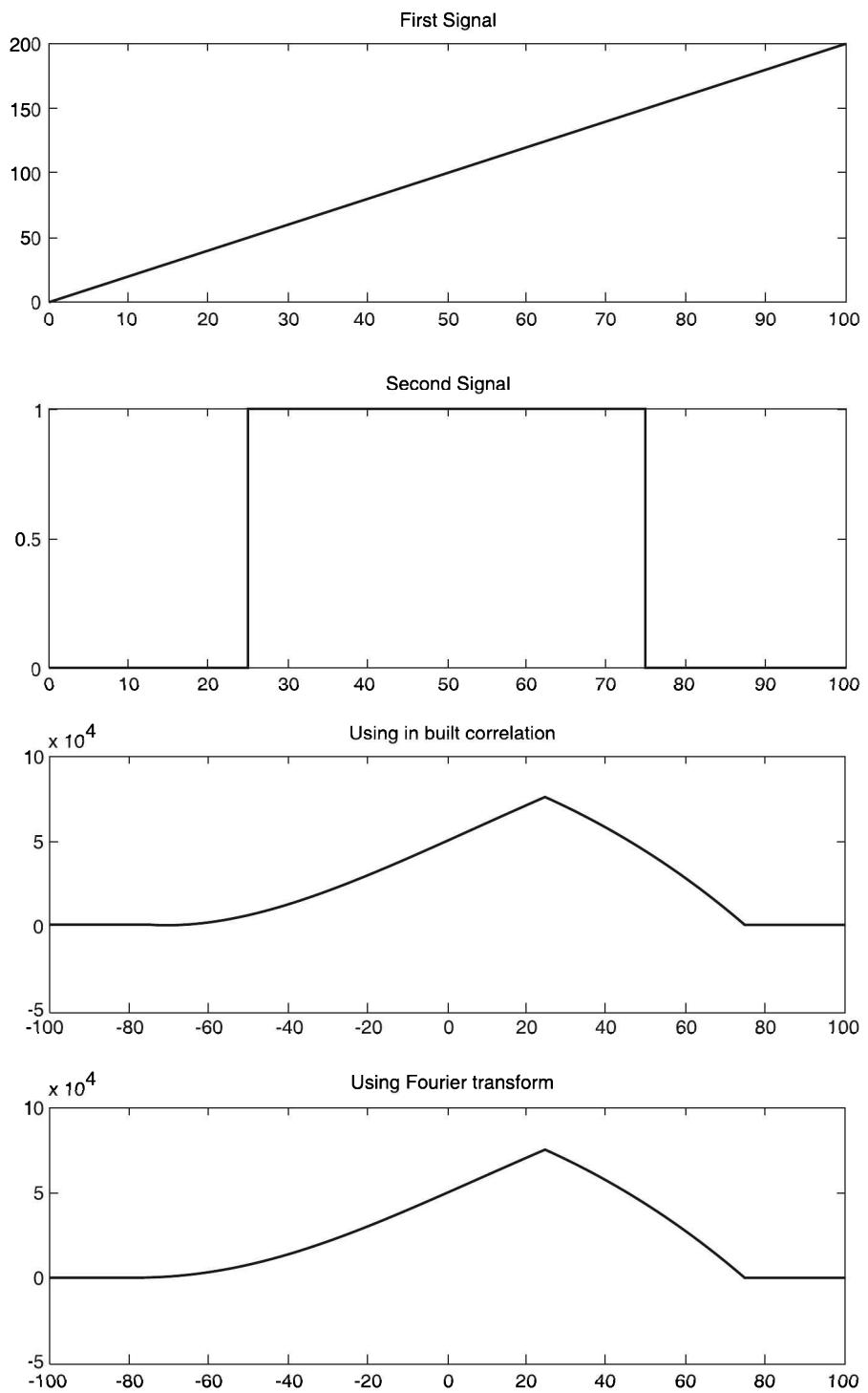




### Program 5.10

```
% Cross correlation of chirp (Linear frequency modulated signal)
% using Fourier transform
clc; close all; clear;
tmax=100;
t=0:0.1:tmax;
y=2*t;
y1=[zeros(1,250),ones(1,500),zeros(1,251)];
subplot(2,1,1);plot(t,y);title('First Signal')
subplot(2,1,2);plot(t,y1);title('Second Signal')
Y=fft([y,zeros(1,1000)]);Y1=conj(fft([y1,zeros(1,1000)]));
Y2=fftshift(ifft(Y.*Y1));
Yc=xcorr(y,y1);
t2=-tmax:0.1:tmax;
figure; subplot(2,1,1);plot(t2,Yc);title('Using in built correlation')
subplot(2,1,2);plot(t2,Y2);title('Using Fourier transform')
```

Output:



## SHORT QUESTIONS WITH ANSWERS

1. What is Fourier transform?  
*Ans.* Fourier transform is a transformation technique which transforms signals from the continuous-time domain into frequency domain and vice versa.
2. What is the limitation of Fourier series? Does Fourier transform overcome this?  
*Ans.* The limitation of Fourier series is: it is applicable only to periodic signals. It cannot be applied to aperiodic signals. Fourier transform overcomes this limitation because Fourier transform is applicable to aperiodic as well as periodic signals.
3. How can Fourier transform be developed from Fourier series?  
*Ans.* Fourier transform can be developed by finding the exponential Fourier series of a periodic signal and then tending  $T$  to infinity.
4. What is the use of Fourier transform?  
*Ans.* The Fourier transform is an extremely useful mathematical tool and is extensively used in the analysis of LTI systems, cryptography, signal analysis, signal processing, astronomy etc. Several applications ranging from radar to spread spectrum communication employ Fourier transform.
5. What is CTFT?  
*Ans.* CTFT [continuous-time Fourier transform] is the Fourier transform applied to continuous-time signals. In general, CTFT is called as Fourier transform.
6. Write the formulae for Fourier transform and inverse Fourier transform.  
*Ans.* The formula for Fourier transform, also called the equation for direct transform or analysis equation, is:

$$X(\omega) = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} x(t) e^{-j\omega t} dt$$

The formula for inverse Fourier transform, also called the equation for inverse transform or the synthesis equation, is:

$$x(t) = \frac{1}{2\pi} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} X(\omega) e^{j\omega t} d\omega$$

7. What is frequency spectrum?  
*Ans.* The plot of  $|X(\omega)|$  versus  $\omega$  is known as magnitude spectrum or amplitude spectrum, and the plot of  $\angle X(\omega)$  versus  $\omega$  is known as phase spectrum. The amplitude spectrum and phase spectrum together is called the frequency spectrum.
8. Does Fourier transform exist for all aperiodic functions? If not, what are the conditions to be satisfied for the existence of Fourier transform?  
*Ans.* No. Fourier transform does not exist for all aperiodic signals.  
The conditions to be satisfied by the function  $x(t)$  for the existence of the Fourier transform are:

- (a)  $x(t)$  is absolutely integrable over  $(-\infty \text{ to } \infty)$  that is  $\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} |x(t)| dt < \infty$ .
- (b)  $x(t)$  has a finite number of discontinuities in every finite time interval. Further each of these discontinuities must be finite.
- (c)  $x(t)$  has a finite number of maxima and minima in every finite time interval.  
These are known as Dirichlet's conditions.
9. Does Fourier transform exist for functions which are not absolutely integrable?  
*Ans.* Yes, Fourier transform can exist even for functions which are not absolutely integrable if impulses are permitted. Step function and sinusoidal functions are examples.
10. What is main lobe? What are side lobes?  
*Ans.* When the amplitude spectrum is a sinc function, the response between the first two zero crossings is known as the main lobe and the portions of the response outside the first zero crossings are known as side lobes.
11. What is the Fourier transform of a periodic signal?  
*Ans.* The Fourier transform of a periodic function [given by  $X(\omega) = 2\pi \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} C_n \delta(\omega - n\omega_0)$ ] is a train of equally spaced impulses. These impulses are located at the harmonic frequencies of the signal and the strength (area) of each impulse is given as  $2\pi C_n$ .
12. What are the merits of Fourier transform?  
*Ans.* Some of the merits of the Fourier transform are:  
 (a) The original time function can be uniquely recovered from it, i.e. the Inverse Fourier transform is unique.  
 (b) Convolution integrals can be evaluated using Fourier transform.  
 (c) The Fourier transform is the most useful tool for analysing signals.
13. What are the limitations of Fourier transform?  
*Ans.* The following are the limitations of Fourier transform  
 (a) It is less powerful than Laplace transform.  
 (b) There are many functions for which the Laplace transform exists, but the Fourier transform does not exist.
14. What is the relation between Fourier transform and Laplace transform?  
*Ans.* Laplace transform is a complex Fourier transform. The Fourier transform of a function can be obtained from its Laplace transform by replacing  $s$  by  $j\omega$ , i.e. Fourier transform is the Laplace transform evaluated along the imaginary axis of the s-plane.
15. What are the differences between the Fourier series and the Fourier transform?  
*Ans.* The differences between Fourier series and Fourier transform are as follows:

<i>Fourier series</i>	<i>Fourier transform</i>
(a) By definition, equations $x(t) = \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} C_n e^{jn\omega_0 t}$ and $C_n = \frac{1}{T} \int_{-T/2}^{T/2} x(t) e^{-jn\omega_0 t} dt$	(a) By definition, equations $X(\omega) = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} x(t) e^{-j\omega t} dt$ and $x(t) = \frac{1}{2\pi} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} X(\omega) e^{j\omega t} d\omega$
together form a Fourier series pair.	together form a Fourier transform pair.
(b) It applies to only periodic signals.	(b) It applies to both periodic and aperiodic signals.
(c) The spectrum is discrete in nature.	(c) The spectrum is continuous in nature.

16. Define Hilbert transform of a signal.

*Ans.* The Hilbert transform  $\hat{x}(t)$  of a signal  $x(t)$  is defined as the time signal obtained by the convolution of  $x(t)$  with  $(1/\pi t)$ .

17. What is the effect of Hilbert transform?

*Ans.* The effect of Hilbert transform is the amplitude spectrum of the signal is unchanged by Hilbert transform but the phase angles of all the positive frequency spectral components of the signal are shifted by  $-90^\circ$  and the phase angles of all the negative frequency spectral components are shifted by  $+90^\circ$ .

18. Is Hilbert transform applicable to all the signals?

*Ans.* Hilbert transform is applicable to all the signals that are Fourier transformable.

19. How does Hilbert transform differ from other transforms?

*Ans.* Hilbert transform differs from other transforms in that the domain of the signal is not changed by this transformation.

20. What is the Hilbert transform of the Hilbert transform of  $x(t)$ ?

*Ans.* The Hilbert transform of the Hilbert transform of  $x(t)$  is  $-x(t)$ .

21. How are a signal and its Hilbert transform related?

*Ans.* A signal and its Hilbert transform are orthogonal to each other.

22. What is the Hilbert transform of a signal  $x(t)$  which is the product of low pass signal and a high pass signal if the spectra do not overlap?

*Ans.* The Hilbert transform of a signal  $x(t)$  which is the product of a low pass signal and a high pass signal if the spectra do not overlap is equal to the low pass signal multiplied by the Hilbert transform of the high pass signal.

23. What is a Hilbert transformer?

*Ans.* The Hilbert transformer may be viewed as an ideal all pass  $90^\circ$  phase shifter. It is not causal and hence is not physically realizable.

24. State the properties of Hilbert transform.

*Ans.* The properties of Hilbert transform are:

1. Hilbert transform does not change the domain of a signal.
2. Hilbert transform does not alter the amplitude spectrum of a signal.
3. A signal and its Hilbert transform are orthogonal to one other.
4. The Hilbert transform of the Hilbert transform of a signal is equal to the negative of that signal.

25. How can you recover the signal  $x(t)$  from its Hilbert transform  $\hat{x}(t)$ .

*Ans.* The signal  $x(t)$  can be recovered from its Hilbert transform  $\hat{x}(t)$  by Hilbert transforming  $\hat{x}(t)$  and inverting that.

26. Why do we say that the Hilbert transform changes only the phase spectrum of a signal and that it leaves the magnitude spectrum unchanged?

*Ans.* The Hilbert transform  $\hat{X}(\omega)$  of signal  $x(t)$  and the Fourier transform  $X(\omega)$  of signal  $x(t)$  are related as

$$\hat{X}(\omega) = -j \operatorname{sgn}(\omega) X(\omega)$$

$$\hat{X}(\omega) = \begin{cases} -jX(\omega); & \text{for } \omega > 0 \\ jX(\omega); & \text{for } \omega < 0 \end{cases}$$

This implies that

This shows that the Hilbert transform changes only the phase spectrum of a signal and leaves the magnitude spectrum unchanged.

## REVIEW QUESTIONS

1. Distinguish between exponential form of Fourier series and Fourier transform.
2. Derive Fourier transform from exponential Fourier series.
3. Discuss the merits and limitations of Fourier transform.
4. State the conditions for the existence of Fourier transform.
5. State the properties of Fourier transform.
6. State and prove the time shifting and frequency shifting properties of Fourier transform.
7. State and prove the time reversal and time scaling properties of Fourier transform.
8. State and prove the differentiation in time domain, differentiation in frequency domain and time integration properties of Fourier transform.
9. State and prove the convolution and multiplication properties of Fourier transform.
10. State and prove the modulation, conjugation and autocorrelation properties of Fourier transform.
11. State and prove the Parseval's relation and Parseval's identity.
12. What is Hilbert transform? How does it differ from other transforms?
13. State and prove the properties of Hilbert transform.

### FILL IN THE BLANKS

1. Fourier series is applicable only to \_\_\_\_\_ signals.
2. Fourier transform can be applied to \_\_\_\_\_ as well as \_\_\_\_\_ signals.
3. The spectrum of Fourier series is \_\_\_\_\_ in nature.
4. The spectrum of Fourier transform is \_\_\_\_\_ in nature.
5. Normally continuous-time Fourier transform is called \_\_\_\_\_.
6. Absolute convergence condition is a \_\_\_\_\_ condition for the existence of Fourier transform.
7. \_\_\_\_\_ is called the frequency response of the system.
8. The amplitude spectrum and phase spectrum together is called \_\_\_\_\_ spectrum.
9. The conditions for the existence of Fourier transform are called \_\_\_\_\_ conditions.
10. The Fourier transform of signals which do not satisfy the condition of absolute convergence contains \_\_\_\_\_.
11. Fourier transform of periodic signals may be found using the concept of \_\_\_\_\_ function.
12. The Fourier transform of a periodic function consists of a \_\_\_\_\_ of equally spaced impulses.
13. The impulses in the Fourier transform of a periodic signal are located at the \_\_\_\_\_ frequencies of the signals.
14. Fourier transform is the Laplace transform evaluated along the \_\_\_\_\_ axis of the s-plane.
15. Fourier transform and inverse Fourier transform have a \_\_\_\_\_ relation.
16. The Hilbert transform  $\hat{x}(t)$  of  $x(t)$  is \_\_\_\_\_.
17. Hilbert transform does not change the \_\_\_\_\_ of a signal.
18. Hilbert transform operation is a \_\_\_\_\_ operation.
19. The functions  $x(t)$  and  $\hat{x}(t)$  constitute a \_\_\_\_\_ pair.
20. Hilbert transform does not alter the \_\_\_\_\_ spectrum of the signal.
21. If  $x(t) \xrightarrow{\text{HT}} \hat{x}(t)$ , then  $|\hat{X}(\omega)| = _____$ .
22. Hilbert transform shifts the phase of all frequency components of a signal by \_\_\_\_\_.
23.  $\hat{x}(t) = x(t)^*$  \_\_\_\_\_
24. If  $x(t) \xrightarrow{\text{HT}} \hat{x}(t)$ , then  $\hat{x}(t) \xrightarrow{\text{HT}} _____$
25. If  $x(t) \xrightarrow{\text{HT}} \hat{x}(t)$ , then  $x(t)$  and  $\hat{x}(t)$  are \_\_\_\_\_ to each other.
26. Of the two signals  $x_1(t)$  and  $x_2(t)$ , one is a low pass signal, while the other is a high pass signal. If it is given that  $x_1(t) x_2(t) \xrightarrow{\text{HT}} \hat{x}_1(t) x_2(t)$ , then \_\_\_\_\_ is the low pass signal.

## OBJECTIVE TYPE QUESTIONS

1. Fourier transform is applicable to
  - (a) only periodic signals
  - (b) only aperiodic signals
  - (c) both periodic and aperiodic signals
  - (d) only random signals
2. In the frequency spectrum of an aperiodic signal, the spacing among the components is
  - (a) large
  - (b) small
  - (c) infinity
  - (d) zero
3. A periodic signal becomes an aperiodic signal if its time period approaches
  - (a) ten times pulse width
  - (b) infinity
  - (c) hundred times pulse width
  - (d) zero
4. If the frequency spectrum of a function is discrete, then the function is:
  - (a) discrete
  - (b) aperiodic
  - (c) periodic
  - (d) random
5. If the frequency spectrum of a function is continuous, then the function is
  - (a) discrete
  - (b) aperiodic
  - (c) periodic
  - (d) random
6.  $X(\omega)$ , the Fourier transform of  $x(t)$  is given by
  - (a)  $\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} x(t) e^{-j\omega t} dt$
  - (b)  $\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} x(t) e^{j\omega t} dt$
  - (c)  $\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} f(t) dt$
  - (d)  $\int_{-T/2}^{T/2} x(t) e^{-j\omega t} dt$
7. The inverse Fourier transform  $x(t)$  of  $X(\omega)$  is given by  $1/2\pi \times$ 
  - (a)  $\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} X(\omega) e^{-j\omega t} d\omega$
  - (b)  $\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} X(\omega) e^{j\omega t} d\omega$
  - (c)  $\int_{-T/2}^{T/2} X(\omega) e^{j\omega t} d\omega$
  - (d)  $\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} F(\omega) d\omega$
8. The frequency spectrum indicates
  - (a) the relative phase of each frequency component
  - (b) the relative magnitude of each frequency component
  - (c) the relative frequency of each frequency component
  - (d) none of the above
9. The Fourier transform of a function  $x(t)$  exists implies that
  - (a)  $\int_{-T}^T f(t) dt$  exists
  - (b)  $\int_{-T/2}^{T/2} |f(t)| dt$  exists
  - (c)  $\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} |f(t)| dt$  exists
  - (d)  $\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} |F(\omega)| d\omega$  exists
10. The Fourier transform of a unit impulse function  $\delta(t)$  is
  - (a)  $1/\omega$
  - (b) 1
  - (c)  $\omega$
  - (d)  $1/j\omega$

11. The Fourier transform of  $\delta(t - t_0)$  is
 

(a) $e^{j\omega t_0}$	(b) $e^{-j\omega t_0}$	(c) $e^{-jt_0}$	(d) $\delta(\omega - \omega_0)$
-----------------------	------------------------	-----------------	---------------------------------
12. The Fourier transform of  $e^{-at} u(t)$  is
 

(a) $\frac{1}{j\omega}$	(b) $\frac{1}{a - j\omega}$	(c) $\frac{1}{a + j\omega}$	(d) $\frac{1}{a^2 - \omega^2}$
-------------------------	-----------------------------	-----------------------------	--------------------------------
13. The Fourier transform of  $e^{-a|t|}$  is
 

(a) $\frac{1}{a^2 + \omega^2}$	(b) $\frac{2a}{a^2 - \omega^2}$	(c) $\frac{2\omega}{a^2 + \omega^2}$	(d) $\frac{2a}{a^2 + \omega^2}$
--------------------------------	---------------------------------	--------------------------------------	---------------------------------
14. If the width  $\tau$  of a pulse of height unity approaches infinity, then its Fourier transform is equal to
 

(a) 1	(b) $\pi\delta(\omega)$	(c) $2\pi\delta(\omega)$	(d) $\infty$
-------	-------------------------	--------------------------	--------------
15. The Fourier transform of a complex exponential function  $e^{j\omega_0 t}$  is
 

(a) $2\pi\delta(\omega - \omega_0)$	(b) $2\pi\delta(\omega + \omega_0)$	(c) $\pi\delta(\omega - \omega_0)$	(d) $\pi\delta(\omega + \omega_0)$
-------------------------------------	-------------------------------------	------------------------------------	------------------------------------
16. The integral  $\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} X(\omega) \delta(\omega) d\omega =$ 

(a) $X(0)$	(b) $X(\infty)$	(c) $X(\omega)$	(d) $\delta(\omega)$
------------	-----------------	-----------------	----------------------
17. The integral  $\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} X(\omega) \delta(\omega - \omega_0) d\omega =$ 

(a) $X(\omega)$	(b) $X(\omega_0)$	(c) $X(0)$	(d) 0
-----------------	-------------------	------------	-------
18. The Fourier transform of DC signal  $x(t) = A$  is
 

(a) $A\omega$	(b) $A2\pi\omega$	(c) $A2\pi\delta(\omega)$	(d) $A2\pi$
---------------	-------------------	---------------------------	-------------
19. The Fourier transform of a signum function is
 

(a) $\frac{1}{j\omega}$	(b) $\frac{2}{\omega}$	(c) $\text{sgn}(\omega)$	(d) $\frac{2}{j\omega}$
-------------------------	------------------------	--------------------------	-------------------------
20. The Fourier transform of a unit step function is
 

(a) $\pi\delta(\omega) + \frac{1}{j\omega}$	(b) $j\omega + \frac{1}{\pi\delta(\omega)}$	(c) $\pi\delta(\omega) + j\omega$	(d) $j\omega \pi\delta(\omega)$
---	---	-----------------------------------	---------------------------------
21. The inverse Fourier transform of  $\delta(\omega - \omega_0)$  is
 

(a) $2\pi e^{j\omega_0 t}$	(b) $2\pi e^{-j\omega_0 t}$	(c) $\frac{1}{2\pi} e^{-j\omega_0 t}$	(d) $\frac{1}{2\pi} e^{j\omega_0 t}$
----------------------------	-----------------------------	---------------------------------------	--------------------------------------
22. The Fourier transform of rect  $(t/\tau)$  is
 

(a) $\frac{\tau}{2} \text{sinc} \frac{\omega\tau}{2}$	(b) $\tau \sin \frac{\omega\tau}{2}$	(c) $\frac{\tau}{2} \text{sinc}^2 \frac{\omega\tau}{4}$	(d) $\tau \text{sinc}^2 \frac{\omega\tau}{2}$
---	--------------------------------------	---	---

23. The spectrum of a rectangular pulse is  
 (a) Gaussian function  
 (c)  $\text{sinc}^2$  function

(b) sinc function  
 (d) rectangular function

24. The Fourier transform of a triangular pulse  $\Delta(t/\tau)$  is  
 (a)  $\frac{\tau}{2} \text{sinc}^2 \frac{\omega\tau}{4}$   
 (b)  $\tau \text{sinc}^2 \frac{\omega\tau}{2}$   
 (c)  $\tau^2 \text{sinc}^2 \omega^2 \tau^2$   
 (d)  $\frac{\tau}{2} \text{sinc} \frac{\omega\tau}{4}$

25. The spectrum of a triangular pulse is  
 (a) Gaussian function  
 (c)  $\text{sinc}^2$  function

(b) sinc function  
 (d) rectangular function

26. The spectrum of a Gaussian signal is  
 (a) Gaussian function  
 (c) triangular function

(b) rectangular function  
 (d) sinc function

27. The Fourier transform of  $\cos \omega_0 t$  is  
 (a)  $\pi[\delta(\omega - \omega_0) - \delta(\omega + \omega_0)]$   
 (c)  $\pi[\delta(\omega - \omega_0) + \delta(\omega + \omega_0)]$

(b)  $\pi[\delta(\omega + \omega_0) - \delta(\omega - \omega_0)]$   
 (d)  $-j\pi[\delta(\omega - \omega_0) - \delta(\omega + \omega_0)]$

28. The Fourier transform of  $\sin \omega_0 t$  is  
 (a)  $-j\pi[\delta(\omega - \omega_0) - \delta(\omega + \omega_0)]$   
 (c)  $\pi[\delta(\omega - \omega_0) + \delta(\omega + \omega_0)]$

(b)  $j\pi[\delta(\omega - \omega_0) - \delta(\omega + \omega_0)]$   
 (d)  $-j\pi[\delta(\omega + \omega_0) - \delta(\omega - \omega_0)]$

29. The Fourier transform of  $x(t - t_0)$  is  
 (a)  $e^{-j\omega t_0} X(\omega)$   
 (b)  $e^{j\omega t_0} X(\omega)$

(c)  $X(\omega - \omega_0)$   
 (d)  $X(\omega_0)$

30. The Fourier transform of  $e^{j\omega_0 t} x(t)$  is  
 (a)  $X(\omega + \omega_0)$   
 (b)  $X(\omega_0)$

(c)  $X(\omega - \omega_0)$   
 (d)  $X(\omega/\omega_0)$

31. The Fourier transform of  $x(-t)$  is  
 (a)  $X(\omega)$   
 (b)  $X(-\omega)$

(c)  $X(1/\omega)$   
 (d)  $-X(\omega)$

32. The Fourier transform of  $x(at)$  is  
 (a)  $\frac{1}{|a|} X\left(\frac{\omega}{a}\right)$   
 (b)  $\frac{1}{|a|} X(a\omega)$

(c)  $\frac{1}{|a|} X\left(\frac{a}{\omega}\right)$   
 (d)  $\frac{1}{|\omega|} X\left(\frac{\omega}{a}\right)$

33. The Fourier transform of  $dx(t)/dt$  is  
 (a)  $\frac{d\omega}{\omega} X(\omega)$   
 (b)  $\frac{1}{j\omega} X(\omega)$

(c)  $j\omega X(\omega)$   
 (d)  $\frac{j\omega}{X(\omega)}$

34. The Fourier transform of  $t x(t)$  is  
 (a)  $\omega X(\omega)$   
 (b)  $\omega \frac{d}{d\omega} X(\omega)$

(c)  $\frac{X(\omega)}{j\omega}$   
 (d)  $j \frac{d}{d\omega} X(\omega)$

35. The Fourier transform of  $\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} x(\tau) d\tau$  is
- (a)  $\frac{1}{j\omega} X(j\omega)$       (b)  $j\omega X(\omega)$       (c)  $\frac{1}{j\omega X(\omega)}$       (d)  $\frac{j\omega}{X(\omega)}$

36. The Fourier transform of  $x_1(t) * x_2(t)$  is
- (a)  $X_1(\omega) * X_2(\omega)$       (b)  $\frac{1}{2\pi} X_1(\omega) X_2(\omega)$       (c)  $2\pi X_1(\omega) X_2(\omega)$       (d)  $X_1(\omega) X_2(\omega)$

37. The Fourier transform of  $x_1(t) x_2(t)$  is
- (a)  $X_1(\omega) * X_2(\omega)$       (b)  $\frac{1}{2\pi} X_1(\omega) * X_2(\omega)$   
 (c)  $2\pi X_1(\omega) * X_2(\omega)$       (d)  $X_1(\omega) X_2(\omega)$

38. The Fourier transform of  $x(t) \cos \omega_c t$  is
- (a)  $\frac{1}{2} [X(\omega - \omega_c) + X(\omega + \omega_c)]$       (b)  $\frac{1}{2} [X(\omega - \omega_c) - X(\omega + \omega_c)]$   
 (c)  $\frac{1}{2} [X(\omega + \omega_c) - X(\omega - \omega_c)]$       (d)  $\frac{1}{2} [X(\omega - \omega_c) + X(\omega + \omega_c)]$

39. The Fourier transform of  $x(t) \sin \omega_c t$  is
- (a)  $2j [X(\omega - \omega_c) + X(\omega + \omega_c)]$       (b)  $2j [X(\omega - \omega_c) - X(\omega + \omega_c)]$   
 (c)  $\frac{1}{2j} [X(\omega - \omega_c) + X(\omega + \omega_c)]$       (d)  $\frac{1}{2j} [X(\omega - \omega_c) - X(\omega + \omega_c)]$

40. The Fourier transform of  $x^*(t)$  is
- (a)  $X^*(\omega)$       (b)  $X^*(-\omega)$       (c)  $-X^*(\omega)$       (d)  $-X^*(-\omega)$

41. Parseval's identity states that  $\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} |x(t)|^2 dt =$
- (a)  $\frac{1}{2\pi} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} |X(\omega)|^2 d\omega$       (b)  $\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} |X(\omega)|^2 d\omega$   
 (c)  $2\pi \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} |X(\omega)|^2 d\omega$       (d)  $\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \left[ \frac{1}{2\pi} |X(\omega)| \right]^2 d\omega$

42. Parseval's relation states that  $\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} x_1(t) * x_2(t) dt =$
- (a)  $\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} X_1(\omega) X_2^*(\omega) d\omega$       (b)  $\frac{1}{2\pi} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} X_1(\omega) X_2^*(\omega) d\omega$   
 (c)  $\frac{1}{2\pi} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} X_1^*(\omega) X_2^*(\omega) d\omega$       (d)  $2\pi \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} X_1(\omega) X_2^*(\omega) d\omega$

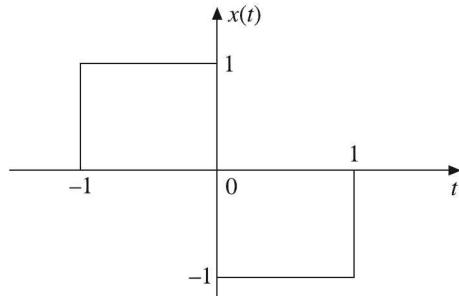
43. The area under the Fourier transform, i.e.  $\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} X(\omega) d\omega =$
- (a)  $x(0)$       (b)  $X(0)$       (c)  $2\pi x(0)$       (d)  $1/2\pi x(0)$
44. The area under a function  $x(t)$ , i.e.  $\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} x(t) dt =$
- (a)  $X(0)$       (b)  $x(0)$       (c)  $\frac{1}{2\pi}X(0)$       (d)  $2\pi x(0)$
45. The Fourier transform of a periodic function  $x(t)$  with period  $T$  is
- (a)  $2\pi \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} C_n \delta(\omega - n\omega_0)$       (b)  $\frac{1}{2\pi} \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} C_n \delta(\omega - n\omega_0)$   
 (c)  $2\pi \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} C_n \delta(\omega + n\omega_0)$       (d)  $\sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} C_n \delta(\omega - n\omega_0)$
46. The sinc function  $x(t)$  is defined as  $x(t) =$
- (a)  $\frac{\sin 5t}{5t}$       (b)  $\frac{\sin t}{5t}$       (c)  $\frac{\sin 5t}{5}$       (d)  $\frac{\sin 5t}{t}$
47. The signum function  $x(t)$  can be written as
- (a)  $u(t) - 1$       (b)  $2u(t) - 1$       (c)  $1 - u(t)$       (d)  $u(t) + u(-t)$
48. If  $x(t) \xrightarrow{\text{HT}} \hat{x}(t)$  then their Fourier transforms are related as
- (a)  $\hat{X}(\omega) = j \operatorname{sgn}(\omega) X(\omega)$       (b)  $\hat{X}(\omega) = -j \operatorname{sgn}(\omega) X(\omega)$   
 (c)  $\hat{X}(\omega) = j \operatorname{sgn}(-\omega) X(\omega)$       (d)  $\hat{X}(\omega) = j \operatorname{sgn}(\omega) X(-\omega)$
49. Hilbert transformer is a
- (a) low pass filter      (b)  $-90^\circ$  phase shifter  
 (c) high pass filter      (d)  $180^\circ$  phase shifter
50. If  $x(t) \xrightarrow{\text{HT}} \hat{x}(t)$  then  $\hat{x}(t)$  equals
- (a)  $-x(t)$       (b)  $x(t)$       (c)  $\bar{x}(t)$       (d)  $x(-t)$
51. If  $x(t) = \cos 10\pi t \cos 1000\pi t$ . Then  $\hat{x}(t)$  is
- (a)  $\cos 10\pi t \sin 1000\pi t$       (b)  $\sin 10\pi t \cos 1000\pi t$   
 (c)  $\sin 10\pi t \sin 1000\pi t$       (d) none of the above
52. If  $x(t) \xrightarrow{\text{HT}} \hat{x}(t)$ ;  $\hat{X}(\omega) = F[\hat{x}(t)]$  and  $\hat{X}(\omega) = |X(\omega)| e^{j\hat{\theta}(\omega)}$  then
- (a)  $|\hat{X}(\omega)| = -|X(\omega)|$       (b)  $X(\omega) = \overline{X(\omega)}$   
 (c)  $|\hat{X}(\omega)| = |X(\omega)|$  and  $\hat{\theta}(\omega) = -90^\circ$       (d)  $|\hat{X}(\omega)| = |X(\omega)|$  and  $\hat{\theta}(\omega) = 90^\circ$

## PROBLEMS

1. Find the Fourier transform of the following signals.
  - (a)  $e^{5t} u(t)$
  - (b)  $e^{-3t} \sin 4t u(t)$
  - (c)  $e^{-3t} \cos 4t u(t)$
  - (d)  $te^{-2t} u(t)$
2. Using properties of Fourier transform find the Fourier transform of the following:
  - (a)  $te^{-3t} u(t)$
  - (b)  $e^{j4t} u(t)$
  - (c)  $e^{j4t}$
  - (d)  $e^{-4t} u(t-3)$
  - (e)  $e^{-a(t-2)}$
  - (f)  $\delta(t+4) + \delta(t+2) + \delta(t-2) + \delta(t-4)$
3. Find the Fourier transform of  $x(t-4) + x(t+4)$ .
4. Find the Fourier transform of the signal

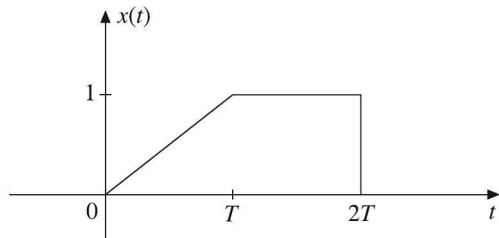
$$\begin{aligned} x(t) &= e^{-|t|} \quad \text{for } -4 \leq t \leq 4 \\ &= 0 \quad \text{otherwise} \end{aligned}$$

5. Find the inverse Fourier transform of  $X(\omega) = \frac{j\omega}{(3+j\omega)^2}$ .
6. Find the inverse Fourier transform of  $X(\omega) = e^{-4\omega} U(\omega)$ .
7. Find the Fourier transform of  $e^{-2|t|} \operatorname{sgn}(t)$ .
8. Find the Fourier transform of the waveform shown in Figure 5.51.



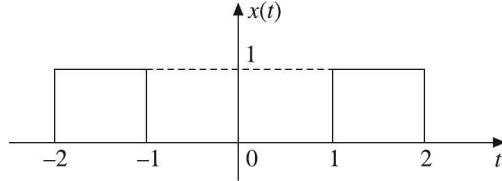
**Figure 5.51** Problem 8.

9. Find the Fourier transform of the signal  $x(t)$  shown in Figure 5.52.



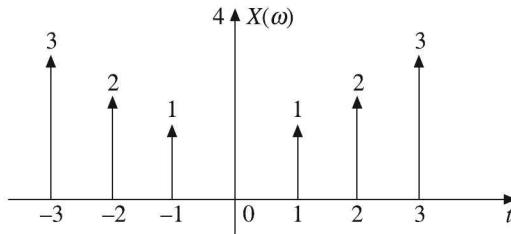
**Figure 5.52** Problem 9.

10. Find the Fourier transform of the signal shown in Figure 5.53. Sketch the magnitude spectrum.



**Figure 5.53** Problem 10.

11. Determine the inverse Fourier transform of the spectrum given in Figure 5.54.



**Figure 5.54** Problem 11.

12. Using Fourier transform, find the convolution of the signals

$$x_1(t) = e^{-t} u(t) \text{ and } x_2(t) = e^{-3t} u(t)$$

13. Using Fourier transform, find the convolution of the signals

$$x_1(t) = te^{-t} u(t) \text{ and } x_2(t) = e^{-2t} u(t)$$

14. Find the Fourier transform of  $x(t) = 5 \cos^2 3t$ .

15. Find the Fourier transform of  $x(t) = \sin(4t + 0.2\pi)$ .

16. A signal  $x(t) = \cos 2t + 2 \cos 4t$  modulates the carrier signal  $x_c(t) = \cos 10t$ . Find the spectrum of the modulated signal.

17. The input and output of a causal LTI system are described by the differential equation

$$\frac{d^2y(t)}{dt^2} + 7 \frac{dy(t)}{dt} + 10y(t) = x(t)$$

(a) Find the impulse response of the system.

(b) What is the response of this system if  $x(t) = e^{-t} u(t)$ ?

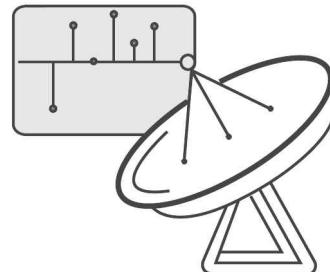
18. Using Fourier transform, find the differential equation description for the system having impulse response  $h(t) = (2e^{-t} - 3e^{-5t}) u(t)$ .

19. Consider a causal LTI system with impulse response  $h(t) = e^{-3t} u(t)$ . Find the output of the system for an input  $x(t) = e^{-4t} u(t)$ .

20. Consider a causal LTI system with frequency response  $H(\omega) = \frac{1}{j\omega + 4}$ . For a particular input  $x(t)$ , this system is observed to produce the output  $y(t) = e^{-3t} u(t) - e^{-5t} u(t)$ . Determine  $x(t)$ .

# 6

# Signal Transmission through Linear Systems



## 6.1 INTRODUCTION

A system is defined as an entity that acts on an input signal and transforms it into an output signal. The two most important attributes of a system are linearity and time invariance. A system which is both linear and time invariant is called a linear time invariant (LTI) system. A system which is linear but time variant is called a linear time variant (LTV) system. The change of shape of a signal when it is transmitted through a system is called distortion. In this chapter, we discuss the filter characteristics of LTI systems, distortionless transmission through LTI systems, signal bandwidth and system bandwidth, various types of filters and time domain and frequency domain criterion for physical realizability.

## 6.2 SYSTEMS

A detailed study of systems is done in Chapter 2. Only a few aspects are reviewed here.

### *Linear system*

A system for which the principle of superposition and the principle of homogeneity are valid is called a linear system.

Superposition principle states that the response to a weighted sum of input signals be equal to the corresponding weighted sum of the outputs of the system to each of the input signals.

If an arbitrary signal  $x_1(t)$  produces an output  $y_1(t)$  and an arbitrary input  $x_2(t)$  produces an output  $y_2(t)$ , then the system is linear if the weighted sum of inputs

$$ax_1(t) + bx_2(t) \text{ produces an output } ay_1(t) + by_2(t)$$

where  $a$  and  $b$  are constants

i.e.

$$T[ax_1(t) + bx_2(t)] = ay_1(t) + by_2(t)$$

### **Impulse response**

Impulse response is the output of the system for a unit impulse input. For understanding the system behaviour, unit impulse response is very important.

If                              Input  $x(t) = \delta(t)$   
 then                          Output  $y(t) = h(t)$

$$\mathcal{L}[\delta(t)] = 1 \quad \text{and} \quad \mathcal{F}[\delta(t)] = 1$$

Once the transfer function  $H(\omega)$  of an LTI system is known in frequency domain, the impulse response of the system can be found by finding the inverse Fourier transform of  $H(\omega)$ .

i.e.                           $h(t) = \mathcal{F}^{-1}[H(\omega)]$

Similarly, once the transfer function  $H(s)$  of an LTI system is known in s-domain, the impulse response of the system can be found by finding the inverse Laplace transform of  $H(s)$ .

i.e.                           $h(t) = \mathcal{L}^{-1}[H(s)]$

### **Response of a linear system**

Once the impulse response  $h(t)$  is known, the response of the linear system  $y(t)$  for any given input  $x(t)$  can be obtained by convolving the input with the impulse response of the system.

$$y(t) = h(t) * x(t) = x(t) * h(t)$$

If a noncausal signal is applied to a noncausal system, then

$$y(t) = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} h(\tau) x(t - \tau) d\tau = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} x(\tau) h(t - \tau) d\tau$$

If a causal signal is applied to a non-causal system, then

$$y(t) = \int_{-\infty}^t h(\tau) x(t - \tau) d\tau = \int_0^{\infty} x(\tau) h(t - \tau) d\tau$$

If a noncausal signal is applied to a causal system, then

$$y(t) = \int_0^{\infty} h(\tau) x(t - \tau) d\tau = \int_{-\infty}^t x(\tau) h(t - \tau) d\tau$$

If a causal signal is applied to a causal system, then

$$y(t) = \int_0^t h(\tau) x(t - \tau) d\tau = \int_0^t x(\tau) h(t - \tau) d\tau$$

### **Step response**

The step response of an LTI continuous-time system can be obtained by using convolution integral. If  $u(t)$  is an input to a system with impulse response  $h(t)$ , then the step response is given by

$$s(t) = h(t) * u(t)$$

If the system is non-causal, then the step response

$$s(t) = \int_{-\infty}^t h(\tau) u(t - \tau) d\tau = \int_{-\infty}^t h(\tau) d\tau$$

If the system is causal, then

$$s(t) = \int_0^t h(\tau) d\tau$$

That is, the unit step response of a continuous-time LTI system is the running integral of its impulse response.

### **Linear Time Invariant [LTI] system**

A system which is linear as well as time invariant is called a linear time invariant system. That is, a system for which the principle of superposition and the principle of homogeneity are valid and in addition, the input/output characteristics do not change with time is called an LTI system.

For an LTI system, the output due to delayed input  $[x(t - T)]$ , i.e.  $y(t, T)$  must be equal to the delayed output  $y(t - T)$ .

i.e.

$$y(t, T) = y(t - T)$$

That is if the input is delayed by  $T$  units the corresponding output will also be delayed by  $T$  units. For a linear time invariant system all the coefficients of the differential equation describing the system are constants.

### **Linear Time Variant [LTV] system**

A system which is linear but time variant is called a linear time variant system. That is, a system for which the principle of superposition and the principle of homogeneity are valid but the input/output characteristics change with time is called an LTV system.

For an LTV system, the output due to delayed input  $[x(t - T)]$ , i.e.  $y(t, T)$  is not equal to the delayed output  $y(t - T)$ .

i.e.

$$y(t, T) \neq y(t - T)$$

That is for an LTV system, if the input is delayed by  $T$  units, the corresponding output will not be delayed by exactly  $T$  units.

For a linear time variant system at least one of the coefficients of the differential equation describing the system vary with time.

Linear systems, linear time invariant (LTI) systems and linear time variant (LTV) systems are discussed elaborately in Chapter 2.

Continuous-time systems are described by differential equations and they can be analysed using either Fourier transform or Laplace transform. Analysis using Laplace transform is easy and more convenient compared to analysis using Fourier transform. Also Laplace transform is more powerful than Fourier transform because there are many functions for which Fourier transform does not exist, but Laplace transform exists. Moreover, the

Fourier transform of a function can be easily obtained from its Laplace transform by just replacing  $s$  by  $j\omega$ . So in this chapter mainly Laplace transform is used. When the frequency response is required, the transfer function  $H(\omega)$  is obtained directly using Fourier transform in simple cases and from  $H(s)$  in complex cases.

### 6.3 PROPERTIES OF LINEAR TIME INVARIANT SYSTEMS

An extremely important representation of continuous-time LTI systems is in terms of its unit impulse response. It takes the form of convolution integral. The importance of impulse response is the characteristics of an LTI system are completely determined by its impulse response. The unit impulse response of a nonlinear system does not completely characterize the behavior of the system.

LTI systems have a number of properties not possessed by other systems beginning with convolution integral. Some of the most basic and important properties of continuous-time LTI systems are—

#### 6.3.1 The Commutative Property

A basic property of convolution in continuous-time is that it is a commutative operation.

$$x(t) * h(t) = h(t) * x(t) = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} x(\tau) h(t - \tau) d\tau = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} h(\tau) x(t - \tau) d\tau$$

i.e. The output of an LTI system with input  $x(t)$  and unit impulse response  $h(t)$  is identical to the output of an LTI system with input  $h(t)$  and impulse response  $x(t)$ .

#### 6.3.2 The Distributive Property

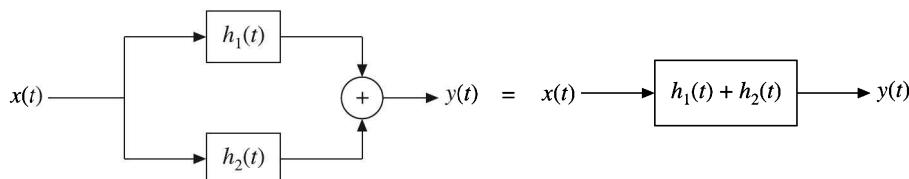
Another basic property of convolution is the distributive property. Specifically convolution distributes over addition so that

$$x(t) * [h_1(t) + h_2(t)] = x(t) * h_1(t) + x(t) * h_2(t)$$

The distributive property has a useful interpretation in terms of system interconnection.

Two systems with impulse responses  $h_1(t)$  and  $h_2(t)$  connected in parallel can be replaced by a single system with impulse response  $h_1(t) + h_2(t)$ .

The distributive property of convolution can be used to break a complicated convolution into several simpler ones. Figure 6.1 illustrates the distributive property.



**Figure 6.1** The distributive property.

### 6.3.3 The Associative Property

Another important and useful property of convolution is that it is associative. That is

$$x(t) * [h_1(t) * h_2(t)] = [x(t) * h_1(t)] * h_2(t)$$

i.e. it is immaterial in which order the signals are convolved.

According to the associative property, the series interconnection of two systems is equivalent to a single system. Figure 6.2 illustrates the associative property.

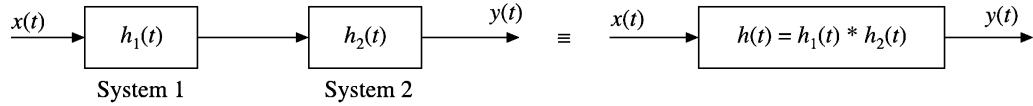


Figure 6.2 Associative property.

The impulse response of the cascade of two LTI systems is the convolution of their individual impulse responses.

### 6.3.4 Systems with and without Memory

A system is said to be static or memoryless if its output at any time depends only on the value of the input at that time. A continuous-time LTI system is memoryless if  $h(t) = 0$  for  $t \neq 0$  and such a memoryless LTI system has the form

$$y(t) = kx(t)$$

for some constant  $k$  and has the impulse response

$$h(t) = k\delta(t)$$

Therefore, if

$$h(t) \neq 0 \quad \text{for } t \neq 0$$

the continuous-time system has memory. A memory system is also called a dynamic system.

If  $k = 1$ ,  $h(t) = \delta(t)$ , the system becomes an identity system.

### 6.3.5 Causality

A causal system is non anticipatory and does not produce an output before an input is applied. Its output depends only on the present and past values of input but not on future inputs.

Therefore for a causal LTI system we have,  $h(t) = 0$  for  $t < 0$ .

The output of a causal LTI system for a noncausal input is

$$y(t) = \int_0^{\infty} h(\tau) x(t - \tau) d\tau = \int_{-\infty}^t x(\tau) h(t - \tau) d\tau$$

The output of a causal LTI system for a causal signal is

$$y(t) = \int_0^t h(\tau) x(t - \tau) d\tau = \int_0^t x(\tau) h(t - \tau) d\tau$$

A noncausal system is anticipatory and

$$h(t) \neq 0 \text{ for } t < 0$$

### 6.3.6 Stability

A system is stable if every bounded input produces a bounded output. The BIBO stability of an LTI system can be easily determined from its impulse response. For a continuous-time LTI system to be BIBO stable, its impulse response  $h(t)$  must be absolutely integrable, i.e.

$$\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} |h(\tau)| d\tau < \infty$$

### 6.3.7 Invertibility

A continuous-time LTI system with impulse response  $h(t)$  is said to be invertible, if an inverse system with impulse response  $h_1(t)$  which when connected in series with the original system produces an output equal to the input of the first system

$$\text{i.e. } h(t) * h_1(t) = \delta(t)$$

Figure 6.3 illustrates invertibility of system.

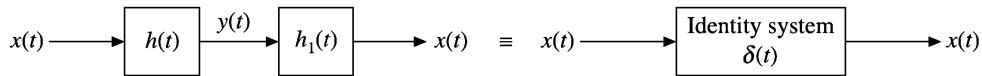


Figure 6.3 Invertibility of system.

### 6.3.8 The Unit Step Response

The unit step response  $s(t)$  of an LTI system is the output of the system for a unit step input  $u(t)$ .

The unit step response can be obtained by convolving the input unit step  $u(t)$  with the impulse response  $h(t)$  of the system.

$$\therefore s(t) = h(t) * u(t) = u(t) * h(t)$$

$$s(t) = \int_{-\infty}^t h(\tau) d\tau$$

i.e. The unit step response of a continuous-time LTI system is the running integral of its impulse response.

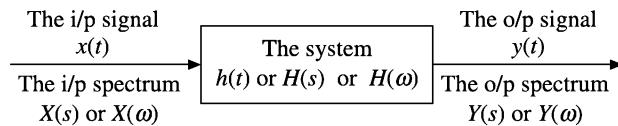
$$h(t) = \frac{ds(t)}{dt}$$

The unit impulse response is the first derivative of the unit step response.

Therefore the unit step response can also be used to characterize an LTI system because a unit impulse response can be characterized from the unit step response.

## 6.4 TRANSFER FUNCTION OF AN LTI SYSTEM

A continuous-time system is shown in Figure 6.4.



**Figure 6.4** A system.

The transfer function of a continuous-time LTI system may be defined using Fourier transform or Laplace transform. The transfer function is defined only under zero initial conditions.

The transfer function of a LTI system  $H(\omega)$  is defined as the ratio of the Fourier transform of the output signal to the Fourier transform of the input signal when the initial conditions are zero. Or simply we can say that it is the ratio of output to input in frequency domain when the initial conditions are neglected. Or simply we can say that the transfer function  $H(\omega)$  of a LTI system is the Fourier transform of its impulse response.

$$H(\omega) = \frac{Y(\omega)}{X(\omega)}$$

$H(\omega)$  is a complex quantity having magnitude and phase.

$$H(\omega) = |H(\omega)| e^{j\theta(\omega)}$$

The transfer function in frequency domain  $H(\omega)$  is also called the frequency response of the system. The frequency response is amplitude response plus phase response.

$|H(\omega)|$  = Amplitude response of the system.

$\theta(\omega)$  =  $\underline{H}(\omega)$  = Phase response of the system.

We can say that  $H(\omega)$  is a frequency domain representation of a system.

Since

$$Y(\omega) = H(\omega) X(\omega)$$

$$|Y(\omega)| = |H(\omega)| |X(\omega)|$$

and

$$\underline{Y}(\omega) = \underline{H}(\omega) + \underline{X}(\omega)$$

$H(\omega)$  has conjugate symmetry property.

$$H(-\omega) = H^*(\omega)$$

i.e.

$$|H(-\omega)| = |H(\omega)|$$

and

$$\underline{H(-\omega)} = - \underline{|H(\omega)|}$$

The impulse response  $h(t)$  of a system is the inverse Fourier transform of its transfer function (frequency response)  $H(\omega)$ .

$$H(\omega) = F[h(t)]$$

or

$$h(t) = F^{-1}[H(\omega)]$$

The transfer function of a system in  $s$ -domain (Laplace domain) is defined as the ratio of the Laplace transform of the output of the system to the Laplace transform of the input of the system when the initial conditions are neglected. Or simply we can say that it is the ratio of the output to input in  $s$ -domain when the initial conditions are zero. The transfer function of a system can also be defined as the Laplace transform of the impulse response of the system.

$$H(s) = \frac{Y(s)}{X(s)}$$

or

$$H(s) = L[h(t)]$$

The impulse response is nothing but the inverse Laplace transform of the transfer function  $H(s)$

$$h(t) = L^{-1}[H(s)]$$

Once the transfer function in  $s$ -domain  $H(s)$  is known, the transfer function in frequency domain  $H(\omega)$  can be found by replacing  $s$  in  $H(s)$  by  $j\omega$ .

i.e.

$$H(\omega) = H(s)|_{s=j\omega}$$

## 6.5 FILTER CHARACTERISTICS OF LINEAR SYSTEMS

For a given system an input signal  $x(t)$  gives rise to a response signal  $y(t)$ . The system, therefore, processes the signal  $x(t)$  in a way that is characteristic of the system. The spectral density function of the input signal  $x(t)$  is given by  $X(s)$  or  $X(\omega)$ , and the spectral density function of the response signal  $y(t)$  is given by  $Y(s)$  or  $Y(\omega)$ .  $Y(s) = H(s) X(s)$  or  $Y(\omega) = H(\omega) X(\omega)$  where  $H(s)$  or  $H(\omega)$  is the transfer function or system function of the system (shown in Figure 6.1).

The system, therefore, modifies the spectral density function of the input. The system acts as a kind of filter for various frequency components. Some frequency components are boosted in strength, i.e. they are amplified. Some frequency components are weakened in strength, i.e. they are attenuated and some may remain unaffected. Similarly, each frequency component suffers a different amount of phase shift in the process of transmission. The

system, therefore, modifies the spectral density function of the input according to its filter characteristics. The modification is carried out according to the transfer function  $H(s)$  or  $H(\omega)$ , which represents the response of the system to various frequency components.  $H(\omega)$  acts as a weighting function or spectral shaping function to the different frequency components in the input signal. An LTI system, therefore, acts as a filter. A filter is basically a frequency selective network.

Some LTI systems allow the transmission of only low frequency components and stop all high frequency components. They are called low-pass filters (LPFs).

Some LTI systems allow the transmission of only high frequency components and stop all low frequency components. They are called high-pass filters (HPFs).

Some LTI systems allow transmission of only a particular band of frequencies and stop all other frequency components. They are called band-pass filters (BPFs).

Some LTI systems reject only a particular band of frequencies and allow all other frequency components. They are called band-rejection filters (BRFs).

The band of frequency that is allowed by the filter is called pass-band.

The band of frequency that is severely attenuated and not allowed to pass through the filter is called stop-band or rejection-band.

An LTI system may be characterised by its pass-band, stop-band and half power bandwidth.

## 6.6 DISTORTIONLESS TRANSMISSION THROUGH A SYSTEM

The change of shape of the signal when it is transmitted through a system is called distortion. Transmission of a signal through a system is said to be distortionless if the output is an exact replica of the input signal. This replica may have different magnitude and also it may have different time delay. A constant change in magnitude and a constant time delay are not considered as distortion. Only the shape of the signal is important. Mathematically, we can say that a signal  $x(t)$  is transmitted without distortion if the output

$$y(t) = kx(t - t_d)$$

where  $k$  is a constant representing the change in amplitude (amplification or attenuation) and  $t_d$  is delay time. A distortionless system and typical input and output waveforms are shown in Figure 6.5.

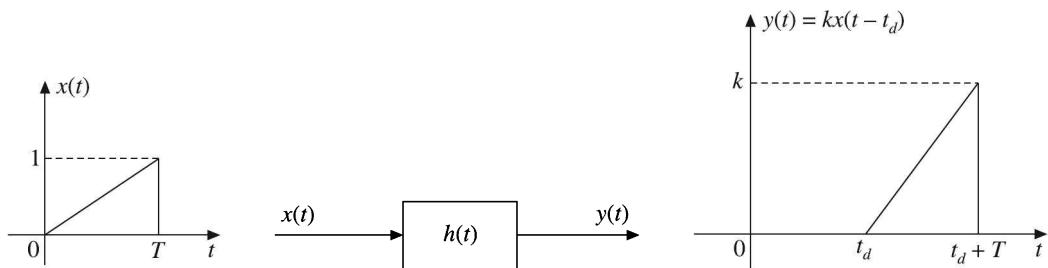


Figure 6.5 Distortionless system.

Taking Fourier transform on both sides of the equation for  $y(t)$  and using the shifting property, we have

$$Y(\omega) = ke^{-j\omega t_d} X(\omega)$$

Therefore, for distortionless transmission, the transfer function of the system must be of the form

$$H(\omega) = \frac{Y(\omega)}{X(\omega)} = ke^{-j\omega t_d}$$

Taking inverse Fourier transform, the corresponding impulse response must be

$$h(t) = k\delta(t - t_d)$$

It is evident that the magnitude of the transfer function

$$|H(\omega)| = k$$

and that it is constant for all values of  $\omega$ .

The phase shift

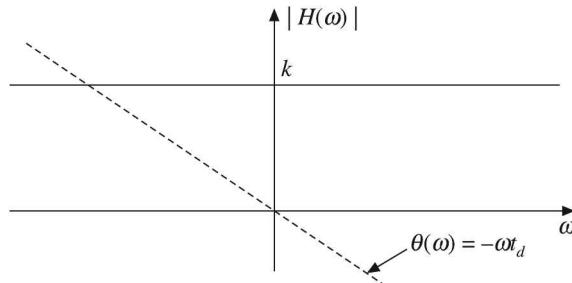
$$\theta(\omega) = \underline{|H(\omega)|} = -\omega t_d$$

and it varies linearly with frequency.

In general,  $\theta(\omega) = n\pi - \omega t_d$  ( $n$  integral)

So for distortionless transmission of a signal through a system, the magnitude  $|H(\omega)|$  should be a constant, i.e. all the frequency components of the input signal must undergo the same amount of amplification or attenuation, i.e. the system bandwidth is infinite and the phase spectrum should be proportional to frequency. But, in practice, no system can have infinite bandwidth and hence distortionless conditions are never met exactly.

The magnitude and phase characteristics of a distortionless transmission system is shown in Figure 6.6.



**Figure 6.6** The magnitude and phase characteristics of a distortionless transmission system.

### Linear phase systems

For distortionless transmission, there should not be any phase distortion. No phase distortion means the phase should be linear. Therefore, for distortionless transmission, the system must be of linear phase type. For linear phase systems, the impulse response is symmetrical about  $t = t_d$ . This can be proved as follows:

For linear phase system,

$$H(\omega) = |H(\omega)| e^{-j\omega t_d}$$

The impulse response of such a system is obtained by finding the inverse Fourier transform.

$$\begin{aligned} h(t) &= \mathcal{F}^{-1}[H(\omega)] \\ &= \mathcal{F}^{-1}[|H(\omega)| e^{-j\omega t_d}] \\ &= \frac{1}{2\pi} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \{|H(\omega)| e^{-j\omega t_d}\} e^{j\omega t} d\omega \\ &= \frac{1}{2\pi} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} |H(\omega)| e^{j\omega(t-t_d)} d\omega \\ &= \frac{1}{2\pi} \left[ \int_{-\infty}^0 |H(\omega)| e^{j\omega(t-t_d)} d\omega + \int_0^{\infty} |H(\omega)| e^{j\omega(t-t_d)} d\omega \right] \\ &= \frac{1}{2\pi} \left[ \int_0^{\infty} |H(\omega)| e^{-j\omega(t-t_d)} d\omega + \int_0^{\infty} |H(\omega)| e^{j\omega(t-t_d)} d\omega \right] \\ &= \frac{1}{2\pi} \left[ \int_0^{\infty} |H(\omega)| [e^{j\omega(t-t_d)} + e^{-j\omega(t-t_d)}] d\omega \right] \\ &= \frac{1}{\pi} \int_0^{\infty} |H(\omega)| \cos \omega(t - t_d) d\omega \\ h(t_d + t) &= \frac{1}{\pi} \int_0^{\infty} |H(\omega)| \cos \omega t d\omega \\ h(t_d - t) &= \frac{1}{\pi} \int_0^{\infty} |H(\omega)| \cos \omega t d\omega \\ \therefore h(t_d + t) &= h(t_d - t) \end{aligned}$$

This shows that for a linear phase system, the impulse response  $h(t)$  is symmetrical about  $t_d$ , and it is non-causal (non-zero for  $t < 0$ ).

The maximum value of  $h(t)$  is at  $t = t_d$  and is given by

$$h_{\max} = h(t_d) = \frac{1}{\pi} \int_0^{\infty} |H(\omega)| d\omega$$

## 6.7 SIGNAL BANDWIDTH

The spectral components of a signal extend from  $-\infty$  to  $\infty$ . Any practical signal has finite energy. As a result, the spectral components approach zero as  $\omega$  tends to  $\infty$ . Therefore, we

neglect the spectral components which have negligible energy and select only a band of frequency components which have most of the signal energy. This band of frequencies that contain most of the signal energy is known as the bandwidth of the signal. Normally, the band is selected such that it contains around 95% of total energy depending on the precision.

## 6.8 SYSTEM BANDWIDTH

For distortionless transmission, we need a system with infinite bandwidth. Due to physical limitations, it is impossible to construct a system with infinite bandwidth. Actually, a satisfactory distortionless transmission can be achieved by systems with finite, but fairly large bandwidths, if the magnitude  $|H(\omega)|$  is constant over this band.

The constancy of the magnitude  $|H(\omega)|$  in a system is usually specified by its bandwidth. The bandwidth of a system is defined as the range of frequencies over which the magnitude  $|H(\omega)|$  remains within  $1/\sqrt{2}$  times (within 3 dB) of its value at midband. The bandwidth of a system whose  $|H(\omega)|$  plot is shown in Figure 6.7 is  $(\omega_2 - \omega_1)$  where  $\omega_2$  is called the upper cutoff frequency or upper 3 dB frequency or upper half power frequency and  $\omega_1$  is called the lower cutoff frequency or lower 3 dB frequency or lower half power frequency.

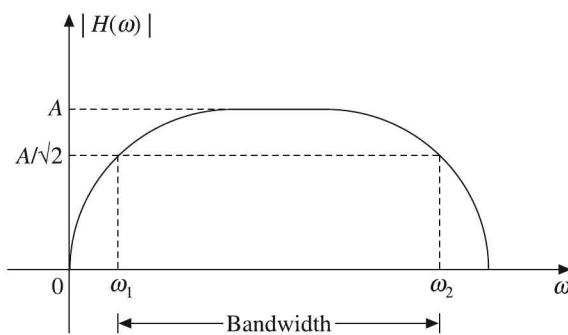


Figure 6.7 Bandwidth.

The band limited signals can be transmitted without distortion, if the system bandwidth is atleast equal to the signal bandwidth.

## 6.9 IDEAL FILTER CHARACTERISTICS

A filter is a frequency selective network. It allows transmission of signals of certain frequencies with no attenuation or with very little attenuation, and it rejects or heavily attenuates signals of all other frequencies.

An ideal filter has very sharp cutoff characteristics, and it passes signals of certain specified band of frequencies exactly and totally rejects signals of frequencies outside this band. Its phase spectrum is linear.

Filters are usually classified according to their frequency response characteristics as low-pass filter (LPF), high-pass filter (HPF), band-pass filter (BPF) and band-elimination or band-stop or band-reject filter (BEF, BSF, BRF). Ideal versions of these filters are described below and their magnitude responses are shown in Figure 6.8.

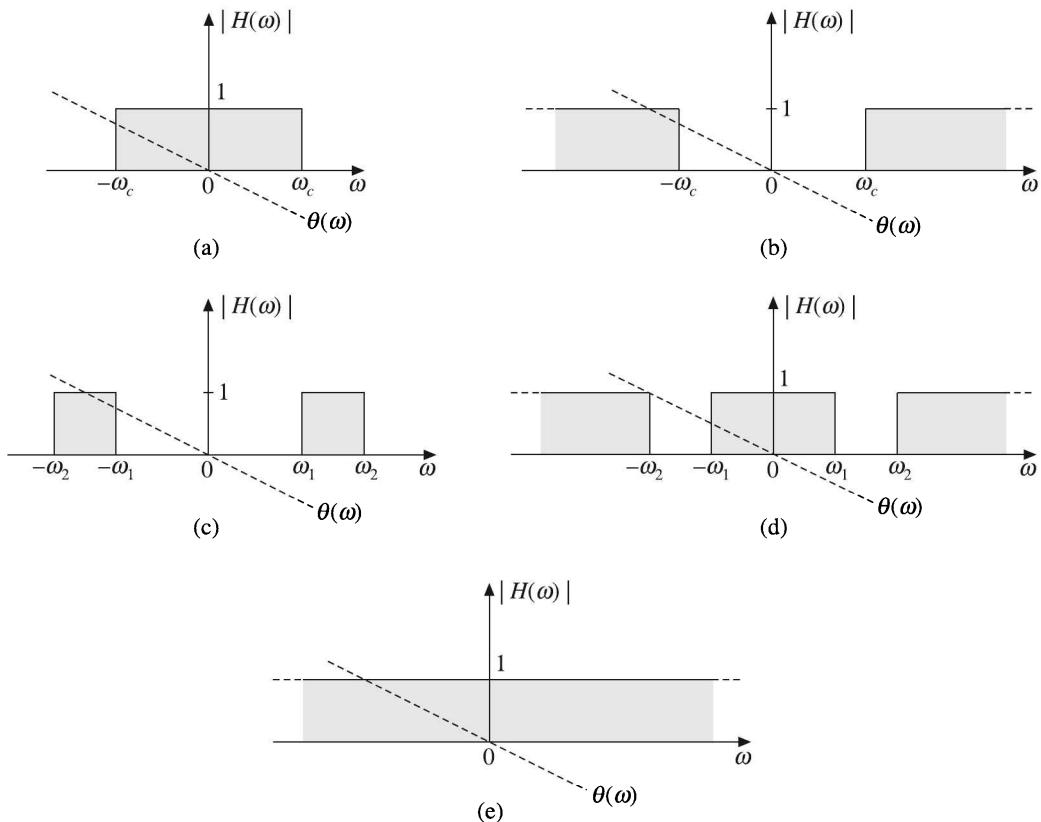


Figure 6.8 Ideal filters (a) LPF, (b) HPF, (c) BPF, (d) BRF, (e) All pass filter.

### Ideal LPF

An ideal low-pass filter transmits, without any distortion, all of the signals of frequencies below a certain frequency  $\omega_c$  radians per second. The signals of frequencies above  $\omega_c$  radians/second are completely attenuated.  $\omega_c$  is called the cutoff frequency. The corresponding phase function for distortionless transmission is  $-\omega_d t$ .

The transfer function of an ideal LPF is given by

$$|H(\omega)| = \begin{cases} 1, & |\omega| < \omega_c \\ 0, & |\omega| > \omega_c \end{cases}$$

The frequency response characteristics of an ideal LPF are shown in Figure 6.8(a). It is a gate function.

### Ideal HPF

An ideal high-pass filter transmits, without any distortion, all of the signals of frequencies above a certain frequency  $\omega_c$  radians/second and attenuates completely the signals of frequencies below  $\omega_c$  radians/second, where  $\omega_c$  is called the cutoff frequency. The corresponding phase function for distortionless transmission is  $-\omega t_d$ .

An ideal HPF is specified by

$$|H(\omega)| = \begin{cases} 0, & |\omega| < \omega_c \\ 1, & |\omega| > \omega_c \end{cases}$$

The frequency response characteristics of an ideal HPF are shown in Figure 6.8(b).

### Ideal BPF

An ideal band-pass filter transmits, without any distortion, all of the signals of frequencies within a certain frequency band  $(\omega_2 - \omega_1)$  radians/second and attenuates completely the signals of frequencies outside this band.  $(\omega_2 - \omega_1)$  is the bandwidth of the band-pass filter. The corresponding phase function for distortionless transmission is  $-\omega t_d$ .

An ideal BPF is specified by

$$|H(\omega)| = \begin{cases} 1, & |\omega_1| < \omega < |\omega_2| \\ 0, & \omega < |\omega_1| \text{ and } \omega > |\omega_2| \end{cases}$$

The frequency response characteristics of an ideal BPF are shown in Figure 6.8(c).

### Ideal BRF

An ideal band rejection filter rejects totally all of the signals of frequencies within a certain frequency band  $(\omega_2 - \omega_1)$  radians/second and transmits without any distortion all signals of frequencies outside this band.  $(\omega_2 - \omega_1)$  is the rejection band. The corresponding phase function for distortionless transmission is  $-\omega t_d$ .

An ideal BRF is specified by

$$|H(\omega)| = \begin{cases} 0, & |\omega_1| < \omega < |\omega_2| \\ 1, & \omega < |\omega_1| \text{ and } \omega > |\omega_2| \end{cases}$$

The frequency response characteristics of an ideal BRF are shown in Figure 6.8(d).

In addition to these filters, there is one more filter called an all pass filter.

An all pass filter transmits signals of all frequencies without any distortion, that is, its bandwidth is  $\infty$  as shown in Figure 6.8(e).

An ideal all pass filter is specified by

$$|H(\omega)| = 1 \quad (\text{for all frequencies})$$

The corresponding phase function for distortionless transmission is  $-\omega t_d$ .

All ideal filters are non-causal systems. Hence none of them is physically realizable.

## 6.10 CAUSALITY AND PALEY-WIENER CRITERION FOR PHYSICAL REALIZATION

A system is said to be causal if it does not produce an output before the input is applied. For an LTI system to be causal, the condition to be satisfied is its impulse response must be zero for  $t$  less than zero, i.e.

$$h(t) = 0 \quad \text{for } t < 0$$

Physical realizability implies that it is physically possible to construct that system in real time. A physically realizable system cannot have a response before the input is applied. This is known as causality condition. It means the unit impulse response  $h(t)$  of a physically realizable system must be causal. This is the time domain criterion of physical realizability. In the frequency domain, this criterion implies that a necessary and sufficient condition for a magnitude function  $H(\omega)$  to be physically realizable is:

$$\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \frac{\ln |H(\omega)|}{1 + \omega^2} d\omega < \infty$$

The magnitude function  $|H(\omega)|$  must, however, be square-integrable before the Paley-Wiener criterion is valid, that is,

$$\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} |H(\omega)|^2 d\omega < \infty$$

A system whose magnitude function violates the Paley-Wiener criterion has a non-causal impulse response, that is, the response exists prior to the application of the driving function.

The following conclusions can be drawn from the Paley-Wiener criterion:

1. The magnitude function  $|H(\omega)|$  may be zero at some discrete frequencies, but it cannot be zero over a finite band of frequencies since this will cause the integral in the equation of Paley-Wiener criterion to become infinity. That means ideal filters are not physically realizable.
2. The magnitude function  $|H(\omega)|$  cannot fall off to zero faster than a function of exponential order. It implies, a realizable magnitude characteristic cannot have too great a total attenuation.

## 6.11 RELATIONSHIP BETWEEN BANDWIDTH AND RISE TIME

We know that the transfer function of an ideal LPF is given by

$$H(\omega) = |H(\omega)| e^{-j\omega t_d}$$

where

$$H(\omega) = \begin{cases} 1, & |\omega| < \omega_c \\ 0, & |\omega| > \omega_c \end{cases}$$

$\omega_c$  is called the cutoff frequency.

$$\therefore H(\omega) = e^{-j\omega t_d} \quad -\omega_c \leq \omega \leq \omega_c, \text{ i.e. } |\omega| \leq \omega_c \\ = 0 \quad \omega > |\omega_c|$$

The impulse response  $h(t)$  of the LPF is obtained by taking the inverse Fourier transform of the transfer function  $H(\omega)$ .

$$\begin{aligned} h(t) &= F^{-1}[H(\omega)] = \frac{1}{2\pi} \int_{-\omega_c}^{\omega_c} e^{-j\omega t_d} e^{j\omega t} d\omega \\ &= \frac{1}{2\pi} \int_{-\omega_c}^{\omega_c} e^{j\omega(t-t_d)} d\omega \\ &= \frac{1}{2\pi} \left[ \frac{e^{j\omega(t-t_d)}}{j(t-t_d)} \right]_{-\omega_c}^{\omega_c} \\ &= \frac{1}{2\pi} \left[ \frac{e^{j\omega_c(t-t_d)} - e^{-j\omega_c(t-t_d)}}{j(t-t_d)} \right] \\ &= \frac{1}{\pi(t-t_d)} [\sin \omega_c(t-t_d)] \\ &= \frac{\omega_c}{\pi} \left[ \frac{\sin \omega_c(t-t_d)}{\omega_c(t-t_d)} \right] \end{aligned}$$

The impulse response of the ideal LPF is shown in Figure 6.9. The impulse response has a peak value at  $t = t_d$ . This value  $\omega_c/\pi$  is proportional to cutoff frequency  $\omega_c$ . The width of the main lobe is  $2\pi/\omega_c$ . As  $\omega_c \rightarrow \infty$ , the LPF becomes an all pass filter. As  $t_d \rightarrow 0$ , the output response peak  $\rightarrow \infty$ , that is, the output response approaches input.

Further, the impulse response  $h(t)$  is non-zero for  $t < 0$ , even though the input  $\delta(t)$  is applied at  $t = 0$ . That is, the impulse response begins before the input is applied. In real life, no system exhibits such type of characteristics. Hence we can conclude that ideal LPF is physically not realizable.

If the impulse response is known, the step response can be obtained by convolution.

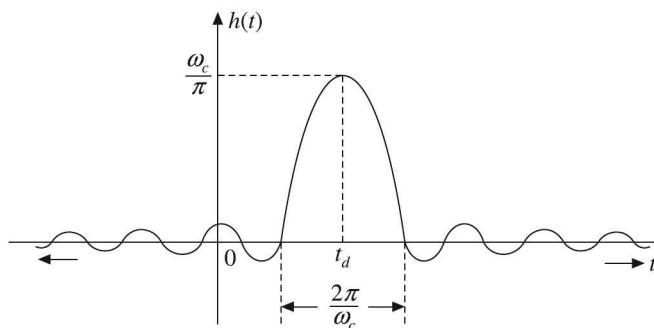


Figure 6.9 Impulse response of the ideal LPF.

The step response

$$y(t) = h(t) * u(t) = \int_{-\infty}^t h(\tau) d\tau$$

We have

$$h(t) = \frac{\omega_c}{\pi} \frac{\sin \omega_c(t - t_d)}{\omega_c(t - t_d)}$$

∴

$$y(t) = \int_{-\infty}^t \frac{\omega_c}{\pi} \frac{\sin \omega_c(\tau - t_d)}{\omega_c(\tau - t_d)} d\tau$$

Let

$$x = \omega_c(\tau - t_d)$$

∴

$$dx = \omega_c d\tau \quad \text{or} \quad d\tau = \frac{dx}{\omega_c}$$

∴

$$\begin{aligned} y(t) &= \int_{-\infty}^{\omega_c(t-t_d)} \frac{\omega_c}{\pi} \frac{\sin x}{x} \frac{dx}{\omega_c} = \frac{1}{\pi} \int_{-\infty}^{\omega_c(t-t_d)} \frac{\sin x}{x} dx \\ &= \frac{1}{\pi} [\text{Si}(x)]_{-\infty}^{\omega_c(t-t_d)} \end{aligned}$$

where Si is the sine integral function.

The properties of sine integral functions are:

1.  $\text{Si}(x)$  is an odd function, that is  $\text{Si}(-x) = -\text{Si}(x)$
2.  $\text{Si}(0) = 0$
3.  $\text{Si}(\infty) = \pi/2$  and  $\text{Si}(-\infty) = -(\pi/2)$

A sketch of  $\text{Si}(x)$  is shown in Figure 6.10(a).

The step response can be expressed as:

$$\begin{aligned} y(t) &= \frac{1}{\pi} \{ \text{Si}[\omega_c(t - t_d)] - \text{Si}(-\infty) \} \\ &= \frac{1}{\pi} \left\{ \text{Si}[\omega_c(t - t_d)] + \frac{\pi}{2} \right\} \\ &= \frac{1}{2} + \frac{1}{\pi} \text{Si}[\omega_c(t - t_d)] \end{aligned}$$

If  $\omega_c \rightarrow \infty$ , then the response is:

$$y(t) = \frac{1}{2} + \frac{1}{\pi} \text{Si}(\infty) = \frac{1}{2} + \frac{1}{\pi} \left( \frac{\pi}{2} \right) = 1$$

If  $\omega_c \rightarrow -\infty$ , then the response is:

$$y(t) = \frac{1}{2} + \frac{1}{\pi} \text{Si}(-\infty) = \frac{1}{2} + \frac{1}{\pi} \left( -\frac{\pi}{2} \right) = 0$$

The step response of LPF is shown in Figure 6.10(b).

From Figure 6.10(b), we can observe that  $y(t)$  approaches a delayed unit step  $u(t - t_d)$ . But the abrupt rise of input corresponds to more gradual rise of the output.

The rise time  $t_r$  is defined as the time required for the response to reach from 0% to 100% of the final value. To find it, draw a tangent at  $t = t_d$  with the line  $y(t) = 0$  and  $y(t) = 1$ . From Figure 6.10(b), we have

$$\left. \frac{dy(t)}{dt} \right|_{t=t_d} = \frac{1}{t_r} = \frac{\omega_c}{\pi} \left. \frac{\sin \omega_c(t - t_d)}{\omega_c(t - t_d)} \right|_{t=t_d} = \frac{\omega_c}{\pi}$$

$$\therefore t_r = \frac{\pi}{\omega_c}$$

For a low-pass filter

Cut off frequency = Bandwidth

So the rise time is inversely proportional to the bandwidth.

Bandwidth × Rise time = Constant

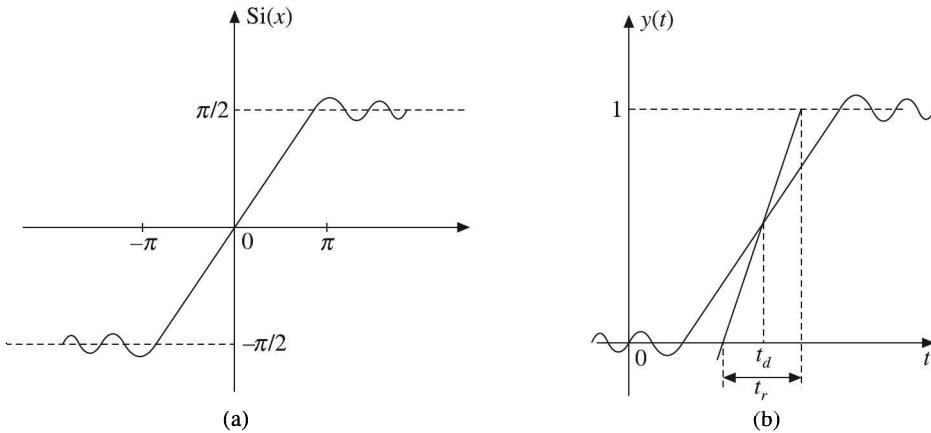


Figure 6.10 (a) Si function, (b) Step response of an ideal LPF.

**EXAMPLE 6.1** Let the system function of an LTI system be  $1/(j\omega + 2)$ . What is the output of the system for an input  $(0.8)^t u(t)$ ?

**Solution:** Given that the transfer function of the system

$$H(\omega) = \frac{1}{j\omega + 2}$$

The input

$$x(t) = (0.8)^t u(t)$$

$$\text{The impulse response } h(t) = F^{-1}[H(\omega)] = F^{-1}\left(\frac{1}{j\omega + 2}\right) = e^{-2t} u(t)$$

We know that the output  $y(t)$  is the convolution of input  $x(t)$  and impulse response  $h(t)$ .

$$\begin{aligned}
 \therefore y(t) &= x(t) * h(t) = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} h(\tau) x(t - \tau) d\tau \\
 &= \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} e^{-2\tau} u(\tau) (0.8)^{t-\tau} u(t - \tau) d\tau \\
 &= \int_0^{\infty} e^{-2\tau} (0.8)^t (0.8)^{-\tau} d\tau \\
 &= (0.8)^t \int_0^{\infty} (0.8e^2)^{-\tau} d\tau
 \end{aligned}$$

Let  $(0.8e^2)^{-1} = a$

$$\begin{aligned}
 \therefore y(t) &= (0.8)^t \int_0^{\infty} a^{\tau} d\tau \\
 &= (0.8)^t \left[ \frac{a^{\tau}}{\log a} \right]_0^{\infty} \quad \left( \because \int a^x dx = \frac{a^x}{\log a} \right) \\
 &= (0.8)^t \left[ \frac{(0.8e^2)^{-\tau}}{\log [(0.8e^2)^{-1}]} \right]_0^{\infty} = \frac{(0.8)^t}{\log [(0.8e^2)^{-1}]} [(0.8e^2)^{-\infty} - 1] \\
 &= \frac{(0.8)^t}{-\log(0.8e^2)} [0 - 1] \\
 &= \frac{(0.8)^t}{\log(0.8e^2)} = \frac{(0.8)^t}{(\log 0.8 + 2)} \\
 \therefore \text{Output of the system } y(t) &= \frac{(0.8)^t}{(\log 0.8 + 2)}
 \end{aligned}$$

**EXAMPLE 6.2** Find the transfer function of the Lattice network shown in Figure 6.11.

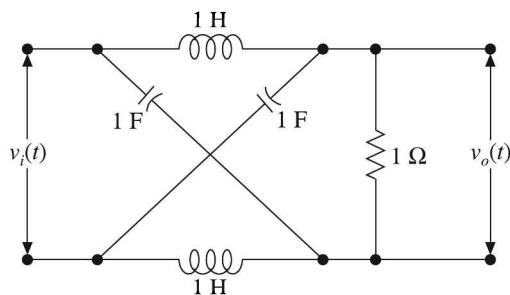


Figure 6.11 Circuit for Example 6.2.

**Solution:** The given circuit diagram is shown in Figure 6.12(a). The potential across points A and B is similar to the potential across points C and D. Also the potential across points A and D is similar to potential across the points B and C. Therefore, the given circuit diagram can be rearranged as shown in Figure 6.12(b).

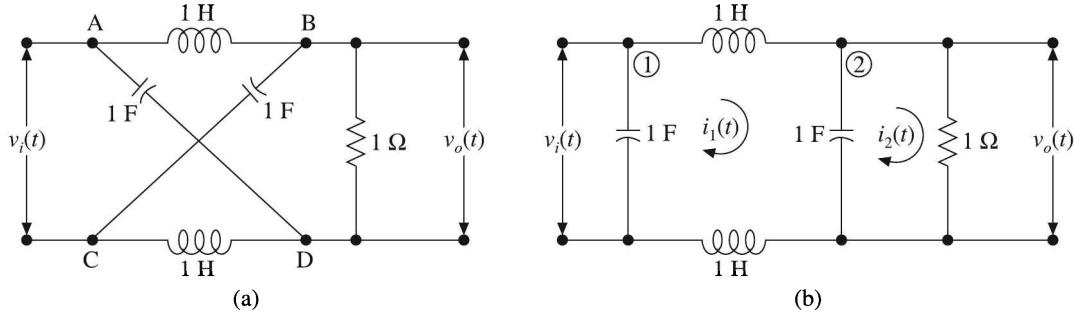


Figure 6.12 (a) Given circuit, (b) Rearranged circuit.

Let  $i_1(t)$  and  $i_2(t)$  be the loop currents in Figure 6.12(b). The loop equation around loop 1 is:

$$v_i(t) = (1) \frac{di_1(t)}{dt} + \frac{1}{(1)} \int [i_1(t) - i_2(t)] dt + (1) \frac{di_1(t)}{dt}$$

Taking Laplace transform on both sides, and neglecting the initial conditions, we have

$$\begin{aligned} V_i(s) &= sI_1(s) + \frac{1}{s} [I_1(s) - I_2(s)] + sI_1(s) \\ &= \left[ 2s + \frac{1}{s} \right] I_1(s) - \frac{1}{s} I_2(s) \end{aligned}$$

The loop equation around loop 2 is:

$$(1)i_2(t) + \frac{1}{(1)} \int [i_2(t) - i_1(t)] dt = 0$$

Taking Laplace transform on both sides, we have

$$I_2(s) + \frac{1}{s} [I_2(s) - I_1(s)] = 0$$

$$\text{i.e. } I_2(s) \left[ 1 + \frac{1}{s} \right] - \frac{1}{s} I_1(s) = 0$$

$$\text{or } I_1(s) = (s+1) I_2(s)$$

The output voltage  $v_o(t)$  is given by

$$v_o(t) = i_2(t) (1)$$

Taking Laplace transform on both sides, we get

$$V_o(s) = I_2(s)$$

Substituting this value of  $I_2(s)$  in the equation for  $I_1(s)$ , we get

$$I_1(s) = (s + 1) V_o(s)$$

$$\begin{aligned} \therefore V_i(s) &= \left[ 2s + \frac{1}{s} \right] [(s + 1) V_o(s)] - \frac{1}{s} V_o(s) \\ &= V_o(s) \left[ \left( 2s + \frac{1}{s} \right) (s + 1) - \frac{1}{s} \right] \\ &= V_o(s) \left( 2s^2 + 2s + 1 + \frac{1}{s} - \frac{1}{s} \right) \\ &= V_o(s) [2s^2 + 2s + 1] \\ \therefore \frac{V_o(s)}{V_i(s)} &= \frac{1}{2s^2 + 2s + 1} \end{aligned}$$

So the transfer function of the system

$$H(s) = \frac{V_o(s)}{V_i(s)} = \frac{1}{2s^2 + 2s + 1}$$

**EXAMPLE 6.3** Consider the filter circuit shown in Figure 6.13.

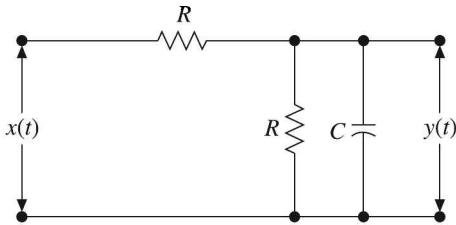
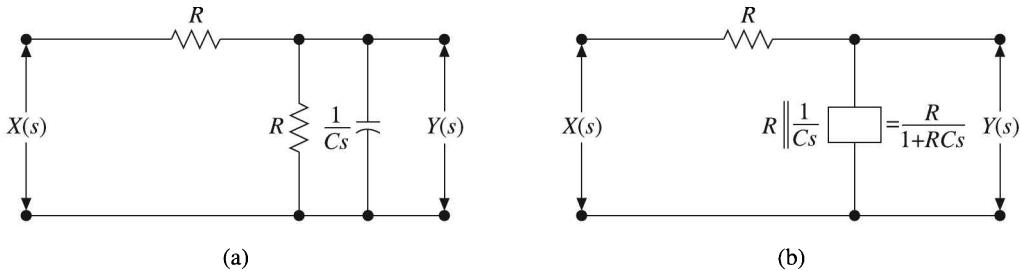


Figure 6.13 Circuit for Example 6.3.

- (a) Write the input/output relationship.
- (b) Obtain its impulse response.
- (c) Find the step response.

**Solution:** The Laplace transformed network for the circuit of Figure 6.13 is shown in Figure 6.14(a). Its equivalent obtained by combining the parallel  $R$  and  $C$  is shown in Figure 6.14(b).



**Figure 6.14** (a) Laplace transformed network, (b) Its equivalent.

From basic circuit theory, the input/output relationship for the circuit of Figure 6.14(b) is:

$$\frac{Y(s)}{X(s)} = \frac{R/(1+RCs)}{R+[R/(1+RCs)]} = \frac{R}{2R+R^2Cs} = \frac{1}{2+RCs}$$

The transfer function of the system

$$H(s) = \frac{Y(s)}{X(s)} = \frac{1}{2+RCs} = \frac{1}{RC} \left[ \frac{1}{s + (2/RC)} \right]$$

The impulse response of the system

$$h(t) = L^{-1}[H(s)] = L^{-1} \left[ \frac{1}{RC} \frac{1}{s + (2/RC)} \right] = \frac{1}{RC} e^{-(2/RC)t} u(t)$$

For a step input

$$x(t) = u(t)$$

$$\therefore X(s) = \frac{1}{s}$$

The output for a unit step input is:

$$Y(s) = X(s) \left( \frac{1}{2+RCs} \right) = \left( \frac{1}{s} \right) \left( \frac{1}{2+RCs} \right) = \frac{1}{RC} \left[ \frac{1}{s[s+(2/RC)]} \right]$$

Taking partial fractions, we have

$$Y(s) = \frac{1}{RC} \left\{ \frac{1}{s[s+(2/RC)]} \right\} = \frac{1}{2} \left[ \frac{1}{s} - \frac{1}{s+(2/RC)} \right]$$

Taking inverse Laplace transform, we have

$$\begin{aligned} y(t) &= L^{-1}[Y(s)] = \frac{1}{2} L^{-1} \left[ \frac{1}{s} - \frac{1}{s+(2/RC)} \right] \\ &= \frac{1}{2} [u(t) - e^{-(2/RC)t} u(t)] \end{aligned}$$

So the step response of the system is:

$$y(t) = \frac{1}{2} [1 - e^{-(2/RC)t}] u(t)$$

**EXAMPLE 6.4** Find the current  $i(t)$  in a series RLC circuit as shown in Figure 6.15, when a voltage of 100 volts is switched on across the terminals  $aa'$  at  $t = 0$ .

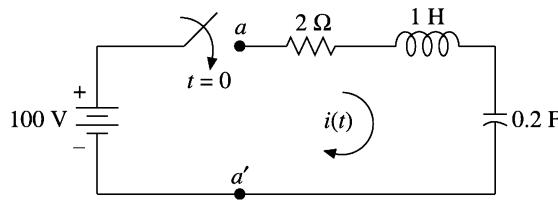


Figure 6.15 Circuit for Example 6.4.

**Solution:** The given RLC circuit of Figure 6.15 will be as shown in Figure 6.16 for  $t > 0$ , i.e. after the switch is closed.

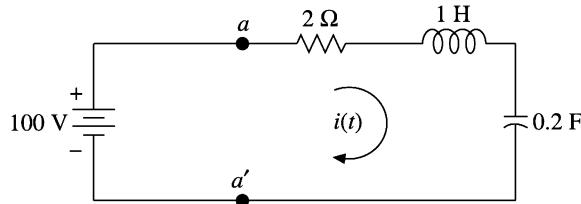


Figure 6.16 Circuit for  $t > 0$ .

Since the given switch is closed at  $t = 0$ , for  $t < 0$ , it was open and so the initial current through the inductor and the initial voltage across the capacitor are zero, i.e. the initial conditions are zero.

The loop equation around the single loop in the circuit is:

$$100 = 2i(t) + (1) \frac{di(t)}{dt} + \frac{1}{0.2} \int i(t) dt$$

Taking Laplace transform on both sides, and neglecting initial conditions, we get

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{100}{s} &= 2I(s) + sI(s) + \frac{1}{0.2} \frac{I(s)}{s} \\ &= I(s) \left( 2 + s + \frac{5}{s} \right) \\ &= I(s) \left( \frac{s^2 + 2s + 5}{s} \right) \end{aligned}$$

$$\therefore I(s)[s^2 + 2s + 5] = 100$$

$$I(s) = \frac{100}{s^2 + 2s + 5} = \frac{100}{(s+1)^2 + 2^2}$$

Taking inverse Laplace transform on both sides, we get

$$\begin{aligned} i(t) &= L^{-1} \left[ \frac{100}{(s+1)^2 + 2^2} \right] = 50L^{-1} \left[ \frac{2}{(s+1)^2 + 2^2} \right] \\ &= 50e^{-t} \sin 2t u(t) \end{aligned}$$

So the current in the RLC circuit for  $t > 0$  is  $i(t) = 50e^{-t} \sin 2t u(t)$ .

**EXAMPLE 6.5** Consider a stable LTI system that is characterised by the differential equation

$$\frac{d^2y(t)}{dt^2} + 4 \frac{dy(t)}{dt} + 3y(t) = \frac{dx(t)}{dt} + 2x(t)$$

Find its response for input  $x(t) = e^{-t} u(t)$ .

**Solution:** The given differential equation is:

$$\frac{d^2y(t)}{dt^2} + 4 \frac{dy(t)}{dt} + 3y(t) = \frac{dx(t)}{dt} + 2x(t)$$

Taking Laplace transform on both sides, we get

$$[s^2Y(s) - sy(0) - y'(0)] + 4[sY(s) - y(0)] + 3Y(s) = [sX(s) - x(0)] + 2X(s)$$

Neglecting the initial conditions, we have

$$s^2Y(s) + 4sY(s) + 3Y(s) = sX(s) + 2X(s)$$

i.e.

$$(s^2 + 4s + 3)Y(s) = (s + 2)X(s)$$

$\therefore$

$$Y(s) = \frac{s+2}{s^2 + 4s + 3} X(s) = \frac{s+2}{(s+1)(s+3)} X(s)$$

Given

$$x(t) = e^{-t} u(t)$$

$\therefore$

$$X(s) = \frac{1}{s+1}$$

$\therefore$

$$Y(s) = \frac{s+2}{(s+1)(s+3)} \left( \frac{1}{s+1} \right) = \frac{s+2}{(s+1)^2(s+3)}$$

Taking partial fractions, we get

$$Y(s) = \frac{s+2}{(s+1)^2(s+3)} = \frac{A}{(s+1)^2} + \frac{B}{s+1} + \frac{C}{s+3}$$

where

$$A = (s+1)^2 Y(s) \Big|_{s=-1} = \frac{s+2}{s+3} \Big|_{s=-1} = \frac{-1+2}{-1+3} = \frac{1}{2}$$

$$B = \frac{d}{ds} [(s+1)^2 Y(s)] \Big|_{s=-1} = \left. \frac{d}{ds} \left( \frac{s+2}{s+3} \right) \right|_{s=-1} = \frac{(s+3)(1) - (s+2)(1)}{(s+3)^2} \Big|_{s=-1} = \frac{1}{4}$$

$$C = (s+3) Y(s) \Big|_{s=-3} = \frac{s+2}{(s+1)^2} \Big|_{s=-3} = \frac{-3+2}{(-3+1)^2} = -\frac{1}{4}$$

$$\therefore Y(s) = \frac{1/2}{(s+1)^2} + \frac{1/4}{s+1} - \frac{1/4}{s+3}$$

Taking inverse Laplace transform on both sides, we get the response

$$y(t) = L^{-1}[Y(s)] = \frac{1}{2} L^{-1}\left[\frac{1}{(s+1)^2}\right] + \frac{1}{4} L^{-1}\left(\frac{1}{s+1}\right) - \frac{1}{4} L^{-1}\left(\frac{1}{s+3}\right)$$

$$\text{i.e. } y(t) = \left( \frac{1}{2} te^{-t} + \frac{1}{4} e^{-t} - \frac{1}{4} e^{-3t} \right) u(t)$$

Therefore, the response of the given stable LTI system is:

$$y(t) = \left( \frac{1}{2} te^{-t} + \frac{1}{4} e^{-t} - \frac{1}{4} e^{-3t} \right) u(t)$$

**EXAMPLE 6.6** Find the output voltage of the  $RC$  low pass filter shown in Figure 6.17 for an input voltage of  $te^{-t/RC}$ .

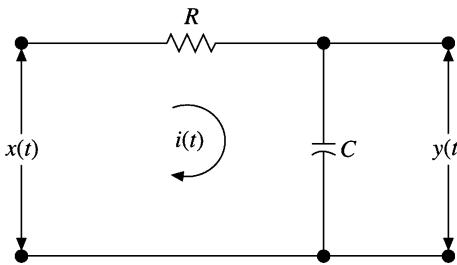


Figure 6.17 Circuit for Example 6.6.

**Solution:** The output of the circuit can be obtained very easily by Laplace transforming the given network as shown in Figure 6.18.

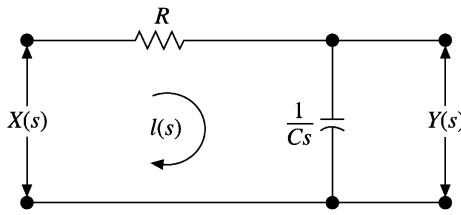


Figure 6.18 s-domain circuit.

From Figure 6.18, the transfer function of the circuit is given by

$$H(s) = \frac{Y(s)}{X(s)} = \frac{1/Cs}{R + (1/Cs)} = \frac{1}{1 + RCs}$$

Then      Output \$Y(s) = \frac{1}{1 + RCs} X(s) = \frac{1}{RC} \left[ \frac{1}{s + (1/RC)} \right] X(s)

Given      Input voltage \$x(t) = te^{-t/RC}\$

$$\therefore X(s) = L[te^{-t/RC}] = \frac{1}{[s + (1/RC)]^2}$$

$$\therefore Y(s) = \frac{1}{RC} \left[ \frac{1}{s + (1/RC)} \right] \left\{ \frac{1}{[s + (1/RC)]^2} \right\} = \frac{1}{RC} \left\{ \frac{1}{[s + (1/RC)]^3} \right\}$$

Taking inverse Laplace transform on both sides, we get

$$y(t) = L^{-1} \left\{ \frac{1}{RC} \left[ \frac{1}{[s + (1/RC)]^3} \right] \right\} = \frac{1}{RC} e^{-t/RC} \frac{t^2}{2} = \frac{t^2}{2RC} e^{-t/RC} u(t)$$

$$\therefore \text{Output voltage } y(t) = \frac{t^2}{2RC} e^{-t/RC} u(t)$$

**EXAMPLE 6.7** A system produces an output of \$y(t) = e^{-t} u(t)\$ for an input of \$x(t) = e^{-2t} u(t)\$. Determine the impulse response and frequency response of the system.

**Solution:** Given      Output \$y(t) = e^{-t} u(t)\$

$$\therefore Y(s) = L[e^{-t} u(t)] = \frac{1}{s + 1}$$

$$\text{Input } x(t) = e^{-2t} u(t)$$

$$\therefore X(s) = L[e^{-2t} u(t)] = \frac{1}{s + 2}$$

The transfer function of the system

$$H(s) = \frac{Y(s)}{X(s)} = \frac{1/(s+1)}{1/(s+2)} = \frac{s+2}{s+1}$$

$$H(s) = \frac{s+2}{s+1} = \frac{(s+1)+1}{s+1} = 1 + \frac{1}{s+1}$$

The impulse response of the system

$$h(t) = L^{-1}[H(s)] = L^{-1}\left(1 + \frac{1}{s+1}\right) = \delta(t) + e^{-t} u(t)$$

The frequency response of the system

$$H(\omega) = H(s)|_{s=j\omega} = \frac{s+2}{s+1}|_{s=j\omega} = \frac{2+j\omega}{1+j\omega}$$

Magnitude response

$$|H(\omega)| = \sqrt{\frac{2^2 + \omega^2}{1 + \omega^2}}$$

Phase response

$$\angle H(\omega) = \tan^{-1} \frac{\omega}{2} - \tan^{-1} \omega$$

**EXAMPLE 6.8** The input voltage to an  $RC$  circuit is given as  $x(t) = te^{-3t} u(t)$ , and the impulse response of this circuit is given as  $2e^{-4t} u(t)$ . Determine the output  $y(t)$ .

**Solution:** Given

$$\text{Input } x(t) = te^{-3t} u(t)$$

$$\therefore X(s) = \frac{1}{(s+3)^2}$$

$$\text{Impulse response } h(t) = 2e^{-4t} u(t)$$

$$\therefore H(s) = \frac{2}{s+4}$$

We know that

$$\text{Output } y(t) = x(t) * h(t)$$

$$\therefore Y(s) = X(s) H(s)$$

So

$$\text{Output } y(t) = L^{-1}[X(s) H(s)]$$

$$Y(s) = X(s) H(s) = \left[ \frac{1}{(s+3)^2} \right] \left( \frac{2}{s+4} \right) = \frac{2}{(s+3)^2 (s+4)}$$

Taking partial fractions, we have

$$Y(s) = \frac{2}{(s+3)^2 (s+4)} = \frac{A}{(s+3)^2} + \frac{B}{s+3} + \frac{C}{s+4}$$

where

$$A = (s+3)^2 Y(s)|_{s=-3} = \frac{2}{s+4}|_{s=-3} = 2$$

$$B = \frac{d}{ds} [(s+3)^2 Y(s)] \Big|_{s=-3} = \frac{d}{ds} \left( \frac{2}{s+4} \right) \Big|_{s=-3} = \frac{-2}{(s+4)^2} \Big|_{s=-3} = -2$$

$$C = (s+4) Y(s) \Big|_{s=-4} = \frac{2}{(s+3)^2} \Big|_{s=-4} = 2$$

$$\therefore Y(s) = \frac{2}{(s+3)^2} - \frac{2}{s+3} + \frac{2}{s+4}$$

Taking inverse Laplace transform on both sides, we have the output

$$y(t) = L^{-1}[Y(s)] = L^{-1} \left[ \frac{2}{(s+3)^2} \right] - L^{-1} \left( \frac{2}{s+3} \right) + L^{-1} \left( \frac{2}{s+4} \right)$$

$$\therefore y(t) = 2te^{-3t} u(t) - 2e^{-3t} u(t) + 2e^{-4t} u(t)$$

**EXAMPLE 6.9** For a system excited by  $x(t) = e^{-3t} u(t)$ , the impulse response is:

$$h(t) = e^{-2t} u(t) + e^{2t} u(-t)$$

Find the output for the system.

**Solution:** Given Input  $x(t) = e^{-3t} u(t)$

$$\therefore X(s) = \frac{1}{s+3}$$

$$\text{Impulse response } h(t) = e^{-2t} u(t) + e^{2t} u(-t)$$

$$\therefore H(s) = \frac{1}{s+2} + \frac{1}{-s+2} = \frac{4}{(s+2)(-s+2)}$$

The output  $y(t)$  is the convolution of input  $x(t)$  and impulse response  $h(t)$ , i.e.

$$y(t) = x(t) * h(t)$$

$$\begin{aligned} \therefore Y(s) &= X(s) H(s) = \left( \frac{1}{s+3} \right) \left[ \frac{4}{(s+2)(-s+2)} \right] \\ &= \frac{4}{(s+3)(s+2)(-s+2)} \end{aligned}$$

Taking partial fractions, we have

$$Y(s) = \frac{4}{(s+3)(s+2)(-s+2)} = \frac{A}{s+3} + \frac{B}{s+2} + \frac{C}{-s+2}$$

where

$$\begin{aligned}
 A &= (s+3)Y(s)\Big|_{s=-3} = \frac{4}{(s+2)(-s+2)}\Big|_{s=-3} = \frac{4}{(-3+2)(3+2)} = -\frac{4}{5} \\
 B &= (s+2)Y(s)\Big|_{s=-2} = \frac{4}{(s+3)(-s+2)}\Big|_{s=-2} = \frac{4}{(-2+3)(2+2)} = 1 \\
 C &= (-s+2)Y(s)\Big|_{s=2} = \frac{4}{(s+3)(s+2)}\Big|_{s=2} = \frac{4}{(2+3)(2+2)} = \frac{1}{5} \\
 \therefore Y(s) &= -\frac{4}{5}\frac{1}{s+3} + \frac{1}{s+2} + \frac{1}{5}\frac{1}{(-s+2)}
 \end{aligned}$$

Taking inverse Laplace transform on both sides, we have the output

$$\begin{aligned}
 y(t) &= L^{-1}[Y(s)] = -\frac{4}{5}L^{-1}\left(\frac{1}{s+3}\right) + L^{-1}\left(\frac{1}{s+2}\right) + \frac{1}{5}L^{-1}\left(\frac{1}{-s+2}\right) \\
 \therefore y(t) &= -\frac{4}{5}e^{-3t}u(t) + e^{-2t}u(t) + \frac{1}{5}e^{2t}u(-t)
 \end{aligned}$$

**EXAMPLE 6.10** Consider a stable LTI system characterised by the differential equation  $\frac{dy(t)}{dt} + 2y(t) = x(t)$ . Find its impulse response.

**Solution:** The given differential equation is:

$$\frac{dy(t)}{dt} + 2y(t) = x(t)$$

Taking Laplace transform on both sides, we have

$$sY(s) - y(0) + 2Y(s) = X(s)$$

Neglecting initial conditions, we have

$$sY(s) + 2Y(s) = X(s) \quad \text{i.e. } Y(s)(s+2) = X(s)$$

The transfer function of the system

$$H(s) = \frac{Y(s)}{X(s)} = \frac{1}{s+2}$$

The impulse response of the system

$$h(t) = L^{-1}[H(s)] = L^{-1}\left(\frac{1}{s+2}\right) = e^{-2t}u(t)$$

**EXAMPLE 6.11** Consider a causal LTI system with frequency response

$$H(\omega) = \frac{1}{4 + j\omega}$$

For a particular input  $x(t)$ , the system is observed to produce the output

$$y(t) = e^{-2t} u(t) - e^{-4t} u(t)$$

Find the input  $x(t)$ .

**Solution:** Given Frequency response (transfer function)  $H(\omega) = \frac{1}{4 + j\omega}$

and

$$\text{Output } y(t) = e^{-2t} u(t) - e^{-4t} u(t)$$

$$\begin{aligned} \therefore Y(\omega) &= F[y(t)] = F[e^{-2t} u(t)] - F[e^{-4t} u(t)] \\ &= \frac{1}{j\omega + 2} - \frac{1}{j\omega + 4} = \frac{2}{(j\omega + 2)(j\omega + 4)} \end{aligned}$$

$$\therefore \text{Input } X(\omega) = \frac{Y(\omega)}{H(\omega)} = \frac{2/[(j\omega + 2)(j\omega + 4)]}{1/(4 + j\omega)} = \frac{2}{j\omega + 2}$$

Taking inverse Fourier transform, we have

$$\text{Input } x(t) = F^{-1}[X(\omega)] = F^{-1}\left(\frac{2}{j\omega + 2}\right) = 2e^{-2t} u(t)$$

**EXAMPLE 6.12** Find the impulse response for the *RL* filter shown in Figure 6.19. Also find the transfer function. What would be its frequency response?

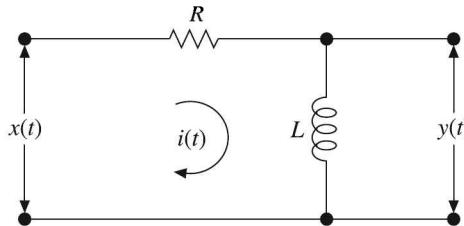


Figure 6.19 Circuit for Example 6.12.

**Solution:** The transfer function of the *RL* filter can be easily determined by transforming the network into frequency domain as shown in Figure 6.20.

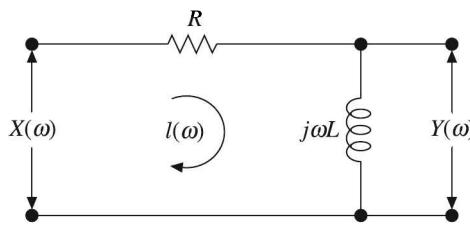


Figure 6.20 Fourier transformed circuit.

From the Fourier transformed network of Figure 6.20, the transfer function (frequency response) is

$$H(\omega) = \frac{Y(\omega)}{X(\omega)} = \frac{j\omega L}{R + j\omega L} = \frac{j\omega}{j\omega + (R/L)}$$

The impulse response of the system is:

$$\begin{aligned} h(t) &= F^{-1}[H(\omega)] = F^{-1}\left[\frac{j\omega}{j\omega + (R/L)}\right] \\ &= F^{-1}\left[1 - \frac{R}{L} \frac{1}{j\omega + (R/L)}\right] = \delta(t) - \frac{R}{L} e^{-(R/L)t} u(t) \end{aligned}$$

The frequency response of the system is:

$$H(\omega) = \frac{j\omega}{j\omega + (R/L)}$$

$$\therefore \text{Magnitude response } |H(\omega)| = \frac{\omega}{\sqrt{\omega^2 + (R/L)^2}}$$

$$\text{Phase response } \angle H(\omega) = \frac{\pi}{2} - \tan^{-1} \frac{L}{R} \omega$$

**EXAMPLE 6.13** Find the impulse response of the system shown in Figure 6.21. Also find the transfer function. What would be its frequency response?

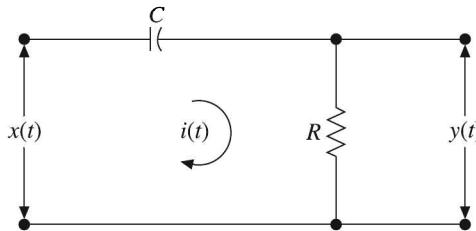


Figure 6.21 Circuit for Example 6.13.

**Solution:** The transfer function of the given  $RC$  filter can be very easily determined by transforming the network into frequency domain as shown in Figure 6.22.

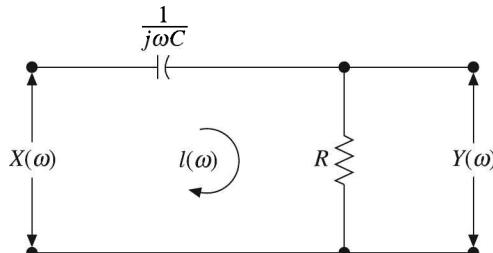


Figure 6.22 Fourier transformed network.

From the Fourier transformed circuit of Figure 6.22, the transfer function in frequency domain is:

$$H(\omega) = \frac{R}{R + (1/j\omega C)} = \frac{j\omega CR}{1 + j\omega CR} = \frac{j\omega}{j\omega + (1/RC)}$$

$$\begin{aligned}\text{Impulse response } h(t) &= F^{-1}[H(\omega)] = F^{-1}\left[\frac{j\omega}{j\omega + (1/RC)}\right] \\ &= F^{-1}\left[1 - \frac{(1/RC)}{j\omega + (1/RC)}\right] = \delta(t) - \frac{1}{RC}e^{-(1/RC)t} u(t)\end{aligned}$$

The frequency response of the system

$$H(\omega) = \frac{j\omega RC}{1 + j\omega RC}$$

$$\therefore \text{Magnitude response } |H(\omega)| = \frac{\omega RC}{\sqrt{1 + (\omega RC)^2}}$$

$$\text{Phase response } \angle H(\omega) = \frac{\pi}{2} - \tan^{-1} \omega RC$$

**EXAMPLE 6.14** Find the impulse response of the system shown in Figure 6.23. Find the transfer function. What would be its frequency response? Sketch the response.

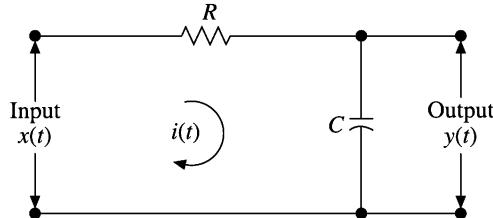


Figure 6.23 Circuit for Example 6.14.

**Solution:** The transfer function of the given  $RC$  filter can be very easily determined by transforming the network into frequency domain as shown in Figure 6.24.

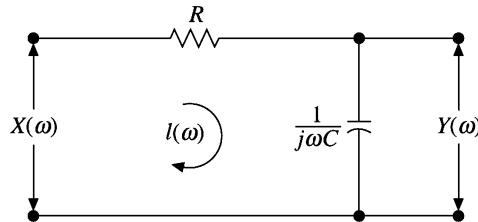


Figure 6.24 Fourier transformed circuit.

From the Fourier transformed circuit (frequency domain) shown in Figure 6.24, the transfer function (frequency response) of the system is given as:

$$\begin{aligned} H(\omega) &= \frac{Y(\omega)}{X(\omega)} = \frac{1/j\omega C}{R + (1/j\omega C)} \\ &= \frac{1}{1 + j\omega RC} = \frac{1}{RC} \frac{1}{j\omega + (1/RC)} \end{aligned}$$

The impulse response of the system is given by

$$\begin{aligned} h(t) &= F^{-1}[H(\omega)] \\ &= F^{-1}\left[\frac{1}{RC} \frac{1}{j\omega + (1/RC)}\right] = \frac{1}{RC} e^{-(1/RC)t} u(t) \end{aligned}$$

The frequency response of the system is:

$$H(\omega) = \frac{1}{1 + j\omega RC}$$

Then

$$\text{Magnitude response } |H(\omega)| = \frac{1}{\sqrt{1 + \omega^2 R^2 C^2}}$$

and

$$\text{Phase response } \underline{H}(\omega) = -\tan^{-1} \omega RC$$

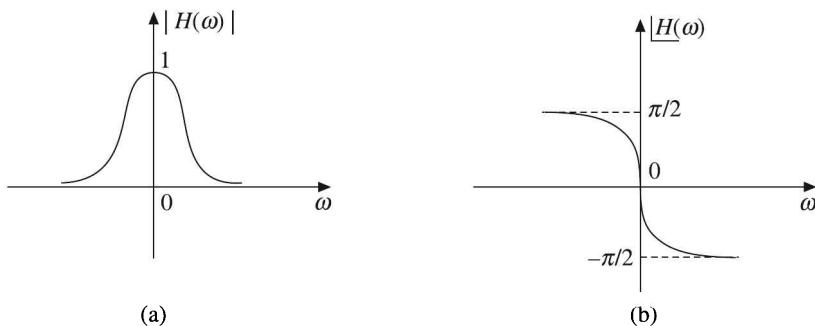
To sketch the frequency response, choose  $R$  and  $C$ . Let  $RC = 1$ . Then

$$|H(\omega)| = \frac{1}{\sqrt{1 + \omega^2}}$$

$$\underline{H}(\omega) = -\tan^{-1} \omega$$

The magnitude response, i.e. a plot of  $|H(\omega)|$  versus  $\omega$  is shown in Figure 6.25(a).

The phase response, i.e. a plot of  $\underline{H}(\omega)$  versus  $\omega$  is shown in Figure 6.25(b).



**Figure 6.25** (a) Magnitude response, (b) Phase response.

**EXAMPLE 6.15** The impulse response of a continuous-time system is expressed as:

$$h(t) = \frac{1}{RC} e^{-t/RC} u(t)$$

Find the frequency response of the system. Plot the frequency response.

**Solution:** Given impulse response of the system

$$h(t) = \frac{1}{RC} e^{-t/RC} u(t)$$

The frequency response of the system  $H(\omega)$  is the Fourier transform of the impulse response of the system

$$\begin{aligned}\therefore H(\omega) &= F[h(t)] = F\left[\frac{1}{RC} e^{-(1/RC)t} u(t)\right] \\ &= \frac{1}{RC} \frac{1}{j\omega + (1/RC)} = \frac{1}{1 + j\omega RC} \\ \text{Magnitude response } |H(\omega)| &= \frac{1}{\sqrt{1 + (\omega RC)^2}} \\ \text{Phase response } \underline{H(\omega)} &= -\tan^{-1} \omega RC\end{aligned}$$

To plot the frequency response, choose some values for  $R$  and  $C$ . Let

$$RC = 1$$

$$\therefore |H(\omega)| = \frac{1}{\sqrt{1 + \omega^2}}$$

and

$$\underline{H(\omega)} = -\tan^{-1} \omega$$

The magnitude response is a plot of  $|H(\omega)|$  versus  $\omega$ , and phase response is a plot of  $\underline{H(\omega)}$  versus  $\omega$  for different values of  $\omega$  as shown in Figure 6.25[(a) and (b)].

**EXAMPLE 6.16** For the system shown below:



**Figure 6.26** System for Example 6.16.

$$f(t) = \begin{cases} e^{-at}, & t \geq 0, |a| \geq 1 \\ 0, & \text{otherwise} \end{cases}$$

$$Y(\omega) = \begin{cases} \frac{1}{a + j\omega}, & -a < \omega < a \\ 0, & \text{otherwise} \end{cases}$$

Find the transfer function and impulse response of the system.

**Solution:** Given

$$f(t) = e^{-at} \quad \text{for } t \geq 0$$

i.e.

$$f(t) = e^{-at} u(t)$$

∴

$$F(\omega) = F[e^{-at} u(t)] = \frac{1}{j\omega + a}$$

$$Y(\omega) = \frac{1}{a + j\omega}$$

The transfer function of the system

$$H(\omega) = \frac{Y(\omega)}{F(\omega)} = \frac{1/(j\omega + a)}{1/(j\omega + a)} = 1$$

The impulse response of the system

$$h(t) = F^{-1}[H(\omega)] = F^{-1}[1] = \delta(t)$$

**EXAMPLE 6.17** The transfer function of a system is given by  $H(\omega) = K$ , where  $K$  is a constant. Sketch the magnitude and phase function of this transfer function. Evaluate the impulse response of this filter. Sketch this response and state whether the filter is physically realizable.

**Solution:** Given that the transfer function of the system is:

$$H(\omega) = K$$

The magnitude of the transfer function

$$|H(\omega)| = |K| = K$$

It is a constant  $K$  independent of frequency  $\omega$ .

The phase of the transfer function

$$\angle H(\omega) = \angle K = 0$$

It is zero for all the frequencies.

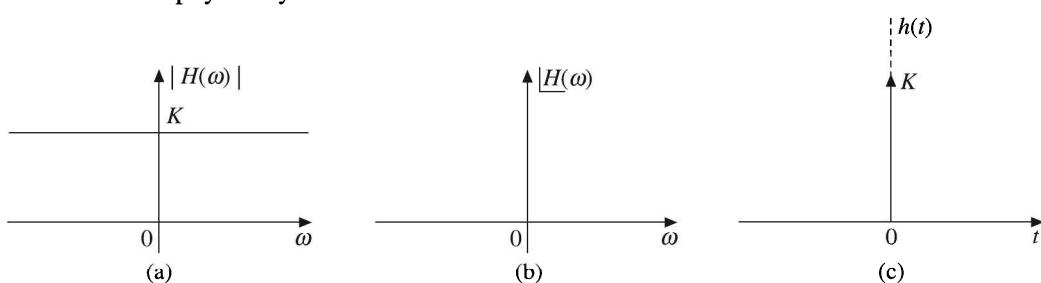
The magnitude and phase functions are sketched as shown in Figure 6.27[(a) and (b)].

The impulse response of this filter

$$h(t) = F^{-1}[H(\omega)] = F^{-1}[K] = K\delta(t)$$

The impulse response is sketched as shown in Figure 6.27(c).

The filter is not physically realizable.



**Figure 6.27** (a) Magnitude response, (b) Phase response, (c) Impulse response.

**EXAMPLE 6.18** Determine the maximum bandwidth of signals that can be transmitted through the low-pass  $RC$  filter shown in Figure 6.28, if over this bandwidth, the gain variation is to be within 10% and the phase variation is to be within 7% of the ideal characteristics.

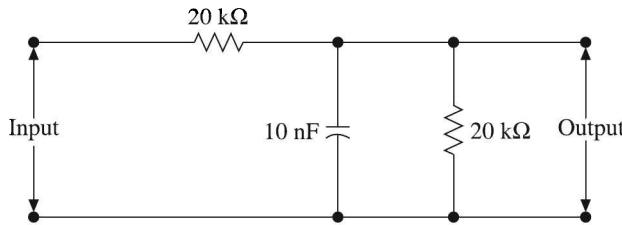


Figure 6.28 Circuit for Example 6.18.

**Solution:** Taking  $20 \text{ k}\Omega = R$  and  $10 \text{ nF} = C$ , the given  $RC$  network transformed into frequency-domain can be represented as shown in Figure 6.29(a). Combining the parallel  $R$  and  $C$  at the output side, the equivalent circuit is shown in Figure 6.29(b).

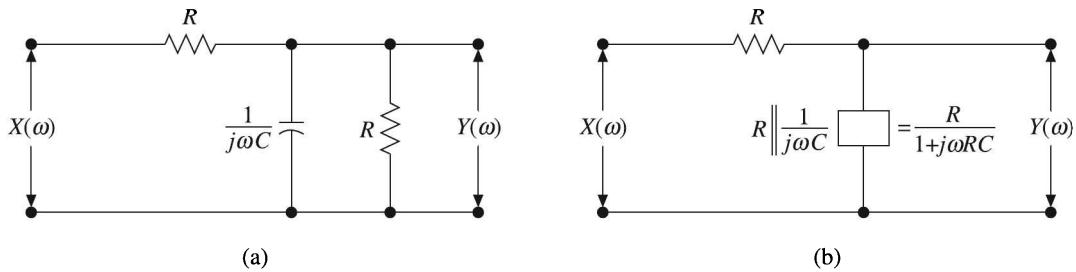


Figure 6.29 (a) s-domain representation, (b) Its equivalent.

From the basic circuit theory, the input/output relationship [transfer function] of the given circuit is:

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{Y(\omega)}{X(\omega)} &= H(\omega) = \frac{R/(1+j\omega RC)}{R+[R/(1+j\omega RC)]} \\ &= \frac{R}{2R+j\omega R^2 C} = \frac{1}{2+j\omega RC} \end{aligned}$$

But, given  $R = 20 \text{ k}\Omega$  and  $C = 10 \text{ nF}$ , we get

$$\begin{aligned} H(\omega) &= \frac{1}{2+j\omega(20 \times 10^3)(10 \times 10^{-9})} = \frac{1}{2+j\omega(2 \times 10^{-4})} \\ &= \frac{1}{2[1+j\omega(10^{-4})]} = \frac{10^4}{2[j\omega+10^4]} = \frac{5000}{j\omega+10^4} \end{aligned}$$

$$\therefore H(\omega) = \frac{5000}{j\omega+10000}$$

$$\text{Magnitude response } |H(\omega)| = \frac{5000}{\sqrt{\omega^2 + 10000^2}} = \frac{5000}{\sqrt{\omega^2 + 10^8}}$$

$$\text{Phase response } \theta(\omega) = \underline{H(\omega)} = -\tan^{-1} \left( \frac{\omega}{10000} \right)$$

At  $\omega = 0$

$$|H(\omega)|_{\omega=0} = \frac{5000}{10000} = 0.5$$

But there is 10% variation in gain over the bandwidth  $B$ .

$$\therefore |H(\omega)| = 0.5 - 0.5 \times 10\% = 0.45$$

But

$$H(\omega) = \frac{5000}{\sqrt{B^2 + 10^8}}$$

$$B^2 + 10^8 = \left( \frac{5000}{0.45} \right)^2 = 123.46 \times 10^6$$

$$B^2 = 123.46 \times 10^6 - 100 \times 10^6 = 23.46 \times 10^6$$

$$B = 4.84 \times 10^3 = 4.84 \text{ kHz}$$

But  $B = 2\pi f$

$$\therefore f = \frac{B}{2\pi} = \frac{4.84 \times 10^3}{2\pi} = 770.8 \text{ Hz}$$

Phase at frequency  $f = 770.8$  Hz is:

$$\begin{aligned} \theta(\omega) &= -\tan^{-1} \left( \frac{\omega}{10000} \right) = -\tan^{-1} \left( \frac{4.84 \times 10^3}{10 \times 10^3} \right) \\ &= -25.83 \text{ (7% of ideal value)} \end{aligned}$$

**EXAMPLE 6.19** There are several possible ways of estimating an essential bandwidth of non-band limited signal. For a low-pass signal, for example, the essential bandwidth may be chosen as a frequency where the amplitude spectrum of the signal decays to  $K\%$  of its peak value. The choice of  $K$  depends on the nature of application. Choosing  $K = 5$ , determine the essential bandwidth of  $g(t) = e^{-at} u(t)$ .

**Solution:** Given

$$g(t) = e^{-at} u(t)$$

$$G(\omega) = F[e^{-at} u(t)] = \frac{1}{a + j\omega}$$

$$|G(\omega)| = \frac{1}{\sqrt{a^2 + \omega^2}}$$

The peak value of  $|G(\omega)|$  is obtained at  $\omega = 0$ .

$$|G(\omega)|_{\text{peak}} = \frac{1}{a}$$

Given  $K = 5\% = \frac{5}{100}$

Let the new frequency be  $\omega_c$ .

$$\frac{5}{100a} = \frac{1}{\sqrt{a^2 + \omega_c^2}}$$

i.e.  $\frac{1}{20a} = \frac{1}{\sqrt{a^2 + \omega_c^2}}$

i.e.  $(20a)^2 = 400a^2 = a^2 + \omega_c^2$

$\therefore \omega_c^2 = 399a^2$

$$f_c^2 = \frac{399a^2}{(2\pi)^2} = 10.10a^2$$

$\therefore f_c = 3.179a \text{ Hz}$

$\therefore \text{Essential bandwidth} = 3.179a \text{ Hz}$

## SHORT QUESTIONS WITH ANSWERS

1. What is the importance of impulse response?

*Ans.* The importance of impulse response of an LTI system is that the characteristics of an LTI system are completely characterized by its impulse response.

2. Does the impulse response of a nonlinear system characterize the system?

*Ans.* No. The impulse response of a nonlinear system does not completely characterize the system.

3. What are the properties of LTI systems?

*Ans.* Some of the most basic and important properties of LTI systems are:

- (a) The commutative property

$$x(t) * h(t) = h(t) * x(t)$$

- (b) The distributive property

$$x(t) * [h_1(t) + h_2(t)] = x(t) * h_1(t) + x(t) * h_2(t)$$

- (c) The associative property

$$x(t) * [h_1(t) * h_2(t)] = [x(t) * h_1(t)] * h_2(t)$$

## (d) Systems with and without memory

If the output depends only on the present input—it is memoryless system

If the output depends on past inputs also—it is memory system.

## (e) Causality

For a causal system  $h(t) = 0$  for  $t < 0$

For a noncausal system  $h(t) \neq 0$  for  $t < 0$

## (f) Stability

For a stable system, its impulse response must be absolutely integrable.

$$\int_0^{\infty} |h(\tau)| d\tau < \infty$$

## (g) Invertibility

A continuous-time LTI system is said to be invertible if the convolution of its impulse response and the impulse response of its inverse system is  $\delta(t)$ .

## (h) The unit step response

It is the output for a unit step input.

Unit step response is the running integral of its unit impulse response

Unit impulse response is the first derivative of the unit step response

$$s(t) = \int_{-\infty}^t h(\tau) d\tau \quad \text{and} \quad h(t) = \frac{d}{dt} s(t)$$

## 4. Define transfer function of a system.

*Ans.* The transfer function of a continuous-time system is defined as follows:

- (a) The ratio of the Fourier transform of the output to the Fourier transform of the input when the initial conditions are neglected.

Or

The ratio of the output to the input in frequency domain when the initial conditions are neglected.

- (b) The ratio of the Laplace transform of the output to the Laplace transform of the input when the initial conditions are neglected.

Or

The ratio of the output to the input in s-domain when the initial conditions are neglected.

- (c) The Fourier transform or the Laplace transform of the impulse response of the system.

## 5. Define impulse response of a system.

*Ans.* The impulse response of a system is defined as:

- (a) The output of the system when the input applied is a unit impulse.

- (b) The inverse Laplace transform (or the inverse Fourier transform) of the transfer function of the system.

6. What is the relation between impulse response and transfer function of a system?

*Ans.* The impulse response is the inverse Fourier transform of the transfer function  $H(\omega)$  in frequency domain.

Or

The impulse response is the inverse Laplace transform of the transfer function  $H(s)$  in s-domain.

The transfer function  $H(\omega)$  is the Fourier transform of the impulse response  $h(t)$  of the system in frequency domain.

Or

The transfer function  $H(s)$  is the Laplace transform of the impulse response  $h(t)$  of the system in s-domain.

7. How do you obtain frequency response from transfer function?

*Ans.* If the transfer function is available in frequency domain, then the frequency response is same as the transfer function  $H(\omega)$ .

If the transfer function is available in s-domain, then the frequency response  $H(\omega)$  is obtained by substituting  $s = j\omega$  in the transfer function  $H(s)$ .

8. What is a filter?

*Ans.* A filter is a frequency selective network.

9. How are filters classified?

*Ans.* Filters are classified according to their frequency response characteristics as LPF, HPF, BPF and BRF.

10. What is a low-pass filter?

*Ans.* A low-pass filter is a network which allows transmission of only low frequency signals. It attenuates all high frequency signals.

11. What is a high-pass filter?

*Ans.* A high-pass filter is a network which allows transmission of only high frequency signals. It attenuates all low frequency signals.

12. What is a band-pass filter?

*Ans.* A band-pass filter is a network which allows transmission of signals within a particular frequency band. All signals outside this band are attenuated.

13. What is a band reject filter?

*Ans.* A band reject filter is a network which attenuates signals within a particular band and transmits all signals outside this band.

14. What is an all pass filter?

*Ans.* An all pass filter is a network which transmits signals of all frequencies equally well without any attenuation.

15. What is pass-band?

*Ans.* The band of frequencies that is allowed by the filter is called pass-band.

16. What is stop band?

*Ans.* The band of frequencies that is severely attenuated and not allowed to pass through the filter is called stop band or rejection band.

17. What is distortion of a signal?

*Ans.* The change of shape of the signal when it is transmitted through a system is called distortion.

18. When do you say that transmission is distortionless?

*Ans.* Transmission is said to be distortionless if the output is an exact replica of the input.

19. What is the condition on magnitude and phase for distortionless transmission?

*Ans.* For distortionless transmission, the magnitude must be constant and phase must be linear.

20. What is a linear phase system?

*Ans.* A linear phase system is one whose phase varies linearly with frequency.

21. What is the nature of impulse response for linear phase systems?

*Ans.* For linear phase systems, the impulse response is symmetrical about  $t = t_d$ .

22. What is signal bandwidth?

*Ans.* The band of frequencies that contain most of the signal energy is known as the bandwidth of the signal.

23. What is system bandwidth?

*Ans.* The bandwidth of a system is defined as the range of frequencies over which the magnitude  $|H(\omega)|$  remains within  $1/\sqrt{2}$  times (within 3 dB) of its value at midband.

24. What does the bandwidth of a system indicate?

*Ans.* The bandwidth of a system indicates the constancy of the magnitude  $|H(\omega)|$  in a system.

25. When can a band limited signal be transmitted without distortion through a system?

*Ans.* A band limited signal can be transmitted without distortion through a system when the system bandwidth is atleast equal to the signal bandwidth.

26. What does the term physical realizability imply?

*Ans.* Physical realizability implies that it is physically possible to construct that system in real life.

27. What is the time domain criterion for physical realizability?

*Ans.* The time domain criterion for physical realizability is the system must be causal.

28. What is the frequency domain criterion for physical realizability?

*Ans.* The frequency domain criterion for physical realizability is the magnitude function  $H(\omega)$  must be such that

$$\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \frac{|\ln|H(\omega)||}{1 + \omega^2} d\omega < \infty$$

29. State Paley-Wiener criterion.

*Ans.* The Paley-Wiener criterion states that the necessary and sufficient condition for a magnitude function to be physically realizable is:

$$\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \frac{|\ln|H(\omega)||}{1+\omega^2} d\omega < \infty$$

30. What conclusions can be drawn from the Paley-Wiener criterion?

*Ans.* The following conclusions can be drawn from Paley-Wiener criterion:

- (a) Ideal filters are not physically realizable.
- (b) A realizable magnitude characteristic cannot have a very large total attenuation.

31. What is the relation between bandwidth and rise time?

*Ans.* The relation between bandwidth and rise time is given as:

$$\text{Bandwidth} \times \text{Rise time} = \text{Constant}$$

32. How do you say that an ideal LPF is physically not realizable?

*Ans.* An ideal LPF is not physically realizable because its response starts before the input is applied.

## REVIEW QUESTIONS

1. Discuss the properties of LTI systems.
2. Write notes on filter characteristics of linear systems.
3. Obtain the conditions for distortionless transmission through a system.
4. Show that for linear phase systems, the impulse response is symmetrical about  $t = t_d$ .
5. Write notes on (a) signal bandwidth (b) system bandwidth.
6. Explain ideal filters.
7. Explain causality and physical realizability of a system and hence give Paley-Wiener criterion.
8. Derive the relation between rise time and bandwidth of a low-pass filter.

## FILL IN THE BLANKS

1. The characteristics of an LTI system are completely determined by its \_\_\_\_\_ response.
2. The commutative property of convolution states that \_\_\_\_\_.
3. The distributive property of convolution states that \_\_\_\_\_.
4. The associative property of convolution states that \_\_\_\_\_.
5. If  $h(t) = 0$  for  $t \neq 0$ , the system is a \_\_\_\_\_ system
6. If  $h(t) \neq 0$  for  $t \neq 0$ , the system is a \_\_\_\_\_ system
7. If  $h(t) = \delta(t)$ , the system becomes an \_\_\_\_\_ system.

8. If  $h(t) = 0$  for  $t < 0$ , the system is a \_\_\_\_\_ system.
9. If  $h(t) \neq 0$  for  $t < 0$ , the system is a \_\_\_\_\_ system.
10. For a continuous-time LTI system to be BIBO stable, its \_\_\_\_\_ must be absolutely integrable.
11. If  $h(t)$  is the impulse response of the system and  $h_1(t)$  is the impulse response of its inverse system, then  $h(t) * h_1(t) = _____$ .
12. The unit step response of a continuous-time LTI system is the \_\_\_\_\_ of its unit impulse response.
13. The unit impulse response of a continuous-time LTI system is the \_\_\_\_\_ of its unit step response.
14. The transfer function is defined only under \_\_\_\_\_ initial conditions.
15. The \_\_\_\_\_ is the inverse Fourier transform of the transfer function.
16. The \_\_\_\_\_ is the inverse Laplace transform of the transfer function.
17. The transfer function of a system is the Fourier transform of its \_\_\_\_\_.
18. The transfer function of a system is the Laplace transform of its \_\_\_\_\_.
19. The frequency response is same as the transfer function \_\_\_\_\_.
20. The output is the convolution of the input and the \_\_\_\_\_ of the system.
21. An LTI system acts as a kind of \_\_\_\_\_ for various frequency components.
22. \_\_\_\_\_ acts as a weighting function or spectral shaping function to the different frequency components in the signal.
23. A \_\_\_\_\_ is basically a frequency selective network.
24. An LTI system is characterised by its \_\_\_\_\_, \_\_\_\_\_ and \_\_\_\_\_.
25. For distortionless transmission, the magnitude  $|H(\omega)|$  must be \_\_\_\_\_.
26. For distortionless transmission, the phase  $|H(\omega)|$  must be \_\_\_\_\_.
27. For distortionless transmission, the bandwidth of the system must be \_\_\_\_\_.
28. The change of shape of the signal when it is transmitted through a system is called \_\_\_\_\_.
29. For distortionless transmission, the output must be \_\_\_\_\_ of the input.
30. A signal  $x(t)$  is said to be transmitted without distortion, if the output  $y(t) = _____$ .
31. For linear phase systems, the impulse response is \_\_\_\_\_ about  $t = t_d$ .
32. Any practical signal has \_\_\_\_\_ energy.
33. The constancy of the magnitude  $|H(\omega)|$  in a system is usually specified by its \_\_\_\_\_.
34. The time domain criterion for physical realizability is its \_\_\_\_\_.
35. The frequency domain criterion for physical realizability is \_\_\_\_\_.
36. The bandwidth  $B$  and rise time  $t_r$  are related as \_\_\_\_\_.
37. A band limited signal can be transmitted without distortion if the system bandwidth is atleast equal to \_\_\_\_\_.

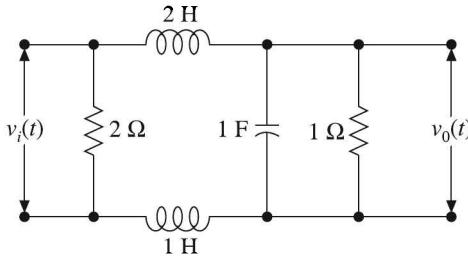
## OBJECTIVE TYPE QUESTIONS

1. The characteristics of an LTI system are completely characterized by its  
 (a) impulse response (b) step response (c) transfer function (d) none of these
2. The commutative property of convolution states that  
 (a)  $x(t) * h(t) = h(t) * x(t)$   
 (b)  $x(t) * [h_1(t) + h_2(t)] = x(t) * h_1(t) + x(t) * h_2(t)$   
 (c)  $x(t) * [h_1(t) * h_2(t)] = [x(t) * h_1(t)] * h_2(t)$   
 (d) none of these
3. The distributive property of convolution states that  
 (a)  $x(t) * h(t) = h(t) * x(t)$   
 (b)  $x(t) * [h_1(t) + h_2(t)] = x(t) * h_1(t) + x(t) * h_2(t)$   
 (c)  $x(t) * [h_1(t) * h_2(t)] = [x(t) * h_1(t)] * h_2(t)$   
 (d) none of these
4. The associative property of convolution states that  
 (a)  $x(t) * h(t) = h(t) * x(t)$   
 (b)  $x(t) * [h_1(t) + h_2(t)] = x(t) * h_1(t) + x(t) * h_2(t)$   
 (c)  $x(t) * [h_1(t) * h_2(t)] = [x(t) * h_1(t)] * h_2(t)$   
 (d) none of these
5. For defining a transfer function, the initial conditions must be taken as  
 (a) zero (b) infinite (c) finite (d) none of these
6. The spectral density function of the input signal  $x(t)$  is given by  
 (a)  $X(\omega)$  (b)  $H(\omega)$  (c)  $Y(\omega)$  (d)  $X^2(\omega)$
7. The output of an LTI system is equal to unit impulse response when the input is  
 (a)  $\delta(t)$  (b)  $u(t)$   
 (c)  $r(t)$  (d) any of (a), (b), (c)
8. For an LTI system, the transfer function is given by  $H(\omega) =$   
 (a)  $\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} h(t) e^{-j\omega t} dt$  (b)  $\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} h(t) e^{j\omega t} dt$  (c)  $\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} h(t) dt$  (d)  $\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} x(t) h(t) dt$
9. For distortionless transmission, the amplitude response is  
 (a) zero (b) infinite (c) constant (d) linear
10. For distortionless transmission, the phase response is  
 (a) constant (b) linear (c) zero (d) nonlinear
11. The transfer function of a distortionless network is  
 (a)  $H(\omega) = ke^{j\omega t_d}$  (b)  $H(\omega) = ke^{-j\omega t_d}$  (c)  $H(\omega) = kx(t - t_0)$  (d)  $H(\omega) = k$

12. The relation between rise time  $t_r$  and bandwidth  $\omega_c$  is
- (a)  $t_r = \frac{\pi}{\omega_c}$       (b)  $t_r = \frac{\omega_c}{\pi}$       (c)  $t_r = \frac{1}{\omega_c}$       (d)  $t_r = \omega_c$
13. For distortionless transmission,
- (a)  $y(t) = kx(t)$       (b)  $y(t) = x(t - t_d)$       (c)  $y(t) = kx(t - t_d)$       (d) none of these
14. For distortionless transmission, the bandwidth of the system is
- (a) finite      (b) infinite      (c) zero      (d) very small
15. For distortionless transmission, system bandwidth must be equal to
- (a) signal bandwidth      (b) two times signal bandwidth  
 (c) infinite      (d)  $1/2$  of signal bandwidth

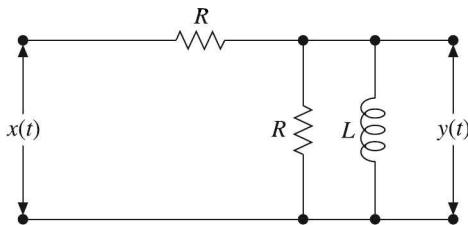
## PROBLEMS

1. Let the system function of an LTI system be  $1/(j\omega + 3)$ . What is the output of the system  $y(t)$  for an input  $(0.5)^t u(t)$ ?
2. Find the transfer function of the network shown in Figure 6.30.



**Figure 6.30** Figure for Problem 2.

3. Consider the filter circuit shown in Figure 6.31.



**Figure 6.31** Figure for Problem 3.

- (a) Write the input/output relationship.  
 (b) Obtain its impulse response.  
 (c) Find the step response.

4. Find the current  $i(t)$  in a series RLC circuit as shown in Figure 6.32, when a voltage of 100 V is switched on across the terminals  $aa'$  at  $t = 0$ .

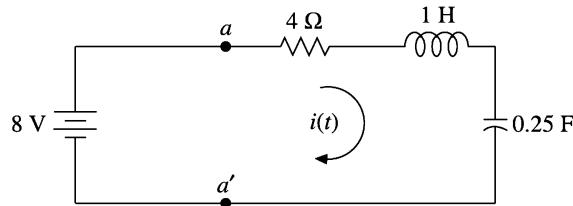


Figure 6.32 Figure for Problem 4.

5. Consider a stable LTI system that is characterised by the differential equation

$$\frac{d^2y(t)}{dt^2} + 6\frac{dy(t)}{dt} + 5y(t) = \frac{dx(t)}{dt} + 3x(t)$$

Find its response for input  $x(t) = e^{-3t} u(t)$ .

6. A system produces an output of  $y(t) = e^{-3t} u(t)$  for an input of  $x(t) = e^{-5t} u(t)$ . Determine the impulse response and frequency response of the system.

7. The input voltage to an RC circuit is given as  $x(t) = te^{-3t} u(t)$ , and the impulse response of this circuit is given as  $2e^{-3t} u(t)$ . Determine the output  $y(t)$ .

8. For a system excited by  $x(t) = e^{-t} u(t)$ , the impulse response is

$$h(t) = e^{-3t} u(t) + e^t u(-t)$$

Find the output for the system.

9. Consider a stable LTI system characterised by the differential equation

$$\frac{d^2y(t)}{dt^2} + \frac{2dy(t)}{dt} + y(t) = x(t). \text{ Find its impulse response.}$$

10. Consider a causal LTI system with frequency response

$$H(\omega) = \frac{1}{3 + j\omega}$$

For a particular input  $x(t)$ , the system is observed to produce the output

$$y(t) = e^{-t} u(t) - e^{-3t} u(t)$$

Find the input  $x(t)$ .

11. The impulse response of a continuous-time system is expressed as:

$$h(t) = e^{-2t} u(t)$$

Find the frequency response of the system. Plot the frequency response.

12. Determine the maximum bandwidth of signals that can be transmitted through the low pass RC filter shown in Figure 6.33, if over this bandwidth, the gain variation is to be within 8% and the phase variation is to be within 8% of the ideal characteristics.

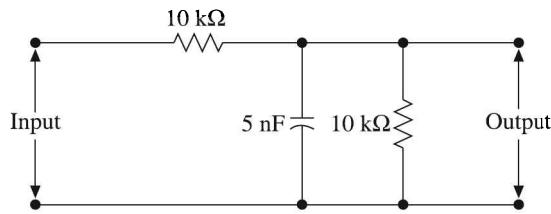
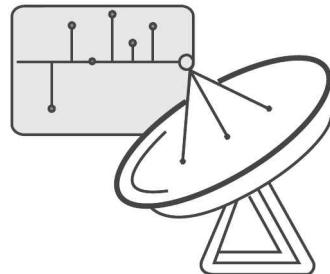


Figure 6.33

13. There are several possible ways of estimating an essential bandwidth of non-band limited signal. For a low-pass signal, for example, the essential bandwidth may be chosen as a frequency where the amplitude spectrum of the signal decays to  $K\%$  of its peak value. The choice of  $K$  depends on the nature of application. Choosing  $K = 10$ , determine the essential bandwidth of  $g(t) = e^{-2at} u(t)$ .

# 7

# Convolution and Correlation of Signals



## 7.1 INTRODUCTION

Convolution is a mathematical way of combining two signals to form a third signal. Convolution is important because it relates the input signal and impulse response of the system to the output of the system. Correlation is again a mathematical operation that is similar to convolution. Correlation also uses two signals to form a third signal. It is very widely used in practice, particularly in communication engineering. Basically, it compares two signals in order to determine the degree of similarity between them. Radar, sonar, and digital communications use correlation of signals very extensively. Correlation may be cross correlation or autocorrelation. When one signal is correlated with another signal to form a third signal, it is called cross correlation. When a signal is correlated with itself to form another signal, it is called autocorrelation.

In this chapter, the properties of convolution, convolution theorems associated with Fourier transforms and graphical convolution of two signals are discussed. Also correlation, energy density spectra, power density spectra, Rayleigh's theorem and Parseval's theorem are discussed.

## 7.2 CONCEPT OF CONVOLUTION

Convolution is a mathematical operation which is used to express the input–output relationship of an LTI system. It is a most important operation in LTI continuous-time systems. It relates input and impulse response of the system to output.

An arbitrary driving function  $x(t)$  can be expressed as a continuous sum of impulse functions. The response  $y(t)$  is then given by the continuous sum of responses to various impulse components. In fact, the convolution integral precisely expresses the response as a continuous sum of responses to individual impulse components.

Consider an LTI system which is initially relaxed at  $t = 0$ . If the input to the system is an impulse, then the output of the system is denoted by  $h(t)$  and is called the impulse response of the system.

The impulse response is denoted as:

$$h(t) = T[\delta(t)]$$

We know that any arbitrary signal  $x(t)$  can be represented as:

$$x(t) = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} x(\tau) \delta(t - \tau) d\tau$$

The system output is given by

$$y(t) = T[x(t)]$$

$$\therefore y(t) = T \left[ \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} x(\tau) \delta(t - \tau) d\tau \right]$$

For a linear system,

$$y(t) = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} x(\tau) T[\delta(t - \tau)] d\tau$$

If the response of the system due to impulse  $\delta(t)$  is  $h(t)$ , then the response of the system due to delayed impulse is:

$$h(t, \tau) = T[\delta(t - \tau)]$$

Substituting this value of  $T[\delta(t - \tau)]$  in the expression for  $y(t)$ , we have

$$y(t) = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} x(\tau) h(t, \tau) d\tau$$

For a time invariant system, the output due to input delayed by  $\tau$  sec is equal to the output delayed by  $\tau$  sec. That is,

$$h(t, \tau) = h(t - \tau)$$

Substituting this value of  $h(t, \tau)$  in the expression for  $y(t)$ , we have

$$y(t) = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} x(\tau) h(t - \tau) d\tau$$

This is called convolution integral, or simply convolution. The convolution of two signals  $x(t)$  and  $h(t)$  can be represented as:

$$y(t) = x(t) * h(t)$$

In general, the lower and upper limits of integration in the convolution integral depend on whether the signal  $x(t)$  and the impulse response  $h(t)$  are causal or not. If  $h(t)$  is causal, then  $h(t - \tau) = 0$  for  $\tau > t$ . Therefore, the upper limit of integration is  $t$  for a causal  $h(t)$ . If  $x(t)$  is causal, then  $x(t) = 0$  for  $t < 0$ . Therefore, the lower limit of integration is 0 for a causal  $x(t)$ . Thus,

$$\begin{aligned}
 y(t) &= \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} x(\tau) h(t - \tau) d\tau \quad \text{if both } x(t) \text{ and } h(t) \text{ are non-causal} \\
 &= \int_{-\infty}^t x(\tau) h(t - \tau) d\tau \quad \text{if } x(t) \text{ is non-causal and } h(t) \text{ is causal} \\
 &= \int_0^{\infty} x(\tau) h(t - \tau) d\tau \quad \text{if } x(t) \text{ is causal and } h(t) \text{ is non-causal} \\
 &= \int_0^t x(\tau) h(t - \tau) d\tau \quad \text{if both } x(t) \text{ and } h(t) \text{ are causal}
 \end{aligned}$$

### 7.3 PROPERTIES OF CONVOLUTION

Let us consider two signals  $x_1(t)$  and  $x_2(t)$ . The convolution of two signals  $x_1(t)$  and  $x_2(t)$  is given by

$$x_1(t) * x_2(t) = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} x_1(\tau) x_2(t - \tau) d\tau = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} x_2(\tau) x_1(t - \tau) d\tau$$

The properties of convolution are as follows:

*Commutative property* The commutative property of convolution states that

$$x_1(t) * x_2(t) = x_2(t) * x_1(t)$$

*Distributive property* The distributive property of convolution states that

$$x_1(t) * [x_2(t) + x_3(t)] = [x_1(t) * x_2(t)] + [x_1(t) * x_3(t)]$$

*Associative property* The associative property of convolution states that

$$x_1(t) * [x_2(t) * x_3(t)] = [x_1(t) * x_2(t)] * x_3(t)$$

*Shift property* The shift property of convolution states that if

$$x_1(t) * x_2(t) = z(t)$$

Then

$$x_1(t) * x_2(t - T) = z(t - T)$$

Similarly,

$$x_1(t - T) * x_2(t) = z(t - T)$$

and

$$x_1(t - T_1) * x_2(t - T_2) = z(t - T_1 - T_2)$$

*Convolution with an impulse* Convolution of a signal  $x(t)$  with a unit impulse is the signal itself. That is,

$$x(t) * \delta(t) = x(t)$$

*Width property* Let the duration of  $x_1(t)$  and  $x_2(t)$  be  $T_1$  and  $T_2$  respectively. Then the duration of the signal obtained by convolving  $x_1(t)$  and  $x_2(t)$  is  $T_1 + T_2$ .

**EXAMPLE 7.1** Find the convolution of the following signals:

- (i)  $x_1(t) = e^{-2t} u(t); x_2(t) = e^{-4t} u(t)$
- (ii)  $x_1(t) = t u(t); x_2(t) = t u(t)$
- (iii)  $x_1(t) = \cos t u(t); x_2(t) = u(t)$
- (iv)  $x_1(t) = e^{-3t} u(t); x_2(t) = u(t + 3)$
- (v)  $x_1(t) = r(t); x_2(t) = e^{-2t} u(t)$

**Solution:**

(i) Given  $x_1(t) = e^{-2t} u(t); x_2(t) = e^{-4t} u(t)$

We know that

$$\begin{aligned} x_1(t) * x_2(t) &= \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} x_1(\tau) x_2(t - \tau) d\tau \\ \therefore x_1(t) * x_2(t) &= \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} e^{-2\tau} u(\tau) e^{-4(t-\tau)} u(t - \tau) d\tau \end{aligned}$$

$u(\tau) = 1$  for  $\tau > 0$  and  $u(t - \tau) = 1$  for  $(t - \tau) \geq 0$  or for  $\tau < t$ .

Hence  $u(\tau) u(t - \tau) = 1$  only for  $0 < \tau < t$ . For all other values of  $\tau$ ,  $u(\tau) u(t - \tau) = 0$ .

$$\begin{aligned} \therefore x_1(t) * x_2(t) &= \int_0^t e^{-2\tau} e^{-4(t-\tau)} d\tau \\ &= e^{-4t} \int_0^t e^{2\tau} d\tau = e^{-4t} \left[ \frac{e^{2\tau}}{2} \right]_0^t \\ &= e^{-4t} \left( \frac{e^{2t} - 1}{2} \right) = \frac{e^{-2t} - e^{-4t}}{2} \quad (\text{for } t \geq 0) \\ &= \frac{e^{-2t} - e^{-4t}}{2} u(t) \end{aligned}$$

(ii) Given  $x_1(t) = t u(t); x_2(t) = t u(t)$

We know that

$$\begin{aligned} x_1(t) * x_2(t) &= \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} x_1(\tau) x_2(t - \tau) d\tau \\ \therefore x_1(t) * x_2(t) &= \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \tau u(\tau) (t - \tau) u(t - \tau) d\tau \end{aligned}$$

$u(\tau) = 1$  for  $\tau > 0$  and  $u(t - \tau) = 1$  for  $(t - \tau) \geq 0$  or for  $\tau < t$ .

Hence  $u(\tau) u(t - \tau) = 1$  only for  $0 < \tau < t$ . For all other values of  $\tau$ ,  $u(\tau) u(t - \tau) = 0$ .

$$\begin{aligned}
 \therefore x_1(t) * x_2(t) &= \int_0^t \tau(t-\tau) d\tau \\
 &= \int_0^t t\tau d\tau - \int_0^t \tau^2 d\tau = t \left[ \frac{\tau^2}{2} \right]_0^t - \left[ \frac{\tau^3}{3} \right]_0^t \\
 &= t \left( \frac{t^2}{2} - 0 \right) - \left( \frac{t^3}{3} - 0 \right) = \frac{t^3}{2} - \frac{t^3}{3} \\
 &= \frac{t^3}{6} \quad (\text{for } t \geq 0) \\
 \therefore x_1(t) * x_2(t) &= \frac{t^3}{6} u(t)
 \end{aligned}$$

(iii) Given  $x_1(t) = \cos t u(t); x_2(t) = u(t)$

We know that

$$\begin{aligned}
 x_1(t) * x_2(t) &= \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} x_1(\tau) x_2(t-\tau) d\tau \\
 \therefore x_1(t) * x_2(t) &= \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \cos \tau u(\tau) u(t-\tau) d\tau
 \end{aligned}$$

$u(\tau) = 1$  for  $\tau > 0$  and  $u(t-\tau) = 1$  for  $(t-\tau) \geq 0$  or for  $\tau < t$ .

Hence  $u(\tau) u(t-\tau) = 1$  only for  $0 < \tau < t$ . For all other values of  $\tau$ ,  $u(\tau) u(t-\tau) = 0$ .

$$\begin{aligned}
 \therefore x_1(t) * x_2(t) &= \int_0^t \cos \tau d\tau \\
 &= [\sin \tau]_0^t \\
 &= \sin t \quad \text{for } t \geq 0 \\
 \therefore x_1(t) * x_2(t) &= \sin t u(t)
 \end{aligned}$$

(iv) Given  $x_1(t) = e^{-3t} u(t); x_2(t) = u(t+3)$

We know that

$$\begin{aligned}
 x_1(t) * x_2(t) &= \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} x_1(\tau) x_2(t-\tau) d\tau \\
 \therefore x_1(t) * x_2(t) &= \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} e^{-3\tau} u(\tau) u(t+3-\tau) d\tau
 \end{aligned}$$

In this case,  $u(\tau) = 0$  for  $\tau < 0$  and  $u(t + 3 - \tau) = 0$  for  $\tau > t + 3$ .  
 $u(\tau) u(t + 3 - \tau) = 1$  only for  $0 < \tau < t + 3$ . For all other values of  $\tau$ ,  $u(\tau) u(t + 3 - \tau) = 0$ .

$$\begin{aligned}\therefore x_1(t) * x_2(t) &= \int_0^{t+3} e^{-3\tau} d\tau \\ &= \left[ \frac{e^{-3\tau}}{-3} \right]_0^{t+3} = \frac{e^{-3(t+3)} - 1}{-3} \\ &= \frac{1 - e^{-3(t+3)}}{3} \\ \therefore y(t) &= 0 \quad (\text{for } t < -3) \\ &= \frac{1 - e^{-3(t+3)}}{3} \quad (\text{for } t > -3)\end{aligned}$$

(v) Given  $x_1(t) = r(t) = tu(t)$ ;  $x_2(t) = e^{-2t} u(t)$

We know that

$$\begin{aligned}x_1(t) * x_2(t) &= \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} x_1(\tau) x_2(t - \tau) d\tau \\ \therefore x_1(t) * x_2(t) &= \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \tau u(\tau) e^{-2(t-\tau)} u(t - \tau) d\tau\end{aligned}$$

$u(\tau) = 1$  for  $\tau > 0$  and  $u(t - \tau) = 1$  for  $(t - \tau) \geq 0$  or for  $\tau < t$ .  
Hence  $u(\tau) u(t - \tau) = 1$  only for  $0 < \tau < t$ . For all other values of  $\tau$ ,  $u(\tau) u(t - \tau) = 0$ .

$$\begin{aligned}\therefore x_1(t) * x_2(t) &= \int_0^t \tau e^{-2(t-\tau)} d\tau \\ &= e^{-2t} \int_0^t \tau e^{2\tau} d\tau = e^{-2t} \left\{ \left[ \frac{\tau e^{2\tau}}{2} \right]_0^t - \int_0^t \frac{e^{2\tau}}{2} d\tau \right\} \\ &= e^{-2t} \left\{ \left[ \frac{te^{2t}}{2} - \left[ \frac{e^{2\tau}}{4} \right]_0^t \right] \right\} = e^{-2t} \left( \frac{te^{2t}}{2} - \frac{e^{2t}}{4} + \frac{1}{4} \right) \\ &= \frac{t}{2} - \frac{1}{4} + \frac{e^{-2t}}{4} \quad (\text{for } t \geq 0) \\ \therefore x_1(t) * x_2(t) &= \left( \frac{t}{2} - \frac{1}{4} + \frac{e^{-2t}}{4} \right) u(t)\end{aligned}$$

## 7.4 CONVOLUTION THEOREMS

Convolution of signals may be done either in time domain or in frequency domain. So there are following two theorems of convolution associated with Fourier transforms:

1. Time convolution theorem
2. Frequency convolution theorem

### 7.4.1 Time Convolution Theorem

The time convolution theorem states that convolution in time domain is equivalent to multiplication of their spectra in frequency domain. Mathematically, if

$$x_1(t) \longleftrightarrow X_1(\omega)$$

and

$$x_2(t) \longleftrightarrow X_2(\omega)$$

Then

$$x_1(t) * x_2(t) \longleftrightarrow X_1(\omega) X_2(\omega)$$

*Proof:*

$$F[x_1(t) * x_2(t)] = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} [x_1(t) * x_2(t)] e^{-j\omega t} dt$$

We have

$$x_1(t) * x_2(t) = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} x_1(\tau) x_2(t - \tau) d\tau$$

$$\therefore F[x_1(t) * x_2(t)] = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \left\{ \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} [x_1(\tau) x_2(t - \tau) d\tau] \right\} e^{-j\omega t} dt$$

Interchanging the order of integration, we have

$$F[x_1(t) * x_2(t)] = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} x_1(\tau) \left[ \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} x_2(t - \tau) e^{-j\omega t} dt \right] d\tau$$

Letting  $t - \tau = p$ , in the second integration, we have

$$t = p + \tau \text{ and } dt = dp$$

$$\begin{aligned} \therefore F[x_1(t) * x_2(t)] &= \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} x_1(\tau) \left[ \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} x_2(p) e^{-j\omega(p+\tau)} dp \right] d\tau \\ &= \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} x_1(\tau) \left[ \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} x_2(p) e^{-j\omega p} dp \right] e^{-j\omega\tau} d\tau \\ &= \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} x_1(\tau) X_2(\omega) e^{-j\omega\tau} d\tau = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} x_1(\tau) e^{-j\omega\tau} d\tau X_2(\omega) \\ &= X_1(\omega) X_2(\omega) \end{aligned}$$

$$\therefore x_1(t) * x_2(t) \longleftrightarrow X_1(\omega) X_2(\omega)$$

This is time convolution theorem.

### 7.4.2 Frequency Convolution Theorem

The frequency convolution theorem states that the multiplication of two functions in time domain is equivalent to convolution of their spectra in frequency domain. Mathematically, if

$$x_1(t) \longleftrightarrow X_1(\omega)$$

and

$$x_2(t) \longleftrightarrow X_2(\omega)$$

Then

$$x_1(t) x_2(t) \longleftrightarrow \frac{1}{2\pi} [X_1(\omega) * X_2(\omega)]$$

*Proof:*

$$\begin{aligned} F[x_1(t) x_2(t)] &= \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} [x_1(t) x_2(t)] e^{-j\omega t} dt \\ &= \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \left[ \frac{1}{2\pi} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} X_1(\lambda) e^{j\lambda t} d\lambda \right] x_2(t) e^{-j\omega t} dt \end{aligned}$$

Interchanging the order of integration, we get

$$\begin{aligned} F[x_1(t) x_2(t)] &= \frac{1}{2\pi} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} X_1(\lambda) \left[ \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} x_2(t) e^{-j\omega t} e^{j\lambda t} dt \right] d\lambda \\ &= \frac{1}{2\pi} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} X_1(\lambda) \left[ \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} x_2(t) e^{-j(\omega-\lambda)t} dt \right] d\lambda \\ &= \frac{1}{2\pi} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} X_1(\lambda) X_2(\omega - \lambda) d\lambda \\ &= \frac{1}{2\pi} [X_1(\omega) * X_2(\omega)] \end{aligned}$$

$\therefore$

$$x_1(t) x_2(t) \longleftrightarrow \frac{1}{2\pi} X_1(\omega) * X_2(\omega)$$

or

$$2\pi x_1(t) x_2(t) \longleftrightarrow X_1(\omega) * X_2(\omega)$$

This is frequency convolution theorem in radian frequency.

In terms of frequency, we get

$$F[x_1(t) x_2(t)] = X_1(f) * X_2(f)$$

**EXAMPLE 7.2** Find the convolution of the signals  $x_1(t) = e^{-at} u(t)$ ;  $x_2(t) = e^{-bt} u(t)$  using Fourier transform.

**Solution:** Given

$$x_1(t) = e^{-at} u(t)$$

$$\therefore X_1(\omega) = \frac{1}{a + j\omega}$$

$$x_2(t) = e^{-bt} u(t)$$

$$\therefore X_2(\omega) = \frac{1}{b + j\omega}$$

We know that

$$F[x_1(t) * x_2(t)] = X_1(\omega) X_2(\omega)$$

$$\therefore x_1(t) * x_2(t) = F^{-1}[X_1(\omega) X_2(\omega)]$$

$$\begin{aligned} \therefore x_1(t) * x_2(t) &= F^{-1}\left[\frac{1}{(a+j\omega)(b+j\omega)}\right] = F^{-1}\left[\frac{1}{(b-a)}\left(\frac{1}{a+j\omega} - \frac{1}{b+j\omega}\right)\right] \\ &= \frac{1}{b-a}\left[F^{-1}\left(\frac{1}{a+j\omega}\right) - F^{-1}\left(\frac{1}{b+j\omega}\right)\right] \\ &= \frac{1}{b-a}\left[e^{-at}u(t) - e^{-bt}u(t)\right] \end{aligned}$$

**EXAMPLE 7.3** Find the convolution of the signals  $x_1(t) = 2e^{-2t} u(t)$  and  $x_2(t) = u(t)$  using Fourier transform.

**Solution:** Given

$$x_1(t) = 2e^{-2t} u(t)$$

$$\therefore X_1(\omega) = \frac{2}{j\omega + 2}$$

$$x_2(t) = u(t)$$

$$\therefore X_2(\omega) = \pi\delta(\omega) + \frac{1}{j\omega}$$

$$\therefore X_1(\omega) X_2(\omega) = \frac{2}{j\omega + 2} \left( \pi\delta(\omega) + \frac{1}{j\omega} \right) = \frac{2}{j\omega(j\omega + 2)} + \frac{2\pi\delta(\omega)}{j\omega + 2}$$

Since  $x_1(t) * x_2(t) = F^{-1}[X_1(\omega) X_2(\omega)]$ , we have

$$x_1(t) * x_2(t) = F^{-1}\left[\frac{2}{j\omega(j\omega + 2)} + \frac{2\pi\delta(\omega)}{j\omega + 2}\right] = F^{-1}\left[\frac{1}{j\omega} - \frac{1}{j\omega + 2} + \frac{2\pi\delta(\omega)}{j\omega + 2}\right]$$

Since  $\delta(\omega) = 1$  for  $\omega = 0$  and  $\delta(\omega) = 0$  for  $\omega \neq 0$ , we have  $\frac{2\pi\delta(\omega)}{j\omega + 2} = \pi\delta(\omega)$ .

$$\begin{aligned}\therefore x_1(t) * x_2(t) &= F^{-1} \left[ \frac{1}{j\omega} + \pi\delta(\omega) - \frac{1}{j\omega + 2} \right] = F^{-1} \left[ \frac{1}{j\omega} + \pi\delta(\omega) \right] - F^{-1} \left( \frac{1}{j\omega + 2} \right) \\ &= u(t) - e^{-2t} u(t) = (1 - e^{-2t}) u(t)\end{aligned}$$

**EXAMPLE 7.4** Find the convolution of signals using Fourier transform.

$$x_1(t) = e^{-t} u(t) \quad \text{and} \quad x_2(t) = e^{-t} u(t)$$

**Solution:** Given

$$x_1(t) = e^{-t} u(t)$$

$$\therefore X_1(\omega) = \frac{1}{j\omega + 1}$$

$$x_2(t) = e^{-t} u(t)$$

$$\therefore X_2(\omega) = \frac{1}{j\omega + 1}$$

$$\therefore X_1(\omega) X_2(\omega) = \frac{1}{(j\omega + 1)} \frac{1}{(j\omega + 1)} = \frac{1}{(j\omega + 1)^2}$$

Since  $x_1(t) * x_2(t) = F^{-1}[X_1(\omega) X_2(\omega)]$ , we have

$$x_1(t) * x_2(t) = F^{-1} \left[ \frac{1}{(j\omega + 1)^2} \right] = t e^{-t} u(t)$$

## 7.5 GRAPHICAL PROCEDURE TO PERFORM CONVOLUTION

The convolution of two signals can be performed using graphical method. The procedure is:

1. For the given signals  $x(t)$  and  $h(t)$ , replace the independent variable  $t$  by a dummy variable  $\tau$  and plot the graph for  $x(\tau)$  and  $h(\tau)$ .
2. Keep the function  $x(\tau)$  fixed. Visualise the function  $h(\tau)$  as a rigid wire frame and rotate (or invert) this frame about the vertical axis ( $\tau = 0$ ) to obtain  $h(-\tau)$ .
3. Shift the inverted frame along the  $\tau$ -axis by  $t$  sec. The shifted frame now represents  $h(t - \tau)$ .
4. Plot the graph for  $x(\tau)$  and  $h(t - \tau)$  on the same axis beginning with very large negative time shift  $t$ .
5. For a particular value of  $t = a$ , integration of the product  $x(\tau) h(a - \tau)$  represents the area under the product curve (common area). This common area represents the convolution of  $x(t)$  and  $h(t)$  for a shift of  $t = a$ .

$$\text{i.e. } \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} x(\tau) h(a - \tau) d\tau = [x(t) * h(t)]_{t=a}$$

6. Increase the time shift  $t$  and take the new interval whenever the function either  $x(\tau)$  or  $h(t - \tau)$  changes. The value of  $t$  at which the change occurs defines the end of the current interval and the beginning of a new interval. Calculate  $y(t)$  using Step 5.
7. The value of convolution obtained at different values of  $t$  (both positive and negative values) may be plotted on a graph to get the combined convolution.

**EXAMPLE 7.5** Find the convolution of the following signals by graphical method:

$$x(t) = e^{-3t} u(t); h(t) = u(t + 3)$$

**Solution:** Given  $x(t) = e^{-3t} u(t)$  and  $h(t) = u(t + 3)$

The output  $y(t) = x(t) * h(t) = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} x(\tau)h(t - \tau) d\tau$

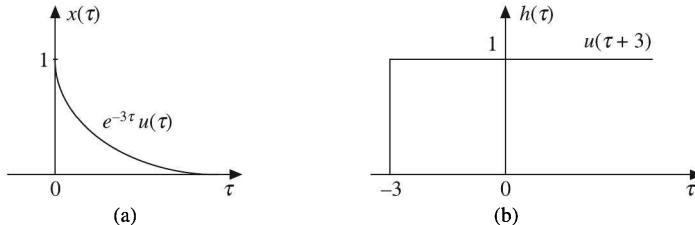
The two functions  $x(\tau)$  and  $h(\tau)$  will be

$$x(\tau) = e^{-3\tau} u(\tau) = e^{-3\tau} \text{ for } \tau \geq 0$$

and  $h(\tau) = u(\tau + 3) = 1 \text{ for } \tau \geq -3$

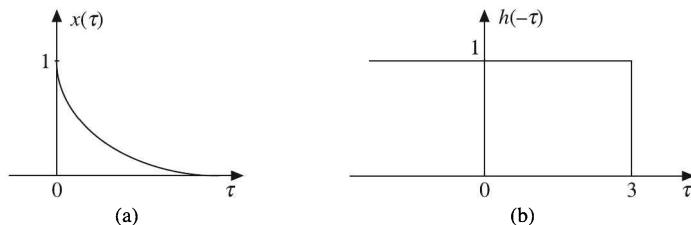
$$\therefore h(-\tau) = u(-\tau + 3)$$

$h(-\tau)$  can be obtained by folding  $h(\tau)$  about  $\tau = 0$ . Figure 7.1 shows the plots of  $x(\tau)$  and  $h(\tau)$ .



**Figure 7.1** Plots of (a)  $x(\tau)$ , and (b)  $h(\tau)$ .

Figure 7.2 shows the plots of  $x(\tau)$  and  $h(-\tau)$ .



**Figure 7.2** Plots of (a)  $x(\tau)$ , and (b)  $h(-\tau)$ .

Figure 7.3 shows the plots of  $x(\tau)$  and  $h(t - \tau)$  together on the same time axis. Here the signal  $h(t - \tau)$  is sketched for  $t < -3$ .  $x(\tau)$  and  $h(t - \tau)$  do not overlap. Therefore, the product  $x(t)h(t - \tau)$  is equal to zero.

$\therefore$

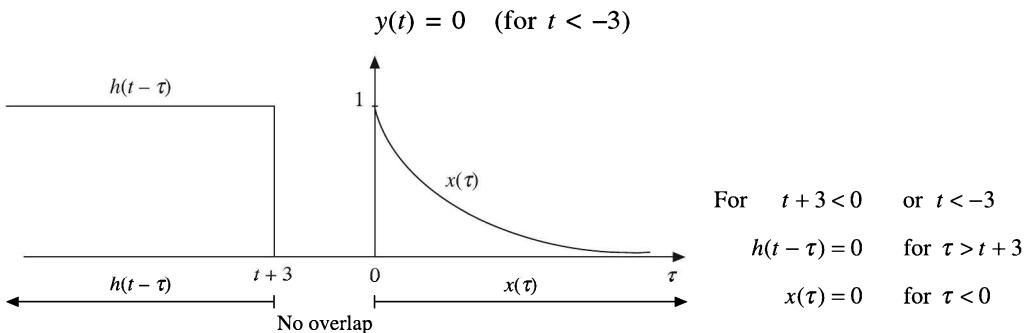


Figure 7.3 Plots of  $x(\tau)$ , and  $h(t - \tau)$  when there is no overlap.

Now, increase the time shift  $t$  until the signal  $h(t - \tau)$  intersects  $x(\tau)$ . Figure 7.4 shows the situation for  $t > -3$ . Here  $x(\tau)$  and  $h(t - \tau)$  overlapped [This overlapping continues for all values of  $t > -3$  upto  $t = \infty$  because  $x(\tau)$  exists for all values of  $\tau > 0$ ]. But  $x(\tau) = 0$  for  $\tau < 0$  and  $h(t - \tau) = 0$  for  $\tau > t + 3$ . Therefore, the integration interval is from  $\tau = 0$  to  $\tau = t + 3$ .

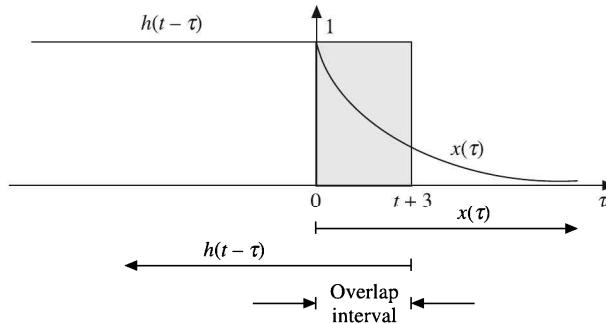


Figure 7.4 Plots of  $x(\tau)$ , and  $h(t - \tau)$  with overlap.

$$\begin{aligned}
 y(t) &= \int_0^{t+3} x(\tau) h(t - \tau) d\tau \\
 &= \int_0^{t+3} e^{-3\tau} d\tau = \left[ \frac{e^{-3\tau}}{-3} \right]_0^{t+3} \\
 &= \frac{e^{-3(t+3)} - 1}{-3} \\
 &= \frac{1 - e^{-3(t+3)}}{3}
 \end{aligned}$$

$$\therefore \begin{aligned} y(t) &= 0 && \text{for } t < -3 \\ &= \frac{1 - e^{-3(t+3)}}{3} && \text{for } t > -3 \end{aligned}$$

**EXAMPLE 7.6** The input and the impulse response to the system are given by

$$x(t) = u(t + 2)$$

$$h(t) = u(t - 3)$$

Determine the output of the system graphically.

**Solution:** Given  $x(t) = u(t + 2)$  and  $h(t) = u(t - 3)$ . The output  $y(t)$  is the convolution of  $x(t)$  and  $h(t)$ , i.e.

$$y(t) = x(t) * h(t) = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} x(\tau) h(t - \tau) d\tau$$

The two functions  $x(\tau)$  and  $h(\tau)$  will be

$$x(\tau) = u(\tau + 2) = 1 \quad (\text{for } \tau \geq -2)$$

and

$$h(\tau) = u(\tau - 3) = 1 \quad (\text{for } \tau \geq 3)$$

The functions  $x(\tau)$ ,  $h(\tau)$  and  $h(-\tau)$  are plotted as shown in Figure 7.5.

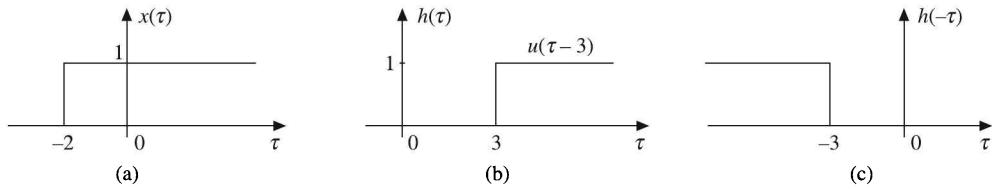


Figure 7.5 Plots of (a)  $x(\tau)$ , (b)  $h(\tau)$ , and (c)  $h(-\tau)$ .

Figure 7.6 shows the plots of the functions  $x(\tau)$  and  $h(t - \tau)$  together on the same axis.  $h(t - \tau)$  is sketched for  $t - 3 < -2$ , i.e. for  $t < 1$ .

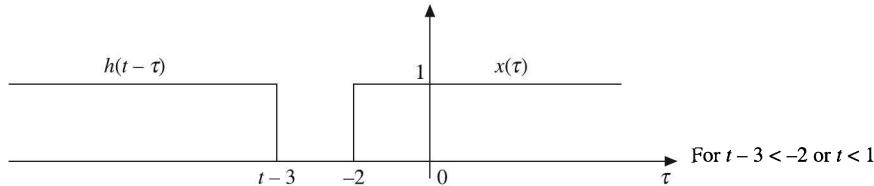


Figure 7.6 Plots of  $x(\tau)$ , and  $h(t - \tau)$  for  $t < 1$ .

For  $t < 1$ ,  $x(\tau)$  and  $h(t - \tau)$  do not overlap because

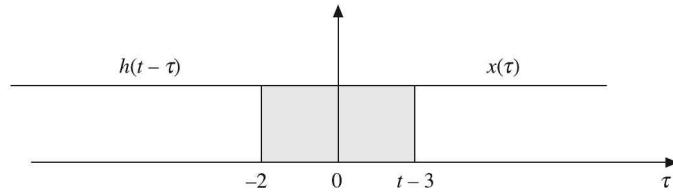
$$x(\tau) = 0 \quad (\text{for } \tau < -2)$$

and

$$h(t - \tau) = 0 \quad (\text{for } t - 3 < -2)$$

$$\therefore y(t) = 0$$

Figure 7.7 shows the plots of  $x(\tau)$  and  $h(t - \tau)$  when  $t - 3 < -2$  or  $t > 1$ . Now, there is an overlap between signals  $x(\tau)$  and  $h(t - \tau)$  in the interval  $-2 < \tau < t - 3$ .



**Figure 7.7** Plots of  $x(\tau)$ , and  $h(t - \tau)$  when there is overlap.

From Figure 7.7, we have three separate regions as follows:

For  $-\infty < \tau < -2$ ,  $x(\tau) h(t - \tau) = 0$ , since there is no overlap.

For  $-2 < \tau < t - 3$ ,  $x(\tau) h(t - \tau) \neq 0$ , since there is an overlap.

For  $t - 3 \leq \tau \leq \infty$ ,  $x(\tau) h(t - \tau) = 0$ , since there is no overlap.

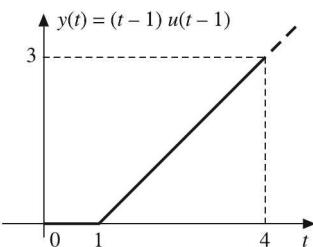
Based on the above, we can write the convolution integral as:

$$\begin{aligned} y(t) &= \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} x(\tau) h(t - \tau) d\tau \\ &= \int_{-\infty}^{-2} (0 \times 1) d\tau + \int_{-2}^{t-3} (1 \times 1) d\tau + \int_{t-3}^{\infty} (1 \times 0) d\tau \\ &= \int_{-2}^{t-3} d\tau = [\tau]_{-2}^{t-3} \\ &= t - 3 + 2 = t - 1 \\ \therefore y(t) &= 0 \quad (\text{for } t < 1) \\ &= t - 1 \quad (\text{for } t > 1) \end{aligned}$$

This function can also be written as:

$$y(t) = (t - 1) u(t - 1)$$

This is unit ramp delayed by 1. Its plot is shown in Figure 7.8.



**Figure 7.8** Plot of  $y(t) = u(t + 2) * u(t - 3)$ .

**EXAMPLE 7.7** The impulse response of the circuit is given as  $h(t) = e^{-2t} u(t)$ . This circuit is excited by an input of  $x(t) = e^{-4t} [u(t) - u(t - 2)]$ . Determine the output of the circuit.

**Solution:** Here the impulse response and input are:

$$h(t) = e^{-2t} u(t) = e^{-2t} \quad (\text{for } t \geq 0)$$

and  $x(t) = e^{-4t} [u(t) - u(t - 2)] = e^{-4t} \quad (\text{for } 0 < t < 2)$

The output of the circuit  $y(t)$  can be obtained by convolution of  $x(t)$  and  $h(t)$ .

$$y(t) = x(t) * h(t) = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} x(\tau) h(t - \tau) d\tau$$

Writing  $x(t)$  and  $h(t)$  in terms of  $\tau$ , we have

$$x(\tau) = e^{-4\tau} \quad (\text{for } 0 \leq \tau \leq 2)$$

and  $h(\tau) = e^{-2\tau} \quad (\text{for } \tau \geq 0)$

Figure 7.9 shows the plots of  $x(\tau)$ ,  $h(\tau)$  and  $h(-\tau)$  w.r.t.  $\tau$ .

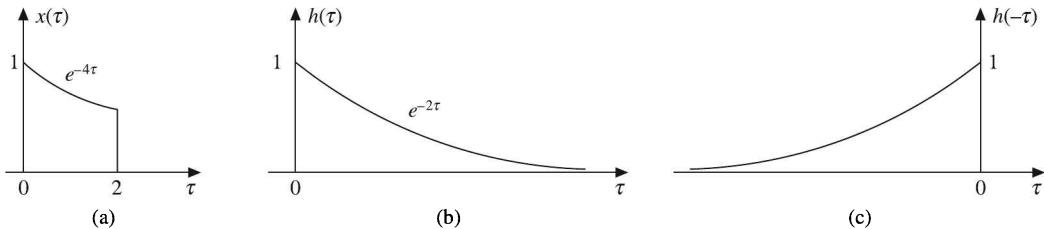


Figure 7.9 Plots of (a)  $x(\tau)$ , (b)  $h(\tau)$  and (c)  $h(-\tau)$ .

For the convolution of  $x(t)$  and  $h(t)$ , we require  $h(t - \tau)$ .

$$\therefore h(t - \tau) = e^{-2(t-\tau)} u(t - \tau) = e^{-2(t-\tau)} \quad (\text{for } t - \tau > 0 \text{ or } \tau < t)$$

The plots of  $x(\tau)$  and  $h(t - \tau)$  drawn on the same time axis are shown in Figure 7.10 for  $t < 0$ . The plots do not overlap.

$$\therefore y(t) = 0 \quad (\text{for } t < 0)$$

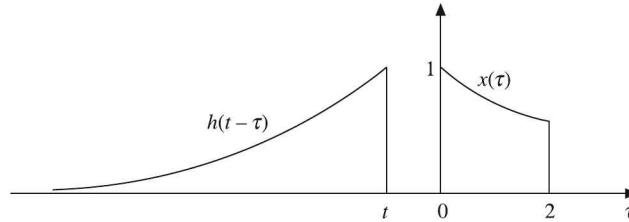
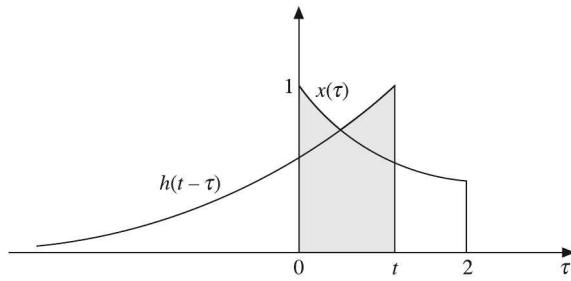


Figure 7.10 Plots of  $x(\tau)$ , and  $h(t - \tau)$  for  $t < 0$ .

**For  $0 \leq t \leq 2$**

Figure 7.11 shows the plots of  $x(\tau)$  and  $h(t - \tau)$  for  $0 \leq t \leq 2$  drawn on the same time axis. Observe that there is an overlap between  $x(\tau)$  and  $h(t - \tau)$  as shown by the shaded area only for 0 to  $t$ .



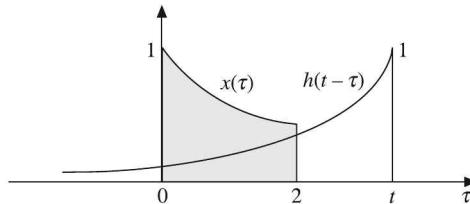
**Figure 7.11** Plots of  $x(\tau)$  and  $h(t - \tau)$  when there is an overlap.

For  $0 \leq t \leq 2$  we can write the convolution as:

$$\begin{aligned}
 y(t) &= \int_{-\infty}^0 (0) \times h(t - \tau) d\tau + \int_0^t x(\tau) h(t - \tau) d\tau + \int_t^2 x(\tau) \times (0) d\tau \\
 &= \int_0^t x(\tau) h(t - \tau) d\tau \\
 &= \int_0^t (e^{-4\tau}) (e^{-2(t-\tau)}) d\tau \\
 &= e^{-2t} \int_0^t e^{-2\tau} d\tau \\
 &= e^{-2t} \left[ \frac{e^{-2\tau}}{-2} \right]_0^t = e^{-2t} \left( \frac{e^{-2t} - 1}{-2} \right) = \frac{1}{2} e^{-2t} (1 - e^{-2t}) \\
 \therefore y(t) &= \frac{1}{2} e^{-2t} (1 - e^{-2t}) \quad (\text{for } 0 \leq t \leq 2)
 \end{aligned}$$

### For $t > 2$

Now, consider the case  $t > 2$ . For  $t > 2$ , the plots of  $x(\tau)$  and  $h(t - \tau)$  drawn on the same time axis are shown in Figure 7.12. In this figure, observe that  $x(\tau)$  and  $h(t - \tau)$  overlap only for  $0 \leq t \leq 2$  as shown by the shaded area.



**Figure 7.12** Plots of  $x(\tau)$ , and  $h(t - \tau)$  for  $t > 2$ .

Hence we can write the convolution equation as:

$$\begin{aligned}
 y(t) &= \int_{-\infty}^0 (0) \times h(t - \tau) d\tau + \int_0^2 x(\tau) h(t - \tau) d\tau + \int_2^t (0) \times h(t - \tau) d\tau \\
 &= \int_0^2 x(\tau) h(t - \tau) d\tau = \int_0^2 e^{-4\tau} e^{-2(t-\tau)} d\tau = e^{-2t} \int_0^2 e^{-2\tau} d\tau \\
 &= e^{-2t} \left[ \frac{e^{-2\tau}}{-2} \right]_0^2 = e^{-2t} \left( \frac{e^{-4} - 1}{-2} \right) \\
 &= \frac{1}{2} e^{-2t} (1 - e^{-4}) \quad \text{for } t > 2
 \end{aligned}$$

Thus, we obtained the convolution as follows:

$$y(t) = \begin{cases} 0 & \text{for } t < 0 \\ \frac{1}{2}(1 - e^{-2t})e^{-2t} & \text{for } 0 < t < 2 \\ \frac{1}{2}(1 - e^{-4})e^{-2t} & \text{for } t > 2 \end{cases}$$

This function is plotted in Figure 7.13.

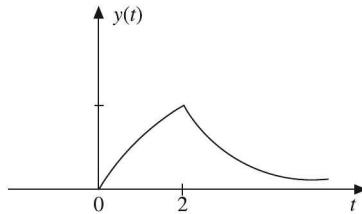


Figure 7.13 Plot of  $y(t)$ .

At  $t = 2$ , the value of  $y(t) = \frac{1}{2}(1 - e^{-4})e^{-2t} = 0.009$

In Figure 7.13, observe that  $y(t)$  increases from  $t = 0$  to  $t = 2$ . It has the maximum value at  $t = 2$ . Then  $y(t)$  decays exponentially.

**EXAMPLE 7.8** Obtain the convolution of the following two functions:

$$x(t) = \begin{cases} 1 & \text{for } -3 \leq t \leq 3 \\ 0 & \text{elsewhere} \end{cases}$$

$$h(t) = \begin{cases} 2 & \text{for } 0 \leq t \leq 3 \\ 0 & \text{elsewhere} \end{cases}$$

**Solution:** The function  $x(t)$  is a pulse of amplitude 1 from  $-3$  to  $3$ . The function  $h(t)$  is a pulse of amplitude 2 from  $0$  to  $3$ . Changing the variable  $t$  to  $\tau$ ,  $x(\tau)$ ,  $h(\tau)$  and  $h(-\tau)$  are plotted as shown in Figure 7.14.

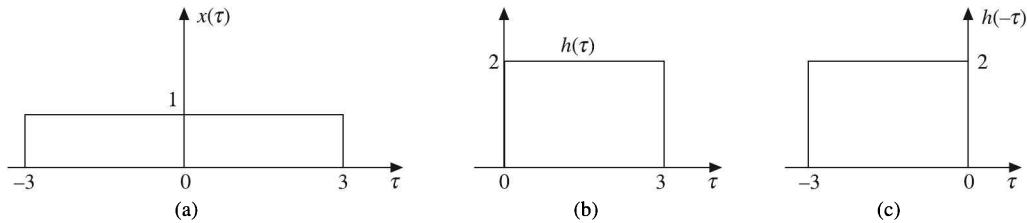


Figure 7.14 Plots of (a)  $x(\tau)$ , (b)  $h(\tau)$ , and (c)  $h(-\tau)$ .

#### For $t < -3$

The plots of  $x(\tau)$  and  $h(t - \tau)$  for  $t < -3$  drawn on the same time axis are shown in Figure 7.15. It can be observed that there is no overlap between  $x(\tau)$  and  $h(t - \tau)$  for  $t < -3$ . Therefore, the product  $x(\tau) h(t - \tau)$  will be always zero.

$$\therefore y(t) = 0 \quad (\text{for } t < -3)$$

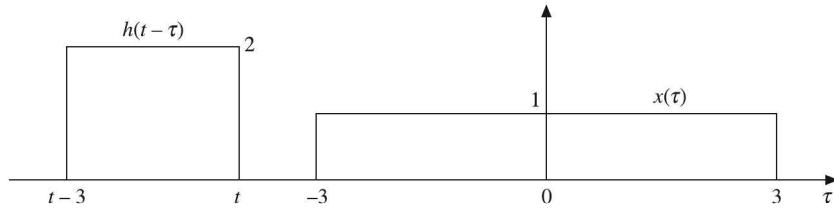


Figure 7.15 Plots of  $x(\tau)$ , and  $h(t - \tau)$  for  $t < -3$ .

#### For $-3 < t < 0$

Figure 7.16 shows the plots of  $x(\tau)$  and  $h(t - \tau)$  for  $-3 \leq t \leq 0$ . Observe that there is a partial overlap between  $x(\tau)$  and  $h(t - \tau)$  as shown by the shaded area. The signals overlap in the interval  $-3$  to  $t$ .

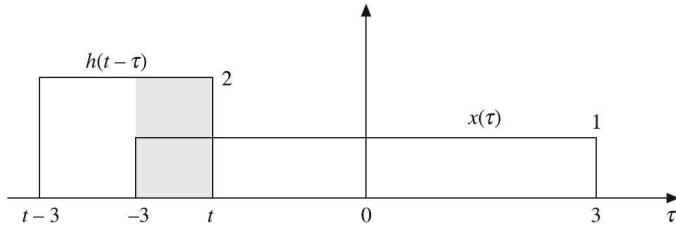
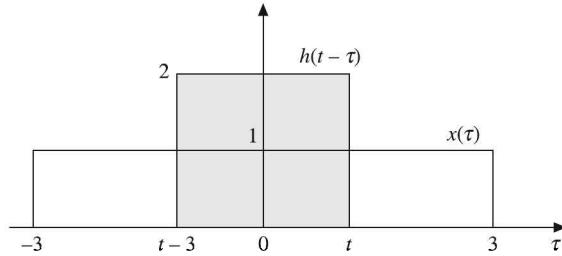


Figure 7.16 Plots of  $x(\tau)$ , and  $h(t - \tau)$  for  $-3 < t < 0$ .

$$\begin{aligned} y(t) &= \int_{-3}^t x(\tau) h(t - \tau) d\tau \\ &= \int_{-3}^t (1)(2) d\tau = 2 \int_{-3}^t d\tau = 2[\tau]_{-3}^t \\ &= 2[t - (-3)] = 2(t + 3) \quad (\text{for } -3 < t < 0) \end{aligned}$$

**For  $0 \leq t \leq 3$** 

Figure 7.17 shows the waveforms of  $x(\tau)$  and  $h(t - \tau)$  for  $0 \leq t \leq 3$ . For this range of  $t$ , both the pulses fully overlap each other. The shaded area shows the overlap.



**Figure 7.17** Plots of  $x(\tau)$ , and  $h(t - \tau)$  for  $0 \leq t \leq 3$ .

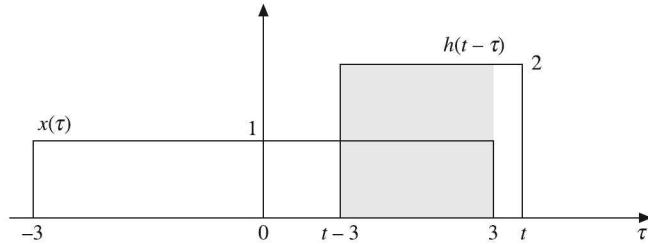
The convolution for this range is

$$\begin{aligned} y(t) &= \int_{t-3}^t x(\tau) h(t - \tau) d\tau = \int_{t-3}^t (1)(2) d\tau \\ &= 2 \int_{t-3}^t d\tau = 2[\tau]_{t-3}^t = 2[t - (t - 3)] = 6 \end{aligned}$$

$$\therefore y(t) = 6 \quad (\text{for } 0 \leq t \leq 3)$$

**For  $3 < t < 6$** 

The plots of  $x(\tau)$  and  $h(t - \tau)$  are shown in Figure 7.18 for  $3 \leq t \leq 6$ . For this range,  $x(\tau)$  and  $h(t - \tau)$  partially overlap each other. The shaded area in the figure shows the overlap. The overlap is in the interval  $t - 3 \leq t \leq 3$ .



**Figure 7.18** Plots of  $x(\tau)$ , and  $h(t - \tau)$  for  $3 \leq t \leq 6$ .

For this range, we can write the convolution as:

$$\begin{aligned} y(t) &= \int_{t-3}^3 x(\tau) h(t - \tau) d\tau = \int_{t-3}^3 (1)(2) d\tau \\ &= 2 \int_{t-3}^3 d\tau = 2[\tau]_{t-3}^3 = 2[3 - (t - 3)] \\ &= 2(6 - t) \quad (\text{for } 3 \leq t \leq 6) \end{aligned}$$

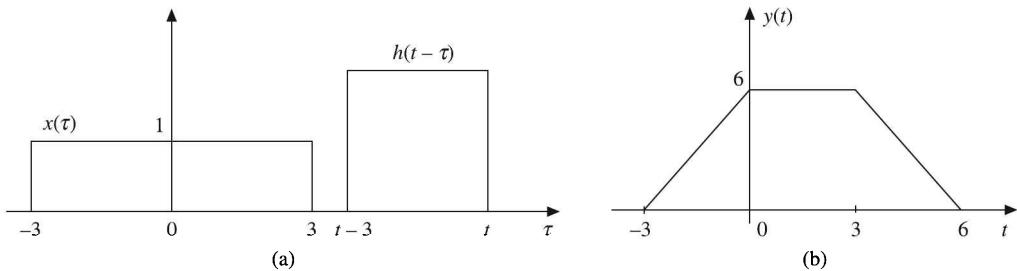
For  $t > 6$  there is no overlap between  $x(\tau)$  and  $h(t - \tau)$  as shown in Figure 7.19(a). Thus,  $x(\tau) h(t - \tau) = 0$ , and so the convolution is zero, i.e.

$$y(t) = 0 \quad (\text{for } t > 6)$$

The result of convolution obtained by combining all the above is given as:

$$\therefore y(t) = \begin{cases} 0 & \text{for } t < -3 \\ 2(t+3) & \text{for } -3 \leq t < 0 \\ 6 & \text{for } 0 < t < 3 \\ 2(6-t) & \text{for } 3 \leq t \leq 6 \\ 0 & \text{for } t > 6 \end{cases}$$

The plot of  $y(t)$  is shown in Figure 7.19(b).



**Figure 7.19** (a) Plots of  $x(\tau)$  and  $h(t - \tau)$  for  $t > 6$ , and (b) Plot of  $y(t)$ .

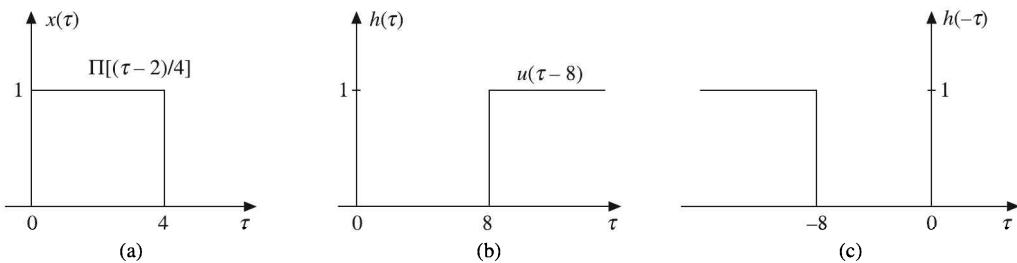
**EXAMPLE 7.9** Find the convolution of the signals

$$x(t) = \Pi\left(\frac{t-2}{4}\right); \quad h(t) = u(t-8)$$

**Solution:** Changing the variable  $t$  to  $\tau$ , we have

$$x(\tau) = \Pi\left(\frac{\tau-2}{4}\right) \quad \text{and} \quad h(\tau) = u(\tau-8)$$

$x(\tau)$ ,  $h(\tau)$ , and  $h(-\tau)$  are plotted as shown in Figure 7.20.



**Figure 7.20** Plots of (a)  $x(\tau)$  (b)  $h(\tau)$  and (c)  $h(-\tau)$ .

**For  $0 < t < 8$** 

Figure 7.21 shows  $x(\tau)$  and  $h(t - \tau)$  plotted on the same time axis for  $t - 8 < 0$ , i.e. for  $t < 8$ . In this case, there is no overlap of signals  $x(\tau)$  and  $h(t - \tau)$ . Therefore,  $x(\tau) h(t - \tau) = 0$ .

$\therefore$

$$y(t) = 0 \quad \text{for } t < 8$$

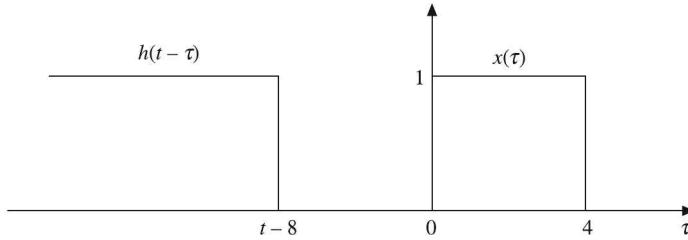


Figure 7.21 Plots of  $x(\tau)$ , and  $h(t - \tau)$  for  $t < 8$ .

**For  $8 < t < 12$** 

Figure 7.22 shows  $x(\tau)$  and  $h(t - \tau)$  plotted on the same time axis for  $t > 8$ . In this case, there is a partial overlap of  $x(\tau)$  and  $h(t - \tau)$ . This overlap is shown by the shaded area.

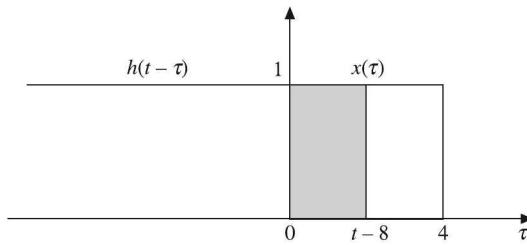


Figure 7.22 Plots of  $x(\tau)$ , and  $h(t - \tau)$  for  $t > 8$ .

From Figure 7.22, we have

$$x(\tau) h(t - \tau) = \begin{cases} 0 & \text{for } \tau < 0 \\ 0 & \text{for } \tau \geq t - 8 \\ 1 & \text{for } 0 < \tau < t - 8 \end{cases}$$

Therefore, for  $8 \leq t \leq 12$ ,

$$\begin{aligned} y(t) &= \int_0^{t-8} x(\tau) h(t - \tau) d\tau \\ &= \int_0^{t-8} d\tau = [\tau]_0^{t-8} = t - 8 \end{aligned}$$

Figure 7.23(a) shows the plots of  $x(\tau)$  and  $h(t - \tau)$  for  $t > 12$ . Here again there is a partial overlap of  $x(\tau)$  and  $h(t - \tau)$  between 0 and 4.

In this case,

$$x(\tau) h(t - \tau) = \begin{cases} 0 & \text{for } \tau < 0 \\ 0 & \text{for } \tau > 4 \\ 1 & \text{for } 0 < \tau < 4 \end{cases}$$

$$\therefore y(t) = \int_0^4 x(\tau) h(t - \tau) d\tau = \int_0^4 d\tau = [t]_0^4 = 4$$

Combining all, we get

$$y(t) = \begin{cases} 0 & \text{for } t \leq 8 \\ t - 8 & \text{for } 8 \leq t \leq 12 \\ 4 & \text{for } t \geq 12 \end{cases}$$

The plot of  $y(t)$  is shown in Figure 7.23(b).

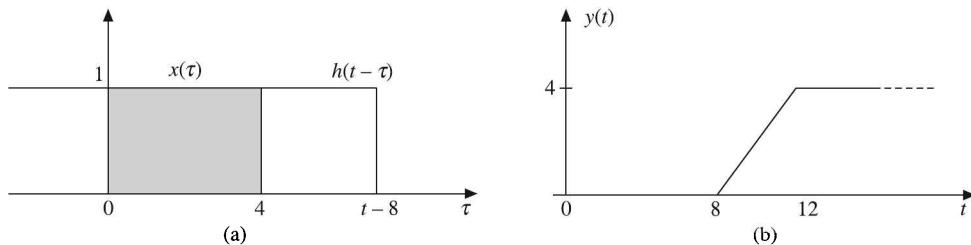


Figure 7.23 (a) Plots of  $x(\tau)$ , and  $h(t - \tau)$  for  $t > 12$ , and (b)  $y(t)$ .

**EXAMPLE 7.10** Find the convolution of the signals  $x(t)$  and  $h(t)$  shown in Figure 7.24.

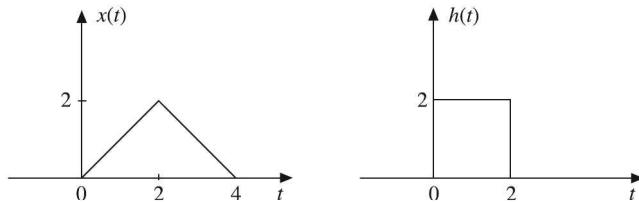


Figure 7.24 Waveforms  $x(t)$  and  $h(t)$ .

**Solution:** The given signals  $x(t)$  and  $h(t)$  can be mathematically expressed as:

$$x(t) = \begin{cases} t & \text{for } 0 \leq t \leq 2 \\ 4 - t & \text{for } 2 \leq t \leq 4 \end{cases}$$

and

$$h(t) = 2 \quad \text{for } 0 \leq t \leq 2$$

Changing the variable  $t$  to  $\tau$ , the plots of  $x(\tau)$ ,  $h(\tau)$  and  $h(-\tau)$  are shown in Figure 7.25.

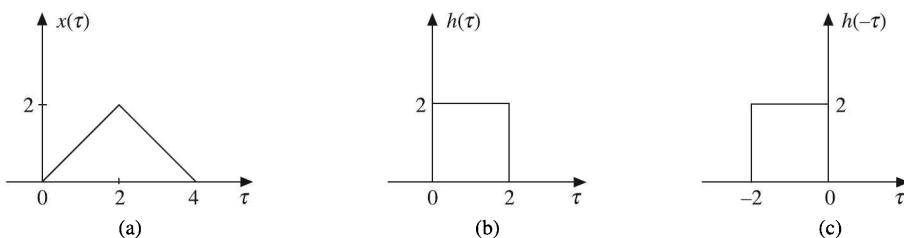
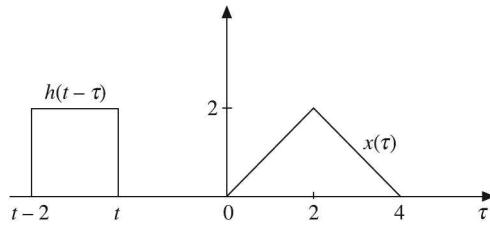


Figure 7.25 Plots of (a)  $x(\tau)$ , (b)  $h(\tau)$ , and (c)  $h(-\tau)$ .

**For  $t < 0$** 

Figure 7.26 shows the plots of  $x(\tau)$  and  $h(t - \tau)$  drawn on the same time axis for  $t < 0$ . There is no overlap between  $x(\tau)$  and  $h(t - \tau)$ . Therefore,  $x(\tau) h(t - \tau) = 0$  for  $t < 0$ .

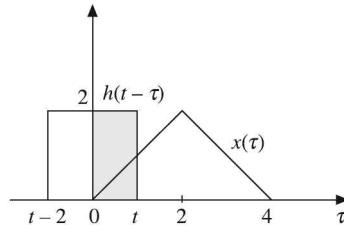
$$\therefore y(t) = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} x(\tau) h(t - \tau) d\tau = 0$$



**Figure 7.26** Plots of  $x(\tau)$ , and  $h(t - \tau)$  for  $t < 0$ .

**For  $0 < t < 2$** 

Figure 7.27 shows the plots of  $x(\tau)$  and  $h(t - \tau)$  drawn on the same time axis for  $0 < t < 2$ . There is a partial overlap between  $x(\tau)$  and  $h(t - \tau)$ . The shaded area in the figure indicates the overlap.



**Figure 7.27** Plots of  $x(\tau)$ , and  $h(t - \tau)$  for  $0 \leq t \leq 2$ .

Now,

$$x(\tau) = \tau$$

and

$$h(t - \tau) = 2 \quad (\text{for } 0 < t < 2)$$

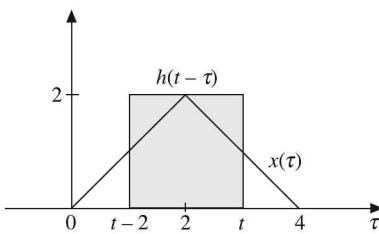
$$y(t) = \int_0^t x(\tau) h(t - \tau) d\tau = \int_0^t (\tau)(2) d\tau$$

$\therefore$

$$= 2 \left[ \frac{\tau^2}{2} \right]_0^t = t^2$$

**For  $2 \leq t \leq 4$** 

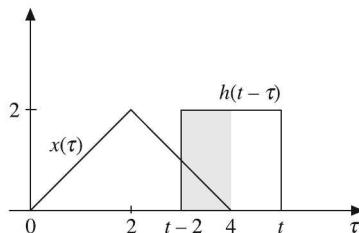
Figure 7.28 shows the plots of  $x(\tau)$  and  $h(t - \tau)$  drawn on the same time axis for  $2 \leq t \leq 4$ . Now, again there is a partial overlap between  $x(\tau)$  and  $h(t - \tau)$ . The shaded area in the figure indicates the overlap. The interval of integration is  $t - 2$  to  $t$ .

Figure 7.28 Plots of  $x(\tau)$ , and  $h(t - \tau)$  for  $2 \leq t \leq 4$ .

$$\begin{aligned} \therefore y(t) &= \int_{t-2}^2 x(\tau) h(t - \tau) d\tau + \int_2^t x(\tau) h(t - \tau) d\tau \\ &= \int_{t-2}^2 \tau(2) d\tau + \int_2^t (4 - \tau)(2) d\tau = 2 \left[ \frac{\tau^2}{2} \right]_{t-2}^t + \int_2^t (8 - 2\tau) d\tau \\ &= \frac{2}{2} \left[ 4 - (t-2)^2 \right] + \left[ 8\tau - \frac{2\tau^2}{2} \right]_2^t = -2t^2 + 12t - 12 \end{aligned}$$

**For  $4 \leq t \leq 6$** 

Figure 7.29 shows the plots of  $x(\tau)$  and  $h(t - \tau)$  drawn on the same time axis for  $4 \leq t \leq 6$ . There is a partial overlap of  $x(\tau)$  and  $h(t - \tau)$ . The shaded area in the figure represents the overlap. The interval of integration is  $t - 2$  to 4.

Figure 7.29 Plots of  $x(\tau)$ , and  $h(t - \tau)$  for  $4 < t < 6$ .

$$\begin{aligned} \therefore y(t) &= \int_{t-2}^4 x(\tau) h(t - \tau) d\tau \\ &= \int_{t-2}^4 (4 - \tau)(2) d\tau = \int_{t-2}^4 (8d\tau - 2\tau d\tau) \\ &= [8\tau - \tau^2]_{t-2}^4 = 8[4 - (t-2)] - [4^2 - (t-2)^2] \\ &= 8(6 - t) - [16 - (t^2 - 4t + 4)] = 48 - 8t - (16 - t^2 + 4t - 4) \\ &= t^2 - 12t + 36 \end{aligned}$$

**For  $t \geq 6$** 

The plots of  $x(\tau)$  and  $h(t - \tau)$  for  $t > 6$  are shown in Figure 7.30.

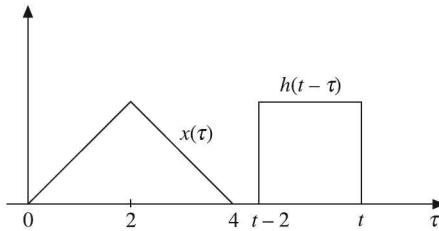


Figure 7.30 Plots of  $x(\tau)$ , and  $h(t - \tau)$  for  $t > 6$ .

There is no overlap between  $x(\tau)$  and  $h(t - \tau)$ .

$$\therefore y(t) = 0$$

Combining all, we have

$$y(t) = \begin{cases} 0 & \text{for } t < 0 \\ t^2 & \text{for } 0 \leq t \leq 2 \\ -2t^2 + 12t - 12 & \text{for } 2 \leq t \leq 4 \\ t^2 - 12t + 36 & \text{for } 4 \leq t \leq 6 \\ 0 & \text{for } t \geq 6 \end{cases}$$

**EXAMPLE 7.11** Find  $x_1(t) * x_2(t)$  for the functions  $x_1(t)$  and  $x_2(t)$  shown in Figure 7.31[(a) and (b)].

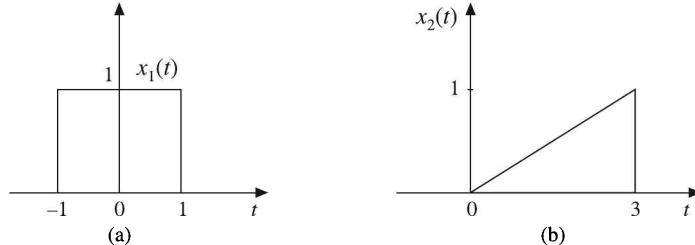


Figure 7.31 Waveforms for Example 7.11.

**Solution:** Here  $x_1(t)$  has a simpler mathematical description than that of  $x_2(t)$ , so it is preferable to invert  $x_1(t)$ . Hence we shall determine  $x_2(t) * x_1(t)$  rather than  $x_1(t) * x_2(t)$ .

Thus,

$$y(t) = x_2(t) * x_1(t) = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} x_2(\tau) x_1(t - \tau) d\tau$$

The expressions for  $x_1(t)$  and  $x_2(t)$  are:

$$x_1(t) = 1 \quad (\text{for } -1 \leq t \leq 1)$$

and

$$x_2(t) = \frac{t}{3} \quad (\text{for } 0 \leq t \leq 3)$$

$$\therefore x_1(-\tau) = 1 \quad \text{for } -1 \leq \tau \leq 1 \text{ and } x_2(\tau) = \frac{\tau}{3}$$

Figure 7.32 shows the plots of  $x_2(\tau)$ ,  $x_1(\tau)$ , and  $x_1(-\tau)$ .

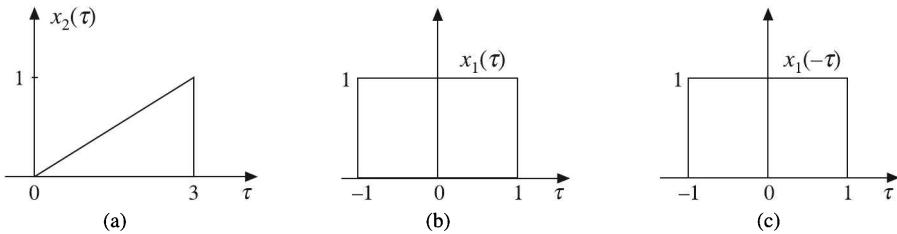


Figure 7.32 Plots of (a)  $x_2(\tau)$ , (b)  $x_1(\tau)$ , and (c)  $x_1(-\tau)$ .

Figure 7.33(a) shows  $x_2(\tau)$  and  $x_1(t - \tau)$  which is  $x_1(-\tau)$  shifted by  $t$  for  $t < -1$ . Because the edges of  $x_1(-\tau)$  are at  $\tau = -1$  and 1, the edges of  $x_1(t - \tau)$  are at  $-1 + t$  and  $1 + t$ . The two functions do not overlap for  $t < -1$ .

$$\therefore y(t) = 0 \quad \text{for } t < -1$$

Figure 7.33(b) shows  $x_2(\tau)$  and  $x_1(t - \tau)$  plotted on the same time axis for  $-1 < t < 1$ .

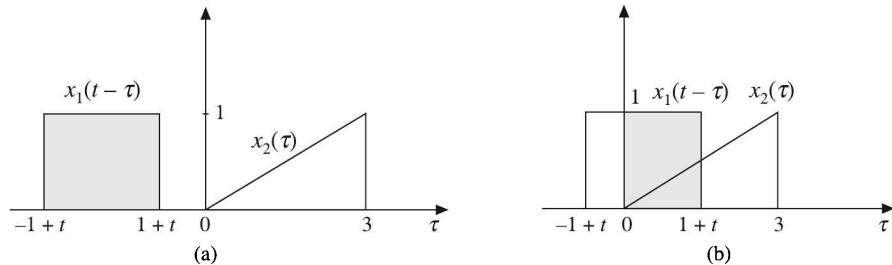


Figure 7.33 Plots of  $x_1(t - \tau)$ , and  $x_2(\tau)$  for (a)  $t < -1$ , and (b)  $-1 < t < 1$ .

The two functions overlap over the interval  $(0, 1 + t)$  so that

$$\begin{aligned} y(t) &= \int_0^{1+t} x_2(\tau) x_1(t - \tau) d\tau \\ &= \int_0^{1+t} \frac{1}{3} \tau d\tau = \frac{1}{3} \left[ \frac{\tau^2}{2} \right]_0^{1+t} \\ &= \frac{1}{6} (t+1)^2 \quad (\text{for } -1 \leq t \leq 1) \end{aligned}$$

This situation is depicted in Figure 7.33(b) which is valid only for  $-1 \leq t \leq 1$ .

For  $t > 1$  but  $< 2$ , the situation is illustrated in Figure 7.34(a). The two functions overlap only over the range  $-1 + t$  to  $1 + t$ . Note that the expressions for  $x_2(\tau)$  and  $x_1(t - \tau)$  do not change, only their range of integration changes. Therefore,

$$y(t) = \int_{-1+t}^{1+t} \frac{1}{3}\tau d\tau = \frac{2}{3}t \quad (\text{for } 1 \leq t \leq 2)$$

Note that the above two expressions for  $y(t)$  apply at  $t = 1$ , the transition point between their respective ranges. We can verify that both expressions really yield a value of  $2/3$  at  $t = 1$ , so that  $y(1) = 2/3$ .

For  $t \geq 2$  but  $< 4$ , the situation is as shown in Figure 7.34(b).

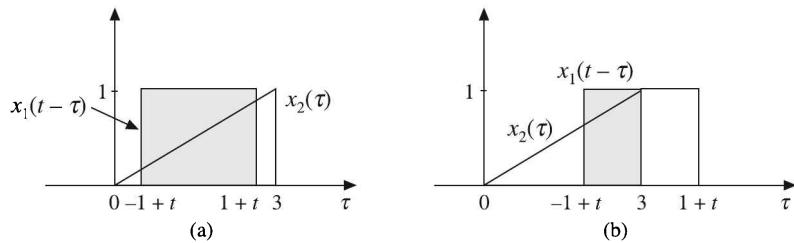


Figure 7.34 Plots of  $x_1(t - \tau)$  and  $x_2(\tau)$  for (a)  $1 < t < 2$ , and (b)  $2 < t < 4$ .

The functions  $x_2(\tau)$  and  $x_1(t - \tau)$  overlap over the interval from  $-1 + t$  to  $3$  so that

$$y(t) = \int_{-1+t}^3 \frac{1}{3}\tau d\tau = -\frac{1}{6}(t^2 - 2t - 8)$$

Again both the equations  $y(t) = (2/3)t$  and  $y(t) = -(1/6)(t^2 - 2t - 8)$  apply at the transition point at  $t = 2$ . We can verify that  $y(t) = 4/3$  at that point.

For  $t \geq 4$ ,  $x_1(t - \tau)$  has been shifted so far to the right that it no longer overlaps with  $x_2(\tau)$  as shown in Figure 7.35(a). Consequently  $y(t) = 0$  for  $t \geq 4$ .

The complete plot of  $y(t)$  is shown in Figure 7.35(b).

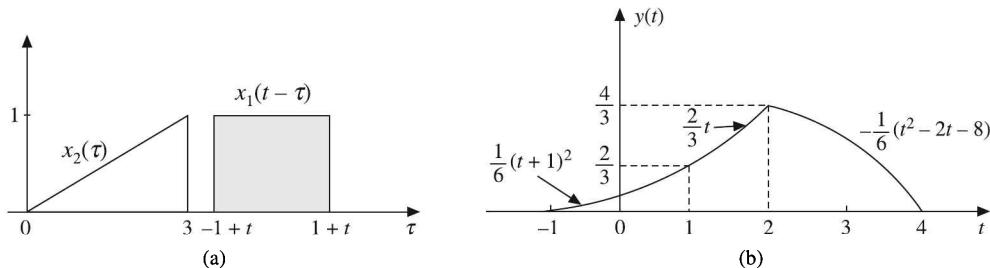


Figure 7.35 (a) Plots of  $x_1(t - \tau)$ , and  $x_2(\tau)$  for  $t \geq 4$  and (b)  $y(t)$ .

## 7.6 SIGNAL COMPARISON: CORRELATION OF FUNCTIONS

### *Concept of correlation*

The signals may be compared on the basis of similarity of waveforms. Quantitatively, a comparison may be based upon the amount of the component of one waveform contained in the other waveform. If  $x_1(t)$  and  $x_2(t)$  are two waveforms, then the waveform  $x_1(t)$  contains an amount  $C_{12}x_2(t)$  of that particular waveform  $x_2(t)$  in the interval  $(t_1, t_2)$ , where

$$C_{12} = \frac{\int_{t_1}^{t_2} x_1(t) x_2(t) dt}{\sqrt{\int_{t_1}^{t_2} x_2^2(t) dt}}$$

The magnitude of the integral in the numerator might be taken as an indication of similarity. If this integral vanishes, i.e.

$$\int_{t_1}^{t_2} x_1(t) x_2(t) dt = 0$$

then the two signals have no similarity over the interval  $(t_1, t_2)$ . Such signals are said to be orthogonal over the specified interval.

The integral  $\int_{t_1}^{t_2} x_1(t) x_2(t) dt$  forms the basis of comparison of the two signals  $x_1(t)$  and  $x_2(t)$  over the interval  $(t_1, t_2)$ .

In general we are interested in comparing the two signals over the interval  $(-\infty, \infty)$ . So the test integral becomes

$$\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} x_1(t) x_2(t) dt$$

However, there is a difficulty with this test integral which can be illustrated with the example of radar pulse. Figure 7.36 shows a transmitted pulse and a received pulse which is delayed w.r.t. transmitted pulse by  $T$  s. Obviously, the two waveforms are identical except that one

is delayed w.r.t. the other. Yet the test integral  $\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} x_1(t) x_2(t) dt$  yields zero because the product  $x_1(t) x_2(t)$  is zero everywhere. This indicates that the two waveforms have no measure of similarity which is obviously a wrong conclusion. Hence in order to search for a

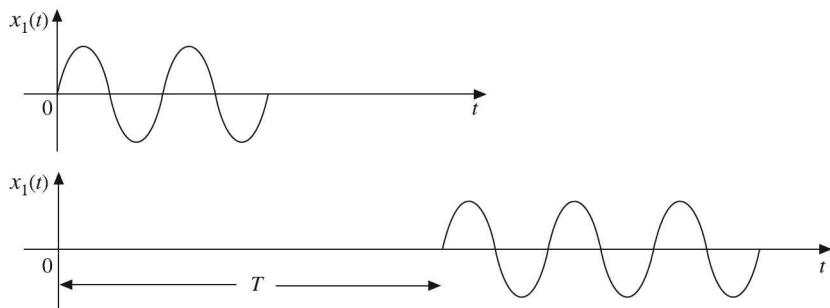


Figure 7.36 Signal comparison.

similarity between the two waveforms, we must shift one waveform w.r.t. the other by various amounts and see whether a similarity exists for some amount of shift of one function w.r.t. the other.

Therefore, the test integral is modified as

$$\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} x_1(t) x_2(t - \tau) dt$$

where  $\tau$  is the searching or scanning parameter. This integral is a function of  $\tau$ . This integral is known as the cross correlation function between  $x_1(t)$  and  $x_2(t)$  and is denoted by  $R_{12}(\tau)$ .

It is immaterial whether we shift the function  $x_1(t)$  by an amount of  $\tau$  in the negative direction or shift the function  $x_2(t)$  by the same amount in the positive direction. Thus

$$R_{12}(\tau) = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} x_1(t + \tau) x_2(t) dt$$

Thus the correlation of two functions or signals or waveforms is a measure of similarity between those signals. The correlation is of two types: cross correlation and autocorrelation. The autocorrelation and cross correlation are defined separately for energy (or aperiodic) signals and power (or periodic) signals.

### 7.6.1 Cross Correlation

The cross correlation between two different waveforms or signals is a measure of similarity or match or relatedness or coherence between one signal and the time delayed version of another signal. That means the cross correlation between two signals indicates how much one signal is related to the time delayed version of another signal.

#### *Cross correlation of energy signals*

Consider two general complex signals  $x_1(t)$  and  $x_2(t)$  of finite energy. The cross correlation of these two energy signals denoted by  $R_{12}(\tau)$  is given by

$$R_{12}(\tau) = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} x_1(t) x_2^*(t - \tau) dt = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} x_1(t + \tau) x_2^*(t) dt$$

If the two signals  $x_1(t)$  and  $x_2(t)$  are real, then

$$R_{12}(\tau) = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} x_1(t) x_2(t - \tau) dt = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} x_1(t + \tau) x_2(t) dt$$

If  $x_1(t)$  and  $x_2(t)$  have some similarity, then the cross correlation  $R_{12}(\tau)$  will have some finite value over the range of  $\tau$ . Also if

$$\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} x_1(t) x_2^*(t) dt = 0$$

i.e. if

$$R_{12}(0) = 0$$

then the two signals  $x_1(t)$  and  $x_2(t)$  are called *orthogonal signals*. That is the cross correlation for orthogonal signals is zero.

Another form of cross correlation between  $x_2(t)$  and  $x_1(t)$  is defined as:

$$R_{21}(\tau) = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} x_2(t) x_1^*(t - \tau) dt$$

In the above equations, the cross correlation function  $R_{12}(\tau)$  is a function of the variable  $\tau$ . The variable  $\tau$  is called the *delay parameter* or the *scanning parameter* or the *searching parameter*. It is time delay or time shift of one of the two signals. The delay parameter  $\tau$  determines the correlation between two signals. Two signals with no cross correlation at  $\tau = 0$  can have significant cross correlation by adjusting the parameter  $\tau$ . Two signals for which the cross correlation is zero for all values of  $\tau$  are called *uncorrelated* or *incoherent signals*.

### **Properties of cross correlation function for energy signals**

Following are the properties of cross correlation for energy signals:

1. The cross correlation functions exhibit conjugate symmetry, i.e.

$$R_{12}(\tau) = R_{21}^*(-\tau)$$

That is unlike convolution, cross correlation is not in general commutative, i.e.

$$R_{12}(\tau) \neq R_{21}(-\tau)$$

2. If

$$R_{12}(0) = 0$$

i.e. if

$$\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} x_1(t) x_2^*(t) dt = 0$$

then the two signals are said to be orthogonal over the entire time interval.

3. The cross correlation of two energy signals corresponds to the multiplication of the Fourier transform of one signal by the complex conjugate of Fourier transform of second signal.

i.e.

$$R_{12}(\tau) \longleftrightarrow X_1(\omega) X_2^*(\omega)$$

This is known as *correlation theorem*.

### **Cross correlation of power (periodic) signals**

The cross correlation function  $R_{12}(\tau)$  for two periodic signals  $x_1(t)$  and  $x_2(t)$  may be defined with the help of average form of correlation. If the two periodic signals  $x_1(t)$  and  $x_2(t)$  have the same time period  $T$ , then cross correlation is defined as:

$$R_{12}(\tau) = \frac{1}{T} \int_{-T/2}^{T/2} x_1(t) x_2^*(t - \tau) dt$$

The cross correlation of two periodic functions is defined in another form as:

$$R_{21}(\tau) = \frac{1}{T} \int_{-T/2}^{T/2} x_2(t) x_1^*(t - \tau) dt$$

### **Properties of cross correlation function for power (periodic) signals**

Following are the properties of cross correlation for power signals:

1. The Fourier transform of the cross correlation of two signals is equal to the multiplication of Fourier transform of one signal and complex conjugate of Fourier transform of other signal.

$$R_{12}(\tau) \longleftrightarrow X_1(\omega) X_2^*(\omega)$$

2. If

$$R_{12}(0) = 0$$

$$\text{i.e. if } \lim_{T \rightarrow \infty} \frac{1}{T} \int_{-T/2}^{T/2} x_1(t) x_2^*(t) dt = 0$$

then the signals are said to be orthogonal over the entire time interval.

3. The cross correlation exhibits conjugate symmetry, i.e.

$$R_{12}(\tau) = R_{21}^*(-\tau)$$

4. Unlike convolution, the cross correlation is not commutative, i.e.

$$R_{12}(\tau) \neq R_{21}(\tau)$$

**EXAMPLE 7.12** Prove that  $R_{12}(\tau) = R_{21}^*(-\tau)$  i.e. the cross correlation exhibits conjugate symmetry.

**Solution:** The cross correlation of two signals  $x_1(t)$  and  $x_2(t)$  is given as:

$$R_{12}(\tau) = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} x_1(t) x_2^*(t - \tau) dt$$

Let  $t - \tau = n$  in the above equation for  $R_{12}(\tau)$ ,

$$\therefore R_{12}(\tau) = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} x_1(n + \tau) x_2^*(n) dn$$

Also we know that

$$R_{21}(\tau) = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} x_2(t) x_1^*(t - \tau) dt$$

Let  $t = n$  in the above equation for  $R_{21}(\tau)$ .

$$\therefore R_{21}(\tau) = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} x_2(n) x_1^*(n - \tau) dn$$

$$\therefore R_{21}^*(\tau) = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} x_2^*(n) x_1(n - \tau) dn$$

$$\therefore R_{21}^*(-\tau) = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} x_2^*(n) x_1(n + \tau) dn$$

Comparing the above two equations for  $R_{12}(\tau)$  and  $R_{21}^*(-\tau)$ , we can write

$$R_{12}(\tau) = R_{21}^*(-\tau)$$

### 7.6.2 Autocorrelation

The autocorrelation function gives the measure of match or similarity or relatedness or coherence between a signal and its time delayed version. This means that the autocorrelation function is a special form of cross correlation function. It is defined as the correlation of a signal with itself.

The autocorrelation is defined separately for energy signals and power signals.

#### *Autocorrelation for energy signals*

The autocorrelation of an energy signal  $x(t)$  is given by

$$R_{11}(\tau) = R(\tau) = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} x(t) x^*(t - \tau) dt$$

where  $\tau$  is called the delay parameter and the signal  $x(t)$  is shifted by  $\tau$  in positive direction.

If  $x(t)$  is shifted by  $\tau$  in negative direction, then

$$R(\tau) = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} x(t + \tau) x^*(t) dt$$

#### *Properties of autocorrelation function of energy signals*

Following are the properties of autocorrelation for energy signals:

1. The autocorrelation function exhibits conjugate symmetry, i.e.

$$R(\tau) = R^*(-\tau)$$

Thus, it states that the real part of  $R(\tau)$  is an even function of  $\tau$  and the imaginary part of  $R(\tau)$  is an odd function of  $\tau$ .

*Proof:* The autocorrelation of an energy signal  $x(t)$  is given by

$$R(\tau) = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} x(t) x^*(t - \tau) dt$$

Taking the complex conjugate, we have

$$R^*(\tau) = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} x^*(t) x(t - \tau) dt$$

$$\begin{aligned}\therefore R^*(-\tau) &= \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} x^*(t) x(t+\tau) dt = R(\tau) \\ \therefore R(\tau) &= R^*(-\tau)\end{aligned}$$

2. The value of autocorrelation function of an energy signal at origin (i.e. at  $\tau = 0$ ) is equal to the total energy of that signal, i.e.

$$R(0) = E = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} |x(t)|^2 dt$$

*Proof:* We have

$$R(\tau) = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} x(t)x^*(t-\tau) dt$$

Putting  $\tau = 0$  gives

$$R(0) = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} x(t)x^*(t) dt = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} |x(t)|^2 dt = E$$

3. If  $\tau$  is increased in either direction, the autocorrelation  $R(\tau)$  reduces. As  $\tau$  reduces autocorrelation,  $R(\tau)$  increases and it is maximum at  $\tau = 0$ , i.e. at the origin. Therefore,

$$|R(\tau)| \leq R(0) \quad (\text{for all } \tau)$$

*Proof:* Consider the functions  $x(t)$  and  $x(t + \tau)$ .  $[x(t) \pm x(t + \tau)]^2$  is always greater than or equal to zero since it is squared, i.e.

$$x^2(t) + x^2(t + \tau) \pm 2x(t)x(t + \tau) \geq 0$$

or

$$x^2(t) + x^2(t + \tau) \geq \pm 2x(t)x(t + \tau)$$

Integrating both the sides, we get

$$\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} |x(t)|^2 dt + \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} |x(t+\tau)|^2 dt \geq 2 \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} x(t)x(t+\tau) dt$$

$$\therefore E + E \geq 2R(\tau) \quad [\text{If } x(t) \text{ is real valued function}]$$

$$\therefore E \geq R(\tau)$$

$$\text{or} \quad R(0) \geq |R(\tau)| \quad (\text{Since } R(0) = E)$$

4. The autocorrelation function  $R(\tau)$  and energy spectral density function  $\psi(\omega)$  of energy signal form a Fourier transform pair.

$$R(\tau) \longleftrightarrow \psi(\omega)$$

### Autocorrelation theorem

The autocorrelation theorem states that the Fourier transform of autocorrelation function  $R(\tau)$  yields the energy density function of signal  $x(t)$ , i.e.

$$\mathcal{F}[R(\tau)] = |X(\omega)|^2 = \psi(\omega)$$

*Proof:* The Fourier transform of autocorrelation function  $R(\tau)$  is:

$$\begin{aligned} F[R(\tau)] &= \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} R(\tau) e^{-j\omega\tau} d\tau = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} x(t) x(t-\tau) e^{-j\omega\tau} dt d\tau \\ &= \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} x(t) e^{-j\omega t} dt \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} x(t-\tau) e^{j\omega(t-\tau)} d\tau \\ &= X(\omega) \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} x(t-\tau) e^{j\omega(t-\tau)} d\tau \end{aligned}$$

Letting  $t - \tau = n$  in the second integral, we have

$$\begin{aligned} F[R(\tau)] &= X(\omega) \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} x(n) e^{j\omega n} dn \\ &= X(\omega) X(-\omega) = |X(\omega)|^2 \\ &= \psi(\omega) \end{aligned}$$

For a given function  $x(t)$ , there is a unique autocorrelation function but the reverse is not true. A given autocorrelation function may correspond to an infinite variety of waveforms.

### Autocorrelation function for power (periodic) signals

The autocorrelation function of a periodic signal with any period  $T$  is given by

$$R(\tau) = \text{Lt}_{T \rightarrow \infty} \frac{1}{T} \int_{-T/2}^{T/2} x(t) x^*(t-\tau) dt$$

### Properties of autocorrelation function for power signals

Following are the properties of autocorrelation function for power signals:

1. The autocorrelation function exhibits conjugate symmetry, i.e.

$$R(\tau) = R^*(-\tau)$$

*Proof:* We have

$$\begin{aligned} R(\tau) &= \text{Lt}_{T \rightarrow \infty} \frac{1}{T} \int_{-T/2}^{T/2} x(t) x^*(t-\tau) dt \\ \therefore R^*(\tau) &= \text{Lt}_{T \rightarrow \infty} \frac{1}{T} \int_{-T/2}^{T/2} x^*(t) x(t-\tau) dt \\ \therefore R^*(-\tau) &= \text{Lt}_{T \rightarrow \infty} \frac{1}{T} \int_{-T/2}^{T/2} x^*(t) x(t+\tau) dt = R(\tau) \\ \therefore R(\tau) &= R^*(-\tau) \end{aligned}$$

2. The autocorrelation function at origin is equal to the average power of that signal, i.e.

$$R(0) = P$$

3. The autocorrelation function  $R(\tau)$  has maximum value at the origin, i.e.

$$|R(\tau)| \leq R(0)$$

The value of autocorrelation reduces as  $\tau$  increases from origin.

4. The autocorrelation function  $R(\tau)$  and power spectral density  $S(\omega)$  form a Fourier transform pair, i.e.

$$R(\tau) \longleftrightarrow S(\omega)$$

5. The autocorrelation function is periodic with the same period as the periodic signal itself, i.e.

$$R(\tau) = R(\tau \pm nT), \quad n = 1, 2, 3, \dots$$

## 7.7 ENERGY DENSITY SPECTRUM

*Spectral density* It is the distribution of energy or power of a signal per unit bandwidth as a function of frequency.

*Energy signals* Signals with finite energy and zero average power, i.e.  $0 < E < \infty$  and  $P = 0$  are called energy signals, e.g. aperiodic signals like pulse.

*Normalized energy* The normalized energy, or simply energy of a signal  $x(t)$  is defined as the energy dissipated by a voltage signal applied across  $1\text{-}\Omega$  resistor (or by a current signal flowing through  $1\text{-}\Omega$  resistor). Mathematically,

$$E = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} |x(t)|^2 dt$$

The energy of a signal exists only if  $E$  is finite, i.e. only if  $0 < E < \infty$ .

*Parseval's theorem for energy signals (Rayleigh's energy theorem)* Parseval's theorem defines the energy of a signal in terms of its Fourier transform. Using Parseval's theorem, the energy of a signal  $x(t)$  can be evaluated directly from its frequency spectrum  $X(\omega)$  without the knowledge of its time domain version, i.e.  $x(t)$ .

$$E = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} |x(t)|^2 dt = \frac{1}{2\pi} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} |X(\omega)|^2 d\omega$$

or

$$E = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} |X(f)|^2 df$$

*Proof:* Consider a function  $x(t)$  such that

$$x(t) \longleftrightarrow X(\omega)$$

Let  $x^*(t)$  be the conjugate of  $x(t)$  such that

$$x^*(t) \longleftrightarrow X^*(-\omega)$$

The energy of a signal  $x(t)$  is given by

$$E = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} |x(t)|^2 dt = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} x(t) x^*(t) dt = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} x^*(t) x(t) dt$$

Replacing  $x(t)$  by its inverse Fourier transform, we have

$$E = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} x^*(t) \left[ \frac{1}{2\pi} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} X(\omega) e^{j\omega t} d\omega \right] dt$$

Interchanging the order of integration,

$$\begin{aligned} E &= \frac{1}{2\pi} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} X(\omega) \left[ \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} x^*(t) e^{j\omega t} dt \right] d\omega \\ &= \frac{1}{2\pi} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} X(\omega) X^*(-\omega) d\omega = \frac{1}{2\pi} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} |X(\omega)|^2 d\omega \end{aligned}$$

Let

$$\omega = 2\pi f$$

$\therefore$

$$d\omega = 2\pi df$$

Normally  $X(2\pi f)$  is written as  $X(f)$ , then we have

$$E = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} |X(f)|^2 df$$

This is called Parseval's theorem for energy signals (also called Rayleigh's energy theorem).

### Energy spectral density

The ESD function gives the distribution of energy of a signal in the frequency domain. For an energy signal, the total area under the spectral density curve plotted as a function of frequency is equal to the total energy of the signal. It is also called energy density spectrum (EDS or ED). It is designated by  $\psi(\omega)$  and given by

$$\psi(\omega) = |X(\omega)|^2$$

Let  $x(t)$  and  $y(t)$  be the input and output respectively of a linear system.

Let  $x(t) \longleftrightarrow X(\omega)$  and  $y(t) \longleftrightarrow Y(\omega)$  and  $H(\omega)$  be the system transfer function.

Then, we have

$$Y(\omega) = H(\omega) X(\omega)$$

The ESD of the input  $x(t)$  is:

$$\psi_x(\omega) = |X(\omega)|^2$$

The ESD of the output  $y(t)$  is:

$$\psi_y(\omega) = |Y(\omega)|^2$$

$$\begin{aligned}\therefore \psi_y(\omega) &= |Y(\omega)|^2 = |H(\omega) X(\omega)|^2 \\ &= |H(\omega)|^2 |X(\omega)|^2 = |H(\omega)|^2 \psi_x(\omega) \\ \therefore \psi_y(\omega) &= |H(\omega)|^2 \psi_x(\omega)\end{aligned}$$

Thus, the ESD of the output (response) of a linear system is the product of ESD of input (excitation) and square of the magnitude of the transfer function.

$$\begin{aligned}\text{Energy of the output signal } E_y &= \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \psi_y(f) df = \frac{1}{2\pi} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \psi_y(\omega) d\omega = \frac{1}{2\pi} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} |H(\omega)|^2 \psi_x(\omega) d\omega \\ &= \frac{1}{2\pi} 2 \int_0^{\infty} |H(\omega)|^2 \psi_x(\omega) d\omega = \frac{1}{\pi} \int_0^{\infty} |H(\omega)|^2 \psi_x(\omega) d\omega\end{aligned}$$

If the LTI system is an ideal LPF with lower and upper cutoff frequencies  $f_L$  and  $f_H$  respectively, then  $|H(\omega)| = 1$  for  $f_L < f < f_H$ .

$$\begin{aligned}\therefore E_y &= \frac{1}{\pi} \int_{f_L}^{f_H} \psi_x(\omega) d\omega \\ \text{or } E_y &= \frac{1}{\pi} \int_{f_L}^{f_H} \psi_x(2\pi f) 2\pi df = 2 \int_{f_L}^{f_H} \psi_x(f) df\end{aligned}$$

*Properties of ESD:* The following are the properties of ESD.

1. The total area under the energy density spectrum is equal to the total energy of the signal.

$$\text{i.e. } E = \frac{1}{2\pi} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \psi(\omega) d\omega = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \psi(f) df$$

2. If  $x(t)$  is the input to an LTI system with impulse response  $h(t)$ , then the input and output ESD functions are related as:

$$\begin{aligned}\psi_y(\omega) &= |H(\omega)|^2 \psi_x(\omega) \\ \text{or } \psi_y(f) &= |H(f)|^2 \psi_x(f)\end{aligned}$$

3. The autocorrelation function  $R(\tau)$  and ESD  $\psi(\omega)$  form a Fourier transform pair, i.e.

$$R(\tau) \longleftrightarrow \psi(\omega)$$

$$\text{or } R(\tau) \longleftrightarrow \psi(f)$$

## 7.8 POWER DENSITY SPECTRUM

*Power signals* Signals with finite average power and infinite energy, i.e.  $0 < P < \infty$  and  $E = \infty$  are called power signals, e.g. periodic signals.

**Average power** It is defined as the average power dissipated by a voltage  $x(t)$  applied across  $1\text{-}\Omega$  resistor (or by a current signal flowing through  $1\text{-}\Omega$  resistor). Mathematically,

$$P = \lim_{T \rightarrow \infty} \frac{1}{T} \int_{-T/2}^{T/2} |x(t)|^2 dt$$

The power  $P$  defined above is actually the mean square value or the time average of the squared signal. Thus, we may write

$$P = \overline{x^2(t)} = \lim_{T \rightarrow \infty} \frac{1}{T} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} |x(t)|^2 dt$$

**Parseval's power theorem** Parseval's power theorem defines the power of a signal in terms of its Fourier series coefficients, i.e. in terms of the harmonic components present in the signal. Mathematically, it is given by

$$P = \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} |C(n)|^2$$

*Proof:* Consider a function  $x(t)$ . We know that

$$|x(t)|^2 = x(t) x^*(t)$$

where  $x^*(t)$  is the conjugate of  $x(t)$ .

The average power of  $x(t)$  for one cycle is:

$$P = \frac{1}{T} \int_{-T/2}^{T/2} |x(t)|^2 dt = \frac{1}{T} \int_{-T/2}^{T/2} x(t) x^*(t) dt$$

But, we have the exponential Fourier series,

$$\begin{aligned} x(t) &= \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} C_n e^{jn\omega t} \\ \therefore P &= \frac{1}{T} \int_{-T/2}^{T/2} \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} C_n e^{jn\omega t} x^*(t) dt \end{aligned}$$

Interchanging the order of summation and integration, we get

$$\begin{aligned} P &= \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} C_n \frac{1}{T} \int_{-T/2}^{T/2} x^*(t) e^{jn\omega t} dt \\ &= \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} C_n C_n^* = \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} |C_n|^2 \\ \therefore P &= \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} |C_n|^2 \end{aligned}$$

This is called Parseval's power theorem. It states that the power of a signal is equal to the sum of square of the magnitudes of various harmonics present in the discrete spectrum.

### Power spectral density (PSD)

The distribution of average power of the signal in the frequency domain is called power spectral density or power density or power density spectrum (PSD or PD).

To derive the PSD, assume the power signal as a limiting case of the energy signal. Consider a power signal  $x(t)$ , extending to infinity as shown in Figure 7.37.

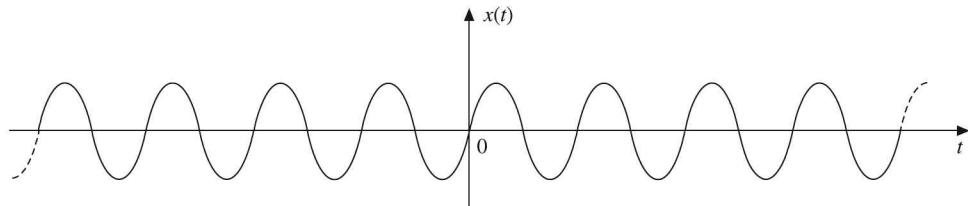


Figure 7.37 Power signal.

Let us truncate this signal so that it is zero outside the interval  $|\tau/2|$  as shown in Figure 7.38. Let this truncated signal be  $x_\tau(t)$ .

$$\therefore x_\tau(t) = \begin{cases} x(t), & |t| < \frac{\tau}{2} \\ 0, & \text{elsewhere} \end{cases}$$

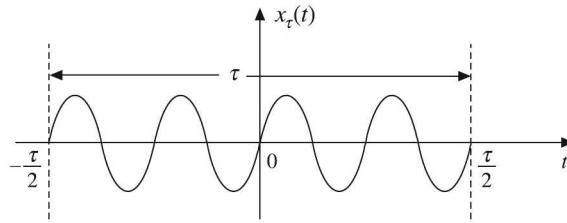


Figure 7.38 Truncated power signal.

The signal  $x_\tau(t)$  is of finite duration  $\tau$  and hence it is an energy signal with energy  $E$  given by

$$E = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} |x_\tau(t)|^2 dt = \frac{1}{2\pi} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} |X_\tau(\omega)|^2 d\omega$$

where

$$x_\tau(t) \longleftrightarrow X_\tau(\omega)$$

As  $x(t)$  over the interval,  $\left(-\frac{\tau}{2} \text{ to } \frac{\tau}{2}\right)$  is same as  $x_\tau(t)$  over the interval  $-\infty$  to  $\infty$ , we have

$$\begin{aligned} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} |x_\tau(t)|^2 dt &= \int_{-\tau/2}^{\tau/2} |x(t)|^2 dt \\ \therefore \frac{1}{\tau} \int_{-\tau/2}^{\tau/2} |x(t)|^2 dt &= \frac{1}{2\pi} \frac{1}{\tau} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} |X_\tau(\omega)|^2 d\omega \end{aligned}$$

If  $\tau \rightarrow \infty$ , the left hand side of above equation represents the average power  $P$  of the function  $x(t)$ .

$$\therefore P = \frac{1}{2\pi} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \text{Lt}_{\tau \rightarrow \infty} \frac{|X_\tau(\omega)|^2}{\tau} d\omega$$

If  $\tau \rightarrow \infty$ ,  $|X_\tau(\omega)|^2/\tau$  approaches a finite value.

Let this finite value is denoted by  $S(\omega)$ , i.e.

$$S(\omega) = \text{Lt}_{\tau \rightarrow \infty} \frac{|X_\tau(\omega)|^2}{\tau}$$

The average power  $P$  of the function  $x(t)$  is given by

$$P = \overline{x^2(t)} = \frac{1}{2\pi} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} S(\omega) d\omega = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} S(f) df$$

where  $\overline{x^2(t)}$  is the mean square value of  $x(t)$ .

The average power is, therefore, given by

$$P = 2 \frac{1}{2\pi} \int_0^{\infty} S(\omega) d\omega = \frac{1}{\pi} \int_0^{\infty} S(\omega) d\omega = 2 \int_0^{\infty} S(f) df$$

The PSD of a periodic function is given by

$$S(\omega) = 2\pi \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} |C_n|^2 \delta(\omega - n\omega_0)$$

or alternately

$$S(f) = \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} |C_n|^2 \delta(f - nf_0)$$

The input and output relation of a linear system in terms of PSD is given by

$$S_y(\omega) = |H(\omega)|^2 S_x(\omega)$$

or

$$S_y(f) = |H(f)|^2 S_x(f)$$

*Properties of PSD* The following are the properties of PSD:

1. The area under the PSD function is equal to the average power of that signal, i.e.

$$P = \frac{1}{2\pi} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} S(\omega) d\omega = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} S(f) df$$

2. The input and output PSDs of an LTI system are related as:

$$S_y(\omega) = |H(\omega)|^2 S_x(\omega)$$

3. The autocorrelation function  $R(\tau)$  and PSD  $S(\omega)$  form a Fourier transform pair, i.e.

$$R(\tau) \longleftrightarrow S(\omega)$$

The comparison of ESD and PSD is given in Table 7.1

**Table 7.1** Comparison of ESD and PSD

S.No.	ESD	PSD
1.	It gives the distribution of energy of a signal in frequency domain.	It gives the distribution of power of a signal in frequency domain.
2.	It is given by $\psi(\omega) =  X(\omega) ^2$	It is given by $S(\omega) = \lim_{\tau \rightarrow \infty} \frac{ X(\omega) ^2}{\tau}$
3.	The total energy is given by	The total power is given by
	$E = \frac{1}{2\pi} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \psi(\omega) d\omega = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \psi(f) df$	$P = \frac{1}{2\pi} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} S(\omega) d\omega = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} S(f) df$
4.	The autocorrelation for an energy signal and its ESD form a Fourier transform pair.	The autocorrelation for a power signal and its PSD form a Fourier transform pair
	$R(\tau) \longleftrightarrow \psi(\omega)$ or $R(\tau) \longleftrightarrow \psi(f)$	$R(\tau) \longleftrightarrow S(\omega)$ or $R(\tau) \longleftrightarrow S(f)$

## 7.9 RELATION BETWEEN AUTOCORRELATION FUNCTION AND ENERGY/POWER SPECTRAL DENSITY FUNCTION

### 7.9.1 Relation between ESD and Autocorrelation Function $R(\tau)$

The autocorrelation function  $R(\tau)$  and energy spectral density function  $\psi(\omega)$  form a Fourier transform pair, i.e.

$$R(\tau) \longleftrightarrow \psi(\omega)$$

*Proof:* The autocorrelation of a function  $x(t)$  is given as:

$$R(\tau) = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} x(t) x^*(t - \tau) dt$$

Replacing  $x^*(t - \tau)$  by its inverse transform, we have

$$R(\tau) = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} x(t) \left[ \frac{1}{2\pi} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} X(\omega) e^{j\omega(t-\tau)} d\omega \right]^* dt = \frac{1}{2\pi} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} x(t) \left[ \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} X^*(\omega) e^{-j\omega(t-\tau)} d\omega \right] dt$$

Interchanging the order of integration, we have

$$\begin{aligned} R(\tau) &= \frac{1}{2\pi} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} X^*(\omega) \left[ \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} x(t) e^{-j\omega t} dt \right] e^{j\omega\tau} d\omega \\ &= \frac{1}{2\pi} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} X^*(\omega) X(\omega) e^{j\omega\tau} d\omega = \frac{1}{2\pi} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} |X(\omega)|^2 e^{j\omega\tau} d\omega \\ &= \frac{1}{2\pi} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \psi(\omega) e^{j\omega\tau} d\omega \quad [\text{since } |X(\omega)|^2 = \psi(\omega)] \\ &= F^{-1}[\psi(\omega)] \end{aligned}$$

$$\therefore \psi(\omega) = F[R(\tau)]$$

This proves that  $R(\tau)$  and  $\psi(\omega)$  form a Fourier transform pair.

$$R(\tau) \longleftrightarrow \psi(\omega)$$

### 7.9.2 Relation between Autocorrelation Function $R(\tau)$ and Power Spectral Density (PSD)

The autocorrelation function  $R(\tau)$  and the power spectral density (PSD),  $S(\omega)$  of a power signal form a Fourier transform pair, i.e.

$$R(\tau) \longleftrightarrow S(\omega)$$

*Proof:* The autocorrelation function of a power (periodic) signal  $x(t)$  in terms of Fourier series coefficients is given as:

$$R(\tau) = \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} C_n C_{-n} e^{jn\omega_0 \tau}$$

where  $C_n$  and  $C_{-n}$  are the exponential Fourier series coefficients.

$$\therefore R(\tau) = \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} |C_n|^2 e^{jn\omega_0 \tau}$$

Taking Fourier transform on both sides, we have

$$F[R(\tau)] = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \left( \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} |C_n|^2 e^{jn\omega_0 \tau} \right) e^{-j\omega \tau} d\tau$$

Interchanging the order of integration and summation, we get

$$\begin{aligned} F[R(\tau)] &= \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} |C_n|^2 \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} e^{-j\tau(\omega - n\omega_0)} d\tau \\ &= 2\pi \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} |C_n|^2 \delta(\omega - n\omega_0) = \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} |C_n|^2 \delta(f - nf_0) \end{aligned}$$

The RHS is the PSD  $S(\omega)$  or  $S(f)$  of the periodic function  $x(t)$ .

$$\therefore F[R(\tau)] = S(\omega) \quad [\text{or } S(f)]$$

$$\text{and} \quad F^{-1}[S(\omega)] \quad \{\text{or } F^{-1}[S(f)]\} = R(\tau)$$

$$\text{i.e.} \quad R(\tau) \longleftrightarrow S(\omega) \quad [\text{or } S(f)]$$

## 7.10 RELATION BETWEEN CONVOLUTION AND CORRELATION

There is a striking resemblance between the operation of convolution and correlation. Indeed the two integrals are closely related. To obtain the cross correlation of  $x_1(t)$  and  $x_2(t)$

according to the equation  $R_{12}(\tau) = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} x_1(t) x_2(t - \tau) dt$ , we multiply  $x_1(t)$  with function  $x_2(t)$

displaced by  $\tau$  sec. The area under the product curve is the cross correlation between  $x_1(t)$  and  $x_2(t)$  at  $\tau$ . On the other hand, the convolution of  $x_1(t)$  and  $x_2(t)$  at  $t = \tau$  is obtained by folding  $x_2(t)$  backward about the vertical axis at the origin and taking the area under the product curve of  $x_1(t)$  and the folded function  $x_2(-t)$  displaced by  $\tau$ . It, therefore, follows that the cross correlation of  $x_1(t)$  and  $x_2(t)$  is the same as the convolution of  $x_1(t)$  and  $x_2(-t)$ .

The same conclusion can be arrived at analytically as follows:

The convolution of  $x_1(t)$  and  $x_2(-t)$  is given by

$$x_1(t) * x_2(-t) = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} x_1(\tau) x_2(\tau - t) d\tau$$

Replacing the dummy variable  $\tau$  in the above integral by another variable  $n$ , we have

$$x_1(t) * x_2(-t) = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} x_1(n) x_2(n - t) dn$$

Changing the variable from  $t$  to  $\tau$ , we get

$$x_1(\tau) * x_2(-\tau) = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} x_1(n) x_2(n - \tau) dn = R_{12}(\tau)$$

Hence

$$R_{12}(\tau) = x_1(t) * x_2(-t)|_{t=\tau}$$

Similarly,

$$R_{21}(\tau) = x_2(t) * x_1(-t)|_{t=\tau}$$

All of the techniques used to evaluate the convolution of two functions can be directly applied in order to find the correlation of two functions. Similarly, all of the results derived for convolution also apply to correlation.

If one of the function is an even function of  $t$ , let us say  $x_2(t)$  is an even function of  $t$ , i.e.

$$x_2(t) = x_2(-t)$$

then the cross correlation and convolution are equivalent.

**EXAMPLE 7.13** A signal  $x(t) = e^{-2t} u(t)$  is passed through an ideal low pass filter with cut off frequency of 1 rad/sec.

- (i) Test whether the input is an energy signal.
- (ii) Find the input and output energy.

**Solution:**

- (i) Given input signal

$$x(t) = e^{-2t} u(t)$$

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Energy of the input signal } E_i &= \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} |x(t)|^2 dt = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} |e^{-2t} u(t)|^2 dt = \int_0^{\infty} e^{-4t} dt \\ &= \left[ \frac{e^{-4t}}{-4} \right]_0^{\infty} = \frac{1}{4} = 0.25 \text{ joule} \end{aligned}$$

$$\text{Now, Input power } P_i = \lim_{T \rightarrow \infty} \frac{1}{2T} E_i = \lim_{T \rightarrow \infty} \frac{1}{2T} \left( \frac{1}{4} \right) = 0$$

$\therefore$  Input power = 0 and energy is finite, so it is an energy signal.

- (ii) Input energy is calculated as  $E_i = 0.25$  joule. Now, ESD of the output  $y(t)$  is given by

$$\psi_y(\omega) = |H(\omega)|^2 \psi_x(\omega)$$

But

$$\psi_x(\omega) = |X(\omega)|^2$$

Now,

$$X(\omega) = F[x(t)] = F[e^{-2t} u(t)] = \frac{1}{2 + j\omega}$$

$\therefore$

$$\psi_x(\omega) = |X(\omega)|^2 = \frac{1}{2^2 + \omega^2} = \frac{1}{\omega^2 + 4}$$

For a LPF, the square of the transfer function is given by

$$|H(\omega)|^2 = \begin{cases} 1, & |\omega| < 1 \\ 0, & \text{otherwise} \end{cases}$$

$$\therefore \psi_y(\omega) = |H(\omega)|^2 \psi_x(\omega) = \begin{cases} 1/(\omega^2 + 4), & |\omega| < 1 \\ 0, & \text{otherwise} \end{cases}$$

Therefore, the total energy of the output signal is given by

$$\begin{aligned} E_o &= \frac{1}{2\pi} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \psi_y(\omega) d\omega = \frac{1}{\pi} \int_0^{\infty} \psi_y(\omega) d\omega \\ &= \frac{1}{\pi} \int_0^1 \frac{1}{\omega^2 + 4} d\omega \\ &= \frac{1}{2\pi} \tan^{-1} \left( \frac{1}{2} \right) \end{aligned}$$

$$\text{Therefore, } E_o = \frac{0.46}{2\pi} = 0.049 \text{ joule}$$

**EXAMPLE 7.14** A function  $x(t)$  has a PSD of  $S_x(\omega)$ . Find the PSD of (a) integral of  $x(t)$  and (b) time derivative of  $x(t)$ .

**Solution:** Given function is  $x(t)$  with a PSD of  $S_x(\omega)$ .

(a) Let

$$x(t) \longleftrightarrow X(\omega)$$

Then for the integral of  $x(t)$ , we have

$$\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} x(\tau) d\tau \longleftrightarrow \frac{1}{j\omega} X(\omega)$$

Therefore, if  $x(t)$  is the input with Fourier transform  $X(\omega)$ , then the Fourier transform of the output is:

$$Y(\omega) = \frac{1}{j\omega} X(\omega)$$

$$\text{Therefore, Transfer function } H(\omega) = \frac{Y(\omega)}{X(\omega)} = \frac{(1/j\omega)X(\omega)}{X(\omega)} = \frac{1}{j\omega}$$

$$\text{Now, } |H(\omega)|^2 = \frac{1}{\omega^2}$$

Now, the output PSD is given by

$$S_y(\omega) = |H(\omega)|^2 S_x(\omega)$$

$$\therefore S_y(\omega) = \frac{1}{\omega^2} S_x(\omega)$$

(b) Let

$$x(t) \longleftrightarrow X(\omega)$$

Then for derivative of  $x(t)$ , we have

$$\frac{dx(t)}{dt} \longleftrightarrow j\omega X(\omega)$$

$$\text{Now, Transfer function } H(\omega) = \frac{j\omega X(\omega)}{X(\omega)} = j\omega$$

$$\therefore |H(\omega)|^2 = \omega^2$$

Output PSD is given by

$$S_y(\omega) = |H(\omega)|^2 S_x(\omega)$$

$$\therefore S_y(\omega) = \omega^2 S_x(\omega)$$

**EXAMPLE 7.15** Determine the energy spectral density (ESD) of a gate function of width  $\tau$  and amplitude  $A$  as shown in Figure 7.39.

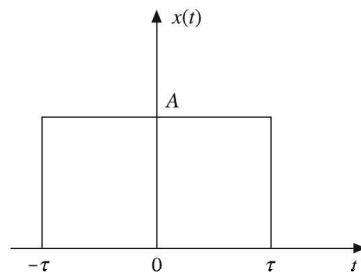


Figure 7.39 Signal for Example 7.15.

**Solution:** From Figure 7.39, the gate function of width  $\tau$  and amplitude  $A$  is given by

$$x(t) = \begin{cases} A, & |t| < \tau \\ 0, & \text{elsewhere} \end{cases}$$

Therefore,

$$\begin{aligned} X(\omega) &= \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} x(t) e^{-j\omega t} dt \\ &= \int_{-\tau}^{\tau} A e^{-j\omega t} dt = A \left[ \frac{e^{-j\omega t}}{-j\omega} \right]_{-\tau}^{\tau} = A \left( \frac{e^{-j\omega\tau} - e^{j\omega\tau}}{-j\omega} \right) \\ &= \frac{2A}{\omega} \left( \frac{e^{j\omega\tau} - e^{-j\omega\tau}}{j2} \right) = \frac{2A}{\omega} \sin \omega\tau = 2A\tau \frac{\sin \omega\tau}{\omega\tau} \\ &= 2A\tau \operatorname{sinc} \omega\tau \end{aligned}$$

$$\therefore X(\omega) = 2A\tau \operatorname{sinc} \omega\tau$$

Therefore, the Fourier transform of a gating function is a sinc function.

We know that ESD

$$\psi(\omega) = |X(\omega)|^2$$

$$\therefore \text{ESD } \psi(\omega) = |X(\omega)|^2 = [2A\tau \operatorname{sinc} \omega\tau]^2 = 4A^2\tau^2 \operatorname{sinc}^2 \omega\tau$$

**EXAMPLE 7.16** The autocorrelation function of an aperiodic power signal is:

$$R(\tau) = e^{-\tau^2/2\sigma^2}$$

Determine the PSD and the normalized average power content of the signal.

**Solution:** Given

$$R(\tau) = e^{-\tau^2/2\sigma^2}$$

We have

$$R(\tau) \longleftrightarrow S(\omega)$$

i.e.

$$\begin{aligned} S(\omega) &= \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} R(\tau) e^{-j\omega\tau} d\tau \\ &= \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} e^{-(\tau^2/2\sigma^2)} e^{-j\omega\tau} d\tau \\ &= \sqrt{2\pi\sigma^2} e^{-(\omega\sigma)^2/2} \end{aligned}$$

$$\therefore \text{Normalized average power } P = R(0) = e^0 = 1 \text{ watt}$$

**EXAMPLE 7.17** A power signal  $g(t)$  has a PSD  $S_g(\omega) = N/A^2$ ,  $-2\pi B < \omega < 2\pi B$ , shown in Figure 7.40 where  $A$  and  $N$  are constants.

Determine the PSD and the mean square value of its derivative  $dg(t)/dt$ .

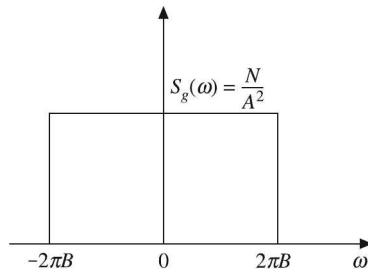


Figure 7.40 Signal for Example 7.17.

**Solution:** Given

$$\text{Input signal} = g(t)$$

$$\text{Input PSD, } S_g(\omega) = \frac{N}{A^2}$$

Let

$$g(t) \longleftrightarrow G(\omega)$$

$$\therefore \frac{d}{dt} g(t) \longleftrightarrow j\omega G(\omega)$$

$$\text{Transfer function } H(\omega) = \frac{\text{Output}}{\text{Input}} = \frac{j\omega G(\omega)}{G(\omega)} = j\omega$$

$$\therefore H(\omega) = j\omega$$

$$\therefore |H(\omega)|^2 = \omega^2$$

Therefore,

$$\text{Output PSD, } S_y(\omega) = |H(\omega)|^2 S_g(\omega)$$

$$\therefore S_y(\omega) = \frac{\omega^2 N}{A^2}$$

Mean square value of output = Area under output PSD

$$= \frac{1}{2\pi} \int_{-2\pi B}^{2\pi B} \frac{\omega^2 N}{A^2} d\omega$$

$$= \frac{N}{2\pi A^2} \left[ \frac{\omega^3}{3} \right]_{-2\pi B}^{2\pi B}$$

$$= \frac{N}{6\pi A^2} [8\pi^3 B^3 - (-8\pi^3 B^3)]$$

$$= \frac{N}{6\pi A^2} (16\pi^3 B^3)$$

$$= \frac{8\pi^2 N B^3}{3 A^2}$$

**EXAMPLE 7.18** Energies of signals  $x_1(t)$  and  $x_2(t)$  are  $E_1$  and  $E_2$  respectively.

- Show that, in general, the energy of signal  $x_1(t) + x_2(t)$  is not  $E_1 + E_2$ .
- Under what condition is the energy of  $x_1(t) + x_2(t)$  equal to  $E_1 + E_2$ ?
- Can the energy of the signal  $x_1(t) + x_2(t)$  be zero? If so, under what conditions?

**Solution:** Given: The energy of  $x_1(t)$  is  $E_1$  and energy of  $x_2(t)$  is  $E_2$ . In general, energy of a signal  $x(t)$  is given by

$$\begin{aligned} E &= \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} |x(t)|^2 dt \\ \therefore E_1 &= \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} |x_1(t)|^2 dt \\ E_2 &= \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} |x_2(t)|^2 dt \end{aligned}$$

- (i) Energy of signal  $x_1(t) + x_2(t)$  is:

$$\begin{aligned} E &= \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} |x_1(t) + x_2(t)|^2 dt \\ &= \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} |x_1(t)|^2 dt + \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} |x_2(t)|^2 dt + 2 \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} |x_1(t)||x_2(t)| dt \end{aligned}$$

Therefore,

$$E = E_1 + E_2 + 2 \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} |x_1(t)||x_2(t)| dt$$

Therefore,

$$E \neq E_1 + E_2$$

- (ii) When  $x_1(t)$  and  $x_2(t)$  are orthogonal, i.e.

$$\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} |x_1(t)||x_2(t)| dt = 0$$

Then

$$E = E_1 + E_2$$

- (iii) When  $x_1(t) = x_2(t) = 0$  then the energy  $E = 0$ .

**EXAMPLE 7.19** A signal  $x(t)$  has energy  $E$ . Calculate the energy of the signal  $x(3t)$ .

**Solution:** The energy of a signal  $x(t)$  is:

$$E = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} |x(t)|^2 dt$$

Now, for signal  $x(3t)$ , we have the energy

$$E' = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} |x(3t)|^2 dt$$

Let  $3t = p$ ,

$$\therefore dt = \frac{dp}{3}$$

$$\therefore E' = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} |x(p)|^2 \frac{dp}{3} = \frac{1}{3} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} |x(p)|^2 dp = \frac{1}{3} E$$

**EXAMPLE 7.20** Verify Parseval's theorem for the energy signal  $x(t) = e^{-4t} u(t)$ .

**Solution:** The energy of a signal  $x(t)$  is given by

$$\begin{aligned} E &= \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} |x(t)|^2 dt = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} |e^{-4t} u(t)|^2 dt \\ &= \int_0^{\infty} |e^{-4t}|^2 dt = \int_0^{\infty} e^{-8t} dt = \left[ \frac{e^{-8t}}{-8} \right]_0^{\infty} = \frac{1}{8} \text{ joule} \end{aligned}$$

Now, according to Parseval's theorem, we have

$$\begin{aligned} E &= \frac{1}{2\pi} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} |X(\omega)|^2 d\omega \\ X(\omega) &= F[x(t)] = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} e^{-4t} u(t) e^{-j\omega t} dt \\ &= \int_0^{\infty} e^{-(4+j\omega)t} dt = \left[ \frac{e^{-(4+j\omega)t}}{-(4+j\omega)} \right]_0^{\infty} = \frac{1}{4+j\omega} \\ |X(\omega)| &= \frac{1}{\sqrt{4^2 + \omega^2}} \\ E &= \frac{1}{2\pi} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \frac{1}{4^2 + \omega^2} d\omega = \frac{1}{8\pi} \tan^{-1} \left[ \frac{\omega}{4} \right]_{-\infty}^{\infty} \\ \therefore &= \frac{1}{8\pi} \left[ \frac{\pi}{2} - \left( -\frac{\pi}{2} \right) \right] = \frac{1}{8} \text{ joule} \end{aligned}$$

Thus, from the above equations, we see that energy is same in both the cases. Hence Parseval's theorem is verified.

**EXAMPLE 7.21** A filter has an input  $x(t) = e^{-t} u(t)$  and its impulse response  $h(t) = e^{-3t} u(t)$ . Find the energy spectral density of the output.

**Solution:** Given

$$x(t) = e^{-t} u(t)$$

$$\therefore X(\omega) = F[e^{-t} u(t)] = \frac{1}{1+j\omega}$$

$$\therefore \text{ESD of input } \psi_x(\omega) = |X(\omega)|^2 = \frac{1}{1 + \omega^2}$$

Given

$$h(t) = e^{-3t} u(t)$$

$$\therefore H(\omega) = F[e^{-3t} u(t)] = \frac{1}{j\omega + 3}$$

$$\therefore |H(\omega)|^2 = \frac{1}{9 + \omega^2}$$

$$\therefore \text{ESD of output } \psi_y(\omega) = |H(\omega)|^2 \psi_x(\omega)$$

$$= \left( \frac{1}{9 + \omega^2} \right) \left( \frac{1}{1 + \omega^2} \right)$$

**EXAMPLE 7.22** Figure 7.41 shows the PSD of the signal  $x(t)$ . Find out its average power.

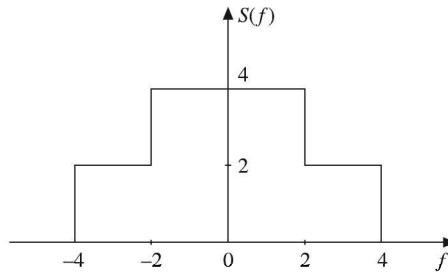


Figure 7.41 PSD for Example 7.22.

**Solution:** We know that the total average power is equal to the area under the PSD curve, i.e.

$$\begin{aligned} P &= \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} S(f) df = \int_{-4}^{-2} 2 df + \int_{-2}^{0} 4 df + \int_{0}^{2} 2 df \\ &= 2[f]_{-4}^{-2} + 4[f]_{-2}^{0} + 2[f]_{0}^{2} \\ &= 2(-2 + 4) + 4(2 + 2) + 2(4 - 2) \\ &= 24 \text{ watt} \end{aligned}$$

**EXAMPLE 7.23** For the signal  $x(t) = e^{-at} u(t)$ , find out the total energy contained in the frequency band  $|f| \leq f_1$ , where  $f_1 = a/2\pi$ .

**Solution:** Given

$$x(t) = e^{-at} u(t)$$

$$X(\omega) = \frac{1}{a + j\omega} = \frac{1}{a + j2\pi f}$$

$$\therefore \text{ESD} = |X(\omega)|^2 = \frac{1}{a^2 + (2\pi f)^2} = \psi(f)$$

We know that the total energy of  $x(t)$  is given by area under the ESD curve. Energy contained in the band  $|a| \leq f_1$  is equal to area under the ESD curve from  $-f_1$  to  $+f_1$ , i.e.

$$\begin{aligned}\text{Energy in } (-f_1, f_1) &= \int_{-f_1}^{f_1} \psi(f) df = \int_{-f_1}^{f_1} \frac{1}{a^2 + (2\pi f)^2} df \\ &= \frac{1}{2\pi a} \left[ \tan^{-1} \left( \frac{2\pi f}{a} \right) \right]_{-f_1}^{f_1} \\ &= \frac{1}{4a}\end{aligned}$$

**EXAMPLE 7.24** Determine the autocorrelation function and energy spectral density of  $x(t) = e^{-at} u(t)$ .

**Solution:**

(i) **To obtain autocorrelation function:**

The given function is:

$$x(t) = e^{-at} u(t)$$

This is an energy signal. Autocorrelation function for energy signals is given as:

$$R(\tau) = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} x(t) x^*(t - \tau) dt$$

If  $x(t)$  is real, then the above equation becomes

$$R(\tau) = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} x(t) x(t - \tau) dt$$

Here  $x(t) = e^{-at} u(t)$  is a real signal. Substituting this value of  $x(t)$  in the equation for  $R(\tau)$ , we get

$$R(\tau) = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} e^{-at} u(t) e^{-a(t-\tau)} u(t - \tau) dt$$

We know that  $u(t) = 1$  for  $t \geq 0$  and  $u(t - \tau) = 1$  for  $t \geq \tau$ . Hence the limits of integration will be from  $\tau$  to  $\infty$ , i.e.

$$\begin{aligned}R(\tau) &= \int_{\tau}^{\infty} e^{-at} e^{-a(t-\tau)} dt = \int_{\tau}^{\infty} e^{-at} e^{-at} e^{a\tau} dt \\ &= e^{a\tau} \int_{\tau}^{\infty} e^{-2at} dt = e^{a\tau} \left[ \frac{e^{-2at}}{-2a} \right]_{\tau}^{\infty} = e^{a\tau} \left( \frac{e^{-\infty}}{-2a} + \frac{e^{-2a\tau}}{2a} \right) \\ &= \frac{e^{-a\tau}}{2a}\end{aligned}$$

This is an autocorrelation function for positive value of  $\tau$ . This is because we have considered  $u(t - \tau) = 1$  for ' $\tau$ ' positive. We know that autocorrelation has conjugate symmetry,

$$R(\tau) = R^*(-\tau)$$

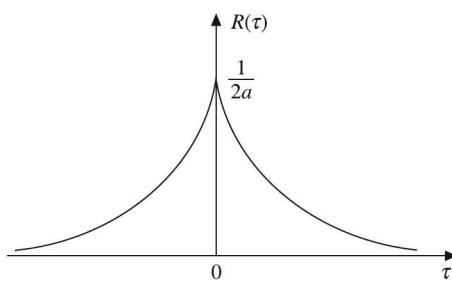
In this example, we obtained  $R(\tau)$ , which is real. Hence the above equation becomes

$$R(\tau) = R(-\tau)$$

Thus,  $R(\tau)$  is an even function of  $\tau$ . Hence the autocorrelation function becomes

$$R(\tau) = \frac{e^{-a|\tau|}}{2a}$$

Figure 7.42 shows the sketch of the above autocorrelation function.



**Figure 7.42** Autocorrelation function.

(ii) **To obtain energy spectral density:**

We know that the autocorrelation function and energy spectral density form a Fourier transform pair.

∴

$$\begin{aligned} \psi(\omega) &= F\{R(\tau)\} \\ &= \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} R(\tau) e^{-j\omega\tau} d\tau = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \frac{e^{-a|\tau|}}{2a} e^{-j\omega\tau} d\tau \\ &= \frac{1}{2a} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} e^{-a|\tau|} e^{-j\omega\tau} d\tau = \frac{1}{2a} \frac{2a}{a^2 + \omega^2} \\ &= \frac{1}{a^2 + \omega^2} \end{aligned}$$

This is an expression for the energy spectral density.

**EXAMPLE 7.25** Consider a pulse function given by

$$x(t) = \begin{cases} \cos\left(\frac{\pi t}{T}\right), & \text{for } -\frac{T}{2} < t < \frac{T}{2} \\ 0, & \text{otherwise} \end{cases}$$

Find:

- (i) Autocorrelation function
- (ii) Energy spectral density

**Solution:**

- (i) To obtain autocorrelation function:

The given signal is defined only for  $\left(-\frac{T}{2}, \frac{T}{2}\right)$ . Hence we will use an equation for energy signals, i.e.

$$R(\tau) = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} x(t) x^*(t - \tau) dt$$

Here  $x(t) = \cos\left(\frac{\pi t}{T}\right)$  for  $-\frac{T}{2} < t < \frac{T}{2}$

This is a real function. Hence the equation for  $R(\tau)$  becomes

$$\begin{aligned} R(\tau) &= \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} x(t) x(t - \tau) dt \\ &= \int_{-T/2}^{T/2} \cos\left(\frac{\pi t}{T}\right) \cos\left(\frac{\pi(t - \tau)}{T}\right) dt \\ &= \int_{-T/2}^{T/2} \cos\left(\frac{\pi t}{T}\right) \cos\left(\frac{\pi t}{T} - \frac{\pi\tau}{T}\right) dt \end{aligned}$$

Using the relation,

$$\cos(x)\cos(y) = \frac{1}{2}[\cos(x - y) + \cos(x + y)]$$

$$\begin{aligned} \text{we have } R(\tau) &= \int_{-T/2}^{T/2} \frac{1}{2} \left\{ \cos\left(\frac{\pi\tau}{T}\right) + \cos\left(\frac{2\pi t}{T} - \frac{\pi\tau}{T}\right) \right\} dt \\ &= \frac{1}{2} \int_{-T/2}^{T/2} \cos\left(\frac{\pi\tau}{T}\right) dt + \frac{1}{2} \int_{-T/2}^{T/2} \cos\left(\frac{2\pi t}{T} - \frac{\pi\tau}{T}\right) dt \\ &= \frac{1}{2} \cos\left(\frac{\pi\tau}{T}\right) [t]_{-T/2}^{T/2} + \frac{1}{2} \frac{1}{2\pi/T} \left[ \sin\left(\frac{2\pi t}{T} - \frac{\pi\tau}{T}\right) \right]_{-T/2}^{T/2} \end{aligned}$$

On simplifying the above equation, we get

$$R(\tau) = \frac{T}{2} \sin\left(\frac{\pi\tau}{T}\right)$$

This is the autocorrelation function of a given signal.

(ii) **To obtain energy spectral density:**

We know that

$$\begin{aligned} R(\tau) &\longleftrightarrow \psi(\omega) \\ \text{i.e. } \psi(\omega) &= \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} R(\tau) e^{-j\omega\tau} d\tau = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \frac{T}{2} \sin\left(\frac{\pi\tau}{T}\right) e^{-j\omega\tau} d\tau \\ &= \frac{T}{2} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \sin\left(\frac{\pi\tau}{T}\right) e^{-j\omega\tau} d\tau \end{aligned}$$

We know that  $\sin \theta = (e^{j\theta} - e^{-j\theta})/2j$ . Hence the above equation for  $\psi(\omega)$  becomes

$$\begin{aligned} \psi(\omega) &= \frac{T}{2} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \frac{e^{j(\pi\tau/T)} - e^{-j(\pi\tau/T)}}{2j} e^{-j\omega\tau} d\tau \\ &= \frac{T}{4j} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \left[ e^{-j[\omega - (\pi/T)]\tau} - e^{-j[\omega + (\pi/T)]\tau} \right] d\tau \\ &= \frac{T}{4j} \left\{ \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} e^{-j[\omega - (\pi/T)]\tau} d\tau - \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} e^{-j[\omega + (\pi/T)]\tau} d\tau \right\} \end{aligned}$$

Here,  $\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} e^{-j\omega\tau} d\tau = \delta(\omega)$ . Hence above equation becomes

$$\psi(\omega) = \frac{T}{4j} \left[ \delta\left(\omega - \frac{\pi}{T}\right) - \delta\left(\omega + \frac{\pi}{T}\right) \right]$$

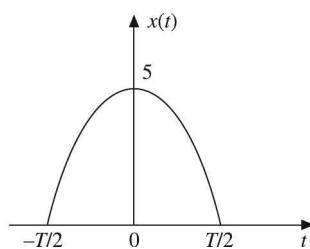
This is the required expression for ESD.

**EXAMPLE 7.26** Find the zero-lag value of the autocorrelation function of the signal

$$x(t) = 5 \cos\left(\frac{\pi t}{T}\right), -\frac{T}{2} \leq t \leq \frac{T}{2}$$

**Solution:** The given signal  $x(t) = 5 \cos\left(\frac{\pi t}{T}\right)$  is a cosine signal with period  $T_0 = \frac{(2\pi)}{\pi/T} = 2T$ .

Hence  $5 \cos\left(\frac{\pi t}{T}\right), -\frac{T}{2} \leq t \leq \frac{T}{2}$  is a cosine pulse as shown in Figure 7.43.



**Figure 7.43** Cosine pulse.

We know that

$$\begin{aligned} \text{and } R(0) &= \text{Energy of the signal } x(t) \\ R(0) &= \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} 5 \cos\left(\frac{\pi t}{T}\right) 5 \cos\left(\frac{\pi t}{T}\right) dt = 25 \int_{-T/2}^{T/2} \cos^2\left(\frac{\pi t}{T}\right) dt \\ &= \frac{25}{2} \int_{-T/2}^{T/2} \left(1 + \cos\frac{2\pi t}{T}\right) dt = 12.5 \left[t + \frac{\sin(2\pi t/T)}{2\pi/T}\right]_{-T/2}^{T/2} \\ &= 12.5 \left[\frac{T}{2} - \left(-\frac{T}{2}\right) + 0 - 0\right] = 12.5T \end{aligned}$$

**EXAMPLE 7.27** Find the autocorrelation of the signal

$$x(t) = A \sin(\omega_0 t + \theta)$$

**Solution:** Given:  $x(t) = A \sin(\omega_0 t + \theta)$

$$R(\tau) = \frac{1}{T_0} \int_{-T_0/2}^{T_0/2} A \sin(\omega_0 t + \theta) A \sin(\omega_0(t - \tau) + \theta) dt$$

Let

$$\phi = \omega_0 t + \theta$$

$$\therefore dt = \frac{d\phi}{\omega_0}$$

For  $t = -T_0/2$ ,  $\phi = -\pi + \theta$  and for  $t = T_0/2$ ,  $\phi = \pi + \theta$

$$\begin{aligned} R(\tau) &= \frac{A^2}{T_0} \int_{-T_0/2}^{T_0/2} \sin \phi \sin(\phi - \omega_0 \tau) \frac{d\phi}{\omega_0} \\ &= \frac{A^2}{T_0 \omega_0} \int_{-\pi+\theta}^{\pi+\theta} \sin \phi (\sin \phi \cos \omega_0 \tau - \cos \phi \sin \omega_0 \tau) d\phi \\ &= \frac{A^2}{T_0 \omega_0} \int_{-\pi+\theta}^{\pi+\theta} \left[ \cos \omega_0 \tau \left( \frac{1 - \cos 2\phi}{2} \right) - \sin \omega_0 \tau \left( \frac{\sin 2\phi}{2} \right) \right] d\phi \\ &= \frac{A^2}{4\pi} \left\{ \cos \omega_0 \tau [\phi]_{-\pi+\theta}^{\pi+\theta} \right\} - \frac{A^2}{4\pi} \cos \omega_0 \tau \int_{-\pi+\theta}^{\pi+\theta} \cos 2\phi d\phi \\ &\quad - \frac{A^2}{4\pi} \sin \omega_0 \tau \int_{-\pi+\theta}^{\pi+\theta} \sin 2\phi d\phi \\ \therefore &= \frac{A^2}{4\pi} \cos \omega_0 \tau [\pi + \theta - (-\pi + \theta)] = \frac{A^2}{2} \cos \omega_0 \tau \end{aligned}$$

$\therefore$  Autocorrelation of  $x(t) = A \sin(\omega_0 t + \theta)$  is  $R(\tau) = A^2/2 \cos \omega_0 \tau$ .

**EXAMPLE 7.28** For the periodic function shown in Figure 7.44 determine and plot the autocorrelation.

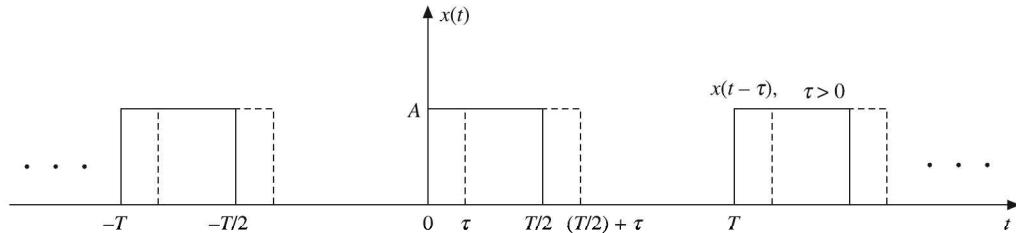


Figure 7.44 Figure for Example 7.28.

**Solution:** We know that for a periodic signal with period  $T$ ,

$$\begin{aligned} R(\tau) &= \frac{1}{T} \int_{-T/2}^{T/2} x(t) x(t-\tau) dt \\ \therefore R(\tau) &= \frac{1}{T} \int_0^{T/2} x(t) x(t-\tau) dt \end{aligned}$$

When  $x(t)$  is shifted to the right (i.e.  $\tau > 0$ ),  $x(t - \tau)$  will be as shown by the dotted-line waveform.

$$\therefore R(\tau) = \frac{1}{T} \int_{\tau}^{T/2} A^2 dt = \frac{A^2}{T} \left( \frac{T}{2} - \tau \right); \quad \tau > 0$$

Since  $\tau$  takes positive as well as negative values and  $R(\tau)$  must have even symmetry [since  $x(t)$  is real valued], we have

$$R(\tau) = \frac{A^2}{T} \left( \frac{T}{2} - |\tau| \right)$$

Hence  $R(\tau)$  is a periodic triangular wave with period  $T$ , as shown in Figure 7.45.

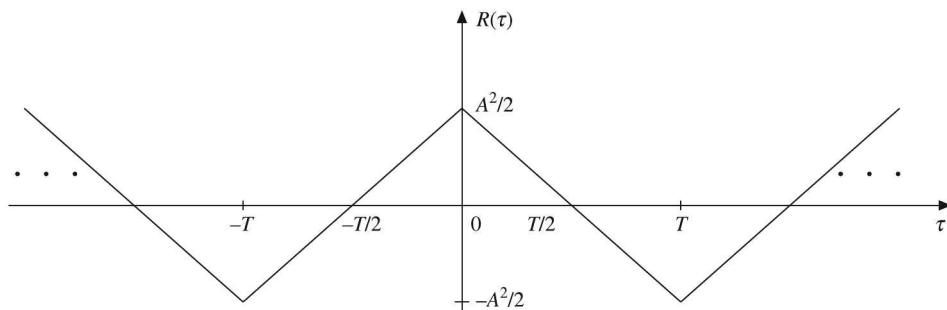


Figure 7.45 Periodic triangular wave.

**EXAMPLE 7.29** The signal  $x(t) = \cos \omega_0 t + 2 \sin 3\omega_0 t + 0.5 \sin 4\omega_0 t$  is filtered by an RC low pass filter with a 3-dB frequency  $f_c = 2f_0$ . Find the output power  $S_0$ .

**Solution:** Given  $x(t) = \cos \omega_0 t + 2 \sin 3\omega_0 t + 0.5 \sin 4\omega_0 t$

When the above signal  $x(t)$  is passed through RC low pass filter with  $f_c = 2f_0$ ,  $\sin 3\omega_0 t$  and  $0.5 \sin 4\omega_0 t$  are filtered out and cannot reach the output.

The output of low pass filter will be

$$\begin{aligned}
 x_0(t) &= \cos \omega_0 t \\
 \text{Output average power } S_0 &= \lim_{T \rightarrow \infty} \frac{1}{2T} \int_{-T}^T |x_0(t)|^2 dt \\
 &= \lim_{T \rightarrow \infty} \frac{1}{2T} \int_{-T}^T (\cos \omega_0 t)^2 dt \\
 &= \lim_{T \rightarrow \infty} \frac{1}{2T} \int_{-T}^T \left( \frac{1 + \cos 2\omega_0 t}{2} \right) dt \\
 &= \lim_{T \rightarrow \infty} \frac{1}{4T} \left[ t + \frac{\sin 2\omega_0 t}{2\omega_0} \right]_{-T}^T \\
 &= \lim_{T \rightarrow \infty} \frac{1}{4T} \left\{ [T - (-T)] + \left[ \frac{\sin 2\omega_0 T + \sin 2\omega_0 (-T)}{2\omega_0} \right] \right\} \\
 &= \lim_{T \rightarrow \infty} \frac{1}{4T} (2T + 0) = \frac{1}{2} W
 \end{aligned}$$

**EXAMPLE 7.30** If  $x(t) = \sin \omega_0 t$ , find

(i)  $R(\tau)$  (ii) ESD

**Solution:** Given  $x(t) = \sin \omega_0 t$

$$\begin{aligned}
 \text{(i)} \quad R(\tau) &= \frac{1}{T} \int_{-T/2}^{T/2} \sin \omega_0 t \sin [\omega_0(t - \tau)] dt \\
 &= \frac{1}{T} \int_{-T/2}^{T/2} \sin \omega_0 t [\sin \omega_0 t \cos \omega_0 \tau - \cos \omega_0 t \sin \omega_0 \tau] dt \\
 &= \frac{1}{T} \int_{-T/2}^{T/2} \cos \omega_0 \tau \left( \frac{1 - \cos 2\omega_0 t}{2} \right) - \sin \omega_0 \tau \left( \frac{\sin 2\omega_0 t}{2} \right) dt \\
 &= \frac{1}{2T} \left\{ \cos \omega_0 \tau [t]_{-T/2}^{T/2} \right\} - 0 - 0 = \frac{1}{2} \cos \omega_0 \tau
 \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
 \text{(ii) ESD} \quad \psi(\omega) &= F[R(\tau)] = F\left(\frac{1}{2} \cos \omega_0 \tau\right) \\
 &= \frac{\pi}{2} [\delta(\omega + \omega_0) + \delta(\omega - \omega_0)]
 \end{aligned}$$

**EXAMPLE 7.31** A signal  $x(t)$  is given by  $x(t) = C_0 + \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} C_n \cos(n\omega_0 t + \theta_n)$ . Find the autocorrelation and PSD of  $x(t)$ .

**Solution:** Given  $x(t) = C_0 + \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} C_n \cos(n\omega_0 t + \theta_n)$

(i) **Autocorrelation:**

Autocorrelation of function  $x(t)$  is given by

$$R(\tau) = \lim_{T \rightarrow \infty} \frac{1}{T} \int_{-T/2}^{T/2} x(t) x(t + \tau) dt$$

$$\begin{aligned}
 R(\tau) &= \lim_{T \rightarrow \infty} \frac{1}{T} \int_{-T/2}^{T/2} \left[ C_0 + \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} C_n \cos(n\omega_0 t + \theta_n) \right] \left[ C_0 + \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} C_n \cos(n\omega_0 t + n\omega_0 \tau + \theta_n) \right] dt \\
 &= \lim_{T \rightarrow \infty} \frac{1}{T} \int_{-T/2}^{T/2} \left[ C_0^2 + C_0 C_n \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \cos(n\omega_0 t + n\omega_0 \tau + \theta_n) + \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} C_0 C_n \cos(n\omega_0 t + \theta_n) \right. \\
 &\quad \left. + C_n^2 \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \cos(n\omega_0 t + \theta_n) \cos(n\omega_0 t + n\omega_0 \tau + \theta_n) dt \right] \\
 &= \lim_{T \rightarrow \infty} \frac{1}{T} \int_{-T/2}^{T/2} C_0^2 dt + \lim_{T \rightarrow \infty} \frac{1}{T} \int_{-T/2}^{T/2} C_0 C_n \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \cos(n\omega_0 t + n\omega_0 \tau + \theta_n) dt \\
 &\quad + \lim_{T \rightarrow \infty} \frac{1}{T} \int_{-T/2}^{T/2} \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} C_0 C_n \cos(n\omega_0 t + \theta_n) dt \\
 &\quad + \lim_{T \rightarrow \infty} \frac{1}{T} \int_{-T/2}^{T/2} \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} C_n^2 \cos(n\omega_0 t + \theta_n) \cos(n\omega_0 t + n\omega_0 \tau + \theta_n) dt \\
 &= C_0^2 + 0 + 0 + \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \lim_{T \rightarrow \infty} \frac{C_n^2}{2T} \int_{-T/2}^{T/2} 2 \cos(n\omega_0 t + \theta_n) \cos(n\omega_0 t + n\omega_0 \tau + \theta_n) dt \\
 &= C_0^2 + \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \lim_{T \rightarrow \infty} \frac{C_n^2}{2T} \int_{-T/2}^{T/2} [\cos(2n\omega_0 t + n\omega_0 \tau + 2\theta_n) + \cos(n\omega_0 t)] dt
 \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
 &= C_0^2 + \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \text{Lt}_{T \rightarrow \infty} \frac{C_n^2}{2T} \int_{-T/2}^{T/2} \cos n\omega_0 \tau dt = C_0^2 + \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \text{Lt}_{T \rightarrow \infty} \frac{C_n^2}{2T} \cos n\omega_0 \tau \left( \frac{T}{2} + \frac{T}{2} \right) \\
 &= C_0^2 + \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \text{Lt}_{T \rightarrow \infty} \frac{C_n^2}{2T} \cos n\omega_0 \tau T \\
 \therefore R(\tau) &= C_0^2 + \frac{1}{2} \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} C_n^2 \cos n\omega_0 \tau
 \end{aligned}$$

Power spectral density (PSD) and autocorrelation form a Fourier transform pair.

$$\begin{aligned}
 \therefore \text{PSD} &= F[R(\tau)] \\
 \text{PSD} &= F \left[ C_0^2 + \frac{1}{2} \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} C_n^2 \cos n\omega_0 \tau \right] \\
 &= C_0^2 [2\pi\delta(\omega)] + \frac{1}{2} \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} C_n^2 \pi [\delta(\omega - n\omega_0) + \delta(\omega + n\omega_0)]
 \end{aligned}$$

**EXAMPLE 7.32** Find the cross correlation between triangular and gate functions shown in Figure 7.46.

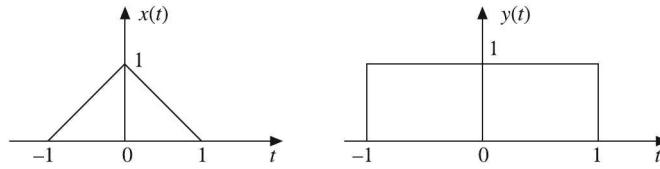


Figure 7.46 Waveforms for Example 7.32.

**Solution:** By definition

$$R_{12}(\tau) = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} x(t) y(t + \tau) dt$$

Based on Table 7.2 which gives graphical evaluation of correlation, we can draw the correlation function  $R_{12}(\tau)$  as shown in Figure 7.47. We can observe that correlation of triangular and gate function leads to triangular function, but with double time period.

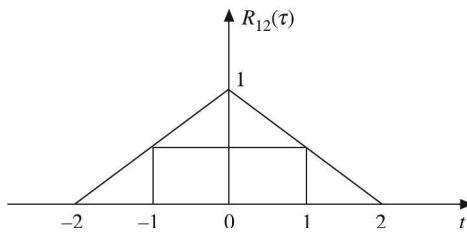


Figure 7.47 Correlation function.

**Table 7.2** Graphical Evaluation of Correlation

$\tau$	$y(t + \tau)$	$x(t) y(t + \tau)$	Integration
+2			Common area = 0
+1			Common area = 0.5 between interval -1 to 0
0			Common area = 1 between interval -1 to +1
-1			Common area = 0.5 between interval 0 to 1
-2			Common area = 0

## 7.11 DETECTION OF PERIODIC SIGNALS IN THE PRESENCE OF NOISE BY CORRELATION

Detection of periodic signals masked by random noise is of great importance. It finds applications in the detection of radar and sonar signals, the detection of periodic components in brain waves, the detection of the cyclical components in ocean wave analysis and in many areas of geophysics including metrology. Correlation techniques provide a powerful tool in the solution of the above problems. Both autocorrelation and cross correlation can be used in the detection of a periodic signal masked by noise.

The noise signal encountered in practice is a signal with random amplitude variation. Such a signal is uncorrelated with any periodic signal.

If  $s(t)$  is a periodic signal and  $n(t)$  represents the noise signal, then the cross correlation function of  $s(t)$  and  $n(t)$  is:

$$R_{sn}(\tau) = \text{Lt}_{T \rightarrow \infty} \frac{1}{T} \int_{-T/2}^{T/2} s(t) n(t - \tau) dt = 0 \quad (\text{for all } \tau)$$

### 7.11.1 Detection by Autocorrelation

Let  $s(t)$  be a periodic signal mixed with a noise signal  $n(t)$ . Then the received signal which is also periodic is:

$$y(t) = s(t) + n(t)$$

Let  $R_{yy}(\tau)$ ,  $R_{ss}(\tau)$ , and  $R_{nn}(\tau)$  denote the autocorrelation functions of  $y(t)$ ,  $s(t)$  and  $n(t)$ , respectively. Then

$$\begin{aligned} R_{yy}(\tau) &= \text{Lt}_{T \rightarrow \infty} \frac{1}{T} \int_{-T/2}^{T/2} y(t) y(t - \tau) dt \\ &= \text{Lt}_{T \rightarrow \infty} \frac{1}{T} \int_{-T/2}^{T/2} [s(t) + n(t)] [s(t - \tau) + n(t - \tau)] dt \\ &= \text{Lt}_{T \rightarrow \infty} \frac{1}{T} \int_{-T/2}^{T/2} [s(t) s(t - \tau) + n(t) n(t - \tau) + s(t) n(t - \tau) + n(t) s(t - \tau)] dt \\ &= R_{ss}(\tau) + R_{nn}(\tau) + R_{sn}(\tau) + R_{ns}(\tau) \end{aligned}$$

Since the periodic signal  $s(t)$  and noise signal  $n(t)$  are uncorrected,

$$R_{sn}(\tau) = R_{ns}(\tau) = 0$$

Therefore,

$$R_{yy}(\tau) = R_{ss}(\tau) + R_{nn}(\tau)$$

Thus,  $R_{yy}(\tau)$  has two components:  $R_{ss}(\tau)$  and  $R_{nn}(\tau)$ .

We know that the autocorrelation function of a periodic signal is also a periodic function of the same frequency and the autocorrelation function of a non-periodic function tends to zero for large values of  $\tau$ .

Since  $s(t)$  is a periodic signal and  $n(t)$  is a non-periodic signal,  $R_{ss}(\tau)$  is a periodic function, whereas  $R_{nn}(\tau)$  becomes arbitrarily small for large values of  $\tau$ . Therefore, for large values of  $\tau$ ,  $R_{yy}(\tau)$  is essentially equal to  $R_{ss}(\tau)$ . Therefore,  $R_{yy}(\tau)$  will exhibit a periodic nature at sufficiently large values of  $\tau$ .

The autocorrelation function of the given signal can be calculated by the numerical techniques used for convolution.

### 7.11.2 Detection by Cross Correlation

The detection of a periodic signal can be carried out by cross correlating the received signal with another periodic signal of the same frequency. Detection by cross correlation is much

more effective than that by the autocorrelation. The disadvantage, however is, that it is necessary to know before hand the frequency of the signal to be detected. In many cases, the frequency is known before hand. If the frequency is not known before hand, it may be determined by the autocorrelation technique.

Let the received signal be

$$y(t) = s(t) + n(t)$$

Let  $l(t)$  be the locally generated signal of same frequency as that of  $s(t)$ .

$$\begin{aligned} \therefore R_{yl}(\tau) &= \lim_{T \rightarrow \infty} \frac{1}{T} \int_{-T/2}^{T/2} [s(t) + n(t)] l(t - \tau) dt \\ &= R_{sl}(\tau) + R_{nl}(\tau) \end{aligned}$$

The term  $l(t)$  is a periodic function and is uncorrelated with the random noise signal. Hence  $R_{nl}(\tau) = 0$ .

$$\therefore R_{yl}(\tau) = R_{sl}(\tau)$$

Since  $s(t)$  and  $l(t)$  are signals of the same frequency,  $R_{sl}(\tau)$  is also a periodic function of the same frequency. So if the cross correlation of the contaminated signal  $y(t)$  with  $l(t)$  yields a periodic signal,  $y(t)$  must contain a periodic component of the same frequency as that of  $l(t)$ .

## 7.12 EXTRACTION OF A SIGNAL FROM NOISE BY FILTERING

A signal masked by noise can be detected either by correlation techniques or by filtering. Actually the two techniques are equivalent. The correlation technique is a means of extraction of a given signal in the time domain, whereas filtering achieves exactly the same results in the frequency domain. Correlation in the time domain corresponds to filtering in the frequency domain.

### *Relationship between correlation and filtering*

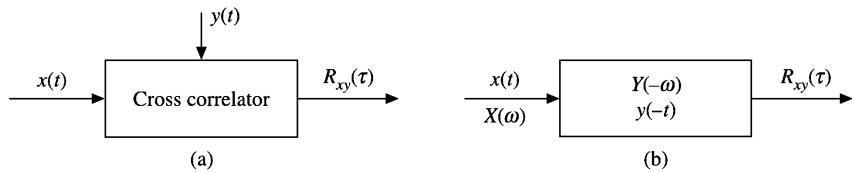
Let  $x(t)$  and  $y(t)$  be two periodic signals, and let  $R_{xy}(\tau)$  be their cross correlation function. We know that

$$\text{If } x(t) \longleftrightarrow X(\omega)$$

$$\text{and } y(t) \longleftrightarrow Y(\omega)$$

$$\text{then } R_{xy}(\tau) \longleftrightarrow X(\omega) Y(-\omega)$$

It is obvious that the operation of cross correlation of  $x(t)$  and  $y(t)$  in the time domain is equivalent to multiplication of the spectra  $X(\omega)$  and  $Y(-\omega)$  in the frequency domain. So the cross correlation of  $x(t)$  and  $y(t)$  can be achieved either in time domain as shown in Figure 7.48(a) by applying  $x(t)$  and  $y(t)$  to a cross correlator or in frequency domain as shown in Figure 7.48(b) by applying  $x(t)$  to a linear system with transfer function  $Y(-\omega)$  [or impulse response  $y(-t)$ ]. This second operation essentially represents filtering.



**Figure 7.48** Correlation in (a) time domain, (b) frequency domain.

So we can conclude that: *the cross correlation function of signals  $x(t)$  and  $y(t)$  is the response of a system with transfer function  $Y(-\omega)$  [or the impulse response  $y(-t)$ ] when the driving function is  $x(t)$ .*

## *Detection by filtering*

Let  $s(t)$  and  $n(t)$  be the desired periodic signal component and the random noise component respectively, then the received signal  $y(t)$  is:

$$y(t) = s(t) + n(t)$$

The periodic component  $s(t)$  present in  $y(t)$  can be detected by cross correlating  $y(t)$  with another periodic signal  $l(t)$  of the same period as that of  $s(t)$ . To perform this cross correlation, we need a system which has a unit impulse response  $l(-t)$  or which has a transfer function  $L(-\omega)$  where

$$\begin{aligned} l(t) &\longleftrightarrow L(\omega) \\ l(-t) &\longleftrightarrow L(-\omega) \end{aligned}$$

Since  $l(t)$  is a periodic signal of period  $T_0$ ,  $L(\omega)$ , the Fourier transform of  $l(t)$  will consist of impulses located at  $\omega = 0, \pm\omega_0, \pm 2\omega_0, \dots, \pm n\omega_0$ , where  $\omega_0 = 2\pi/T_0$ . Obviously  $L(-\omega)$  also consists of impulses located at these frequencies. These impulses have magnitudes equal to  $2\pi$  times the corresponding coefficients of the exponential Fourier series for  $l(-t)$ .

Thus, if  $l(t)$  is expanded by the Fourier series,

$$l(t) = \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} C_n e^{jn\omega_0 t} \quad \left( \omega_0 = \frac{2\pi}{T_0} \right)$$

Then the Fourier transform  $L(\omega)$  of  $l(t)$  is given by

$$L(\omega) = 2\pi \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} C_n \delta(\omega - n\omega_0)$$

Since

$$L(-\omega) = L^*(\omega)$$

$$L(-\omega) = 2\pi \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} C_n^* \delta(\omega - n\omega_0)$$

Thus,  $L(-\omega)$  consists of impulses located at  $\omega = 0, \pm\omega_0, \pm 2\omega_0, \dots$ , etc. It is obvious that the transfer function  $L(-\omega)$  represents a system which attenuates all of the frequencies except  $\omega = 0, \pm\omega_0, \pm 2\omega_0, \dots, \pm n\omega_0, \dots$ .

These frequency components also go through relative attenuation given by the corresponding coefficient  $C_r^*$  for the  $r$ th harmonic. The output signal, therefore, consists of a signal with frequency components  $\omega = 0, \pm\omega_0, \pm 2\omega_0, \dots$ , etc. It is evident that the operation of

cross correlation is equivalent to filtering in the frequency domain which allows to pass through only the frequency components of the fundamental frequency of  $s(t)$  and its harmonics. In essence, we are merely filtering out all of the noise signal and extracting the desired periodic signal  $s(t)$  by a filter which allows only the frequency components present in  $s(t)$  to pass through. The various harmonics of  $s(t)$ , however, go through a different relative attenuation (proportional to  $C_r^*$  for  $r$ th harmonic) and hence the output of this filter has the same fundamental frequency ( $\omega_0$ ) as that of  $s(t)$  but, in general, its waveform is different from  $s(t)$ .

If the nature of the filter were such that the relative attenuation of all of the frequency components were uniform, then the output would be an exact replica of  $s(t)$ .

For this to happen we have to cross correlate  $s(t)$  with a uniform impulse train. The perfect filtering is equivalent to cross correlating over an infinite time interval. In practice, it is impossible to design filters which allow only discrete frequency components and attenuate completely all of the other frequencies.

We can conclude that the cross correlation of  $y(t)$  [=  $s(t) + n(t)$ ] with the periodic impulse function  $\delta_{T_0}(t)$  of the same frequency as that of  $s(t)$  yields the actual waveform of the desired periodic component.

---

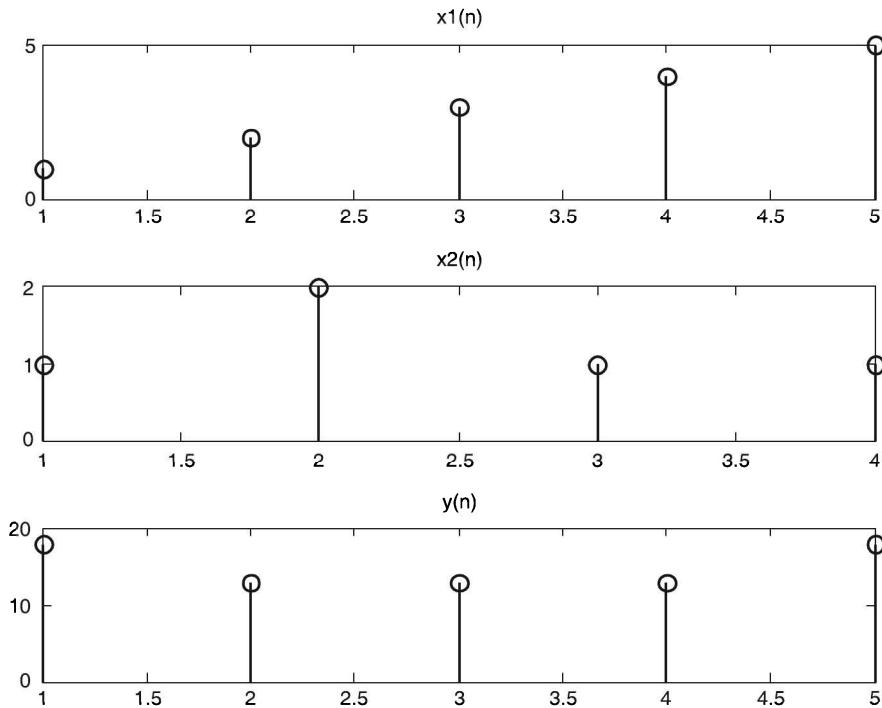
## MATLAB PROGRAMS

### Program 7.1

```
% Finding circular convolution of two discrete-time sequences
clc;clear all;close all;
x1=input('enter sequence1');
x2=input('enter sequence2');
Nx1=length(x1);
Nx2=length(x2);
N=max(Nx1,Nx2)
newx1=[x1 zeros(1,N-Nx1)];
newx2=[x2 zeros(1,N-Nx2)];
disp('circular convolution is')
y=cconv(newx1,newx2,N)
subplot(3,1,1);stem(x1);
title('x1(n)');
subplot(3,1,2);stem(x2);
title('x2(n)');
subplot(3,1,3);stem(y);
title('y(n)');
```

Output:

```
enter sequence1 [1 2 3 4 5]
enter sequence2 [1 2 1 1]
N =
5
circular convolution is
y =
18 13 13 13 18
```



### Program 7.2

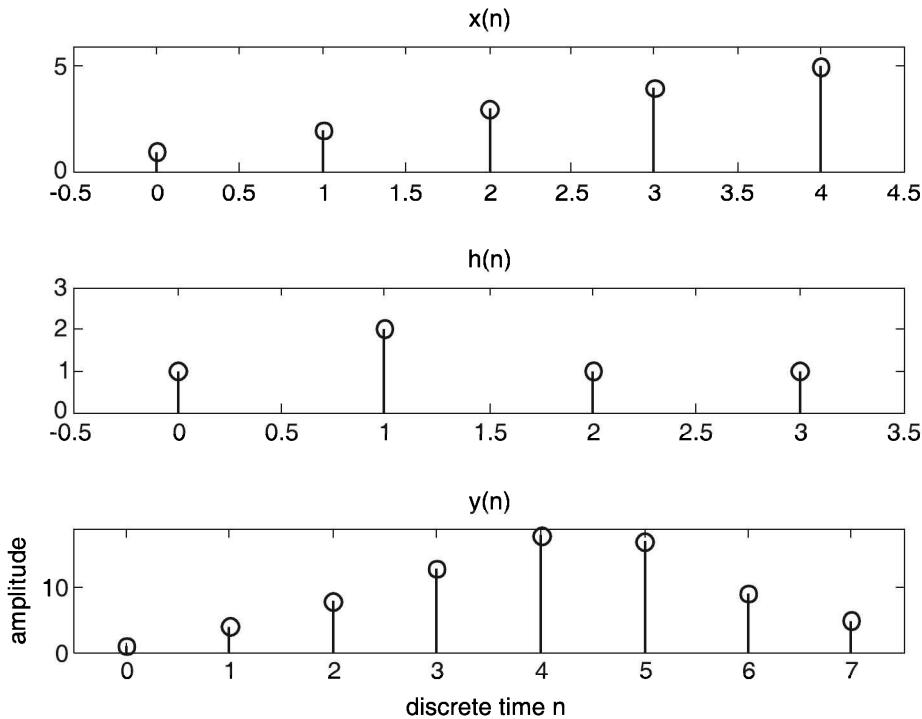
```
% Finding convolution of two discrete-time sequences
clc;clear all;close all;
x=input('enter sequence1');
h=input('enter sequence2');
Nx=length(x);Nh=length(h);
Ny=Nx+Nh-1;
newx=[x zeros(1,Ny-Nx)];
newh=[h zeros(1,Ny-Nh)];
for n=0:Ny-1
    sum=0;
    for k=0:n
        sum=sum+newx(k+1)*newh(n-k+1);
    end
    y(n+1)=sum;
end
nx=0:1:Nx-1;
subplot(3,1,1);stem(nx,x);
title('x(n)');
axis([min(nx)-0.5 max(nx)+0.5 0 max(x)+1]);
nh=0:1:Nh-1;
subplot(3,1,2);stem(nh,h);
```

```
title('h(n)');
axis([min(nh)-0.5 max(nh)+0.5 0 max(h)+1]);
ny=min(nx)+min(nh):max(nx)+max(nh);
subplot(3,1,3);stem(ny,y);
xlabel('discrete time n');ylabel('amplitude');
title('y(n)');
axis([min(ny)-0.5 max(ny)+0.5 0 max(y)+1]);
disp(y)
```

Output:

```
enter sequence1      [1 2 3 4 5]
enter sequence2      [1 2 1 1]
```

```
1 4 8 13 18 17 9 5
```



### Program 7.3

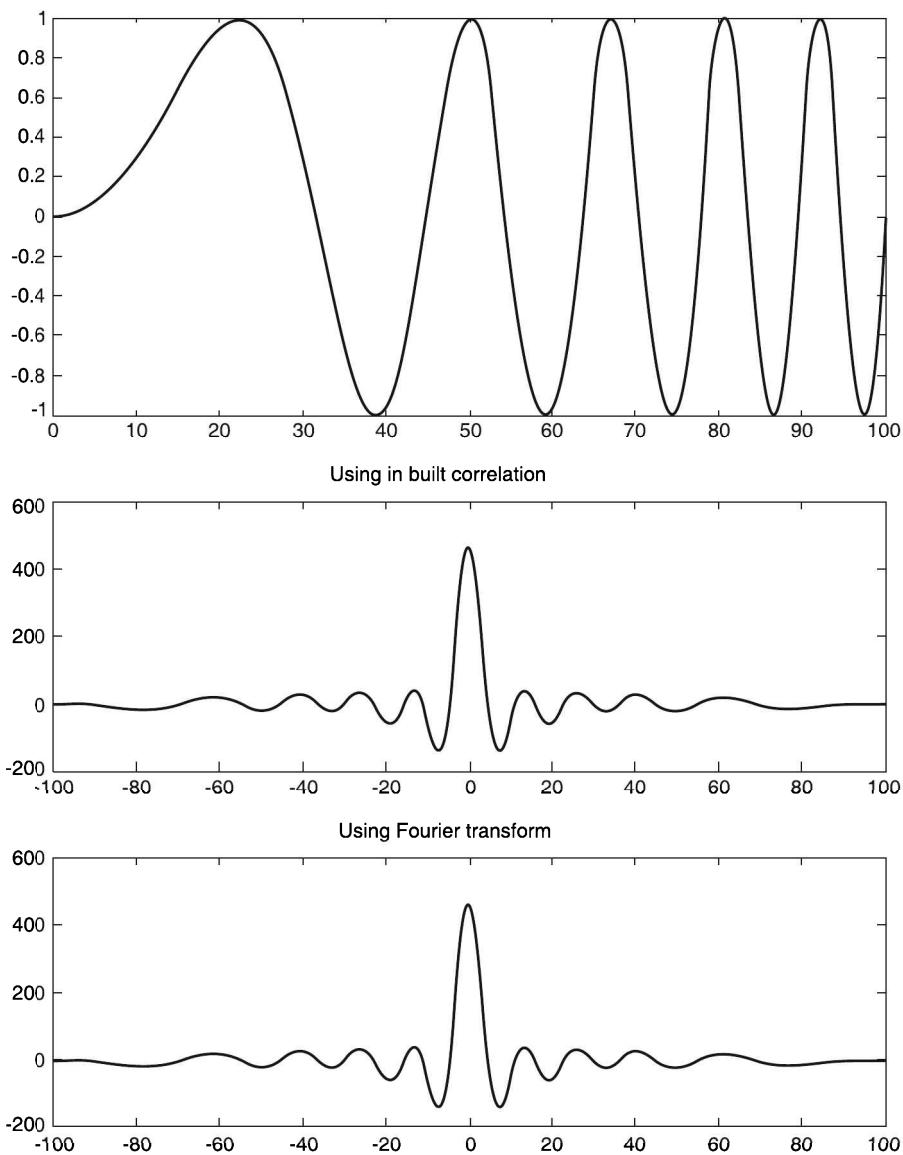
```
% Auto correlation of chirp (Linear frequency modulated signal)
% using Fourier transform
clc;close all;clear;
tmax=100;
t=0:0.1:tmax;
y=chirp(t,0,tmax,0.1, 'linear',-90);
```

```

plot(t,y);
Y=fft([y,zeros(1,1000)]);Y1=conj(fft([y,zeros(1,1000)]));
Y2=fftshift(ifft(Y.*Y1));
Yc=xcorr(y,y);
t2=-tmax:0.1:tmax;
figure; subplot(2,1,1);plot(t2,Yc);
title('Using in built correlation')
subplot(2,1,2);plot(t2,Y2);title('Using Fourier transform')

```

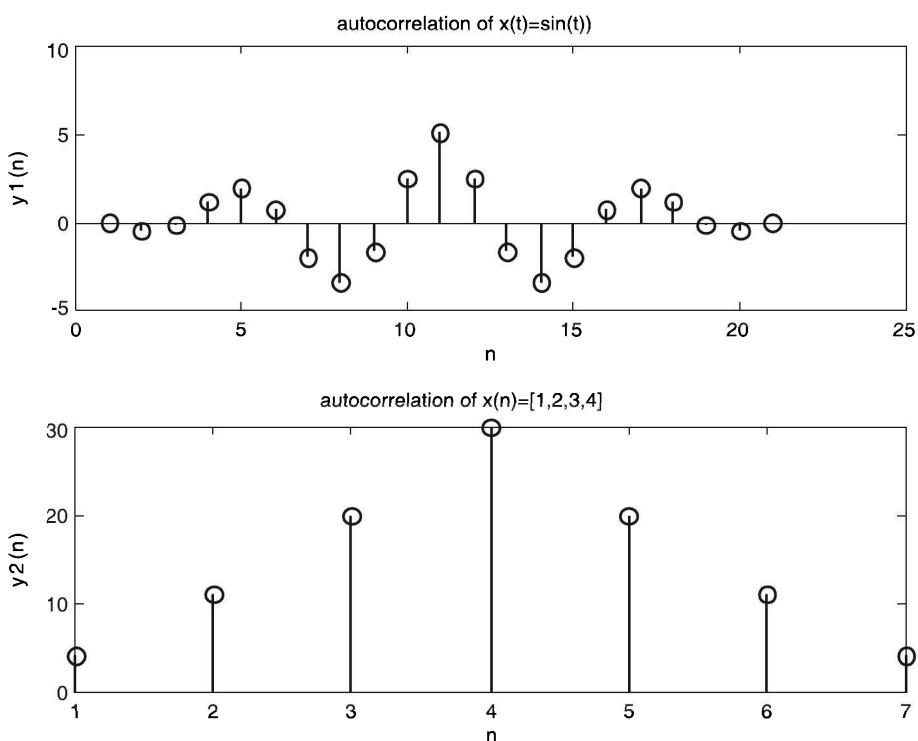
Output:



**Program 7.4**

```
% Finding the autocorrelation function of the sequences
% (i) x(n)=sin(n) (ii) x(n)=[1,2,3,4]
clc;close all;clear all;
% x(n)=sin(n)
n=0:1:10;
x1=sin(n);
y1=xcorr(x1);
subplot(2,1,1);stem(y1);
xlabel('n');ylabel('y1(n)');
title('autocorrelation of x(t)=sin(t))');
% x(n)=[1,2,3,4]
n=0:1:3;
x2=[1 2 3 4];
y2=xcorr(x2);
subplot(2,1,2);stem(y2);
xlabel('n');ylabel('y2(n)');
title('autocorrelation of x(n)=[1,2,3,4]');
```

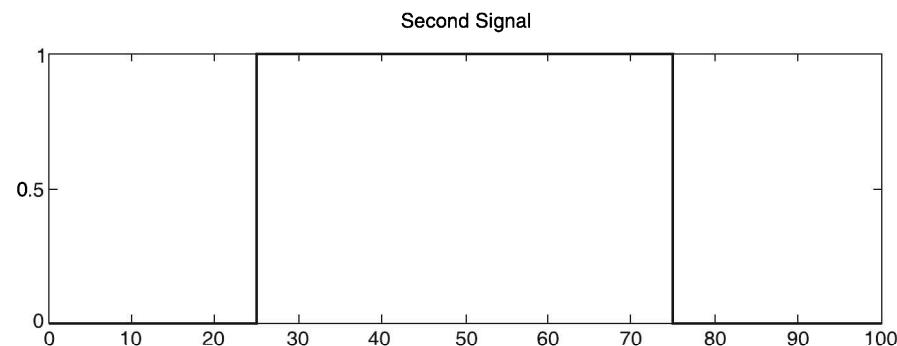
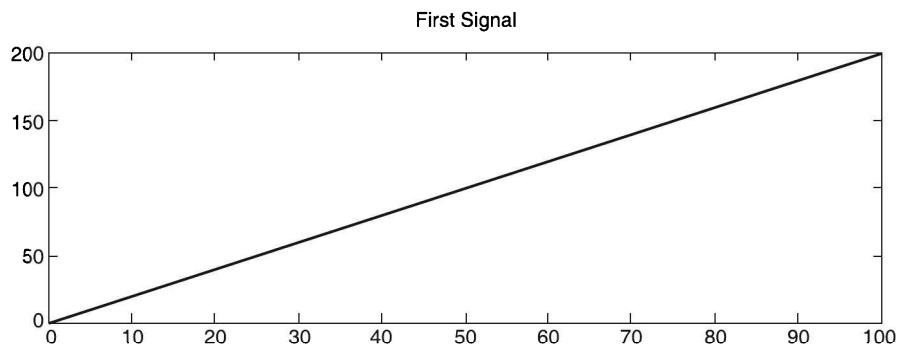
Output:

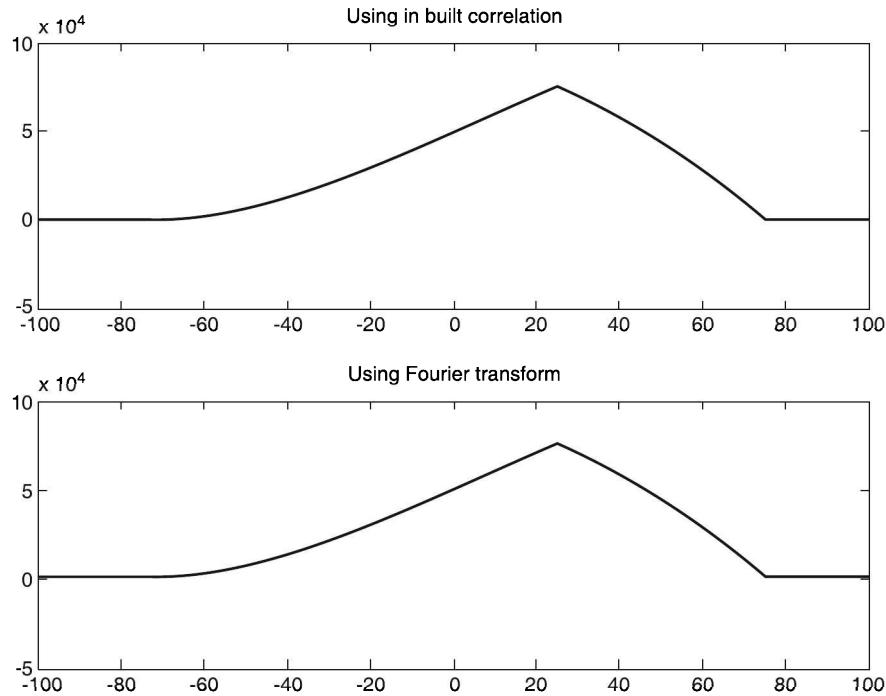


### Program 7.5

```
% Cross correlation of signals using Fourier transform
clc;close all;clear;
tmax=100;
t=0:0.1:tmax;
y=2*t;
y1=[zeros(1,250),ones(1,500),zeros(1,251)];
subplot(2,1,1);plot(t,y);title('First Signal')
subplot(2,1,2);plot(t,y1);title('Second Signal')
Y=fft([y,zeros(1,1000)]);Y1=conj(fft([y1,zeros(1,1000)]));
Y2=fftshift(ifft(Y.*Y1));
Yc=xcorr(y,y1);
t2=-tmax:0.1:tmax;
figure; subplot(2,1,1);plot(t2,Yc);title('Using in built correlation')
subplot(2,1,2);plot(t2,Y2);title('Using Fourier transform')
```

Output:



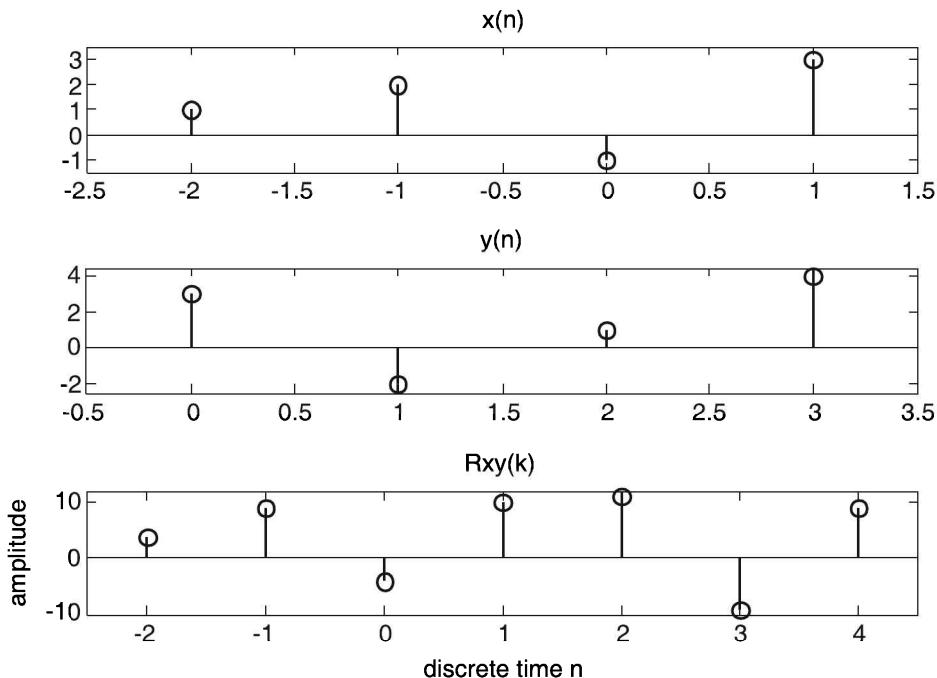


### Program 7.6

```
% Finding the cross correlation between two sequences
clc;clear all;close all;
x=[1 2 -1 3];nx=-2:1:1;
y=[3 -2 1 4];ny=0:1:3;
yy=fliplr(y);
Nx=length(x);Ny=length(y);
Nxy=Nx+Ny-1;
newx=[x zeros(1,Nxy-Nx)];
newy=[yy zeros(1,Nxy-Ny)];
for k=0:Nxy-1
    sum=0;
    for n=0:k
        sum=sum+newx(n+1)*newy(k-n+1);
    end
    Rxy(k+1)=sum;
end
subplot(3,1,1);stem(nx,x);
title('x(n)');
axis([-2.5 1.5 -1.5 3.5]);
subplot(3,1,2);stem(ny,y);
title('y(n)');
axis([-0.5 3.5 -2.5 4.5]);
```

```
nxy=-2:1:4;
subplot(3,1,3);stem(nxy,Rxy);
xlabel('discrete time n');ylabel('amplitude');
title('Rxy(k)');
axis([min(nxy)-0.5 max(nxy)+0.5 min(Rxy)-1 max(Rxy)+1]);
```

Output:



### Program 7.7

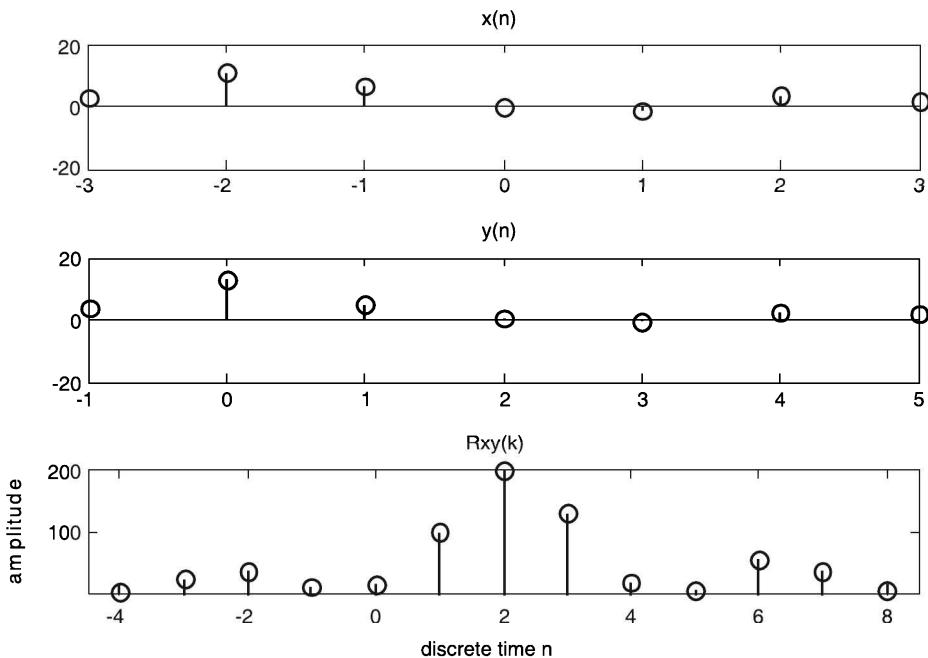
```
% Finding cross correlation between the sequences x(n)={3,11,7,0,-1,4,2} and its noise corrupted and shifted version y(n)=x(n-2)+w(n)
clc;clear all;close all;
x=[3,11,7,0,-1,4,2];nx=-3:1:3;
x2=[3,11,7,0,-1,4,2];nx2=nx+2;
% Gaussian noise
w=randn(1,length(x2));
% y(n)=x(n-2)+w(n)
y=x2+w;ny=nx2;
yy=fliplr(y);
Nx=length(x);Ny=length(y);
Nxy=Nx+Ny-1;
newx=[x zeros(1,Nxy-Nx)];
newy=[yy zeros(1,Nxy-Ny)];
```

```

for n=0:Nxy-1
    sum=0;
    for k=0:n
        sum=sum+newx(k+1) *newy(n-k+1);
    end
    Rxy(n+1)=sum;
end
subplot(3,1,1);stem(nx,x);
title('x(n)');
subplot(3,1,2);stem(ny,y);
title('y(n)');
nxy=min(nx)+min(ny):max(nx)+max(ny);
subplot(3,1,3);stem(nxy,Rxy);
xlabel('discrete time n');ylabel('amplitude');
title('Rxy(k)');
axis([min(nxy)-0.5 max(nxy)+0.5 min(Rxy)-1 max(Rxy)+1]);

```

Output:



### Program 7.8

```

% Finding the correlation from convolution
x=[1 2 3 4 ]
y=[2 -1 -1 2]
nx=0:1:3;

```

```

subplot(2,1,1);stem(nx,x);
title('x(n)');
ny=0:1:3;
subplot(2,1,2);stem(ny,y);
title('y(n)');
%correlation
crr=xcorr(x,y)
figure;subplot(2,1,1);stem(crr);
title('correlation');
%correlation from convolution
yy=fliplr(y);
con=conv(x,yy)
subplot(2,1,2);stem(con);
title('correlation from convolution');

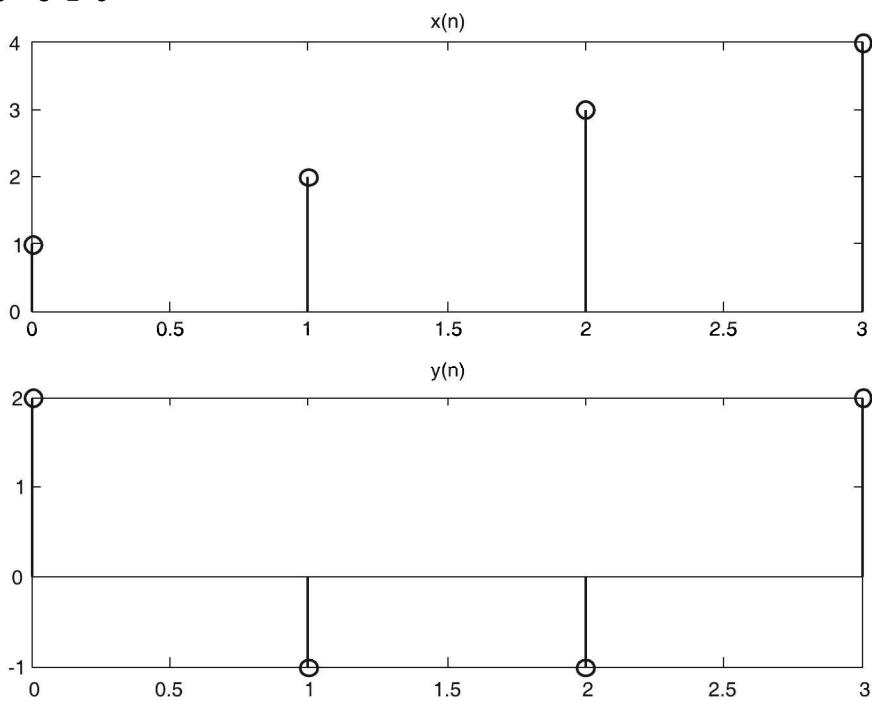
```

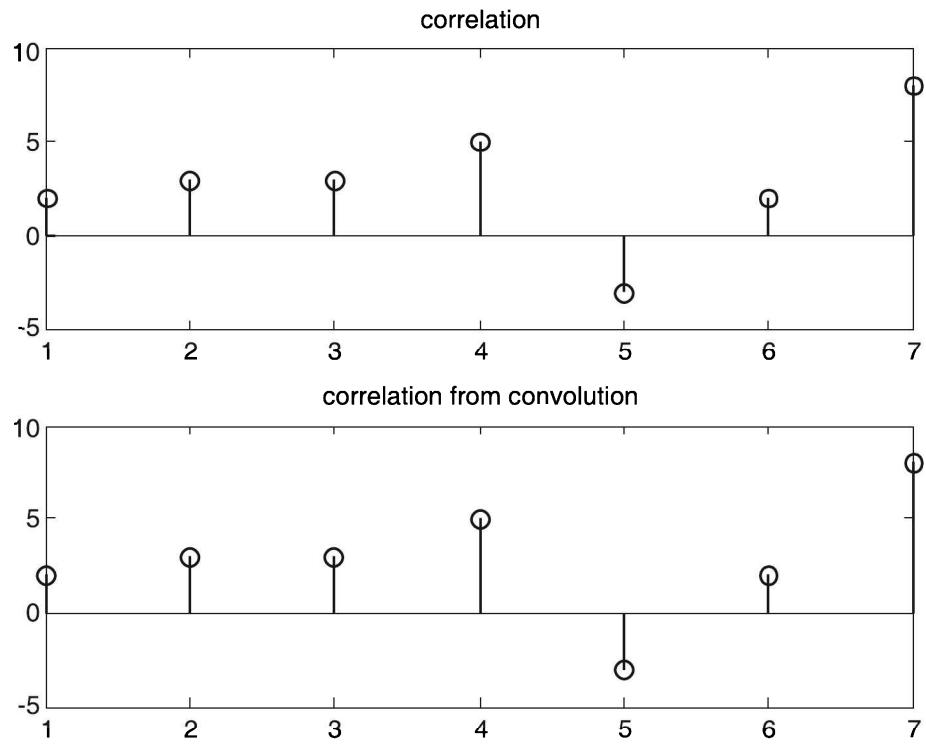
**Output:**

```

x =
1 2 3 4
y =
2 -1 -1 2
crr =
2.0000 3.0000 3.0000 5.0000 -3.0000 2.0000 8.0000
con =
2 3 3 5 -3 2 8

```





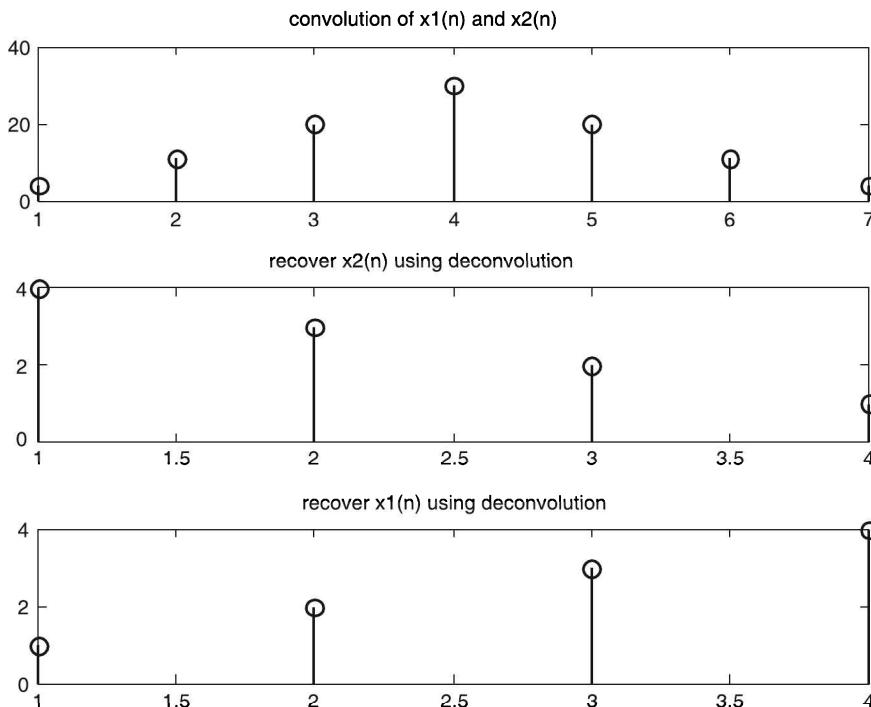
### Program 7.9

```
% Convolution and deconvolution
clc; close all; clear all;
x1n=[1 2 3 4];
x2n=[4,3,2,1];
% convolution
y1n=conv(x1n,x2n);
disp('convolution of x1(n) and x2(n) is');
disp(y1n);
subplot(3,1,1);stem(y1n);
title('convolution of x1(n) and x2(n)');
% deconvolution to recover x2n
[q,r]=deconv(y1n,x1n);
disp('recovered x2(n) from deconvolution');
x2n=q; disp(x2n);
subplot(3,1,2);stem(x2n);
title('recover x2(n) using deconvolution');
% deconvolution to recover x1n
[q,r]=deconv(y1n,x2n);
disp('recovered x1(n) from deconvolution');
```

```
x1n=q;disp(x1n);
subplot(3,1,3);stem(x1n);
title('recover x1(n) using deconvolution');
```

**Output:**

```
convolution of x1(n) and x2(n) is
4 11 20 30 20 11 4
recovered x2(n) from deconvolution
4 3 2 1
recovered x1(n) from deconvolution
1 2 3 4
```



### SHORT QUESTIONS WITH ANSWERS

1. What is convolution?

*Ans.* Convolution is a mathematical operation which is used to express the input-output relationship of an LTI system.

2. Write the formula for convolution of  $x(t)$  and  $h(t)$ .

*Ans.* Let  $x(t)$  is the input signal and  $h(t)$  is the impulse response of the system. Then  
(a) If a non-causal signal is applied to a non-causal system, then the output

$$y(t) = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} x(\tau) h(t - \tau) d\tau = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} h(\tau) x(t - \tau) d\tau$$

(b) If a causal signal is applied to a non-causal system, then the output

$$y(t) = \int_0^{\infty} x(\tau) h(t - \tau) d\tau = \int_{-\infty}^t h(\tau) x(t - \tau) d\tau$$

(c) If a non-causal signal is applied to a causal system, then the output

$$y(t) = \int_{-\infty}^t x(\tau) h(t - \tau) d\tau = \int_0^{\infty} h(\tau) x(t - \tau) d\tau$$

(d) If a causal signal is applied to a causal system, then the output

$$y(t) = \int_0^t x(\tau) h(t - \tau) d\tau = \int_0^t h(\tau) x(t - \tau) d\tau$$

3. State the shift property of convolution.

*Ans.* The shift property of convolution states that, if

$$x_1(t) * x_2(t) = z(t)$$

then

$$x_1(t) * x_2(t - T) = z(t - T)$$

$$x_1(t - T) * x_2(t) = z(t - T)$$

and

$$x_1(t - T_1) * x_2(t - T_2) = z(t - T_1 - T_2)$$

4. What is the convolution of a signal with an impulse?

*Ans.* The convolution of a signal with an impulse is equal to that signal itself.

5. State the width property of convolution.

*Ans.* The width property of convolution states that if the duration of two signals  $x_1(t)$  and  $x_2(t)$  is  $T_1$  and  $T_2$  respectively, then the duration of the signal obtained by convolving  $x_1(t)$  and  $x_2(t)$  is  $T_1 + T_2$ .

6. What are the two theorems of convolution associated with Fourier transform?

*Ans.* The two theorems of convolution associated with Fourier transform are:

(a) Time convolution theorem

(b) Frequency convolution theorem

7. State time convolution theorem.

*Ans.* The time convolution theorem states that the convolution in time domain is equivalent to multiplication of their spectra in frequency domain. Mathematically,

If  $x_1(t) \longleftrightarrow X_1(\omega)$  and  $x_2(t) \longleftrightarrow X_2(\omega)$

then  $x_1(t) * x_2(t) \longleftrightarrow X_1(\omega) X_2(\omega)$

8. State frequency convolution theorem.

*Ans.* The frequency convolution theorem states that the multiplication of two functions in time domain is equivalent to convolution of their spectra in frequency domain. Mathematically,

$$\text{If } x_1(t) \longleftrightarrow X_1(\omega) \text{ and } x_2(t) \longleftrightarrow X_2(\omega)$$

$$\text{then } x_1(t)x_2(t) \longleftrightarrow \frac{1}{2\pi} [X_1(\omega) * X_2(\omega)]$$

9. What is correlation?

*Ans.* Correlation is an operation between two signals and it gives us the degree of similarity between the two signals. Correlation is of two types: Cross correlation and autocorrelation. Cross correlation is a measure of similarity between one signal and time delayed version of another signal. Autocorrelation is a measure of similarity between a signal and time delayed version of same signal.

10. What are incoherent signals?

*Ans.* The signals for which the cross-correlation is zero for all values of  $\tau$  are called uncorrelated or incoherent signals.

11. Write the expression for cross correlation of two energy signals.

*Ans.* The cross correlation of two energy signals  $x(t)$  and  $y(t)$  is given by

$$R_{xy}(\tau) = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} x(t)y^*(t-\tau) dt = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} x(t+\tau)y^*(t) dt$$

12. What is the cross correlation for orthogonal signals?

*Ans.* The cross correlation for orthogonal signals is zero.

13. Write the properties of cross correlation for energy signals.

*Ans.* The properties of cross correlation for energy signals are as follows:

1. The cross correlation functions exhibit conjugate symmetry, i.e.  $R_{xy}(\tau) = R_{yx}^*(-\tau)$ .
2. If the cross correlation is zero, then the signals are orthogonal signals.

If  $R_{xy}(0) = 0$ , i.e.  $\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} x(t)y^*(t) dt = 0$ , then the signals are orthogonal.

3. The cross correlation of energy signals corresponds to the multiplication of the Fourier transform of one signal and the complex conjugate Fourier transform of another signal.

$$R_{xy}(\tau) \longleftrightarrow X(\omega)Y^*(\omega)$$

14. Write the expression for cross correlation of periodic or power signals.

*Ans.* The cross correlation of two periodic signals  $x(t)$  and  $y(t)$  of time period  $T$  is:

$$R_{xy}(\tau) = \text{Lt}_{T \rightarrow \infty} \frac{1}{T} \int_{-T/2}^{T/2} x(t)y^*(t-\tau) d\tau$$

15. Write the properties of cross correlation for periodic signals.

*Ans.* The properties of cross correlation for periodic signals are:

1. If  $R_{xy}(0) = 0$ , i.e. if  $\frac{1}{T} \int_{-T/2}^{T/2} x(t) y^*(t) dt = 0$ .

Then the two signals are called orthogonal signals.

2. The cross correlation exhibits conjugate symmetry

i.e.  $R_{xy}(\tau) = R_{yx}^*(-\tau)$

3. The cross correlation of two periodic signals is not commutative,

i.e.  $R_{xy}(\tau) \neq R_{yx}(\tau)$

16. Write the expression for autocorrelation of power signals.

*Ans.* The autocorrelation of a power signal is given by

$$R(\tau) = \text{Lt}_{T \rightarrow \infty} \frac{1}{T} \int_{-T/2}^{T/2} x(t) x^*(t - \tau) dt$$

17. Write the expression for autocorrelation of energy signals.

*Ans.* The autocorrelation of energy signals is given as:

$$R(\tau) = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} x(t) x^*(t - \tau) dt \quad \text{or} \quad R(\tau) = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} x^*(t - \tau) x(t) dt$$

18. Write the properties of autocorrelation of energy signals.

*Ans.* The properties of autocorrelation of energy signals are:

1. The autocorrelation exhibits conjugate symmetry

i.e.  $R(\tau) = R^*(-\tau)$

2. The value of autocorrelation of an energy signal at the origin ( $\tau = 0$ ) gives the total energy of that signal

i.e.  $R(0) = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} |x(t)|^2 dt = E$

3.  $R(\tau)$  is maximum at  $\tau = 0$ , i.e.  $R(\tau) \leq R(0)$  for all  $\tau$ .

4. The autocorrelation  $R(\tau)$  and ESD  $\psi(\omega)$  of an energy signal form a Fourier transform pair

$$R(\tau) \longleftrightarrow \psi(\omega) \text{ or } \psi(f)$$

19. Write the properties of autocorrelation for periodic signals.

*Ans.* The properties of autocorrelation for periodic signals are:

1. The autocorrelation exhibits conjugate symmetry, i.e.  $R(\tau) = R^*(-\tau)$

2. The autocorrelation of a power signal at origin gives the average power of that signal, i.e.

$$R(0) = \frac{1}{T} \int_{-T/2}^{T/2} |x(t)|^2 dt = P$$

3. The autocorrelation  $R(\tau)$  is maximum at the origin, i.e.

$$|R(\tau)| \leq R(0)$$

4. The autocorrelation  $R(\tau)$  and PSD  $S(\omega)$  of a power signal form a Fourier transform pair, i.e.

$$R(\tau) \longleftrightarrow S(\omega) \text{ or } S(f)$$

5. The autocorrelation is periodic with the same period as the periodic signal itself, i.e.

$$R(\tau) = R(\tau + nT), \quad n = 1, 2, 3, \dots$$

20. What is the relation between convolution and correlation?

*Ans.* The relation between convolution and correlation is that the cross correlation of  $x_1(t)$  and  $x_2(t)$  is same as the convolution of  $x_1(t)$  and  $x_2(-t)$ .

21. Define correlation theorem.

*Ans.* The correlation theorem states that the cross correlation of two energy signals corresponds to the multiplication of the Fourier transform of one signal by the complex conjugate of the Fourier transform of the second signal.

$$R_{12}(\tau) \longleftrightarrow X_1(\omega) X_2^*(\omega)$$

22. When are convolution and correlation equivalent?

*Ans.* When the functions are even functions convolution and correlation are equal.

Convolution of  $x_1(t)$  and  $x_2(t)$  =  $x_1(t) * x_2(t)$

Correlation of  $x_1(t)$  and  $x_2(t)$  is  $R_{12}(\tau) = x_1(t) * x_2(-t)|_{t=\tau} = x_1(t) * x_2(t)|_{t=\tau}$  for even  $x_2(t)$ .

23. Define spectral density.

*Ans.* The spectral density is defined as the distribution of power or energy of a signal per unit bandwidth as a function of frequency.

24. Define normalized energy.

*Ans.* The normalized energy of a signal  $x(t)$  is defined as the energy dissipated by a voltage signal applied across  $1-\Omega$  resistor (or by a current signal flowing through  $1-\Omega$  resistor)

25. State Parseval's theorem for energy signals.

*Ans.* The Parseval's theorem for energy signals, also called Rayleigh energy theorem, states that the energy of a signal can be evaluated from its Fourier transform using the relation:

$$E = \frac{1}{2\pi} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} |X(\omega)|^2 d\omega \quad \text{or} \quad E = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} |X(f)|^2 df$$

26. Define energy spectral density.

*Ans.* Energy spectral density is defined as the distribution of energy of a signal in frequency domain.

27. Write the properties of ESD.

*Ans.* The properties of ESD are:

1. The total area under the ESD is equal to the total energy of that signal.

2. ESD of the output signal = Magnitude square of system function  $\times$  ESD of input signal
  3. The autocorrelation function and ESD form a Fourier transform pair.
28. Define average power.  
*Ans.* The average power is defined as the power dissipated by a voltage  $x(t)$  applied across a  $1-\Omega$  resistor (or by a current signal flowing through a  $1-\Omega$  resistor)
29. State Parseval's power theorem.  
*Ans.* The Parseval's power theorem defines the power of a signal in terms of its Fourier series coefficients. It states that the power of a signal is equal to the sum of square of the magnitudes of various harmonics present in the discrete spectrum.
30. What is power spectral density?  
*Ans.* The distribution of average power of the signal in the frequency domain is called power spectral density.
31. Write the properties of PSD.  
*Ans.* The properties of PSD are:
  1. The area under the PSD function is equal to the average power of that signal.
  2. Output PSD = Magnitude square of system function  $\times$  Input PSD
  3. The autocorrelation function and PSD form a Fourier transform pair.

## REVIEW QUESTIONS

1. Write the properties of convolution.
2. State and prove the time convolution theorem associated with Fourier transforms.
3. State and prove the frequency convolution theorem associated with Fourier transforms.
4. Write the procedure to find the convolution of two signals graphically.
5. Obtain the relation between convolution and correlation.
6. State and prove the Parseval's theorem for energy signal (Rayleigh energy theorem).
7. State and prove the Parseval's power theorem.
8. Compare ESD and PSD.
9. Write the properties of ESD and PSD.
10. Show that  $R(\tau)$  and ESD form a Fourier transform pair.
11. Show that  $R(\tau)$  and PSD form a Fourier transform pair.
12. Explain the detection of periodic signals in the presence of noise by autocorrelation.
13. Explain the detection of periodic signals in the presence of noise by cross correlation.
14. Explain the extraction of a signal from noise by filtering.

## FILL IN THE BLANKS

1. Convolution is a \_\_\_\_\_ operation relating input and impulse response to output.
2. If  $x(t)$  and  $h(t)$  are both non-causal, their convolution is given by \_\_\_\_\_ or \_\_\_\_\_.

3. If  $x(t)$  and  $h(t)$  are both causal, their convolution is given by \_\_\_\_\_ or \_\_\_\_\_.
4. If  $x(t)$  is causal and  $h(t)$  is non-causal, their convolution is given by \_\_\_\_\_ or \_\_\_\_\_.
5. If  $x(t)$  is non-causal and  $h(t)$  is causal, their convolution is given by \_\_\_\_\_ or \_\_\_\_\_.
6. The convolution of a signal with an impulse is equal to \_\_\_\_\_.
7. The two theorems of convolution associated with Fourier transform are: \_\_\_\_\_ theorem and \_\_\_\_\_ theorem.
8. The time convolution theorem states that \_\_\_\_\_.
9. The frequency convolution theorem states that \_\_\_\_\_.
10. Correlation of two signals is a measure of \_\_\_\_\_ between those signals.
11. The cross correlation of \_\_\_\_\_ signals is zero.
12. The autocorrelation function at origin is equal to the \_\_\_\_\_ of the signal.
13. The autocorrelation function  $R(\tau)$  has a maximum value at \_\_\_\_\_.
14. The autocorrelation function and ESD form a \_\_\_\_\_ pair.
15. The autocorrelation function and PSD form a \_\_\_\_\_ pair.
16. The total area under the EDS is equal to the \_\_\_\_\_ of the signal.
17. The total area under the PSD function is equal to the \_\_\_\_\_ of the signal.
18. The distribution of power or energy of a signal per unit bandwidth is called \_\_\_\_\_.
19. Parseval's energy theorem states that \_\_\_\_\_.
20. The distribution of energy of a signal in frequency domain is called \_\_\_\_\_.
21. The input and output PSD of an LTI system are related as  $\psi_y(\omega) = \dots$
22. Parseval's power theorem states that \_\_\_\_\_.
23. The distribution of average power of the signal in frequency domain is called \_\_\_\_\_.
24. Correlation in time domain corresponds to \_\_\_\_\_ in frequency domain.

### OBJECTIVE TYPE QUESTIONS

1. The convolution of  $x(t)$  and  $h(t)$  is given by  $y(t) = \int_0^t x(\tau) h(t - \tau) d\tau$ , then
 

(a) both $x(t)$ and $h(t)$ are causal	(b) both $x(t)$ and $h(t)$ are non-causal
(c) $x(t)$ is causal and $h(t)$ is non-causal	(d) $h(t)$ is causal and $x(t)$ is non-causal

2. The convolution of  $x(t)$  and  $h(t)$  is given by  $y(t) = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} x(\tau) h(t - \tau) d\tau$ , then
- (a) both  $x(t)$  and  $h(t)$  are causal
  - (b) both  $x(t)$  and  $h(t)$  are non-causal
  - (c)  $x(t)$  is causal and  $h(t)$  is non-causal
  - (d)  $h(t)$  is causal and  $x(t)$  is non-causal
3. The convolution of  $x(t)$  and  $h(t)$  is given by  $y(t) = \int_{-\infty}^t x(\tau) h(t - \tau) d\tau$ , then
- (a) both  $x(t)$  and  $h(t)$  are causal
  - (b) both  $x(t)$  and  $h(t)$  are non-causal
  - (c)  $x(t)$  is causal and  $h(t)$  is non-causal
  - (d)  $h(t)$  is causal and  $x(t)$  is non-causal
4. The convolution of  $x(t)$  and  $h(t)$  is given by  $y(t) = \int_0^{\infty} x(\tau) h(t - \tau) d\tau$ , then
- (a) both  $x(t)$  and  $h(t)$  are causal
  - (b) both  $x(t)$  and  $h(t)$  are non-causal
  - (c)  $x(t)$  is causal and  $h(t)$  is non-causal
  - (d)  $h(t)$  is causal and  $x(t)$  is non-causal
5. The time convolution theorem states that  $\mathcal{F}[x_1(t) * x_2(t)] =$
- (a)  $X_1(\omega) X_2(\omega)$
  - (b)  $X_1(\omega) * X_2(\omega)$
  - (c)  $\frac{1}{2\pi} [X_1(\omega) X_2(\omega)]$
  - (d)  $\frac{1}{2\pi} [X_1(\omega) * X_2(\omega)]$
6. The frequency convolution theorem states that  $\mathcal{F}[x_1(t) x_2(t)] =$
- (a)  $X_1(\omega) X_2(\omega)$
  - (b)  $X_1(\omega) * X_2(\omega)$
  - (c)  $\frac{1}{2\pi} [X_1(\omega) X_2(\omega)]$
  - (d)  $\frac{1}{2\pi} [X_1(\omega) * X_2(\omega)]$
7. The condition for orthogonality of two functions  $x_1(t)$  and  $x_2(t)$  in terms of correlation is
- (a)  $R_{12}(\tau) = \infty$
  - (b)  $R_{12}(\tau) = 0$
  - (c)  $R_{12}(\tau) = 1$
  - (d)  $R_{12}(\tau) = \text{finite}$
8. The autocorrelation is maximum at
- (a)  $\tau = 0$
  - (b)  $\tau = \infty$
  - (c)  $\tau = 1$
  - (d) none of the above
9. The Fourier transform of the cross correlation of two signals  $x_1(t)$  and  $x_2(t)$  is equal to
- (a)  $X_1(\omega) X_2(\omega)$
  - (b)  $X_1(\omega) X_2^*(\omega)$
  - (c)  $X_1^*(\omega) X_2^*(\omega)$
  - (d) none of the above
10. The cross correlation of  $x_1(t)$  and  $x_2(t)$  is the same as the convolution of
- (a)  $x_1(t)$  and  $x_2(-t)$
  - (b)  $x_1(t)$  and  $x_2(t)$
  - (c)  $x_1(-t)$  and  $x_2(t)$
  - (d)  $x_1(-t)$  and  $x_2(-t)$
11. Parseval's energy theorem states that  $E =$
- (a)  $\frac{1}{2\pi} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} |X(\omega)|^2 d\omega$
  - (b)  $\frac{1}{2\pi} \int_0^{\infty} |X(\omega)|^2 d\omega$
  - (c)  $\frac{1}{2\pi} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} |X^2(\omega)| d\omega$
  - (d)  $\frac{1}{2\pi} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} |X^2(\omega)| d\omega$

12. Parseval's power theorem states that  $P =$

$$(a) \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} |C_n|^2 d\omega \quad (b) \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} |C_n|^2 \quad (c) \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} |C_n|^2 \quad (d) \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} |C_n|^2$$

13. The Fourier transform of autocorrelation is

$$(a) \text{PSD} \quad (b) \text{ESD} \quad (c) \text{any of (a) or (b)} \quad (d) \text{none}$$

14. The output PSD [ $S_y(\omega)$ ] and input PSD [ $S_x(\omega)$ ] are related through the system function  $H(\omega)$  as

$$(a) S_y(\omega) = |H(\omega)| S_x(\omega) \quad (b) S_y(\omega) = |H(\omega)|^2 S_x(\omega) \\ (c) S_y(\omega) = S_x(\omega) \quad (d) S_y(\omega) = S_x^2(\omega)$$

15. The output ESD [ $\psi_y(\omega)$ ] and input ESD [ $\psi_x(\omega)$ ] are related through the system function  $H(\omega)$  as

$$(a) \psi_y(\omega) = |H(\omega)| \psi_x(\omega) \quad (b) \psi_y(\omega) = |H(\omega)|^2 \psi_x(\omega) \\ (c) \psi_y(\omega) = \psi_x(\omega) \quad (d) \psi_y(\omega) = \psi_x^2(\omega)$$

## PROBLEMS

1. Find the convolution of the following signals:

$$(a) x_1(t) = e^{-t} u(t); x_2(t) = e^{-3t} u(t) \quad (b) x_1(t) = u(t); x_2(t) = u(t) \\ (c) x_1(t) = \sin t u(t); x_2(t) = u(t) \quad (d) x_1(t) = e^{-t} u(t); x_2(t) = u(t)$$

2. Find the convolution of the following signals using Fourier transform:

$$(a) x_1(t) = 2e^{-2t} u(t); x_2(t) = e^{-4t} u(t) \quad (b) x_1(t) = e^{-t} u(t); x_2(t) = e^{-t} u(t)$$

3. Find the convolution of the following signals by graphical method

$$(a) x_1(t) = e^{-at} u(t); x_2(t) = u(t) \\ (b) x_1(t) = u(t+1); x_2(t) = u(t-2) \\ (c) x_1(t) = e^{-t} u(t); x_2(t) = e^{-3t} [u(t) - u(t-2)] \\ (d) x_1(t) = e^{-3t} u(t); x_2(t) = u(t-3) - u(t-5) \\ (e) x_1(t) = \begin{cases} 2 & \text{for } -2 \leq t \leq 2 \\ 0 & \text{elsewhere} \end{cases}; x_2(t) = \begin{cases} 4 & \text{for } 0 \leq t \leq 2 \\ 0 & \text{elsewhere} \end{cases} \\ (f) x_1(t) = \begin{cases} 1 & \text{for } 0 \leq t \leq 2 \\ 0 & \text{elsewhere} \end{cases}; x_2(t) = \begin{cases} 1 & \text{for } 0 \leq t \leq 3 \\ 0 & \text{elsewhere} \end{cases}$$

4. Find the autocorrelation of the signal  $x(t) = A \cos(\omega_0 t + \theta)$ .

5. Find the autocorrelation and ESD of the signal  $x(t) = e^{-t} u(t)$  using the relationship between convolution and correlation.
6. Verify Parseval's theorem for the energy signal  $x(t) = e^{-3t} u(t)$ .
7. A signal  $x(t)$  has energy  $E$ . Calculate the energy of the signal  $x(t/2)$ .
8. Figure 7.49 shows the PSD of the signal  $x(t)$ . Find its average power.

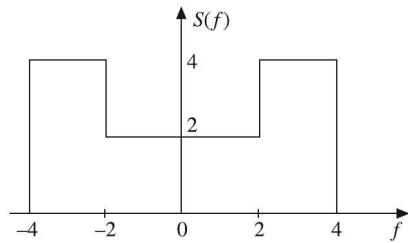
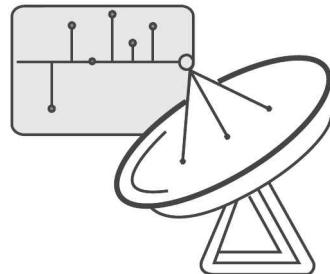


Figure 7.49 Problem 8.

# 8

## Sampling



### 8.1 INTRODUCTION

Earlier we had defined a continuous-time signal as one which is defined for all values of time and a discrete-time signal as one which is defined only over a discrete set of points in time. Most of the signals that we encounter in practice are continuous-time (analog) signals. Analog signal processing, representation, transmission and recovery fall under the category of analog communications which have certain drawbacks. In digital communications, which is more advantageous, it is required to transform an analog signal into a discrete-time signal.

The process of converting a continuous-time signal into a discrete-time signal is called *sampling*. After sampling, the signal is defined at discrete instants of time and the time interval between two successive sampling instants is called *sampling period* or *sampling interval*. In the process of sampling, one of the important factors that we have to consider is—the sampling rate must be kept sufficiently high so that the original signal can be reconstructed from its samples.

### 8.2 SAMPLING

The sampling operation can be represented by a fictitious switch shown in Figure 8.1. The switch is closed for a very short interval of time  $\tau$  (ideally,  $\tau = 0$ ), once every  $T$  sec during which the signal is available at the output. Therefore, if the input is  $x(t)$ , then the output  $x_s(t)$  is  $x(nT)$ ,  $n = 0, \pm 1, \pm 2, \dots$  and  $x(nT)$  is called the sampled sequence of  $x(t)$ , where  $T$  is called the sampling period or sampling interval. It is the time interval between successive samples and the sampling frequency is given by  $f_s = (1/T)$  Hz. Although a mechanical switch is shown in Figure 8.1, in actual practice, an electronic switch may be used.

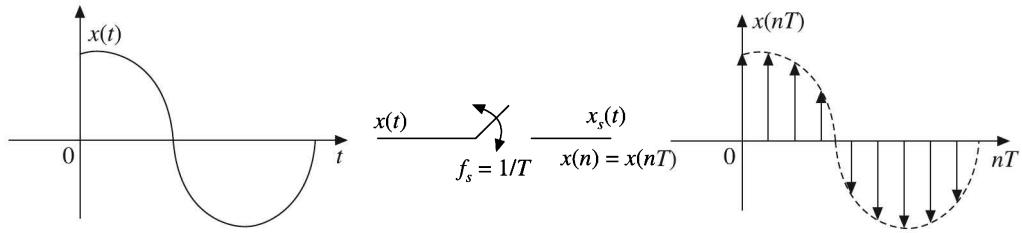


Figure 8.1 Sampling operation.

### 8.3 SAMPLING THEOREM

The sampling theorem is one of the most useful theorems since it applies to digital communication systems. The sampling theorem states that A *band limited signal*  $x(t)$  with  $X(\omega) = 0$  for  $|\omega| \geq \omega_m$  [i.e.  $X(f) = 0$  for  $f \geq f_m$ ] can be represented into and uniquely determined from its samples  $x(nT)$  if the sampling frequency  $f_s \geq 2f_m$ , where  $f_m$  is the highest frequency component present in it. That is, for signal recovery, the sampling frequency must be atleast twice the highest frequency present in the signal.

This theorem is known as *uniform sampling theorem* since it pertains to the specification of a given signal by its samples at uniform intervals of  $1/2f_m$  sec.

It is also called *low pass sampling theorem* because it applies to low pass signals, i.e. signals for which  $X(f) = 0$  for all frequencies such that  $|f| \geq f_m$ , where  $f_m$  is some finite frequency.

*Proof:* The sampling operation can be represented as shown in Figure 8.2.  $x(t)$  is a continuous-time band limited signal to be sampled which has no spectral components above  $f_m$  cycles per sec. That means  $X(\omega)$ , the Fourier transform of  $x(t)$  is 0 for  $\omega > \omega_m$ .  $\delta_T(t)$  is an impulse train which samples at a rate of  $f_s$  Hz and  $x_s(t)$  is the sampled signal.  $T$  is the sampling period and  $f_s = (1/T)$  is the sampling frequency.

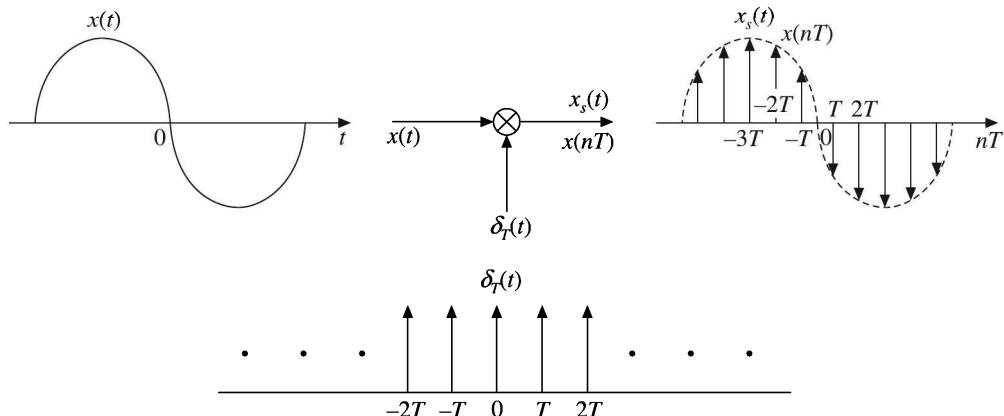


Figure 8.2 Sampling operation.

$x_s(t)$  is the product of signal  $x(t)$  and impulse train  $\delta_T(t)$ . It is a sequence of impulses located at regular intervals of  $T$  sec and having strength equal to the values of  $x(t)$  at the corresponding instants.

$$\therefore x_s(t) = x(t) \delta_T(t) \text{ where } \delta_T(t) = \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} \delta(t - nT)$$

The exponential form of Fourier series of  $\delta_T(t)$  is:

$$\begin{aligned} \delta_T(t) &= \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} \delta(t - nT) = \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} C_n e^{jn\omega_s t} \text{ where } C_n = \frac{1}{T} \int_{-T/2}^{T/2} \delta(t) e^{-jn\omega_s t} dt = \frac{1}{T} \\ \therefore \delta_T(t) &= \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} \delta(t - nT) = \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} \frac{1}{T} e^{jn\omega_s t} = \frac{1}{T} \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} e^{jn\omega_s t} \end{aligned}$$

$$x_s(t) = x(t) \delta_T(t) = \frac{1}{T} \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} x(t) e^{jn\omega_s t}$$

Taking Fourier transform on both sides, we have

$$F[x_s(t)] = F\left[\frac{1}{T} \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} x(t) e^{jn\omega_s t}\right] = \frac{1}{T} \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} F[x(t) e^{jn\omega_s t}]$$

$$\text{i.e. } X_s(\omega) = \frac{1}{T} \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} X(\omega - n\omega_s) = \frac{1}{T} \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} X\left(\omega - \frac{2\pi}{T}n\right)$$

$$\text{or } X_s(f) = f_s \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} X(f - nf_s)$$

where  $X(\omega)$  or  $X(f)$  is the spectrum of input signal and  $X_s(\omega)$  or  $X_s(f)$  is the spectrum of the sampled signal.

Thus, the Fourier transform of the sampled signal is given by an infinite sum of shifted replicas of the Fourier transform of the original signal.

The signal  $x(t)$  is band limited to  $f_m$ . The term  $X[\omega - (2\pi/T)n]$  is the shifting of  $X(\omega)$  from  $\omega = 0$  to  $\omega = (2\pi/T)n$ . Hence  $X_s(\omega)$  is the sum of shifted replicas of  $(1/T)X(\omega)$  centering at  $(2\pi/T)n$ ,  $n = 0, \pm 1, \pm 2, \dots$ . Figure 8.3 shows the plot of  $X(\omega)$  and  $X_s(\omega)$  for various values of  $\pi/T$ . It shows that [Figure 8.3(b) and (c)] if  $(\pi/T) \geq \omega_m$ , the replicas will not overlap and as a result, the frequency spectrum of  $TX_s(\omega)$  in the frequency range  $[-(\pi/T), \pi/T]$  is identical to  $X(\omega)$ .  $X(\omega)$  can be recovered from  $X_s(\omega)$  by passing it through a low pass filter which has sharp cutoff at  $\omega = \pi/T$  (or with bandwidth  $B$ , where  $\omega_m \leq B \leq \omega_s - \omega_m$ ). If  $(\pi/T) < \omega_m$  [Figure 8.3(d)], the successive frequency spectra will overlap and the original signal cannot be recovered from the sampled signal. Therefore, we can say that for signal recovery,

$$\omega_s - \omega_m \geq \omega_m, \text{ i.e. } \omega_s \geq 2\omega_m$$

or

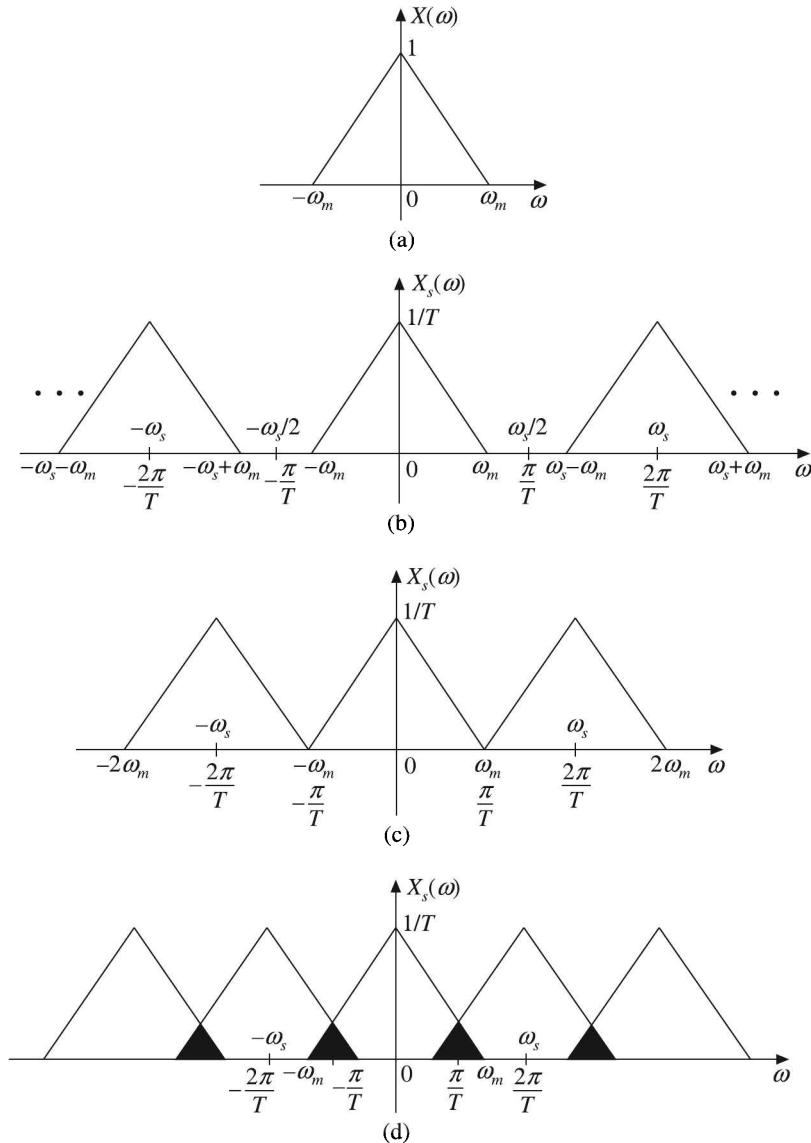
$$f_s - f_m \geq f_m, \text{ i.e. } f_s \geq 2f_m$$

or

$$\frac{\pi}{T} \geq \omega_m, \text{ i.e. } \pi f_s \geq 2\pi f_m, \text{ i.e. } f_s \geq 2f_m$$

or

$$\frac{1}{f_s} \leq \frac{1}{2f_m}, \text{ i.e. } T \leq \frac{1}{2f_m}$$



**Figure 8.3** (a) Frequency spectrum of continuous-time signal  $x(t)$ , (b), (c) and (d) Frequency spectrum of sampled signal  $x_s(t)$  for  $(\pi/T) > \omega_m$ ,  $(\pi/T) = \omega_m$  and  $(\pi/T) < \omega_m$  respectively.

So we can conclude that if the sampling interval  $T$  is small [ $<(1/2f_m)$ ],  $X(\omega)$  can be recovered from  $X_s(\omega)$ , but if  $T$  becomes larger than  $1/2f_m$ , then there is an overlap between successive cycles and  $X(\omega)$  cannot be recovered from  $X_s(\omega)$ . This proves the sampling theorem.

From the previous discussion, we can observe that when the spectra overlap, it is impossible to retrieve  $x(t)$  from  $x_s(t)$ .

Thus, we find that in general, there are two basic conditions to be satisfied if  $x(t)$  is to be recovered from its samples.

1.  $x(t)$  should be band-limited to some frequency  $\omega_m$ .
2. The sampling frequency  $\omega_s$  should be atleast twice the band-limiting frequency  $\omega_m$  [i.e.  $\omega_s \geq 2\omega_m$ ].

From Figure 8.3, we can observe that:

1.  $X_s(\omega)$  is a repetitive version of  $X(\omega)$  with  $X(\omega)$  repeating itself at regular intervals of  $\omega_s$ , the sampling frequency.
2. When  $\omega_s > 2\omega_m$  [Figure 8.3(b)], the spectral replicates have a larger separation between them, known as *guard band*, which makes the process of filtering much easier and effective. Even a non-ideal filter which does not have a sharp cutoff can also be used.
3. When  $\omega_s = 2\omega_m$  [Figure 8.3(c)], there is no separation between the replicates, so no *guard band* exists, and  $X(\omega)$  can be obtained from  $X_s(\omega)$  by using only an ideal low pass filter (LPF) with sharp cutoff.
4. When  $\omega_s < 2\omega_m$  [Figure 8.3(d)], the low frequency components in  $X_s(\omega)$  overlap on the high frequency components of  $X(\omega)$ , there is distortion and  $X(\omega)$  cannot be recovered from  $X_s(\omega)$  by using any filter. This type of distortion is called *aliasing*. Aliasing can be avoided if  $f_s \geq 2f_m$  or  $T \leq (1/2f_m)$ .

Since it is impossible to build filters having an infinite sharpness of cutoff, a guard band between  $f_m$  and  $f_s - f_m$  is preferred.

The impulse train at the output of the sampler is processed through an ideal LPF with gain  $T$  and cutoff frequency greater than  $\omega_m$  and less than  $\omega_s - \omega_m$ . The resulting output signal will exactly equal  $x(t)$ .

## 8.4 NYQUIST RATE OF SAMPLING

*Nyquist rate of sampling is the theoretical minimum sampling rate at which a signal can be sampled and still be reconstructed from its samples without any distortion.* It is ‘the theoretical minimum’ because when the Nyquist rate of sampling is used, only an ideal LPF can be used to extract  $X(\omega)$  from  $X_s(\omega)$ , i.e. to recover  $x(t)$  from  $x_s(t)$ . It is always equal to  $2f_m$  where  $f_m$  is the maximum frequency component present in the signal.

A signal sampled at greater than Nyquist rate is said to be *over sampled* and a signal sampled at less than its Nyquist rate is said to be *under sampled*.

### Nyquist interval

*Nyquist interval is the time interval between any two adjacent samples when sampling rate is Nyquist rate.*

$$\text{Nyquist rate } f_N = 2f_m \text{ Hz}$$

$$\text{Nyquist interval} = \frac{1}{f_N} = \frac{1}{2f_m} \text{ sec.}$$

## 8.5 EFFECTS OF UNDER SAMPLING—ALIASING

When  $\omega_s < 2\omega_m$ , i.e. when the signal is under sampled,  $X(\omega)$ , the spectrum of  $x(t)$  is no longer replicated in  $X_s(\omega)$ , and thus is no longer recoverable by low pass filtering. This effect in which the individual terms in equation  $X_s(\omega) = \frac{1}{T} \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} X(\omega - n\omega_s)$  overlap is referred to as aliasing. This process of spectral overlap is also called *frequency folding effect*. In fact, aliasing is defined as the phenomenon in which a high frequency component in the frequency spectrum of signal takes identity of a lower frequency component in the spectrum of the sampled signal.

Aliasing can occur if either of the following conditions exists:

1. The signal is not band-limited to a finite range.
2. The sampling rate is too low.

Theoretically if the signal is not band-limited, there is no way of avoiding the aliasing problem with the basic sampling scheme employed. However, the spectra of most real life signals are such that they may be assumed to be band-limited. Further, a common practice employed in many sampled data systems is to filter the continuous-time signals before sampling to ensure that it does meet the band-limited criterion closely enough for all practical purposes.

To avoid aliasing, it should be ensured that:

1.  $x(t)$  is strictly band-limited (this can be ensured by using anti-aliasing filter before the sampler).
2.  $f_s$  is greater than  $2f_m$ .

## 8.6 ANTI-ALIASING FILTER

Sampling theorem states that a signal can be perfectly reconstructed from its samples only if it is band-limited. In practice no signal is strictly band-limited, i.e. in general signals have frequency spectra consisting of low frequency components as well as high frequency noise components. When a signal is sampled, with sampling frequency  $f_s$ , all signals with frequency range higher than  $\omega_s/2$  appear as signal frequencies between 0 and  $\omega_s/2$  creating aliasing. Therefore, to avoid aliasing errors caused by the undesired high frequency signals, it is necessary to first band-limit  $x(t)$  to some appropriate frequency  $f_m$  by using an LPF such that

most part of the energy is retained. This LPF used for band-limiting a signal before sampling, as shown in Figure 8.4, is generally referred to as an *anti-aliasing filter* since it is used primarily for preventing aliasing.

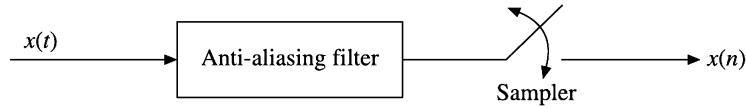


Figure 8.4 Anti-aliasing filter.

## 8.7 SAMPLING TECHNIQUES

Sampling of a signal is done in several ways. Basically there are three types of sampling techniques:

1. Instantaneous sampling or impulse sampling
2. Natural sampling
3. Flat top sampling

Out of these three methods, instantaneous or impulse sampling is also called ideal sampling, whereas the natural sampling and Flat top sampling are called practical sampling methods. These sampling techniques are discussed in detail in the subsequent sections.

### 8.7.1 Ideal or Impulse Sampling

Ideally, sampling should be done instantaneously so that the  $k$ th element of the sequence obtained by sampling represents the value of  $x(t)$  at  $t = kT$ . The operation is shown in Figure 8.5(a). Assume that the fictitious sampler closes almost for zero time once in every  $T$  sec. It is equivalent to transmitting the input signal to the output for a very very short time (almost zero time) once in every  $T$  sec. The mechanical switch can be replaced by an electronic switch which is basically a Pulse Amplitude Modulator as shown in Figure 8.5(b).

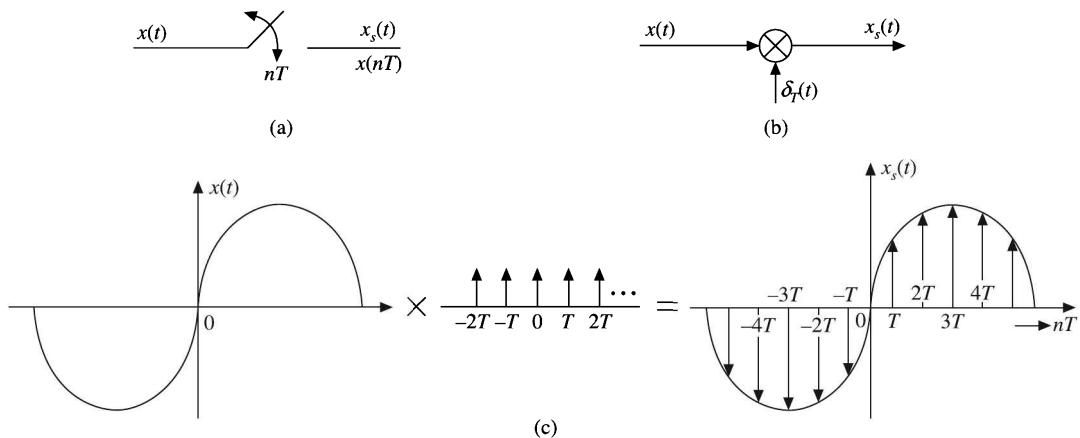


Figure 8.5 Ideal sampling.

Now, the operation is equivalent to multiplying the input signal  $x(t)$  by an impulse train  $\delta_T(t)$  as shown in Figure 8.5(c). So the output of the sampler is a train of impulses of height equal to the instantaneous value of the input signal at the sampling instant.

The impulse train, also called the sampling function is represented as:

$$\delta_T(t) = \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} \delta(t - nT)$$

The sampled signal is given by

$$\begin{aligned} x_s(t) &= x(t) \delta_T(t) = x(t) \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} \delta(t - nT) = \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} x(nT) \delta(t - nT) \\ \therefore X_s(\omega) &= \frac{1}{T} \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} X(\omega - n\omega_s) \\ \text{or } X_s(f) &= f_s \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} X(f - nf_s) \end{aligned}$$

This equation gives the spectrum of ideally sampled signal. It shows that the spectrum  $X_s(\omega)$  is an infinite sum of shifted replicas of  $X(\omega)$  spaced  $n\omega_s$  apart, where  $n = \pm 1, \pm 2, \dots$  etc. and scaled by a factor  $1/T$ . However, it may be noted that ideal or instantaneous sampling is possible only in theory because it is impossible to have a pulse with pulse width approaching zero. Practically, the flat top sampling or natural sampling is used.

### 8.7.2 Natural Sampling

Natural sampling, also called sampling, using a sequence of pulses is the most practical way of accomplishing sampling of a band-limited signal. This is achieved by multiplying the signal  $x(t)$  with a pulse train  $p_T(t)$  as shown in Figure 8.6. Each pulse of  $p_T(t)$  is of short duration  $\tau$  and occurs at a sampling period of  $T$  sec. The output of the sampler is same as the input during that short duration  $\tau$ . Hence it is termed as *natural sampling*.

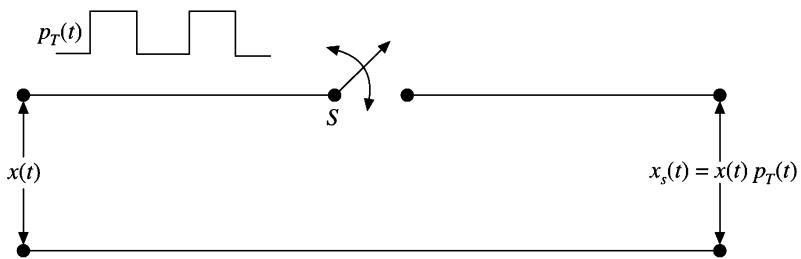
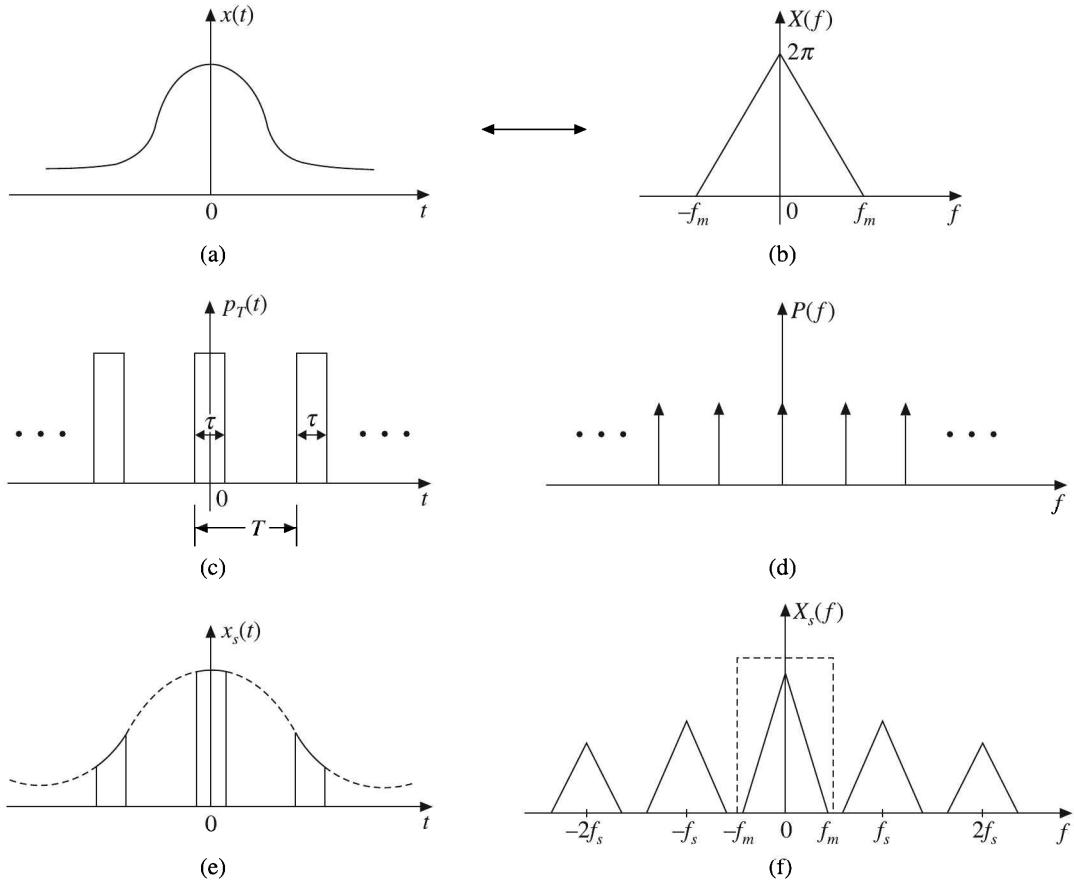


Figure 8.6 Natural sampler.

Figure 8.7 explains the process of natural sampling. Figure 8.7(a) is the signal  $x(t)$  to be sampled, and Figure 8.7(b) is its spectrum  $X(f)$ . Figure 8.7(c) is the pulse train  $p_T(t)$ , and Figure 8.7(d) is its spectrum  $P(f)$ . Figure 8.7(e) is the output of the sampler  $x_s(t)$ , and

Figure 8.7(f) is the output spectrum  $X_s(f)$ . From Figure 8.7(f), it is clear that  $X(f)$  can be recovered from  $X_s(f)$ , i.e.  $x(t)$  can be recovered from  $x_s(t)$ , if  $f_s > 2f_m$  by using an LPF whose gain is constant atleast upto  $f = f_m$  and whose cutoff frequency  $B$  is such that  $f_m < B < f_s - f_m$ .



**Figure 8.7** Natural sampling.

The output of the sampler is:

$$x_s(t) = x(t) p_T(t)$$

$$\text{where } p_T(t) = \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} p(t - nT)$$

As  $p_T(t)$  is a periodic pulse train, let us write its Fourier series expansion

$$p_T(t) = \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} p(t - nT) = \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} C_n e^{j2\pi n f_s t}$$

where

$$C_n = \frac{1}{T} \int_{-T/2}^{T/2} p_T(t) e^{-j2\pi n f_s t} dt$$

Since  $\tau$  the width of  $p(t)$ , single pulse in  $p_T(t)$  is very much less than  $T$  and  $p(t) = 0$  for  $|t| \geq \tau/2$ , we may write

$$C_n = \frac{1}{T} \int_{-T/2}^{T/2} p_T(t) e^{-j2\pi n f_s t} dt = \frac{1}{T} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} p(t) e^{-j2\pi n f_s t} dt$$

$$C_n = f_s P(n f_s)$$

where

$$P(n f_s) = F[p(t)] \Big|_{f=f_s}$$

$\therefore$

$$p_T(t) = f_s \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} P(n f_s) e^{j2\pi n f_s t}$$

and

$$\begin{aligned} X_s(f) &= F[x_s(t)] = F \left[ f_s \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} P(n f_s) x(t) e^{j2\pi n f_s t} \right] \\ &= f_s \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} P(n f_s) X(f) \delta(f - n f_s) \end{aligned}$$

Since

$$F[e^{j2\pi n f_s t}] = \delta(f - n f_s)$$

Hence

$$X_s(f) = f_s \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} P(n f_s) X(f - n f_s)$$

If  $x(t)$  has a spectrum  $X(f)$ , as shown in Figure 8.7(b), then  $X_s(f)$ , the spectrum of the sampled version of  $x(t)$  will appear as shown in Figure 8.7(f).

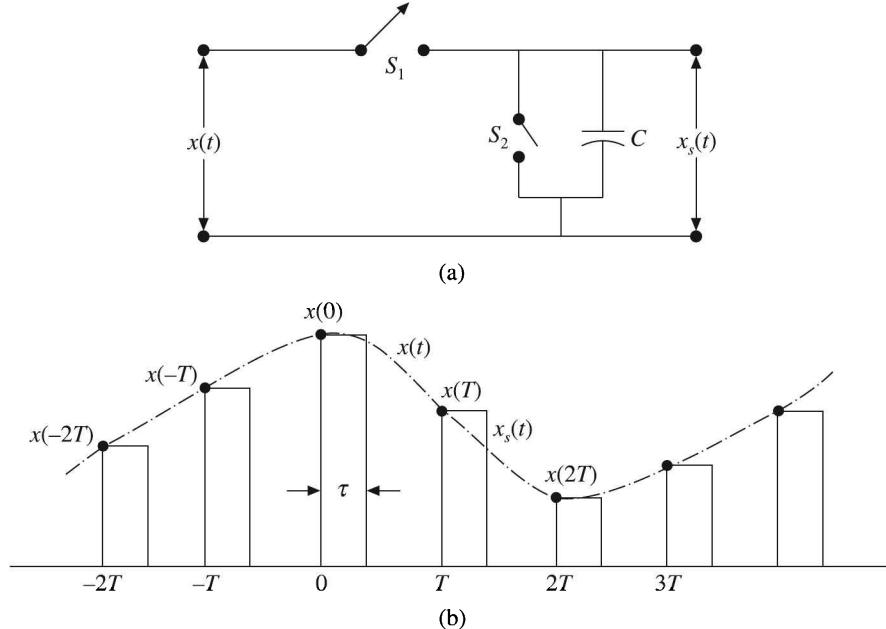
### 8.7.3 Flat Top Sampling

This is the simplest and most popular sampling method that uses the sample and hold (S/H) circuit with flat top samples. This is also called practical sampling. Here the top of the samples remain constant which is equal to the instantaneous value of the base band signal  $x(t)$  at the beginning of sampling. The duration or width of each sample is  $\tau$  and the sampling rate,  $f_s = 1/T$ .

The schematic of a ‘sample and hold’ (S/H) circuit is shown in Figure 8.8(a), and a typical output waveform from an S/H circuit is shown in Figure 8.8(b).

The S/H circuit essentially consists of two switches  $S_1$  and  $S_2$  and a capacitor  $C$  connected as shown in Figure 8.8(a). With  $S_2$  open,  $S_1$  is closed for a very brief period at each sampling instant. The capacitor  $C$  then gets charged to a voltage equal to the value of the input signal  $x(t)$  at the sampling instant and holds it for a period  $\tau$  at the end of which  $S_2$  is closed to allow the capacitor to discharge. This sequence of operations is repeated at the

next and all subsequent sampling instants. The switches  $S_1$  and  $S_2$  are generally FET switches and are operated by giving appropriate pulses to their gates. An actual S/H circuit uses one or two op-amps also. The voltage across  $C$  appears as  $x_s(t)$  and is sketched in Figure 8.8(b).



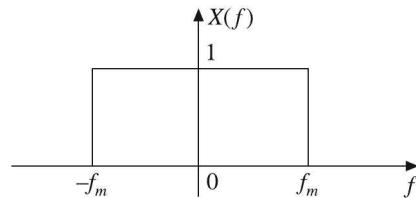
**Figure 8.8** (a) Schematic of an S/H circuit, (b) Signal  $x(t)$  and output of S/H circuit.

From the Figure, it is obvious that the sampled version,  $x_s(t)$  consists of a sequence of rectangular pulses, the leading edge of the  $k$ th pulse being at  $t = kT$  and the amplitude of the pulse being the value of  $x(t)$  at  $t = kT$ , i.e.  $x(kT)$ .

The sampled signal  $x_s(t)$  is the convolution of rectangular pulses  $p(t)$  and the ideally sampled version of  $x(t)$ , i.e. of  $x_\delta(t)$

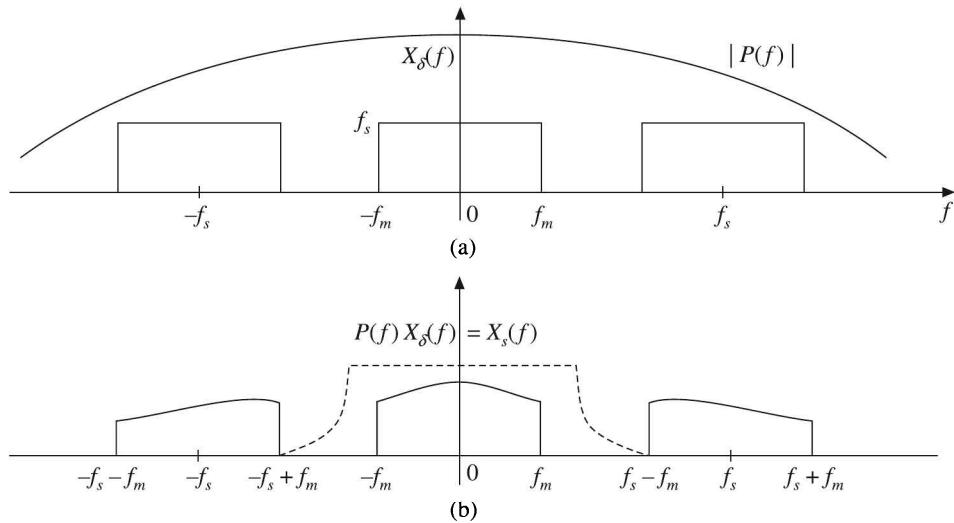
$$\therefore X_s(f) = P(f) X_\delta(f)$$

Assume that  $x(t)$  has a spectrum as shown in Figure 8.9.



**Figure 8.9** Assumed shape of  $X(f)$ .

Since  $p(t)$  is a rectangular pulse of width  $\tau$ , its Fourier transform,  $P(f)$  which is a sinc function will have a shape as shown in Figure 8.10 and will have its first zero values only at  $f = \pm(1/\tau)$ . Since  $\tau < T$ , these zero values of  $|P(f)|$  which occur at  $\pm(1/\tau)$ , will be far away from  $f_s$  and  $-f_s$ . Since  $X_s(f) = P(f) X_\delta(f)$ , its plot will be as shown in Figure 8.10(b).



**Figure 8.10** (a) Plot of  $P(f)$  and  $X_\delta(f)$ , (b) Plot of  $X_s(f) = P(f)X_\delta(f)$ .

Observe that the magnitudes of the high frequency components in  $X_s(f)$  are relatively reduced as compared to the magnitudes of the low frequency components because of the multiplication of  $X_\delta(f)$  by  $P(f)$ . So we can only get a distorted version of  $x(t)$ , but not exact  $x(t)$ , by passing  $x_s(t)$  through an LPF.

This distortion, wherein the amplitudes of the high frequency components are reduced relative to the amplitudes of the low frequency components, in the reconstructed signal  $x(t)$  obtained from the flat top sampled version of the signal is referred to as the *aperture effect*. This aperture effect can be reduced by using an equalizer with transfer function  $H_e(f)$  in cascade with the reconstruction filter and adjusting  $H_e(f)$  so that

$$H_e(f) = \frac{1}{P(f)}; |f| \leq f_m$$

## 8.8 DATA RECONSTRUCTION

The process of obtaining the analog signal  $x(t)$  from the sampled signal  $x_s(t)$  is called data reconstruction or interpolation. We know that

$$x_s(t) = x(t) \delta_T(t) = x(t) \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} \delta(t - nT)$$

or

$$x_s(t) = \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} x(nT) \delta(t - nT)$$

since  $\delta(t - nT)$  is zero except at the sampling instants  $t = nT$ . The reconstruction filter, which is assumed to be linear and time invariant, has unit impulse response  $h(t)$ . The reconstruction filter output,  $y(t)$  is given by the convolution,

$$y(t) = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} x(nT) \delta(\lambda - nT) h(t - \lambda) d\lambda$$

or, upon changing the order of summation and integration,

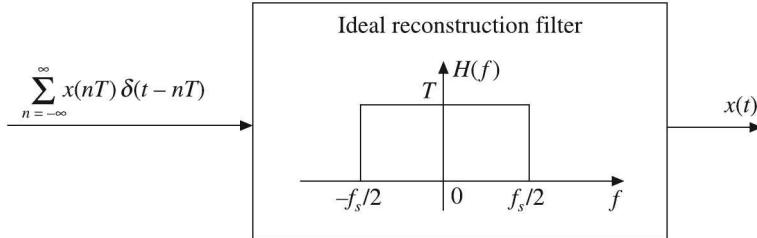
$$\begin{aligned} y(t) &= \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} x(nT) \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \delta(\lambda - nT) h(t - \lambda) d\lambda \\ \text{i.e. } y(t) &= \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} x(nT) h(t - nT) \end{aligned}$$

### 8.8.1 Ideal Reconstruction Filter

If  $x(t)$  is sampled at a frequency exceeding the Nyquist rate and if the sampled signal  $x_s(t)$  is passed through an ideal LPF, with bandwidth greater than  $f_m$  but less than  $f_s - f_m$  and a pass band amplitude response of  $T$ , the filter output is  $x(t)$ . We choose the bandwidth of the ideal reconstruction filter to be  $0.5f_s$ . The transfer function of this ideal reconstruction filter is, therefore,

$$H(f) = \begin{cases} T, & |f| < 0.5f_s \\ 0, & \text{otherwise} \end{cases}$$

as shown in Figure 8.11.



**Figure 8.11** Reconstruction filtering.

The impulse response of the ideal reconstruction filter is given by

$$h(t) = \int_{-f_s/2}^{f_s/2} Te^{j2\pi ft} df$$

which is

$$\begin{aligned} h(t) &= T \left[ \frac{e^{j2\pi ft}}{j2\pi t} \right]_{-f_s/2}^{f_s/2} = \frac{T}{j2\pi t} [e^{j\pi f_s t} - e^{-j\pi f_s t}] \\ &= \frac{1}{\pi f_s t} \left( \frac{e^{j\pi f_s t} - e^{-j\pi f_s t}}{2j} \right) = \frac{\sin \pi f_s t}{\pi f_s t} \end{aligned}$$

or

$$h(t) = \text{sinc } f_s t$$

Substituting this value of  $h(t)$  in the expression for output  $y(t)$ , we get

$$y(t) = x(t) = \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} x(nT) \text{sinc } f_s(t - nT)$$

A more convenient form for this expression, which is often referred to as an interpolation formula is:

$$x(t) = \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} x(nT) \text{sinc}\left(\frac{t}{T} - n\right)$$

This shows that the original data signal can be reconstructed by weighing each sample by a sinc function centred at the sample time and summing.

The reconstruction filter discussed above is non-causal and the impulse response is not limited. So it cannot be used for real time applications.

In practice, several other methods are used to reconstruct the signal. Some of the important ones among them are:

- Zero order hold
- First order hold
- Linear interpolator

Most commonly the signal is reconstructed using zero order hold.

### 8.8.2 Zero Order Hold

One of the most widely used interpolator is the zero order hold (ZOH). The ZOH reconstructs the continuous-time signal from its samples by holding the given sample for an interval until the next sample is received as shown in Figure 8.12. So the ZOH generates step approximations.

Mathematically,

$$\tilde{x}_a(t) = x(n) \quad \text{for } nT \leq t \leq (n+1)T$$

In particular,

$$\begin{aligned} \tilde{x}_a(t) &= x(0) && \text{for } 0 \leq t \leq T \\ &= x(T) && \text{for } T \leq t \leq 2T \\ &= x(2T) && \text{for } 2T \leq t \leq 3T \\ &\vdots \end{aligned}$$

The impulse response of a zero order hold is given by

$$\begin{aligned} h(t) &= 1 && 0 \leq t \leq T \\ &= 0 && \text{otherwise} \end{aligned}$$

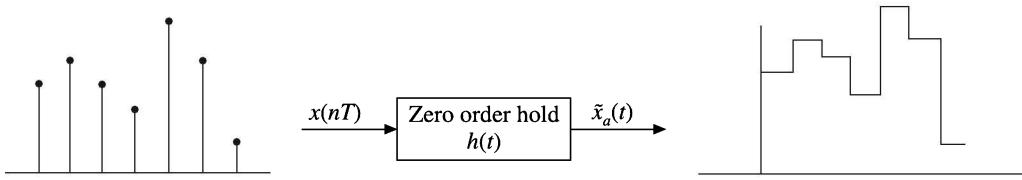


Figure 8.12 Zero order hold.

### 8.8.3 Transfer Function of a Zero Order Hold

The output  $\tilde{x}_a(t)$  of a zero order hold is the convolution of its input  $x(nT)$  and its impulse response  $h(t)$ , i.e.

$$\tilde{x}_a(t) = x(nT) * h(t) = \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} x(nT) h(t - nT)$$

For zero order hold,

$$h(t) = u(t) - u(t - T)$$

$$\therefore h(t - nT) = u(t - nT) - u[t - (n+1)T]$$

$$\therefore \tilde{x}_a(t) = \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} x(nT) [u(t - nT) - u[t - (n+1)T]]$$

Taking Laplace transform on both sides, we have

$$\begin{aligned} L[\tilde{x}_a(t)] &= \tilde{X}_a(s) = L \left[ \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} x(nT) \{u(t - nT) - u[t - (n+1)T]\} \right] \\ &= \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} x(nT) \left( \frac{e^{-nTs}}{s} - \frac{e^{-(n+1)Ts}}{s} \right) \\ &= \frac{1 - e^{-Ts}}{s} \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} x(nT) e^{-nTs} = \left( \frac{1 - e^{-Ts}}{s} \right) X^*(s) \end{aligned}$$

$$\therefore \text{Transfer function of zero order hold} = \frac{\tilde{X}_a(s)}{X^*(s)} = \frac{1 - e^{-Ts}}{s}$$

Since the output of the ZOH consists of steps, it consists of higher order harmonics. To remove these harmonics, the output of ZOH is applied to an LPF. This filter tends to smooth the corners on the step approximations generated by the ZOH. Hence this filter is often called a *smoothing filter*.

**EXAMPLE 8.1** Determine the Nyquist rate corresponding to each of the following signals:

$$(a) \quad x(t) = 1 + \cos 2000\pi t + \sin 4000\pi t \quad (b) \quad x(t) = \frac{\sin(4000\pi t)}{\pi t}$$

$$(c) \quad x(t) = \left[ \frac{\sin(4000\pi t)}{\pi t} \right]^2$$

**Solution:**

(a) Given

$$x(t) = 1 + \cos 2000\pi t + \sin 4000\pi t$$

Highest frequency component in '1' is zero

Highest frequency component in  $\cos 2000\pi t = \cos \omega_m t$  is  $\omega_m = 2000\pi$ .

Highest frequency component in  $\sin 4000\pi t = \sin \omega_m t$  is  $\omega_m = 4000\pi$ .

So the maximum frequency component in  $x(t)$  is  $\omega_m = 4000\pi$  [highest of 0, 2000 $\pi$ , 4000 $\pi$ ].

$$\therefore \quad 2\pi f_m = 4000\pi$$

$$\text{or} \quad f_m = \frac{4000\pi}{2\pi} = 2000 \text{ Hz}$$

$$\therefore \quad \begin{aligned} \text{Nyquist rate } f_N &= 2f_m \\ &= 2 \times 2000 = 4000 \text{ Hz} \end{aligned}$$

and

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Nyquist interval} &= \frac{1}{f_N} = \frac{1}{2f_m} \\ &= \frac{1}{4000} \text{ sec} = 0.25 \text{ ms} \end{aligned}$$

**Alternative method**

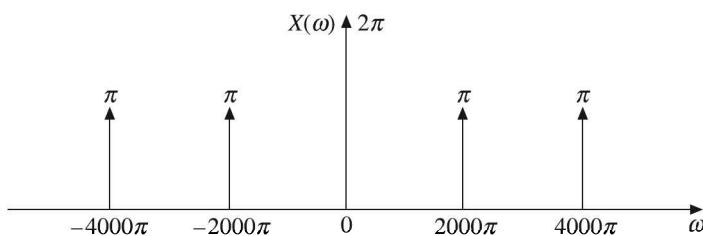
Given

$$x(t) = 1 + \cos 2000\pi t + \sin 4000\pi t$$

Taking Fourier transform on both sides, we get

$$\begin{aligned} X(\omega) &= 2\pi\delta(\omega) + \pi[\delta(\omega + 2000\pi) + \delta(\omega - 2000\pi)] \\ &\quad + j\pi[\delta(\omega + 4000\pi) - \delta(\omega - 4000\pi)] \end{aligned}$$

The frequency spectrum is shown in Figure 8.13.



**Figure 8.13** Spectrum of Example 8.1(a).

The highest frequency component in Figure 8.13 is  $\omega_m = 4000\pi$ .

$$\therefore f_m = \frac{\omega_m}{2\pi} \\ = \frac{4000\pi}{2\pi} = 2000 \text{ Hz}$$

$$\therefore \text{Nyquist rate } f_N = 2f_m \\ = 2 \times 2000 = 4000 \text{ Hz}$$

and      Nyquist interval  $= \frac{1}{f_N} = \frac{1}{2f_m}$   
 $= \frac{1}{4000} = 0.25 \text{ ms}$

(b) Given       $x(t) = \frac{\sin(4000\pi t)}{\pi t}$

The highest frequency component in  $\sin 4000\pi t = \sin \omega_m t$  is  $\omega_m = 4000\pi$ .  
 So the maximum frequency component in  $x(t) = 4000\pi$ .

$$\therefore 2\pi f_m = 4000\pi$$

or       $f_m = \frac{4000\pi}{2\pi} = 2000 \text{ Hz}$

$$\therefore \text{Nyquist rate } f_N = 2f_m \\ = 2 \times 2000 = 4000 \text{ Hz}$$

$$\therefore \text{Nyquist interval } = \frac{1}{f_N} = \frac{1}{2f_m} \\ = \frac{1}{4000} = 0.25 \text{ ms}$$

#### Alternative method

We know that the Fourier transform of a rectangular pulse is a sinc function as represented in Figure 8.14(a). Using duality property, the Fourier transform of a sinc function is a rectangular pulse as shown in Figure 8.14(b).

Given       $x(t) = \frac{\sin 4000\pi t}{\pi t} = 4000 \left( \frac{\sin 4000\pi t}{4000\pi t} \right) = 4000 \text{ sinc}(4000\pi t)$

It is a sinc function of the form  $\tau \text{ sinc}[t(\tau/2)]$ .

$$\therefore \frac{t\tau}{2} = 4000\pi t$$

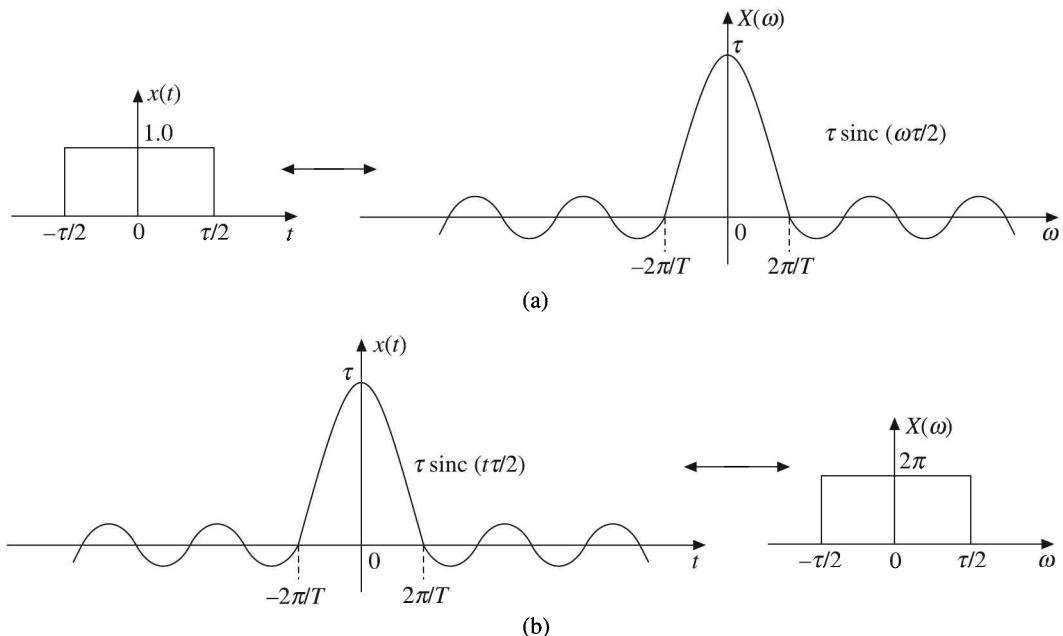


Figure 8.14 Fourier transform pairs of (a) rectangular function, (b) sinc function.

$$\text{or } \frac{\tau}{2} = 4000\pi$$

$$\text{or } \omega_m = \frac{\tau}{2} = 4000\pi$$

$$\text{or } f_m = \frac{\omega_m}{2\pi} = \frac{4000\pi}{2\pi} = 2000 \text{ Hz}$$

$$\therefore \text{Nyquist rate } f_N = 2f_m \\ = 2 \times 2000 = 4000 \text{ Hz}$$

$$\text{and } \text{Nyquist interval} = \frac{1}{f_N} = \frac{1}{2f_m} \\ = \frac{1}{4000} = 0.25 \text{ ms}$$

$$(c) \text{ Given } x(t) = \left( \frac{\sin(4000\pi t)}{\pi t} \right)^2 = \left( \frac{\sin(4000\pi t)}{\pi t} \right) \left( \frac{\sin 4000\pi t}{\pi t} \right)$$

Highest frequency component in  $\frac{\sin(4000\pi t)}{\pi t}$  is  $\omega_m = 4000\pi$ .

∴ Highest frequency component in

$$\left[ \frac{\sin(4000\pi t)}{\pi t} \right] \left[ \frac{\sin(4000\pi t)}{\pi t} \right] = \left[ \frac{1 - \cos 8000\pi t}{(\pi t)^2} \right] \text{ is:}$$

$$\omega_m = 4000\pi + 4000\pi = 8000\pi \quad [\text{sum of the highest frequency components}]$$

$$\text{or} \quad f_m = \frac{\omega_m}{2\pi} = \frac{8000\pi}{2\pi} = 4000 \text{ Hz}$$

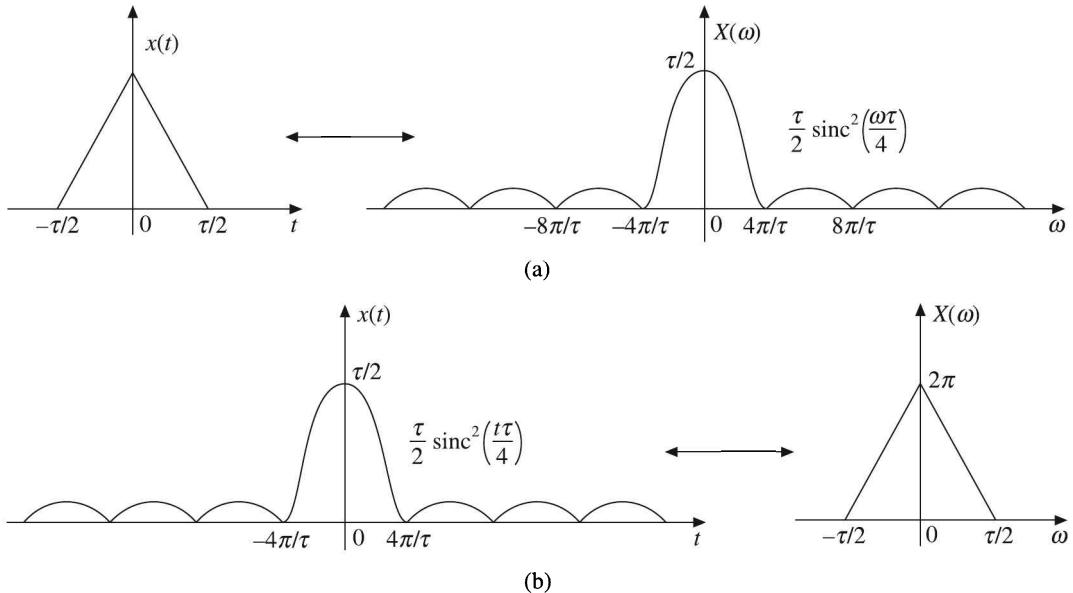
$$\therefore \text{Nyquist rate } f_N = 2f_m \\ = 2 \times 4000 = 8000 \text{ Hz}$$

and

$$\text{Nyquist interval} = \frac{1}{f_N} = \frac{1}{2f_m} \\ = \frac{1}{8000} = 0.125 \text{ ms}$$

### Alternative method

We know that the Fourier transform of a triangular pulse is a sinc square function as represented in Figure 8.15(a). Using duality property, the Fourier transform of a sinc square function is a triangular pulse as shown in Figure 8.15(b).



**Figure 8.15** Fourier transform pairs of (a) triangular function, (b) sinc square function.

Given  $x(t) = \left( \frac{\sin 4000\pi t}{\pi t} \right)^2 = (4000)^2 \left( \frac{\sin 4000\pi t}{4000\pi t} \right)^2 = (4000)^2 \operatorname{sinc}^2(4000\pi t)$

It is a sinc square function of the form  $\frac{\tau}{2} \operatorname{sinc}^2\left(\frac{t\tau}{4}\right)$ .

$\therefore \frac{t\tau}{4} = 4000\pi t$

or  $\omega_m = \frac{\tau}{2} = 8000\pi$

or  $f_m = \frac{\omega_m}{2\pi} = \frac{8000\pi}{2\pi} = 4000 \text{ Hz}$

$\therefore \text{Nyquist rate } f_N = 2f_m$   
 $= 2 \times 4000 = 8000 \text{ Hz}$

and Nyquist interval  $= \frac{1}{f_N} = \frac{1}{2f_m}$   
 $= \frac{1}{8000} = 0.125 \text{ ms.}$

**EXAMPLE 8.2** Find the Nyquist rate and the Nyquist interval for the following signals:

- (a)  $\operatorname{rect}(300t)$  (b)  $-10 \sin 40\pi t \cos 300\pi t$

**Solution:**

(a) Given  $x(t) = \operatorname{rect}(300t) = \Pi\left(\frac{t}{\tau}\right)$

$\therefore \frac{t}{\tau} = 300t \quad \text{or} \quad \frac{1}{\tau} = 300 \quad \text{or} \quad \tau = \frac{1}{300}$

We know that

$$\begin{aligned} F\left[\Pi\left(\frac{t}{\tau}\right)\right] &= \tau \operatorname{sinc}\left(\frac{\omega\tau}{2}\right) \\ \therefore F[x(t)] = X(\omega) &= \tau \operatorname{sinc}\left(\frac{\omega\tau}{2}\right) = \left(\frac{1}{300}\right) \operatorname{sinc}\left(\frac{2\pi f}{2} \frac{1}{300}\right) \\ &= \frac{1}{300} \operatorname{sinc}\left(\frac{\pi f}{300}\right) \end{aligned}$$

The Fourier transform of a rectangular pulse is a sinc function and it stays upto infinity. Hence, the Nyquist rate is also infinite and the Nyquist interval is zero.

(b) Given  $x(t) = -10 \sin(40\pi t) \cos(300\pi t)$

Let  $x(t) = (-10) x_1(t) x_2(t)$

$x_1(t) = \sin(40\pi t)$  has highest frequency  $\omega_{m1} = 40\pi$

and  $x_2(t) = \cos(300\pi t)$  has highest frequency  $\omega_{m2} = 300\pi$

Now, the product of two time domain functions results in the convolution of their spectra.

So if the individual highest frequency components are  $\omega_{m1}$  and  $\omega_{m2}$ , then the convoluted spectra will have highest frequency component  $\omega_m = \omega_{m1} + \omega_{m2} = 40\pi + 300\pi = 340\pi$ .

$$\therefore f_m = \frac{\omega_m}{2\pi} = \frac{340\pi}{2\pi} = 170 \text{ Hz}$$

$$\begin{aligned} \therefore \text{Nyquist rate } f_N &= 2f_m \\ &= 2 \times 170 = 340 \text{ Hz} \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned} \text{and } \text{Nyquist interval} &= \frac{1}{f_N} = \frac{1}{2f_m} \\ &= \frac{1}{340} \text{ sec} \end{aligned}$$

### Alternative method

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Given } x(t) &= -10 \sin(40\pi t) \cos(300\pi t) \\ &= -5 [2 \sin(40\pi t) \cos(300\pi t)] \\ &= -5 [\sin(300\pi t + 40\pi t) + \sin(40\pi t - 300\pi t)] \\ &= -5 \sin 340\pi t + 5 \sin 260\pi t \end{aligned}$$

The highest frequency component in  $\sin 340\pi t = \sin \omega_{m1}t$  is  $\omega_{m1} = 340\pi$ .

The highest frequency component in  $\sin 260\pi t = \sin \omega_{m2}t$  is  $\omega_{m2} = 260\pi$ .

Therefore, the highest frequency component in  $x(t)$  is:

$$\omega_m = 340\pi \quad [\text{higher of } \omega_{m1} = 340\pi \text{ and } \omega_{m2} = 260\pi]$$

$$\therefore f_m = \frac{\omega_m}{2\pi} = \frac{340\pi}{2\pi} = 170 \text{ Hz}$$

$$\begin{aligned} \therefore \text{Nyquist rate } f_N &= 2f_m \\ &= 2 \times 170 = 340 \text{ Hz} \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned} \text{and } \text{Nyquist interval} &= \frac{1}{f_N} = \frac{1}{2f_m} \\ &= \frac{1}{340} \text{ sec} \end{aligned}$$

**EXAMPLE 8.3** Determine the Nyquist sampling rate and Nyquist sampling interval for

$$(a) \quad x(t) = 2 \operatorname{sinc}(100\pi t)$$

$$(b) \quad x(t) = \frac{1}{2} \operatorname{sinc}(100\pi t) + \frac{1}{3} \operatorname{sinc}(50\pi t)$$

$$(c) \quad x(t) = \operatorname{sinc}(100\pi t) + 3 \operatorname{sinc}^2(60\pi t)$$

$$(d) \quad x(t) = \operatorname{sinc}(80\pi t) \operatorname{sinc}(120\pi t)$$

**Solution:**

(a) Given

$$x(t) = 2 \operatorname{sinc}(100\pi t) = 2 \frac{\sin(100\pi t)}{100\pi t} = 2 \frac{\sin(\omega_m t)}{\omega_m t}$$

∴

$$\omega_m = 100\pi$$

or

$$f_m = \frac{\omega_m}{2\pi} = \frac{100\pi}{2\pi} = 50 \text{ Hz}$$

∴

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Nyquist sampling rate } f_N &= 2f_m \\ &= 2 \times 50 = 100 \text{ Hz} \end{aligned}$$

and

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Nyquist sampling interval} &= \frac{1}{f_N} = \frac{1}{2f_m} \\ &= \frac{1}{100} = 10 \text{ ms} \end{aligned}$$

(b) Given

$$x(t) = \frac{1}{2} \operatorname{sinc}(100\pi t) + \frac{1}{3} \operatorname{sinc}(50\pi t)$$

i.e.

$$\begin{aligned} x(t) &= \frac{1}{2} \frac{\sin(100\pi t)}{100\pi t} + \frac{1}{3} \frac{\sin(50\pi t)}{50\pi t} \\ &= \frac{1}{2} \frac{\sin(\omega_{m1} t)}{\omega_{m1} t} + \frac{1}{3} \frac{\sin(\omega_{m2} t)}{\omega_{m2} t} \end{aligned}$$

∴

$$\omega_{m1} = 100\pi \quad \text{and} \quad \omega_{m2} = 50\pi$$

$$\omega_m = \omega_{m1} = 100\pi \quad [\text{larger of } \omega_{m1} \text{ and } \omega_{m2}]$$

$$\text{Highest frequency component } f_m = \frac{\omega_m}{2\pi} = \frac{100\pi}{2\pi} = 50 \text{ Hz}$$

∴

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Nyquist sampling rate } f_N &= 2f_m \\ &= 2 \times 50 = 100 \text{ Hz} \end{aligned}$$

and

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Nyquist sampling interval} &= \frac{1}{f_N} = \frac{1}{2f_m} \\ &= \frac{1}{100} = 10 \text{ ms} \end{aligned}$$

(c) Given

$$x(t) = \text{sinc}(100\pi t) + 3 \text{sinc}^2(60\pi t) = x_1(t) + x_2(t)$$

$$x_1(t) = \text{sinc}(100\pi t) = \frac{\sin(100\pi t)}{100\pi t} = \frac{\sin \omega_{m1} t}{\omega_{m1} t}$$

\therefore

$$\omega_{m1} = 100\pi \text{ rad/sec}$$

$$x_2(t) = 3 \text{sinc}^2(60\pi t) = 3 \left[ \frac{\sin(60\pi t)}{60\pi t} \right]^2 = 3 \left[ \frac{\sin(60\pi t)}{60\pi t} \right] \left[ \frac{\sin(60\pi t)}{60\pi t} \right]$$

\therefore

$$\omega_{m2} = 60\pi + 60\pi = 120\pi \text{ rad/sec}$$

\therefore

$$\omega_m = \omega_{m2} = 120\pi \quad [\text{The larger of } \omega_{m1} \text{ and } \omega_{m2}]$$

\therefore

$$f_m = \frac{\omega_m}{2\pi} = \frac{120\pi}{2\pi} = 60 \text{ Hz}$$

\therefore

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Nyquist sampling rate } f_N &= 2f_m \\ &= 2 \times 60 = 120 \text{ Hz} \end{aligned}$$

and

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Nyquist interval} &= \frac{1}{f_N} = \frac{1}{2f_m} \\ &= \frac{1}{120} \text{ sec} \end{aligned}$$

(d) Given

$$x(t) = \text{sinc}(80\pi t) \text{sinc}(120\pi t) = x_1(t) x_2(t)$$

$$x_1(t) = \text{sinc}(80\pi t) = \frac{\sin(80\pi t)}{80\pi t} = \frac{\sin \omega_{m1} t}{\omega_{m1} t}$$

\therefore

$$\omega_{m1} = 80\pi \text{ rad/sec}$$

$$x_2(t) = \text{sinc}(120\pi t) = \frac{\sin(120\pi t)}{120\pi t} = \frac{\sin \omega_{m2} t}{\omega_{m2} t}$$

\therefore

$$\omega_{m2} = 120\pi \text{ rad/sec}$$

\therefore

$$\omega_m = \omega_{m1} + \omega_{m2} = 80\pi + 120\pi = 200\pi \text{ rad/sec}$$

\therefore

$$f_m = \frac{\omega_m}{2\pi} = \frac{200\pi}{2\pi} = 100 \text{ Hz}$$

\therefore

$$\text{Nyquist sampling rate } f_N = 2f_m = 2 \times 100 = 200 \text{ Hz}$$

and

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Nyquist interval} &= \frac{1}{f_N} = \frac{1}{2f_m} \\ &= \frac{1}{200} = 5 \text{ ms} \end{aligned}$$

**EXAMPLE 8.4** Consider the signal  $x(t) = (\sin 50\pi t/\pi t)^2$  which is to be sampled with a sampling frequency of  $\omega_s = 150\pi$  to obtain a signal  $g(t)$  with Fourier transform  $G(\omega)$ . Determine the maximum value of  $\omega_0$  for which it is guaranteed that  $G(\omega) = 75 X(\omega)$  for  $|\omega| \leq \omega_0$ , where  $X(\omega)$  is the Fourier transform of  $x(t)$ .

$$\text{Solution: Given } x(t) = \left( \frac{\sin 50\pi t}{\pi t} \right)^2 = \left( \frac{\sin 50\pi t}{\pi t} \right) \left( \frac{\sin 50\pi t}{\pi t} \right) = \left( \frac{\sin \omega_{m1} t}{\pi t} \right)^2$$

$$\therefore \omega_{m1} = 50\pi$$

and

$$\omega_m = 50\pi + 50\pi = 100\pi \text{ rad/sec}$$

or

$$f_m = \frac{\omega_m}{2\pi} = \frac{100\pi}{2\pi} = 50 \text{ Hz}$$

Given

$$\omega_s = 150\pi \text{ rad/sec}$$

$$\therefore$$

$$f_s = \frac{150\pi}{2\pi} = 75 \text{ Hz}$$

$$\therefore$$

$$\omega_s < 2\omega_m, \text{ i.e. } f_s < 2f_m$$

So the sampling theorem is not satisfied and the original signal cannot be recovered from its samples. The resultant signal will be distorted due to aliasing effect.

$G(\omega) = 75 X(\omega)$  is satisfied for lesser values of  $\omega$  (i.e. for  $\omega < 100\pi$ ).

Thus, the maximum value of  $\omega_0$  will be obtained at which the signal  $G(\omega)$  is perfectly extracted from  $X(\omega)$ .

where

$$G(\omega) = 75 X(\omega) = \frac{1}{T_s} X(\omega)$$

$$f_s = \frac{1}{T_s} = 75 \text{ Hz}$$

So at  $\omega_0 = 75\pi$ , the bandwidth of the signal  $X(\omega)$  is  $75\pi$ . To recover  $x(t)$ , the sampling frequency must be  $f_s = 75$  Hz. Thus, the signal  $x(t)$  is perfectly recovered if  $\omega_0 = 75\pi$  rad/sec.

**EXAMPLE 8.5** A signal  $x(t) = 2 \cos 400\pi t + 6 \cos 640\pi t$  is ideally sampled at  $f_s = 500$  Hz. If the sampled signal is passed through an ideal low pass filter with a cutoff frequency of 400 Hz, what frequency components will appear in the output? Sketch the output spectrum. Also find the output signal.

**Solution:** Given

$$x(t) = 2 \cos 400\pi t + 6 \cos 640\pi t$$

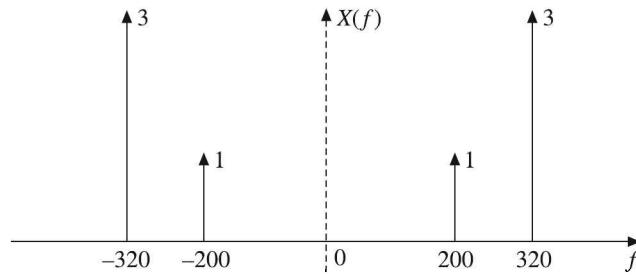
i.e.

$$x(t) = 2 \cos [2\pi(200)t] + 6 \cos [2\pi(320)t]$$

Taking Fourier transform on both sides, we get

$$X(f) = [\delta(f + 200) + \delta(f - 200)] + 3[\delta(f + 320) + \delta(f - 320)]$$

The spectrum of the given signal is shown in Figure 8.16.

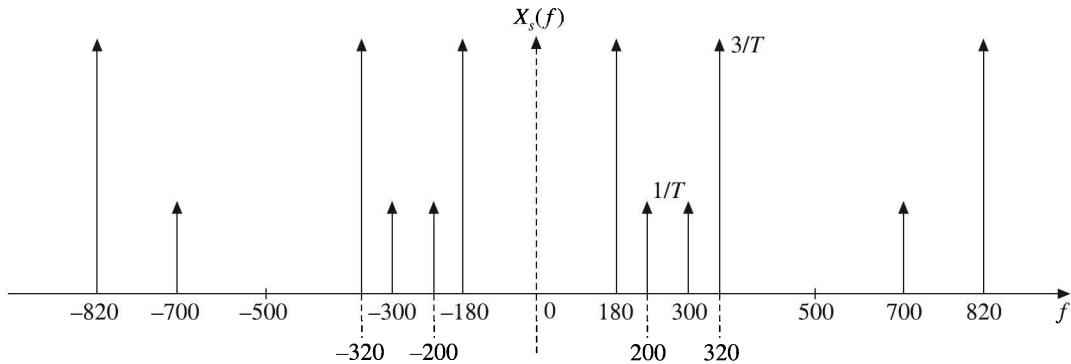


**Figure 8.16** Spectrum of  $x(t)$ .

The spectrum of the sampled signal is:

$$X_s(f) = f_s \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} X(f - nf_s)$$

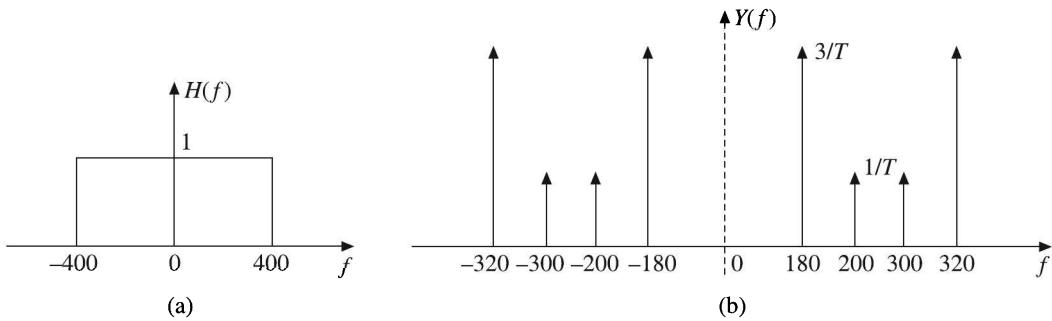
as shown in Figure 8.17.



**Figure 8.17** Spectrum of  $x_s(t)$ .

It is a periodic repetition of  $X(f)$  at regular intervals of  $\pm 500$  Hz.

If the sampled signal is passed through an ideal low pass filter with a cutoff frequency of 400 Hz [shown in Figure 8.18(a)], the frequency spectrum of the output signal will be as shown in Figure 8.18(b).



**Figure 8.18** (a) Spectrum of ideal LPF, (b) Spectrum of  $y(t)$ .

So the frequency components that will appear in the output are:

$$-320 \text{ Hz}, -300 \text{ Hz}, -200 \text{ Hz}, -180 \text{ Hz}, 180 \text{ Hz}, 200 \text{ Hz}, 300 \text{ Hz}, 320 \text{ Hz}$$

The spectrum of the output signal is:

$$\begin{aligned} Y(f) &= \frac{1}{T} [\delta(f + 200) + \delta(f - 200)] + [\delta(f + 300) + \delta(f - 300)] \\ &\quad + 3[\delta(f + 180) + \delta(f - 180)] + 3[\delta(f + 320) + \delta(f - 320)] \end{aligned}$$

Taking inverse Fourier transform on both sides, the output signal is:

$$\begin{aligned} y(t) &= \frac{1}{T} \{2 \cos[2\pi(200)t] + 2 \cos[2\pi(300)t] + 6 \cos[2\pi(180)t] + 6 \cos[2\pi(320)t]\} \\ &= \frac{1}{T} \{2 \cos 400\pi t + 2 \cos 600\pi t + 6 \cos 360\pi t + 6 \cos 640\pi t\} \end{aligned}$$

**EXAMPLE 8.6** A signal  $x(t) = \cos 100\pi t + \cos 250\pi t$  is sampled at  $f_s = 150$  Hz and the sampled signal  $x_s(t)$  is passed through an ideal low pass filter with bandwidth  $B = 75$  Hz. Assuming ideal sampling, sketch the frequency spectrum of the output  $y(t)$  of the LPF. Also find  $y(t)$ . If the original signal is to be recovered from the sampled signal, what must be the sampling frequency and what must be the bandwidth of the low pass filter?

**Solution:** Given  $x(t) = \cos 100\pi t + \cos 250\pi t = \cos 2\pi(50)t + \cos 2\pi(125)t$

Therefore, the frequency components are  $f_1 = 50$  Hz and  $f_2 = 125$  Hz.

or

$$f_m = f_2 = 125 \text{ Hz}$$

Given sampling frequency  $f_s = 150$  Hz and bandwidth  $B = 75$  Hz.

$f_s = 150$  Hz  $< 2f_m = 250$  Hz. So aliasing effect will be there, and it is not possible to extract the original signal by a filter of any bandwidth. The spectrum of the sampled signal will have the following frequency components:

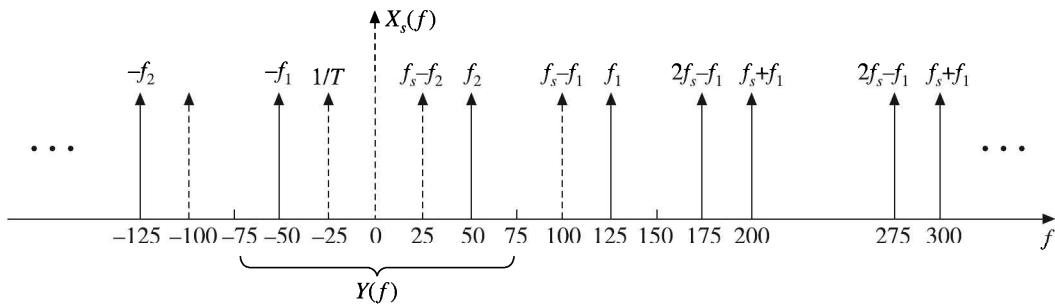
$$\begin{aligned} f_1, f_s \pm f_1, 2f_s \pm f_1 &= 50, (150 \pm 50), (300 \pm 50), \dots \\ &= 50, 100, 200, 250, 350, \dots \\ f_2, f_s \pm f_2, 2f_s \pm f_2 &= 125, (150 \pm 125), (300 \pm 125), \dots \\ &= 125, 25, 275, 175, 425, \dots \end{aligned}$$

The replicas of these components will be present at negative frequencies, i.e. at  $-f_1, -f_s \pm f_1, -2f_s \pm f_1, \dots$  and  $-f_2, -f_s \pm f_2, -2f_s \pm f_2, \dots$

As the bandwidth  $B = 75$  Hz, the LPF passes only 25 Hz and 50 Hz frequency components to the output. The spectra  $X_s(f)$  of the sampled signal  $x_s(t)$  is shown in Figure 8.19. The output of the low pass filter  $Y(f)$  is also shown in figure.

$$Y(f) = \frac{1}{2} [\delta(f + 25) + \delta(f - 25)] + \frac{1}{2} [\delta(f + 50) + \delta(f - 50)]$$

$$\therefore y(t) = \cos 2\pi(25)t + \cos 2\pi(50)t = \cos 50\pi t + \cos 100\pi t$$



**Figure 8.19** Spectrum of  $X_s(f)$ .

If the original signal is to be recovered, the sampling frequency  $f_s \geq 250$  Hz and the bandwidth of the filter used must be  $125$  Hz < BW <  $175$  Hz.

**EXAMPLE 8.7** A low pass signal  $x(t)$  has a spectrum  $X(f)$  given by

$$X(f) = 1 - \frac{|f|}{200}, \quad |f| < 200$$

Assume that  $x(t)$  is ideally sampled at  $f_s = 300$  Hz. Sketch the spectrum of  $x_s(t)$ .

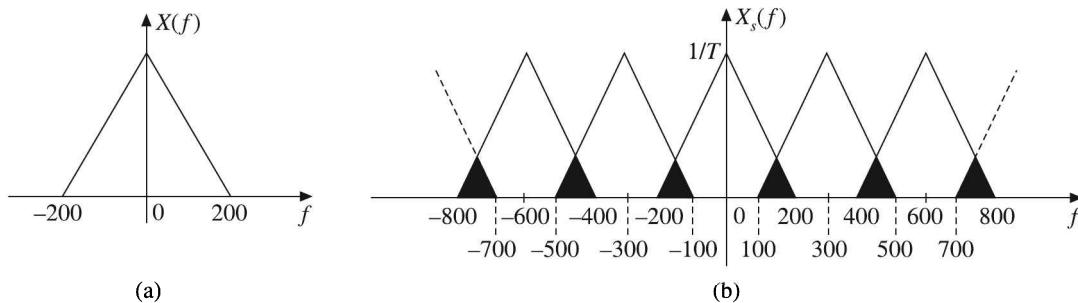
**Solution:** The spectrum  $X(f) = 1 - (|f|/200)$ ,  $|f| < 200$  is a triangular pulse as shown in Figure 8.20(a).

From the spectrum, we observe that  $f_m = 200$  Hz.

$$\begin{aligned} \therefore \text{Nyquist rate } f_N &= 2f_m \\ &= 2 \times 200 = 400 \text{ Hz} \end{aligned}$$

and Sampling frequency  $f_s = 300$  Hz <  $2f_m = 400$  Hz

So aliasing problem is there, and there will be overlapping of spectra.



**Figure 8.20** (a) Frequency spectrum of  $x(t)$ , (b) Frequency spectrum of  $x_s(t)$ .

We know that

$$X_s(\omega) = \frac{1}{T} \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} X(\omega - n\omega_s)$$

or

$$X_s(f) = f_s \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} X(f - n f_s)$$

The frequency spectrum of sampled signal is shown in Figure 8.20(b). Observe that  $X(f)$  gets repeated at  $f_s, -f_s, 2f_s, -2f_s, 3f_s, -3f_s, \dots$

**EXAMPLE 8.8** The signal  $y(t)$  is generated by convolving a band-limited signal  $x_1(t)$  with another band-limited signal  $x_2(t)$ , that is

$$y(t) = x_1(t) * x_2(t)$$

where

$$X_1(\omega) = 0 \text{ for } |\omega| > 1000\pi, \quad X_2(\omega) = 0 \text{ for } |\omega| > 2000\pi$$

Impulse train sampling is performed on  $y(t)$  to obtain  $y_p(t) = \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} y(nT) \delta(t - nT)$

Specify the range of values for sampling period  $T$  which ensures that  $y(t)$  is recoverable from  $y_p(t)$ .

**Solution:** Given

$$y(t) = x_1(t) * x_2(t)$$

∴

$$Y(\omega) = X_1(\omega) X_2(\omega)$$

Since

$$X_1(\omega) = 0 \text{ for } |\omega| \geq 1000\pi$$

and

$$X_2(\omega) = 0 \text{ for } |\omega| \geq 2000\pi$$

∴

$$Y(\omega) = X_1(\omega) X_2(\omega) = 0 \text{ for } |\omega| \geq 1000\pi$$

The highest frequency component present in  $y(t)$  is  $\omega_m = 1000\pi$ .

$$\therefore f_m = \frac{\omega_m}{2\pi} = \frac{1000\pi}{2\pi} = 500 \text{ Hz}$$

∴

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Nyquist rate } f_N &= 2f_m \\ &= 2 \times 500 = 1000 \text{ Hz} \end{aligned}$$

For  $y(t)$  to be recoverable,

$$f_s \geq 2f_m$$

i.e.

$$\frac{1}{f_s} \leq \frac{1}{2f_m}$$

i.e.

$$T \leq \frac{1}{2f_m} = \frac{1}{1000} = 1 \text{ ms}$$

i.e.

$$T \leq 1 \text{ ms}$$

So the range of  $T$  for recovery of  $y(t)$  from  $y_p(t)$  is:

$$0 \leq T \leq 1 \text{ ms}$$

**EXAMPLE 8.9** The signal  $x(t)$  with Fourier transform  $X(\omega) = u(\omega + \omega_0) - u(\omega - \omega_0)$  can undergo impulse sampling without aliasing provided that the sampling period  $T < (\pi/\omega_0)$ . Justify.

**Solution:** Given  $X(\omega) = u(\omega + \omega_0) - u(\omega - \omega_0)$

The frequency spectrum is shown in Figure 8.21.  $\omega_0$  is the highest frequency component present in  $x(t)$ .

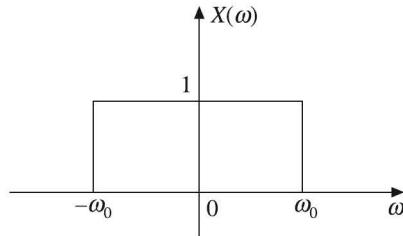


Figure 8.21 Frequency spectrum of  $x(t)$ .

We know that for no aliasing,

$$f_s \geq 2f_m$$

i.e.  $\frac{1}{T} \geq 2 \frac{\omega_0}{2\pi}$

i.e.  $\frac{1}{T} \geq \frac{\omega_0}{\pi}$

or  $T \leq \frac{\pi}{\omega_0}$

This justifies that the given signal  $x(t)$  can undergo impulse sampling without aliasing provided the sampling period  $T < (\pi/\omega_0)$ .

**EXAMPLE 8.10** The signal  $x(t)$  with Fourier transform  $X(\omega) = u(\omega) - u(\omega - \omega_0)$  can undergo impulse train sampling without aliasing, provided that the sampling period  $T < (2\pi/\omega_0)$ . Justify.

**Solution:** Given that  $X(\omega) = u(\omega) - u(\omega - \omega_0)$ , the spectrum  $X(\omega)$  is shown in Figure 8.22.

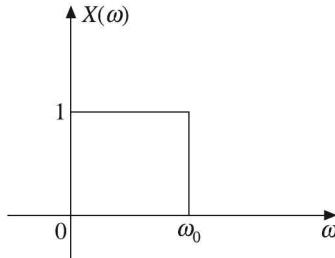


Figure 8.22 Spectrum for Example 8.10.

The given sampling period is:

$$T < \frac{2\pi}{\omega_0} = \frac{2\pi}{2\pi f_0} = \frac{1}{f_0}, \quad \text{i.e. } T < \frac{1}{f_0}$$

Since

$$T = \frac{1}{f_s}$$

Then

$$\frac{1}{f_s} < \frac{1}{f_0}$$

or

$$f_s > f_0$$

This does not satisfy the Nyquist condition  $f_s > 2f_0$ .

The signal  $x(t)$  with  $X(\omega) = u(\omega) - u(\omega - \omega_m)$  cannot undergo impulse sampling without aliasing. Therefore, the above statement is false.

**EXAMPLE 8.11** Consider the following sampling and reconstruction block shown in Figure 8.23(a):

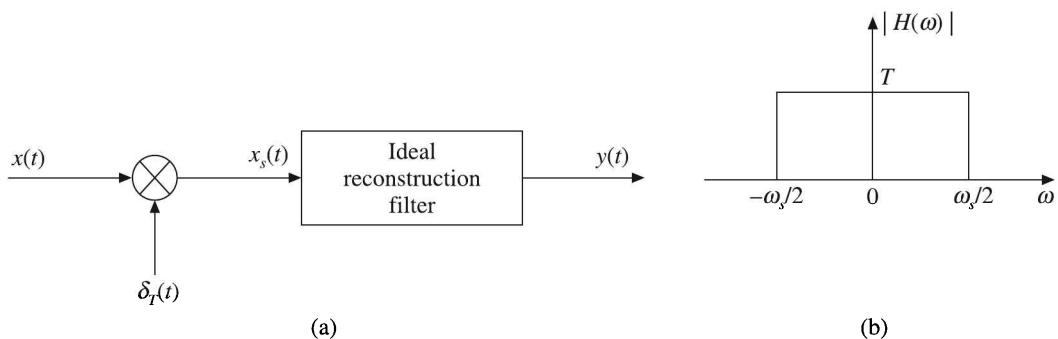


Figure 8.23 (a) Sampling and reconstruction block, (b) Spectrum of LPF.

The output of the ideal reconstruction filter can be found by sending the signal  $x_s(t)$  through an ideal low pass filter having characteristics as shown in Figure 8.23(b). For the following signals, draw the spectrum  $|X_s(\omega)|$  and find expressions for  $x(nT)$  and  $y(t)$ :

- (a)  $x(t) = 2 + \cos(30\pi t) + 2 \cos(60\pi t)$  for  $T = 0.02$  sec
- (b) If  $X(\omega) = 1/(1 + j\omega)$  and  $T = 1$  sec, draw  $|X_s(\omega)|$ . Test for aliasing.

**Solution:** (a) Given  $x(t) = 2 + \cos(30\pi t) + 2 \cos(60\pi t)$  for  $T = 0.02$  sec

$$\begin{aligned} x(nT) &= 2 + \cos[30\pi(n \times 0.02)] + 2 \cos[60\pi(n \times 0.02)] \\ &= 2 + \cos(0.6n\pi) + 2 \cos(1.2n\pi) \end{aligned}$$

$T = 0.02$  sec

$$\therefore f_s = \frac{1}{T} = \frac{1}{0.02} = 50 \text{ Hz}, \quad \omega_s = 2\pi f_s = 100\pi \text{ rad/sec.}$$

Highest frequency in  $x(t)$  is  $\omega_m = 60\pi$  rad/sec.

$$\therefore f_m = \frac{\omega_m}{2\pi} = \frac{60\pi}{2\pi} = 30 \text{ Hz}$$

and

$$\text{Nyquist rate } f_N = 2f_m = 2 \times 30 = 60 \text{ Hz}$$

The sampling frequency  $f_s < 2f_m$ . Therefore, the successive spectrum of  $X(\omega)$  in  $X_s(\omega)$  will overlap and  $x(t)$  cannot be recovered from  $x(nT)$ .

$$X(\omega) = 4\pi\delta(\omega) + \pi[\delta(\omega + 30\pi) + \delta(\omega - 30\pi)] + 2\pi[\delta(\omega + 60\pi) + \delta(\omega - 60\pi)]$$

$$\omega_s = 100\pi \text{ rad/sec} < 2\omega_m = 120\pi \text{ rad/sec}$$

Therefore, the spectrum  $X_s(\omega)$  can be obtained by periodically repeating  $X(\omega)$  for every  $100\pi$  rad/sec (50 Hz). The spectrum  $X(\omega)$  is shown in Figure 8.24 and the spectrum  $X_s(\omega)$  is shown in Figure 8.25.

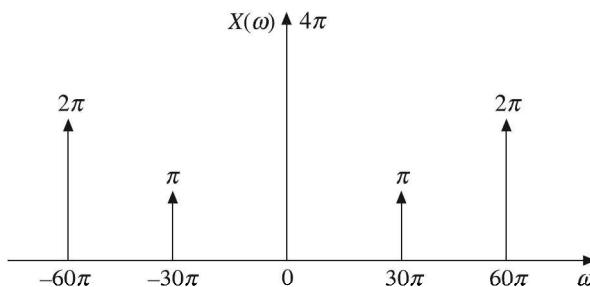


Figure 8.24 Spectrum  $X(\omega)$ .

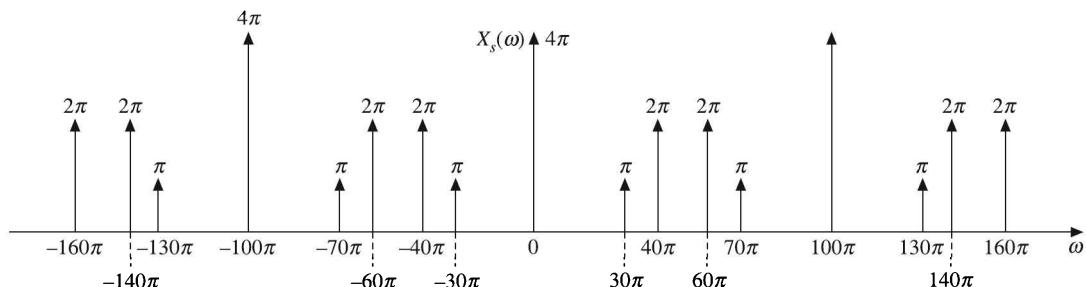


Figure 8.25 Spectrum  $X_s(\omega)$ .

The frequency spectrum of the low pass filter is shown in Figure 8.26(a). The output spectrum of the low pass filter  $Y(\omega)$  is shown in Figure 8.26(b).

From Figure 8.26(b), we have

$$Y(\omega) = 4\pi\delta(\omega) + \pi[\delta(\omega + 30\pi) + \delta(\omega - 30\pi)] + 2\pi[\delta(\omega + 40\pi) + \delta(\omega - 40\pi)]$$

Taking inverse Fourier transform on both sides, we get

$$y(t) = 2 + \cos(30\pi t) + 2 \cos(40\pi t)$$

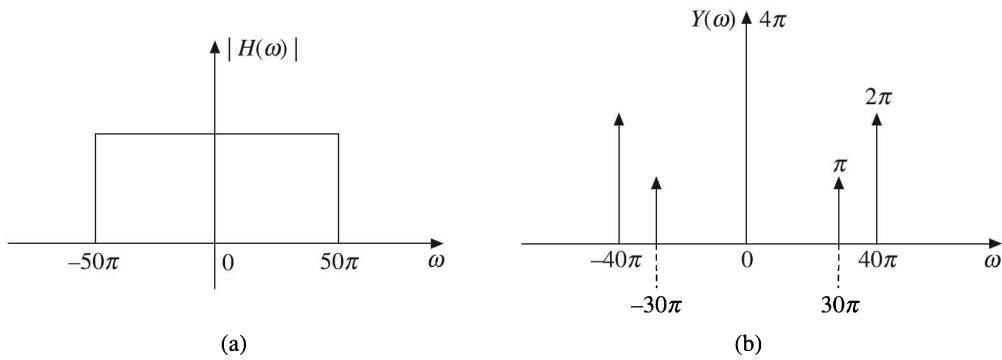


Figure 8.26 Frequency spectrum of (a) LPF, (b) Output of LPF.

(b) Given

$$T = 1 \text{ sec}$$

∴

$$f_s = \frac{1}{T} = 1 \text{ Hz}$$

$$\omega_s = 2\pi f_s = 2\pi \text{ rad/sec}$$

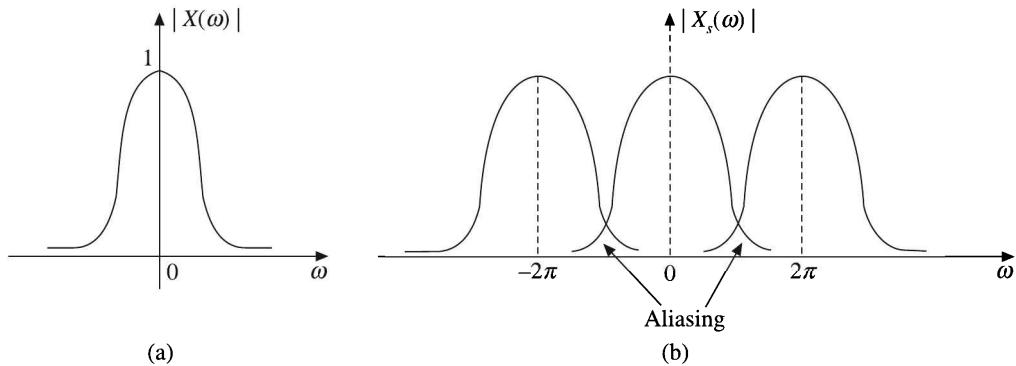
$$X(\omega) = \frac{1}{1 + j\omega}, |X(\omega)| = \frac{1}{\sqrt{1 + \omega^2}}.$$

The spectrum of  $|X(\omega)|$  is plotted as shown in Figure 8.27(a). We can observe that the spectrum of  $|X(\omega)|$  is not band-limited. Therefore, aliasing of successive frequency components occurs even if  $\omega_s$  is large. The spectra  $|X_s(\omega)|$  is shown in Figure 8.27(b). It is a periodic repetition of  $X(\omega)$  at  $\omega = \pm(2\pi/T)n = \pm 2\pi n$ .

$$X(\omega) = \frac{1}{1 + j\omega}$$

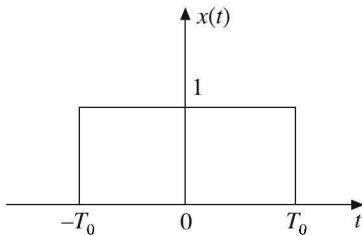
∴

$$x(t) = e^{-t}, x(nT) = e^{-nT} = e^{-n}$$

Figure 8.27 (a) Spectrum  $|X(\omega)|$ , (b) Spectrum  $|X_s(\omega)|$ .

**EXAMPLE 8.12** The signal  $x(t) = u(t + T_0) - u(t - T_0)$  can undergo impulse sampling without aliasing provided that the sampling period  $T < 2T_0$ . Justify.

**Solution:** Given signal  $x(t) = u(t + T_0) - u(t - T_0)$  is shown in Figure 8.28.



**Figure 8.28** Signal  $x(t) = u(t + T_0) - u(t - T_0)$ .

The sampling is free from aliasing if the sampling frequency  $f_s \geq 2f_m$ , where  $f_m$  is the highest frequency component in  $x(t)$ .

Given that

$$T \leq 2T_0, \text{ i.e. } T < \frac{1}{2f_0}$$

But the Nyquist rate,

$$f_s = \frac{1}{T}$$

Then

$$\frac{1}{f_s} < \frac{1}{2f_0}, \text{ i.e. } f_s > 2f_0$$

So the sampling theorem is satisfied. Hence the above statement is true.

**EXAMPLE 8.13** A signal with Fourier transform  $X(\omega)$  undergoes impulse train sampling to generate  $x_p(t) = \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} x(nT) \delta(t - nT)$  where  $T = 10^{-4}$ . For each of the following sets of constraints on  $x(t)$  and/or  $X(\omega)$ , does the sampling theorem guarantee that  $x(t)$  can be recovered exactly from  $x_p(t)$ ?

- (a)  $X(\omega) = 0$  for  $|\omega| > 5000\pi$
- (b)  $x(t)$  real and  $X(\omega) = 0$  for  $|\omega| > 5000\pi$

**Solution:** The sampling theorem states that a band-limited signal  $x(t)$  with  $X(\omega) = 0$  for  $|\omega| > \omega_m$  can be easily recovered from its samples  $x(nT)$ ,  $n = 0, \pm 1, \pm 2, \dots$  if the sampling frequency  $\omega_s$  is greater than or equal to twice the maximum frequency component present in the signal, i.e.

$$\omega_s \geq 2\omega_m$$

Here the sampling frequency  $\omega_s = \frac{2\pi}{T} = \frac{2\pi}{10^{-4}} = 20000\pi$  rad/sec.

- (a) Given  $X(\omega) = 0 \quad \text{for } |\omega_m| > 5000\pi$

The highest frequency component  $\omega_m = 5000\pi \text{ rad/sec}$

Since  $\omega_s > 2\omega_m = 10000\pi \text{ rad/sec}$ , the sampling theorem is satisfied and  $x(t)$  can be recovered from  $x_p(t)$ .

- (b)  $x(t)$  real and  $X(\omega) = 0 \quad \text{for } |\omega| > \omega_m$

As  $x(t)$  is real, we have

$$X(\omega) = \overline{X(-\omega)}$$

$$\therefore X(\omega) = \overline{X(-\omega)} = 0 \quad \text{for } |\omega| > 5000\pi$$

$$\therefore X(\omega) = 0 \quad \text{for } \omega < -5000\pi \text{ and for } \omega > 5000\pi$$

$$\text{i.e. } X(\omega) = 0 \quad \text{for } |\omega| > 5000\pi$$

$$\text{So obviously } \omega_s > 2\omega_m$$

Therefore, the signal  $x(t)$  can be recovered from  $x_p(t)$ .

**EXAMPLE 8.14** Given a continuous-time signal  $x(t)$  with Nyquist rate  $\omega_N$ . Determine the Nyquist rate for the following continuous-time signals:

- (a)  $y(t) = x^2(t)$   
 (b)  $y(t) = x(t) \cos \omega_0 t$

**Solution:** Given  $x(t)$  has a Nyquist rate of  $\omega_N$ .

Therefore,

$$X(\omega) = 0 \quad \text{for } |\omega| > \frac{\omega_N}{2}$$

- (a) Given

$$y(t) = x^2(t)$$

Therefore,

$$Y(\omega) = \frac{1}{2\pi} [X(\omega) * X(\omega)]$$

$$\text{It is clear that } Y(\omega) = 0 \quad \text{for } \omega > \frac{\omega_N}{2} + \frac{\omega_N}{2} = \omega_N$$

Therefore, the Nyquist rate for  $y(t)$  is  $2\omega_N$ .

- (b) Given

$$y(t) = x(t) \cos \omega_0 t$$

Therefore,

$$Y(\omega) = \frac{1}{2} [X(\omega - \omega_0) + X(\omega + \omega_0)]$$

$$\text{It is clear that } Y(\omega) = 0 \quad \text{for } \omega > \omega_0 + \frac{\omega_N}{2}.$$

$$\text{Therefore, the Nyquist rate for } y(t) = 2 \left( \omega_0 + \frac{\omega_N}{2} \right) = 2\omega_0 + \omega_N.$$

## 8.9 SAMPLING OF BAND PASS SIGNALS

The sampling theorem, which we have discussed earlier, is called low pass sampling theorem because it applies only to low pass signals, i.e. signals for which  $X(f) = 0$  for  $f \geq f_m$ , where  $f_m$  has a finite value. Here the signal which is band-limited to  $f_m$  Hz has to be sampled at least at  $2f_m$  samples per second if the analog signal is to be reconstructed. In the case of band pass signals, that is signals for which  $X(f) = 0$  for all frequencies outside the range  $f_1 \leq f \leq f_2$ , where  $f_1 > 0$ , this rule does not apply. For this class of signals, while there will be no aliasing if  $f_s > 2f_2$ , there might be no aliasing even if  $f_s < 2f_2$  provided  $f_s$  satisfies certain conditions.

Sampling of a band pass signal with  $f_s > 2f_2$  to prevent aliasing has two disadvantages.

1. The spectrum of the sampled signal will have spectral gaps.
2. If  $f_2$  is large, the sampling rate is also very large, and therefore, have practical limitations.

To overcome this, the band pass sampling theorem is defined as follows:

Let the bandwidth of the band pass signal shown in Figure 8.29(a) be  $B = f_2 - f_1 = 2f_m$ . Then the band pass sampling theorem states that  $x(t)$  can be recovered without any error whatever so ever from its samples  $x(nT)$  taken at regular intervals of  $T$ , if the sampling rate  $f_s$  is such that

$$f_s = \frac{1}{T} = \frac{2f_2}{m} \quad (\text{which is smaller than the Nyquist rate } 2f_2)$$

where  $m$  is the largest integer not exceeding  $f_2/B$ .

If we assume that the highest frequency component present in the band pass signal is multiple of bandwidth, i.e.  $f_2 = KB = K_2f_m$ , then the band pass sampling theorem states that

*The band pass signal  $x(t)$  whose maximum bandwidth is  $2f_m$  can be completely represented into and recovered from its samples if it is sampled at the minimum rate of twice the bandwidth.*

Hence for band pass signals of bandwidth  $2f_m$ , the minimum sampling rate is equal to twice that of bandwidth, i.e.  $f_s = 2 \times \text{BW} = 4f_m$  samples per second, or  $T = 1/4f_m$  sec.

If the spectrum of the band pass signal is  $X(\omega)$ , then the spectrum of the sampled band pass signal is:

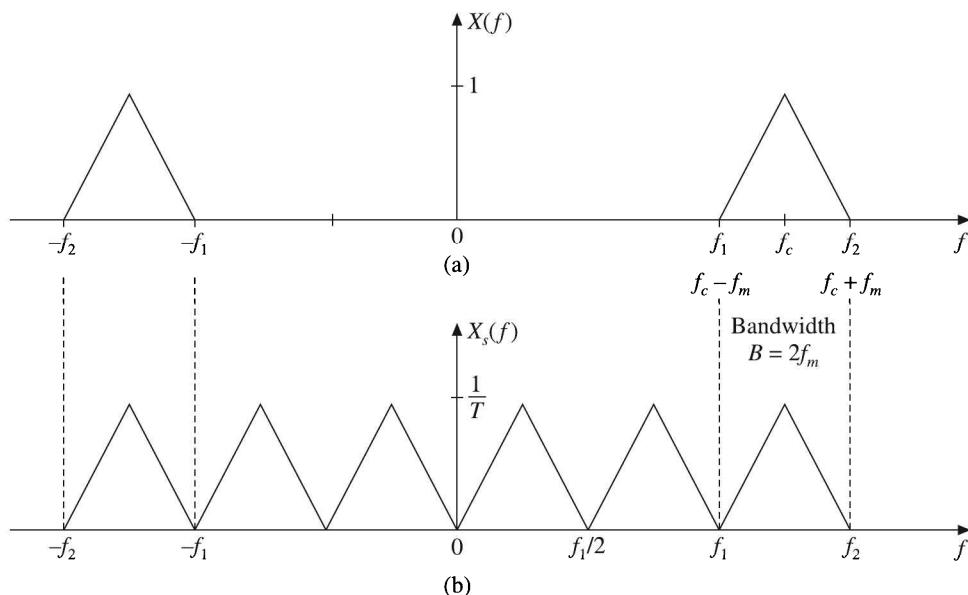
$$X_s(\omega) = \frac{1}{T} \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} X(\omega - 2nB)$$

where  $X_s(\omega)$  is the sum of the original Fourier transform  $X(\omega)$  and shifted replicas of  $X(\omega)$  and then scaled by  $1/T$ .

Figure 8.29(b) shows the spectrum of the original signal and sampled signal for  $K = 3$ . From this figure, we can find that the original signal can be recovered by passing  $x(t)$  through an ideal band pass filter with a pass band given by  $f_1 \leq |f| \leq f_2$  with a gain of  $T$ .

It may be noted that sampling frequencies higher than what is given by the equation  $f_s = 2f_2/m$  may not always permit recovery of  $x(t)$  without distortion (i.e. they may not be able to avoid aliasing unless  $f_s > 2f_2$ ). The required sampling rate for a band pass filter depends on  $m$ , i.e. on  $(f_2/B)$ .

If  $f_s > 2f_2$ , there will not be any aliasing and perfect reconstruction is possible. Also if  $f_2 = KB$  where  $K$  is an integer, a sampling rate  $f_s = 2B$  would suffice and will not produce any aliasing.



**Figure 8.29** (a) Spectrum of band pass filter (BPF), (b) Spectrum of sampled BPF.

**EXAMPLE 8.15** The spectral range of a function extends from 5.6 MHz to 6.8 MHz. Find the minimum sampling rate and maximum sampling time.

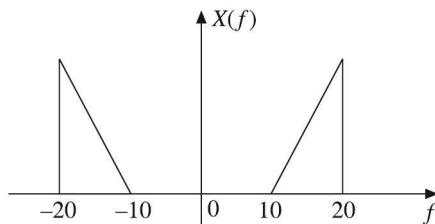
**Solution:** Given frequency range = 5.6 MHz to 6.8 MHz

$$\therefore \text{Bandwidth } B = 2f_m = (6.8 - 5.6) \text{ MHz} = 1.2 \text{ MHz}$$

$$\therefore \text{Minimum sampling rate } f_s = 2B = 4f_m = 2 \times 1.2 \text{ MHz} = 2.4 \text{ MHz}$$

$$\therefore \text{Maximum sampling time } T_s = \frac{1}{f_s} = \frac{1}{2.4 \times 10^6} = 0.417 \mu\text{s.}$$

**EXAMPLE 8.16** A band pass signal with a spectrum shown in Figure 8.30 is ideally sampled. Sketch the spectrum of the sampled signal when  $f_s = 20$  Hz, 30 Hz, and 40 Hz. Indicate if and how the signal can be recovered.



**Figure 8.30** Spectrum for Example 8.16.

**Solution:**

(a)  $f_s = 20 \text{ Hz}$

When  $f_s = 20 \text{ Hz}$ , the corresponding spectrum of the sampled signal  $X_s(f)$  is shown in Figure 8.31. It is a periodic repetition of  $X(f)$  at regular intervals of  $\pm nf_s$ , i.e.  $\pm 20n$ ,  $n = 1, 2, \dots$ .

The base band signal can be recovered by passing the sampled signal through a band pass filter with a pass band from 10 Hz to 20 Hz.

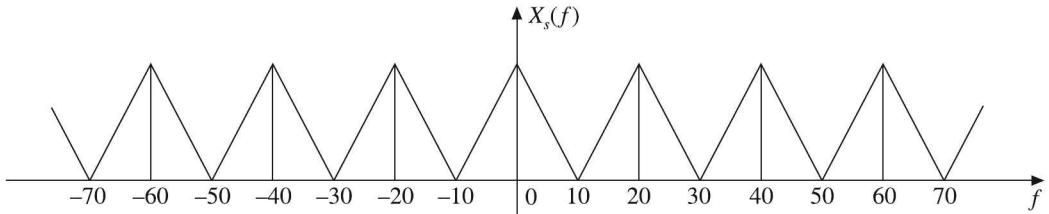


Figure 8.31 Spectrum when  $f_s = 20 \text{ Hz}$ .

(b)  $f_s = 30 \text{ Hz}$ .

When  $f_s = 30 \text{ Hz}$ , the corresponding spectrum of the sampled signal  $X_s(f)$  is shown in Figure 8.32. It is a periodic repetition of  $X(f)$  at regular intervals of  $\pm 30n$ . Due to aliasing effect, the signal cannot be recovered.

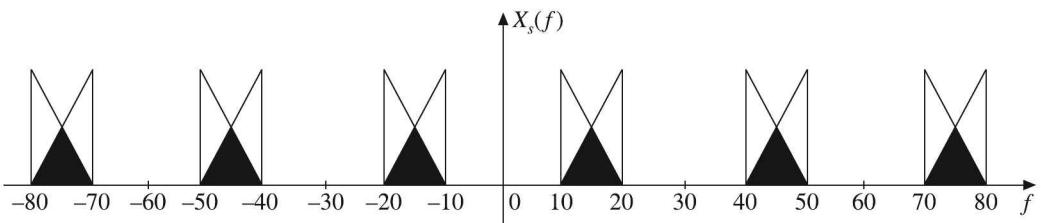


Figure 8.32 Spectrum when  $f_s = 30 \text{ Hz}$ .

(c)  $f_s = 40 \text{ Hz}$

When  $f_s = 40 \text{ Hz}$ , the corresponding spectrum of the sampled signal  $X_s(f)$  is shown in Figure 8.33. The base band signal can be recovered by passing the sampled signal through a band pass filter with a pass band from 10 Hz to 20 Hz.

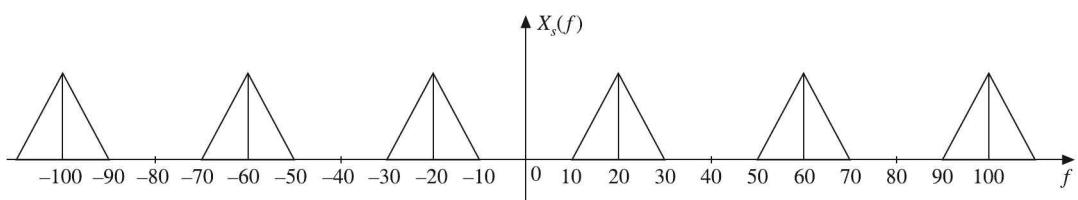


Figure 8.33 Spectrum when  $f_s = 40 \text{ Hz}$ .

**EXAMPLE 8.17** A band pass signal has a spectrum as depicted in Figure 8.34. What is the minimum sampling frequency that can be used? Show that no aliasing takes place when this sampling frequency is used.

**Solution:** Here,  $f_2$ , the highest frequency component is 30 kHz. If we use the low pass sampling theorem, a minimum sampling frequency of 60 kHz would be needed.

However, it is not necessary to use such a high sampling frequency. Since it is a band pass signal, a sampling frequency equal to  $f_s$  could suffice where

$$f_s = \frac{2f_2}{m}$$

where  $m$  is the largest integer less than  $\frac{f_2}{B} = \frac{30}{8} = 3.75$

Thus,

$$m = 3$$

Therefore, the minimum sampling frequency that can be used is:

$$f_s = 2 \times \frac{30}{3} = 20 \text{ kHz}$$

Figure 8.35 shows that no aliasing occurs with this sampling frequency.

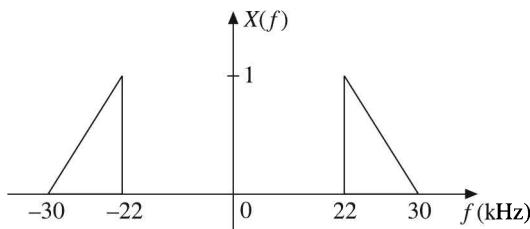


Figure 8.34 Spectrum of band pass signal

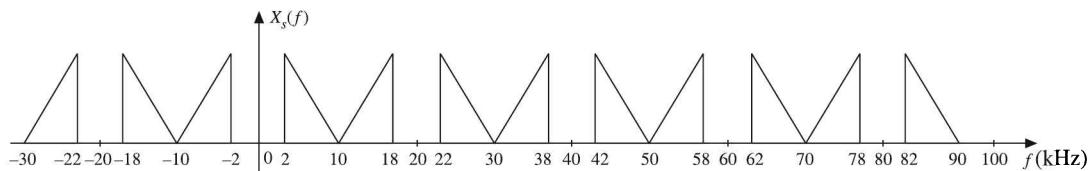


Figure 8.35 Spectrum of sampled version of  $x(t)$  with  $f_s$  kHz.

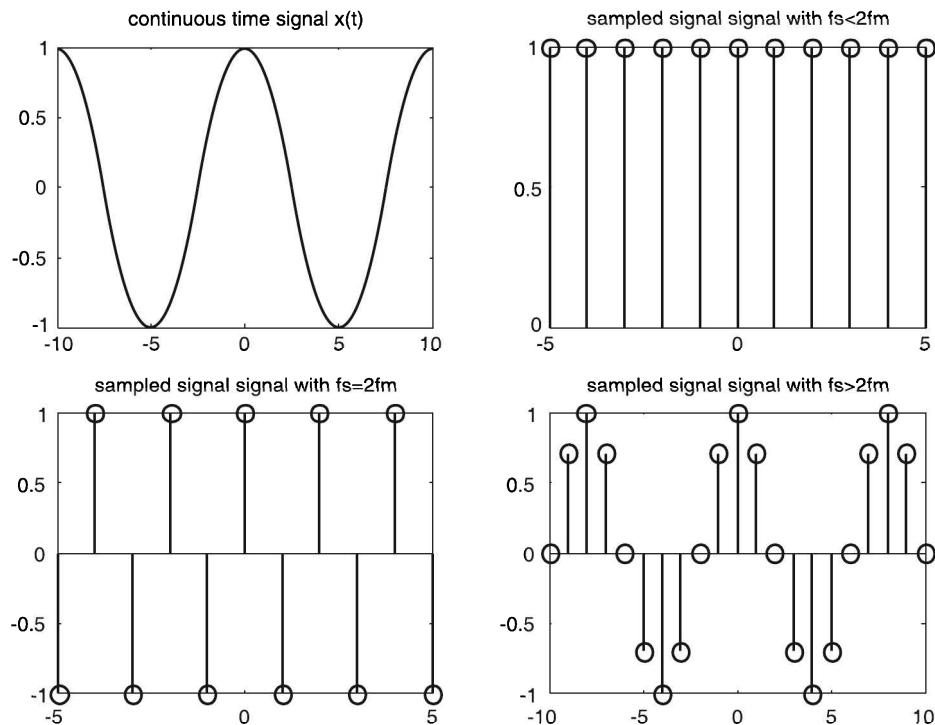
## MATLAB PROGRAMS

### Program 8.1

```
% Verification of the Sampling theorem
t=-10:0.001:10;
% continuous time signal x(t)
fm=0.1;
xt=cos(2*pi*fm*t);
subplot(2,2,1);plot(t,xt);
title('continuous time signal x(t)');
```

```
% sampled signal with fs<2fm
fs1=0.1;
n1=-5:5;
x1n=cos(2*pi*fm*n1/fs1);
subplot(2,2,2);stem(n1,x1n);
title('sampled signal signal with fs<2fm');
% sampled signal with fs=2fm
fs2=0.2;
n2=-5:5;
x2n=cos(2*pi*fm*n2/fs2);
subplot(2,2,3);stem(n2,x2n);
title('sampled signal signal with fs=2fm');
% sampled signal with fs>2fm
fs3=0.8;
n3=-10:10;
x3n=cos(2*pi*fm*n3/fs3);
subplot(2,2,4);stem(n3,x3n);
title('sampled signal signal with fs>2fm');
```

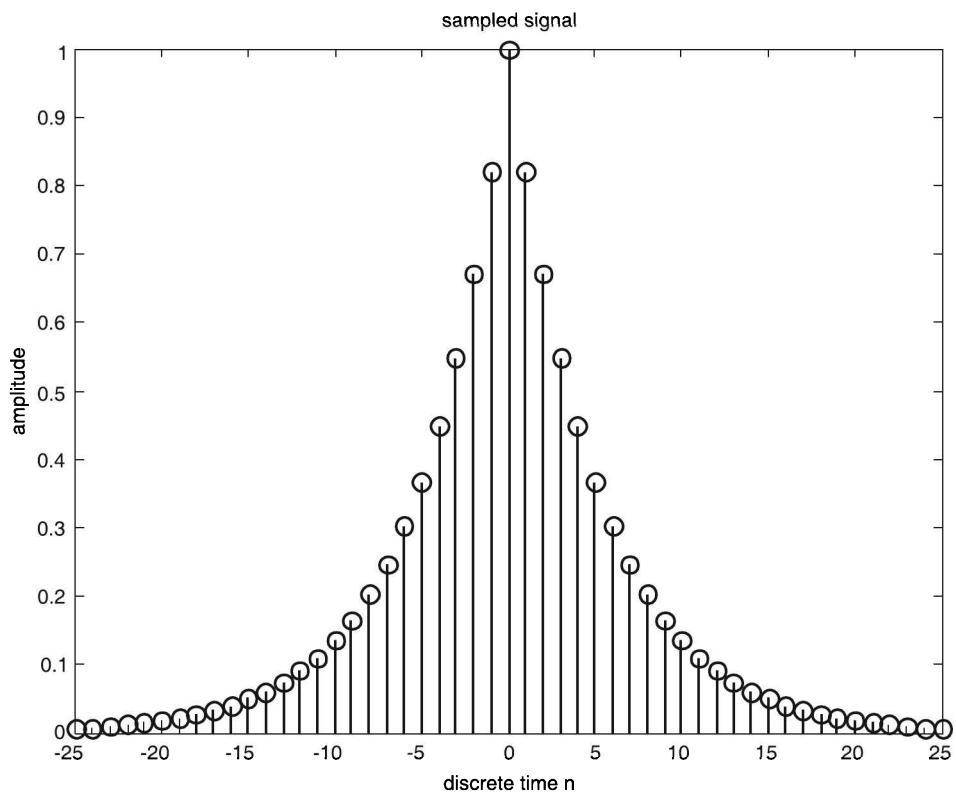
Output:

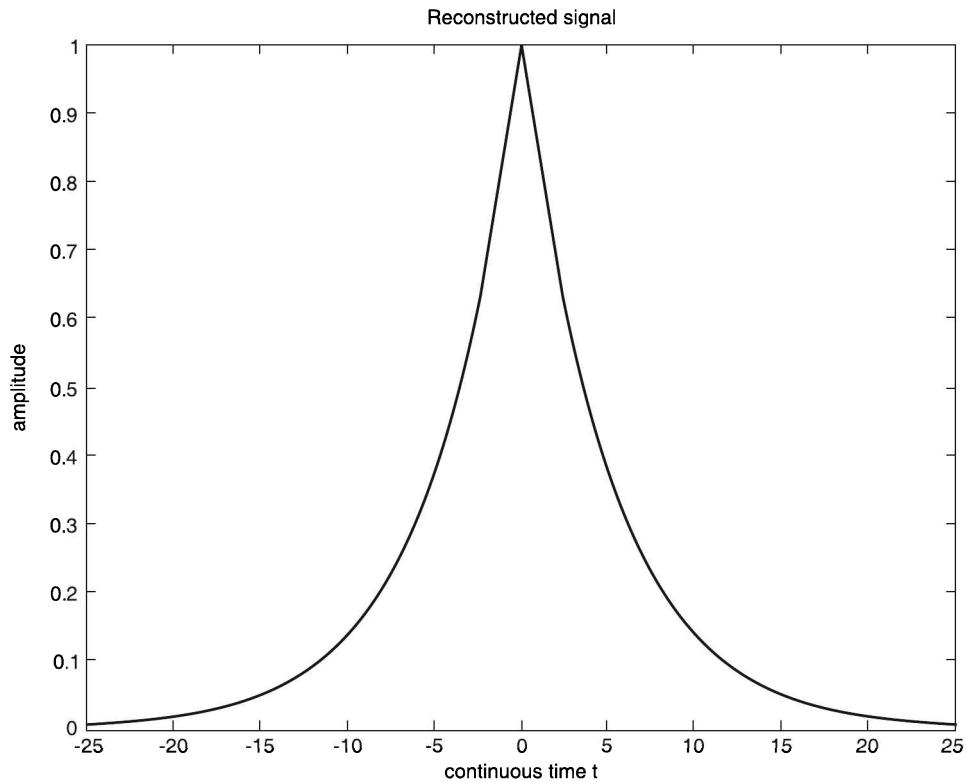


### Program 8.2

```
% Sampling a signal x(t)=exp(-1000|t|) at fs=5000 samples/sec to
% obtain x(n) and also to reconstruct x(t) from samples of x(n)
clc;close all;clear all;
Ts=0.0002;
n=-25:1:25;
nTs=n*Ts;
% Sampled signal
xn=exp(-1000*abs(nTs));
stem(n,xn);
title('sampled signal');
xlabel('discrete time n');ylabel('amplitude');
% Reconstruction of the signal
Dt=0.0002;t=-0.005:Dt:0.005;
fs=5000;
xr=xn*sinc(fs*(ones(length(n),1)*t-nTs'*ones(1,length(t)) ));
figure;plot(-25:25,xr);
title('Reconstructed signal');
xlabel('continuous time t');ylabel('amplitude');
```

Output:





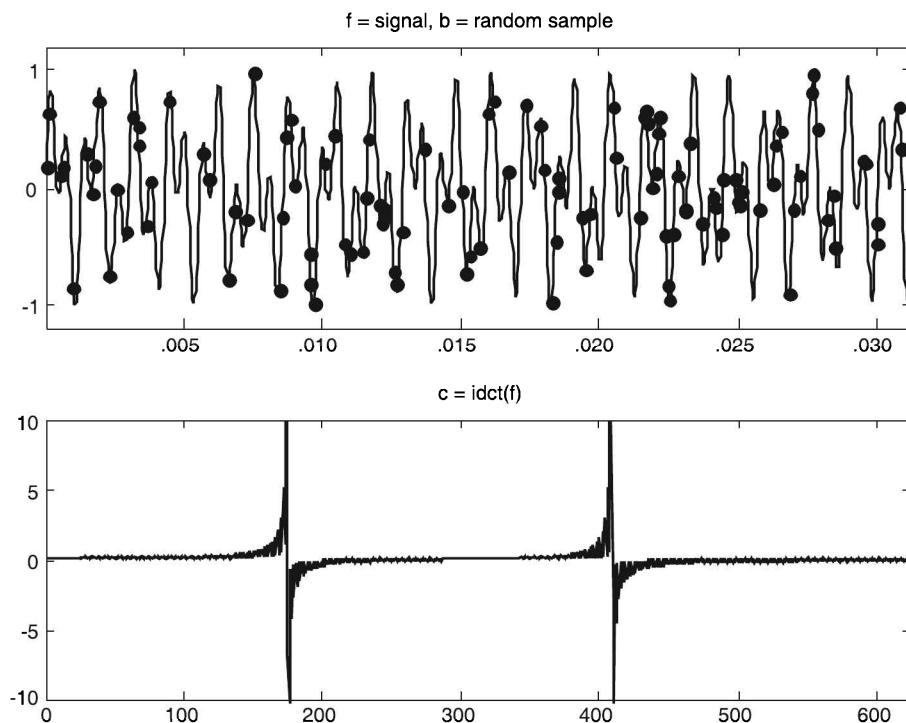
### Program 8.3

```
% Generation of a tone from "A"key on touch tone phone with
frequency
f(t) = sin(1394*pi*t) + sin(3266*pi*t)
Fs = 40000;
t = (1:Fs/8)'/Fs;
f = (sin(2*pi*697*t) + sin(2*pi*1633*t))/2;
n = length(f);
m = ceil(n/10);
k = randperm(n)';
k = sort(k(1:m));
b = f(k);
% plotting the signal f(t) of the tone and its IDCT
figure(1);
subplot(2,1,1)
plot(t,f,'b-',t(k),b,'k.')
axis([0 max(t)/4 -1.2 1.2]);
set(gca,'xtick',.005:.005:.030,'ytick',-1:1, ...
'xticklabel',{'0.005','0.010','0.015','0.020','0.025','0.030'})
```

```
title('f = signal, b = random sample')
subplot(2,1,2)
plot(idct(f))
axis([0 n/8 -10 10]);
set(gca,'xtick',0:100:600)
title('c = idct(f)')
drawnow
% Play sound for the tone frequency.
sound(f,Fs)
pause(1)
```

Output:

- Audio sound for the key can be listened through speakers



### SHORT QUESTIONS WITH ANSWERS

1. What is sampling?

*Ans.* Sampling is the process of converting a continuous-time signal into a discrete-time signal.

2. What is sampling period?

*Ans.* The sampling period or sampling interval is the time interval between successive samples.

3. What is sampling frequency?

*Ans.* The sampling frequency is the reciprocal of sampling period. It indicates the number of samples per second.

4. State sampling theorem.

*Ans.* The sampling theorem also called uniform sampling theorem or low pass sampling theorem states that “A band-limited signal  $x(t)$  with  $X(\omega) = 0$  for  $|\omega| \geq \omega_m$  can be represented into and uniquely determined from its samples  $x(nT)$ , if the sampling frequency  $f_s \geq 2f_m$ , where  $f_m$  is the highest frequency component present in it”.

5. Why the sampling theorem is called uniform sampling theorem?

*Ans.* The sampling theorem is called uniform sampling theorem because it applies to signals which are sampled at uniform intervals of time.

6. Why the sampling theorem is called low pass sampling theorem?

*Ans.* The sampling theorem is called low pass sampling theorem because it applies only to the sampling of signals which are band-limited (i.e. of low pass type).

7. When is it impossible to retrieve  $x(t)$  from  $x_s(t)$ ?

*Ans.* When  $\omega_s < 2\omega_m$ , the spectra in the sampled signal overlap, i.e. aliasing occurs, and it is impossible to retrieve  $x(t)$  from  $x_s(t)$ .

8. What are the two basic conditions to be satisfied if  $x(t)$  is to be extracted from  $x_s(t)$ ?

*Ans.* The two basic conditions to be satisfied if  $x(t)$  is to be extracted from  $x_s(t)$  are:

(a)  $x(t)$  should be band-limited to some frequency  $\omega_m$ .

(b) The sampling frequency  $\omega_s$  should be atleast twice the band-limiting frequency  $\omega_m$ .

9. What is guard band?

*Ans.* When  $\omega_s > 2\omega_m$ , the spectral replicates have a larger separation between them. This separation region is called guard band.

10. What is aliasing?

*Ans.* Aliasing is defined as the phenomenon in which a high frequency component in the frequency spectrum of signal takes identity of a lower frequency component in the spectrum of the sampled signal.

Or

We can say: The effect in which the individual terms in equation

$$X_s(\omega) = \frac{1}{T} \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} X(\omega - n\omega_s)$$

overlap is called aliasing.

11. When does aliasing occur? How can it be avoided?

*Ans.* Aliasing can occur if either of the following conditions exists.

(a) The signal is not band-limited to a finite range.

(b) The sampling rate is too low.

It can be avoided by ensuring that

- (a)  $x(t)$  is strictly band-limited.
- (b)  $f_s$  is greater than  $2f_m$ .

12. What are the effects of sampling rate?

*Ans.* The effects of sampling rate are:

- (a)  $X_s(f)$  is a repetitive version of  $X(f)$  with  $X(f)$  repeating itself at regular intervals of  $f_s$ , the sampling frequency.
- (b) If  $f_s > 2f_m$ , then there is a guard band and it is easy to separate out  $X(f)$  from  $X_s(f)$ , i.e. it is easy to recover  $x(t)$  from  $x_s(t)$  using a practical LPF.
- (c) If  $f_s = 2f_m$ , i.e. Nyquist rate, no guard band exists and an ideal LPF is needed to recover  $x(t)$  from  $x_s(t)$ .
- (d) If  $f_s < 2f_m$ , aliasing takes place and it is not possible to recover  $x(t)$  from  $x_s(t)$  without distortion.

13. What is Nyquist rate?

*Ans.* Nyquist rate is the theoretical minimum sampling rate at which a signal can be sampled and still be reconstructed from its samples without any distortion.

14. What is over sampling and under sampling?

*Ans.* Over sampling means sampling a signal at a rate greater than Nyquist rate and under sampling means sampling a signal at a rate smaller than Nyquist rate.

15. What is Nyquist interval?

*Ans.* Nyquist interval is the time interval between any two adjacent samples when sampling rate is Nyquist rate.

16. What is anti-aliasing filter?

*Ans.* The LPF used for band-limiting a signal before sampling is generally referred to as anti-aliasing filter. It is primarily used for preventing aliasing. Hence that name.

17. What are the disadvantages of sampling a band pass signal ( $f_1$  to  $f_2$ ) with  $f_s > 2f_2$ ?

*Ans.* The disadvantages of sampling a band pass signal ( $f_1$  to  $f_2$ ) with  $f_s > 2f_2$  are:

- (a) The spectrum of the sampled signal will have spectral gaps.
- (b) If  $f_2$  is large, the sampling rate is also very large and therefore have practical limitations.

18. State sampling theorem for band pass signals.

*Ans.* The sampling theorem for band pass signals states that "If the bandwidth of the band pass signal  $x(t)$  is  $B$  ( $= f_2 - f_1 = 2f_m$ ), then the signal can be recovered without any error what so ever from its samples  $x(nT)$  if the sampling rate  $f_s$  is such that

$$f_s = \frac{1}{T} = \frac{2f_2}{m}, \text{ where } m \text{ is the largest integer not exceeding } f_2/B.$$

If  $f_2 = KB = K(2f_m)$ , i.e. if the highest frequency component of the band pass signal  $x(t)$  is an integral multiple of its bandwidth  $2f_m$ , then the sampling theorem for the band

pass signals states that “The band pass signal  $x(t)$  whose maximum bandwidth is  $2f_m$  can be completely represented into and recovered from its samples if it is sampled at the minimum rate of twice the bandwidth”, i.e.  $f_s = 4f_m$  samples per second or  $T_s = (1/4f_m)$  sec.

19. What do you mean by interpolation?

*Ans.* The process of reconstructing a continuous-time signal from its samples is called interpolation.

20. What is zero order hold?

*Ans.* Zero order hold is an interpolator which reconstructs the continuous-time signal from its samples by holding the sample value constant till the next sample is received.

21. What is aperture effect?

*Ans.* The distortion, wherein the amplitudes of the high frequency components are reduced relative to the amplitudes of the low frequency components, in the reconstructed signal  $x(t)$  obtained from the flat top sampled version of the signal, is referred to as the aperture effect.

22. What is an equalizer?

*Ans.* An equalizer is a device used in cascade with the reconstruction filter to reduce the distortion within the message frequency band.

## REVIEW QUESTIONS

1. State and prove the sampling theorem.

Or

State and prove the sampling theorem for low pass signals.

Or

State and prove the sampling theorem for band-limited signals.

Or

With the help of graphical example explain sampling theorem for band-limited signals.

2. State and explain the sampling theorem for band pass signals.

3. Explain the signal recovery (reconstruction) from its sampled signals.

4. Explain the impulse sampling method.

5. Explain the flat top sampling method.

6. Explain the natural sampling method.

7. Compare various sampling methods.

8. What is zero order hold? Obtain the transfer function of zero order hold.

## FILL IN THE BLANKS

1. Most of the signals that we encounter in practice are \_\_\_\_\_ signals.

2. The process of converting a continuous-time signal into a discrete-time signal is called \_\_\_\_\_.

3. The time interval between two successive sampling instants is called \_\_\_\_\_ or \_\_\_\_\_.

4. The sampling theorem is also called the \_\_\_\_\_ theorem or \_\_\_\_\_ theorem.
  5. For signal recovery  $f_s$  and  $f_m$  are such that \_\_\_\_\_.
  6. The Fourier transform of the sampled signal is given by an \_\_\_\_\_ of shifted replicas of Fourier transform of the \_\_\_\_\_.
  7. The two basic conditions to be satisfied if  $x(t)$  is to be recovered from its samples are  
(a) \_\_\_\_\_, (b) \_\_\_\_\_.
  8. Guard band exists when \_\_\_\_\_.
  9. No guard band exists when \_\_\_\_\_.
  10. Aliasing occurs when \_\_\_\_\_.
  11. Aliasing can occur if (a) \_\_\_\_\_, (b) \_\_\_\_\_.
  12. Anti-aliasing filter is used \_\_\_\_\_ the sampler.
  13. The process of spectral overlap is called \_\_\_\_\_.
  14. The process of spectral overlap is also called \_\_\_\_\_.
  15. The theoretical minimum rate at which a signal can be sampled and still be recovered from its samples is called \_\_\_\_\_.
  16. A signal sampled at a rate greater than the Nyquist rate is said to be \_\_\_\_\_.
  17. A signal sampled at a rate smaller than the Nyquist rate is said to be \_\_\_\_\_.
  18. The time interval between any two adjacent samples when sampling rate is Nyquist rate is called \_\_\_\_\_.
  19. The LPF used for band-limiting a signal before sampling is known as \_\_\_\_\_.
  20. Band pass sampling theorem states that for signal recovery  $f_s = \frac{1}{2B}$  where  $2f_m$  is the bandwidth of the signal.

## **OBJECTIVE TYPE QUESTIONS**

- The process of converting a continuous-time signal into a discrete-time signal is called
    - (a) analog to digital conversion
    - (b) digital to analog conversion
    - (c) sampling
    - (d) all the above
  - In communication, the sampling technique leads to
    - (a) more efficiency
    - (b) low cost
    - (c) high speed
    - (d) all the above
  - According to sampling theorem, the signal should be sampled at
    - (a)  $\omega_s = 2\omega_m$
    - (b)  $\omega_s \geq 2\omega_m$
    - (c)  $\omega_s = \omega_m/2$
    - (d) any of the above
  - The Nyquist rate of a signal is
    - (a)  $f_m/2$
    - (b)  $2f_m$
    - (c)  $f_m$
    - (d)  $f_m \times f_m$
  - A signal of maximum frequency 20 kHz is sampled at Nyquist rate. The time interval between two successive samples is
    - (a) 25  $\mu$ s
    - (b) 2.5  $\mu$ s
    - (c) 50  $\mu$ s
    - (d) 20 ms
  - A signal is band-limited to 50 kHz. The signal can be uniquely determined by its values at uniform intervals of duration less than
    - (a) 50  $\mu$ s
    - (b) 50 ms
    - (c) 100  $\mu$ s
    - (d) 10  $\mu$ s

7. A signal is to pass an LPF with cutoff frequency of 10 kHz. The minimum sampling rate for recovery is
  - (a) 20000 sps
  - (b) 5000 sps
  - (c) 40 sps
  - (d) 20 sps
8. The sampling rate is always between
  - (a) 0 and  $2B$
  - (b)  $2B$  and  $4B$
  - (c)  $B$  and  $2B$
  - (d)  $>4B$
9. Practical sampling is
  - (a) PAM
  - (b) PCM
  - (c) PPM
  - (d) PWM
10. If the sampling rate is inadequate, then
  - (a) a low frequency alias signal appears in the recovered signal
  - (b) no aliasing occurs
  - (c) a high frequency alias signal appears in the recovered signal
  - (d) none of the above
11. The sampling theory is applicable to band-limited signals which are
  - (a) single valued
  - (b) continuous
  - (c) (a) and (b)
  - (d) none of the above
12. If the LSB overlaps the basebands, the distortion is called
  - (a) cross-over distortion
  - (b) aliasing
  - (c) cross talk
  - (d) all
13. Aliasing occurs when the signal is
  - (a) over sampled
  - (b) under sampled
  - (c) critically sampled
  - (d) not sampled
14. Another name for aliasing is
  - (a) cross talk
  - (b) frequency fold over distortion
  - (c) cross-over distortion
  - (d) none of the above
15. Aliasing can be reduced by
  - (a) increasing sampling rate
  - (b) band-limiting the signal
  - (c) improving slope characteristics
  - (d) all the above
16. By increasing sampling frequency, the bandwidth requirement of the transmission medium
  - (a) remains same
  - (b) increases
  - (c) decreases
  - (d) none
17. If a function consists of a frequency band from 0 to  $B$  Hz, then the minimum sampling rate necessary is
  - (a)  $B/2$
  - (b)  $B$
  - (c)  $2B$
  - (d)  $4B$
18. Minimum sampling rate for band pass signals is
  - (a)  $2f_m$
  - (b)  $f_m$
  - (c)  $f_m/2$
  - (d)  $4f_m$
19. During sampling time, the output of a sample and hold circuit is
  - (a) zero
  - (b) the signal itself
  - (c) constant
  - (d) none of the above
20. In band pass sampling, the sampling frequency is twice the
  - (a) minimum frequency
  - (b) maximum frequency

## **PROBLEMS**

1. A signal having a spectrum ranging from dc to 20 kHz is to be sampled and converted into discrete form. What is the minimum number of samples per second that must be taken to ensure recovery?
  2. The signal  $x(t) = 10 \cos(20\pi t)$  is sampled at a rate of 15 samples per second. Plot the amplitude spectrum for  $|\omega| \leq 60\pi$ . Can the original signal be recovered from samples? Explain.
  3. A signal  $x(t) = \sin(200\pi t)$  is sampled at a rate of (a) 150 Hz (b) 225 Hz (c) 300 Hz. For each of these three cases, can you recover the signal  $x(t)$  from the sampled signal  $x_s(t)$ ?

4. Draw  $|X_s(\omega)|$  for the signal  $x(t)$  with  $X(\omega)$  shown in Figure 8.36 for the following cases when  $x_s(t) = x(t) \delta_T(t)$  with sampling period  $T$ , where

$$\delta_T(t) = \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} \delta(t - nT)$$

$$(a) T = \frac{\pi}{6} \text{ sec} \quad (b) T = \frac{\pi}{4} \text{ sec} \quad (c) T = \frac{\pi}{3} \text{ sec}$$

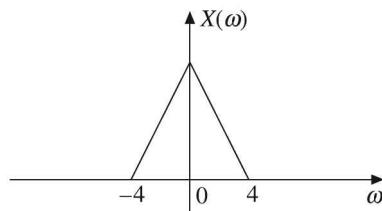


Figure 8.36 Problem 4.

5. Consider the following sampling and reconstruction block shown in Figure 8.37(a).

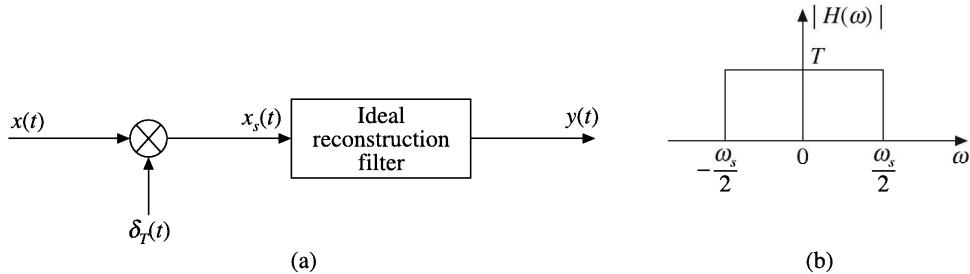


Figure 8.37 Problem 5.

The output of the ideal reconstruction filter can be found by sending signal  $x_s(t)$  through an ideal low pass filter having characteristics as shown in Figure 8.37(b). For the following signals draw the spectrum  $|X_s(\omega)|$  and find expressions for  $x(nT)$  and  $y(t)$ :

- (a)  $x(t) = 1 + \cos 50\pi t$  for  $T = 0.025$  sec  
 (b)  $x(t) = 1 + \cos 100\pi t$  for  $T = (1/75)$  sec  
 (c)  $x(t) = 2 + \cos 20\pi t + \cos 60\pi t$  for  $T = 0.025$  sec  
 (d) If  $X(\omega) = 1/(4 + j\omega)$  and  $T = 4$  sec, draw  $|X_s(\omega)|$ . Test for aliasing.
6. Determine the Nyquist sampling rate and Nyquist sampling interval for the following signals:
- |   |  |
|---|--|
| (a) $\text{sinc}^2(300\pi t)$                           | (b) $5 \text{sinc}^2(300\pi t)$                  |
| (c) $\text{sinc}(100\pi t) + 5 \text{sinc}^2(200\pi t)$ | (d) $\text{sinc}(60\pi t) \text{sinc}(140\pi t)$ |

7. Consider a continuous-time signal  $x(t)$  with frequency spectrum shown in Figure 8.38. Find the frequency spectrum of its sampled sequences if the sampling frequency (a)  $\omega_s = 40$  rad/sec. (b)  $\omega_s = 80$  rad/sec. (c)  $\omega_s = 120$  rad/sec. Also find in which cases the signal  $x(t)$  can be recovered from its samples.

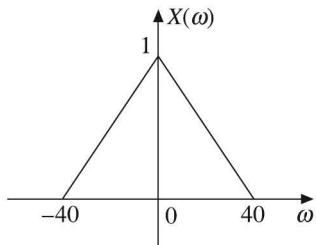


Figure 8.38 Problem 7.

8. The amplitude spectrum of a continuous-time signal is shown in Figure 8.39. When this signal is sampled with a sampling frequency of  $\omega_s = 200\pi$  rad/sec, sketch the amplitude spectrum of the sampled signal.

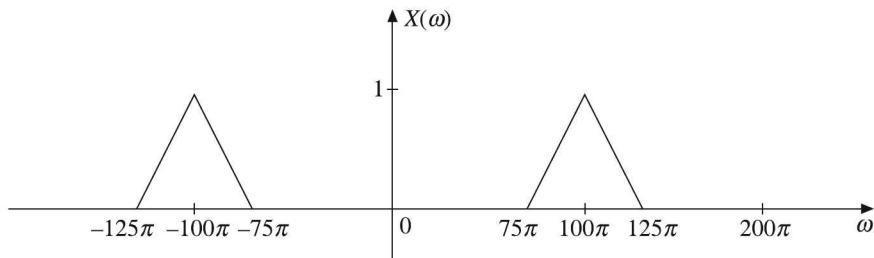


Figure 8.39 Problem 8.

9. The signal  $x(t) = 8 \cos(400\pi t) \cos^2(900\pi t)$  is ideally sampled at 2300 sps.  
 (a) What is the minimum allowable sampling frequency?  
 (b) What is the range of permissible cutoff frequencies for the ideal LPF to be used for reconstructing the signal?  
 (c) Draw the spectrum of the sampled signal.
10. For the band pass signal shown in Figure 8.40, find the minimum sampling frequency. Also draw the frequency spectrum of the sampled signal.

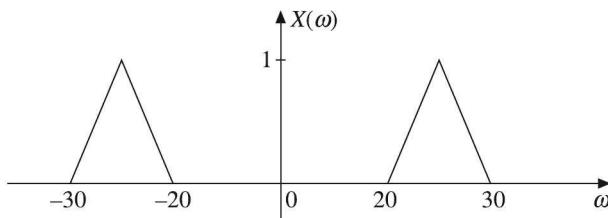
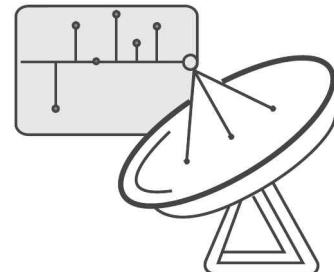


Figure 8.40 Problem 10.



# Laplace Transforms

## 9.1 INTRODUCTION

A linear time invariant (LTI) system is described by differential equations. The response of a system for a given input is obtained by solving the differential equations relating its output and input signals. We know that the solution of higher order differential equations is quite tedious and time consuming compared to the solution of algebraic equations. So the Laplace transform is used to solve the differential equations. Laplace transform is a powerful mathematical tool used to convert the differential equations into algebraic equations. It is a simple and systematic method which provides the complete solution in one stroke by taking into account the initial conditions in a natural way at the beginning of the process itself. For solving the differential equations using Laplace transform, we take the Laplace transform of the differential equations (i.e. convert the differential equations in time domain into algebraic equations in frequency domain), insert the initial conditions, solve the resultant algebraic equations (i.e. get the solution in s-domain) and take the inverse Laplace transform of the solution (to get the solution in time domain).

When a complex exponential of any frequency is applied to a system, the output is essentially same as the input except that it is multiplied by a constant. This property of the complex exponential makes the Laplace transform an invaluable tool in the analysis of LTI systems.

The Laplace transform of a time function  $x(t)$  is defined as:

$$L[x(t)] = X(s) = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} x(t) e^{-st} dt$$

where  $s$  is a complex variable and is equal to  $s = \sigma + j\omega$ . Here the operator  $L$  is called the Laplace transform operator which transforms the time domain function  $x(t)$  into frequency domain function  $X(s)$ .

The Laplace transform as defined above with  $-\infty$  as the lower limit for the integral is called the ‘two-sided’ or ‘bilateral’ Laplace transform. If the lower limit is changed to ‘0’, we get the ‘one-sided’ or ‘unilateral’ Laplace transform. Hence the one-sided Laplace transform is defined as

$$\mathcal{L}[x(t)] = X(s) = \int_0^{\infty} x(t) e^{-st} dt$$

Clearly the bilateral and unilateral Laplace transforms are equivalent only if  $x(t) = 0$  for  $t < 0$ , i.e.  $x(t)$  must be a causal signal. The signal  $x(t)$  and its Laplace transform  $X(s)$  are said to form a Laplace transform pair denoted by

$$x(t) \xleftarrow{\text{LT}} X(s)$$

While the two-sided Laplace transform is useful to get a better insight into the systems (with causal and non-causal signals), the one-sided Laplace transform is very useful in practical problems (with causal signals), where the signal is applied to a system at a particular point in time which can be conveniently taken as the time origin, or  $t = 0$ . Thus, the one-sided Laplace transform comes in handy in solving differential equations with given initial conditions. Further its region of convergence (ROC) is simple and unique for all causal functions. Hence, it is the one-sided Laplace transform which is used most often for solving practical problems.

## 9.2 REGION OF CONVERGENCE

For a given value of  $x(t)$ , the Laplace transform as given by the equation,  $X(s) = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} x(t) e^{-st} dt$  may not converge for all values of the complex variable  $s$ . Since every value

of  $s$  corresponds to a particular point in the s-plane (with  $\sigma$  along the x-axis and  $j\omega$  along the y-axis), we say that the set of points in the s-plane for which the integral on the right hand side of equation for  $X(s)$  converges is the region of convergence (ROC) of the Laplace transform of  $x(t)$ . If there is no value of  $s$ , i.e. no point on the s-plane for which the integral converges, we say that  $x(t)$  does not have a ROC and hence does not have a Laplace transform, or that it is not Laplace transformable. Most of the functions which are of some use in engineering practice are Laplace transformable. For an  $x(t)$  to be Laplace transformable, the usual condition is that it should be piece-wise continuous and must be of exponential order.

If the ROC is not specified, the inverse Laplace transform is not unique. Also in the one-sided Laplace transform, all the time functions are assumed to be positive and hence there is a one-to-one correspondence between the Laplace transform and its inverse Laplace transform. Therefore, no ambiguity will arise even if the ROC is not specified in the one-sided Laplace transform. However, in two-sided Laplace transform, the specification of ROC is essential.

The bilateral Laplace transform of a signal  $x(t)$  exists if

$$X(s) = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} x(t) e^{-st} dt \text{ is finite.}$$

Substituting  $s = \sigma + j\omega$  in the above equation, we get

$$\mathcal{L}[x(t)] = X(s) = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} x(t) e^{-(\sigma+j\omega)t} dt = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} [x(t) e^{-\sigma t}] e^{-j\omega t} dt = F[x(t)e^{-\sigma t}]$$

This equation indicates that  $X(s)$  is basically the continuous-time Fourier transform of  $x(t)e^{-\sigma t}$ . So we can say that

*The Laplace transform of  $x(t)$  is the Fourier transform of  $x(t)e^{-\sigma t}$ .*

### 9.3 EXISTENCE OF LAPLACE TRANSFORM

The necessary and sufficient conditions for the existence of the Laplace transform are:

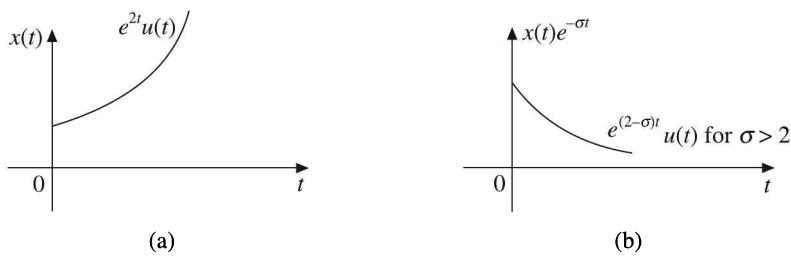
1.  $x(t)$  should be continuous or piece-wise continuous in the given closed interval.
2.  $x(t)e^{-\sigma t}$  must be absolutely integrable.

That is,  $X(s)$  exists only if  $\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} |x(t) e^{-\sigma t}| dt < \infty$

or only if  $\lim_{t \rightarrow \infty} e^{-st} x(t) = 0$

The range of  $\sigma$  for which the Laplace transform converges is known as the *region of convergence* (ROC). So the functions which are not Fourier transformable may be Laplace transformable.

Consider a signal  $x(t) = e^{2t} u(t)$  as shown in Figure 9.1(a). The Fourier transform of  $x(t) \left(= \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} e^{2t} u(t) e^{-j\omega t} dt\right)$  does not exist because it is not absolutely integrable. Now, multiply the signal  $x(t)$  with  $e^{-\sigma t}$ . Then the resultant signal  $x(t)e^{-\sigma t} u(t) = e^{(2-\sigma)t} u(t)$  is absolutely integrable for  $\sigma > 2$ . Therefore, the Laplace transform of  $x(t)$ , which is the Fourier transform of  $x(t)e^{-\sigma t}$  exists for some values of  $\sigma$ . This concept is illustrated in Figure 9.1(b). Thus, we conclude that *the Laplace transform exists for signals for which the Fourier transform does not exist*.



**Figure 9.1** Signals (a)  $x(t) = e^{2t} u(t)$ , and (b)  $x(t) = e^{(2-\sigma)t} u(t)$ .

## 9.4 ADVANTAGES AND LIMITATIONS OF LAPLACE TRANSFORM

### *Advantages*

1. Signals which are not convergent in Fourier transform are convergent in Laplace transform.
2. Convolution in time domain can be obtained by multiplication in s-domain.
3. Integro differential equations of a system can be converted into simple algebraic equations. So LTI systems can be analysed easily using Laplace transforms.

### *Limitations*

1. Frequency response of the system cannot be drawn or estimated. Instead only the pole-zero plot can be drawn.
2.  $s = j\omega$  is used only for sinusoidal steady-state analysis.

## 9.5 RELATION BETWEEN FOURIER TRANSFORM AND LAPLACE TRANSFORM

The Fourier transform of a function  $x(t)$  can be represented by a continuous sum of exponential functions of the form  $e^{j\omega t}$ , i.e. it uses summation of waves of positive and negative frequencies. The Fourier transform technique is applied for solving differential equations that relate the input and output. To solve the differential equation, first the differential equation is converted into algebraic equation and the algebraic equation is manipulated to obtain the Fourier transform of the output  $Y(\omega)$  as a function of the frequency response  $H(\omega)$  and the Fourier transform of the input  $X(\omega)$ . The output is obtained as a function of time by taking the inverse Fourier transform of  $Y(\omega)$ . But this technique is rarely used because Fourier transform does not exist for many signals as  $|x(t)| dt$  is not absolutely integrable. Moreover the Fourier transform cannot be used to analyse unstable systems.

The Laplace transform is an alternative to Fourier transform. In some cases, it can be used where Fourier transform cannot be used. It redefines the transform and includes an exponential convergence factor  $\sigma$  along with  $j\omega$ . In this, the signal  $x(t)$  is represented as a sum of complex exponentials of the form  $e^{st}$  where  $s$  is complex frequency denoted by  $s = \sigma + j\omega$ , i.e. it employs damped waves through the use of an additional factor  $e^{-\sigma t}$  where  $\sigma$  is a positive number. Because of the inclusion of the convergence factor, the function  $x(t) dt$  becomes absolutely integrable and so *Laplace transform exists for many functions for which the Fourier transform does not exist*.

The Fourier transform of a continuous-time signal  $x(t)$  can be represented as

$$X(\omega) = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} x(t) e^{-j\omega t} dt$$

where

$$x(t) = \frac{1}{2\pi} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} X(\omega) e^{j\omega t} d\omega$$

Including the convergence factor by replacing  $\omega$  by  $\sigma + j\omega$ , we have

$$X(\sigma + j\omega) = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} x(t) e^{-(\sigma+j\omega)t} dt$$

and  $x(t)$  can be expressed as:

$$x(t) = \frac{1}{2\pi} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} X(\sigma + j\omega) e^{(\sigma+j\omega)t} d\omega$$

The complex frequency term  $\sigma + j\omega$  is denoted by  $s$ . Then,  $(ds/d\omega) = j$  or  $d\omega = (ds/j)$   
Substituting these values in equation for  $X(s)$ , we get

$$X(s) = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} x(t) e^{-st} dt$$

and

$$x(t) = \frac{1}{2\pi j} \int_{\sigma-j\infty}^{\sigma+j\infty} X(s) e^{st} ds$$

The above equations constitute a complex Fourier transform pair or the bilateral Laplace transform pair. So the Laplace transform is nothing but the complex Fourier transform, i.e. the Laplace transform of  $x(t)$  is the Fourier transform of  $x(t)e^{-\sigma t}$ . If  $x(t)$  is absolutely integrable, then the Fourier transform of  $x(t)$  can be obtained from its Laplace transform using the relation:

$$X(\omega) = X(s)|_{s=j\omega}$$

This means that the Fourier transform is the Laplace transform along the imaginary axis of  $s$ -plane.

Table 9.1 gives the comparison of Laplace and Fourier transforms.

**Table 9.1** Comparison of Laplace and Fourier transforms

S.No.	Fourier transform	Laplace transform
1.	The Fourier transform of a function $x(t)$ can be represented by a continuous sum of exponential functions of the form $e^{j\omega t}$ , i.e. it uses summation of waves of +ve and -ve frequencies.	The Laplace transform of a function $x(t)$ can be represented by a continuous sum of complex exponential damped waves of the form $e^{\sigma t}$ .
2.	The Fourier transform technique is applied for solving differential equations that relate the input and output.	The Laplace transform technique is also applied for solving differential equations that relate the input and output.
3.	It is rarely used for solving differential equations because Fourier transform does not exist for many signals as $ x(t) $ is not absolutely integrable.	It is very widely used for solving differential equations because Laplace transform exists even for signals for which the Fourier transform does not exist.
4.	It does not have any convergence factor.	It has a convergence factor and so is more general.
5.	Fourier transform cannot be used to analyse unstable systems.	Laplace transform can be used to analyse even unstable systems.
6.	Fourier transform is the Laplace transform evaluated along the imaginary axis of the $s$ -plane, i.e. $X(\omega) = X(s) _{s=j\omega}$ .	Laplace transform of $x(t)$ is the Fourier transform of $x(t) e^{-\sigma t}$ , i.e. $L[x(t)] = F[x(t) e^{-\sigma t}]$

## 9.6 ONE-SIDED (UNILATERAL) LAPLACE TRANSFORM OF SOME COMMONLY USED SIGNALS

The unilateral Laplace transform also called single-sided or one-sided Laplace transform is applied to the signals that are causal, i.e. for signals which are zero for time  $t < 0$ , i.e. only for positive time signals.

The unilateral Laplace transform of the signal  $x(t)$  is defined by

$$X(s) = \int_0^{\infty} x(t) e^{-st} dt = \int_0^{\infty} x(t) e^{-(\sigma+j\omega)t} dt = \int_0^{\infty} [x(t) e^{-\sigma t}] e^{-j\omega t} dt$$

Because  $|e^{j\omega t}| = 1$ , the integral converges if  $\int_0^{\infty} |x(t) e^{-\sigma t}| dt < \infty$ .

### 9.6.1 Impulse Function [ $x(t) = \delta(t)$ ]

We know that

$$\delta(t) = \begin{cases} 1 & \text{for } t = 0 \\ 0 & \text{for } t \neq 0 \end{cases}$$

$$\therefore L[\delta(t)] = X(s) = \int_0^{\infty} \delta(t) e^{-st} dt = e^{-st} \Big|_{t=0} = 1 \quad (\text{for any } s)$$

i.e. the ROC is the entire s-plane. The ROC is shown in Figure 9.2.

$\delta(t) \xrightarrow{\text{LT}} 1; \text{ for all } s$

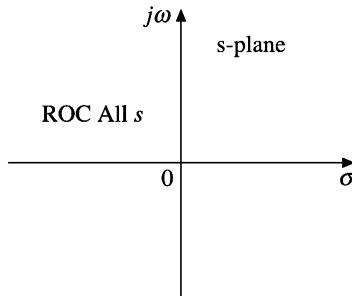


Figure 9.2 ROC of  $\delta(t)$ .

### 9.6.2 Step Function [ $x(t) = u(t)$ ]

We know that

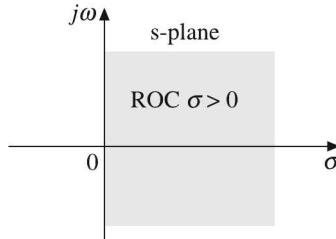
$$u(t) = \begin{cases} 1 & \text{for } t \geq 0 \\ 0 & \text{for } t < 0 \end{cases}$$

$$\begin{aligned}\therefore \quad \mathcal{L}[u(t)] &= \mathcal{L}[x(t)] = X(s) = \int_0^{\infty} u(t) e^{-st} dt \\ &= \int_0^{\infty} 1 e^{-st} dt = \left[ \frac{e^{-st}}{-s} \right]_0^{\infty} \\ &= -\frac{1}{s} [e^{-\infty} - e^0] = \frac{1}{s}\end{aligned}$$

This integral converges when  $\operatorname{Re}(s) > 0$ .

$$\therefore \quad \mathcal{L}[u(t)] = \frac{1}{s}$$

The ROC is  $\operatorname{Re}(s) > 0$ , i.e. the entire right half of the s-plane as shown in Figure 9.3.



**Figure 9.3** ROC of  $\mathcal{L}[u(t)]$ .

Since the one-sided Laplace transform does not take into account the values of  $x(t)$  for  $t < 0$ , the one-sided Laplace transform of  $x(t) = 1$  and  $x(t) = u(t)$  will be the same.

The Laplace transform of  $x(t) = k$  is  $(k/s)$  if  $k$  is a constant.

$u(t) \xrightarrow{\text{LT}} \frac{1}{s}; \text{ ROC; } \operatorname{Re}(s) > 0$
--

### 9.6.3 Ramp Function [ $x(t) = t u(t)$ ]

$$\begin{aligned}\therefore \quad \mathcal{L}[t u(t)] &= X(s) = \int_0^{\infty} t u(t) e^{-st} dt = \int_0^{\infty} t e^{-st} dt \\ &= \left[ t \frac{e^{-st}}{-s} \right]_0^{\infty} - \int_0^{\infty} \frac{e^{-st}}{-s} 1 dt = 0 - \left[ \frac{e^{-st}}{s^2} \right]_0^{\infty} \\ &= 0 - \left( 0 - \frac{1}{s^2} \right) = \frac{1}{s^2}\end{aligned}$$

The above integral converges if  $\operatorname{Re}(s) > 0$ , i.e. the ROC is  $\operatorname{Re}(s) > 0$  as shown in Figure 9.3.

$$tu(t) \xrightarrow{\text{LT}} \frac{1}{s^2}; \text{ ROC; } \operatorname{Re}(s) > 0$$

#### 9.6.4 Parabolic Function [ $x(t) = t^2 u(t)$ ]

$$\begin{aligned} \therefore \quad \mathcal{L}[t^2 u(t)] &= \int_0^\infty t^2 u(t) e^{-st} dt = \int_0^\infty t^2 e^{-st} dt \\ &= \left[ t^2 \frac{e^{-st}}{-s} \right]_0^\infty - \int_0^\infty \frac{e^{-st}}{-s} (2t) dt = 0 + \frac{2}{s} \int_0^\infty t e^{-st} dt \\ &= \frac{2}{s} \left\{ \left[ t \frac{e^{-st}}{-s} \right]_0^\infty - \int_0^\infty \frac{e^{-st}}{-s} dt \right\} \\ &= \frac{2}{s} \left( 0 + \frac{1}{s} \int_0^\infty e^{-st} dt \right) = \frac{2}{s^2} \left[ \frac{e^{-st}}{-s} \right]_0^\infty = \frac{2}{s^3} \end{aligned}$$

The above integral converges if  $\operatorname{Re}(s) > 0$ , i.e. the ROC is  $\operatorname{Re}(s) > 0$  as shown in Figure 9.3.

$$t^2 u(t) \xrightarrow{\text{LT}} \frac{2}{s^3}; \text{ ROC; } \operatorname{Re}(s) > 0$$

#### 9.6.5 Real Exponential Function [ $x(t) = e^{at} u(t)$ ]

$$\begin{aligned} \therefore \quad X(s) = \mathcal{L}[e^{at} u(t)] &= \int_0^\infty e^{at} u(t) e^{-st} dt = \int_0^\infty e^{-(s-a)t} dt \\ &= \left[ \frac{e^{-(s-a)t}}{-(s-a)} \right]_0^\infty = -\frac{[0-1]}{(s-a)} = \frac{1}{s-a} \end{aligned}$$

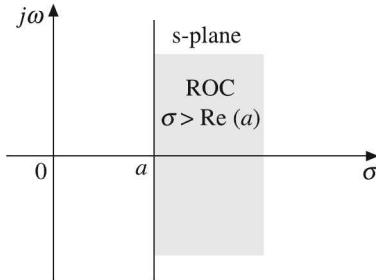
The above integral converges for  $\operatorname{Re}(s-a) > 0$ , i.e. for  $\operatorname{Re}(s) > a$ .

$\therefore$  ROC is  $\operatorname{Re}(s) > a$ . The ROC is shown in Figure 9.4.

$$e^{at} u(t) \xrightarrow{\text{LT}} \frac{1}{s-a}; \text{ ROC; } \operatorname{Re}(s) > a$$

In a similar way, we can show that

$$e^{-at} u(t) \xrightarrow{\text{LT}} \frac{1}{s+a}; \text{ ROC; } \operatorname{Re}(s) > -a$$

Figure 9.4 ROC of  $e^{at}$ .

### 9.6.6 Complex Exponential Function [ $x(t) = e^{j\omega t} u(t)$ ]

$$\begin{aligned}\therefore X(s) = \mathcal{L}[e^{j\omega t} u(t)] &= \int_0^{\infty} e^{j\omega t} u(t) e^{-st} dt \\ &= \int_0^{\infty} e^{j\omega t} e^{-st} dt = \int_0^{\infty} e^{-(s-j\omega)t} dt \\ &= \left[ \frac{e^{-(s-j\omega)t}}{-(s-j\omega)} \right]_0^{\infty} = \frac{0-1}{-(s-j\omega)} = \frac{1}{s-j\omega}\end{aligned}$$

The ROC is  $\text{Re}(s) > 0$  as shown in Figure 9.3.

$$\boxed{e^{j\omega t} u(t) \xrightarrow{\text{LT}} \frac{1}{s-j\omega}; \text{ ROC; } \text{Re}(s) > 0}$$

In a similar way, we can show that

$$\boxed{e^{-j\omega t} u(t) \xrightarrow{\text{LT}} \frac{1}{s+j\omega}; \text{ ROC; } \text{Re}(s) > 0}$$

### 9.6.7 Sine and Cosine Functions [ $x(t) = \cos \omega t u(t), \sin \omega t u(t)$ ]

$$\begin{aligned}\therefore X(s) = \mathcal{L}[\cos \omega t u(t)] &= \mathcal{L}\left[\frac{e^{j\omega t} + e^{-j\omega t}}{2} u(t)\right] \\ &= \frac{1}{2} \mathcal{L}[e^{j\omega t} u(t)] + \frac{1}{2} \mathcal{L}[e^{-j\omega t} u(t)] \\ &= \frac{1}{2} \left( \frac{1}{s-j\omega} \right) + \frac{1}{2} \left( \frac{1}{s+j\omega} \right) = \frac{1}{2} \left[ \frac{s+j\omega + s-j\omega}{(s-j\omega)(s+j\omega)} \right] \\ &= \frac{s}{s^2 + \omega^2} \quad (\text{for } \text{Re}(s) > 0)\end{aligned}$$

$$\boxed{\cos \omega t u(t) \xrightarrow{\text{LT}} \frac{s}{s^2 + \omega^2}; \text{ ROC; Re}(s) > 0}$$

In a similar way, we can show that

$$\boxed{\sin \omega t u(t) \xrightarrow{\text{LT}} \frac{\omega}{s^2 + \omega^2}; \text{ ROC; Re}(s) > 0}$$

### 9.6.8 Hyperbolic sine and cosine Functions [ $x(t) = \sinh \omega t u(t), \cosh \omega t u(t)$ ]

$$\begin{aligned} \therefore L[x(t)] &= X(s) = L[\sinh \omega t u(t)] \\ &= L\left[\frac{e^{\omega t} - e^{-\omega t}}{2} u(t)\right] = \frac{1}{2} \{L[e^{\omega t} u(t)] - L[e^{-\omega t} u(t)]\} \\ &= \frac{1}{2} \left( \frac{1}{s - \omega} - \frac{1}{s + \omega} \right) \\ &= \frac{1}{2} \left[ \frac{(s + \omega) - (s - \omega)}{s^2 - \omega^2} \right] = \frac{\omega}{s^2 - \omega^2} \end{aligned}$$

$$\boxed{\sinh \omega t u(t) \xrightarrow{\text{LT}} \frac{\omega}{s^2 - \omega^2}; \text{ ROC; Re}(s) > 0}$$

In a similar way, we can show that

$$\boxed{\cosh \omega t u(t) \xrightarrow{\text{LT}} \frac{s}{s^2 - \omega^2}; \text{ ROC; Re}(s) > 0}$$

### 9.6.9 Damped sine and cosine Functions [ $x(t) = e^{-at} \sin \omega t u(t)$ ]

$$\begin{aligned} \therefore L[x(t)] &= X(s) = L\left\{e^{-at} \left[ \frac{(e^{j\omega t} - e^{-j\omega t})}{2j}\right] u(t)\right\} \\ &= \frac{1}{2j} L[(e^{-(a-j\omega)t} - e^{-(a+j\omega)t}) u(t)] \\ &= \frac{1}{2j} \{L[e^{-(a-j\omega)t} u(t)] - L[e^{-(a+j\omega)t} u(t)]\} \\ &= \frac{1}{2j} \left[ \frac{1}{s + (a - j\omega)} - \frac{1}{s + (a + j\omega)} \right] \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
 &= \frac{1}{2j} \left[ \frac{1}{(s+a)-j\omega} - \frac{1}{(s+a)+j\omega} \right] \\
 &= \frac{1}{2j} \left[ \frac{2j\omega}{(s+a)^2 + \omega^2} \right] = \frac{\omega}{(s+a)^2 + \omega^2}
 \end{aligned}$$

$$e^{-at} \sin \omega t u(t) \xrightarrow{\text{LT}} \frac{\omega}{(s+a)^2 + \omega^2}; \text{ ROC; } \text{Re}(s) > -a$$

In a similar way, we can show that

$$e^{-at} \cos \omega t u(t) \xrightarrow{\text{LT}} \frac{s+a}{(s+a)^2 + \omega^2}; \text{ ROC; } \text{Re}(s) > -a$$

### 9.6.10 Damped Hyperbolic sine and cosine Functions [ $x(t) = e^{-at} \sinh \omega t u(t)$ ]

$$\begin{aligned}
 \therefore L[x(t)] &= X(s) = L[e^{-at} \sinh \omega t u(t)] \\
 &= L \left\{ \left[ e^{-at} \left( \frac{e^{\omega t} - e^{-\omega t}}{2} \right) \right] u(t) \right\} \\
 &= \frac{1}{2} [L(e^{-at} e^{\omega t} - e^{-at} e^{-\omega t}) u(t)] \\
 &= \frac{1}{2} \{L[e^{-(a-\omega)t} u(t)] - L[e^{-(a+\omega)t} u(t)]\} \\
 &= \frac{1}{2} \left( \frac{1}{s+a-\omega} - \frac{1}{s+a+\omega} \right) \\
 &= \frac{\omega}{(s+a)^2 - \omega^2}
 \end{aligned}$$

$$e^{-at} \sinh \omega t u(t) \xrightarrow{\text{LT}} \frac{\omega}{(s+a)^2 - \omega^2}; \text{ ROC; } \text{Re}(s) > -a$$

Similarly, we can show that

$$e^{-at} \cosh \omega t u(t) \xrightarrow{\text{LT}} \frac{s+a}{(s+a)^2 - \omega^2}; \text{ ROC; } \text{Re}(s) > -a$$

**EXAMPLE 9.1** Distinguish between unilateral and bilateral Laplace transforms.

**Solution:** The Laplace transform defined with  $-\infty$  as the lower limit for the integral  $\left( \text{i.e. } \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} x(t) e^{-st} dt \right)$  is called the bilateral or two-sided Laplace transform and the Laplace transform defined with 0 as the lower limit for the integral  $\left( \text{i.e. } \int_0^{\infty} x(t) e^{-st} dt \right)$  is called the unilateral or one-sided Laplace transform.

While the two-sided Laplace transform is useful to get a better insight into the systems (with causal and non-causal signals), the one-sided Laplace transform is very useful in practical problems (with causal signals) where the signal is applied to a system at a particular point in time which can be conveniently taken as the time origin or  $t = 0$ . In the case of unilateral Laplace transform, the ROC is unique and there is a one-to-one correspondence between Laplace transform and inverse Laplace transform, but in the case of bilateral Laplace transform, the ROC is not unique and there is no one-to-one correspondence between the Laplace transform and inverse Laplace transform and the time function obtained from the bilateral inverse Laplace transform depends on the ROC. The ROC of unilateral Laplace transform is always  $\text{Re}(s) > a$  where  $a$  is some constant. The ROC of bilateral Laplace transform may be  $\text{Re}(s) > a$  or  $\text{Re}(s) < a$  or  $a < \text{Re}(s) < b$  where  $a$  and  $b$  are some constants.

**EXAMPLE 9.2** Prove that the signals

$$(a) \quad x(t) = e^{-at} u(t) \quad \text{and} \quad (b) \quad x(t) = -e^{-at} u(-t)$$

have the same  $X(s)$  and differ only in ROC. Also plot their ROCs.

**Solution:**

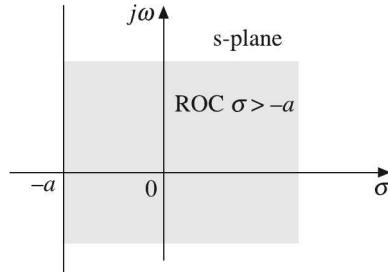
(a) Given

$$x(t) = e^{-at} u(t)$$

$$\begin{aligned} L[x(t)] &= X(s) = L[e^{-at} u(t)] \\ &= \int_0^{\infty} e^{-at} u(t) e^{-st} dt = \int_0^{\infty} e^{-at} e^{-st} dt \\ \therefore &= \int_0^{\infty} e^{-(s+a)t} dt = \left[ \frac{e^{-(s+a)t}}{-(s+a)} \right]_0^{\infty} \\ &= \frac{(0-1)}{-(s+a)} = \frac{1}{s+a} \end{aligned}$$

This integral converges if  $\text{Re}(s + a) > 0$ , i.e.  $\text{Re}(s), \sigma > -a$ . So the ROC is  $\sigma > -a$  as shown in Figure 9.5.

$$\therefore L[e^{-at} u(t)] = \frac{1}{s+a}; \text{ ROC; } \sigma > -a$$

Figure 9.5 ROC of  $e^{-at} u(t)$ .

(b) Given

$$x(t) = -e^{-at} u(-t)$$

We know that

$$u(-t) = \begin{cases} 1 & \text{for } t \leq 0 \\ 0 & \text{for } t > 0 \end{cases}$$

$$\begin{aligned} \therefore L[x(t)] = X(s) &= L[-e^{-at} u(-t)] = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} -e^{-at} u(-t) e^{-st} dt \\ &= \int_{-\infty}^0 -e^{-at} 1 e^{-st} dt = \int_{-\infty}^0 -e^{-(s+a)t} dt \\ &= \int_0^{\infty} -e^{(s+a)t} dt \end{aligned}$$

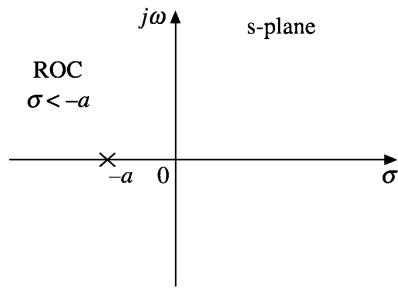
The above integral converges if  $\operatorname{Re}(s + a) < 0$ , i.e.  $\operatorname{Re}(s) < -a$ . So the ROC is  $\operatorname{Re}(s) < -a$  as shown in Figure 9.6.

$$\therefore X(s) = - \left[ \frac{e^{(s+a)t}}{s+a} \right]_{t=0}^{t=\infty} = - \frac{(0-1)}{s+a} = \frac{1}{s+a}$$

$$\boxed{\therefore L[-e^{-at} u(-t)] = \frac{1}{s+a}; \text{ ROC: } \operatorname{Re}(s), \sigma < -a}$$

From this example, we can observe that the Laplace transforms of the signals  $e^{-at} u(t)$  and  $-e^{-at} u(-t)$  are *identical* but their ROCs are *different*. The ROC of  $e^{-at} u(t)$  is  $\sigma > -a$  and that of  $-e^{-at} u(-t)$  is  $\sigma < -a$ . The ROCs of these signals are shown in Figures 9.5 and 9.6. Here the complex frequency  $s$  is represented graphically.

The shaded region in Figure 9.5 represents the set of points in the  $s$ -plane for which the Laplace transform of  $e^{-at} u(t)$  converges. So it indicates the ROC of  $e^{-at} u(t)$ . The shaded region in Figure 9.6 represents the set of points in the  $s$ -plane for which the Laplace transform of  $-e^{-at} u(-t)$  converges. So it indicates the ROC of  $-e^{-at} u(-t)$ . The signal  $e^{-at} u(t)$  is a causal signal and the signal  $-e^{-at} u(-t)$  is a non-causal signal.

Figure 9.6 ROC of  $-e^{-at} u(-t)$ .

In general, the ROC of a causal signal is  $\text{Re}(s) > a$  and the ROC of a non-causal signal is  $\text{Re}(s) < a$  where  $a$  is some constant.

**EXAMPLE 9.3** Find the Laplace transform of the signals:

- (a)  $x(t) = u(-t)$ , (b)  $x(t) = e^{-t} u(t) + e^{-4t} u(t)$  and find their ROCs.

**Solution:**

$$(a) \text{ Given } x(t) = u(-t)$$

$$\therefore L[x(t)] = X(s) = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} u(-t) e^{-st} dt = \int_{-\infty}^{0} (1) e^{-st} dt$$

The above integral converges if  $\text{Re}(s) < 0$ , i.e. for  $s = -ve$

$$\therefore X(s) = \left[ \frac{e^{-st}}{-s} \right]_{-\infty}^{0} = \frac{e^0 - e^{-s(-\infty)}}{-s} = -\frac{1}{s}; \text{ ROC; } \text{Re}(s) < 0$$

$$(b) \text{ Given } x(t) = e^{-t} u(t) + e^{-4t} u(t)$$

$$\begin{aligned} \therefore L[x(t)] &= X(s) = L[e^{-t} u(t) + e^{-4t} u(t)] \\ &= \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} [e^{-t} u(t) + e^{-4t} u(t)] e^{-st} dt \\ &= \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} e^{-t} u(t) e^{-st} dt + \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} e^{-4t} u(t) e^{-st} dt \\ &= \underbrace{\int_0^{\infty} e^{-(s+1)t} dt}_{\substack{\text{Converges if} \\ \text{Re}(s) > -1}} + \underbrace{\int_0^{\infty} e^{-(s+4)t} dt}_{\substack{\text{Converges if} \\ \text{Re}(s) > -4}} \\ &\quad \underbrace{\text{Converges if } \text{Re}(s) > -1}_{\text{Converges if } \text{Re}(s) > -1} \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
\therefore X(s) &= \left[ \frac{e^{-(s+1)t}}{-(s+1)} \right]_{t=0}^{t=\infty} + \left[ \frac{e^{-(s+4)t}}{-(s+4)} \right]_{t=0}^{t=\infty} = \frac{(0-1)}{-(s+1)} + \frac{(0-1)}{-(s+4)} \\
&= \frac{1}{s+1} + \frac{1}{s+4} = \frac{(s+4)+(s+1)}{(s+1)(s+4)} \\
&= \frac{2s+5}{s^2+5s+4}; \text{ ROC; } \operatorname{Re}(s) > -1
\end{aligned}$$

The ROC is shown in Figure 9.7. This example shows that the ROC of the sum of two signals is equal to the intersection of the ROCs of the two signals.

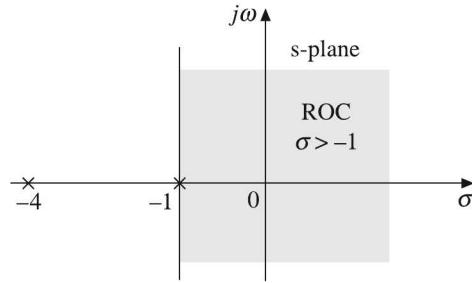


Figure 9.7 ROC of  $x(t) = e^{-t} u(t) + e^{-4t} u(t)$ .

**EXAMPLE 9.4** Find the Laplace transform of the signal

$$x(t) = e^{-2t} u(t) + e^{3t} u(t)$$

Also find the ROC.

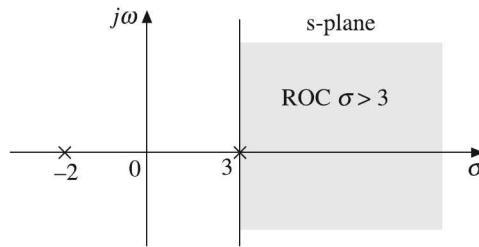
**Solution:** Given

$$x(t) = e^{-2t} u(t) + e^{3t} u(t)$$

$$\begin{aligned}
\therefore L[x(t)] = X(s) &= \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} [e^{-2t} u(t) + e^{3t} u(t)] e^{-st} dt \\
&= \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} e^{-2t} u(t) e^{-st} dt + \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} e^{3t} u(t) e^{-st} dt \\
&= \underbrace{\int_0^{\infty} e^{-(s+2)t} dt}_{\text{Converges if } \operatorname{Re}(s) > -2} + \underbrace{\int_0^{\infty} e^{-(s-3)t} dt}_{\text{Converges if } \operatorname{Re}(s) > 3} \\
&\quad \underbrace{\qquad\qquad\qquad}_{\text{Converges if } \operatorname{Re}(s) > 3}
\end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
 \therefore X(s) &= \left[ \frac{e^{-(s+2)t}}{-(s+2)} \right]_{t=0}^{t=\infty} + \left[ \frac{e^{-(s-3)t}}{-(s-3)} \right]_{t=0}^{t=\infty} \\
 &= \frac{(0-1)}{-(s+2)} + \frac{(0-1)}{-(s-3)} \\
 &= \frac{1}{s+2} + \frac{1}{s-3} = \frac{s-3+s+2}{(s+2)(s-3)} = \frac{2s-1}{s^2-s-6}
 \end{aligned}$$

ROC;  $\text{Re}(s) > 3$  as shown in Figure 9.8.



**Figure 9.8** ROC of  $x(t) = e^{-2t} u(t) + e^{3t} u(t)$ .

**EXAMPLE 9.5** Find the Laplace transform of the signal

$$x(t) = e^{-at} u(t) - e^{-bt} u(-t)$$

and also find its ROC.

**Solution:** Given

$$x(t) = e^{-at} u(t) - e^{-bt} u(-t)$$

$$\begin{aligned}
 \therefore L[x(t)] = X(s) &= \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} [e^{-at} u(t) - e^{-bt} u(-t)] e^{-st} dt \\
 &= \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} e^{-at} u(t) e^{-st} dt + \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} -e^{-bt} u(-t) e^{-st} dt \\
 &= \int_0^{\infty} e^{-at} e^{-st} dt + \int_{-\infty}^0 -e^{-bt} e^{-st} dt \\
 &= \underbrace{\int_0^{\infty} e^{-(s+a)t} dt}_{\text{Converges if } \text{Re}(s) > -a} + \underbrace{\int_0^{\infty} -e^{(s+b)t} dt}_{\text{Converges if } \text{Re}(s) < -b} \\
 &\quad \underbrace{\text{Converges if } -a < \text{Re}(s) < -b}_{\text{Converges if } -a < \text{Re}(s) < -b}
 \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
\therefore X(s) &= \left[ \frac{e^{-(s+a)t}}{-(s+a)} \right]_{t=0}^{t=\infty} + \left[ \frac{e^{(s+b)t}}{-(s+b)} \right]_{t=0}^{t=\infty} \\
&= \frac{(0-1)}{-(s+a)} + \frac{(0-1)}{-(s+b)} \\
&= \frac{1}{s+a} + \frac{1}{s+b}; \quad \text{ROC; } -a < \text{Re}(s) < -b \\
&= \frac{s+b+s+a}{(s+a)(s+b)} = \frac{2s+(a+b)}{(s+a)(s+b)}; \quad \text{ROC; } -a < \text{Re}(s) < -b
\end{aligned}$$

as shown in Figure 9.9.

**Note:** The ROC and the Laplace transform exist only if  $-a < -b$ . The ROC and the Laplace transform do not exist if  $-a > -b$ .

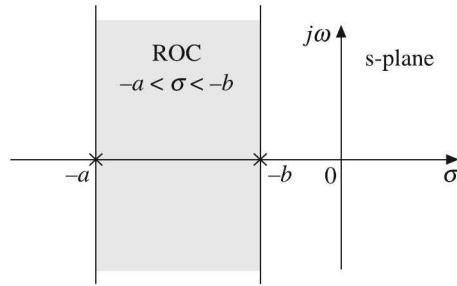


Figure 9.9 ROC of  $e^{-at} u(t) - e^{-bt} u(-t)$ .

**EXAMPLE 9.6** Find the Laplace transform of the signal  $x(t) = e^{-2t} u(-t) + e^{-3t} u(-t)$  and find its ROC.

**Solution:** Given

$$x(t) = e^{-2t} u(-t) + e^{-3t} u(-t)$$

$$\begin{aligned}
\therefore L[x(t)] = X(s) &= \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} [e^{-2t} u(-t) + e^{-3t} u(-t)] e^{-st} dt \\
&= \int_{-\infty}^0 e^{-2t} u(-t) e^{-st} dt + \int_{-\infty}^0 e^{-3t} u(-t) e^{-st} dt \\
&= \underbrace{\int_{-\infty}^0 e^{-(s+2)t} dt}_{\text{Converges if } \text{Re}(s) < -2} + \underbrace{\int_{-\infty}^0 e^{-(s+3)t} dt}_{\text{Converges if } \text{Re}(s) < -3} \\
&= \underbrace{\int_0^{\infty} e^{(s+2)t} dt}_{\text{Converges if } \text{Re}(s) < -2} + \underbrace{\int_0^{\infty} e^{(s+3)t} dt}_{\text{Converges if } \text{Re}(s) < -3}
\end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}\therefore X(s) &= \left[ \frac{e^{(s+2)t}}{s+2} \right]_{t=0}^{t=\infty} + \left[ \frac{e^{(s+3)t}}{(s+3)} \right]_{t=0}^{t=\infty} \\ &= \frac{0-1}{s+2} + \frac{0-1}{s+3} = -\frac{1}{s+2} - \frac{1}{s+3} \\ &= -\frac{(s+3)+(s+2)}{(s+2)(s+3)} = -\frac{(2s+5)}{s^2+5s+6}; \text{ ROC; } \text{Re}(s) < -3\end{aligned}$$

as shown in Figure 9.10

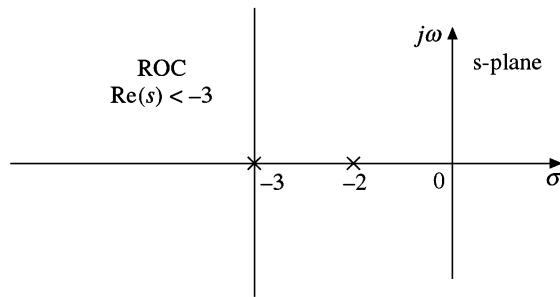


Figure 9.10 ROC of  $x(t) = e^{-2t} u(-t) + e^{-3t} u(-t)$ .

**EXAMPLE 9.7** Find the Laplace transform of the signal  $x(t) = e^{2t} u(t) + e^{-2t} u(-t)$  and find its ROC.

**Solution:** Given

$$x(t) = e^{2t} u(t) + e^{-2t} u(-t)$$

$$\begin{aligned}\therefore L[x(t)] = X(s) &= \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} [e^{2t} u(t) + e^{-2t} u(-t)] e^{-st} dt \\ &= \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} e^{2t} u(t) e^{-st} dt + \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} e^{-2t} u(-t) e^{-st} dt \\ &= \int_0^{\infty} e^{2t} e^{-st} dt + \int_{-\infty}^0 e^{-2t} e^{-st} dt \\ &= \underbrace{\int_0^{\infty} e^{-(s-2)t} dt}_{\substack{\text{Converges if} \\ \text{Re}(s) > 2}} + \underbrace{\int_{-\infty}^0 e^{-(s+2)t} dt}_{\substack{\text{Converges if} \\ \text{Re}(s) < -2}} \\ &\text{does not converge for any real value of } s\end{aligned}$$

So there is no ROC and hence the Laplace transform of the given signal does not exist.

**EXAMPLE 9.8** Find the Laplace transform of the signal  $x(t) = e^{-a|t|}$  and find its ROC.

**Solution:** Given

$$x(t) = e^{-a|t|}$$

∴

$$\begin{aligned} \mathcal{L}[x(t)] &= X(s) = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} e^{-a|t|} e^{-st} dt \\ &= \int_{-\infty}^0 e^{-a(-t)} e^{-st} dt + \int_0^{\infty} e^{-a(t)} e^{-st} dt \\ &= \int_{-\infty}^0 e^{at} e^{-st} dt + \int_0^{\infty} e^{-at} e^{-st} dt \\ &= \int_{-\infty}^0 e^{-(s-a)t} dt + \int_0^{\infty} e^{-(s+a)t} dt \\ &= \underbrace{\int_0^{\infty} e^{(s-a)t} dt}_{\text{Converges if } \operatorname{Re}(s) < a} + \underbrace{\int_0^{\infty} e^{-(s+a)t} dt}_{\text{Converges if } \operatorname{Re}(s) > -a} \\ &\quad \underbrace{\text{Converges if } -a < \operatorname{Re}(s) < a} \end{aligned}$$

∴

$$\begin{aligned} X(s) &= \left[ \frac{e^{(s-a)t}}{s-a} \right]_{t=0}^{t=\infty} + \left[ \frac{e^{-(s+a)t}}{-(s+a)} \right]_{t=0}^{t=\infty} \\ &= \frac{0-1}{s-a} + \frac{(0-1)}{-(s+a)} \\ &= -\frac{1}{s-a} + \frac{1}{s+a} \\ &= \frac{-s-a+s-a}{(s-a)(s+a)} = -\frac{2a}{s^2-a^2}; \text{ ROC; } -a < \operatorname{Re}(s) < a \end{aligned}$$

as shown in Figure 9.11.

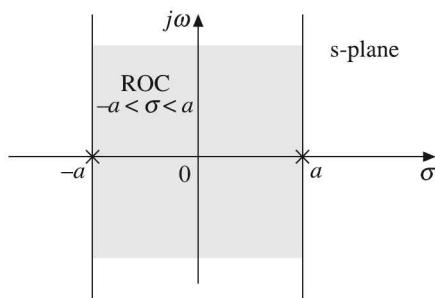


Figure 9.11 ROC of  $x(t) = e^{-a|t|}$ .

**EXAMPLE 9.9** Find the Laplace transform and region of convergence for the following signals:

$$(a) \quad x(t) = e^{-5t} u(t - 1)$$

$$(b) \quad x(t) = e^t \sin 2t \quad \text{for } t \leq 0$$

$$(c) \quad x(t) = e^{2t} u(-t) + e^{3t} u(-t)$$

$$(d) \quad x(t) = te^{-2|t|}$$

**Solution:**

$$(a) \quad \text{Given} \quad x(t) = e^{-5t} u(t - 1)$$

$$\therefore L[x(t)] = X(s) = L[e^{-5t} u(t - 1)]$$

$$= \int_0^\infty e^{-5t} u(t - 1) e^{-st} dt$$

$$= \int_1^\infty e^{-(s+5)t} dt = \left[ \frac{e^{-(s+5)t}}{-(s+5)} \right]_1^\infty$$

$$= \frac{e^{-(s+5)}}{s+5}$$

The above integral converges if  $\operatorname{Re}(s) > -5$ . Therefore, ROC is  $\operatorname{Re}(s) > -5$ .

$$(b) \quad \text{Given} \quad x(t) = e^t \sin 2t \quad \text{for } t \leq 0$$

$$\therefore x(t) = e^t \sin 2t u(-t)$$

$$\therefore L[x(t)] = X(s) = \int_{-\infty}^0 e^t \sin 2t u(-t) e^{-st} dt$$

$$= \int_{-\infty}^0 e^t \sin 2t e^{-st} dt$$

$$= \int_{-\infty}^0 e^t \left( \frac{e^{j2t} - e^{-j2t}}{2j} \right) e^{-st} dt$$

$$= \frac{1}{2j} \int_{-\infty}^0 [e^{(1-s+j2)t} - e^{(1-s-j2)t}] dt$$

The above integral converges if  $\operatorname{Re}(s) < -1$ . Therefore, ROC is  $\operatorname{Re}(s) < -1$ .

$$\therefore X(s) = \frac{1}{2j} \left[ \frac{e^{(1-s+j2)t}}{1-s+j2} - \frac{e^{(1-s-j2)t}}{1-s-j2} \right]_{-\infty}^0 = \frac{1}{2j} \left( \frac{1}{1-s+j2} - \frac{1}{1-s-j2} \right)$$

$$= \frac{1}{2j} \left[ \frac{(1-s-j2)-(1-s+j2)}{(1-s)^2 + 4} \right] = -\frac{2}{(1-s)^2 + 2^2} = -\frac{2}{(s-1)^2 + 2^2};$$

(c) Given

$$x(t) = e^{2t} u(-t) + e^{3t} u(-t)$$

Taking Laplace transform on both sides, we have

$$\begin{aligned} \mathcal{L}[x(t)] = X(s) &= \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} [e^{2t} u(-t) + e^{3t} u(-t)] e^{-st} dt \\ &= \int_{-\infty}^0 [e^{2t} + e^{3t}] e^{-st} dt \\ &= \int_{-\infty}^0 e^{-(s-2)t} dt + \int_{-\infty}^0 e^{-(s-3)t} dt \end{aligned}$$

The first integral converges for  $\operatorname{Re}(s) < 2$ , and the second integral converges if  $\operatorname{Re}(s) < 3$ .

Therefore, ROC is  $\operatorname{Re}(s) < 2$ .

$$\begin{aligned} \therefore X(s) &= \left[ \frac{e^{-(s-2)t}}{-(s-2)} \right]_{-\infty}^0 + \left[ \frac{e^{-(s-3)t}}{-(s-3)} \right]_{-\infty}^0 \\ &= -\frac{1}{s-2} - \frac{1}{s-3}; \text{ ROC; } \operatorname{Re}(s) < 2 \end{aligned}$$

(d) Given

$$x(t) = t e^{-2|t|}$$

Taking Laplace transform on both sides, we have

$$\begin{aligned} \mathcal{L}[x(t)] = X(s) &= \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} t e^{-2|t|} e^{-st} dt = \int_{-\infty}^0 t e^{2t} e^{-st} dt + \int_0^{\infty} t e^{-2t} e^{-st} dt \\ &= \int_{-\infty}^0 t e^{-(s-2)t} dt + \int_0^{\infty} t e^{-(s+2)t} dt \end{aligned}$$

The first integral converges if  $\operatorname{Re}(s) < 2$ , and the second integral converges if  $\operatorname{Re}(s) > -2$ .

Therefore, ROC is  $-2 < \operatorname{Re}(s) < 2$ .

$$\begin{aligned} \therefore X(s) &= \left\{ \left[ t \frac{e^{-(s-2)t}}{-(s-2)} \right]_{-\infty}^0 - \int_{-\infty}^0 \frac{e^{-(s-2)t}}{-(s-2)} 1 dt \right\} + \left\{ \left[ t \frac{e^{-(s+2)t}}{-(s+2)} \right]_0^{\infty} - \int_0^{\infty} \frac{e^{-(s+2)t}}{-(s+2)} dt \right\} \\ &= \left\{ 0 - \left[ \frac{e^{-(s-2)t}}{(s-2)^2} \right]_{-\infty}^0 \right\} + \left\{ 0 - \left[ \frac{e^{-(s+2)t}}{(s+2)^2} \right]_0^{\infty} \right\} \\ &= -\frac{1}{(s-2)^2} + \frac{1}{(s+2)^2}; \text{ ROC; } -2 < \operatorname{Re}(s) < 2 \end{aligned}$$

**EXAMPLE 9.10** Find the Laplace transform of

- |                                    |                                    |
|------------------------------------|------------------------------------|
| (a) $\sin^2 3t u(t)$               | (b) $\cos^2 2t u(t)$               |
| (c) $\cos^3 2t u(t)$               | (d) $[1 + \sin 2t \cos 2t] u(t)$   |
| (e) $\cos(\omega t + \theta) u(t)$ | (f) $\sin(\omega t + \theta) u(t)$ |

**Solution:**

(a) Given

$$x(t) = \sin^2 3t u(t) = \left( \frac{1 - \cos 6t}{2} \right) u(t)$$

∴

$$\begin{aligned} L[\sin^2 3t u(t)] &= L\left[\frac{(1 - \cos 6t)}{2}\right] u(t) \\ &= \frac{1}{2} \{L[u(t)] - L[\cos 6t u(t)]\} \\ &= \frac{1}{2} \left( \frac{1}{s} - \frac{s}{s^2 + 6^2} \right) = \frac{18}{s(s^2 + 36)} \end{aligned}$$

(b) Given

$$x(t) = \cos^2 2t u(t) = \left( \frac{1 + \cos 4t}{2} \right) u(t)$$

∴

$$\begin{aligned} L[x(t)] = X(s) &= L\left[\frac{(1 + \cos 4t)}{2} u(t)\right] \\ &= \frac{1}{2} \{L[u(t)] + L[\cos 4t u(t)]\} \\ &= \frac{1}{2} \left[ \frac{1}{s} + \frac{s}{s^2 + (4)^2} \right] \\ &= \frac{1}{2} \left[ \frac{2s^2 + 16}{s(s^2 + 16)} \right] \end{aligned}$$

(c) Given

$$x(t) = \cos^3 2t u(t) = \frac{[\cos 6t + 3 \cos 2t]}{4} u(t)$$

∴

$$\begin{aligned} X(s) = L[x(t)] &= L\left[\left(\frac{\cos 6t + 3 \cos 2t}{4}\right) u(t)\right] \\ &= \frac{1}{4} \{L[\cos 6t u(t)] + 3L[\cos 2t u(t)]\} \\ &= \frac{1}{4} \left( \frac{s}{s^2 + (6)^2} + 3 \frac{s}{s^2 + (2)^2} \right) \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
 &= \frac{1}{4} \left\{ \frac{4s^3 + 112s}{[s^2 + (6)^2](s^2 + (2)^2)} \right\} \\
 &= \frac{s(s^2 + 28)}{(s^2 + 36)(s^2 + 4)}
 \end{aligned}$$

(d) Given  $x(t) = [1 + \sin 2t \cos 2t] u(t) = \left(1 + \frac{1}{2} \sin 4t\right) u(t)$

$$\begin{aligned}
 \therefore L[x(t)] &= X(s) = L \left[ u(t) + \frac{1}{2} \sin 4t u(t) \right] \\
 &= L[u(t)] + \frac{1}{2} L[\sin 4t u(t)] \\
 &= \frac{1}{s} + \frac{1}{2} \frac{4}{s^2 + 4^2} \\
 &= \frac{s^2 + 2s + 16}{s(s^2 + 4^2)}
 \end{aligned}$$

(e) Given  $x(t) = \cos(\omega t + \theta) u(t) = [\cos \omega t \cos \theta - \sin \omega t \sin \theta] u(t)$

$$\begin{aligned}
 \therefore L[x(t)] &= X(s) = L[(\cos \omega t \cos \theta - \sin \omega t \sin \theta) u(t)] \\
 &= L[\cos \omega t \cos \theta u(t)] - L[\sin \omega t \sin \theta u(t)] \\
 &= \cos \theta L[\cos \omega t u(t)] - \sin \theta L[\sin \omega t u(t)] \\
 &= \cos \theta \left( \frac{s}{s^2 + \omega^2} \right) - \sin \theta \left( \frac{\omega}{s^2 + \omega^2} \right) \\
 &X(s) = \frac{s \cos \theta - \omega \sin \theta}{s^2 + \omega^2}
 \end{aligned}$$

(f) Given  $x(t) = \sin(\omega t + \theta) u(t) = [\sin \omega t \cos \theta + \cos \omega t \sin \theta] u(t)$

$$\begin{aligned}
 \therefore L[x(t)] &= X(s) = L[(\sin \omega t \cos \theta + \cos \omega t \sin \theta) u(t)] \\
 &= L[\sin \omega t \cos \theta u(t)] + L[\cos \omega t \sin \theta u(t)] \\
 &= \cos \theta L[\sin \omega t u(t)] + \sin \theta L[\cos \omega t u(t)] \\
 &= \cos \theta \frac{\omega}{s^2 + \omega^2} + \sin \theta \frac{s}{s^2 + \omega^2}
 \end{aligned}$$

$$\therefore X(s) = \frac{\omega \cos \theta + s \sin \theta}{s^2 + \omega^2}$$

**EXAMPLE 9.11** Is the signal  $x(t) = [\sin(t)] \operatorname{sgn}(t)$ , where  $\operatorname{sgn}(t)$  is the signum function, Laplace transformable or not? State the reason.

**Solution:** Given signal  $x(t) = [\sin(t)] \operatorname{sgn}(t)$

We know that

$$\operatorname{sgn}(t) = \begin{cases} 1 & \text{for } t > 0 \\ -1 & \text{for } t < 0 \end{cases}$$

$$\begin{aligned} \therefore \quad \mathcal{L}[\operatorname{sgn}(t)] &= \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \operatorname{sgn}(t) e^{-st} dt \\ &= \int_{-\infty}^0 -e^{-st} dt + \int_0^{\infty} e^{-st} dt \end{aligned}$$

The first integral converges only for  $\operatorname{Re}(s) < 0$ . So ROC  $R_1$  is  $\operatorname{Re}(s) < 0$ , and the second integral converges for  $\operatorname{Re}(s) > 0$ . So ROC  $R_2$  is  $\operatorname{Re}(s) > 0$ .

$$\therefore \quad \text{ROC of } \mathcal{L}[\operatorname{sgn}(t)] = R_1 \cap R_2 = \emptyset$$

$$\text{Now, } \mathcal{L}[\sin(t)] = \frac{1}{s^2 + 1}; \text{ ROC; } \operatorname{Re}(s) > 0$$

$\therefore$  ROC of  $\mathcal{L}\{[\sin(t)] \operatorname{sgn}(t)\}$  does not exist because  $[0 \cap \operatorname{Re}(s) > 0] = \emptyset$

$\therefore$  The signal  $x(t) = [\sin(t)] \operatorname{sgn}(t)$  is not Laplace transformable.

**EXAMPLE 9.12** Suppose the following facts are given about the signal  $x(t)$  with Laplace transform  $X(s)$ :

- (a)  $x(t)$  is real and even.
- (b)  $X(s)$  has four poles, no zeros in a finite s-plane.
- (c)  $X(s)$  has a pole at  $s = (1/2)e^{j\pi/4}$ .
- (d)  $\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} x(t) dt = 4$ .

Determine  $X(s)$  and ROC.

**Solution:**

- (a) Given  $x(t)$  is real and even.

If  $X(s)$  has a pole at  $s = s_0$ , then it will have another pole at  $s = -s_0$ ,

$$X(s) = X(-s)$$

- (b)  $X(s)$  has 4 poles and no zeros in a finite s-plane.

$$\text{Let } X(s) = \frac{k}{(s - P_1)(s - P_2)(s - P_3)(s - P_4)}$$

(c) Given  $X(s)$  has a pole at  $s = (1/2)e^{j\pi/4}$ .

As  $x(t)$  is real and even,  $X(s)$  has another pole at  $s = (1/2)e^{-j\pi/4}$ .

$\therefore$

$$P_1 = \frac{1+j}{2\sqrt{2}}, P_2 = \frac{1-j}{2\sqrt{2}}$$

$\therefore$

$$P_1 + P_2 = \frac{1+j+1-j}{2\sqrt{2}} = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2}}$$

$$P_1 P_2 = \left( \frac{1+j}{2\sqrt{2}} \right) \left( \frac{1-j}{2\sqrt{2}} \right) = \frac{1+1}{(2\sqrt{2})^2} = \frac{1}{4}$$

$\therefore$

$$X(s) = \frac{k}{[(s^2 - (s/\sqrt{2}) + (1/4)) [s^2 - (P_3 + P_4)s + P_3 P_4]]}$$

As  $x(t)$  is even,  $X(s) = X(-s)$ , i.e.

$$\begin{aligned} & \frac{k}{[(s^2 - (s/\sqrt{2}) + (1/4)) [s^2 - (P_3 + P_4)s + P_3 P_4]]} \\ &= \frac{k}{[(s^2 + (s/\sqrt{2}) + (1/4)) [s^2 + (P_3 + P_4)s + P_3 P_4]]} \end{aligned}$$

Comparing the coefficients of  $s$ , we have

$$-\frac{P_3 P_4}{\sqrt{2}} - \frac{(P_3 + P_4)}{4} = \frac{P_3 P_4}{\sqrt{2}} + \frac{(P_3 + P_4)}{4}$$

i.e.

$$\frac{2P_3 P_4}{\sqrt{2}} = -\frac{2(P_3 + P_4)}{4}$$

$$P_3 P_4 = \frac{-\sqrt{2}(P_3 + P_4)}{4} = \frac{-\sqrt{2}(-1/\sqrt{2})}{4}$$

$\therefore$

$$P_3 P_4 = \frac{1}{4}$$

$\therefore$

$$X(s) = \frac{k}{[(s^2 - (s/\sqrt{2}) + (1/4)) [s^2 + (s/\sqrt{2}) + (1/4)]]}$$

(d) Given

$$\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} x(t) dt = 4$$

$$X(s) = L[x(t)] = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} x(t) e^{-st} dt$$

$$\therefore X(0) = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} x(t) e^0 dt = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} x(t) dt = 4$$

Putting  $s = 0$  in the equation for  $X(s)$ , we have

$$X(0) = \frac{k}{(1/4)(1/4)}$$

Equating the above two equations for  $X(0)$ , we have

$$4 = \frac{k}{(1/4)(1/4)} = 16k$$

or

$$k = \frac{1}{4}$$

$$\therefore X(s) = \frac{1/4}{[(s^2 - (s/\sqrt{2}) + (1/4)][(s^2 + (s/\sqrt{2}) + (1/4)]]} = \frac{1/4}{s^4 + (1/16)}$$

$$\therefore X(s) = \frac{4}{16s^4 + 1}; \text{ ROC; } \text{Re}(s) > -\frac{1}{16}.$$

## 9.7 PROPERTIES AND THEOREMS OF LAPLACE TRANSFORM

### 9.7.1 Linearity Property

The linearity property states that the Laplace transform of a weighted sum of two signals is equal to the weighted sum of individual Laplace transforms. That is,

If

$$x_1(t) \xrightarrow{\text{LT}} X_1(s)$$

and

$$x_2(t) \xrightarrow{\text{LT}} X_2(s)$$

Then

$$ax_1(t) + bx_2(t) \xrightarrow{\text{LT}} aX_1(s) + bX_2(s)$$

*Proof:* From the definition of Laplace transform, we write

$$\begin{aligned} L[ax_1(t) + bx_2(t)] &= \int_0^{\infty} [ax_1(t) + bx_2(t)] e^{-st} dt \\ &= a \int_0^{\infty} x_1(t) e^{-st} dt + b \int_0^{\infty} x_2(t) e^{-st} dt \\ &= aX_1(s) + bX_2(s) \end{aligned}$$

$$\boxed{ax_1(t) + bx_2(t) \xrightarrow{\text{LT}} aX_1(s) + bX_2(s)}$$

### 9.7.2 Time Shift Property

The time shift property states that

If

$$x(t) \xrightarrow{\text{LT}} X(s)$$

Then

$$x(t - t_0) \xrightarrow{\text{LT}} e^{-st_0} X(s)$$

*Proof:*

$$\mathcal{L}[x(t - t_0)] = \int_0^{\infty} x(t - t_0) e^{-st} dt$$

Let

$$t - t_0 = p$$

∴

$$dt = dp \text{ and } t = p + t_0$$

∴

$$\mathcal{L}[x(t - t_0)] = \int_0^{\infty} x(p) e^{-s(p+t_0)} dp$$

or

$$\begin{aligned} \mathcal{L}[x(t - t_0)] &= e^{-st_0} \int_{-t_0}^{\infty} x(p) e^{-ps} dp \\ &= e^{-st_0} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} x(p) e^{-ps} dp = e^{-st_0} X(s) \end{aligned}$$

$$x(t - t_0) \xrightarrow{\text{LT}} e^{-st_0} X(s)$$

Similarly,

$$x(t + t_0) \xrightarrow{\text{LT}} e^{st_0} X(s)$$

A time shift of  $t_0$  corresponds to multiplication by complex exponential  $e^{-st}$ .

### 9.7.3 Time Scaling Property

The time scaling property states that

If

$$x(t) \xrightarrow{\text{LT}} X(s)$$

Then

$$x(at) \xrightarrow{\text{LT}} \frac{1}{|a|} X\left(\frac{s}{a}\right)$$

*Proof:*

$$\mathcal{L}[x(at)] = \int_0^{\infty} x(at) e^{-st} dt$$

Let

$$at = t_1$$

∴

$$t = \frac{t_1}{a} \quad \text{and} \quad dt = \frac{dt_1}{a}$$

$$\begin{aligned}\therefore \quad \mathcal{L}[x(at)] &= \int_0^{\infty} x(t_1) e^{-(s/a)t_1} \frac{dt_1}{a} = \frac{1}{a} \int_0^{\infty} x(t_1) e^{-(s/a)t_1} dt_1 \\ &= \frac{1}{a} X\left(\frac{s}{a}\right)\end{aligned}$$

This is valid for all values of  $a$ .

$$\therefore \quad \mathcal{L}[x(at)] = \frac{1}{|a|} X\left(\frac{s}{a}\right)$$

$$\boxed{x(at) \xleftrightarrow{\text{LT}} \frac{1}{|a|} X\left(\frac{s}{a}\right)}$$

#### 9.7.4 Time Reversal Property

The time reversal property states that

If  $x(t) \xleftrightarrow{\text{LT}} X(s)$

Then  $x(-t) \xleftrightarrow{\text{LT}} X(-s)$

*Proof:* From the definition of the Laplace transform, we have

$$\mathcal{L}[x(-t)] = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} x(-t) e^{-st} dt$$

In RHS, let

$$-t = p$$

$$\therefore \quad dt = -dp$$

$$\begin{aligned}\therefore \quad \mathcal{L}[x(-t)] &= \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} x(p) e^{sp} (-dp) \\ &= \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} x(p) e^{-(s)p} dp = X(-s)\end{aligned}$$

$$\boxed{x(-t) \xleftrightarrow{\text{LT}} X(-s)}$$

#### 9.7.5 Transform of Derivatives Property

The transform of derivatives property states that

If  $x(t) \xleftrightarrow{\text{LT}} X(s)$

Then

$$\frac{d}{dt} x(t) \xrightarrow{\text{LT}} sX(s) - x(0^-)$$

*Proof:* From the definition of Laplace transform, we write

$$\begin{aligned} L\left[\frac{d}{dt} x(t)\right] &= \int_0^\infty \left[ \frac{d}{dt} x(t) \right] e^{-st} dt \\ &= \left[ e^{-st} x(t) \right]_0^\infty - \int_0^\infty x(t) (-se^{-st}) dt \\ &= [0 - x(0^-)] + s \int_0^\infty x(t) e^{-st} dt \\ &= -x(0^-) + sX(s) \\ \therefore L\left[\frac{d}{dt} x(t)\right] &= sX(s) - x(0^-) \end{aligned}$$

$$\boxed{\frac{d}{dt} x(t) \xrightarrow{\text{LT}} sX(s) - x(0^-)}$$

The Laplace transform of the second derivative, i.e.,  $L[d^2x(t)/dt^2]$  is obtained as follows:

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{d^2x(t)}{dt^2} &= \frac{d}{dt} \left[ \frac{dx(t)}{dt} \right] \\ \therefore L\left[\frac{d^2x(t)}{dt^2}\right] &= L\left\{ \frac{d}{dt} \left[ \frac{dx(t)}{dt} \right] \right\} \\ &= sL\left[ \frac{dx(t)}{dt} \right] - \frac{dx(0^-)}{dt} \\ &= s[sX(s) - x(0^-)] - \frac{dx(0^-)}{dt} \\ &= s^2 X(s) - s(x(0^-)) - \frac{dx(0^-)}{dt} \end{aligned}$$

$$\boxed{\frac{d^2x(t)}{dt^2} \xrightarrow{\text{LT}} s^2 X(s) - sx(0^-) - \frac{dx(0^-)}{dt}}$$

where,  $dx(0^-)/dt$  is the derivative of  $x(t)$  evaluated at  $t = 0$ . Similarly,

$$L\left[\frac{d^n x(t)}{dt^n}\right] = s^n X(s) - s^{n-1} x(0^-) - s^{n-2} \frac{dx(0^-)}{dt} - \dots - \frac{d^{n-1} x(0^-)}{dt^{n-1}}$$

### 9.7.6 Transform of Integrals Property

The transform of integrals property states that

If

$$x(t) \xrightarrow{\text{LT}} X(s)$$

Then

$$\int_{-\infty}^t x(\tau) d\tau \xrightarrow{\text{LT}} \frac{X(s)}{s} + \int_{-\infty}^0 \frac{x(\tau) d\tau}{s}$$

*Proof:* Let

$$f(t) = \int_{-\infty}^t x(\tau) d\tau$$

∴

$$\frac{d}{dt} f(t) = x(t)$$

Further,

$$f(0^-) = \int_{-\infty}^0 x(\tau) d\tau$$

∴

$$\mathcal{L}\left[\frac{d}{dt} f(t)\right] = \mathcal{L}[x(t)]$$

i.e.

$$sF(s) - f(0^-) = X(s)$$

∴

$$\begin{aligned} F(s) &= \frac{X(s)}{s} + \frac{f(0^-)}{s} \\ &= \frac{X(s)}{s} + \int_{-\infty}^0 \frac{x(\tau) d\tau}{s} \end{aligned}$$

i.e.

$$\mathcal{L}\left[\int_{-\infty}^t x(\tau) d\tau\right] = \frac{X(s)}{s} + \frac{1}{s} \int_{-\infty}^0 x(\tau) d\tau$$

$$\boxed{\int_{-\infty}^t x(\tau) d\tau \xrightarrow{\text{LT}} \frac{X(s)}{s} + \frac{1}{s} \int_{-\infty}^0 x(\tau) d\tau}$$

### 9.7.7 Differentiation in s-domain Property

The differentiation in  $s$ -domain property states that

If

$$x(t) \xrightarrow{\text{LT}} X(s)$$

Then

$$tx(t) \xrightarrow{\text{LT}} -\frac{d}{ds} X(s)$$

*Proof:*

$$L[x(t)] = X(s) = \int_0^\infty x(t) e^{-st} dt$$

Differentiating with respect to  $s$  on both sides, we get

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{d}{ds} X(s) &= \frac{d}{ds} \left[ \int_0^\infty x(t) e^{-st} dt \right] \\ &= \left[ \int_0^\infty x(t) \frac{d}{ds} (e^{-st}) dt \right] \\ &= \int_0^\infty x(t) (-t) e^{-st} dt \\ &= \int_0^\infty [-tx(t)] e^{-st} dt \\ &= L[-tx(t)] \end{aligned}$$

∴

$$L[-tx(t)] = \frac{d}{ds} X(s)$$

$$\boxed{-tx(t) \xleftrightarrow{\text{LT}} \frac{d}{ds} X(s)}$$

In the same way,

$$L[(-t)^2 x(t)] = \frac{d^2 X(s)}{ds^2}$$

and

$$L[(-t)^n x(t)] = \frac{d^n X(s)}{ds^n}$$

or

$$L[(tx(t))] = -\frac{d}{ds} X(s)$$

$$L[t^2 x(t)] = (-1)^2 \frac{d^2 X(s)}{ds^2}$$

and

$$L[t^n x(t)] = (-1)^n \frac{d^n X(s)}{ds^n}$$

### Corollary

If  $x(t) = t^n$ , then  $X(s) = L[t^n] = \frac{n!}{s^{n+1}}$ ; ROC;  $\operatorname{Re}(s) > 0$

$$\boxed{t^n \xleftrightarrow{\text{LT}} \frac{n!}{s^{n+1}}}$$

### 9.7.8 Frequency Shift Property

The frequency shift property states that

If

$$x(t) \xrightarrow{\text{LT}} X(s)$$

Then

$$e^{-at} x(t) \xrightarrow{\text{LT}} X(s+a)$$

*Proof:*

$$\begin{aligned} \mathcal{L}[e^{-at} x(t)] &= \int_0^{\infty} e^{-at} x(t) e^{-st} dt \\ &= \int_0^{\infty} x(t) e^{-(s+a)t} dt \\ &= X(s+a) \end{aligned}$$

$$\boxed{e^{-at} x(t) \xrightarrow{\text{LT}} X(s+a)}$$

Multiplication by a complex exponential in time domain introduces a shift in complex frequency  $s$  in frequency domain. Similarly,

$$\mathcal{L}[e^{at} x(t)] = X(s-a)$$

### 9.7.9 Time Convolution Property

The time convolution property states that

If

$$x_1(t) \xrightarrow{\text{LT}} X_1(s)$$

and

$$x_2(t) \xrightarrow{\text{LT}} X_2(s)$$

Then

$$x_1(t) * x_2(t) \xrightarrow{\text{LT}} X_1(s) X_2(s)$$

*Proof:* The signals  $x_1(t)$  and  $x_2(t)$  are causal,

$$\begin{aligned} \therefore x_1(t) * x_2(t) &= \int_0^t x_1(t-\tau) x_2(\tau) d\tau \\ \mathcal{L}[x_1(t) * x_2(t)] &= \int_0^{\infty} \left[ \int_0^t x_1(t-\tau) x_2(\tau) d\tau \right] e^{-st} dt \\ &= \int_0^{\infty} \left[ \int_0^{\infty} x_1(t-\tau) x_2(\tau) d\tau \right] e^{-st} dt \end{aligned}$$

Let  $t - \tau = p$ , then,  $dt = dp$

$$\begin{aligned}\therefore L[x_1(t) * x_2(t)] &= \int_0^\infty x_2(\tau) \int_0^\infty x_1(p) e^{-s(\tau+p)} d\tau dp \\ &= \int_0^\infty x_2(\tau) e^{-s\tau} d\tau \int_0^\infty x_1(p) e^{-sp} dp \\ &= X_2(s) X_1(s) = X_1(s) X_2(s)\end{aligned}$$

$$x_1(t) * x_2(t) \xleftarrow{\text{LT}} X_1(s) X_2(s)$$

Thus, the Laplace transform of the convolution of two signals is the product of their respective Laplace transforms.

### 9.7.10 Multiplication or Modulation or Convolution in s-domain Property

The Multiplication/Modulation/Convolution in  $s$ -domain property states that

$$\text{If } x_1(t) \xleftarrow{\text{LT}} X_1(s)$$

$$\text{and } x_2(t) \xleftarrow{\text{LT}} X_2(s)$$

$$\text{Then } x_1(t) x_2(t) \xleftarrow{\text{LT}} \frac{1}{2\pi j} [X_1(s) * X_2(s)]$$

*Proof:* From the definition of Laplace transform, we have

$$\begin{aligned}L[x_1(t) x_2(t)] &= \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} x_1(t) x_2(t) e^{-st} dt \\ &= \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \left[ \frac{1}{2\pi j} \int_{\sigma-j\infty}^{\sigma+j\infty} X_1(u) e^{ut} du \right] x_2(t) e^{-st} dt \\ &= \frac{1}{2\pi j} \int_{\sigma-j\infty}^{\sigma+j\infty} X_1(u) \left[ \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} x_2(t) e^{-(s-u)t} dt \right] du \\ &= \frac{1}{2\pi j} \int_{\sigma-j\infty}^{\sigma+j\infty} X_1(u) X_2(s-u) du \\ &= \frac{1}{2\pi j} [X_1(s) * X_2(s)]\end{aligned}$$

$$\boxed{x_1(t) x_2(t) \longleftrightarrow \frac{1}{2\pi j} [X_1(s) * X_2(s)]}$$

### 9.7.11 Conjugation and Conjugate Symmetry Property

The conjugation property states that

If  $x(t) \xrightarrow{\text{LT}} X(s)$

Then  $x^*(t) \xleftarrow{\text{LT}} X^*(s^*)$  [for complex  $x(t)$ ]

The conjugate symmetry property states that  $X(s) = X^*(s^*)$  for real  $x(t)$ .

*Proof: Conjugation property*

From the definition of the Laplace transform, we have

$$\begin{aligned} \mathcal{L}[x^*(t)] &= \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} x^*(t) e^{-st} dt \\ &= \left[ \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} x(t) e^{-(s^*)t} dt \right]^* \\ &= [X(s^*)]^* = X^*(s^*) \quad [\text{for complex } x(t)] \end{aligned}$$

$$\boxed{x^*(t) \xrightarrow{\text{LT}} X^*(s^*)}$$

**Conjugate symmetry property**

From the definition of Laplace transform, we have

$$X(s^*) = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} x(t) e^{-(s^*)t} dt$$

Taking the conjugate on both sides, we get

$$\begin{aligned} X^*(s^*) &= \left[ \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} x(t) e^{-(s^*)t} dt \right]^* \\ &= \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} x(t) e^{-(s^*)^*t} dt \\ &= \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} x(t) e^{-st} dt = X(s) \quad [\text{for real } x(t)] \end{aligned}$$

$$\boxed{X(s) = X^*(s^*)}$$

### 9.7.12 Parseval's Relation or Theorem or Property

The Parseval's relation or theorem or property states that

If

$$x_1(t) \xrightarrow{\text{LT}} X_1(s)$$

and

$$x_2(t) \xrightarrow{\text{LT}} X_2(s)$$

Then  $\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} x_1(t) x_2^*(t) dt \xrightarrow{\text{LT}} \frac{1}{2\pi j} \int_{\sigma-j\infty}^{\sigma+j\infty} X_1(s) X_2^*(-s^*) ds$  [for complex  $x_1(t)$  and  $x_2(t)$ ]

*Proof:* We have

$$\begin{aligned} x_1(t) &= \frac{1}{2\pi j} \int_{\sigma-j\infty}^{\sigma+j\infty} X_1(s) e^{st} ds \\ \text{LHS} &= \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} x_1(t) x_2^*(t) dt = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \left\{ \frac{1}{2\pi j} \int_{\sigma-j\infty}^{\sigma+j\infty} X_1(s) e^{st} ds \right\} x_2^*(t) dt \end{aligned}$$

Interchanging the order of integration, we have

$$\begin{aligned} &= \frac{1}{2\pi j} \int_{\sigma-j\infty}^{\sigma+j\infty} X_1(s) \left\{ \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} x_2^*(t) e^{st} dt \right\} ds \\ &= \frac{1}{2\pi j} \int_{\sigma-j\infty}^{\sigma+j\infty} X_1(s) \left\{ \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} x_2(t) e^{(-s^*)t} dt \right\}^* ds \\ &= \frac{1}{2\pi j} \int_{\sigma-j\infty}^{\sigma+j\infty} X_1(s) \left\{ \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} X_2(-s^*) ds \right\}^* ds \\ &= \frac{1}{2\pi j} \int_{\sigma-j\infty}^{\sigma+j\infty} X_1(s) \{X_2^*(-s^*)\} ds \end{aligned}$$

### 9.7.13 Initial Value Theorem

The initial value theorem enables us to calculate the initial value of a function  $x(t)$ , i.e.  $x(0)$  directly from its transform  $X(s)$  without the need for finding the inverse transform of  $X(s)$ . It states that

If

$$x(t) \xrightarrow{\text{LT}} X(s)$$

Then

$$\lim_{t \rightarrow 0} x(t) = x(0) = \lim_{s \rightarrow \infty} sX(s)$$

*Proof:* Given

$$\mathcal{L}[x(t)] = X(s)$$

We have

$$\mathcal{L}\left[\frac{dx(t)}{dt}\right] = \int_0^\infty \frac{dx(t)}{dt} e^{-st} dt = sX(s) - x(0^-)$$

Taking limit  $s \rightarrow \infty$  on both sides, we get

$$\text{Lt}_{s \rightarrow \infty} \mathcal{L}\left[\frac{dx(t)}{dt}\right] = \text{Lt}_{s \rightarrow \infty} \left[ \int_0^\infty \frac{dx(t)}{dt} e^{-st} dt \right] = \text{Lt}_{s \rightarrow \infty} [sX(s) - x(0)]$$

i.e.

$$0 = \text{Lt}_{s \rightarrow \infty} sX(s) - x(0)$$

∴

$$x(0) = \text{Lt}_{s \rightarrow \infty} sX(s)$$

$$x(0) = \boxed{\text{Lt}_{t \rightarrow 0} x(t) = \text{Lt}_{s \rightarrow \infty} sX(s)}$$

#### 9.7.14 Final Value Theorem

The final value theorem enables us to determine the final value of a function  $x(t)$ , i.e.  $x(\infty)$  directly from its Laplace transform  $X(s)$  without the need for finding the inverse transform of  $X(s)$ . It states that

If

$$x(t) \xleftarrow{\text{LT}} X(s)$$

Then

$$\text{Lt}_{t \rightarrow \infty} x(t) = x(\infty) = \text{Lt}_{s \rightarrow 0} sX(s)$$

*Proof:* Given

$$\mathcal{L}[x(t)] = X(s)$$

We have

$$\mathcal{L}\left[\frac{dx(t)}{dt}\right] = \int_0^\infty \frac{dx(t)}{dt} e^{-st} dt = sX(s) - x(0^-)$$

Taking the limit  $s \rightarrow 0$  on both sides, we obtain

$$\text{Lt}_{s \rightarrow 0} \left[ \int_0^\infty \frac{dx(t)}{dt} e^{-st} dt \right] = \text{Lt}_{s \rightarrow 0} [sX(s) - x(0^-)]$$

∴

$$\int_0^\infty \frac{dx(t)}{dt} dt = \text{Lt}_{s \rightarrow 0} [sX(s) - x(0^-)]$$

$$[x(t)]_0^\infty = \text{Lt}_{s \rightarrow 0} [sX(s) - x(0^-)]$$

i.e.

$$x(\infty) - x(0^-) = \text{Lt}_{s \rightarrow 0} [sX(s) - x(0^-)]$$

i.e.

$$\underset{t \rightarrow \infty}{\text{Lt}} x(t) = x(\infty) = \underset{s \rightarrow 0}{\text{Lt}} sX(s)$$

$$x(\infty) = \underset{t \rightarrow \infty}{\text{Lt}} x(t) = \underset{s \rightarrow 0}{\text{Lt}} sX(s)$$

To apply the final value theorem, we must cancel the common factors, if any, in the numerator and denominator of  $sX(s)$ . If any poles of  $sX(s)$  after cancellation of the common factors lie in the right half of the s-plane, then the final value theorem does not hold. A simple pole in  $X(s)$  at the origin is permitted. Otherwise all other poles of  $X(s)$  must be strictly in the left-half of the s-plane.

### 9.7.15 Time Periodicity Property (Laplace Transform of Periodic Functions)

The time shift theorem is useful in determining the transform of periodic time functions. Let the function  $x(t)$  be a causal periodic waveform which satisfies the condition  $x(t) = x(t + nT)$  for all  $t > 0$ , where  $T$  is the period of the function and  $n = 0, 1, 2, \dots$ .

Now,

$$X(s) = \int_0^\infty x(t) e^{-st} dt$$

This can be written as:

$$\begin{aligned} X(s) &= \int_0^T x(t) e^{-st} dt + \int_T^{2T} x(t) e^{-st} dt + \int_{2T}^{3T} x(t) e^{-st} dt + \cdots + \int_{nT}^{(n+1)T} x(t) e^{-st} dt + \cdots \\ &= \int_0^T x(t) e^{-st} dt + e^{-sT} \int_0^T x(t+T) e^{-st} dt + e^{-2sT} \int_0^T x(t+2T) e^{-st} dt + \cdots \\ &\quad + e^{-nsT} \int_0^T x(t+nT) e^{-st} dt + \cdots \end{aligned}$$

Since,  $x(t)$  is periodic, we have

$$x(t) = x(t+T) = x(t+2T) = x(t+3T) = \dots$$

So the above equation can also be written as:

$$\begin{aligned} X(s) &= \int_0^T x(t) e^{-st} dt + e^{-sT} \int_0^T x(t) e^{-st} dt + e^{-2sT} \int_0^T x(t) e^{-st} dt + \cdots + e^{-nsT} \int_0^T x(t) e^{-st} dt + \cdots \\ &= [1 + e^{-sT} + e^{-2sT} + \cdots + e^{-nsT} + \cdots] \int_0^T x(t) e^{-st} dt \\ &= [1 - e^{-sT}]^{-1} \int_0^T x(t) e^{-st} dt = \frac{1}{1 - e^{-sT}} X_1(s) \end{aligned}$$

where

$$X_1(s) = \int_0^T x(t) e^{-st} dt$$

Here,  $X_1(s) = L\{[u(t) - u(t - T)] x(t)\}$ , which is the transform of the first period of the time function and  $[u(t) - u(t - T)] x(t)$  has non-zero value only in the first period of  $x(t)$ .

**EXAMPLE 9.13** Find the Laplace transform of the full-wave rectifier shown in Figure 9.12.

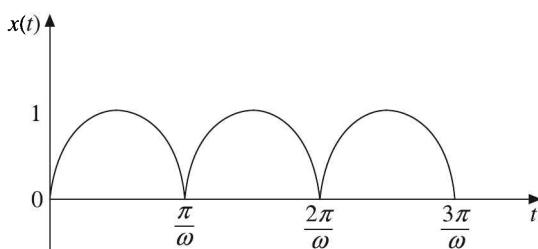


Figure 9.12 Waveform for Example 9.13.

**Solution:** From Figure 9.12, we have

$$x(t) = \sin \omega t, \quad 0 < t < \frac{\pi}{\omega}$$

Since  $x(t)$  is a periodic function, we have

$$\begin{aligned} X(s) = L[x(t)] &= \frac{1}{1 - e^{-s\pi/\omega}} \int_0^{\pi/\omega} [x(t) e^{-st}] dt = \frac{1}{1 - e^{-s\pi/\omega}} \int_0^{\pi/\omega} \sin \omega t e^{-st} dt \\ &= \frac{1}{1 - e^{-s\pi/\omega}} \left[ \frac{e^{-st}}{s^2 + \omega^2} (-s \sin \omega t - \omega \cos \omega t) \right]_0^{\pi/\omega} \\ &= \frac{1}{(1 - e^{-s\pi/\omega})(s^2 + \omega^2)} (\omega e^{-s\pi/\omega} + \omega) \\ &= \frac{\omega}{s^2 + \omega^2} \frac{(1 + e^{-s\pi/\omega})}{(1 - e^{-s\pi/\omega})} \\ &= \frac{\omega}{s^2 + \omega^2} \left( \frac{e^{s\pi/2\omega} + e^{-s\pi/2\omega}}{e^{s\pi/2\omega} - e^{-s\pi/2\omega}} \right) \\ \therefore X(s) &= \frac{\omega}{s^2 + \omega^2} \coth \left( \frac{s\pi}{2\omega} \right) \end{aligned}$$

**EXAMPLE 9.14** Determine the Laplace transform of the signal  $x(t) = \sin \pi t u(t)$  using periodicity property.

**Solution:** The given signal  $x(t) = \sin \pi t u(t)$  is shown in Figure 9.13.

We know

$$\pi t = \frac{2\pi}{T}t \quad \text{or} \quad T = \frac{2\pi}{\pi} = 2$$

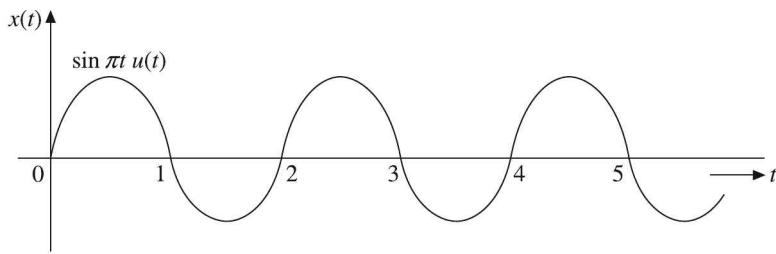


Figure 9.13 Waveform for Example 9.14.

The given signal  $x(t)$  can be seen as a periodic signal with a period  $T = 2$ . Considering one period of the waveform as  $x_1(t)$ , we have

$$\begin{aligned} \therefore X(s) = L[x(t)] &= \frac{1}{1 - e^{-2s}} \left( \int_0^2 \sin \pi t e^{-st} dt \right) \\ &= \frac{1}{1 - e^{-2s}} \left[ \int_0^2 \left( \frac{e^{j\pi t} - e^{-j\pi t}}{2j} \right) e^{-st} dt \right] \\ &= \frac{1}{1 - e^{-2s}} \left[ \frac{1}{2j} \int_0^2 [e^{-(s-j\pi)t} - e^{-(s+j\pi)t}] dt \right] \\ &= \frac{1}{1 - e^{-2s}} \left\{ \frac{1}{2j} \left[ \frac{e^{-(s-j\pi)t}}{-(s-j\pi)} - \frac{e^{-(s+j\pi)t}}{-(s+j\pi)} \right]_0^2 \right\} \\ &= \frac{1}{1 - e^{-2s}} \left\{ \frac{1}{2j} \left[ \frac{-(s+j\pi)[e^{-2(s-j\pi)} - 1] + (s-j\pi)[e^{-2(s+j\pi)} - 1]}{s^2 + \pi^2} \right] \right\} \\ &= \frac{1}{1 - e^{-2s}} \left[ \frac{\pi}{s^2 + \pi^2} (1 - e^{-2s}) \right] = \frac{\pi}{s^2 + \pi^2}. \end{aligned}$$

**EXAMPLE 9.15** Prove that the Laplace transforms of even and odd functions are even and odd respectively.

Or

If  $x(t)$  is even function, prove that  $X(s) = X(-s)$  and if  $x(t)$  is odd, prove that  $X(s) = -X(-s)$ .

**Solution:** A function is said to be even if  $x(t) = x(-t)$  for all values of  $t$ . By the definition of the Laplace transform of  $x(t)$ , we have

$$X(s) = \mathcal{L}[x(t)] = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} x(t) e^{-st} dt$$

Replacing  $t$  by  $-t$ , we have

$$\begin{aligned} dt &= -dt \\ \therefore X(s) &= - \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} x(-t) e^{st} dt \end{aligned}$$

Interchanging the limits, we have

$$\begin{aligned} X(s) &= \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} x(-t) e^{st} dt = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} x(t) e^{-(s)t} dt \\ &= X(-s) \quad [:\ x(t) = x(-t)] \\ \therefore X(s) &= X(-s) \end{aligned}$$

Thus, the Laplace transform of an even function is even.

Now, let us consider an odd function  $x(t)$ , i.e.  $x(t) = -x(-t)$  for all values of  $t$ . From the definition of Laplace transform, we have

$$X(s) = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} x(t) e^{-st} dt$$

Replacing  $t$  by  $-t$ , we have

$$\begin{aligned} dt &= -dt \\ \therefore X(s) &= - \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} x(-t) e^{st} dt \end{aligned}$$

Since  $x(t) = -x(-t)$ , we have

$$X(s) = - \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} -x(t) e^{st} dt = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} x(t) e^{st} dt$$

Interchanging the limits, we have

$$\begin{aligned} X(s) &= - \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} x(t) e^{-(s)t} dt = -X(-s) \\ \therefore X(s) &= -X(-s) \end{aligned}$$

Thus, the Laplace transform of an odd function is odd.

Hence, the Laplace transforms of even and odd functions are even and odd respectively.

**EXAMPLE 9.16** Find the Laplace transform of the derivative of the signal  $x(t)$ . Invert the transform to find the signal derivative.

**Solution:** The given signal is  $x(t)$ . The derivative of the given signal is  $dx(t)/dt$ . By definition,

$$\begin{aligned} L\left[\frac{dx(t)}{dt}\right] &= \int_0^\infty \frac{dx(t)}{dt} e^{-st} dt = \left[ e^{-st} x(t) \right]_0^\infty - \int_0^\infty x(t) (-s) e^{-st} dt \\ &= 0 - x(0) + s \int_0^\infty x(t) e^{-st} dt = sX(s) - x(0) \\ \therefore L\left[\frac{dx(t)}{dt}\right] &= sX(s) - x(0) \end{aligned}$$

For a causal signal,  $x(0) = 0$ . Then

$$L\left[\frac{dx(t)}{dt}\right] = sX(s)$$

Now, from the definition of inverse Laplace transform, we have

$$x(t) = \frac{1}{2\pi j} \int_{\sigma-j\infty}^{\sigma+j\infty} X(s) e^{st} ds$$

Differentiating both sides w.r.t.  $t$ , we have

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{dx(t)}{dt} &= \frac{1}{2\pi j} \int_{\sigma-j\infty}^{\sigma+j\infty} X(s) se^{st} ds = \frac{1}{2\pi j} \int_{\sigma-j\infty}^{\sigma+j\infty} [sX(s)] e^{st} ds \\ &= L^{-1}[sX(s)] \end{aligned}$$

The signal derivative is given by  $L^{-1}[sX(s)]$ .

**EXAMPLE 9.17** Find the inverse Laplace transform of  $X(s) = 1/s(s + 3)$  using integral property.

**Solution:** Let

$$X_1(s) = \frac{1}{s+3}$$

Then

$$X(s) = \frac{X_1(s)}{s}$$

$$\therefore x_1(t) = L^{-1}[X_1(s)] = L^{-1}\left(\frac{1}{s+3}\right) = e^{-3t} u(t)$$

Using time integral property, we have

$$\begin{aligned} \text{L}\left(\int_{-\infty}^t x(\tau) d\tau\right) &= \frac{X(s)}{s} \\ \therefore \text{L}^{-1}\left[\frac{X(s)}{s}\right] &= \int_{-\infty}^t x(\tau) d\tau \\ \therefore \text{L}^{-1}\left[\frac{1}{s(s+3)}\right] &= \text{L}^{-1}\left[\frac{X_1(s)}{s}\right] = \int_{-\infty}^t x_1(\tau) d\tau = \int_{-\infty}^t e^{-3\tau} u(\tau) d\tau \\ &= \int_0^t e^{-3\tau} d\tau = \left[ \frac{e^{-3\tau}}{-3} \right]_0^t = \frac{e^{-3t} - 1}{-3} = \frac{1 - e^{-3t}}{3}. \end{aligned}$$

**EXAMPLE 9.18** Find the Laplace transform of the following signals using properties of Laplace transform:

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| (a) $x(t) = \delta(t)$                    | (b) $x(t) = \frac{d\delta(t)}{dt}$                   |
| (c) $x(t) = t u(t)$                       | (d) $x(t) = u(t-3)$                                  |
| (e) $x(t) = t e^{-t} u(t)$                | (f) $x(t) = t^2 e^{-3t} u(t)$                        |
| (g) $x(t) = e^{-2t} \cos(2\pi 100t) u(t)$ | (h) $x(t) = e^{-5t} \sin 10at u(t)$                  |
| (i) $x(t) = t e^{-2t} \sin 2t u(t)$       | (j) $x(t) = 2e^{-6t} u(t) - 10e^{4t} u(-t)$          |
| (k) $x(t) = \sin at \cos bt u(t)$         | (l) $x(t) = \frac{\sin at}{t}$                       |
| (m) $x(t) = \frac{\cos at}{t}$            | (n) $x(t) = \frac{\sin^2 at}{t}$                     |
| (o) $x(t) = \frac{e^{at} - \cos 3t}{t}$   | (p) $x(t) = 3e^{-2t} \cos 4t - 5e^{-3t} \sin 2t + 2$ |
| (q) $x(t) = \frac{1 - e^t}{t}$ .          |  |

**Solution:**

(a) Given  $x(t) = \delta(t)$

We know that

$$\text{L}[u(t)] = \frac{1}{s} \quad \text{and} \quad \frac{du(t)}{dt} = \delta(t)$$

From the differentiation in time domain property, we have

$$\mathcal{L}[\delta(t)] = \mathcal{L}\left[\frac{du(t)}{dt}\right] = s\mathcal{L}[u(t)] = s \times \frac{1}{s} = 1$$

(b) Given

$$x(t) = \frac{d\delta(t)}{dt}$$

We know that

$$\mathcal{L}[\delta(t)] = 1$$

From the differentiation in time domain property, we have

$$\mathcal{L}\left[\frac{d}{dt}\delta(t)\right] = s\mathcal{L}[\delta(t)] = s \times 1 = s$$

(c) Given

$$x(t) = tu(t)$$

We know that

$$\mathcal{L}[u(t)] = \frac{1}{s}$$

From the differentiation in frequency property, we have

$$\mathcal{L}[tu(t)] = -\frac{d}{ds}\{\mathcal{L}[u(t)]\} = -\frac{d}{ds}\left(\frac{1}{s}\right) = \frac{1}{s^2}$$

(d) Given

$$x(t) = u(t - 3)$$

We know that

$$\mathcal{L}[u(t)] = \frac{1}{s}$$

Using time shifting property, we have

$$\begin{aligned} \mathcal{L}[x(t - t_0)] &= e^{-st_0} \mathcal{L}[x(t)] \\ \therefore \mathcal{L}[u(t - 3)] &= e^{-3s} \mathcal{L}[u(t)] = \frac{e^{-3s}}{s} \end{aligned}$$

(e) Given

$$x(t) = te^{-t} u(t)$$

We know that

$$\mathcal{L}[e^{-at} x(t)] = X(s + a)$$

and

$$\mathcal{L}[tx(t)] = -\frac{d}{ds}X(s)$$

We know

$$\mathcal{L}[u(t)] = \frac{1}{s}$$

Using frequency shift property, we have

$$\mathcal{L}[e^{-t} u(t)] = \mathcal{L}[u(t)]|_{s=s+1} = \frac{1}{s}|_{s=s+1} = \frac{1}{s+1}$$

Using the differentiation in  $s$ -domain property, we have

$$\begin{aligned}\mathcal{L}[te^{-t} u(t)] &= -\frac{d}{ds} \{\mathcal{L}[e^{-t} u(t)]\} = -\frac{d}{ds} \left( \frac{1}{s+1} \right) \\ &= -\left[ \frac{(s+1) \times 0 - 1(1)}{(s+1)^2} \right] = \frac{1}{(s+1)^2}\end{aligned}$$

or alternatively

$$\mathcal{L}[tu(t)] = \frac{1}{s^2}$$

$$\therefore \mathcal{L}[e^{-t} tu(t)] = \mathcal{L}[tu(t)]|_{s=s+1} = \frac{1}{s^2}|_{s=s+1} = \frac{1}{(s+1)^2}$$

(f) Given  $x(t) = t^2 e^{-3t} u(t)$

We know that

$$\mathcal{L}[u(t)] = \frac{1}{s}$$

Using frequency shift property, we have

$$\therefore \mathcal{L}[e^{-3t} u(t)] = \mathcal{L}[u(t)]|_{s=s+3} = \frac{1}{s}|_{s=s+3} = \frac{1}{s+3}$$

Using the differentiation in  $s$ -domain property, we have

$$\begin{aligned}\mathcal{L}[t^2 e^{-3t} u(t)] &= (-1)^2 \frac{d^2}{ds^2} \{\mathcal{L}[e^{-3t} u(t)]\} = \frac{d}{ds} \left\{ \frac{d}{ds} \left[ \frac{1}{s+3} \right] \right\} \\ &= \frac{d}{ds} \left[ \frac{(s+3) \times 0 - 1(1)}{(s+3)^2} \right] = -\frac{d}{ds} \left[ \frac{1}{(s+3)^2} \right] \\ &= -\left[ \frac{(s+3)^2 \times 0 - 1(2s+6)}{(s+3)^4} \right] = \frac{2(s+3)}{(s+3)^4} \\ &= \frac{2}{(s+3)^3}\end{aligned}$$

or alternatively

$$\mathcal{L}[t^2 u(t)] = \frac{2}{s^3}$$

$$\therefore \mathcal{L}[e^{-3t} t^2 u(t)] = \mathcal{L}[t^2 u(t)] \Big|_{s=s+3} = \frac{2}{s^3} \Big|_{s=s+3} = \frac{2}{(s+3)^3}$$

(g) Given

$$x(t) = e^{-2t} \cos(2\pi 100t) u(t)$$

We know that

$$\mathcal{L}[\cos \omega t u(t)] = \frac{s}{s^2 + \omega^2}$$

Here  $\omega = 2\pi 100 = 200\pi$

$$\therefore \mathcal{L}[\cos 2\pi 100t u(t)] = \frac{s}{s^2 + (200\pi)^2}$$

Also

$$\mathcal{L}[e^{-at} x(t)] = X(s+a)$$

So using frequency shift property, we have

$$\begin{aligned} \mathcal{L}[e^{-2t} \cos 200\pi t u(t)] &= \mathcal{L}[\cos 200\pi t u(t)] \Big|_{s=s+2} \\ &= \frac{s}{s^2 + (200\pi)^2} \Big|_{s=s+2} \\ &= \frac{s+2}{(s+2)^2 + (200\pi)^2} \end{aligned}$$

(h) Given

$$x(t) = e^{-5t} \sin 10at u(t)$$

We know that

$$\mathcal{L}[\sin(at) u(t)] = \frac{a}{s^2 + a^2}$$

Using scaling property, we have

$$\begin{aligned} \mathcal{L}[\sin(10at) u(t)] &= \frac{1}{10} \mathcal{L}[\sin(at) u(t)] \Big|_{s=s/10} \\ &= \frac{1}{10} \frac{a}{s^2 + a^2} \Big|_{s=s/10} = \frac{1}{10} \frac{a}{(s/10)^2 + a^2} \\ &= \frac{10a}{s^2 + (10a)^2} \end{aligned}$$

Using frequency shift property, we have

$$\begin{aligned} \mathcal{L}[e^{-5t} \sin 10at u(t)] &= \mathcal{L}[\sin 10at u(t)] \Big|_{s=s+5} \\ &= \frac{10a}{s^2 + (10a)^2} \Big|_{s=s+5} = \frac{10a}{(s+5)^2 + (10a)^2} \end{aligned}$$

(i) Given

$$x(t) = te^{-2t} \sin 2t u(t)$$

We know that

$$\mathcal{L}[\sin 2t u(t)] = \frac{2}{s^2 + (2)^2} = \frac{2}{s^2 + 4}$$

Using frequency shift property, we have

$$\begin{aligned} \mathcal{L}[e^{-2t} \sin 2t u(t)] &= \mathcal{L}[\sin 2t u(t)] \Big|_{s=s+2} \\ &= \frac{2}{s^2 + 4} \Big|_{s=s+2} \\ &= \frac{2}{(s+2)^2 + 4} = \frac{2}{s^2 + 4s + 8} \end{aligned}$$

Using differentiation in the  $s$ -domain property, we have

$$\begin{aligned} \mathcal{L}[te^{-2t} \sin 2t u(t)] &= -\frac{d}{ds} \{\mathcal{L}[e^{-2t} \sin 2t u(t)]\} \\ &= -\frac{d}{ds} \left( \frac{2}{s^2 + 4s + 8} \right) = \frac{0 - 2(2s+4)}{(s^2 + 4s + 8)^2} \\ &= \frac{4(s+2)}{(s^2 + 4s + 8)^2} \end{aligned}$$

(j) Given

$$x(t) = 2e^{-6t} u(t) - 10e^{4t} u(-t)$$

Let

$$x(t) = x_1(t) + x_2(t)$$

where

$$x_1(t) = 2e^{-6t} u(t) \quad \text{and} \quad x_2(t) = -10e^{4t} u(-t)$$

Using linearity and frequency shift properties, we have

$$\begin{aligned} \mathcal{L}[x_1(t)] &= \mathcal{L}[2e^{-6t} u(t)] = 2\mathcal{L}[e^{-6t} u(t)] = 2\mathcal{L}[u(t)] \Big|_{s=s+6} \\ &= \frac{2}{s} \Big|_{s=s+6} = \frac{2}{s+6}; \text{ ROC; } \text{Re}(s) > -6 \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
 L[x_2(t)] &= L[-10e^{4t} u(-t)] = -10L[e^{4t} u(-t)] \\
 &= -10L[u(-t)] \Big|_{s=s-4} = -10 \left[ -\frac{1}{s} \right] \Big|_{s=s-4} \\
 &= \frac{10}{s-4}; \text{ ROC; } \operatorname{Re}(s) < 4
 \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
 \therefore L[x(t)] &= X(s) = L[x_1(t)] + L[x_2(t)] \\
 &= \frac{2}{s+6} + \frac{10}{s-4} = \frac{2s-8+10s+60}{(s-4)(s+6)} \\
 &= \frac{12s+52}{s^2+2s-24}; \text{ ROC } -6 < \operatorname{Re}(s) < 4
 \end{aligned}$$

(k) Given  $x(t) = \sin at \cos bt u(t) = \frac{1}{2} [\sin(a+b)t + \sin(a-b)t] u(t)$

$$\begin{aligned}
 \therefore X(s) &= L[x(t)] = L \left\{ \frac{1}{2} [\sin(a+b)t + \sin(a-b)t] u(t) \right\} \\
 &= \frac{1}{2} \{ L[\sin(a+b)t u(t)] + L[\sin(a-b)t u(t)] \}
 \end{aligned}$$

Using superposition property, we have

$$X(s) = \frac{1}{2} \left[ \frac{a+b}{s^2 + (a+b)^2} + \frac{a-b}{s^2 + (a-b)^2} \right]$$

(l) Given  $x(t) = \frac{\sin at}{t}$

$$\begin{aligned}
 \therefore L[x(t)] &= X(s) = L \left( \frac{\sin at}{t} \right) \\
 &= \int_s^\infty L(\sin at) ds = \int_s^\infty \left( \frac{a}{s^2 + a^2} \right) ds \\
 &= a \int_s^\infty \frac{1}{s^2 + a^2} ds = a \left[ \frac{1}{a} \tan^{-1} \left( \frac{s}{a} \right) \right]_s^\infty \\
 &= \tan^{-1} \infty - \tan^{-1} \left( \frac{s}{a} \right) = \frac{\pi}{2} - \tan^{-1} \left( \frac{s}{a} \right) \\
 &= \cot^{-1} \left( \frac{s}{a} \right) = \tan^{-1} \left( \frac{a}{s} \right)
 \end{aligned}$$

$$\therefore L\left(\frac{\sin at}{t}\right) = \tan^{-1}\left(\frac{a}{s}\right)$$

(m) Given  $x(t) = \frac{\cos at}{t}$

$$Lt_{t \rightarrow 0} x(t) = Lt_{t \rightarrow 0} \frac{\cos at}{t} = \frac{1}{0} = \infty$$

Since  $Lt_{t \rightarrow 0} \frac{\cos at}{t}$  does not converge, the Laplace transform of  $\frac{\cos at}{t}$  does not exist.

(n) Given  $x(t) = \frac{\sin^2 at}{t}$

$$L\left(\frac{\sin^2 at}{t}\right) = \int_s^\infty L[\sin^2 at] ds$$

$$\sin^2 at = \frac{1 - \cos 2at}{2}$$

$$\begin{aligned} \therefore L[\sin^2 at] &= L\left[\frac{1}{2}u(t) - \frac{1}{2}\cos 2at u(t)\right] \\ &= \left[\frac{1}{2s} - \frac{s}{2(s^2 + 4a^2)}\right] \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned} \therefore L\left(\frac{\sin^2 at}{t}\right) &= \int_s^\infty \left[\frac{1}{2s} - \frac{s}{2(s^2 + 4a^2)}\right] ds \\ &= \frac{1}{2} \left[ \log s - \frac{1}{2} \log(s^2 + 4a^2) \right]_s^\infty \\ &= \frac{1}{2} \left[ \log \left( \frac{s}{\sqrt{s^2 + 4a^2}} \right) \right]_s^\infty = \frac{1}{2} \left[ \log \left( \frac{1}{\sqrt{1 + (4a^2/s^2)}} \right) \right]_s^\infty \\ &= \frac{1}{2} \left[ \log 1 - \log \left( \frac{1}{\sqrt{1 + (4a^2/s^2)}} \right) \right] \\ &= \frac{1}{2} \left[ 0 - \log \left( \frac{s}{\sqrt{s^2 + 4a^2}} \right) \right] = -\frac{1}{2} \log \left( \frac{s}{\sqrt{s^2 + 4a^2}} \right) \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
 \therefore L\left(\frac{\sin^2 at}{t}\right) &= \frac{1}{2} \log\left(\frac{\sqrt{s^2 + 4a^2}}{s}\right) \\
 \text{(o) Given } x(t) &= \frac{e^{at} - \cos 3t}{t} \\
 L[x(t)] &= L\left(\frac{e^{at} - \cos 3t}{t}\right) = \int_s^\infty L[e^{at} - \cos 3t] ds \\
 L[e^{at} - \cos 3t] &= L[e^{at}] - L[\cos 3t] = \frac{1}{s-a} - \frac{s}{s^2 + 3^2} \\
 \therefore L[x(t)] &= \int_s^\infty \left( \frac{1}{s-a} - \frac{s}{s^2+9} \right) ds \\
 &= \left[ \log(s-a) - \frac{1}{2} \log(s^2+9) \right]_s^\infty \\
 &= \left[ \log(s-a) - \log(\sqrt{s^2+9}) \right]_s^\infty \\
 &= \left[ \log \frac{s-a}{\sqrt{s^2+9}} \right]_s^\infty \\
 &= \log \left[ \frac{1-a/s}{\sqrt{1+(9/s^2)}} \right]_s^\infty \\
 &= \log 1 - \log \frac{(1-a/s)}{\sqrt{1+(9/s^2)}} \\
 &= 0 - \log \left( \frac{1-a/s}{\sqrt{1+(9/s^2)}} \right) \\
 &= \log \left[ \frac{\sqrt{1+(9/s^2)}}{1-a/s} \right] = \log \left( \frac{\sqrt{s^2+9}}{s-a} \right) \\
 \therefore X(s) &= \log \left( \frac{\sqrt{s^2+9}}{s-a} \right)
 \end{aligned}$$

(p) Given  $x(t) = [3e^{-2t} \cos 4t - 5e^{-3t} \sin 2t + 2] u(t)$

Let  $x(t) = x_1(t) - x_2(t) + x_3(t)$

where  $x_1(t) = 3e^{-2t} \cos 4t u(t)$ ,  $x_2(t) = 5e^{-3t} \sin 2t u(t)$  and  $x_3(t) = 2u(t)$

$$\begin{aligned} L[x_1(t)] &= X_1(s) = L[3e^{-2t} \cos 4t u(t)] = 3L[e^{-2t} \cos 4t u(t)] \\ &= 3L[\cos 4t u(t)] \Big|_{s=s+2} = 3 \left[ \frac{s}{s^2 + 4^2} \right] \Big|_{s=s+2} = 3 \frac{s+2}{(s+2)^2 + 4^2} \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned} L[x_2(t)] &= X_2(s) = L[5e^{-3t} \sin 2t u(t)] = 5L[e^{-3t} \sin 2t u(t)] \\ &= 5L[\sin 2t u(t)] \Big|_{s=s+3} = 5 \left[ \frac{2}{s^2 + 2^2} \right] \Big|_{s=s+3} = 5 \left[ \frac{2}{(s+3)^2 + 2^2} \right] \end{aligned}$$

$$L[x_3(t)] = X_3(s) = L[2u(t)] = \frac{2}{s}$$

$$\begin{aligned} \therefore L[x(t)] &= L[x_1(t)] - L[x_2(t)] + L[x_3(t)] \\ &= 3 \frac{s+2}{(s+2)^2 + 4^2} - 5 \frac{2}{(s+3)^2 + 2^2} + \frac{2}{s} \end{aligned}$$

(q) Given

$$x(t) = \frac{1-e^t}{t}$$

$$\begin{aligned} L[1-e^t] &= \frac{1}{s} - \frac{1}{s-1} \\ \therefore L\left(\frac{1-e^t}{t}\right) &= \int_s^\infty \left( \frac{1}{s} - \frac{1}{s-1} \right) ds \\ &= [\log s - \log(s-1)]_s^\infty \\ &= \left[ \log \frac{s}{s-1} \right]_s^\infty = \left[ -\log \frac{s-1}{s} \right]_s^\infty \\ &= \left[ -\log \left( 1 - \frac{1}{s} \right) \right]_s^\infty = -\log \left( 1 - \frac{1}{s} \right) \end{aligned}$$

**EXAMPLE 9.19** (a) Given, the transform pair

$$L[x(t)] = \frac{4s}{s^2 - 4}$$

Determine the Laplace transform of  $x(4t)$ .

(b) Find the Laplace transform of  $y(t) = r(3t)$ , where  $r(t)$  is the ramp function.

**Solution:**

(a) We know that if

$$\mathcal{L}[x(t)] = X(s)$$

Then

$$\mathcal{L}[x(at)] = \frac{1}{|a|} X\left(\frac{s}{a}\right)$$

Given

$$\mathcal{L}[x(t)] = \frac{4s}{s^2 - 4}$$

∴

$$\begin{aligned}\mathcal{L}[x(4t)] &= \frac{1}{4} \frac{4s}{s^2 - 4} \Big|_{s=(s/4)} \\ &= \frac{1}{4} \frac{4(s/4)}{(s/4)^2 - 4} \\ &= \frac{1}{4} \frac{s}{(s^2/16) - 4} \\ &= \frac{4s}{s^2 - 64}\end{aligned}$$

(b) Given

$$y(t) = r(3t)$$

We know that

$$r(t) = tu(t)$$

and

$$\mathcal{L}[r(t)] = \frac{1}{s^2}$$

Using time scaling property, we have

$$\mathcal{L}[r(3t)] = \left(\frac{1}{3}\right) \frac{1}{(s/3)^2} = \frac{3}{s^2}$$

**EXAMPLE 9.20** A signal has Laplace transform

$$X(s) = \frac{s+1}{s^2 + 3s + 4}$$

Find Laplace transform  $Y(s)$  of the following signals:

- (a)  $y_1(t) = x(2t)$   
 (c)  $y_3(t) = e^{-2t} x(t)$

- (b)  $y_2(t) = tx(t)$   
 (d)  $y_4(t) = x(t) * x(t)$

**Solution:** Given

$$X(s) = \frac{s+1}{s^2 + 3s + 4}$$

(a)  $y_1(t) = x(2t)$

Using time scaling property, we have

$$\begin{aligned} Y_1(s) &= \mathcal{L}[y_1(t)] = \mathcal{L}[x(2t)] = \frac{1}{2} X\left(\frac{s}{2}\right) \\ &= \frac{1}{2} X(s) \Big|_{s=(s/2)} = \frac{1}{2} \frac{s+1}{s^2+3s+4} \Big|_{s=(s/2)} \\ &= \frac{1}{2} \left[ \frac{(s/2)+1}{(s/2)^2+3(s/2)+4} \right] = \frac{1}{2} \frac{(s+2)/2}{(s^2+6s+16)/4} = \frac{s+2}{s^2+6s+16} \end{aligned}$$

(b)  $y_2(t) = tx(t)$

Using differentiation in frequency domain property, we have

$$\begin{aligned} Y_2(s) &= \mathcal{L}[y_2(t)] = \mathcal{L}[tx(t)] = -\frac{d}{ds}[X(s)] = -\frac{d}{ds}\left(\frac{s+1}{s^2+3s+4}\right) \\ &= -\left[ \frac{(s^2+3s+4)(1)-(s+1)(2s+3)}{(s^2+3s+4)^2} \right] = -\left[ \frac{s^2+3s+4-2s^2-5s-3}{(s^2+3s+4)^2} \right] \\ &= \frac{s^2+2s-1}{(s^2+3s+4)^2} \end{aligned}$$

(c)  $y_3(t) = e^{-2t} x(t)$

Using frequency shift property, we have

$$\begin{aligned} Y_3(s) &= \mathcal{L}[y_3(t)] = \mathcal{L}[e^{-2t} x(t)] = \mathcal{L}[x(t)] \Big|_{s=s+2} = X(s) \Big|_{s=s+2} \\ \therefore Y_3(s) &= \frac{s+1}{s^2+3s+4} \Big|_{s=s+2} = \frac{(s+2)+1}{(s+2)^2+3(s+2)+4} = \frac{s+3}{s^2+7s+14} \end{aligned}$$

(d)  $y_4(t) = x(t) * x(t)$

Using convolution property of Laplace transforms, we have

$$\begin{aligned} Y_4(s) &= \mathcal{L}[y_4(t)] = \mathcal{L}[x(t) * x(t)] \\ &= X(s) X(s) = [X(s)]^2 = \left[ \frac{s+1}{s^2+3s+4} \right]^2 \end{aligned}$$

**EXAMPLE 9.21** Determine the initial value  $x(0^+)$  for the following Laplace transforms:

(a)  $X(s) = \frac{4}{s^2+3s-5}$

(b)  $X(s) = \frac{3s+2}{s(s^2+3s+2)}$

**Solution:**

(a) Given

$$X(s) = \frac{4}{s^2 + 3s - 5}$$

Initial value

$$\begin{aligned} x(0^+) &= \text{Lt}_{s \rightarrow \infty} sX(s) = \text{Lt}_{s \rightarrow \infty} s \left( \frac{4}{s^2 + 3s - 5} \right) \\ &= \text{Lt}_{x \rightarrow 0} \frac{4x}{1 + 3x - 5x^2} = 0 \left( s = \frac{1}{x} \right) \end{aligned}$$

(b) Given

$$X(s) = \frac{3s + 2}{s(s^2 + 3s + 2)}$$

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Initial value } x(0^+) &= \text{Lt}_{s \rightarrow \infty} sX(s) = \text{Lt}_{s \rightarrow \infty} s \frac{3s + 2}{s(s^2 + 3s + 2)} = \text{Lt}_{s \rightarrow \infty} \frac{3s + 2}{s^2 + 3s + 2} \\ &= \text{Lt}_{x \rightarrow 0} \frac{3x + 2x^2}{1 + 3x + 2x^2} = 0 \left( s = \frac{1}{x} \right) \end{aligned}$$

**EXAMPLE 9.22** Find  $x(\infty)$  if  $X(s)$  is given by

$$(a) X(s) = \frac{1}{s - 4}$$

$$(b) X(s) = \frac{s - 2}{s(s + 4)}$$

$$(c) X(s) = \frac{2}{s^2 + 3}$$

$$(d) X(s) = \frac{2}{s^2 + 4s - 2}$$

**Solution:**

(a) Given

$$X(s) = \frac{1}{s - 4}$$

The pole ( $s = 4$ ) lies in the right half of the s-plane, therefore,  $x(\infty) = \infty$ . (The system is unstable and final value theorem cannot be applied to it)

(b) Given

$$X(s) = \frac{s - 2}{s(s + 4)}$$

Final value

$$\begin{aligned} x(\infty) &= \text{Lt}_{s \rightarrow 0} sX(s) = \text{Lt}_{s \rightarrow 0} s \frac{s - 2}{s(s + 4)} \\ &= -\frac{2}{4} = -\frac{1}{2} \end{aligned}$$

(c) Given

$$X(s) = \frac{2}{s^2 + 3}$$

The poles ( $s = \pm j\sqrt{3}$ ) are lying on the imaginary axis, therefore,  $x(\infty)$  is not defined.

(d) Given

$$X(s) = \frac{2}{s^2 + 4s - 2}$$

Final value  $x(\infty) = \text{Lt}_{s \rightarrow 0} sX(s) = \text{Lt}_{s \rightarrow 0} s \frac{2}{s^2 + 4s - 2} = 0$

**EXAMPLE 9.23** Find the initial and final values, if they exist of the signal with Laplace transform given, below.

(a)  $X(s) = \frac{s+4}{s^2+3s+5}$

(b)  $X(s) = \frac{s^2+3s+6}{s^2+2s+3}$

**Solution:**

(a) Given

$$X(s) = \frac{s+4}{s^2+3s+5}$$

Initial value  $x(0) = \text{Lt}_{s \rightarrow \infty} sX(s) = \text{Lt}_{s \rightarrow \infty} s \frac{s(s+4)}{s^2+3s+5} = \text{Lt}_{s \rightarrow \infty} \frac{s^2+4s}{s^2+3s+5}$

$$= \text{Lt}_{x \rightarrow 0} \frac{(1/x)^2 + 4(1/x)}{(1/x)^2 + 3(1/x) + 5} = \text{Lt}_{x \rightarrow 0} \frac{1+4x}{1+3x+5x^2} \left( s = \frac{1}{x} \right) = 1$$

Final value

$$x(\infty) = \text{Lt}_{s \rightarrow 0} sX(s)$$

$$= \text{Lt}_{s \rightarrow 0} \frac{s(s+4)}{s^2+3s+5} = 0$$

(b) Given

$$X(s) = \frac{s^2+3s+6}{s^2+2s+3}$$

Initial value  $x(0) = \text{Lt}_{s \rightarrow \infty} sX(s) = \text{Lt}_{s \rightarrow \infty} s \frac{s(s^2+3s+6)}{s^2+2s+3} = \infty$

The initial value of the time function does not exist because  $\text{Lt}_{s \rightarrow \infty} \frac{s(s^2+3s+6)}{s^2+2s+3}$

does not exist. The reason is that the inverse Laplace transform of  $X(s)$  has the term  $\delta(t)$ .

Final value  $x(\infty) = \text{Lt}_{s \rightarrow 0} \frac{s(s^2+3s+6)}{s^2+2s+3} = 0$

**EXAMPLE 9.24** The signal  $x(t) = \sin 2t$  oscillates between +1 and -1 as  $t \rightarrow \infty$ . So it does not have a final value. Show that the application of the final value theorem gives an incorrect result for the signal.

**Solution:** To apply the final value theorem, first find the Laplace transform of  $x(t) = \sin 2t$ . We know that

$$\mathcal{L}[\sin 2t] = \frac{2}{s^2 + 4}$$

The final value theorem of Laplace transform says that  $\lim_{t \rightarrow \infty} x(t) = x(\infty) = \lim_{s \rightarrow 0} sX(s)$ .

$$\therefore x(\infty) = \lim_{s \rightarrow 0} s \frac{2}{s^2 + 4} = 0$$

Since  $x(t) = \sin 2t$  oscillates as  $t \rightarrow \infty$ , and since  $x(\infty)$  obtained is equal to zero, we can conclude that the application of the final value theorem gives an incorrect result for this signal.

**EXAMPLE 9.25** Verify the initial value theorem for the following functions:

$$(a) x(t) = 4 - 2e^{3t} \quad (b) x(t) = 3e^{-5t}$$

**Solution:**

(a) Given

$$x(t) = 4 - 2e^{3t}$$

$$X(s) = \frac{4}{s} - \frac{2}{s-3} = \frac{2s-12}{s(s-3)} = \frac{2(s-6)}{s(s-3)}$$

$$x(0) = [x(t)]_{t=0} = [4 - 2e^{3t}]_{t=0} = 4 - 2 = 2$$

Using initial value theorem, we get

$$x(0) = \lim_{s \rightarrow \infty} sX(s) = \lim_{s \rightarrow \infty} \frac{s2(s-6)}{s(s-3)} = \lim_{s \rightarrow \infty} \frac{2(1-6/s)}{(1-3/s)} = 2$$

Since  $x(0)$  is same in both cases, the initial value theorem is verified.

(b) Given

$$x(t) = 3e^{-5t}$$

$$X(s) = \frac{3}{s+5}$$

$$x(0) = [x(t)]_{t=0} = [3e^{-5t}]_{t=0} = 3$$

Using initial value theorem, we get

$$x(0) = \lim_{s \rightarrow \infty} sX(s) = \lim_{s \rightarrow \infty} s \frac{3}{s+5}$$

$$= \lim_{s \rightarrow \infty} \frac{3}{1+5/s} = 3$$

Since  $x(0)$  is same in both cases, the initial value theorem is verified.

**EXAMPLE 9.26** Verify the final value theorem for  $x(t) = 7(1 - e^{-2t})$ .

**Solution:** Given  $x(t) = 7(1 - e^{-2t})$

$$\begin{aligned} X(s) &= \text{L}[x(t)] = \text{L}[7(1 - e^{-2t})] = 7\text{L}[1 - e^{-2t}] \\ &= 7\left(\frac{1}{s} - \frac{1}{s+2}\right) = \frac{14}{s(s+2)} \\ x(\infty) &= [x(t)]_{t=\infty} = 7[1 - e^{-2t}]_{t=\infty} = 7 \end{aligned}$$

Using final value theorem, we get

$$x(\infty) = \lim_{s \rightarrow 0} sX(s) = \lim_{s \rightarrow 0} s \frac{14}{s(s+2)} = 7$$

Since  $x(\infty)$  is same in both cases, the final value theorem is verified.

**EXAMPLE 9.27** By first determining  $x(t)$ , verify the initial and final value theorems for each of the following:

$$(a) \quad X(s) = \frac{1}{s+3}$$

$$(b) \quad X(s) = \frac{s}{(s+1)(s+2)}$$

**Solution:**

$$(a) \quad \text{Given} \quad X(s) = \frac{1}{s+3}$$

$$\therefore \quad x(t) = \text{L}^{-1}[X(s)] = \text{L}^{-1}\left(\frac{1}{s+3}\right) = e^{-3t}$$

$$\therefore \quad \text{Initial value } x(0) = [x(t)]_{t=0} = [e^{-3t}]_{t=0} = e^0 = 1$$

$$\therefore \quad \text{Final value } x(\infty) = [x(t)]_{t=\infty} = [e^{-3t}]_{t=\infty} = e^{-3\infty} = 0$$

By initial value theorem, we have

$$x(0) = \lim_{s \rightarrow \infty} sX(s) = \lim_{s \rightarrow \infty} s \left(\frac{1}{s+3}\right) = \lim_{s \rightarrow \infty} \frac{1}{1+3/s} = 1$$

By final value theorem, we have

$$x(\infty) = \lim_{s \rightarrow 0} sX(s) = \lim_{s \rightarrow 0} s \left(\frac{1}{s+3}\right) = 0$$

Hence, the initial and final value theorems are verified.

$$(b) \quad \text{Given} \quad X(s) = \frac{s}{(s+1)(s+2)}$$

Taking partial fractions, we get

$$X(s) = \frac{s}{(s+1)(s+2)} = \frac{A}{s+1} + \frac{B}{s+2} = -\frac{1}{s+1} + \frac{2}{s+2}$$

$$\therefore x(t) = L^{-1}[X(s)] = L^{-1}\left(-\frac{1}{s+1} + \frac{2}{s+2}\right) = -e^{-t} + 2e^{-2t}$$

$$\therefore \text{Initial value } x(0) = -e^{-0} + 2e^{-2(0)} = -1 + 2 = 1$$

$$\text{Final value } x(\infty) = -e^{-\infty} + 2e^{-2(\infty)} = -0 + 0 = 0$$

By initial value theorem, we have

$$x(0) = \lim_{s \rightarrow \infty} sX(s) = \lim_{s \rightarrow \infty} s \frac{s}{(s+1)(s+2)} = \lim_{s \rightarrow \infty} \frac{1}{1 + (3/s) + (2/s^2)} = 1$$

By final value theorem, we have

$$x(\infty) = \lim_{s \rightarrow 0} sX(s) = \lim_{s \rightarrow 0} s \frac{s}{(s+1)(s+2)} = 0$$

Hence the initial and final value theorems are verified.

**EXAMPLE 9.28** Draw the pole-zero plot and determine the magnitude of the Fourier transform of the signal whose Laplace transform is:

$$X(s) = \frac{s^2 - s + 1}{s^2 + s + 1}$$

**Solution:** Given

$$X(s) = \frac{s^2 - s + 1}{s^2 + s + 1}$$

The zeros of  $X(s)$  are given by the roots of the numerator,  $s^2 - s + 1 = 0$ , i.e.

$$s = \frac{1 \pm \sqrt{1-4}}{2} = \frac{1}{2} \pm j \frac{\sqrt{3}}{2}$$

The poles of  $X(s)$  are given by the roots of the denominator,  $s^2 + s + 1 = 0$

$$\text{i.e. } s = \frac{-1 \pm \sqrt{1-4}}{2} = \frac{-1}{2} \pm j \frac{\sqrt{3}}{2}$$

The pole-zero plot is shown in Figure 9.14.

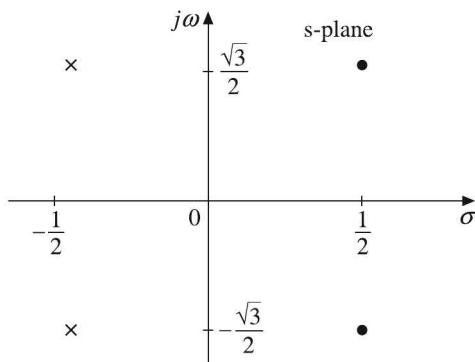


Figure 9.14 Pole-zero plot for Example 9.28.

We know that, the Fourier transform

$$\begin{aligned}
 X(\omega) &= [X(s)]_{s=j\omega} \\
 &= \frac{(j\omega)^2 - j\omega + 1}{(j\omega)^2 + j\omega + 1} \\
 &= \frac{(1 - \omega^2) - j\omega}{(1 - \omega^2) + j\omega} \\
 \therefore |X(\omega)| &= \frac{\sqrt{(1 - \omega^2)^2 + \omega^2}}{\sqrt{(1 - \omega^2)^2 + \omega^2}} = 1
 \end{aligned}$$

The magnitude of the Fourier transform of the signal,  $|X(\omega)| = 1$ .

Some useful Laplace transform pairs are given in Appendix B (Table B.5). The properties of Laplace transform are given in Appendix B (Table B.6).

## 9.8 INVERSION OF UNILATERAL LAPLACE TRANSFORM

The direct method of finding the inverse Laplace transform of  $X(s)$  using the equation

$$x(t) = \frac{1}{2\pi j} \int_{c-j\infty}^{c+j\infty} X(s) e^{st} ds$$

is quite tedious and time consuming. So the inverse Laplace transform of  $X(s)$  is usually obtained by using partial fraction expansion. It uses the one-to-one relationship between a signal and its unilateral Laplace transform. The partial fraction expansion can be used only for proper rational functions, i.e. for functions in which the order of the numerator is smaller than that of the denominator.

Let  $X(s) = \frac{N(s)}{D(s)} = \frac{b_M s^M + b_{M-1} s^{M-1} + \dots + b_1 s + b_0}{s^N + a_{N-1} s^{N-1} + \dots + a_1 s + a_0}$

If  $M = N$ , i.e.  $\text{Deg } N(s) = \text{Deg } D(s)$ , then divide the numerator by the denominator

$$X(s) = C + \frac{N^1(s)}{D(s)}$$

where  $C$  is a constant and  $\text{Deg } N^1(s) < \text{Deg } D(s)$ .

Since a constant  $C$  has an inverse Laplace transform  $C\delta(t)$ ,  $\text{Deg } N(s) = \text{Deg } D(s)$  implies that  $x(t)$ , the inverse Laplace transform of  $X(s)$  has an impulse.

If  $\text{Deg } N(s) > \text{Deg } D(s)$ , divide the numerator by the denominator and write  $X(s)$  as

$$X(s) = \text{Terms with powers of } s \text{ greater than or equal to zero} + \frac{N^1(s)}{D(s)}$$

where  $\text{Deg } N^1(s) < \text{Deg } D(s)$

In this case,  $x(t)$  will include impulses and their derivatives. Usually, we do not come across such functions. So we consider the usual case  $X(s) = N(s)/D(s)$  where  $\text{Deg } N(s) < \text{Deg } D(s)$ .

Under this condition, we proceed as follows: If the given  $X(s)$  is of any of the standard forms, we straight away write down its inverse transform. If the given  $X(s)$  is not of any of the standard forms,  $D(s)$  is factorized. The roots of the characteristic equation,  $D(s) = 0$  are called the poles of  $X(s)$ .

$X(s)$  can be expressed as:

$$X(s) = \frac{N(s)}{D(s)} = \frac{b_M s^M + b_{M-1} s^{M-1} + \dots + b_1 s + b_0}{\prod_{k=1}^N (s - P_k)}$$

We shall now consider two possible cases that arise. (i) Distinct poles, (ii) Multiple poles.

### 9.8.1 Distinct Poles

If all the poles  $P_k$  are distinct, then we may write  $X(s)$  as a sum of single pole terms given by

$$X(s) = \frac{K_1}{s - P_1} + \frac{K_2}{s - P_2} + \dots + \frac{K_i}{s - P_i} + \dots + \frac{K_n}{s - P_n}$$

To determine the value of  $K_i$ , multiply both sides by  $(s - P_i)$  and then put  $s = P_i$ . We then have

$$(s - P_i) X(s) \Big|_{s=P_i} = \left[ (s - P_i) \frac{K_1}{s - P_1} + (s - P_i) \frac{K_2}{s - P_2} + \dots + (s - P_i) \frac{K_i}{s - P_i} + \dots + (s - P_i) \frac{K_n}{s - P_n} \right] \Big|_{s=P_i}$$

In the RHS of the above equation all the terms except  $K_i$  vanish. Hence, we get

$$K_i = (s - P_i) X(s) \Big|_{s=P_i}$$

### 9.8.2 Multiple Poles

In this case, all the poles are not distinct. Some of the poles may repeat. Let the pole  $P_i$  repeat  $l$  times. Then, if all the other poles are distinct, we write

$$X(s) = \frac{K_1}{s - P_1} + \frac{K_2}{s - P_2} + \dots + \frac{K_{i1}}{(s - P_i)} + \frac{K_{i2}}{(s - P_i)^2} + \frac{K_{il}}{(s - P_i)^l} + \dots + \frac{K_n}{(s - P_n)}$$

The coefficient  $K_{il}$  is obtained by multiplying both sides of the above equation by  $(s - P_i)^l$  and evaluating it at  $s = P_i$ .

$$\therefore K_{il} = (s - P_i)^l X(s) \Big|_{s=P_i}$$

The coefficients  $K_{i(l-b)}$  are evaluated by multiplying both sides of the preceding equation by  $(s - P_i)^l$  differentiating  $(l - b)$  times and then evaluating the resultant equation at  $s = P_i$ . Thus,

$$\begin{aligned}
 K_{i(l-1)} &= \frac{d}{ds} [(s - P_i)^l X(s)] \Big|_{s=P_i} \\
 &\vdots \qquad \qquad \vdots \\
 K_{i(l-b)} &= \frac{1}{b!} \left\{ \frac{d^b}{ds^b} [(s - P_i)^l X(s)] \right\} \Big|_{s=P_i}
 \end{aligned}$$

### 9.8.3 Complex Roots

If  $X(s)$  has complex poles, then the partial fraction expansion of the same can be expressed as:

$$X(s) = \frac{K_1}{s - P_1} + \frac{K_1^*}{s - P_1^*}$$

where  $K_1^*$  is complex conjugate of  $K_1$  and  $P_1^*$  is complex conjugate of  $P_1$ . In other words, complex conjugate poles result in complex conjugate coefficients.

#### Alternate method

The above procedure of finding partial fractions involves manipulation of complex numbers. When the denominator has complex roots, the complex pair can be expressed as a single quadratic factor instead of having first order partial fractions. That is, if  $s = -a \pm jb$ , we can retain the quadratic factor.

$$D(s) = (s + a + jb)(s + a - jb) = (s + a)^2 + b^2$$

**EXAMPLE 9.29** Find the inverse Laplace transforms for the following:

- |  |                             |
|--|-----------------------------|
| (a) $\frac{1}{(s+1)^2}$                                  | (b) $\frac{1}{(s+1)^2+1}$   |
| (c) $\frac{s}{(s+2)^2}$                                  | (d) $\frac{s}{(s+2)^2+1}$   |
| (e) $\frac{s}{(s-b)^2+a^2}$                              | (f) $\frac{s}{2s^2-8}$      |
| (g) $\frac{s}{s^2a^2+b^2}$                               | (h) $\frac{s}{(s^2+a^2)^2}$ |
| (i) $\frac{s^2}{(s-1)^4}$                                | (j) $\frac{1}{s(s+2)^3}$    |
| (k) $X(s) = \frac{2s+1}{s+2}; \operatorname{Re}(s) > -2$ |                             |

**Solution:**

(a) Given

$$X(s) = \frac{1}{(s+1)^2}$$

$$\begin{aligned} x(t) &= L^{-1}[X(s)] = L^{-1}\left[\frac{1}{(s+1)^2}\right] \\ &= e^{-t}L^{-1}\left(\frac{1}{s^2}\right) = e^{-t}tu(t) = te^{-t}u(t) \end{aligned}$$

(b) Given

$$X(s) = \frac{1}{(s+1)^2 + 1}$$

$$\begin{aligned} x(t) &= L^{-1}[X(s)] = L^{-1}\left[\frac{1}{(s+1)^2 + 1}\right] \\ &= e^{-t}L^{-1}\left(\frac{1}{s^2 + 1}\right) = e^{-t}\sin tu(t) \end{aligned}$$

(c) Given  $X(s) = \frac{s}{(s+2)^2}$

$$\begin{aligned} x(t) &= L^{-1}[X(s)] = L^{-1}\left[\frac{s}{(s+2)^2}\right] = L^{-1}\left[\frac{s+2-2}{(s+2)^2}\right] \\ &= L^{-1}\left[\frac{s+2}{(s+2)^2} - \frac{2}{(s+2)^2}\right] = L^{-1}\left(\frac{1}{s+2}\right) - 2L^{-1}\left[\frac{1}{(s+2)^2}\right] \\ &= e^{-2t} - 2e^{-2t}L^{-1}\left(\frac{1}{s^2}\right) = e^{-2t}(1 - 2t)u(t) \end{aligned}$$

(d) Given

$$X(s) = \frac{s}{(s+2)^2 + 1}$$

$$\begin{aligned} x(t) &= L^{-1}[X(s)] = L^{-1}\left[\frac{s}{(s+2)^2 + 1}\right] = L^{-1}\left[\frac{(s+2)-2}{(s+2)^2 + 1}\right] \\ &= L^{-1}\left[\frac{s+2}{(s+2)^2 + 1}\right] - 2L^{-1}\left[\frac{1}{(s+2)^2 + 1}\right] \\ &= e^{-2t}L^{-1}\left(\frac{s}{s^2 + 1}\right) - 2e^{-2t}L^{-1}\left(\frac{1}{s^2 + 1}\right) \\ &= [e^{-2t}\cos t - 2e^{-2t}\sin t]u(t) \end{aligned}$$

(e) Given  $X(s) = \frac{s}{(s-b)^2 + a^2}$

$$\begin{aligned} x(t) &= L^{-1}\left[\frac{s}{(s-b)^2 + a^2}\right] = L^{-1}\left[\frac{s-b+b}{(s-b)^2 + a^2}\right] \\ &= L^{-1}\left[\frac{s-b}{(s-b)^2 + a^2}\right] + L^{-1}\left[\frac{b}{(s-b)^2 + a^2}\right] \\ &= L^{-1}\left[\frac{s-b}{(s-b)^2 + a^2}\right] + \frac{b}{a}L^{-1}\left[\frac{a}{(s-b)^2 + a^2}\right] \\ &= e^{bt}L^{-1}\left(\frac{s}{s^2 + a^2}\right) + \frac{b}{a}e^{bt}L^{-1}\left(\frac{a}{s^2 + a^2}\right) \\ &= \left(e^{bt} \cos at + \frac{b}{a}e^{bt} \sin at\right)u(t) \end{aligned}$$

(f) Given  $X(s) = \frac{s}{2s^2 - 8}$

$$\therefore X(s) = \frac{1}{2} \frac{s}{(s^2 - 4)} = \frac{1}{2} \left( \frac{s}{s^2 - 2^2} \right)$$

We know that

$$\cosh \omega t = \frac{s}{s^2 - \omega^2}$$

$$\therefore x(t) = \frac{1}{2} L^{-1}\left(\frac{s}{s^2 - 2^2}\right) = \frac{1}{2} \cosh 2t$$

(g) Given  $X(s) = \frac{s}{s^2 a^2 + b^2} = \frac{1}{a^2} \left[ \frac{s}{s^2 + (b/a)^2} \right]$

We know that

$$\begin{aligned} L^{-1}\left(\frac{s}{s^2 + \omega^2}\right) &= \cos \omega t \\ \therefore L^{-1}\left[\frac{s}{s^2 + (b/a)^2}\right] &= \cos\left(\frac{b}{a}\right)t \\ \therefore x(t) &= L^{-1}\left[\frac{1}{a^2} \frac{s}{s^2 + (b/a)^2}\right] = \frac{1}{a^2} \cos\left(\frac{b}{a}\right)t \end{aligned}$$

(h) Given

$$X(s) = \frac{s}{(s^2 + a^2)^2}$$

$$x(t) = L^{-1} \left[ \frac{s}{(s^2 + a^2)^2} \right] = \frac{1}{2a} \left[ -\frac{d}{ds} \left\{ \frac{a}{s^2 + a^2} \right\} \right]$$

$$= \frac{1}{2a} t L^{-1} \left( \frac{a}{s^2 + a^2} \right) = \frac{1}{2a} t \sin at$$

(i) Given

$$X(s) = \frac{s^2}{(s-1)^4}$$

$$x(t) = L^{-1}[X(s)] = L^{-1} \left[ \frac{s^2}{(s-1)^4} \right]$$

$s$  in the numerator corresponds to differential of time domain function

$$\therefore L^{-1} \left[ \frac{s^2}{(s-1)^4} \right] = \frac{d}{dt} \left\{ L^{-1} \left[ \frac{s}{(s-1)^4} \right] \right\} = \frac{d}{dt} \left\{ \frac{d}{dt} \left[ L^{-1} \left( \frac{1}{(s-1)^4} \right) \right] \right\}$$

$$= \frac{d}{dt} \left\{ \frac{d}{dt} \left[ e^t L^{-1} \left( \frac{1}{s^4} \right) \right] \right\} = \frac{d}{dt} \left[ \frac{d}{dt} \left( \frac{1}{6} t^3 e^t \right) \right]$$

$$= \frac{1}{6} \frac{d}{dt} [t^3 e^t + e^t (3t^2)] = \frac{1}{6} \frac{d}{dt} [t^3 e^t + 3t^2 e^t]$$

$$= \frac{1}{6} [t^3 e^t + 3t^2 e^t + 3t^2 e^t + 6t e^t]$$

$$= t e^t \left( 1 + t + \frac{t^2}{6} \right)$$

(j) Given

$$X(s) = \frac{1}{s(s+2)^3}$$

$$x(t) = L^{-1}[X(s)] = L^{-1} \left[ \frac{1}{s(s+2)^3} \right]$$

We know that  $s$  in the denominator corresponds to integration

$$\therefore L^{-1} \left[ \frac{1}{s(s+2)^3} \right] = \int_0^t L^{-1} \left[ \frac{1}{(s+2)^3} \right] ds = \int_0^t e^{-2t} L^{-1} \left( \frac{1}{s^3} \right) ds$$

$$= \int_0^t e^{-2t} \frac{t^2}{2} dt = \frac{1}{2} \left\{ \left[ \frac{t^2 e^{-2t}}{-2} \right]_0^t - \int_0^t \frac{e^{-2t}}{-2} 2t dt \right\}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
 &= \frac{1}{2} \left\{ \frac{t^2 e^{-2t}}{-2} + \left[ t \frac{e^{-2t}}{-2} \right]_0^t - \int_0^t \frac{e^{-2t}}{-2} dt \right\} \\
 &= \frac{1}{4} [(-t^2 e^{-2t} - te^{-2t})] + \left[ \frac{e^{-2t}}{-2} \right]_0^t = \frac{1}{4} \left( -t^2 e^{-2t} - te^{-2t} - \frac{1}{2} e^{-2t} + \frac{1}{2} \right) \\
 &= \frac{1}{8} (-2t^2 e^{-2t} - 2te^{-2t} - e^{-2t} + 1)
 \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
 (\text{k}) \quad \text{Given} \quad X(s) &= \frac{2s+1}{s+2} \\
 &= \frac{2s+4-3}{s+2} = \frac{2(s+2)}{s+2} - \frac{3}{s+2} = 2 - \frac{3}{s+2}
 \end{aligned}$$

Taking inverse Laplace transform on both sides, we have

$$x(t) = 2\delta(t) - 3e^{-2t} u(t)$$

**EXAMPLE 9.30** Find the inverse Laplace transform of the following:

$$\begin{array}{ll}
 (\text{a}) \quad X(s) = \frac{s+1}{(s+1)^2+4}; \quad \text{Re}(s) > -1 & (\text{b}) \quad X(s) = \frac{s^3+1}{s(s+1)(s+2)} \\
 (\text{c}) \quad X(s) = \frac{s-1}{(s+1)(s^2+2s+5)} & (\text{d}) \quad X(s) = \frac{3s^2+22s+27}{(s^2+3s+2)(s^2+2s+5)} \\
 (\text{e}) \quad X(s) = \frac{1+e^{-2s}}{3s^2+2s} &
 \end{array}$$

**Solution:**

$$\begin{aligned}
 (\text{a}) \quad \text{Given} \quad X(s) &= \frac{s+1}{(s+1)^2+4}; \quad \text{Re}(s) > -1 \\
 L^{-1} \left[ \frac{s+1}{(s+1)^2+4} \right] &= e^{-t} L^{-1} \left( \frac{s}{s^2+2^2} \right) = e^{-t} \cos 2t u(t)
 \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
 (\text{b}) \quad \text{Given} \quad X(s) &= \frac{s^3+1}{s(s+1)(s+2)} \\
 L^{-1} \left[ \frac{s^3+1}{s(s+1)(s+2)} \right] &= L^{-1} \left( \frac{s^3+1}{s^3+3s^2+2s} \right)
 \end{aligned}$$

Since the order of numerator and denominator are equal, partial fractions cannot be obtained directly.

$$\therefore \frac{s^3 + 3s^2 + 2s}{s^3 + 3s^2 + 2s} = 1 - \frac{3s^2 + 2s - 1}{s^3 + 3s^2 + 2s}$$

$$\therefore X(s) = \frac{s^3 + 1}{s^3 + 3s^2 + 2s} = 1 - \frac{3s^2 + 2s - 1}{s^3 + 3s^2 + 2s}$$

$$\frac{3s^2 + 2s - 1}{s(s+1)(s+2)} = \frac{A}{s} + \frac{B}{s+1} + \frac{C}{s+2} = \frac{-1/2}{s} + \frac{7/2}{s+2}$$

where  $A = \left. \frac{3s^2 + 2s - 1}{(s+1)(s+2)} \right|_{s=0} = -\frac{1}{2}$

$$B = \left. \frac{3s^2 + 2s - 1}{s(s+2)} \right|_{s=-1} = \frac{3 - 2 - 1}{-1(-1+2)} = 0$$

$$C = \left. \frac{3s^2 + 2s - 1}{s(s+1)} \right|_{s=-2} = \frac{12 - 4 - 1}{2} = \frac{7}{2}$$

$$\therefore X(s) = 1 - \left( \frac{-1/2}{s} + \frac{7/2}{s+2} \right) = 1 + \frac{1}{2} \frac{1}{s} - \frac{7}{2} \frac{1}{s+2}$$

$$\therefore x(t) = \delta(t) + \frac{1}{2} u(t) - \frac{7}{2} e^{-2t} u(t)$$

(c) Given  $X(s) = \frac{s-1}{(s+1)(s^2+2s+5)}$

$$\frac{s-1}{(s+1)(s^2+2s+5)} = \frac{A}{s+1} + \frac{Bs+C}{s^2+2s+5}$$

$$\therefore X(s) = \frac{-1/2}{s+1} + \frac{(1/2)s + (3/2)}{s^2+2s+5}$$

$$= -\frac{1}{2} \frac{1}{s+1} + \frac{(1/2)(s+1+2)}{(s+1)^2+2^2}$$

$$= -\frac{1}{2} \frac{1}{s+1} + \frac{1}{2} \frac{s+1}{(s+1)^2+2^2} + \frac{1}{2} \frac{2}{(s+1)^2+2^2}$$

$$x(t) = -\frac{1}{2} e^{-t} u(t) + \frac{1}{2} e^{-t} \cos 2t u(t) + \frac{1}{2} e^{-t} \sin 2t u(t)$$

(d) Given  $X(s) = \frac{3s^2 + 22s + 27}{(s^2 + 3s + 2)(s^2 + 2s + 5)}$

$$X(s) = \frac{3s^2 + 22s + 27}{(s+1)(s+2)(s^2 + 2s + 5)} = \frac{A}{s+1} + \frac{B}{s+2} + \frac{Cs + D}{s^2 + 2s + 5}$$

$$\therefore X(s) = 2 \frac{1}{s+1} + \frac{13}{5} \frac{1}{s+2} - \frac{79}{15} \frac{s}{(s+1)^2 + 2^2} - \frac{19}{3} \frac{1}{(s+1)^2 + 2^2}$$

$$= 2 \frac{1}{s+1} + \frac{13}{5} \frac{1}{s+2} - \frac{79}{15} \frac{s+1}{(s+1)^2 + 2^2} - \frac{8}{15} \frac{2}{(s+1)^2 + 2^2}$$

$$\therefore x(t) = 2e^{-t} u(t) + \frac{13}{5} e^{-2t} u(t) - \frac{79}{15} e^{-t} \cos 2t u(t) - \frac{8}{15} e^{-t} \sin 2t u(t)$$

(e) Given  $X(s) = \frac{1 + e^{-2s}}{3s^2 + 2s}$

$$L^{-1}\left(\frac{1}{3s^2 + 2s}\right) = L^{-1}\left\{\frac{1}{3s[s + (2/3)]}\right\} = L^{-1}\left\{-\frac{1}{s} + \frac{1}{[s + (2/3)]}\right\} = e^{-(2/3)t} u(t) - u(t)$$

$$L^{-1}\left(\frac{e^{-2s}}{3s^2 + 2s}\right) = L^{-1}\left(\frac{1}{3s^2 + 2s}\right)_{t=t-2} = e^{-(2/3)(t-2)} u(t-2) - u(t-2)$$

$$\therefore x(t) = e^{-(2/3)t} u(t) - u(t) + e^{-(2/3)(t-2)} u(t-2) - u(t-2)$$

**EXAMPLE 9.31** Find the inverse Laplace transform for the following:

(a) $\log\left(\frac{1+s}{s^2}\right)$	(b) $\log\left(1 + \frac{\omega^2}{s^2}\right)$
(c) $\log\left[\frac{s(s+1)}{s^2+1}\right]$	(d) $\log\left(\frac{s^2+a^2}{s^2-b^2}\right)$
(e) $\ln\left(\frac{s+a}{s+b}\right)$	

**Solution:**

(a) Given  $X(s) = \log\left(\frac{1+s}{s^2}\right)$

Let  $L^{-1}[X(s)] = L^{-1}\left[\log\left(\frac{1+s}{s^2}\right)\right] = x(t)$

$$\begin{aligned}
 \therefore L[x(t)] &= \log\left(\frac{1+s}{s^2}\right) \\
 L[t x(t)] &= \frac{-d}{ds} \left[ \log\left(\frac{1+s}{s^2}\right) \right] \\
 &= \frac{-d}{ds} [\log(1+s) - \log s^2] \\
 &= \frac{-1}{1+s} + \frac{1}{s^2} 2s \\
 L[tx(t)] &= \frac{2}{s} - \frac{1}{s+1} \\
 \therefore tx(t) &= L^{-1}\left(\frac{2}{s} - \frac{1}{s+1}\right) \\
 &= 2L^{-1}\left(\frac{1}{s}\right) - L^{-1}\left(\frac{1}{s+1}\right) = (2)(1) - e^{-t} \\
 x(t) &= \frac{2 - e^{-t}}{t}
 \end{aligned}$$

(b) Given

$$\begin{aligned}
 X(s) &= \log\left(1 + \frac{\omega^2}{s^2}\right) \\
 \text{Let } x(t) &= L^{-1}[X(s)] = L^{-1}\left[\log\left(1 + \frac{\omega^2}{s^2}\right)\right]
 \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
 \therefore L[x(t)] &= \log\left(1 + \frac{\omega^2}{s^2}\right) \\
 &= \log\left(\frac{s^2 + \omega^2}{s^2}\right) \\
 &= \log(s^2 + \omega^2) - \log s^2
 \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
 \therefore L[t x(t)] &= \frac{-d}{ds} [\log(s^2 + \omega^2) - \log s^2] \\
 &= \frac{-1}{s^2 + \omega^2} 2s + \frac{1}{s^2} 2s \\
 &= \frac{2}{s} - \frac{2s}{s^2 + \omega^2}
 \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}\therefore t x(t) &= L^{-1} \left( \frac{2}{s} - \frac{2s}{s^2 + \omega^2} \right) \\ &= L^{-1} \left( \frac{2}{s} - \frac{2s}{s^2 + \omega^2} \right) \\ &= (2)(1) - 2 \cos \omega t \\ &= 2(1 - \cos \omega t) \\ \therefore x(t) &= \frac{2(1 - \cos \omega t)}{t}\end{aligned}$$

(c) Given  $X(s) = \log \left[ \frac{s(s+1)}{s^2+1} \right]$

Let  $x(t) = L^{-1}[X(s)]$

$$= L^{-1} \left[ \log \frac{s(s+1)}{s^2+1} \right]$$

$$\begin{aligned}\therefore L[x(t)] &= \log \left[ \frac{s(s+1)}{s^2+1} \right] \\ &= \log s(s+1) - \log(s^2+1) \\ &= \log s + \log(s+1) - \log(s^2+1)\end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}L[t x(t)] &= -\frac{d}{ds} [\log s + \log(s+1) - \log(s^2+1)] \\ &= \frac{-1}{s} - \frac{1}{s+1} + \frac{2s}{s^2+1}\end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}t x(t) &= L^{-1} \left( \frac{-1}{s} - \frac{1}{s+1} + \frac{2s}{s^2+1} \right) \\ &= -L^{-1} \left( \frac{1}{s} \right) - L^{-1} \left( \frac{1}{s+1} \right) + 2L^{-1} \left( \frac{s}{s^2+1} \right) \\ &= -1 - e^{-t} + 2 \cos t\end{aligned}$$

$$\therefore x(t) = \frac{2 \cos t - e^{-t} - 1}{t}$$

(d) Given

$$X(s) = \log\left(\frac{s^2 + a^2}{s^2 - b^2}\right)$$

Let

$$x(t) = L^{-1}[X(s)] = L^{-1}\left[\log\left(\frac{s^2 + a^2}{s^2 - b^2}\right)\right]$$

$$L[x(t)] = \log\left(\frac{s^2 + a^2}{s^2 - b^2}\right) = \log(s^2 + a^2) - \log(s^2 - b^2)$$

$$L[t x(t)] = \frac{-d}{ds} [\log(s^2 + a^2) - \log(s^2 - b^2)]$$

$$= \frac{-1}{s^2 + a^2} 2s + \frac{1}{s^2 - b^2} 2s$$

$$= \frac{2s}{s^2 - b^2} - \frac{2s}{s^2 + a^2}$$

∴

$$t x(t) = L^{-1}\left(\frac{2s}{s^2 - b^2} - \frac{2s}{s^2 + a^2}\right)$$

$$= 2L^{-1}\left(\frac{s}{s^2 - b^2}\right) - 2L^{-1}\left(\frac{s}{s^2 + a^2}\right)$$

$$= 2 \cosh bt - 2 \cos at$$

∴

$$x(t) = \frac{2}{t} (\cosh bt - \cos at)$$

(e) Given

$$X(s) = \ln\left(\frac{s + a}{s + b}\right)$$

Let

$$x(t) = L^{-1}[X(s)] = L^{-1}\left[\ln\left(\frac{s + a}{s + b}\right)\right]$$

$$L[x(t)] = \ln\left(\frac{s + a}{s + b}\right)$$

$$= \ln(s + a) - \ln(s + b)$$

$$L[tx(t)] = \frac{-d}{ds} [\ln(s + a) - \ln(s + b)]$$

$$= \frac{-1}{s + a} + \frac{1}{s + b} = \frac{1}{s + b} - \frac{1}{s + a}$$

$$\begin{aligned}\therefore tx(t) &= L^{-1} \left( \frac{1}{s+b} - \frac{1}{s+a} \right) \\ &= L^{-1} \left( \frac{1}{s+b} \right) - L^{-1} \left( \frac{1}{s+a} \right) \\ &= e^{-bt} - e^{-at} \\ \therefore x(t) &= \frac{e^{-bt} - e^{-at}}{t}\end{aligned}$$

**EXAMPLE 9.32** Find the inverse Laplace transform of the following functions:

$$(a) X(s) = \frac{s+4}{s^2+5s+6}$$

$$(b) X(s) = \frac{s^2+3s+4}{s^3+5s^2+7s+3}$$

$$(c) X(s) = \frac{s+1}{s^3+4s^2+6s+4}$$

$$(d) X(s) = \frac{2s-1}{s^2+4s+8}$$

$$(e) X(s) = \frac{1+e^{-2s}}{s^2(s+1)}$$

$$(f) X(s) = \frac{s+2}{s^2(s+1)^2}$$

$$(g) X(s) = \frac{s+3}{s^2+10s+41}$$

$$(h) X(s) = \frac{s^2}{s^4+4a^4}$$

**Solution:**

$$(a) X(s) = \frac{s+4}{s^2+5s+6} = \frac{s+4}{(s+2)(s+3)} = \frac{A}{s+2} + \frac{B}{s+3}$$

$$\therefore A = (s+2) X(s) \Big|_{s=-2} = \frac{s+4}{s+3} \Big|_{s=-2} = \frac{-2+4}{-2+3} = 2$$

$$B = (s+3) X(s) \Big|_{s=-3} = \frac{s+4}{s+2} \Big|_{s=-3} = \frac{-3+4}{-3+2} = -1$$

$$\therefore X(s) = \frac{2}{(s+2)} - \frac{1}{(s+3)}$$

Taking inverse Laplace transform on both sides, we get

$$x(t) = 2e^{-2t} u(t) - e^{-3t} u(t)$$

$$(b) X(s) = \frac{s^2+3s+4}{s^3+5s^2+7s+3} = \frac{s^2+3s+4}{(s+3)(s+1)^2} = \frac{A}{s+3} + \frac{B}{(s+1)} + \frac{C}{(s+1)^2}$$

$$\therefore A = (s+3) X(s) \Big|_{s=-3} = \frac{s^2+3s+4}{(s+1)^2} \Big|_{s=-3} = \frac{9-9+4}{(-3+1)^2} = 1$$

$$\begin{aligned}
 B &= \frac{1}{1!} \frac{d}{ds} [(s+1)^2 X(s)] \Big|_{s=-1} = \frac{d}{ds} \left[ \frac{s^2 + 3s + 4}{s+3} \right] \Big|_{s=-1} \\
 &= \frac{(s+3)(2s+3) - (s^2 + 3s + 4)(1)}{(s+3)^2} \Big|_{s=-1} = 0 \\
 C &= (s+1)^2 X(s) \Big|_{s=-1} = \frac{s^2 + 3s + 4}{s+3} \Big|_{s=-1} = \frac{1-3+4}{-1+3} = 1 \\
 \therefore X(s) &= \frac{1}{s+3} + \frac{1}{(s+1)^2}
 \end{aligned}$$

Taking inverse Laplace transform on both sides, we get

$$x(t) = e^{-3t} u(t) + t e^{-t} u(t)$$

$$\begin{aligned}
 (c) \quad X(s) &= \frac{s+1}{s^3 + 4s^2 + 6s + 4} = \frac{s+1}{(s+2)(s^2 + 2s + 2)} = \frac{A}{s+2} + \frac{Bs+C}{s^2 + 2s + 2} \\
 &= \frac{A(s^2 + 2s + 2) + (Bs + C)(s + 2)}{(s+2)(s^2 + 2s + 2)} \\
 &= \frac{(A+B)s^2 + (2A+2B+C)s + 2A+2C}{(s+2)(s^2 + 2s + 2)}
 \end{aligned}$$

Comparing the numerators of LHS and RHS, we get

$$\begin{aligned}
 A + B &= 0 \\
 \therefore A &= -B \\
 2A + 2B + C &= 1 \\
 \therefore C &= 1 \\
 2A + 2C &= 1 \\
 \therefore 2A = 1 - 2 &= -1 \quad \text{or} \quad A = -1/2 \\
 \therefore B &= 1/2 \\
 \therefore X(s) &= \frac{-1/2}{s+2} + \frac{(1/2)s+1}{s^2+2s+2} = \frac{-(1/2)}{s+2} + \frac{(1/2)(s+1)+(1/2)}{(s+1)^2+(1)^2} \\
 &= \frac{-1/2}{s+2} + \frac{1}{2} \frac{(s+1)}{(s+1)^2+(1)^2} + \frac{1}{2} \frac{1}{(s+1)^2+(1)^2}
 \end{aligned}$$

Taking inverse Laplace transform on both sides, we get

$$x(t) = -\frac{1}{2} e^{-2t} u(t) + \frac{1}{2} e^{-t} \cos t u(t) + \frac{1}{2} e^{-t} \sin t u(t)$$

$$(d) \quad X(s) = \frac{2s-1}{s^2+4s+8} = \frac{2s-1}{(s+2)^2+(2)^2}$$

$$\frac{2(s+2)-5}{(s+2)^2+(2)^2} = \frac{2(s+2)}{(s+2)^2+(2)^2} - \frac{5}{2} \frac{2}{(s+2)^2+(2)^2}$$

Taking inverse Laplace transform on both sides, we get

$$(e) \quad x(t) = 2e^{-2t} \cos 2t u(t) - \frac{5}{2} e^{-2t} \sin 2t u(t)$$

$$X(s) = \frac{1 + e^{-2s}}{s^2(s+1)} = \frac{1}{s^2(s+1)} + \frac{e^{-2s}}{s^2(s+1)}$$

First we will find the inverse Laplace transform of  $1/s^2(s+1)$ .

$$\text{Let } X_1(s) = \frac{1}{s^2(s+1)} = \frac{A}{s} + \frac{B}{s^2} + \frac{C}{s+1}$$

$$C = (s+1) X_1(s) \Big|_{s=-1} = (s+1) \frac{1}{s^2(s+1)} \Big|_{s=-1} = \frac{1}{s^2} \Big|_{s=-1} = 1$$

$$B = s^2 X_1(s) \Big|_{s=0} = s^2 \frac{1}{s^2(s+1)} \Big|_{s=0} = \frac{1}{s+1} \Big|_{s=0} = 1$$

$$A = \frac{1}{1!} \frac{d}{ds} [s^2 X_1(s)] \Big|_{s=0} = \frac{d}{ds} \left[ s^2 \frac{1}{s^2(s+1)} \right] \Big|_{s=0}$$

$$= \frac{(s+1)0 - 1(1)}{(s+1)^2} \Big|_{s=0} = -1$$

$$\therefore X_1(s) = -\frac{1}{s} + \frac{1}{s^2} + \frac{1}{s+1}$$

Taking inverse Laplace transform on both sides, we get

$$x_1(t) = -u(t) + tu(t) + e^{-t}u(t) = [t-1 + e^{-t}]u(t)$$

Now, from the time shift theorem, we know that

$$\begin{aligned} L^{-1} \left[ \frac{e^{-2s}}{s^2(s+1)} \right] &= L^{-1} \left[ \frac{1}{s^2(s+1)} \right] \Big|_{t \rightarrow (t-2)} = x_1(t) \Big|_{t \rightarrow t-2} = [t-1 + e^{-t}] u(t) \Big|_{t \rightarrow (t-2)} \\ &= [(t-2) - 1 + e^{-(t-2)}] u(t-2) \\ &= [(t-3) + e^{-(t-2)}] u(t-2) \\ \therefore x(t) &= [t-1 + e^{-t}] u(t) + [(t-3) + e^{-(t-2)}] u(t-2) \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
 (f) \quad X(s) &= \frac{s+2}{s^2(s+1)^2} = \frac{A}{s} + \frac{B}{s^2} + \frac{C}{s+1} + \frac{D}{(s+1)^2} \\
 &= \frac{As(s+1)^2 + B(s+1)^2 + Cs^2(s+1) + Ds^2}{s^2(s+1)^2} \\
 &= \frac{(A+C)s^3 + (2A+B+C+D)s^2 + (A+2B)s + B}{s^2(s+1)^2}
 \end{aligned}$$

Comparing the numerators of LHS and RHS, we get

$$\begin{aligned}
 B &= 2 \\
 A + 2B &= 1 \quad \text{or} \quad A = 1 - 2B = 1 - 4 = -3 \\
 A + C &= 0 \\
 \therefore A &= -C \\
 \therefore C &= 3 \\
 2A + B + C + D &= 0 \\
 \text{i.e. } A + B + D &= 0 \\
 \text{i.e. } -3 + 2 + D &= 0 \\
 \text{i.e. } D &= 1 \\
 \therefore X(s) &= \frac{-3}{s} + \frac{2}{s^2} + \frac{3}{s+1} + \frac{1}{(s+1)^2}
 \end{aligned}$$

Taking inverse Laplace transform on both sides, we get

$$x(t) = -3u(t) + 2tu(t) + 3e^{-t}u(t) + te^{-t}u(t)$$

$$\begin{aligned}
 (g) \quad \text{Given } X(s) &= \frac{s+3}{s^2+10s+41} = \frac{s+3}{(s+5)^2+(4)^2} = \frac{s+5-2}{(s+5)^2+(4)^2} \\
 &= \frac{s+5}{(s+5)^2+(4)^2} - \frac{2}{(s+5)^2+(4)^2} = \frac{s+5}{(s+5)^2+(4)^2} - \frac{1}{2} \frac{4}{(s+5)^2+(4)^2}
 \end{aligned}$$

Taking inverse Laplace transform on both sides, we have

$$x(t) = e^{-5t} \cos 4t u(t) - \frac{1}{2} e^{-5t} \sin 4t u(t)$$

$$(h) \quad \text{Given } X(s) = \frac{s^2}{s^4+4a^4} = \frac{s^2}{(s^2-2as+2a^2)(s^2+2as+2a^2)}$$

Taking partial fractions, we have

$$\begin{aligned}
 X(s) &= \frac{As+B}{s^2-2as+2a^2} + \frac{Cs+D}{s^2+2as+2a^2} \\
 &= \frac{(1/4a)s}{s^2-2as+2a^2} - \frac{(1/4a)s}{s^2+2as+2a^2}
 \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
 \therefore x(t) &= L^{-1}[X(s)] = L^{-1}\left[\frac{(1/4a)s}{s^2 - 2as + 2a^2} - \frac{(1/4a)s}{s^2 + 2as + 2a^2}\right] \\
 &= \frac{1}{4a} \left[ L^{-1}\left(\frac{s}{s^2 - 2as + 2a^2}\right) - L^{-1}\left(\frac{s}{s^2 + 2as + 2a^2}\right) \right] \\
 &= \frac{1}{4a} \left\{ L^{-1}\left[\frac{(s-a)+a}{(s-a)^2+a^2}\right] - L^{-1}\left[\frac{(s+a)-a}{(s+a)^2+a^2}\right] \right\} \\
 &= \frac{1}{4a} \left\{ L^{-1}\left[\frac{s-a}{(s-a)^2+a^2}\right] + L^{-1}\left[\frac{a}{(s-a)^2+a^2}\right] - L^{-1}\left[\frac{s+a}{(s+a)^2+a^2}\right] \right. \\
 &\quad \left. + L^{-1}\left[\frac{a}{(s+a)^2+a^2}\right] \right\} \\
 &= \frac{1}{4a} \left\{ e^{at}L^{-1}\left[\frac{s}{(s^2+a^2)}\right] + e^{at}L^{-1}\left[\frac{a}{(s^2+a^2)}\right] - e^{-at}L^{-1}\left[\frac{s}{(s^2+a^2)}\right] \right. \\
 &\quad \left. + e^{-at}L^{-1}\left[\frac{a}{(s^2+a^2)}\right] \right\} \\
 &= \frac{1}{4a} [e^{at} \cos at + e^{at} \sin at - e^{-at} \cos at + e^{-at} \sin at] u(t) \\
 &= \frac{1}{4a} [\cos at(e^{at} - e^{-at}) + \sin at(e^{at} + e^{-at})] u(t) \\
 &= \frac{1}{4a} [2 \cos at \sinh at + 2 \sin at \cosh at] u(t) \\
 &= \frac{1}{2a} [\cos at \sinh at + \sin at \cosh at] u(t)
 \end{aligned}$$

**EXAMPLE 9.33** Given  $X(s) = \frac{s^2+5s+1}{s^2+3s+2}$ , find  $x(t)$  for  $t \geq 0$ .

**Solution:** Here the order of numerator and denominator are same. So it is an improper function. Therefore, we cannot directly take the partial fractions. A constant term which corresponds to an impulse function is to be removed by dividing the numerator with the denominator.

$$s^2 + 3s + 2 \mid s^2 + 5s + 1 \quad (1)$$

$$\begin{array}{r}
 s^2 + 5s + 1 \\
 \hline
 s^2 + 3s + 2 \\
 \hline
 2s - 1
 \end{array}$$

$$\therefore X(s) = \frac{s^2 + 5s + 1}{s^2 + 3s + 2} = 1 + \frac{2s - 1}{s^2 + 3s + 2} = 1 + \frac{2s - 1}{(s+1)(s+2)}$$

Now,  $\frac{2s - 1}{s^2 + 3s + 2}$  is a proper function and so we can take the partial fractions:

$$\frac{2s - 1}{(s+1)(s+2)} = \frac{A}{s+1} + \frac{B}{s+2} = \frac{-3}{s+1} + \frac{5}{s+2}$$

$$\therefore X(s) = 1 - 3\frac{1}{s+1} + 5\frac{1}{s+2}$$

Taking inverse Laplace transform on both sides, we have

$$x(t) = \delta(t) - 3e^{-t}u(t) + 5e^{-2t}u(t)$$

**EXAMPLE 9.34** Given  $X(s) = \frac{s^3 + 5s^2 + 13s + 8}{s^2 + 4s + 8}$ , find  $x(t)$  for  $t \geq 0$ .

**Solution:** Here  $X(s)$  is an improper function as the degree of the numerator polynomial is greater than the degree of the denominator polynomial. So we cannot take partial fractions. Hence first divide the numerator by the denominator to obtain a proper function.

$$\begin{aligned} & s^2 + 4s + 8 ) s^3 + 5s^2 + 13s + 8 ( s + 1 \\ & \quad \underline{s^3 + 4s^2 + 8s} \\ & \quad s^2 + 5s + 8 \\ & \quad \underline{s^2 + 4s + 8} \\ & \quad s \\ \therefore X(s) &= \frac{s^3 + 5s^2 + 13s + 8}{s^2 + 4s + 8} = (s+1) + \frac{s}{s^2 + 4s + 8} \\ &= (s+1) + \frac{(s+2)-2}{(s+2)^2 + 2^2} = (s+1) + \frac{s+2}{(s+2)^2 + 2^2} - \frac{2}{(s+2)^2 + 2^2} \end{aligned}$$

Taking inverse Laplace transform, we get

$$x(t) = \delta'(t) + \delta(t) + e^{-2t} \cos 2t u(t) - e^{-2t} \sin 2t u(t)$$

where  $\delta'(t)$  is the first derivative of  $\delta(t)$  with respect to time.

**EXAMPLE 9.35** Determine the function of time  $x(t)$  for each of the following Laplace transforms with their associated regions of convergence:

$$(a) \quad X(s) = \frac{s^2 - s + 1}{(s+1)^2}; \operatorname{Re}(s) > -1 \quad (b) \quad X(s) = \frac{(s+1)^2}{s^2 - s + 1}; \operatorname{Re}(s) > \frac{1}{2}$$

**Solution:**

(a) Given

$$X(s) = \frac{s^2 - s + 1}{(s+1)^2} = \frac{s^2 - s + 1}{s^2 + 2s + 1}; \operatorname{Re}(s) > -1$$

Here the order of the numerator and the denominator are same. So the given transfer function is an improper transfer function. First write it as a constant plus a proper transfer function.

$$\begin{aligned} & s^2 + 2s + 1 ) s^2 - s + 1 ( 1 \\ & \quad \underline{s^2 + 2s + 1} \\ & \quad \quad \quad -3s \\ \therefore \quad X(s) &= \frac{s^2 - s + 1}{(s+1)^2} = 1 - \frac{3s}{(s+1)^2} = 1 - \frac{3s + 3}{(s+1)^2} + \frac{3}{(s+1)^2} \end{aligned}$$

Since ROC is  $\operatorname{Re}(s) > -1$ , the signals must be causal signals. Taking inverse Laplace transform on both sides, we have

$$\begin{aligned} x(t) &= L^{-1} \left[ 1 - \frac{3}{s+1} + \frac{3}{(s+1)^2} \right] = \delta(t) - 3e^{-t} u(t) + 3te^{-t} u(t) \\ \text{(b) Given } X(s) &= \frac{(s+1)^2}{s^2 - s + 1} = \frac{s^2 + 2s + 1}{s^2 - s + 1}; \operatorname{Re}(s) > \frac{1}{2} \end{aligned}$$

In the given  $X(s)$ , the order of numerator and denominator are same. So it is an improper function. Therefore, first write it as a constant term plus a proper transfer function.

$$\begin{aligned} & s^2 - s + 1 ) s^2 + 2s + 1 ( 1 \\ & \quad \underline{s^2 - s + 1} \\ & \quad \quad \quad 3s \\ \therefore \quad X(s) &= \frac{(s+1)^2}{s^2 - s + 1} = 1 + 3 \frac{s}{s^2 - s + 1} = 1 + 3 \frac{s}{[s - (1/2)^2] + (\sqrt{3}/2)^2} \\ &= 1 + \frac{3[s - (1/2)] + (3/2)}{[s - (1/2)^2 + (\sqrt{3}/2)^2]} \\ &= 1 + \frac{3[s - (1/2)]}{[s - (1/2)^2 + (\sqrt{3}/2)^2]} + \sqrt{3} \frac{(\sqrt{3}/2)}{[s - (1/2)^2 + (\sqrt{3}/2)^2]} \end{aligned}$$

Since ROC is  $\operatorname{Re}(s) > 1/2$ , the signals must be causal signals. Taking inverse Laplace transform on both sides, we have

$$\therefore x(t) = \delta(t) + 3e^{(1/2)t} \cos \frac{\sqrt{3}}{2} t + \sqrt{3} e^{(1/2)t} \sin \left( \frac{\sqrt{3}}{2} t \right)$$

**EXAMPLE 9.36** Find the inverse Laplace transform of the following:

$$(a) \quad X(s) = \frac{s^2 + 6s + 7}{s^2 + 3s + 2}; \quad \text{Re}(s) > -1 \quad (b) \quad X(s) = \frac{s^3 + 2s^2 + 6}{s^2 + 3s}; \quad \text{Re}(s) > 0$$

**Solution:**

$$(a) \quad \text{Given} \quad X(s) = \frac{s^2 + 6s + 7}{s^2 + 3s + 2}; \quad \text{Re}(s) > -1$$

The given transfer function is an improper function. So divide the numerator by the denominator, remove a constant term and make it proper.

$$\begin{aligned} & s^2 + 3s + 2 ) s^2 + 6s + 7 (1 \\ & \quad \underline{s^2 + 3s + 2} \\ & \quad \quad \quad 3s + 5 \\ \therefore & \quad X(s) = 1 + \frac{3s + 5}{s^2 + 3s + 2} \\ & \frac{3s + 5}{s^2 + 3s + 2} = \frac{3s + 5}{(s + 1)(s + 2)} = \frac{A}{s + 1} + \frac{B}{s + 2} = \frac{2}{s + 1} + \frac{1}{s + 2} \\ \therefore & \quad X(s) = 1 + \frac{2}{s + 1} + \frac{1}{s + 2} \end{aligned}$$

Since ROC is  $\text{Re}(s) > -1$ , both the terms must be causal. Taking inverse Laplace transform on both sides, we have

$$x(t) = \delta(t) + 2e^{-t} u(t) + e^{-2t} u(t)$$

$$(b) \quad \text{Given} \quad X(s) = \frac{s^3 + 2s^2 + 6}{s^2 + 3s}; \quad \text{Re}(s) > 0$$

The given  $X(s)$  is an improper transfer function. So divide the numerator by the denominator, remove some terms and make the remaining transfer function proper.

$$\begin{aligned} & s^2 + 3s ) s^3 + 2s^2 + 6 ( s - 1 \\ & \quad \underline{s^3 + 3s^2} \\ & \quad \quad \quad -s^2 + 6 \\ & \quad \underline{-s^2 - 3s} \\ \therefore & \quad X(s) = s - 1 + \frac{3s + 6}{s^2 + 3s} = (s - 1) + \frac{3s + 6}{s(s + 3)} \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}\frac{3s+6}{s(s+3)} &= \frac{A}{s} + \frac{B}{s+3} = \frac{2}{s} + \frac{1}{s+3} \\ \therefore X(s) &= s - 1 + \frac{2}{s} + \frac{1}{s+3}\end{aligned}$$

Since ROC is  $\text{Re}(s) > 0$ , both the terms must be causal. So taking inverse Laplace transform, we have

$$x(t) = \delta'(t) - \delta(t) + 2u(t) + e^{-3t} u(t)$$

**EXAMPLE 9.37** Find the signal  $x(t)$  that corresponds to the Laplace transform

$$X(s) = \frac{3s^2 + 22s + 27}{(s^2 + 3s + 2)(s^2 + 2s + 5)}$$

**Solution:** Given  $X(s) = \frac{3s^2 + 22s + 27}{(s^2 + 3s + 2)(s^2 + 2s + 5)} = \frac{3s^2 + 22s + 27}{(s+1)(s+2)(s^2 + 2s + 5)}$

Taking partial fractions, we have

$$\begin{aligned}X(s) &= \frac{A}{s+1} + \frac{B}{s+2} + \frac{Cs+D}{s^2+2s+5} = \frac{2}{s+1} + \frac{1}{s+2} + \frac{-3s+1}{s^2+2s+5} \\ &= \frac{2}{s+1} + \frac{1}{s+2} - \frac{3(s+1)}{(s+1)^2+2^2} + 2\frac{2}{(s+1)^2+2^2}\end{aligned}$$

Taking inverse Laplace transform on both sides, we have

$$x(t) = 2e^{-t} u(t) + e^{-2t} u(t) - 3e^{-t} \cos 2t u(t) + 2e^{-t} \sin 2t u(t)$$

**EXAMPLE 9.38** Given  $x(t) = e^{-t} u(t)$ . Find the inverse Laplace transform of  $e^{-3s} X(2s)$ .

**Solution:** Given  $x(t) = e^{-t} u(t)$

$$X(s) = \mathcal{L}[x(t)] = \mathcal{L}[e^{-t} u(t)] = \frac{1}{s+1}$$

$$\therefore X(2s) = \frac{1}{2s+1} = \frac{1/2}{s+(1/2)}$$

$$\mathcal{L}^{-1}[X(2s)] = \mathcal{L}^{-1}\left[\frac{1/2}{s+(1/2)}\right] = \frac{1}{2}e^{-t/2} u(t)$$

$$\therefore \mathcal{L}^{-1}[e^{-3s} X(2s)] = \mathcal{L}^{-1}[X(2s)]|_{t=t-3} = \frac{1}{2}e^{-t/2} u(t)|_{t=t-3} = \frac{1}{2}e^{-(t-3)/2} u(t-3)$$

$$\therefore \mathcal{L}^{-1}[e^{-3s} X(2s)] = \frac{1}{2}e^{-(t-3)/2} u(t-3) \text{ if } x(t) = e^{-t} u(t)$$

**EXAMPLE 9.39** Using the convolution theorem of Laplace transforms, find  $y(t) = x_1(t) * x_2(t)$ , where  $x_1(t)$  and  $x_2(t)$  are as follows:

- (a)  $x_1(t) = e^{-2t} u(t)$  and  $x_2(t) = u(t - 3)$
- (b)  $x_1(t) = \sin 3t u(t)$  and  $x_2(t) = \cos 2t u(t)$
- (c)  $x_1(t) = t u(t)$  and  $x_2(t) = u(t - 2)$
- (d)  $x_1(t) = u(t - 2)$  and  $x_2(t) = u(t - 2)$
- (e)  $x_1(t) = u(t)$  and  $x_2(t) = u(t)$
- (f)  $x_1(t) = tu(t)$  and  $x_2(t) = tu(t)$

**Solution:** Using the convolution property, we have

$$\mathcal{L}[x_1(t) * x_2(t)] = X_1(s) X_2(s)$$

$$\therefore x_1(t) * x_2(t) = \mathcal{L}^{-1}[X_1(s) X_2(s)]$$

$$(a) \quad x_1(t) = e^{-2t} u(t)$$

$$\therefore X_1(s) = \frac{1}{s+2}$$

$$x_2(t) = u(t - 3)$$

$$\therefore X_2(s) = \frac{e^{-3s}}{s}$$

$$\therefore \mathcal{L}[x_1(t) * x_2(t)] = X_1(s) X_2(s) = \frac{1}{s+2} \frac{e^{-3s}}{s} = \frac{e^{-3s}}{s(s+2)}$$

$$\therefore x_1(t) * x_2(t) = \mathcal{L}^{-1}\left[\frac{e^{-3s}}{s(s+2)}\right] = \mathcal{L}^{-1}\left[\frac{1}{s(s+2)}\right]_{t \rightarrow t-3}$$

$$\text{Let } Y_1(s) = \frac{1}{s(s+2)} = \frac{A}{s} + \frac{B}{s+2} = \frac{1/2}{s} + \frac{-1/2}{s+2}$$

Taking inverse Laplace transform on both sides, we get

$$\mathcal{L}^{-1}\left[\frac{1}{s(s+2)}\right] = y_1(t) = \frac{1}{2}u(t) - \frac{1}{2}e^{-2t}u(t)$$

$$\therefore x_1(t) * x_2(t) = y_1(t)|_{t=t-3} = \frac{1}{2}u(t-3) - \frac{1}{2}e^{-2(t-3)}u(t-3)$$

$$(b) \quad x_1(t) = \sin 3t u(t)$$

$$\therefore X_1(s) = \frac{3}{s^2 + (3)^2} = \frac{3}{s^2 + 9}$$

$$x_2(t) = \cos 2t u(t)$$

$$\therefore X_2(s) = \frac{s}{s^2 + (2)^2} = \frac{s}{s^2 + 4}$$

$$\mathcal{L}[x_1(t) * x_2(t)] = X_1(s) X_2(s) = \frac{3}{s^2 + 9} \frac{s}{s^2 + 4} = \frac{3s}{(s^2 + 4)(s^2 + 9)}$$

Let  $X_1(s) X_2(s) = \frac{3s}{(s^2 + 4)(s^2 + 9)} = \frac{As + B}{s^2 + 4} + \frac{Cs + D}{s^2 + 9} = \frac{(3/5)s}{s^2 + 4} - \frac{(3/5)s}{s^2 + 9}$

$$\therefore X_1(s) X_2(s) = \frac{3}{5} \frac{s}{s^2 + 4} - \frac{3}{5} \frac{s}{s^2 + 9} = \frac{3}{5} \frac{s}{s^2 + (2)^2} - \frac{3}{5} \frac{s}{s^2 + (3)^2}$$

Taking inverse Laplace transform on both sides, we get

$$y(t) = \mathcal{L}^{-1}[X_1(s) X_2(s)] = x_1(t) * x_2(t) = \frac{3}{5} \cos 2t u(t) - \frac{3}{5} \cos 3t u(t)$$

$$(c) \quad x_1(t) = t u(t)$$

$$\therefore X_1(s) = \frac{1}{s^2}$$

$$x_2(t) = u(t - 2)$$

$$\therefore X_2(s) = \frac{e^{-2s}}{s}$$

$$\mathcal{L}[x_1(t) * x_2(t)] = X_1(s) X_2(s) = \frac{1}{s^2} \frac{e^{-2s}}{s} = \frac{e^{-2s}}{s^3}$$

$$\therefore x_1(t) * x_2(t) = \mathcal{L}^{-1}\left(\frac{e^{-2s}}{s^3}\right) = \mathcal{L}^{-1}\left(\frac{1}{s^3}\right) \Big|_{t \rightarrow t-2} = \frac{t^2}{2} \Big|_{t \rightarrow t-2} = \frac{(t-2)^2}{2}$$

$$(d) \quad x_1(t) = u(t - 2)$$

$$\therefore X_1(s) = \frac{e^{-2s}}{s}$$

$$x_2(t) = u(t - 2)$$

$$\therefore X_2(s) = \frac{e^{-2s}}{s}$$

$$\mathcal{L}[x_1(t) * x_2(t)] = X_1(s) X_2(s) = \frac{e^{-2s}}{s} \frac{e^{-2s}}{s} = \frac{e^{-4s}}{s^2}$$

$$\therefore x_1(t) * x_2(t) = \mathcal{L}^{-1}\left(\frac{e^{-4s}}{s^2}\right) = \mathcal{L}^{-1}\left(\frac{1}{s^2}\right) \Big|_{t \rightarrow t-4} = t \Big|_{t \rightarrow t-4} = t - 4$$

$$(e) \quad x_1(t) = u(t)$$

$$\therefore X_1(s) = \frac{1}{s}$$

$$x_2(t) = u(t)$$

$$\therefore X_2(s) = \frac{1}{s}$$

$$\mathcal{L}[x_1(t) * x_2(t)] = X_1(s) X_2(s) = \frac{1}{s} \frac{1}{s} = \frac{1}{s^2}$$

$$\therefore x_1(t) * x_2(t) = \mathcal{L}^{-1}[X_1(s) X_2(s)] = \mathcal{L}^{-1}\left(\frac{1}{s^2}\right) = t u(t)$$

$$(f) \quad x_1(t) = t u(t)$$

$$\therefore X_1(s) = \frac{1}{s^2}$$

$$x_2(t) = t u(t)$$

$$\therefore X_2(s) = \frac{1}{s^2}$$

$$\mathcal{L}[x_1(t) * x_2(t)] = X_1(s) X_2(s) = \frac{1}{s^2} \frac{1}{s^2} = \frac{1}{s^4}$$

$$\therefore x_1(t) * x_2(t) = \mathcal{L}^{-1}[X_1(s) X_2(s)] = \mathcal{L}^{-1}\left(\frac{1}{s^4}\right) = \frac{t^3}{6} u(t)$$

**EXAMPLE 9.40** If  $x(t) = e^{-t} u(t)$  and  $h(t) = e^{-3t} u(t)$ , determine  $y(t) = x(t) * h(t)$  by (a) time domain method and (b) frequency domain method.

**Solution:**

(a) **Time domain method**

$$\begin{aligned} y(t) &= x(t) * h(t) = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} x(\tau) h(t - \tau) d\tau = \int_0^t e^{-\tau} e^{-3(t-\tau)} d\tau \\ &= e^{-3t} \int_0^t e^{2\tau} d\tau = e^{-3t} \left[ \frac{e^{2\tau}}{2} \right]_0^t = e^{-3t} \left( \frac{e^{2t} - 1}{2} \right) = \frac{e^{-t} - e^{-3t}}{2} u(t) \end{aligned}$$

(b) **Frequency domain method**

$$\text{Given} \quad x(t) = e^{-t} u(t)$$

$$\therefore X(s) = \frac{1}{s + 1}$$

and

$$h(t) = e^{-3t} u(t)$$

∴

$$H(s) = \frac{1}{s+3}$$

$$Y(s) = X(s) H(s) = \frac{1}{s+1} \times \frac{1}{s+3} = \frac{1}{2} \left( \frac{1}{s+1} - \frac{1}{s+3} \right)$$

As per convolution property of Laplace transform,

$$y(t) = L^{-1}[X(s) H(s)] = L^{-1}\left[\frac{1}{2}\left(\frac{1}{s+1} - \frac{1}{s+3}\right)\right] = x(t) * h(t)$$

∴

$$y(t) = x(t) * h(t) = \frac{1}{2}[e^{-t} - e^{-3t}] u(t)$$

**EXAMPLE 9.41** Find the convolution of the signals  $x_1(t) = e^{-2t} u(t)$  and  $x_2(t) = e^{-4t} u(t)$  using the convolution property of Laplace transforms. Verify the result by time domain method.

**Solution:**

(a) Given

$$x_1(t) = e^{-2t} u(t)$$

∴

$$X_1(s) = \frac{1}{s+2}$$

and

$$x_2(t) = e^{-4t} u(t)$$

∴

$$X_2(s) = \frac{1}{s+4}$$

As per convolution property of Laplace transforms,

$$L[x_1(t) * x_2(t)] = X_1(s) X_2(s)$$

∴

$$X_1(s) X_2(s) = \frac{1}{s+2} \frac{1}{s+4} = \frac{1}{2} \left( \frac{1}{s+2} - \frac{1}{s+4} \right) = L[x_1(t) * x_2(t)]$$

∴

$$\begin{aligned} x_1(t) * x_2(t) &= L^{-1}[X_1(s) X_2(s)] = L^{-1}\left[\frac{1}{2}\left(\frac{1}{s+2} - \frac{1}{s+4}\right)\right] \\ &= \frac{1}{2} \left[ L^{-1}\left(\frac{1}{s+2}\right) - L^{-1}\left(\frac{1}{s+4}\right) \right] = \frac{1}{2}[e^{-2t} - e^{-4t}] u(t) \end{aligned}$$

(b) **Time domain method**

$$\text{Given } x_1(t) = e^{-2t} u(t) \quad \text{and} \quad x_2(t) = e^{-4t} u(t)$$

$$\begin{aligned}\therefore x_1(t) * x_2(t) &= \int_0^t x_1(\tau) x_2(t-\tau) d\tau = \int_0^t e^{-2\tau} e^{-4(t-\tau)} d\tau \\ &= e^{-4t} \int_0^t e^{-2\tau} e^{4\tau} d\tau = e^{-4t} \int_0^t e^{2\tau} d\tau \\ &= e^{-4t} \left[ \frac{e^{2\tau}}{2} \right]_0^t = \frac{1}{2} e^{-4t} [e^{2t} - 1] = \frac{1}{2} [e^{-2t} - e^{-4t}] u(t)\end{aligned}$$

Hence the result is verified.

**EXAMPLE 9.42** Find the inverse Laplace transform of the functions:

$$(a) X(s) = \frac{1}{s(s+1)}$$

$$(b) X(s) = \frac{1}{s^2(s+2)}$$

using convolution property of Laplace transforms.

**Solution:**

$$(a) \text{ Given } X(s) = \frac{1}{s(s+1)}$$

Let

$$X(s) = X_1(s) X_2(s)$$

where

$$X_1(s) = \frac{1}{s} \quad \text{and} \quad X_2(s) = \frac{1}{s+1}$$

∴

$$x_1(t) = L^{-1}[X_1(s)] = L^{-1}\left(\frac{1}{s}\right) = u(t)$$

and

$$x_2(t) = L^{-1}[X_2(s)] = L^{-1}\left(\frac{1}{s+1}\right) = e^{-t} u(t)$$

∴

$$L^{-1}[X(s)] = L^{-1}[X_1(s) X_2(s)] = L^{-1}\left[\frac{1}{s(s+1)}\right]$$

$$= x_1(t) * x_2(t) = \int_0^t x_1(\tau) x_2(t-\tau) d\tau$$

$$= \int_0^t 1 e^{-(t-\tau)} d\tau = e^{-t} \int_0^t e^\tau d\tau = e^{-t} [e^\tau]_0^t = e^{-t} [e^t - 1] = 1 - e^{-t}$$

∴

$$L^{-1}\left[\frac{1}{s(s+1)}\right] = (1 - e^{-t}) u(t)$$

(b) Given

$$X(s) = \frac{1}{s^2(s+2)}$$

Let

$$X(s) = X_1(s) X_2(s)$$

where

$$X_1(s) = \frac{1}{s^2} \quad \text{and} \quad X_2(s) = \frac{1}{s+2}$$

∴

$$x_1(t) = L^{-1}[X_1(s)] = L^{-1}\left(\frac{1}{s^2}\right) = t u(t)$$

and

$$x_2(t) = L^{-1}[X_2(s)] = L^{-1}\left(\frac{1}{s+2}\right) = e^{-2t} u(t)$$

Using convolution property of Laplace transforms, we have

$$\begin{aligned} L^{-1}[X(s)] &= L^{-1}[X_1(s) X_2(s)] = L^{-1}\left[\frac{1}{s^2(s+2)}\right] = x_1(t) * x_2(t) = \int_0^t x_1(\tau) x_2(t-\tau) d\tau \\ &= \int_0^t \tau e^{-2(t-\tau)} d\tau = e^{-2t} \int_0^t \tau e^{2\tau} d\tau = e^{-2t} \left\{ \left[ \tau \frac{e^{2\tau}}{2} \right]_0^t - \int_0^t \frac{e^{2\tau}}{2} d\tau \right\} \\ &= e^{-2t} \left\{ \frac{te^{2t}}{2} - \left[ \frac{e^{2\tau}}{4} \right]_0^t \right\} = e^{-2t} \left( \frac{te^{2t}}{2} - \frac{e^{2t}}{4} + \frac{1}{4} \right) = \left( \frac{1}{2}t - \frac{1}{4} + \frac{1}{4}e^{-2t} \right) \\ \therefore L^{-1}\left[\frac{1}{s^2(s+2)}\right] &= \left( \frac{1}{2}t - \frac{1}{4} + \frac{1}{4}e^{-2t} \right) u(t) \end{aligned}$$

**EXAMPLE 9.43** Using convolution theorem, find the inverse Laplace transform of

$$(a) F(s) = \frac{s}{(s^2 + \alpha^2)^2}$$

$$(b) X(s) = \frac{s^2}{(s^2 + a^2)(s^2 + b^2)}$$

**Solution:**

(a) Given

$$F(s) = \frac{s}{(s^2 + \alpha^2)^2}$$

Let

$$F(s) = F_1(s) F_2(s)$$

where

$$F_1(s) = \frac{s}{s^2 + \alpha^2} \quad \text{and} \quad F_2(s) = \frac{1}{s^2 + \alpha^2}$$

∴

$$f_1(t) = L^{-1}\left(\frac{s}{s^2 + \alpha^2}\right) = \cos \alpha t u(t)$$

$$f_2(t) = L^{-1}\left(\frac{1}{s^2 + \alpha^2}\right) = \frac{1}{\alpha} \sin \alpha t u(t)$$

Using convolution theorem of Laplace transforms, we have

$$\begin{aligned} L^{-1}[F(s)] &= L^{-1}[F_1(s) F_2(s)] = L^{-1}\left[\frac{s}{(s^2 + \alpha^2)^2}\right] \\ &= f_1(t) * f_2(t) = \int_0^t f_1(\tau) f_2(t - \tau) d\tau \\ \therefore f(t) &= [\cos \alpha t] * \left(\frac{1}{\alpha} \sin \alpha t\right) = \int_0^t \cos \alpha \tau \frac{1}{\alpha} \sin \alpha(t - \tau) d\tau \\ &= \frac{1}{\alpha} \int_0^t \left[ \frac{\sin \alpha(t - \tau + \tau) + \sin \alpha(t - \tau - \tau)}{2} \right] d\tau \\ &= \frac{1}{2\alpha} \int_0^t [\sin \alpha t + \sin \alpha(t - 2\tau)] d\tau = \frac{1}{2\alpha} \left\{ \sin \alpha t [\tau]_0^t + \left[ \frac{-\cos \alpha(t - 2\tau)}{-2\alpha} \right]_0^t \right\} \\ &= \frac{1}{2\alpha} \left( t \sin \alpha t + \frac{\cos \alpha t}{2\alpha} - \frac{\cos \alpha t}{2\alpha} \right) \\ \therefore x(t) &= \frac{1}{2\alpha} t \sin \alpha t \end{aligned}$$

(b) Given  $X(s) = \frac{s^2}{(s^2 + a^2)(s^2 + b^2)}$

Let  $X(s) = X_1(s) X_2(s) = \left(\frac{s}{s^2 + a^2}\right) \left(\frac{s}{s^2 + b^2}\right)$

$\therefore x_1(t) = L^{-1}\left(\frac{s}{s^2 + a^2}\right) = \cos at$

$$x_2(t) = L^{-1}\left(\frac{s}{s^2 + b^2}\right) = \cos bt$$

$\therefore x(t) = L^{-1}[X(s)] = x_1(t) * x_2(t) = \cos at * \cos bt$

$$= \int_0^t \cos a\tau \cos b(t - \tau) d\tau$$

$$\begin{aligned}
&= \int_0^t \left[ \frac{\cos(a\tau + bt - b\tau) + \cos(a\tau - bt + b\tau)}{2} d\tau \right] \\
&= \frac{1}{2} \int_0^t \{ \cos[(a-b)\tau + bt] + \cos[(a+b)\tau - bt] \} d\tau \\
&= \frac{1}{2} \left[ \frac{\sin[(a-b)\tau + bt]}{a-b} + \frac{\sin[(a+b)\tau - bt]}{a+b} \right]_0^t \\
&= \frac{1}{2} \left\{ \frac{\sin[(a-b)t + bt]}{a-b} - \frac{\sin bt}{a-b} + \frac{\sin[(a+b)t - bt]}{a+b} + \frac{\sin bt}{a+b} \right\} \\
&= \frac{1}{2} \left( \frac{\sin at}{a-b} + \frac{\sin at}{a+b} + \frac{\sin bt}{a+b} - \frac{\sin bt}{a-b} \right) \\
&= \frac{1}{2} \left( \frac{2a \sin at}{a^2 - b^2} - \frac{2b \sin bt}{a^2 - b^2} \right) \\
\therefore \quad x(t) &= \frac{a \sin at - b \sin bt}{a^2 - b^2}
\end{aligned}$$

## 9.9 INVERSION OF BILATERAL LAPLACE TRANSFORM

So far we discussed about the inversion of unilateral Laplace transform which can be used only for causal signals. To determine the inverse of unilateral Laplace transform, the ROC need not be specified because a given pole always corresponds to a +ve time portion of  $x(t)$ , i.e. the ROC always lies to the right of the pole, i.e. ROC is always  $\text{Re}(s) >$  some constant. The  $L^{-1}[1/(s+a)]$  is always equal to  $e^{-at} u(t)$  for unilateral Laplace transform and the ROC is  $\text{Re}(s) > -a$ . On the other hand, if  $x(t)$  is a non-causal signal, then to find  $x(t)$  from  $X(s)$ , we must know the ROC of  $X(s)$ . The location of pole along with ROC determines whether a given pole corresponds to a positive or a negative time portion of  $x(t)$ . If the ROC is  $\text{Re}(s) > a$ , then the signal is a causal signal. On the other hand, if the ROC is  $\text{Re}(s) < a$ , then the signal  $x(t)$  is a non-causal signal. In other words, if a pole of  $X(s)$  lies to the left of the ROC, then this pole gives rise to a causal signal, and if a pole of  $X(s)$  lies to the right of the ROC, then this pole gives rise to a non-causal signal, i.e. the  $L^{-1}[1/(s+a)]$  may be equal to  $e^{-at} u(t)$  if ROC is  $\text{Re}(s) > -a$  and may be equal to  $-e^{-at} u(-t)$  if ROC is  $\text{Re}(s) < -a$ .

**EXAMPLE 9.44** Find the inverse Laplace transform of

$$X(s) = \frac{2s+1}{s+2}$$

(a) For ROC;  $\text{Re}(s) > -2$

(b) For ROC;  $\text{Re}(s) < -2$

**Solution:** Given  $X(s) = \frac{2s+1}{s+2} = 2 \left[ \frac{s+(1/2)}{s+2} \right] = 2 \left[ \frac{s+2-(3/2)}{s+2} \right]$

$$= 2 \left( \frac{s+2}{s+2} - \frac{3/2}{s+2} \right) = 2 - \frac{3}{s+2}$$

- (a) Since ROC is  $\text{Re}(s) > -2$ , the pole at  $s = -2$  gives rise to a causal signal. Taking inverse Laplace transform on both sides, we have

$$x(t) = L^{-1} \left( 2 - \frac{3}{s+2} \right) = 2\delta(t) - 3e^{-2t} u(t)$$

- (b) Since ROC is  $\text{Re}(s) < -2$ , the pole at  $s = -2$  gives rise to a non-causal signal.

$$\therefore x(t) = L^{-1} \left( 2 - \frac{3}{s+2} \right) = 2\delta(t) + 3e^{-2t} u(-t)$$

**EXAMPLE 9.45** Find the inverse Laplace transform of

$$X(s) = \frac{3}{(s+1)(s+4)}; \text{ ROC; } -4 < \text{Re}(s) < -1$$

**Solution:** The given  $X(s) = \frac{3}{(s+1)(s+4)}$  has two poles, one at  $s = -1$  and the other one at  $s = -4$ .

Here the pole at  $s = -4$  lies to the left of the ROC, hence this pole gives rise to a causal signal. The pole at  $s = -1$  lies to the right of the ROC, hence this pole gives rise to a non-causal signal.

Expanding  $X(s)$  into partial fractions, we have

$$X(s) = \frac{3}{(s+1)(s+4)} = \frac{1}{s+1} - \frac{1}{s+4}; \text{ ROC; } -4 < \text{Re}(s) < -1$$

Now,  $L^{-1} \left( \frac{1}{s+1} \right) = -e^{-t} u(-t)$  since ROC is  $\text{Re}(s) < -1$

and  $L^{-1} \left( \frac{1}{s+4} \right) = e^{-4t} u(t)$  since ROC is  $\text{Re}(s) > -4$

$$\therefore L^{-1}[X(s)] = x(t) = -e^{-t} u(-t) - e^{-4t} u(t)$$

**EXAMPLE 9.46** Find the signal whose bilateral transform is:

$$X(s) = \frac{1}{(s+2)(s+5)} \text{ ROC; } -5 < \text{Re}(s) < -2$$

**Solution:** The given  $X(s)$  has two poles, one at  $s = -5$  and the other one at  $s = -2$ . Since ROC is  $\text{Re}(s) > -5$ , the pole at  $s = -5$  gives rise to a causal signal. Also since ROC is  $\text{Re}(s) < -2$ , the pole at  $s = -2$ , gives rise to a non-causal signal.

We have

$$X(s) = \frac{1}{(s+2)(s+5)} = \frac{A}{s+2} + \frac{B}{s+5} = \frac{1}{3} \left( \frac{1}{s+2} \right) - \frac{1}{3} \left( \frac{1}{s+5} \right)$$

Taking inverse of the above bilateral Laplace transform, we obtain

$$x(t) = -\frac{1}{3} e^{-2t} u(-t) - \frac{1}{3} e^{-5t} u(t)$$

**EXAMPLE 9.47** Find the inverse Laplace transform of

$$X(s) = \frac{1}{(s+4)(s-2)}$$

if the region of convergence is

- |                             |                             |
|-----------------------------|-----------------------------|
| (a) $-4 < \text{Re}(s) < 2$ | (b) $\text{Re}(s) > 2$      |
| (c) $\text{Re}(s) < -4$     | (d) $2 < \text{Re}(s) < -4$ |

**Solution:**  $X(s) = \frac{1}{(s+4)(s-2)} = \frac{A}{s-2} + \frac{B}{s+4} = \frac{1}{6} \frac{1}{s-2} - \frac{1}{6} \frac{1}{s+4}$

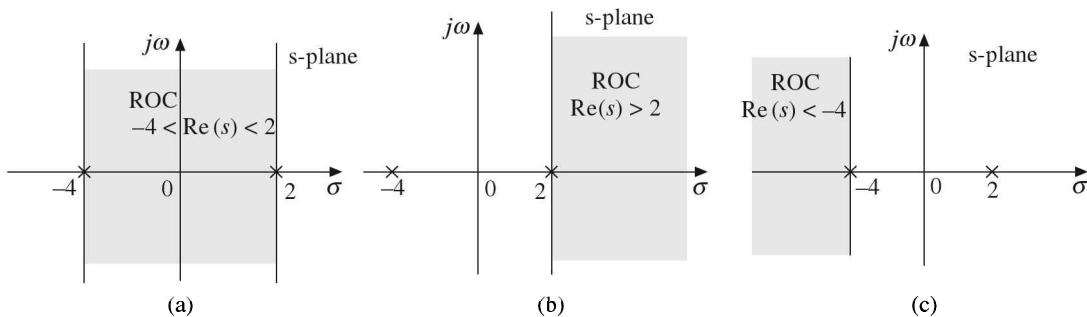
- (a) The  $X(s)$  has poles at  $s = -4$  and  $s = 2$ . The strip of ROC for  $-4 < \text{Re}(s) < 2$  is shown in Figure 9.15(a). The pole at  $s = -4$  which is at the left of the strip of ROC corresponds to the causal signal and the pole at  $s = 2$  which is at the right of the strip of ROC corresponds to the anticausal signal. Therefore,

$$x(t) = -\frac{1}{6} e^{2t} u(-t) - \frac{1}{6} e^{-4t} u(t)$$

- (b) The ROC is  $\text{Re}(s) > 2$  as shown in Figure 9.15(b). Both the poles lie to the left of ROC, so both the poles correspond to causal signal. Therefore,

$$x(t) = \frac{1}{6} e^{2t} u(t) - \frac{1}{6} e^{-4t} u(t)$$

- (c) The ROC is  $\text{Re}(s) < -4$  as shown in Figure 9.15(c).



**Figure 9.15** All possible ROCs of  $X(s) = 1/[(s+4)(s-2)]$ .

Both the poles lie to the right of the ROC. So both the poles correspond to anticausal signals. Therefore,

$$x(t) = -\frac{1}{6}e^{2t}u(-t) + \frac{1}{6}e^{-4t}u(-t)$$

- (d) Since ROC of the sum of the signals is equal to the intersection of their ROCs, it is not possible to have ROC;  $2 < \operatorname{Re}(s) < -4$ . So the inverse Laplace transform of the given  $X(s)$  for this ROC does not exist.

**EXAMPLE 9.48** Find all possible inverse Laplace transforms for  $X(s) = \frac{1}{(s+1)(s+2)(s+3)}$ .

**Solution:** The given function  $X(s) = \frac{1}{(s+1)(s+2)(s+3)}$  has three poles, one at  $s = -1$ , the second one at  $s = -2$  and the third one at  $s = -3$ . Since the inverse Laplace transform depends on the ROC, there are 4 possible ROCs and hence four possible inverse Laplace transforms. They are:

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| (a) ROC; $\operatorname{Re}(s) > -1$      | (b) ROC; $\operatorname{Re}(s) < -3$      |
| (c) ROC; $-3 < \operatorname{Re}(s) < -2$ | (d) ROC; $-2 < \operatorname{Re}(s) < -1$ |

$$\text{Given } X(s) = \frac{1}{(s+1)(s+2)(s+3)} = \frac{A}{s+1} + \frac{B}{s+2} + \frac{C}{s+3} = \frac{1}{2} \left( \frac{1}{s+1} \right) - \frac{1}{s+2} + \frac{1}{2} \left( \frac{1}{s+3} \right)$$

Taking inverse Laplace transform,

- (a) ROC;  $\operatorname{Re}(s) > -1$ . So all the signals are causal.

$$\therefore L^{-1} \left( \frac{1}{s+1} \right) = e^{-t}u(t), L^{-1} \left( \frac{1}{s+2} \right) = e^{-2t}u(t) \quad \text{and} \quad L^{-1} \left( \frac{1}{s+3} \right) = e^{-3t}u(t)$$

$$\therefore \text{For ROC; } \operatorname{Re}(s) > -1, \quad x(t) = \frac{1}{2}e^{-t}u(t) - e^{-2t}u(t) + \frac{1}{2}e^{-3t}u(t)$$

- (b) ROC;  $\operatorname{Re}(s) < -3$ . So all the signals are non-causal.

$$\therefore L^{-1} \left( \frac{1}{s+1} \right) = -e^{-t}u(-t), L^{-1} \left( \frac{1}{s+2} \right) = -e^{-2t}u(-t)$$

$$\text{and} \quad L^{-1} \left( \frac{1}{s+3} \right) = -e^{-3t}u(-t)$$

$$\therefore \text{For ROC; } \operatorname{Re}(s) < -3, \quad x(t) = -\frac{1}{2}e^{-t}u(-t) + e^{-2t}u(-t) - \frac{1}{2}e^{-3t}u(-t)$$

- (c) ROC;  $-3 < \operatorname{Re}(s) < -2$ . So the pole at  $s = -3$  gives causal signal and the poles at  $s = -1$  and  $s = -2$  give non-causal signals.

ROC;  $\operatorname{Re}(s) < -1$

$$\therefore L^{-1} \left( \frac{1}{s+1} \right) = -e^{-t}u(-t)$$

ROC;  $\operatorname{Re}(s) < -2$

$$\therefore \quad \mathcal{L}^{-1}\left(\frac{1}{s+2}\right) = -e^{-2t} u(-t)$$

ROC;  $\operatorname{Re}(s) > -3$

$$\therefore \quad \mathcal{L}^{-1}\left(\frac{1}{s+3}\right) = e^{-3t} u(t)$$

$$\therefore \text{ For ROC; } -3 < \operatorname{Re}(s) < -2, \quad x(t) = -\frac{1}{2}e^{-t} u(-t) + e^{-2t} u(-t) + \frac{1}{2}e^{-3t} u(t)$$

- (d) ROC;  $-2 < \operatorname{Re}(s) < -1$ . So the pole at  $s = -1$  gives a non-causal signal and the poles at  $s = -3$  and  $s = -2$  give causal signals.

$$\therefore \quad x(t) = -\frac{1}{2}e^{-t} u(-t) - e^{-2t} u(t) + \frac{1}{2}e^{-3t} u(t)$$

**EXAMPLE 9.49** Find the signal  $x(t)$  whose bilateral Laplace transform is:

$$X(s) = \frac{2}{(s^2 + 4)(s + 2)} \quad \text{with ROC; } -2 < \operatorname{Re}(s) < 0$$

**Solution:** The given function  $X(s) = \frac{2}{(s^2 + 4)(s + 2)}$  has one pole at  $s = -2$  and one pair of complex poles at  $s = \pm j2$ . Since ROC;  $\operatorname{Re}(s) > -2$ , the pole at  $s = -2$  gives rise to a causal signal and since ROC;  $\operatorname{Re}(s) < 0$ , the complex conjugate pair of poles at  $s = \pm j2$  give rise to an anticausal signal.

$$\begin{aligned} X(s) &= \frac{2}{(s^2 + 4)(s + 2)} = \frac{As + B}{s^2 + 4} + \frac{C}{s + 2} = \frac{(-1/4)s + (1/2)}{s^2 + 4} + \frac{1/4}{s + 2} \\ \therefore \quad X(s) &= \frac{-(1/4)s + (1/2)}{s^2 + 4} + \frac{1/4}{s + 2} = -\frac{1}{4} \left( \frac{s}{s^2 + 4} \right) + \frac{1}{4} \left( \frac{2}{s^2 + 4} \right) + \frac{1}{4} \left( \frac{1}{s + 2} \right) \end{aligned}$$

Taking inverse Laplace transform on both sides, we have

$$x(t) = \frac{1}{4} \cos 2t u(-t) - \frac{1}{4} \sin 2t u(-t) + \frac{1}{4} e^{-2t} u(t)$$

**EXAMPLE 9.50** Find the inverse Laplace transform of the following:

$$X(s) = \frac{s^2 + 2s + 5}{(s + 3)(s + 5)^2}$$

- (a)  $\operatorname{Re}(s) < -5$       (b)  $\operatorname{Re}(s) > -3$       (c)  $-5 < \operatorname{Re}(s) < -3$

**Solution:** Given

$$X(s) = \frac{s^2 + 2s + 5}{(s + 3)(s + 5)^2}$$

Taking partial fractions, we have

$$X(s) = \frac{A}{s+3} + \frac{B}{(s+5)^2} + \frac{C}{s+5} = \frac{2}{s+3} - \frac{10}{(s+5)^2} - \frac{1}{s+5}$$

$$\therefore X(s) = \frac{2}{s+3} - \frac{10}{(s+5)^2} - \frac{1}{s+5}$$

- (a) Since ROC is  $\text{Re}(s) < -5$ , both the poles give anticausal terms. Taking inverse Laplace transform of  $X(s)$  we have

$$x(t) = -2e^{-3t}u(-t) + 10te^{-5t}u(-t) + e^{-5t}u(-t)$$

- (b) Since ROC is  $\text{Re}(s) > -3$  both the poles give causal terms. Taking inverse Laplace transform of  $X(s)$ , we have

$$x(t) = 2e^{-3t}u(t) - 10te^{-5t}u(t) - e^{-5t}u(t)$$

- (c) Since ROC is  $-5 < \text{Re}(s) < -3$  the pole at  $s = -5$  gives causal term and the pole at  $s = -3$  gives non-causal term. Taking inverse Laplace transform of  $X(s)$  we have

$$x(t) = -2e^{-3t}u(-t) - 10te^{-5t}u(t) - e^{-5t}u(t)$$

**EXAMPLE 9.51** Find all possible inverse Laplace transforms of

$$X(s) = \frac{1}{s(s+1)(s+2)(s+3)}$$

**Solution:** Given  $X(s) = \frac{1}{s(s+1)(s+2)(s+3)} = \frac{1}{6}\left(\frac{1}{s}\right) - \frac{1}{2}\left(\frac{1}{s+1}\right) + \frac{1}{2}\left(\frac{1}{s+2}\right) - \frac{1}{6}\left(\frac{1}{s+3}\right)$

The given  $X(s)$  has poles at  $s = 0, s = -1, s = -2$  and  $s = -3$ .

Each one of them can give a causal term or a non-causal term depending on the ROC. We know that the ROC of the sum of two or more signals is equal to the intersection of the ROCs of individual signals. So the possible ROCs are:

1. ROC;  $\text{Re}(s) > 0$ : For this, all the terms must correspond to causal signals.

$$\therefore x(t) = \frac{1}{6}u(t) - \frac{1}{2}e^{-t}u(t) + \frac{1}{2}e^{-2t}u(t) - \frac{1}{6}e^{-3t}u(t)$$

2. ROC;  $\text{Re}(s) < -3$ : For this, all the terms must correspond to non-causal signals.

$$\therefore x(t) = -\frac{1}{6}u(-t) + \frac{1}{2}e^{-t}u(-t) - \frac{1}{2}e^{-2t}u(-t) + \frac{1}{6}e^{-3t}u(-t)$$

3. ROC;  $-1 < \text{Re}(s) < 0$ : For this, the poles at  $s = -3, s = -2$  and  $s = -1$  correspond to causal signals and the pole at  $s = 0$  correspond to non-causal signal.

$$\therefore x(t) = -\frac{1}{6}u(-t) - \frac{1}{2}e^{-t}u(t) + \frac{1}{2}e^{-2t}u(t) - \frac{1}{6}e^{-3t}u(t)$$

4. ROC;  $-2 < \text{Re}(s) < -1$ : For this, the poles at  $s = -3$ ,  $s = -2$  correspond to causal signals, and the poles at  $s = -1$  and  $s = 0$  correspond to non-causal signals.

$$\therefore x(t) = -\frac{1}{6}u(-t) + \frac{1}{2}e^{-t}u(-t) + \frac{1}{2}e^{-2t}u(t) - \frac{1}{6}e^{-3t}u(t)$$

5. ROC;  $-3 < \text{Re}(s) < -2$ : For this, the pole at  $s = -3$  corresponds to causal term and the poles at  $s = 0$ ,  $s = -1$  and  $s = -2$  correspond to non-causal terms.

$$\therefore x(t) = -\frac{1}{6}u(-t) + \frac{1}{2}e^{-t}u(-t) - \frac{1}{2}e^{-2t}u(-t) - \frac{1}{6}e^{-3t}u(t)$$

All possible ROCs are plotted in Figure 9.16

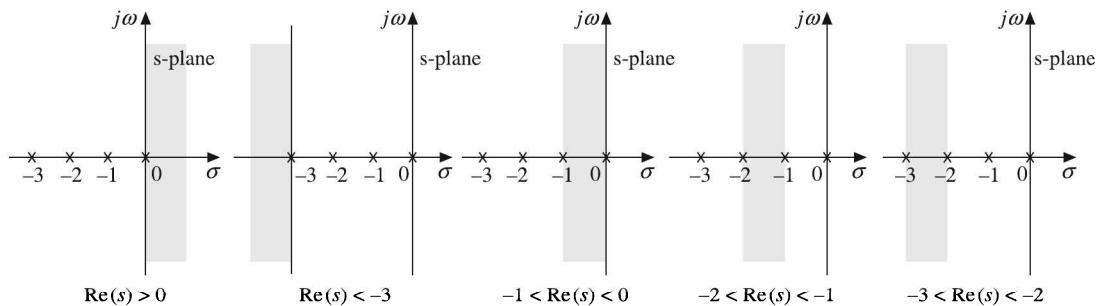


Figure 9.16 ROCs for Example 9.51.

## 9.10 ROCs FOR VARIOUS CLASSES OF SIGNALS

Earlier we had defined the region of convergence (ROC) as the range of values of  $\text{Re}(s)$ , i.e.  $\sigma$  for which the Laplace transform converges. Also we had determined the Laplace transforms and their ROCs for a number of signals. Now, instead of considering the ROC for each signal, we shall categorise the signals into a few classes and study the nature of the ROC for each of these classes.

### *Existence of the Laplace transform*

The Laplace transform of  $x(t)$ , i.e.  $X(s)$  exists only if  $\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} |x(t)e^{-st}| dt < \infty$ . That means

$x(t)e^{-\sigma t}$  must be absolutely integrable for ROC to exist. The ROC cannot contain any poles, because at a pole, the value of  $X(s) = \infty$  and since the ROC is defined as constituting that region of the s-plane in which  $X(s)$  converges. The ROC consists of strips of the s-plane parallel to the  $j\omega$  axis because the ROC of the Laplace transform of any signal is generally specified in terms of a range of  $\text{Re}(s)$  – like  $\text{Re}(s) > \sigma_1$  or  $\text{Re}(s) < \sigma_2$  or  $\sigma_1 < \text{Re}(s) < \sigma_2$ .

The signals may be divided into four classes:

- |                         |                             |
|-------------------------|-----------------------------|
| (a) Right-sided signals | (b) Left-sided signals      |
| (c) Two-sided signals   | (d) Finite duration signals |

### 9.10.1 Right-sided Signals

A signal  $x(t)$  is said to be a right-sided signal, if  $x(t) = 0$  for  $t < T_1$  for some finite  $T_1$  as shown in Figure 9.17(a). For a right-sided signal  $x(t)$ , the ROC of  $X(s)$  is  $\text{Re}(s) > \sigma_2$  where  $\sigma_2$  is some constant, i.e. the ROC is to the right of the line  $\sigma = \sigma_2$ . A causal signal is a right-sided signal.

### 9.10.2 Left-sided Signals

A signal  $x(t)$  is said to be a left-sided signal, if  $x(t) = 0$  for  $t > T_2$  for some finite time  $T_2$  as shown in Figure 9.17(b). For a left-sided signal  $x(t)$ , the ROC of  $X(s)$  is  $\text{Re}(s) < \sigma_1$  where  $\sigma_1$  is some constant, i.e. the ROC is to the left of the line  $\sigma = \sigma_1$ . An anticausal signal is a left-sided signal.

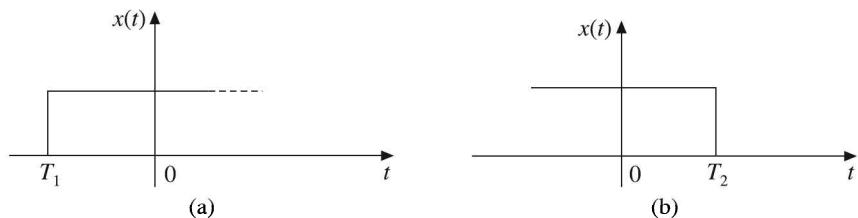


Figure 9.17 (a) Right-sided signal (b) Left-sided signal.

### 9.10.3 Two-sided Signals

A signal  $x(t)$  is said to be a two-sided signal, if it extends from  $-\infty$  to  $+\infty$ . It can be visualised as the sum of two non-overlapping signals, one of which is left-sided and the other right-sided as shown in Figure 9.18. For a two-sided signal, the ROC of  $X(s)$  is in the form of a strip in the s-plane bounded by two lines  $\sigma = \sigma_R$  and  $\sigma = \sigma_L$ .

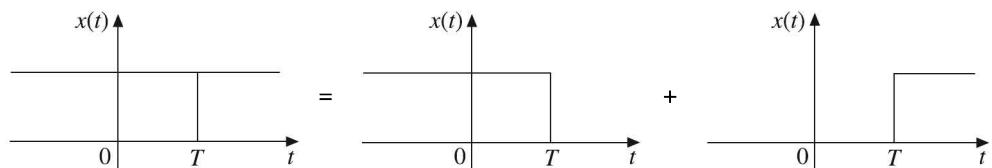


Figure 9.18 Two-sided signal.

### 9.10.4 Finite Duration Signals

A signal  $x(t)$  is said to be a finite duration signal if  $x(t) = 0$  for  $t$  less than some finite  $T_1$  and also for  $t$  greater than some finite  $T_2$ , where  $T_1 < T_2$ . For a finite duration signal which is absolutely integrable, the ROC of its Laplace transform extends over the entire s-plane.

A finite duration signal is shown in Figure 9.19.

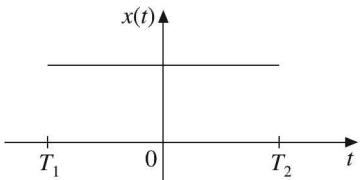


Figure 9.19 Finite duration signal.

### 9.10.5 Properties of ROC

The properties of ROC are as follows:

1. The ROC of  $X(s)$ , the Laplace transform of  $x(t)$  is bounded by poles or extends up to infinity.
2. The ROC does not contain any poles.
3. If  $x(t)$  is a right-sided signal, the ROC of  $X(s)$  extends to the right of the right most pole and no pole is located inside the ROC.
4. If  $x(t)$  is a left-sided signal, the ROC of  $X(s)$  extends to the left of the left most pole and no pole is located inside the ROC.
5. If  $x(t)$  is a two-sided signal, the ROC of  $X(s)$  is a strip in the s-plane bounded by poles and no pole is located inside the ROC.
6. Impulse function is the only function for which the ROC is the entire s-plane.
7. The ROC must be a connected region.
8. The ROC of an LTI stable system contains the imaginary axis of s-plane.
9. The ROC of the sum of two or more signals is equal to the intersection of the ROCs of those signals.

**EXAMPLE 9.52** Find the Laplace transform and ROC of the right-sided signal

$$x(t) = 4e^{-2t} u(t) + 3e^{-3t} u(t)$$

**Solution:** The given signal is a right-sided signal. In fact, it is a causal signal.

$$\therefore X(s) = \frac{4}{s+2} + \frac{3}{s+3}, \text{ ROC; } \operatorname{Re}(s) > -2 \text{ and } \operatorname{Re}(s) > -3$$

$$\text{i.e. } \operatorname{Re}(s) > -2 \cap \operatorname{Re}(s) > -3 = \operatorname{Re}(s) > -2$$

The pole locations and the ROC are shown in Figure 9.20. Observe that the ROC extends to the right of the right most pole and that no pole exists inside the ROC.

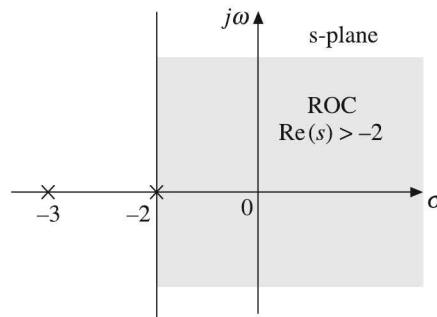


Figure 9.20 ROC and pole location for  $x(t) = [4e^{-2t} + 3e^{-3t}] u(t)$ .

**EXAMPLE 9.53** Find the Laplace transform and ROC of the left-sided signal

$$x(t) = [e^{3t} + 5e^{2t}] u(-t)$$

**Solution:** The given signal is a left-sided signal. In fact, it is an anticausal signal.

$$\therefore X(s) = -\frac{1}{s-3} - \frac{5}{s-2}, \text{ ROC; } \operatorname{Re}(s) < 3 \text{ and } \operatorname{Re}(s) < 2$$

i.e.  $\operatorname{Re}(s) < 3 \cap \operatorname{Re}(s) < 2 = \operatorname{Re}(s) < 2$

So ROC;  $\operatorname{Re}(s) < 2$ .

The pole location and the ROC are shown in Figure 9.21. Observe that the ROC extends to the left of the left most pole and that no pole exists inside the ROC.

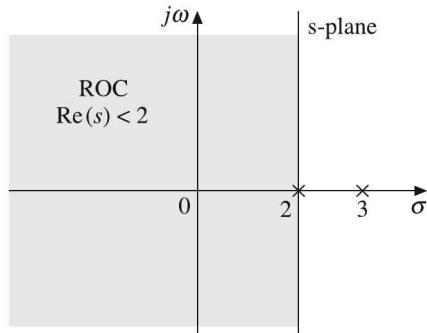


Figure 9.21 ROC of  $(e^{3t} + 5e^{2t}) u(-t)$ .

**EXAMPLE 9.54** Find the Laplace transform and ROC of the two-sided signal

$$x(t) = 3e^{-2t} u(t) + 4e^{3t} u(-t)$$

**Solution:** The given signal is a two-sided signal.

$$\therefore X(s) = \frac{3}{s+2} - \frac{4}{s-3}, \text{ ROC; } \operatorname{Re}(s) > -2 \text{ and } \operatorname{Re}(s) < 3$$

i.e.  $\operatorname{Re}(s) > -2 \cap \operatorname{Re}(s) < 3 = -2 < \operatorname{Re}(s) < 3$

The location of the two poles and the ROC are shown in Figure 9.22. Observe that in this case, the ROC is a strip in the s-plane and lies to the right of the pole at  $s = -2$  and to the left of the pole at  $s = +3$ .

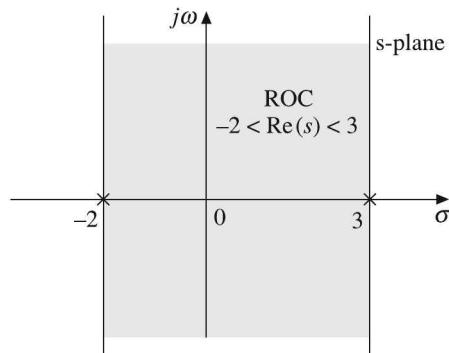


Figure 9.22 ROC of  $x(t) = 3e^{-2t} u(t) + 4e^{3t} u(-t)$ .

**EXAMPLE 9.55** Find the Laplace transform and ROC of the finite duration signal  $x(t)$  shown in Figure 9.23.

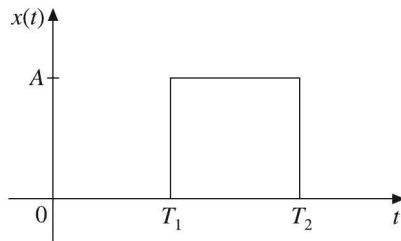


Figure 9.23 Signal for Example 9.55.

**Solution:** The given signal is a finite duration signal described by

$$x(t) = A [u(t - T_1) - u(t - T_2)]$$

Both the terms are causal.

$$\therefore X(s) = A \left( \frac{e^{-T_1 s}}{s} - \frac{e^{-T_2 s}}{s} \right) = \frac{A}{s} [e^{-T_1 s} - e^{-T_2 s}], \text{ ROC; all } s, \text{ i.e. the entire s-plane.}$$

**EXAMPLE 9.56** Let  $x(t)$  be a signal that has a rational Laplace transform with exactly two poles at  $s = -1$  and  $s = -3$ . If  $g(t) = e^{2t} x(t)$  and  $G(\omega)$  [Fourier transform of  $g(t)$ ] converges, determine whether  $x(t)$  is left-sided, right-sided or two-sided.

**Solution:** Given that,  $x(t)$  has a rational Laplace transform with exactly two poles at  $s = -1$  and  $s = -3$ . Therefore,  $X(s)$  is of the form:

$$X(s) = \frac{A}{(s+1)(s+3)} = \frac{A}{2} \left( \frac{1}{s+1} - \frac{1}{s+3} \right)$$

Given

$$g(t) = e^{2t} x(t)$$

$\therefore x(t)$  is of the form:

$$x(t) = \frac{A}{2} \left\{ e^{-t} [-] - e^{-3t} [-] \right\}$$

and  $g(t)$  is of the form:

$$g(t) = e^{2t} \frac{A}{2} \left\{ e^{-t} [-] - e^{-3t} [-] \right\} = \frac{A}{2} \left\{ e^t [-] - e^{-t} [-] \right\}$$

Given that  $G(\omega)$  i.e. the  $F[g(t)]$  converges. For this to converge,  $g(t)$  must be a two-sided signal because for  $(A/2)e^t$  to converge, it must be a left-sided signal of the form  $(A/2)e^t u(-t)$  and for  $(A/2)e^{-t}$  to converge, it must be a right-sided signal of the form  $(A/2)e^{-t} u(t)$ . Therefore,  $x(t)$  must also be a two-sided signal.

$$\therefore x(t) = L^{-1} \left[ \frac{A}{(s+1)(s+3)} \right] = L^{-1} \left[ \frac{A}{2} \left( \frac{1}{s+1} - \frac{1}{s+3} \right) \right] = \frac{A}{2} [-e^{-t} u(-t) - e^{-3t} u(t)]$$

## 9.11 SOLUTION OF DIFFERENTIAL EQUATIONS USING LAPLACE TRANSFORM

An LTI system is described by constant coefficient differential equations relating the input and output. The response of the system is obtained by solving the differential equations. The differential equation can be solved either by classical method or by using the Laplace transform. The Laplace transform converts the differential equations in time domain into algebraic equations in frequency domain. The solution is obtained in frequency domain by manipulating these algebraic equations. The result is converted back into time domain by taking the inverse Laplace transform of the response.

The total response of the system can be expressed as the sum of two components, that is

$$\text{Total response} = \text{Natural response} + \text{Forced response}$$

The natural response of the system is the response due to the initial conditions alone of the system and the forced response of the system is the response due to the input alone. The total response of the system is equal to the forced response when the initial conditions are zero.

Let us consider a linear time invariant system with input  $x(t)$  and output  $y(t)$  described by a differential equation of the form:

$$a_N \frac{d^N y(t)}{dt^N} + a_{N-1} \frac{d^{N-1} y(t)}{dt^{N-1}} + \cdots + a_0 y(t) = b_M \frac{d^M x(t)}{dt^M} + b_{M-1} \frac{d^{M-1} x(t)}{dt^{M-1}} + \cdots + b_0 x(t)$$

When the initial conditions are neglected, we have

$$y(0^-) = \frac{dy(0^-)}{dt} = \frac{d^2 y(0^-)}{dt^2} = \cdots = \frac{d^{N-1} y(0^-)}{dt^{N-1}} = 0$$

and  $x(0^-) = \frac{dx(0^-)}{dt} = \frac{d^2 x(0^-)}{dt^2} = \cdots = \frac{d^{M-1} x(0^-)}{dt^{M-1}} = 0$

Applying Laplace transform on both sides of the differential equation and assuming zero initial conditions, we have

$$a_N s^N Y(s) + a_{N-1} s^{N-1} Y(s) + \cdots + a_0 Y(s) = b_M s^M X(s) + b_{M-1} s^{M-1} X(s) + \cdots + b_0 X(s)$$

i.e.  $[a_N s^N + a_{N-1} s^{N-1} + \cdots + a_0] Y(s) = [b_M s^M + b_{M-1} s^{M-1} + \cdots + b_0] X(s)$

from which

$$\frac{Y(s)}{X(s)} = \frac{b_M s^M + b_{M-1} s^{M-1} + \cdots + b_0}{a_N s^N + a_{N-1} s^{N-1} + \cdots + a_0}$$

The ratio of the Laplace transform of the output to the Laplace transform of the input with the initial conditions neglected is called the *transfer function* of the system.

The transfer function of a system is also defined as the Laplace transform of the impulse response of the system.

Thus,

$$H(s) = \frac{Y(s)}{X(s)} = \frac{\text{L[Zero state response]}}{\text{L [Input]}}$$

Thus, the Laplace transform of the zero state response (forced response),  $Y(s)$  is the product of  $X(s)$  and  $H(s)$  where  $X(s)$  is the Laplace transform of the input and  $H(s)$  is the transfer function of the system (i.e. the Laplace transform of the impulse response of the system).

The function  $H(s)$  depends upon the coefficients of the differential equation. It does not depend on the input signal or the initial energy storage.

$$\text{Response } Y(s) = X(s) H(s)$$

The inverse Laplace transform of  $Y(s)$ , i.e.

$$y(t) = \text{L}^{-1}[X(s) H(s)]$$

is known as the zero state response.

If the input  $x(t) = \delta(t)$ , then  $X(s) = 1$ . Thus,

$$y(t) = \text{L}^{-1}[H(s)] = h(t)$$

is the impulse response of the system.

**EXAMPLE 9.57** Obtain the transfer function of the system if

$$y(t) = u(t) + e^{-t} u(t) - e^{-3t} u(t) - e^{-4t} u(t) \quad \text{and} \quad x(t) = e^{-2t} u(t)$$

**Solution:**

$$\text{Input } x(t) = e^{-2t} u(t)$$

∴

$$X(s) = \frac{1}{s+2}$$

and

$$\text{Output } y(t) = u(t) + e^{-t} u(t) - e^{-3t} u(t) - e^{-4t} u(t)$$

∴

$$Y(s) = \frac{1}{s} + \frac{1}{s+1} - \frac{1}{s+3} - \frac{1}{s+4}$$

$$\text{i.e. } Y(s) = \frac{(s+1)(s+3)(s+4) + (s)(s+3)(s+4) - (s)(s+1)(s+4) - (s)(s+1)(s+3)}{s(s+1)(s+3)(s+4)}$$

$$= \frac{6(s^2 + 4s + 2)}{s(s+1)(s+3)(s+4)}$$

$$\text{Transfer function of the system } H(s) = \frac{Y(s)}{X(s)}$$

$$= \frac{6(s^2 + 4s + 2)}{s(s+1)(s+3)(s+4)} \div \frac{1}{s+2}$$

$$= \frac{6(s+2)(s^2 + 4s + 2)}{s(s+1)(s+3)(s+4)} = \frac{6(s^3 + 6s^2 + 10s + 4)}{s^4 + 8s^3 + 19s^2 + 12s}$$

**EXAMPLE 9.58** Find the system transfer function for each of the systems described by the following differential equations:

$$(a) \frac{d^2y(t)}{dt^2} + 8\frac{dy(t)}{dt} + 14y(t) = 4\frac{dx(t)}{dt} + 7x(t)$$

$$(b) \frac{d^3y(t)}{dt^3} + 5\frac{d^2y(t)}{dt^2} + 12\frac{dy(t)}{dt} + 6y(t) = 2\frac{d^2x(t)}{dt^2} + 5\frac{dx(t)}{dt} + 7x(t)$$

**Solution:**

(a) The given differential equation is:

$$\frac{d^2y(t)}{dt^2} + 8\frac{dy(t)}{dt} + 14y(t) = 4\frac{dx(t)}{dt} + 7x(t)$$

Taking Laplace transform on both sides and assuming zero initial conditions, we have

$$s^2Y(s) + 8sY(s) + 14Y(s) = 4sX(s) + 7X(s)$$

$$\text{i.e. } [s^2 + 8s + 14] Y(s) = (4s + 7) X(s)$$

The system transfer function is:

$$\frac{Y(s)}{X(s)} = H(s) = \frac{4s + 7}{s^2 + 8s + 14}$$

(b) The given differential equation is:

$$\frac{d^3y(t)}{dt^3} + 5\frac{d^2y(t)}{dt^2} + 12\frac{dy(t)}{dt} + 6y(t) = 2\frac{d^2x(t)}{dt^2} + 5\frac{dx(t)}{dt} + 7x(t)$$

Taking Laplace transform on both sides and assuming zero initial conditions, we have

$$s^3Y(s) + 5s^2Y(s) + 12sY(s) + 6Y(s) = 2s^2X(s) + 5sX(s) + 7X(s)$$

$$\text{i.e. } [s^3 + 5s^2 + 12s + 6] Y(s) = [2s^2 + 5s + 7] X(s)$$

The system transfer function is:

$$\frac{Y(s)}{X(s)} = H(s) = \frac{2s^2 + 5s + 7}{s^3 + 5s^2 + 12s + 6}$$

**EXAMPLE 9.59** Solve the integro differential equation  $\frac{dy(t)}{dt} + 2y(t) + 5 \int_0^t y(t) dt = e^{-2t}$ ,

when  $y(0) = 0$ .

**Solution:** Given  $\frac{dy(t)}{dt} + 2y(t) + 5 \int_0^t y(t) dt = e^{-2t}, y(0) = 0$

Taking Laplace transform on both sides, we have

$$sY(s) - y(0) + 2Y(s) + \frac{5Y(s)}{s} = \frac{1}{s+2}$$

i.e.  $s^2Y(s) + 2sY(s) + 5Y(s) = \frac{s}{s+2}$

or  $Y(s) = \frac{s}{(s+2)(s^2+2s+5)} = \frac{s}{(s+2)[(s+1)^2+2^2]}$

Taking partial fractions, we have

$$\begin{aligned} Y(s) &= \frac{A}{s+2} + \frac{Bs+C}{s^2+2s+5} = \frac{-2/5}{s+2} + \frac{(2/5)s+1}{s^2+2s+5} \\ &= \frac{-2/5}{s+2} + \frac{(2/5)(s+1)+(3/5)}{(s+1)^2+2^2} \\ &= \frac{-2/5}{s+2} + \frac{(2/5)(s+1)}{(s+1)^2+2^2} + \frac{3}{10} \frac{2}{(s+1)^2+2^2} \end{aligned}$$

Taking inverse Laplace transform, we have

$$y(t) = \frac{-2}{5} e^{-2t} u(t) + \frac{2}{5} e^{-t} \cos 2t u(t) + \frac{3}{10} e^{-t} \sin 2t u(t)$$

**EXAMPLE 9.60** A system is described by the differential equation

$$\frac{d^2y(t)}{dt^2} + \frac{6dy(t)}{dt} + 8y(t) = \frac{dx(t)}{dt} + x(t); \quad \frac{dy(0)}{dt} = 3, \quad y(0) = 1, \quad x(t) = u(t)$$

Find the transfer function and the output signal  $y(t)$ .

**Solution:** Given the differential equation  $\frac{d^2y(t)}{dt^2} + \frac{6dy(t)}{dt} + 8y(t) = \frac{dx(t)}{dt} + x(t)$  with initial conditions and input  $\frac{dy(0)}{dt} = 3, y(0) = 1$  and  $x(t) = u(t)$ .

Since  $x(t) = u(t); x(0^-) = 0$  and  $X(s) = \frac{1}{s}$

Taking Laplace transform on both sides, we have

$$\left[ s^2Y(s) - sy(0) - \frac{dy(0)}{dt} \right] + 6[sY(s) - y(0)] + 8Y(s) = [sX(s) - x(0)] + X(s)$$

To find the transfer function, neglect the initial conditions.

$$\therefore s^2Y(s) + 6sY(s) + 8Y(s) = sX(s) + X(s)$$

i.e.  $[s^2 + 6s + 8] Y(s) = [s + 1] X(s)$

$$\therefore \text{Transfer function } H(s) = \frac{Y(s)}{X(s)} = \frac{s+1}{s^2 + 6s + 8}$$

To find the output  $y(t)$  considering the initial conditions, we have

$$\begin{aligned} \text{i.e. } [s^2 Y(s) - s - 3] + 6[sY(s) - 1] + 8Y(s) &= sX(s) + X(s) \\ &= s + 9 + s \frac{1}{s} + \frac{1}{s} = s + 10 + \frac{1}{s} = \frac{s^2 + 10s + 1}{s} \\ \therefore Y(s) &= \frac{s^2 + 10s + 1}{s(s^2 + 6s + 8)} = \frac{s^2 + 10s + 1}{s(s+4)(s+2)} \end{aligned}$$

Taking partial fractions, we get

$$Y(s) = \frac{A}{s} + \frac{B}{s+2} + \frac{C}{s+4} = \frac{1/8}{s} + \frac{15/4}{s+2} - \frac{23/8}{s+4}$$

Taking inverse Laplace transform, we have the output signal

$$y(t) = \frac{1}{8}u(t) + \frac{15}{4}e^{-2t}u(t) - \frac{23}{8}e^{-4t}u(t)$$

**EXAMPLE 9.61** A system is described by the differential equation

$$\frac{d^2y(t)}{dt^2} + 5\frac{dy(t)}{dt} + 6y(t) = x(t)$$

- (a) Find the impulse response of the system.
- (b) For the initial conditions,  $dy(0^-)/dt = 2$  and  $y(0^-) = 1$  and input  $x(t) = u(t)$ , find the free and forced response of the system.

**Solution:**

- (a) The differential equation describing the system is:

$$\frac{d^2y(t)}{dt^2} + 5\frac{dy(t)}{dt} + 6y(t) = x(t)$$

Taking Laplace transform on both sides and neglecting the initial conditions, we have

$$s^2Y(s) + 5sY(s) + 6Y(s) = X(s), \text{ i.e. } (s^2 + 5s + 6)Y(s) = X(s)$$

The transfer function of the system is:

$$H(s) = \frac{Y(s)}{X(s)} = \frac{1}{s^2 + 5s + 6} = \frac{1}{(s+2)(s+3)}$$

For impulse response,  $x(t) = \delta(t)$

$$\therefore X(s) = 1$$

$$\therefore Y(s) = H(s) X(s) = H(s) = \frac{1}{(s+2)(s+3)} = \frac{1}{s+2} - \frac{1}{s+3}$$

Taking inverse Laplace transform, the impulse response is:

$$h(t) = e^{-2t} u(t) - e^{-3t} u(t)$$

- (b) Taking Laplace transform on both sides and considering the initial conditions, we have

$$\begin{aligned} & \left[ s^2 Y(s) - s y(0^-) - \frac{dy(0^-)}{dt} \right] + 5[sY(s) - y(0^-)] + 6Y(s) = X(s) \\ \text{i.e. } & s^2 Y(s) - (s+5)y(0^-) - \frac{dy(0^-)}{dt} + 5sY(s) + 6Y(s) = X(s) \\ & (s^2 + 5s + 6)Y(s) = X(s) + (s+5)y(0^-) + \frac{dy(0^-)}{dt} \\ \therefore & Y(s) = \frac{(s+5)y(0^-) + [dy(0^-)/dt]}{s^2 + 5s + 6} + \frac{X(s)}{s^2 + 5s + 6} \end{aligned}$$

The first term on the right side of the response depends on the initial conditions, hence it is the natural response. It is also called the free response. The second term is the response due to input and is the forced response. The sum of these two responses gives the total response of the system.

Substituting the initial conditions,  $dy(0^-)/dt = 2$ ,  $y(0^-) = 1$  and the input  $X(s) = 1/s$ , we get

$$\begin{aligned} Y(s) &= \frac{(s+5)(1)+2}{s^2+5s+6} + \frac{1/s}{s^2+5s+6} = \frac{s+7}{s^2+5s+6} + \frac{1}{s(s^2+5s+6)} \\ &= \frac{s+7}{(s+2)(s+3)} + \frac{1}{s(s+2)(s+3)} = \frac{5}{s+2} - \frac{4}{s+3} + \frac{1}{6}\left(\frac{1}{s}\right) - \frac{1}{2}\left(\frac{1}{s+2}\right) + \frac{1}{3}\left(\frac{1}{s+3}\right) \end{aligned}$$

Taking inverse Laplace transform on both sides, we get the response of the system:

$$\begin{aligned} y(t) &= \underbrace{5e^{-2t} u(t) - 4e^{-3t} u(t)}_{\text{Natural response}} + \underbrace{\frac{1}{6}u(t) - \frac{1}{2}e^{-2t} u(t) + \frac{1}{3}e^{-3t} u(t)}_{\text{Forced response}} \\ &= \underbrace{\frac{1}{6}u(t) + \frac{9}{2}e^{-2t} u(t) - \frac{11}{3}e^{-3t} u(t)}_{\text{Total response}} \end{aligned}$$

**EXAMPLE 9.62** Find the forced response of the system with transfer function

$$H(s) = \frac{1}{(s+2)(s+3)}$$

for an input  $x(t) = e^{-t} u(t)$ .

**Solution:** Given the transfer function  $H(s) = \frac{Y(s)}{X(s)} = \frac{1}{(s+2)(s+3)}$ .

Input

$$x(t) = e^{-t} u(t)$$

$$\therefore X(s) = \frac{1}{s+1}$$

The forced response (i.e. the response due to input) of the system is:

$$\begin{aligned} Y(s) &= H(s)X(s) = \frac{1}{(s+2)(s+3)} \frac{1}{(s+1)} = \frac{A}{s+1} + \frac{B}{s+2} + \frac{C}{s+3} \\ &= \frac{1/2}{s+1} - \frac{1}{s+2} + \frac{1/2}{s+3} \\ \therefore Y(s) &= \frac{1/2}{s+1} - \frac{1}{s+2} + \frac{1/2}{s+3} = \underbrace{\frac{1/2}{s+1}}_{\substack{\text{Due to pole} \\ \text{of input}}} + \underbrace{\frac{1/2}{s+3}}_{\substack{\text{Due to poles of} \\ \text{transfer function}}} - \frac{1}{s+2} \end{aligned}$$

Taking inverse Laplace transform on both sides, we get

$$y(t) = \underbrace{\frac{1}{2}e^{-t}}_{\substack{\text{Due to input pole} \\ (\text{steady-state response})}} + \underbrace{\frac{1}{2}e^{-3t} - e^{-2t}}_{\substack{\text{Due to poles of} \\ \text{transfer function} \\ (\text{transient response})}}$$

The forced response of a system consists of two parts. One part is due to the poles of the system and the other is due to the input. The response due to the poles of the system function  $H(s)$  vanishes after some time and hence it is called the transient response of the system. The response due to the pole of the input function  $X(s)$  remains as  $t \rightarrow \infty$  and is often referred to as the steady-state response.

**EXAMPLE 9.63** Using Laplace transform, solve the following differential equation:

$$\frac{d^2y(t)}{dt^2} + y(t) = x(t)$$

if  $dy(0^-)/dt = 2$ ,  $y(0^-) = 1$  for input  $x(t) = \cos 2t$ .

**Solution:** The given differential equation is:

$$\frac{d^2y(t)}{dt^2} + y(t) = x(t)$$

Taking Laplace transform on both sides, we have

$$s^2Y(s) - sy(0^-) - \frac{dy(0^-)}{dt} + Y(s) = X(s)$$

where

$$X(s) = L[x(t)] = L[\cos 2t] = \frac{s}{s^2 + 4}$$

Substituting the initial conditions, we have

$$s^2Y(s) - s - 2 + Y(s) = \frac{s}{s^2 + 4}$$

$$\therefore (s^2 + 1)Y(s) = (s + 2) + \frac{s}{s^2 + 4}$$

$$\therefore Y(s) = \frac{s+2}{s^2+1} + \frac{s}{(s^2+1)(s^2+4)} = \frac{(s+2)(s^2+4)+s}{(s^2+1)(s^2+4)} = \frac{s^3+2s^2+5s+8}{(s^2+1)(s^2+4)}$$

$$\text{i.e. } Y(s) = \frac{s^3+2s^2+5s+8}{(s^2+1)(s^2+4)} = \frac{As+B}{s^2+1} + \frac{Cs+D}{s^2+4} = \frac{(4/3)s+2}{s^2+1} + \frac{-(1/3)s}{s^2+4}$$

$$\therefore Y(s) = \frac{(4/3)s+2}{s^2+1} + \frac{-(1/3)s}{s^2+4} = \frac{4}{3} \left( \frac{s}{s^2+1} \right) + 2 \left( \frac{1}{s^2+1} \right) - \frac{1}{3} \left( \frac{s}{s^2+4} \right)$$

Taking inverse Laplace transform on both sides, the solution of the differential equation is:

$$y(t) = \frac{4}{3} \cos t u(t) + 2 \sin t u(t) - \frac{1}{3} \cos 2t u(t)$$

**EXAMPLE 9.64** Using Laplace transform, solve the differential equation

$$\frac{d^2y(t)}{dt^2} + 6 \frac{dy(t)}{dt} + 5y(t) = \frac{dx(t)}{dt}$$

$$\text{If } y(0^-) = 1; \frac{dy(0^-)}{dt} = 2 \quad \text{and} \quad x(t) = e^{-2t} u(t)$$

**Solution:** The given differential equation is:

$$\frac{d^2y(t)}{dt^2} + 6 \frac{dy(t)}{dt} + 5y(t) = \frac{dx(t)}{dt}$$

Taking Laplace transform on both sides, we have

$$s^2Y(s) - sy(0^-) - \frac{dy(0^-)}{dt} + 6[sY(s) - y(0^-)] + 5Y(s) = sX(s) - x(0^-)$$

Substituting the initial conditions, we have

$$s^2Y(s) - s - 2 + 6sY(s) - 6 + 5Y(s) = sX(s)$$

$$\begin{aligned}
 [s^2 + 6s + 5] Y(s) &= (s+1)(s+5) Y(s) = (s+8) + sX(s) \\
 x(t) &= e^{-2t} u(t) \\
 \therefore X(s) &= \frac{1}{s+2} \\
 \therefore (s^2 + 6s + 5) Y(s) &= (s+8) + \frac{s}{s+2}
 \end{aligned}$$

The response of the system is:

$$\begin{aligned}
 Y(s) &= \frac{s+8}{(s+1)(s+5)} + \frac{s}{(s+1)(s+2)(s+5)} \\
 &= \frac{(s+2)(s+8)+s}{(s+1)(s+2)(s+5)} = \frac{s^2 + 11s + 16}{(s+1)(s+2)(s+5)}
 \end{aligned}$$

Writing in terms of partial fractions, we have

$$Y(s) = \frac{s^2 + 11s + 16}{(s+1)(s+2)(s+5)} = \frac{A}{s+1} + \frac{B}{s+2} + \frac{C}{s+5} = \frac{3}{2} \left( \frac{1}{s+1} \right) + \frac{2}{3} \left( \frac{1}{s+2} \right) - \frac{7}{6} \left( \frac{1}{s+5} \right)$$

Taking inverse Laplace transform on both sides, the solution of the differential equation is:

$$y(t) = \frac{3}{2} e^{-t} u(t) + \frac{2}{3} e^{-2t} u(t) - \frac{7}{6} e^{-5t} u(t)$$

**EXAMPLE 9.65** A system is described by the differential equation

$$\frac{d^2 y(t)}{dt^2} + 5 \frac{dy(t)}{dt} + 4y(t) = x(t)$$

Determine the response of the system to an input  $x(t) = e^{-2t} u(t)$  applied at  $t = 0$ . The initial conditions are  $y(0^-) = -2$  and  $dy(0^-)/dt = -1$ .

**Solution:** The given differential equation is:

$$\frac{d^2 y(t)}{dt^2} + 5 \frac{dy(t)}{dt} + 4y(t) = x(t)$$

Taking Laplace transform on both sides, we have

$$s^2 Y(s) - sy(0^-) - \frac{dy(0^-)}{dt} + 5[sY(s) - y(0^-)] + 4Y(s) = X(s)$$

$$\text{i.e. } s^2 Y(s) + 2s + 1 + 5sY(s) + 10 + 4Y(s) = X(s)$$

$$(s^2 + 5s + 4) Y(s) + 2s + 11 = X(s)$$

The response of the system is:

$$Y(s) = -\frac{(2s+11)}{s^2 + 5s + 4} + \frac{X(s)}{s^2 + 5s + 4}$$

For an input  $x(t) = e^{-2t} u(t)$ ,  $X(s) = 1/(s + 2)$

$$\therefore Y(s) = -\frac{2s+11}{(s+1)(s+4)} + \frac{1}{(s+2)(s+1)(s+4)} = \frac{1-(2s+11)(s+2)}{(s+1)(s+2)(s+4)} = \frac{-2s^2-15s-21}{(s+1)(s+2)(s+4)}$$

Writing in terms of partial fractions, we have

$$Y(s) = \frac{A}{s+1} + \frac{B}{s+2} + \frac{C}{s+4} = -\frac{8}{3}\left(\frac{1}{s+1}\right) - \frac{1}{2}\left(\frac{1}{s+2}\right) + \frac{7}{6}\left(\frac{1}{s+4}\right)$$

Taking inverse Laplace transform on both sides, we get the response

$$y(t) = -\frac{8}{3}e^{-t}u(t) - \frac{1}{2}e^{-2t}u(t) + \frac{7}{6}e^{-4t}u(t)$$

**EXAMPLE 9.66** For a system with transfer function

$$H(s) = \frac{s+2}{s^2+4s+3}$$

Find the zero state response, if the input  $x(t)$  is  $e^{-t} u(t)$ .

**Solution:** The given transfer function is:

$$H(s) = \frac{Y(s)}{X(s)} = \frac{s+2}{s^2+4s+3}$$

The input  $x(t) = e^{-t} u(t)$

$$\therefore X(s) = \frac{1}{s+1}$$

Zero state response is the response when the initial conditions are neglected.

$$\therefore \text{Response } Y(s) = H(s) X(s) = \frac{(s+2)}{s^2+4s+3} \left( \frac{1}{s+1} \right) = \frac{s+2}{(s+1)^2(s+3)}$$

Taking partial fractions, we have

$$\begin{aligned} Y(s) &= \frac{s+2}{(s+1)^2(s+3)} = \frac{A}{s+1} + \frac{B}{(s+1)^2} + \frac{C}{s+3} \\ A &= \frac{1}{1!} \frac{d}{ds} [(s+1)^2 Y(s)] \Big|_{s=-1} = \frac{d}{ds} \left[ \frac{s+2}{s+3} \right] \Big|_{s=-1} = \frac{(s+3)1 - (s+2)1}{(s+3)^2} \Big|_{s=-1} = \frac{1}{4} \\ B &= (s+1)^2 \frac{s+2}{(s+1)^2(s+3)} \Big|_{s=-1} = \frac{-1+2}{-1+3} = \frac{1}{2} \\ C &= (s+3) \frac{s+2}{(s+1)^2(s+3)} \Big|_{s=-3} = \frac{-3+2}{(-3+1)^2} = \frac{-1}{4} \end{aligned}$$

$$\therefore Y(s) = \frac{1/4}{s+1} + \frac{1/2}{(s+1)^2} - \frac{1/4}{s+3}$$

Taking inverse Laplace transform on both sides, we get the zero state response

$$y(t) = \frac{1}{4}e^{-t}u(t) + \frac{1}{2}te^{-t}u(t) - \frac{1}{4}e^{-3t}u(t)$$

**EXAMPLE 9.67** Find the impulse and step response of the following systems:

$$(a) H(s) = \frac{5}{s^2 + 4s + 5}$$

$$(b) H(s) = \frac{s+3}{s^2 + 6s + 8}$$

**Solution:**

(a) The given transfer function is:

$$H(s) = \frac{Y(s)}{X(s)} = \frac{5}{s^2 + 4s + 5}$$

For an impulse input

$$x(t) = \delta(t)$$

$\therefore$

$$X(s) = 1$$

$$\therefore \text{Response } Y(s) = H(s) X(s) = \frac{5}{s^2 + 4s + 5}(1) = \frac{5}{(s+2)^2 + 1^2}$$

Taking inverse Laplace transform on both sides, we get the impulse response

$$y(t) = 5e^{-2t} \sin t u(t)$$

For a step input

$$x(t) = u(t)$$

$\therefore$

$$X(s) = \frac{1}{s}$$

$$\therefore \text{Response } Y(s) = H(s) X(s) = \frac{5}{s^2 + 4s + 5} \left( \frac{1}{s} \right) = \frac{5}{s(s^2 + 4s + 5)}$$

Taking partial fractions, we have

$$\frac{5}{s(s^2 + 4s + 5)} = \frac{A}{s} + \frac{Bs + C}{s^2 + 4s + 5} = \frac{A[(s^2 + 4s + 5) + s(Bs + C)]}{s(s^2 + 4s + 5)}$$

Equating the numerators, we have

$$5 = (A + B)s^2 + (4A + C)s + 5A$$

Comparing the terms on both sides, we have

$$A + B = 0$$

$\therefore$

$$B = -A$$

$$4A + C = 0$$

∴

$$C = -4A$$

$$5A = 5$$

∴  $A = 1$ ; So  $B = -1$  and  $C = 4$

$$\therefore Y(s) = \frac{1}{s} + \frac{-s - 4}{s^2 + 4s + 5} = \frac{1}{s} - \frac{s + 2}{(s + 2)^2 + 1^2} - 2 \left[ \frac{1}{(s + 2)^2 + 1^2} \right]$$

Taking inverse Laplace transform of  $Y(s)$ , we get the step response

$$y(t) = u(t) - e^{-2t} \cos t u(t) - 2e^{-2t} \sin t u(t)$$

(b) Given the transfer function

$$H(s) = \frac{Y(s)}{X(s)} = \frac{s + 3}{s^2 + 6s + 8}$$

For an impulse input

$$x(t) = \delta(t)$$

∴

$$X(s) = 1$$

$$\therefore \text{Response } Y(s) = H(s) X(s) = \frac{s + 3}{s^2 + 6s + 8} (1) = \frac{s + 3}{(s + 2)(s + 4)}$$

Taking partial fractions, we have

$$Y(s) = \frac{s + 3}{(s + 2)(s + 4)} = \frac{A}{s + 2} + \frac{B}{s + 4} = \frac{1}{2} \left( \frac{1}{s + 2} \right) + \frac{1}{2} \left( \frac{1}{s + 4} \right)$$

Taking inverse Laplace transform on both sides, we get the impulse response

$$y(t) = \frac{1}{2} e^{-2t} u(t) + \frac{1}{2} e^{-4t} u(t)$$

For a step input

$$x(t) = u(t)$$

∴

$$X(s) = \frac{1}{s}$$

$$\therefore \text{Response } Y(s) = H(s) X(s) = \frac{s + 3}{(s + 2)(s + 4)} \frac{1}{s} = \frac{s + 3}{s(s + 2)(s + 4)}$$

Taking partial fractions, we have

$$Y(s) = \frac{s + 3}{s(s + 2)(s + 4)} = \frac{A}{s} + \frac{B}{s + 2} + \frac{C}{s + 4} = \frac{3/8}{s} - \frac{1/4}{s + 2} - \frac{1/8}{s + 4}$$

Taking inverse Laplace transform on both sides, we get the step response

$$y(t) = \frac{3}{8} u(t) - \frac{1}{4} e^{-2t} u(t) - \frac{1}{8} e^{-4t} u(t)$$

**EXAMPLE 9.68** For the transfer function

$$H(s) = \frac{s+5}{s^2 + 3s + 2}$$

Find the response due to input  $x(t) = \cos 2t u(t)$ .

**Solution:** Given input  $x(t) = \cos 2t u(t)$

$$\therefore X(s) = \frac{s}{s^2 + (2)^2} = \frac{s}{s^2 + 4}$$

$$\text{Transfer function } H(s) = \frac{Y(s)}{X(s)} = \frac{s+5}{s^2 + 3s + 2} = \frac{s+5}{(s+1)(s+2)}$$

$$\therefore \text{Response } Y(s) = H(s) X(s) = \frac{s+5}{(s+1)(s+2)} \frac{s}{s^2 + 4} = \frac{s(s+5)}{(s+1)(s+2)(s^2 + 4)}$$

Taking partial fractions, we have

$$\begin{aligned} Y(s) &= \frac{A}{s+1} + \frac{B}{s+2} + \frac{Cs+D}{s^2+4} = -\frac{4}{5}\left(\frac{1}{s+1}\right) + \frac{3}{4}\left(\frac{1}{s+2}\right) + \frac{(1/20)s + (17/10)}{s^2+4} \\ &= -\frac{4}{5}\left(\frac{1}{s+1}\right) + \frac{3}{4}\left(\frac{1}{s+2}\right) + \frac{1}{20}\left(\frac{s}{s^2+2^2}\right) + \frac{17}{20}\left(\frac{2}{s^2+2^2}\right) \end{aligned}$$

Taking inverse Laplace transform on both sides, we get the response

$$y(t) = -\frac{4}{5}e^{-t}u(t) + \frac{3}{4}e^{-2t}u(t) + \frac{1}{20}\cos 2t u(t) + \frac{17}{20}\sin 2t u(t)$$

**EXAMPLE 9.69** Consider an LTI system whose response to the input  $x(t) = [2e^{-t} - e^{-3t}] u(t)$  is  $y(t) = [3e^{-2t} - 3e^{-4t}] u(t)$ . Find the system's impulse response.

**Solution:** The Laplace transforms of  $x(t)$  and  $y(t)$  are:

$$X(s) = L[(2e^{-t} - e^{-3t}) u(t)] = \frac{2}{s+1} - \frac{1}{s+3} = \frac{s+5}{(s+1)(s+3)}$$

$$Y(s) = L[(3e^{-2t} - 3e^{-4t}) u(t)] = \frac{3}{s+2} - \frac{3}{s+4} = \frac{6}{(s+2)(s+4)}$$

Hence, the system response is:

$$H(s) = \frac{Y(s)}{X(s)} = \frac{6(s+1)(s+3)}{(s+5)(s+2)(s+4)} = -\frac{1}{s+2} - \frac{9}{s+4} + \frac{1}{s+5}$$

Therefore, the impulse response is:

$$h(t) = -e^{-2t}u(t) - 9e^{-4t}u(t) + e^{-5t}u(t)$$

**EXAMPLE 9.70** A system has the transfer function  $H(s) = \frac{3s+2}{(s+4)(s-1)}$ . Find the impulse response assuming that the system is causal and stable.

$$\text{Solution: Given } H(s) = \frac{3s+2}{(s+4)(s-1)} = \frac{A}{s+4} + \frac{B}{s-1} = \frac{2}{s+4} + \frac{1}{s-1}$$

The poles are at  $s = -4$  and  $s = 1$ .

For an LTI system to be stable, its ROC must contain the imaginary axis of s-plane. So in this case, there would not be any combination which can be stable as well as causal.

Hence, the impulse response, which is stable but not causal is:

$$h(t) = 2e^{-4t} u(t) - e^t u(-t); \text{ ROC; } -4 < \text{Re}(s) < 1$$

Similarly, the impulse response which is causal but not stable is:

$$h(t) = 2e^{-4t} u(t) + e^t u(t); \text{ ROC; } \text{Re}(s) > 1$$

**EXAMPLE 9.71** Using Laplace transform, find all possible impulse responses of an LTI system described by the differential equation

$$\frac{d^2y(t)}{dt^2} - 2\frac{dy(t)}{dt} - 3y(t) = x(t)$$

**Solution:** Taking Laplace transform of the given differential equation on both sides and neglecting the initial conditions, we get

$$s^2Y(s) - 2sY(s) - 3Y(s) = X(s)$$

$$\text{i.e. } (s^2 - 2s - 3)Y(s) = X(s)$$

The system transfer function is:

$$H(s) = \frac{Y(s)}{X(s)} = \frac{1}{s^2 - 2s - 3} = \frac{1}{(s-3)(s+1)} = \frac{A}{s-3} + \frac{B}{s+1} = \frac{1/2}{s-3} - \frac{1/2}{s+1}$$

This can have three possible impulse responses. These are:

(a) Both the terms are causal, i.e. ROC;  $\text{Re}(s) > 3$

$$\begin{aligned} h(t) &= L^{-1}[H(s)] = L^{-1}\left(\frac{1/2}{s-3} - \frac{1/2}{s+1}\right) \\ &= \frac{1}{2}e^{3t}u(t) - \frac{1}{2}e^{-t}u(t) = \frac{1}{2}(e^{3t} - e^{-t})u(t) \end{aligned}$$

(b) Both the terms are non-causal, i.e. ROC;  $\text{Re}(s) < -1$

$$\begin{aligned} h(t) &= L^{-1}[H(s)] = L^{-1}\left(\frac{1/2}{s-3} - \frac{1/2}{s+1}\right) \\ &= -\frac{1}{2}e^{3t}u(-t) + \frac{1}{2}e^{-t}u(-t) = \frac{1}{2}(e^{-t} - e^{3t})u(-t) \end{aligned}$$

- (c) The first term is non-causal and the second term is causal, i.e.  $-1 < \text{Re}(s) < 3$

$$\begin{aligned} \therefore h(t) &= \mathcal{L}^{-1}[H(s)] = \mathcal{L}^{-1}\left(\frac{1/2}{s-3} - \frac{1/2}{s+1}\right) \\ &= -\frac{1}{2}e^{3t}u(-t) - \frac{1}{2}e^{-t}u(t) \end{aligned}$$

**EXAMPLE 9.72** Consider the continuous time LTI system initially at rest (i.e. all the initial conditions are zero) and described by the differential equation  $\frac{d^2y(t)}{dt^2} + 2\frac{dy(t)}{dt} - 3y(t) = x(t)$ . Determine all possible step responses.

**Solution:** Taking Laplace transform on both sides of the given differential equation and neglecting the initial conditions, we have

$$s^2Y(s) + 2sY(s) - 3Y(s) = X(s)$$

$$\text{i.e. } [s^2 + 2s - 3]Y(s) = X(s)$$

The transfer function of the system is:

$$H(s) = \frac{Y(s)}{X(s)} = \frac{1}{s^2 + 2s - 3} = \frac{1}{(s+3)(s-1)}$$

For step response,  $x(t) = u(t)$ .

$$\begin{aligned} \therefore X(s) &= \frac{1}{s} \\ \therefore Y(s) = H(s)X(s) &= \frac{1}{s(s-1)(s+3)} = \frac{A}{s} + \frac{B}{s-1} + \frac{C}{s+3} = -\frac{1/3}{s} + \frac{1/4}{s-1} + \frac{1/12}{s+3} \end{aligned}$$

This can have four possible step responses:

- (a) All the terms are causal, i.e. ROC;  $\text{Re}(s) > 1$

$$h(t) = \mathcal{L}^{-1}\left(-\frac{1/3}{s} + \frac{1/4}{s-1} + \frac{1/12}{s+3}\right) = -\frac{1}{3}u(t) + \frac{1}{4}e^t u(t) + \frac{1}{12}e^{-3t} u(t)$$

- (b) All the terms are non-causal, i.e., ROC;  $\text{Re}(s) < -3$

$$h(t) = \mathcal{L}^{-1}\left(-\frac{1/3}{s} + \frac{1/4}{s-1} + \frac{1/12}{s+3}\right) = \frac{1}{3}u(-t) - \frac{1}{4}e^t u(-t) - \frac{1}{12}e^{-3t} u(-t)$$

- (c) Two terms are causal and one term non-causal, i.e. ROC is  $0 < \text{Re}(s) < 1$

$$h(t) = \mathcal{L}^{-1}\left(-\frac{1/3}{s} + \frac{1/4}{s-1} + \frac{1/12}{s+3}\right) = -\frac{1}{3}u(t) - \frac{1}{4}e^t u(-t) + \frac{1}{12}e^{-3t} u(t)$$

- (d) Two terms are non-causal and one term causal, ROC;  $-3 < \text{Re}(s) < 0$

$$h(t) = \frac{1}{3}u(-t) - \frac{1}{4}e^t u(-t) + \frac{1}{12}e^{-3t} u(t)$$

**EXAMPLE 9.73** The system function of a causal LTI system is:

$$H(s) = \frac{s+1}{s^2 + 2s + 2}$$

Determine the response  $y(t)$  when the input  $x(t) = e^{-|t|}$ .

**Solution:** Given

$$x(t) = e^{-|t|}$$

Then

$$\begin{aligned} X(s) &= \mathcal{L}[x(t)] = \mathcal{L}[e^{-|t|}] = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} e^{-|t|} e^{-st} dt \\ &= \int_{-\infty}^0 e^t e^{-st} dt + \int_0^{\infty} e^{-t} e^{-st} dt \\ &= \underbrace{\int_{-\infty}^0 e^{-(s-1)t} dt}_{\substack{\text{ROC } \operatorname{Re}(s) < 1}} + \underbrace{\int_0^{\infty} e^{-(s+1)t} dt}_{\substack{\text{ROC } s > -1}} \\ &= \frac{-1}{s-1} + \frac{1}{s+1} = -\frac{2}{(s+1)(s-1)} \end{aligned}$$

Now,

$$\text{System function } H(s) = \frac{s+1}{s^2 + 2s + 2}$$

$$\begin{aligned} \therefore Y(s) &= X(s) H(s) = -\frac{2}{(s+1)(s-1)} \frac{s+1}{s^2 + 2s + 2} = -\frac{2}{(s-1)(s^2 + 2s + 2)} \\ &= \frac{A}{s-1} + \frac{Bs+C}{s^2 + 2s + 2} = -\left(\frac{2/5}{s-1}\right) + \left[\frac{(2/5)(s+1) + (4/5)}{s^2 + 2s + 2}\right] \\ \therefore Y(s) &= -\left(\frac{2/5}{s-1}\right) + \left[\frac{2/5(s+1) + 4/5}{s^2 + 2s + 2}\right] = -\frac{2}{5}\left(\frac{1}{s-1}\right) + \frac{2}{5}\left[\frac{(s+1)}{(s+1)^2 + 1}\right] + \frac{4}{5}\left[\frac{1}{(s+1)^2 + 1}\right] \end{aligned}$$

Taking inverse Laplace transform on both sides, we have the response

$$y(t) = -\frac{2}{5}e^t u(t) + \frac{2}{5}e^{-t} \cos t u(t) + \frac{4}{5}e^{-t} \sin t u(t)$$

**EXAMPLE 9.74** A system is characterised by the differential equation

$$\frac{d^2y(t)}{dt^2} + \frac{5dy(t)}{dt} + 6y(t) = x(t)$$

Solve for  $y(t)$  for  $t \geq 0$  when  $x(t) = u(t)$ ,  $y(0^-) = 2$  and  $dy(0^-)/dt = 12$ .

**Solution:** Given differential equation is:

$$\frac{d^2y(t)}{dt^2} + \frac{5dy(t)}{dt} + 6y(t) = x(t) = u(t)$$

Taking Laplace transform on both sides, we have

$$\begin{aligned} s^2Y(s) - sy(0^-) - \frac{dy(0^-)}{dt} + 5sY(s) - 5y(0^-) + 6Y(s) &= X(s) = \frac{1}{s} \\ [s^2 + 5s + 6]Y(s) &= sy(0^-) + 5y(0^-) + \frac{dy(0^-)}{dt} + \frac{1}{s} \\ &= 2(s+5) + 12 + \frac{1}{s} = (2s+22) + \frac{1}{s} = \frac{2s^2 + 22s + 1}{s} \\ \therefore Y(s) &= \frac{2s^2 + 22s + 1}{s(s^2 + 5s + 6)} = \frac{2s^2 + 22s + 1}{s(s+2)(s+3)} \\ &= \frac{A}{s} + \frac{B}{s+2} + \frac{C}{s+3} = \frac{1}{6}\left(\frac{1}{s}\right) + \frac{35}{2}\left(\frac{1}{s+2}\right) - \frac{47}{3}\left(\frac{1}{s+3}\right) \end{aligned}$$

Taking inverse Laplace transform on both sides, we have

$$y(t) = \frac{1}{6}u(t) + \frac{35}{2}e^{-2t}u(t) - \frac{47}{3}e^{-3t}u(t)$$

## 9.12 WAVEFORM SYNTHESIS

The Laplace transform of waveforms can be determined by synthesizing the given waveforms.

The given waveforms are first expressed in terms of singular functions, the Laplace transform of each singular function is then determined and all those are added to obtain the Laplace transform of the waveform.

**EXAMPLE 9.75** Find the Laplace transform of the waveform shown in Figure 9.24.

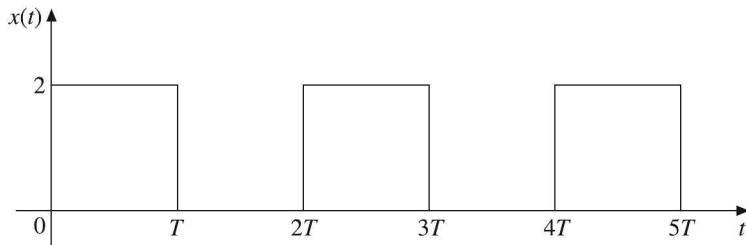


Figure 9.24 Waveform for Example 9.75.

**Solution:** The waveform in Figure 9.24 can be synthesized as shown in Figure 9.25.

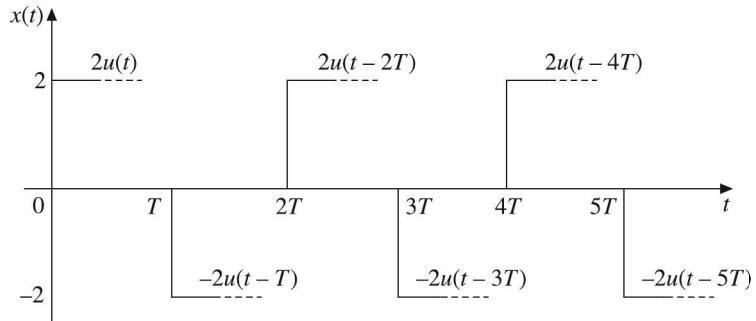


Figure 9.25 Synthesis of waveform in Figure 9.24.

From Figure 9.25, we find that the given waveform can be expressed mathematically as:

$$x(t) = 2u(t) - 2u(t-T) + 2u(t-2T) - 2u(t-3T) + 2u(t-4T) - 2u(t-5T) + \dots$$

We know that

$$\mathcal{L}[u(t)] = \frac{1}{s} \quad \text{and} \quad \mathcal{L}[u(t-t_0)] = \frac{e^{-t_0 s}}{s}$$

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Therefore, } X(s) &= \frac{2}{s} - 2 \frac{e^{-Ts}}{s} + 2 \frac{e^{-2Ts}}{s} - 2 \frac{e^{-3Ts}}{s} + 2 \frac{e^{-4Ts}}{s} - 2 \frac{e^{-5Ts}}{s} + \dots \\ &= \frac{2}{s} [1 - e^{-Ts} + e^{-2Ts} - e^{-3Ts} + e^{-4Ts} - e^{-5Ts} + \dots] \\ &= \frac{2}{s} [1 + e^{-Ts}]^{-1} = \frac{2}{s} \left( \frac{1}{1 + e^{-Ts}} \right) \end{aligned}$$

### Alternate method

The given waveform \$x(t)\$ is a periodic waveform with period \$2T\$. The basic waveform \$x\_1(t)\$ over one period is shown in Figure 9.26.

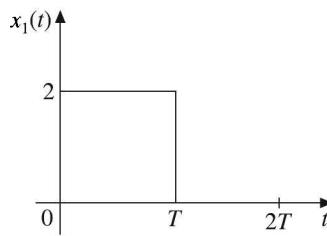


Figure 9.26 One period of waveform in Figure 9.25.

Using the periodicity property, we have

$$X(s) = \frac{1}{1 - e^{-2Ts}} X_1(s)$$

$$\begin{aligned}
 x_1(t) &= 2[u(t) - u(t-T)] \\
 \therefore X_1(s) &= \mathcal{L}\{2[u(t) - u(t-T)]\} \\
 X_1(s) &= 2\left(\frac{1}{s} - \frac{e^{-Ts}}{s}\right) = \frac{2}{s}(1 - e^{-Ts}) \\
 X(s) &= \frac{1}{1-e^{-2Ts}} \left(\frac{2}{s}\right)(1 - e^{-Ts}) \\
 \therefore &= \frac{2}{s} \frac{(1 - e^{-Ts})}{(1 + e^{-Ts})(1 - e^{-Ts})} = \frac{2}{s} \left(\frac{1}{1 + e^{-Ts}}\right)
 \end{aligned}$$

**EXAMPLE 9.76** Find the Laplace transform of the waveform shown in Figure 9.27.

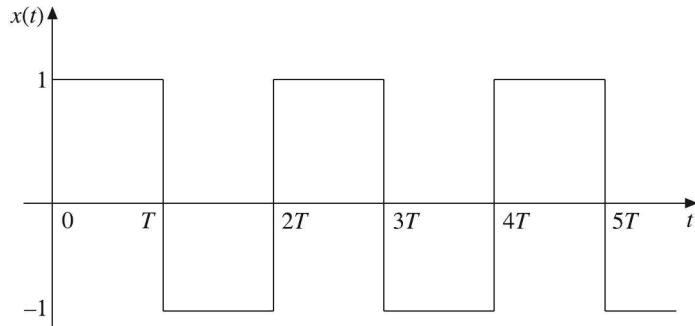


Figure 9.27 Waveform for Example 9.76.

**Solution:** The waveform in Figure 9.27 can be synthesized as shown in Figure 9.28.

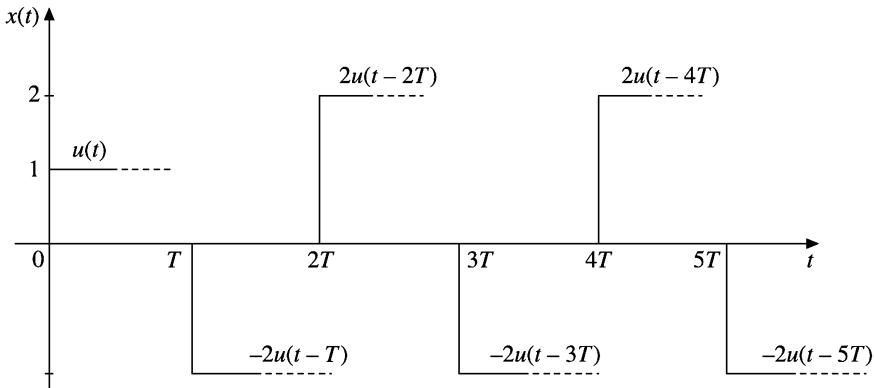


Figure 9.28 Synthesis of waveform in Figure 9.27.

From Figure 9.28, we find that the given waveform can be expressed mathematically as:

$$x(t) = u(t) - 2u(t-T) + 2u(t-2T) - 2u(t-3T) + 2u(t-4T) - 2u(t-5T) + \dots$$

We know

$$\mathcal{L}[u(t)] = \frac{1}{s}$$

Using time shifting property, we have

$$\mathcal{L}[u(t - t_0)] = \frac{e^{-t_0 s}}{s}$$

Therefore, taking Laplace transform of the above equation, we have

$$\begin{aligned} X(s) &= \frac{1}{s} - 2\frac{e^{-Ts}}{s} + 2\frac{e^{-2Ts}}{s} - 2\frac{e^{-3Ts}}{s} + 2\frac{e^{-4Ts}}{s} - 2\frac{e^{-5Ts}}{s} + \dots \\ &= \frac{1}{s} [1 - 2e^{-Ts} (1 - e^{-Ts} + e^{-2Ts} - e^{-3Ts} + e^{-4Ts} + \dots)] = \frac{1}{s} [1 - 2e^{-Ts} (1 + e^{-Ts})^{-1}] \\ &= \frac{1}{s} \left( 1 - \frac{2e^{-Ts}}{1 + e^{-Ts}} \right) = \frac{1}{s} \left( \frac{1 + e^{-Ts} - 2e^{-Ts}}{1 + e^{-Ts}} \right) = \frac{1}{s} \left( \frac{1 - e^{-Ts}}{1 + e^{-Ts}} \right) \end{aligned}$$

### Alternate method

The given waveform  $x(t)$  in Figure 9.27 is a periodic waveform with a period of  $2T$ .

One cycle of the waveform, i.e.  $x_1(t)$  is shown in Figure 9.29.

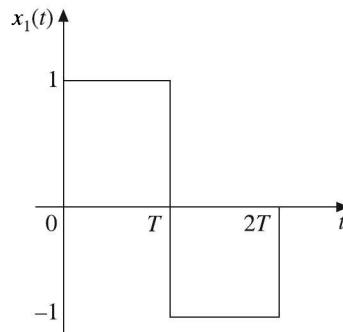


Figure 9.29 One period of waveform in Figure 9.27.

Therefore,

$$x_1(t) = u(t) - 2u(t - T) + u(t - 2T)$$

Taking Laplace transform on both sides, we have

$$X_1(s) = \frac{1}{s} - \frac{2e^{-Ts}}{s} + \frac{e^{-2Ts}}{s} = \frac{1}{s} [1 - e^{-Ts}]^2$$

Using the property of periodicity, we have

$$X(s) = \frac{1}{1 - e^{-2Ts}} \left[ \frac{1}{s} (1 - e^{-Ts})^2 \right] = \frac{1}{s} \left( \frac{1 - e^{-Ts}}{1 + e^{-Ts}} \right)$$

**EXAMPLE 9.77** Find the Laplace transform of the waveform shown in Figure 9.30(a).

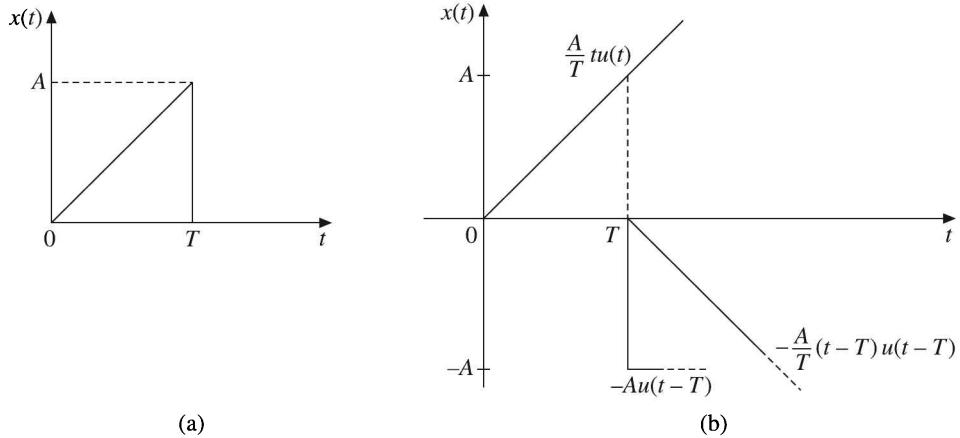


Figure 9.30 (a) Waveform for Example 9.77, (b) Its synthesis.

**Solution:** The waveform in Figure 9.30(a) can be synthesized as shown in Figure 9.30(b). From Figure 9.30(b), we find that the given waveform can be expressed mathematically as:

$$x(t) = \frac{A}{T}tu(t) - \frac{A}{T}(t-T)u(t-T) - Au(t-T)$$

Taking Laplace transform on both sides, we have

$$\begin{aligned} X(s) &= \frac{A}{T} \frac{1}{s^2} - \frac{A}{T} e^{-Ts} \frac{1}{s^2} - A e^{-Ts} \frac{1}{s} \\ &= A \left( \frac{1}{Ts^2} - \frac{e^{-Ts}}{Ts^2} - \frac{e^{-Ts}}{s} \right) \end{aligned}$$

**EXAMPLE 9.78** Find the Laplace transform of the signal shown in Figure 9.31(a).

**Solution:** The signal in Figure 9.31(a) can be synthesized as shown in Figure 9.31(b).

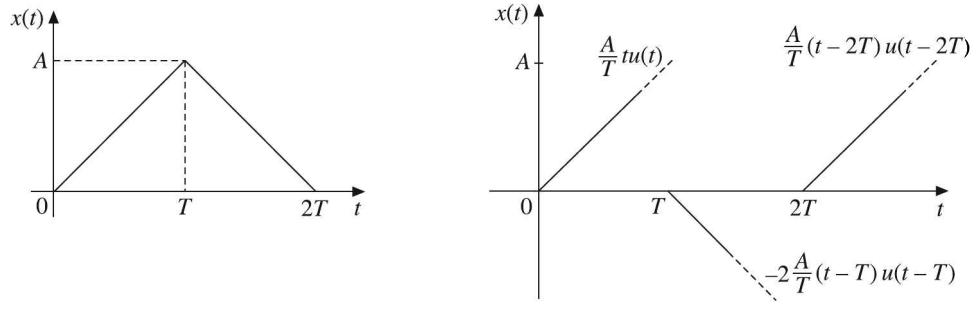


Figure 9.31 (a) Waveform for Example 9.78, (b) Its synthesis.

From Figure 9.31(b), we find that the given waveform can be expressed mathematically as:

$$x(t) = \frac{A}{T} r(t) - 2 \frac{A}{T} r(t-T) + \frac{A}{T} r(t-2T)$$

where  
 $r(t) = t \quad \text{for } t \geq 0$   
 $= 0 \quad \text{for } t < 0$

i.e.  
 $r(t) = tu(t)$

$$\therefore x(t) = \frac{A}{T} [tu(t) - 2(t-T)u(t-T) + (t-2T)u(t-2T)]$$

Taking Laplace transform on both sides, we have

$$\begin{aligned} X(s) &= \frac{A}{T} \left( \frac{1}{s^2} - \frac{2e^{-Ts}}{s^2} + \frac{e^{-2Ts}}{s^2} \right) \\ &= \frac{A}{T} \left( \frac{1 - 2e^{-Ts} + e^{-2Ts}}{s^2} \right) = \frac{A}{T} \left( \frac{1 - e^{-Ts}}{s} \right)^2 \end{aligned}$$

**EXAMPLE 9.79** Find the Laplace transform of the waveform shown in Figure 9.32.

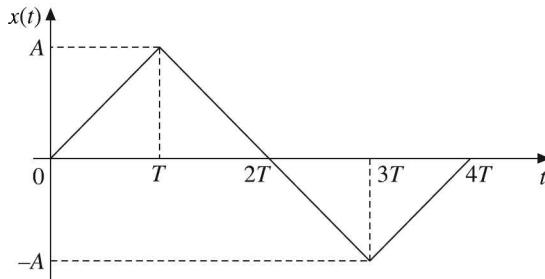


Figure 9.32 Waveform for Example 9.79.

**Solution:** The waveform in Figure 9.32 can be synthesized as shown in Figure 9.33.

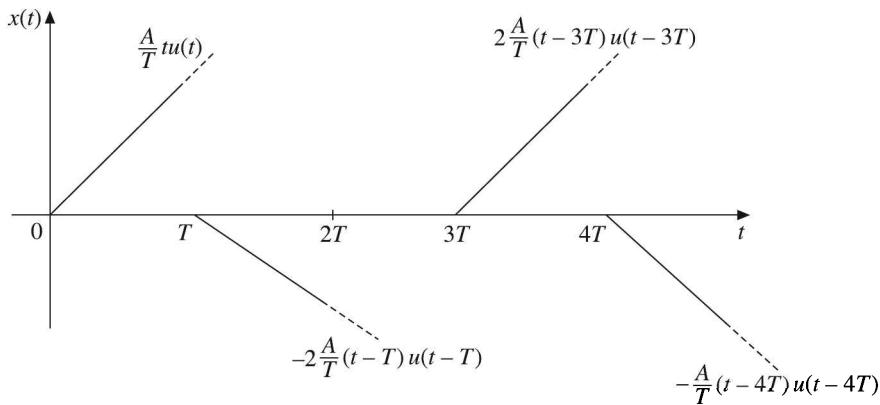


Figure 9.33 Synthesis of waveform in Figure 9.32.

From Figure 9.33, we find that the given waveform can be expressed mathematically as:

$$x(t) = \frac{A}{T} t u(t) - \frac{2A}{T} (t - T) u(t - T) + \frac{2A}{T} (t - 3T) u(t - 3T) - \frac{A}{T} (t - 4T) u(t - 4T)$$

Taking Laplace transform on both sides, we have

$$X(s) = \frac{A}{T} \frac{1}{s^2} - \frac{2A}{T} \frac{e^{-Ts}}{s^2} + \frac{2A}{T} \frac{e^{-3Ts}}{s^2} - \frac{A}{T} \frac{e^{-4Ts}}{s^2} = \frac{A}{Ts^2} [1 - 2e^{-Ts} + 2e^{-3Ts} - e^{-4Ts}]$$

**EXAMPLE 9.80** Find the Laplace transform of the waveform shown in Figure 9.34.

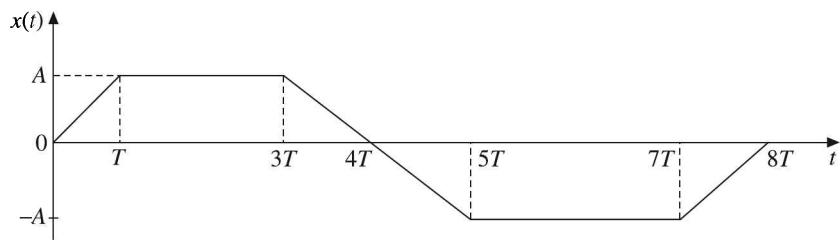


Figure 9.34 Waveform for Example 9.80.

**Solution:** The waveform in Figure 9.34 can be synthesized as shown in Figure 9.35.

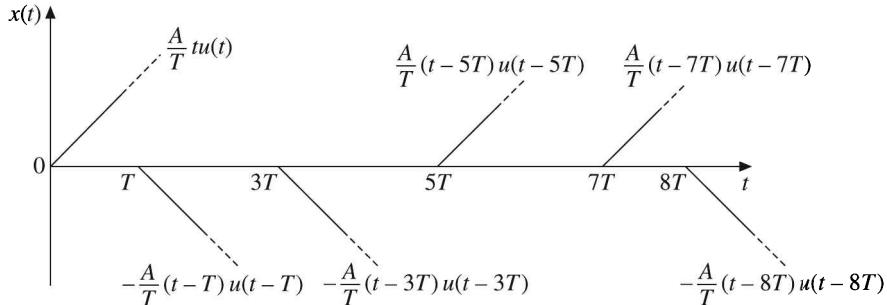


Figure 9.35 Synthesis of waveform in Figure 9.34.

From Figure 9.35, we find that the given waveform can be expressed mathematically as:

$$\begin{aligned} x(t) &= \frac{A}{T} t u(t) - \frac{A}{T} (t - T) u(t - T) - \frac{A}{T} (t - 3T) u(t - 3T) + \frac{A}{T} (t - 5T) u(t - 5T) \\ &\quad + \frac{A}{T} (t - 7T) u(t - 7T) - \frac{A}{T} (t - 8T) u(t - 8T) \end{aligned}$$

Taking Laplace transform on both sides, we have

$$\begin{aligned} X(s) &= \frac{A}{T} \left( \frac{1}{s^2} - \frac{e^{-Ts}}{s^2} - \frac{e^{-3Ts}}{s^2} + \frac{e^{-5Ts}}{s^2} + \frac{e^{-7Ts}}{s^2} - \frac{e^{-8Ts}}{s^2} \right) \\ &= \frac{A}{Ts^2} \left( 1 - e^{-Ts} - e^{-3Ts} + e^{-5Ts} + e^{-7Ts} - e^{-8Ts} \right) \end{aligned}$$

**EXAMPLE 9.81** Find the Laplace transform of the waveform shown in Figure 9.36.

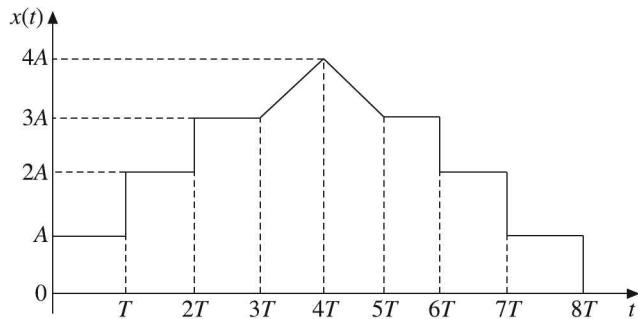


Figure 9.36 Waveform for Example 9.81.

**Solution:** The waveform in Figure 9.36 can be synthesized as shown in Figure 9.37.

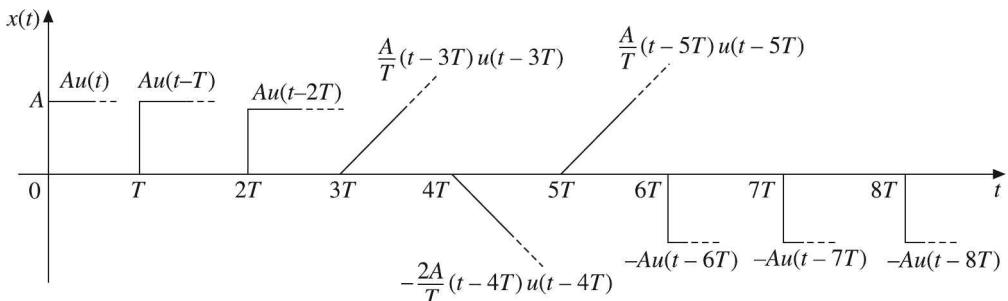


Figure 9.37 Synthesis of waveform in Figure 9.36.

From Figure 9.37, we find that the given waveform can be expressed mathematically as:

$$\begin{aligned} x(t) &= Au(t) + Au(t-T) + Au(t-2T) + \frac{A}{T}(t-3T)u(t-3T) - \frac{2A}{T}(t-4T)u(t-4T) \\ &\quad + \frac{A}{T}(t-5T)u(t-5T) - Au(t-6T) - Au(t-7T) - Au(t-8T) \end{aligned}$$

Taking Laplace transform on both sides, we have

$$X(s) = \frac{A}{s} + \frac{Ae^{-Ts}}{s} + \frac{Ae^{-2Ts}}{s} + \frac{Ae^{-3Ts}}{s} - \frac{2A}{T} \frac{e^{-4Ts}}{s} + \frac{Ae^{-5Ts}}{s} - A \frac{e^{-6Ts}}{s} - A \frac{e^{-7Ts}}{s} - A \frac{e^{-8Ts}}{s}$$

**EXAMPLE 9.82** Find the Laplace transform of the waveform shown in Figure 9.38(a).

**Solution:** The waveform in Figure 9.38(a) can be synthesized as shown in Figure 9.38(b).

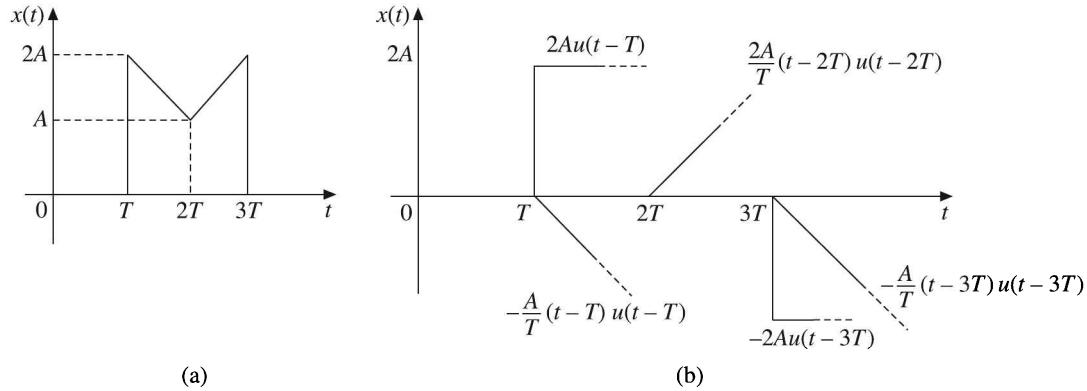


Figure 9.38 (a) Waveform for Example 9.82, (b) Its synthesis.

From Figure 9.38(b), we find that the given waveform can be expressed mathematically as:

$$\begin{aligned} x(t) &= 2Au(t - T) - \frac{A}{T}(t - T)u(t - T) + \frac{2A}{T}(t - 2T)u(t - 2T) \\ &\quad - \frac{A}{T}(t - 3T)u(t - 3T) - 2Au(t - 3T) \end{aligned}$$

Taking Laplace transform on both sides, we have

$$X(s) = 2A \frac{e^{-Ts}}{s} - \frac{A}{T} \frac{e^{-Ts}}{s^2} + \frac{2A}{T} \frac{e^{-2Ts}}{s^2} - \frac{A}{T} \frac{e^{-3Ts}}{s^2} - 2A \frac{e^{-3Ts}}{s}$$

**EXAMPLE 9.83** Find the Laplace transform of the waveform shown in Figure 9.39(a).

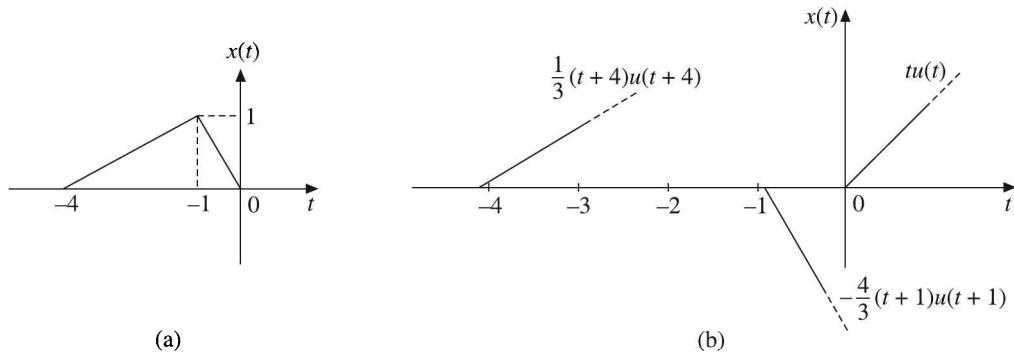


Figure 9.39 (a) Waveform for Example 9.83, (b) Its synthesis.

**Solution:** The waveform in Figure 9.39(a) can be synthesized as shown in Figure 9.39(b). From Figure 9.39(b), we find that the given waveform can be expressed mathematically as:

$$x(t) = \frac{1}{3}(t+4)u(t+4) - \frac{4}{3}(t+1)u(t+1) + tu(t)$$

Taking Laplace transform on both sides, we have

$$\begin{aligned} X(s) &= \frac{1}{3} \frac{e^{4s}}{s^2} - \frac{4}{3} \frac{e^s}{s^2} + \frac{1}{s^2} \\ &= \frac{1}{3s^2} [e^{4s} - 4e^s + 3] \end{aligned}$$

**EXAMPLE 9.84** Find the Laplace transform of the signal shown in Figure 9.40(a).

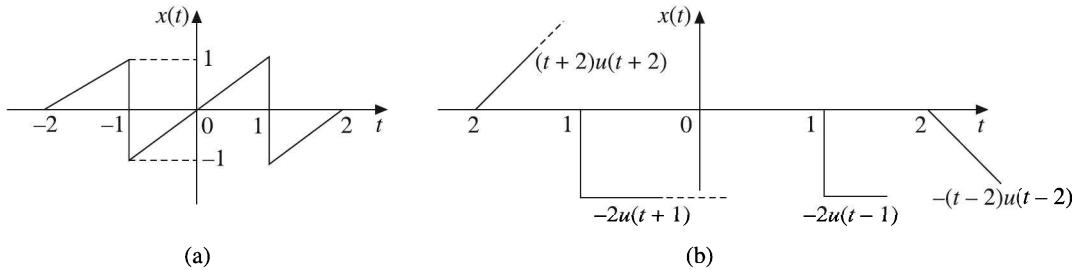


Figure 9.40 (a) Waveform for Example 9.84, (b) Its synthesis.

**Solution:** The waveform in Figure 9.40(a) can be synthesized as shown in Figure 9.40(b). From Figure 9.40(b), we find that the given waveform can be expressed mathematically as:

$$x(t) = (t+2)u(t+2) - 2u(t+1) - 2u(t-1) - (t-2)u(t-2)$$

Taking Laplace transform on both sides, we have

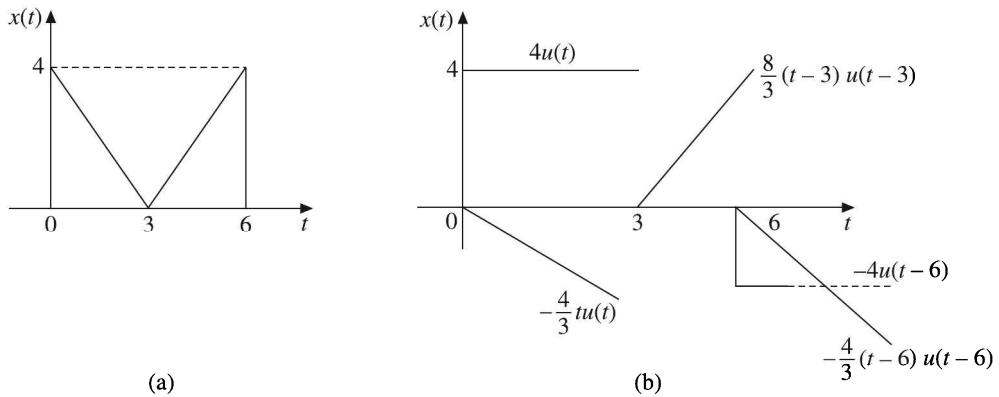
$$X(s) = \frac{e^{2s}}{s^2} - \frac{2e^s}{s} - \frac{2e^{-s}}{s} - \frac{e^{-2s}}{s^2}$$

**EXAMPLE 9.85** Find the Laplace transform of the signal shown in Figure 9.41(a).

**Solution:** The waveform in Figure 9.41(a) can be synthesized as shown in Figure 9.41(b). From Figure 9.41(b), we find that the given waveform can be expressed mathematically as

$$x(t) = 4u(t) - \frac{4}{3}r(t) + \frac{8}{3}r(t-3) - \frac{4}{3}r(t-6) - 4u(t-6)$$

$$\text{i.e. } x(t) = 4u(t) - \frac{4}{3}tu(t) + \frac{8}{3}(t-3)u(t-3) - \frac{4}{3}(t-6)u(t-6) - 4u(t-6)$$

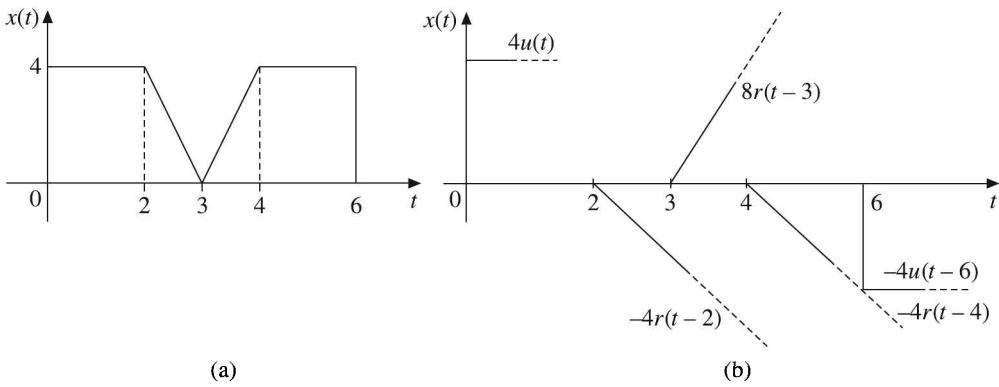


**Figure 9.41** (a) Waveform for Example 9.85, (b) Its synthesis.

Taking Laplace transform on both sides, we have

$$X(s) = \frac{4}{s} - \frac{4}{3} \frac{1}{s^2} + \frac{8}{3} \frac{e^{-3s}}{s^2} - \frac{4}{3} \frac{e^{-6s}}{s^2} - 4 \frac{e^{-6s}}{s}$$

**EXAMPLE 9.86** Find the Laplace transform of the signal shown in Figure 9.42(a).



**Figure 9.42** (a) Waveform for Example 9.86 (b) Its synthesis.

**Solution:** The given waveform of Figure 9.42(a) can be synthesized as shown in Figure 9.42(b). From Figure 9.42(b), we find that the given waveform can be expressed mathematically as:

$$x(t) = 4u(t) - 4r(t-2) + 8r(t-3) - 4r(t-4) - 4u(t-6)$$

Taking Laplace transform on both sides, we have

$$X(s) = \frac{4}{s} - 4 \frac{e^{-2s}}{s^2} + 8 \frac{e^{-3s}}{s^2} - 4 \frac{e^{-4s}}{s^2} - 4 \frac{e^{-6s}}{s}$$

**EXAMPLE 9.87** Find the Laplace transform of the signal shown in Figure 9.43(a).

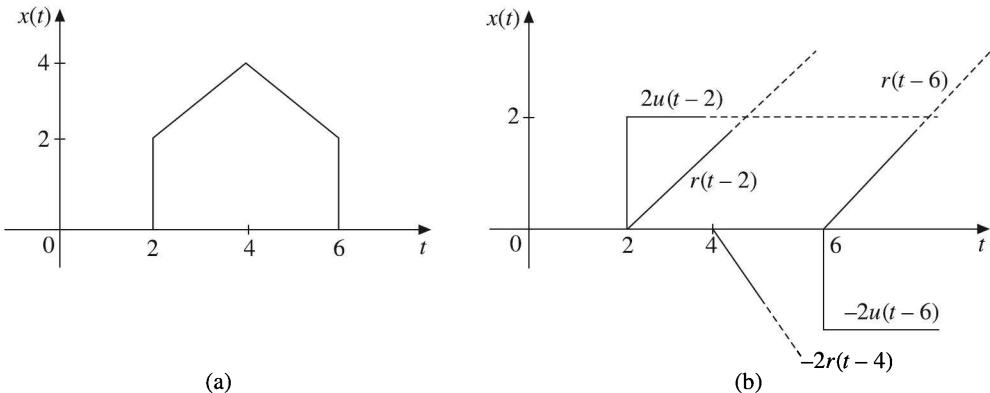


Figure 9.43 (a) Waveform for Example 9.87, (b) Its synthesis.

**Solution:** The given waveform of Figure 9.43(a) can be synthesized as shown in Figure 9.43(b). From Figure 9.43(b), we find that the given waveform can be expressed mathematically as:

$$x(t) = 2u(t-2) + r(t-2) - 2r(t-4) + r(t-6) - 2u(t-6)$$

Taking Laplace transform on both sides, we have

$$X(s) = 2 \frac{e^{-2s}}{s} + \frac{e^{-2s}}{s^2} - 2 \frac{e^{-4s}}{s^2} + \frac{e^{-6s}}{s^2} - 2 \frac{e^{-6s}}{s}$$

**EXAMPLE 9.88** Find the Laplace transform of the signal shown in Figure 9.44(a).

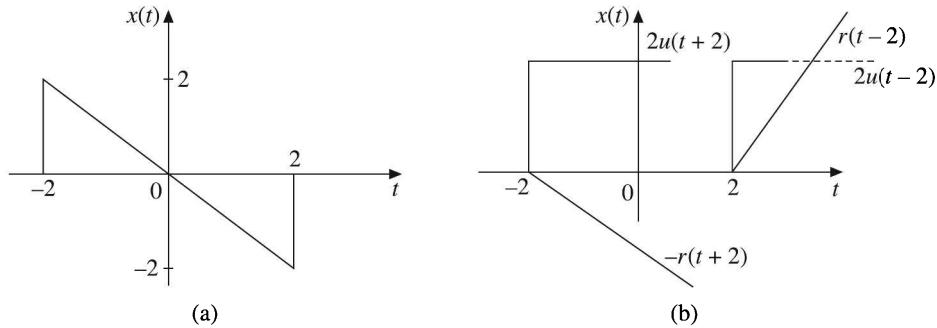


Figure 9.44 (a) Waveform for Example 9.88, (b) Its synthesis.

**Solution:** The given waveform of Figure 9.44(a) can be synthesized as shown in Figure 9.44(b). From Figure 9.44(b), we find that the given waveform can be expressed mathematically as:

$$x(t) = 2u(t+2) - r(t+2) + r(t-2) + 2u(t-2)$$

Taking Laplace transform on both sides, we have

$$X(s) = 2 \frac{e^{2s}}{s} - \frac{e^{2s}}{s^2} + \frac{e^{-2s}}{s^2} + 2 \frac{e^{-2s}}{s}$$

**EXAMPLE 9.89** Determine the Laplace transform of the signal

$$\begin{aligned} x(t) &= \sin(\pi t) \quad 0 < t < 2 \\ &= 0 \quad \text{otherwise} \end{aligned}$$

**Solution:** Equating the given signal to the standard sinusoidal signal, we have

$$\sin(\pi t) = \sin(\omega t) = \sin(2\pi ft) = \sin\left(\frac{2\pi}{T}t\right)$$

$$\therefore \pi = \frac{2\pi}{T} \quad \text{or} \quad T = \frac{2\pi}{\pi} = 2$$

So the time period of the signal  $\sin \pi t$  is  $T = 2$ .

From Figure 9.45, we observe that

$$x(t) = \sin(\pi t) u(t) - \sin \pi(t-2) u(t-2)$$

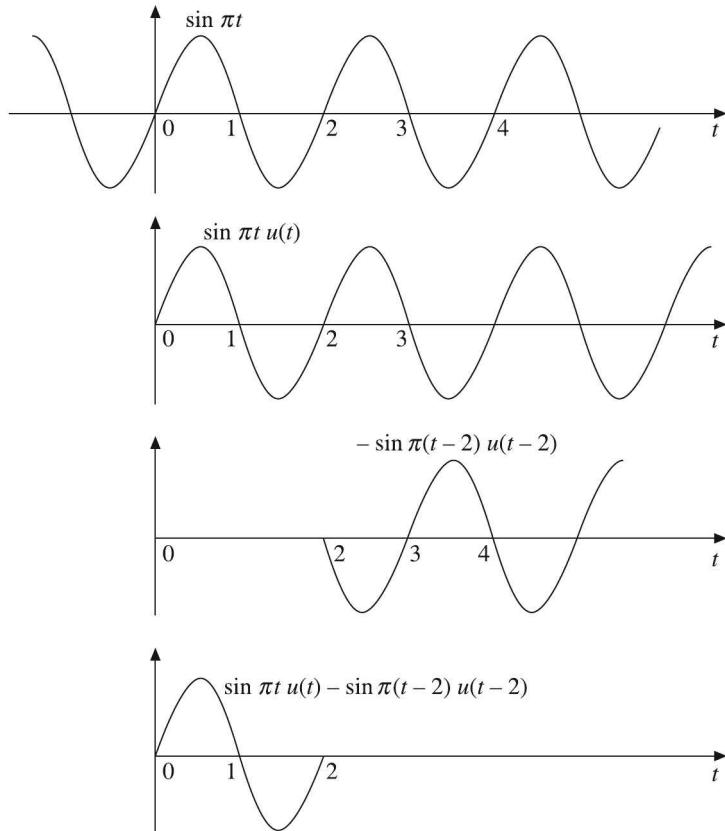


Figure 9.45 Waveform for Example 9.89.

We know that

$$\mathcal{L}[\sin(\pi t) u(t)] = \frac{\pi}{s^2 + \pi^2}$$

Using time shifting property, we have

$$\mathcal{L}[\sin \pi(t-2) u(t-2)] = e^{-2s} \mathcal{L}[\sin \pi t] = e^{-2s} \frac{\pi}{s^2 + \pi^2}$$

$$\begin{aligned} \mathcal{L}[x(t)] &= X(s) = \mathcal{L}[\sin(\pi t) u(t) - \sin \pi(t-2) u(t-2)] \\ \therefore &= \frac{\pi}{s^2 + \pi^2} - e^{-2s} \frac{\pi}{s^2 + \pi^2} = \frac{\pi}{s^2 + \pi^2} (1 - e^{-2s}) \end{aligned}$$

**EXAMPLE 9.90** Find the Laplace transform of the signals shown in Figure 9.46 by direct computation.

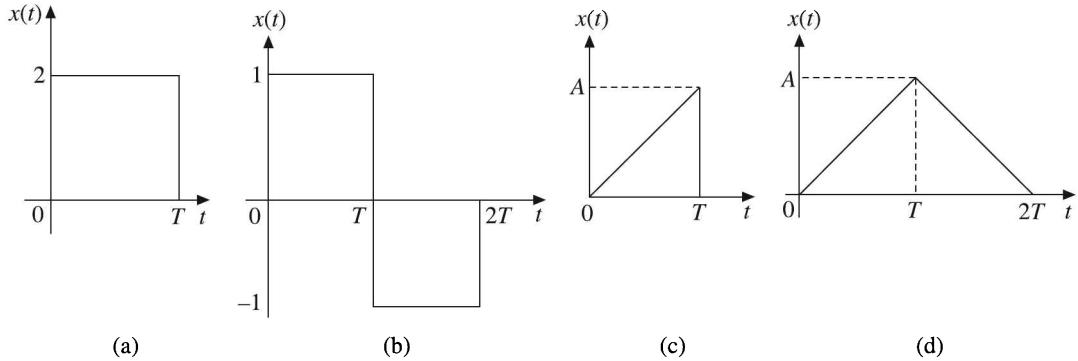


Figure 9.46 Waveforms for Example 9.90.

**Solution:**

(a) The waveform given in Figure 9.46(a) can be expressed as:

$$\begin{aligned} x(t) &= 2 \quad 0 < t < T \\ &= 0 \quad \text{otherwise} \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned} \therefore \mathcal{L}[x(t)] &= X(s) = \int_0^\infty x(t) e^{-st} dt \\ &= \int_0^T 2e^{-st} dt = 2 \left[ \frac{e^{-st}}{-s} \right]_0^T = \frac{2}{s} [1 - e^{-sT}] \end{aligned}$$

(b) The waveform given in Figure 9.46(b) can be expressed as:

$$\begin{aligned} x(t) &= 1 \quad \text{for } 0 < t < T \\ &= -1 \quad \text{for } T < t < 2T \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
 \therefore \quad \mathcal{L}[x(t)] &= X(s) = \int_0^\infty x(t) e^{-st} dt \\
 &= \int_0^T 1 e^{-st} dt + \int_T^{2T} (-1) e^{-st} dt \\
 &= \left[ \frac{e^{-st}}{-s} \right]_0^T - \left[ \frac{e^{-st}}{-s} \right]_T^{2T} \\
 &= \frac{e^{-sT} - 1}{-s} - \frac{e^{-2Ts} - e^{-Ts}}{-s} \\
 &= \frac{1}{s} (1 - 2e^{-Ts} + e^{-2Ts}) = \frac{1}{s} (1 - e^{-Ts})^2
 \end{aligned}$$

(c) The waveform given in Figure 9.46(c) can be expressed as:

$$\begin{aligned}
 x(t) &= \frac{A}{T} t \quad \text{for } 0 < t < T \\
 &= 0 \quad \text{otherwise}
 \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
 \therefore \quad X(s) &= \int_0^\infty x(t) e^{-st} dt = \int_0^T \frac{A}{T} t e^{-st} dt \\
 &= \frac{A}{T} \left\{ \left[ t \frac{e^{-st}}{-s} \right]_0^T - \int_0^T \frac{e^{-st}}{-s} dt \right\} = \frac{A}{T} \left\{ \frac{T e^{-sT}}{-s} - \left[ \frac{e^{-st}}{s^2} \right]_0^T \right\} \\
 &= \frac{A}{T} \left\{ \frac{T e^{-sT}}{-s} - \frac{e^{-sT}}{s^2} + \frac{1}{s^2} \right\} = A \left( \frac{1}{T s^2} - \frac{e^{-Ts}}{s} - \frac{e^{-Ts}}{T s^2} \right)
 \end{aligned}$$

(d) The waveform given in Figure 9.46(d) can be expressed as:

$$\begin{aligned}
 x(t) &= \frac{A}{T} t \quad 0 < t < T \\
 &= A \left( 2 - \frac{t}{T} \right) \quad T < t < 2T
 \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
 \therefore \quad \mathcal{L}[x(t)] &= X(s) = \int_0^\infty x(t) e^{-st} dt \\
 &= \int_0^T \frac{A}{T} t e^{-st} dt + \int_T^{2T} \left( 2A - \frac{At}{T} \right) e^{-st} dt
 \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
&= \frac{A}{T} \left\{ \left[ \frac{te^{-st}}{-s} \right]_0^T - \int_0^T \frac{e^{-st}}{-s} dt \right\} + 2A \left[ \frac{e^{-st}}{-s} \right]_T^{2T} - \frac{A}{T} \left\{ \left[ t \frac{e^{-st}}{-s} \right]_T^{2T} - \int_T^{2T} \frac{e^{-st}}{-s} dt \right\} \\
&= \frac{A}{T} \left( \frac{Te^{-Ts}}{-s} - 0 - \frac{e^{-sT}}{s^2} + \frac{1}{s^2} \right) + 2A \left( \frac{e^{-2sT} - e^{-sT}}{-s} \right) \\
&\quad - \frac{A}{T} \left( \frac{2T e^{-2Ts}}{-s} - \frac{Te^{-sT}}{-s} - \frac{e^{-2Ts} - e^{-Ts}}{s^2} \right) \\
&= \frac{A}{T} \left( \frac{1 - 2e^{-Ts} + e^{-2Ts}}{s^2} \right) = \frac{A}{T} \left( \frac{1 - e^{-Ts}}{s} \right)^2
\end{aligned}$$

### 9.13 CIRCUIT ANALYSIS USING LAPLACE TRANSFORMS

We can apply Laplace transforms to solve different circuit problems. To solve the circuit problems, first corresponding differential equations can be written and those differential equations are solved using Laplace transforms or the circuit itself may first be converted into s-domain and the corresponding algebraic equations can be written and solved. The electrical circuits can have three elements: resistor, inductor and capacitor.

#### Pure resistive element

A pure resistive element is shown in Figure 9.47(a). For this

$$v(t) = Ri(t)$$

$$\therefore V(s) = RI(s)$$

i.e. Resistance  $R$  in time-domain remains as  $R$  in s-domain also.

It has no initial conditions.

The Laplace transformed version Figure 9.47(a) is shown in Figure 9.47(b).

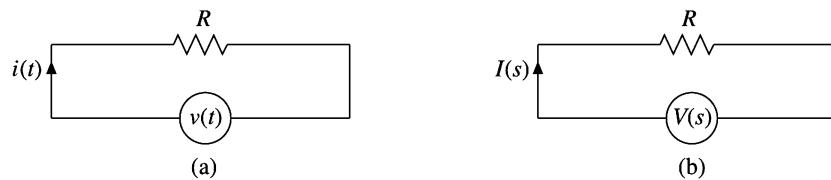


Figure 9.47 (a) Pure resistive, (b) Its Laplace transformed version.

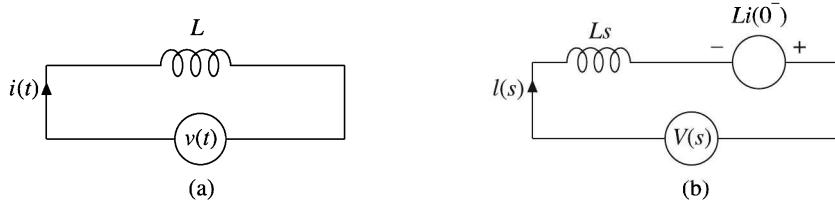
#### Pure inductive element

A pure inductive element is shown in Figure 9.48(a). For this

$$v(t) = L \frac{di(t)}{dt}$$

$$\therefore V(s) = L[sI(s) - i(0^-)] = Ls I(s) - Li(0^-)$$

where  $i(0^-)$  is the initial current through the inductor.



**Figure 9.48** (a) Pure inductive element, (b) Its Laplace transformed version.

Inductor  $L$  in time-domain becomes  $Ls$  in s-domain.

Also the current  $I(s)$  is opposed by a voltage source of  $-Li(0^-)$ . The Laplace transformed version of Figure 9.48(a) is shown in Figure 9.48(b).

### Pure capacitive element

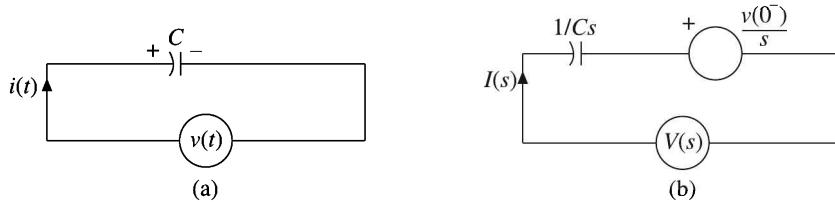
A pure capacitive element is shown in Figure 9.49(a). For this

$$i(t) = C \frac{dv(t)}{dt}$$

$$\therefore I(s) = C[sV(s) - v(0^-)] = CsV(s) - Cv(0^-) = CsV(s) - q(0^-)$$

$$\therefore V(s) = \frac{1}{Cs}I(s) + \frac{q(0^-)}{Cs} = \frac{1}{Cs}I(s) + \frac{v(0^-)}{s}$$

where  $v(0^-)$  is the initial voltage across the capacitor. The capacitor  $C$  in time-domain becomes  $1/Cs$  in s-domains.



**Figure 9.49** (a) Pure capacitive element, (b) Its Laplace transformed version.

Also a voltage source  $v(0^-)/s$  is introduced which opposes the flow of current. The Laplace transformed version of Figure 9.49(a) is shown in Figure 9.49(b).

### 9.13.1 Step and Impulse Responses of Series R-L Circuit

#### Evaluation of step response

In the series  $R-L$  circuit shown in Figure 9.50, let us consider that the switch  $S$  is closed at time  $t = 0$ . For the step response, the input excitation is  $x(t) = Vu(t)$ . Applying Kirchhoff's voltage law to the circuit, we get the following differential equation:

$$RI(t) + L \frac{di(t)}{dt} = Vu(t)$$

Taking Laplace transform on both sides, we have

$$RI(s) + L[sI(s) - i(0^+)] = \frac{V}{s}$$

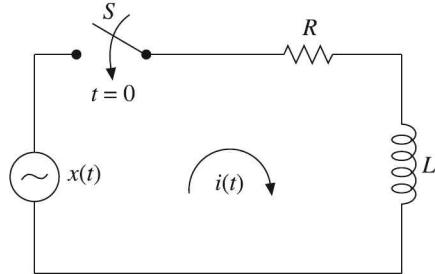


Figure 9.50 R-L circuit.

Since the current through an inductor cannot change instantaneously and since the current before  $t = 0$  is zero,  $i(0^+) = 0$ .

Therefore,

$$[Ls + R] I(s) = \frac{V}{s}$$

or  $I(s) = \frac{V}{s} \frac{1}{(Ls + R)} = \frac{V}{L} \frac{1}{s(s + R/L)} = \frac{V}{L} \frac{1}{R} \left( \frac{1}{s} - \frac{1}{s + R/L} \right) = \frac{V}{R} \left( \frac{1}{s} - \frac{1}{s + R/L} \right)$

Taking inverse Laplace transform, we get

$$i(t) = \frac{V}{R} [1 - e^{-(R/L)t}]$$

which is the step response.

### Evaluation of impulse response

We know that for the impulse response, the input excitation is  $x(t) = \delta(t)$ . Therefore, the differential equation describing the R-L network would become

$$RI(t) + L \frac{di(t)}{dt} = \delta(t)$$

Taking Laplace transform on both sides, we have

$$RI(s) + L[sI(s) - i(0^-)] = 1$$

Now,  $i(0^-) = 0$ .

$$\therefore (R + Ls) I(s) = 1$$

Therefore,

$$I(s) = \frac{1}{R + Ls} = \frac{1}{L} \frac{1}{s + R/L}$$

Taking inverse Laplace transform, we obtain

$$i(t) = \frac{1}{L} e^{-(R/L)t} u(t)$$

which is the impulse response.

### 9.13.2 Step and Impulse Responses of Series R-C Circuit

#### Step response

In the series R-C circuit shown in Figure 9.51, let us consider that the switch S is closed at  $t = 0$ .

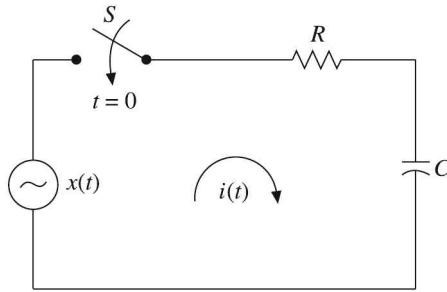


Figure 9.51 R-C circuit.

We know that for the step response, the input excitation is  $x(t) = V u(t)$ . The integro-differential equation describing the series R-C circuit is:

$$Ri(t) + \frac{1}{C} \int_{-\infty}^t i(t) dt = Vu(t)$$

This can be written as:

$$RI(t) + \frac{1}{C} \int_0^t i(t) dt + \frac{1}{C} \int_{-\infty}^0 i(t) dt = Vu(t)$$

Taking Laplace transform on both sides, we have

$$RI(s) + \frac{1}{C} \left[ \frac{I(s)}{s} \right] + \frac{1}{C} \{L[q(0^+)]\} = \frac{V}{s}$$

or

$$RI(s) + \frac{1}{C} \left[ \frac{I(s)}{s} + \frac{q(0^+)}{s} \right] = \frac{V}{s}$$

where  $q(0^+)$  is the charge on the capacitor at  $t = 0^+$ . If the capacitor is initially relaxed,  $q(0^+) = 0$ .

Hence,

$$I(s) \left( R + \frac{1}{Cs} \right) = \frac{V}{s}$$

i.e.  $I(s) = \frac{V}{s} \frac{1}{R + (1/CS)} = \frac{V}{s} \frac{CS}{RCs + 1} = \frac{VC}{RC[s + (1/RC)]}$

or  $I(s) = \frac{V/R}{s + (1/RC)}$

Taking inverse Laplace transform on both sides, we get

$$i(t) = \frac{V}{R} e^{-t/RC}$$

which is the step response.

### **Impulse response**

We know that for the impulse response, the input excitation is  $x(t) = \delta(t)$ . Hence, the differential equation describing the circuit is:

$$Ri(t) + \frac{1}{C} \int_{-\infty}^t i(t) dt = \delta(t)$$

i.e.  $Ri(t) + \frac{1}{C} \int_0^t i(t) dt + \frac{1}{C} \int_{-\infty}^0 i(t) dt = \delta(t)$

Taking Laplace transform on both sides, we have

$$RI(s) + \frac{1}{C} \left[ \frac{I(s)}{s} \right] + \frac{1}{C} \{L[q(0^+)]\} = 1$$

or  $RI(s) + \frac{1}{C} \left[ \frac{I(s)}{s} + \frac{q(0^+)}{s} \right] = 1$

Now, since  $q(0^+) = 0$ , we have

$$I(s) \left( R + \frac{1}{Cs} \right) = 1$$

Hence,  $I(s) = \frac{1}{R[1 + (1/RCs)]} = \frac{RCs}{R(RCs + 1)} = \frac{Cs}{RC[s + (1/RC)]} = \frac{s}{R[s + (1/RC)]}$

or  $I(s) = \frac{1}{R} \left[ \frac{[s + (1/RC)] - (1/RC)}{s + (1/RC)} \right]$

or  $I(s) = \frac{1}{R} \left\{ 1 - \frac{1}{RC} \frac{1}{[s + (1/RC)]} \right\}$

Taking inverse Laplace transform on both sides, we have

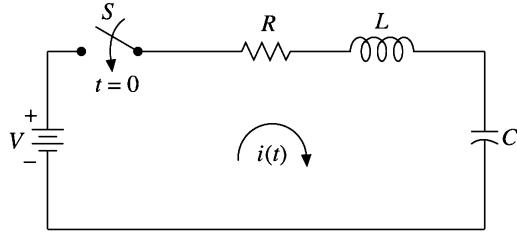
$$i(t) = \frac{1}{R} \left[ \delta(t) - \frac{1}{RC} e^{-t/RC} u(t) \right]$$

### 9.13.3 Step Response of Series R-L-C Circuit

Figure 9.52 shows the series R-L-C circuit. The integro-differential equation describing it is:

$$Ri(t) + L \frac{di(t)}{dt} + \frac{1}{C} \int_{-\infty}^t i(t) dt = Vu(t)$$

$$Ri(t) + L \frac{di(t)}{dt} + \frac{1}{C} \int_{-\infty}^0 i(t) dt + \frac{1}{C} \int_0^t i(t) dt = Vu(t)$$



**Figure 9.52** R-L-C circuit.

Taking Laplace transform on both sides, we have

$$RI(s) + L[sI(s) - i(0^+)] + \frac{1}{C} L[q(0^+)] + \frac{1}{C} \frac{I(s)}{s} = \frac{V}{s}$$

$$\text{or } RI(s) + L[sI(s) - i(0^+)] + \frac{1}{C} \frac{q(0^+)}{s} + \frac{1}{C} \frac{I(s)}{s} = \frac{V}{s}$$

where  $i(0^+)$  is the initial current through the inductor and  $q(0^+)$  is the initial charge on the capacitor. Neglecting the initial conditions, we get

$$RI(s) + LsI(s) + \frac{1}{Cs} I(s) = \frac{V}{s}$$

$$\text{or } I(s) \left( Ls + R + \frac{1}{Cs} \right) = \frac{V}{s}$$

$$\text{or } I(s) = \frac{V}{Ls^2 + Rs + (1/C)} = \frac{V}{L[s^2 + (R/L)s + (1/LC)]} = \frac{V}{L(s - p_1)(s - p_2)}$$

$$\text{where } p_1, p_2 = -\frac{R}{2L} \pm \frac{1}{2L} \sqrt{R^2 - 4 \frac{L}{C}}$$

Hence

$$i(t) = \frac{V/L}{(p_1 - p_2)} [e^{p_1 t} - e^{p_2 t}]$$

**EXAMPLE 9.91** Find the unit step response of the circuit shown in Figure 9.53.

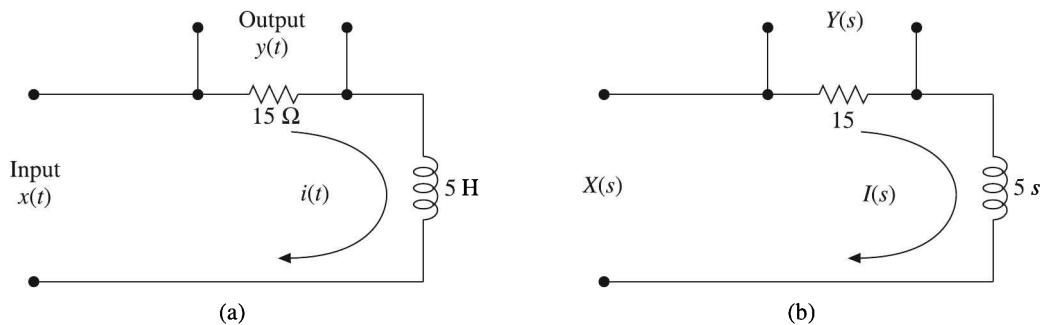


Figure 9.53 (a) R-L network, (b) Its frequency domain equivalent.

**Solution:** The differential equation describing the circuit of Figure 9.53(a) is:

$$x(t) = 15i(t) + 5 \frac{di(t)}{dt}$$

Taking Laplace transform on both sides, we have

$$X(s) = 15I(s) + 5[sI(s) - i(0^-)] = 15I(s) + 5sI(s) = 5I(s)[s + 3]$$

or

$$I(s) = \frac{X(s)}{5(s + 3)}$$

*Alternatively*

Neglecting the initial current through  $L$ , the Laplace transformed circuit of Figure 9.53(a) is shown in Figure 9.53(b).

Writing the KVL equation around the loop, we have

$$X(s) = 15I(s) + 5sI(s) = 5I(s)[s + 3]$$

$$\therefore I(s) = \frac{X(s)}{5(s + 3)}$$

Then      Output  $Y(s) = I(s) \times 15 = 15 \frac{X(s)}{5(s + 3)} = \frac{3}{s + 3} X(s)$

For unit step response,

$$x(t) = u(t)$$

$$\therefore X(s) = \frac{1}{s}$$

$$\therefore Y(s) = \frac{3}{s(s + 3)} = \frac{1}{s} - \frac{1}{s + 3}$$

Taking inverse Laplace transform, the unit step response of the given circuit is:

$$y(t) = u(t) - e^{-3t} u(t) = (1 - e^{-3t}) u(t)$$

**EXAMPLE 9.92** A continuous, causal and linear time invariant system is shown in Figure 9.54(a). Determine the unit impulse response and unit step response of the system. Also verify whether the system is causal and stable.

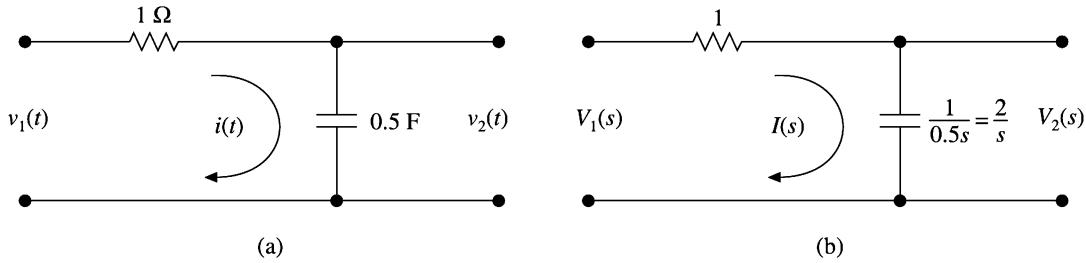


Figure 9.54 (a) RC network, (b) Its frequency domain equivalent.

**Solution:** The differential equation describing the circuit of Figure 9.54(a) is:

$$v_1(t) = 1i(t) + \frac{1}{0.5} \int i(t) dt$$

Taking Laplace transform on both sides, we have

$$V_1(s) = I(s) + 2 \frac{I(s)}{s} + \frac{q(0^-)}{s} = I(s) + 2 \frac{I(s)}{s} = I(s) \left( 1 + \frac{2}{s} \right) = I(s) \left( \frac{s+2}{s} \right)$$

or

$$I(s) = V_1(s) \frac{s}{s+2}$$

#### Alternatively

Neglecting the initial voltage across the capacitor, the Laplace transformed network of Figure 9.54(a) is shown in Figure 9.54(b).

Writing KVL equation around the loop, we have

$$V_1(s) = I(s) + \frac{2}{s} I(s) = I(s) \left( 1 + \frac{2}{s} \right) = I(s) \left( \frac{s+2}{s} \right)$$

$$\therefore I(s) = V_1(s) \frac{s}{s+2}$$

$$V_2(s) = \frac{2}{s} I(s) = \frac{2}{s} V_1(s) \frac{s}{(s+2)} = V_1(s) \frac{2}{s+2}$$

$$\therefore V_2(s) = \frac{2}{s+2} V_1(s)$$

- (a) If the input is a unit impulse, i.e.  $v_1(t) = \delta(t)$ , then  $V_1(s) = 1$  and the unit impulse response is:

$$V_2(s) = \frac{2}{s+2} \times 1 = \frac{2}{s+2}$$

$$\therefore v_2(t) = 2e^{-2t} u(t)$$

- (b) If the input is a unit step, i.e.  $v_1(t) = u(t)$ , then  $V_1(s) = 1/s$  and the unit step response is:

$$V_2(s) = V_1(s) \frac{2}{s+2} = \frac{1}{s} \times \frac{2}{s+2} = \frac{2}{s(s+2)} = \frac{1}{s} - \frac{1}{s+2}$$

$$\therefore v_2(t) = u(t) - e^{-2t} u(t) = (1 - e^{-2t}) u(t)$$

The unit impulse response is equal to  $2e^{-2t} u(t)$  with ROC,  $\text{Re}(s) > -2$ .

Since ROC includes the imaginary axis of s-plane, the system is stable. Also since the impulse response  $h(t) = 0$  for  $t < 0$  the system is causal.

**EXAMPLE 9.93** Find the output of the system shown in Figure 9.55(a) for the input  $e^{-2t} u(t)$  using Laplace transform.

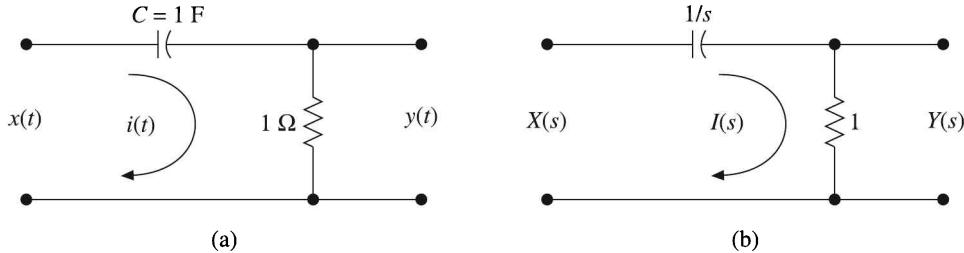


Figure 9.55 (a) Network, (b) Its frequency domain equivalent.

**Solution:** The Laplace transformed network of Figure 9.55(a) is shown in Figure 9.55(b). The algebraic equation representing the system is:

$$X(s) = I(s) \left( \frac{1}{s} + 1 \right) = \frac{(s+1)}{s} I(s)$$

$$\therefore I(s) = \frac{s}{s+1} X(s)$$

The output of the system is:

$$Y(s) = I(s) \times 1 = I(s) = \frac{s}{s+1} X(s)$$

The input is:

$$x(t) = e^{-2t} u(t)$$

$$\therefore X(s) = \frac{1}{s+2}$$

$$\text{Therefore, Output } Y(s) = \frac{s}{s+1} X(s) = \frac{s}{(s+1)(s+2)} = \frac{2}{s+2} - \frac{1}{s+1}$$

Taking inverse Laplace transform on both sides, we get

$$y(t) = 2e^{-2t} u(t) - e^{-t} u(t)$$

**EXAMPLE 9.94** Find the response of the circuit in Figure 9.56(a) for the input

$$x(t) = r(t) - 2r(t-1) + r(t-2)$$

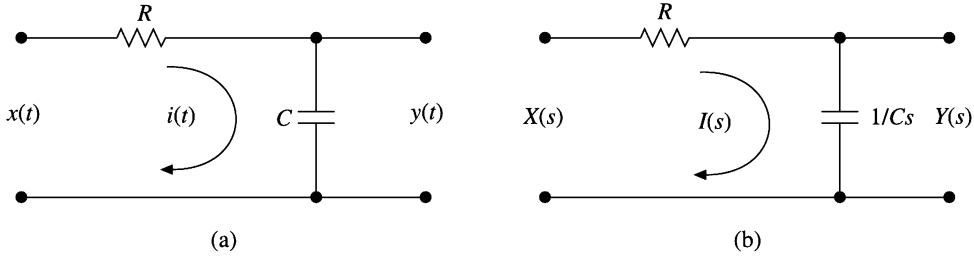


Figure 9.56 (a) Network, (b) Its frequency domain equivalent.

**Solution:** The Laplace transformed network of Figure 9.56(a) is shown in Figure 9.56(b). The algebraic equation describing the system is:

$$\begin{aligned} X(s) &= \left( R + \frac{1}{Cs} \right) I(s) = \left( \frac{1 + RCs}{Cs} \right) I(s) \\ I(s) &= X(s) \frac{Cs}{1 + RCs} \end{aligned}$$

$$\text{Then Output } Y(s) = \frac{1}{Cs} I(s) = \frac{1}{Cs} X(s) \frac{Cs}{1 + RCs} = \frac{X(s)}{1 + RCs} = \frac{1}{RC} \frac{X(s)}{[s + (1/RC)]}$$

$$\text{or } \frac{Y(s)}{X(s)} = \frac{1}{RC [s + (1/RC)]}$$

$$\text{For input } x(t) = r(t) = t u(t), X(s) = \frac{1}{s^2}$$

$$\therefore Y(s) = \frac{1}{RCs^2 [s + (1/RC)]} = -\frac{RC}{s} + \frac{1}{s^2} + \frac{RC}{[s + (1/RC)]}$$

Taking inverse Laplace transform on both sides, we have

$$y(t) = -RC + t + RC e^{-t/RC} = t - RC(1 - e^{-t/RC})$$

That is, for the input  $r(t)$ ,

$$y(t) = t - RC(1 - e^{-t/RC})$$

By using time shifting property, the output  $y(t)$  due to inputs  $r(t - 1)$  and  $r(t - 2)$  can be obtained as  $(t - 1) - RC[1 - e^{-(t-1)/RC}]$  and  $(t - 2) - RC[1 - e^{-(t-2)/RC}]$  respectively.

Now, the output of the circuit due to input  $r(t) - 2r(t - 1) + r(t - 2)$  can be obtained using superposition property. That is,

$$y(t) = [t - RC(1 - e^{-t/RC})] - 2\{(t - 1) - RC[1 - e^{-(t-1)/RC}]\} + \{(t - 2) - RC[1 - e^{-(t-2)/RC}]\}$$

**EXAMPLE 9.95** Find whether the system shown in Figure 9.57(a) is BIBO stable or not?

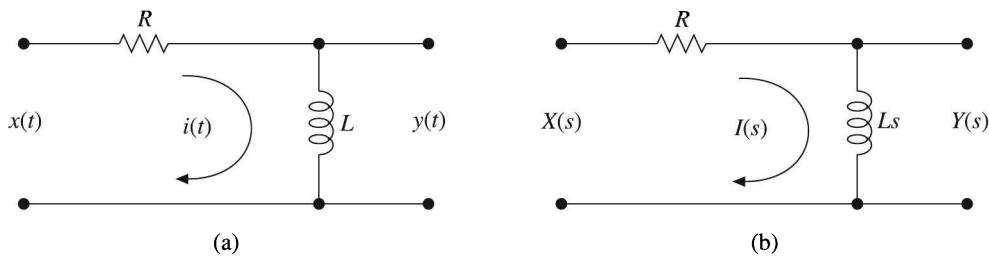


Figure 9.57 (a) Network, (b) Its frequency domain equivalent.

**Solution:** The Laplace transformed network of Figure 9.57(a) is shown in Figure 9.57(b). For a system to be BIBO stable, its impulse response must be absolutely integrable.

The algebraic equation describing the system is:

$$X(s) = (R + Ls) I(s)$$

∴

$$I(s) = \frac{X(s)}{R + Ls}$$

Then

$$\text{Output } Y(s) = LsI(s) = \frac{Ls}{R + Ls} X(s)$$

The transfer function of the system is:

$$H(s) = \frac{Y(s)}{X(s)} = \frac{Ls}{R + Ls} = \frac{s}{s + (R/L)} = 1 - \frac{R/L}{s + (R/L)}$$

Taking inverse Laplace transform, the impulse response of the system is:

$$\begin{aligned} h(t) &= \delta(t) - \frac{R}{L} e^{-(R/L)t} \\ \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} |h(t)| dt &= \int_0^{\infty} \left[ \delta(t) - \frac{R}{L} e^{-(R/L)t} \right] dt \\ &= \int_0^{\infty} \delta(t) dt - \frac{R}{L} \int_0^{\infty} e^{-(R/L)t} dt \\ &= 1 - \left[ \frac{R}{L} \frac{e^{-(R/L)t}}{-(R/L)} \right]_0^{\infty} = 1 - \left[ e^{-(R/L)t} \right]_0^{\infty} = 1 - (0 - 1) = 2 < \infty \end{aligned}$$

Therefore, the system is stable.

**EXAMPLE 9.96** In the circuit shown in Figure 9.58, determine the current  $i(t)$  when the switch is at position 2. The switch  $S$  is moved from position 1 to position 2 at time  $t = 0$ . Initially the switch has been at position 1 for a long time.

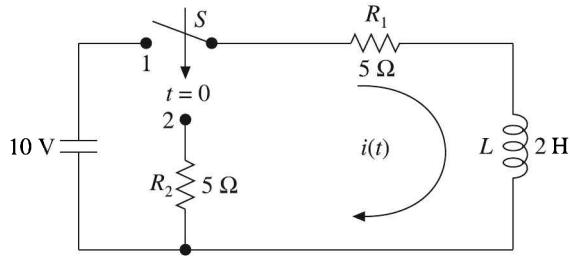


Figure 9.58 Circuit for Example 9.96.

**Solution:** First let us determine the steady-state current when the switch is at position 1 in Figure 9.58.

$$i(0) = \frac{10V}{R_1} = \frac{10}{5} = 2 \text{ A}$$

Now, when the switch is at position 2, for  $t > 0$ , we have

$$L \frac{di(t)}{dt} + R_1 i(t) + R_2 i(t) = 0$$

i.e.  $2 \frac{di(t)}{dt} + 5i(t) + 5i(t) = 2 \frac{di(t)}{dt} + 10i(t) = 0$

i.e.  $\frac{di(t)}{dt} + 5i(t) = 0$

Taking Laplace transform, we obtain

$$sI(s) - i(0) + 5I(s) = 0$$

where,  $i(0)$  is the current passing through the circuit immediately after the switch is at position 2. Since the inductor does not allow sudden changes in currents,  $i(0)$  is equal to the steady-state current when the switch was at position 1.

Substituting  $i(0) = 2 \text{ A}$  in the last equation, we get

$$sI(s) - 2 + 5I(s) = 0$$

i.e.  $I(s)[s + 5] = 2 \quad \text{or} \quad I(s) = \frac{2}{s + 5}$

Taking inverse Laplace transform, we get

$$i(t) = 2e^{-5t} u(t)$$

**EXAMPLE 9.97** Obtain the voltage across the resistor in the circuit shown in Figure 9.59(a) as a function of time for  $t > 0$ . Assume that  $i(0) = v_c(0) = 0$

(a)  $v_i(t) = \delta(t)$

(b)  $v_i(t) = u(t)$

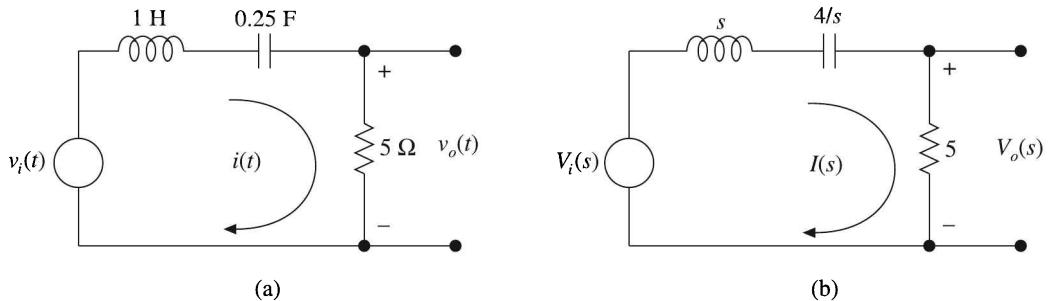


Figure 9.59 (a) Circuit, (b) Its frequency domain equivalent.

**Solution:** The differential equation describing the circuit of Figure 9.59(a) is:

$$v_i(t) = 1 \frac{di(t)}{dt} + \frac{1}{0.25} \int i(t) dt + 5i(t)$$

Taking Laplace transform on both sides, we have

$$V_i(s) = sI(s) - i(0^-) + 4 \left[ \frac{I(s)}{s} + \frac{q(0^-)}{s} \right] + 5I(s)$$

Neglecting the initial conditions, we have

$$V_i(s) = sI(s) + 4 \frac{I(s)}{s} + 5I(s) = I(s) \left( s + \frac{4}{s} + 5 \right) = I(s) \left( \frac{s^2 + 5s + 4}{s} \right)$$

or

$$I(s) = V_i(s) \frac{s}{s^2 + 5s + 4}$$

### Alternatively

Neglecting the initial conditions, the Laplace transformed circuit of Figure 9.59(a) is shown in Figure 9.59(b).

The algebraic equation describing the system is:

$$\begin{aligned} V_i(s) &= I(s) \left( s + \frac{4}{s} + 5 \right) = I(s) \left( \frac{s^2 + 5s + 4}{s} \right) = I(s) \left[ \frac{(s+1)(s+4)}{s} \right] \\ \therefore I(s) &= \frac{V_i(s)s}{(s+1)(s+4)} \end{aligned}$$

$$V_o(s) = 5I(s) = \frac{5sV_i(s)}{(s+1)(s+4)}$$

$$\therefore H(s) = \frac{V_o(s)}{V_i(s)} = \frac{5s}{(s+1)(s+4)}$$

(a) When  $v_i(t) = \delta(t)$ ;  $V_i(s) = 1$

$$\therefore V_o(s) = \frac{5s}{(s+1)(s+4)} = \frac{-5/3}{s+1} + \frac{20/3}{s+4}$$

$$\therefore \text{Impulse response } h(t) = v_o(t) = -\frac{5}{3}e^{-t} u(t) + \frac{20}{3}e^{-4t} u(t)$$

(b) When  $v_i(t) = u(t)$ ;  $V_i(s) = 1/s$

$$\therefore V_o(s) = \frac{1}{s} \frac{5s}{(s+1)(s+4)} = \frac{5/3}{s+1} - \frac{5/3}{s+4}$$

$$\therefore \text{Step response } S(t) = v_o(t) = \frac{5}{3}e^{-t} u(t) - \frac{5}{3}e^{-4t} u(t)$$

**EXAMPLE 9.98** Find the current in the series R-L-C circuit shown in Figure 9.60.

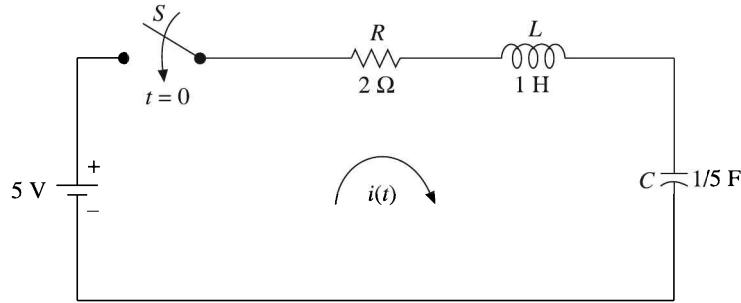


Figure 9.60 R-L-C Circuit.

**Solution:** The integro-differential equation describing the given circuit is

$$RI(t) + L \frac{di(t)}{dt} + \frac{1}{C} \int_0^t i(t) dt = 5$$

Neglecting the initial conditions and taking Laplace transform on both sides, we have

$$RI(s) + LS I(s) + \frac{1}{Cs} I(s) = \frac{5}{s}$$

$$\text{i.e. } 2I(s) + 1s I(s) + \frac{1}{0.2s} I(s) = \frac{5}{s}$$

or

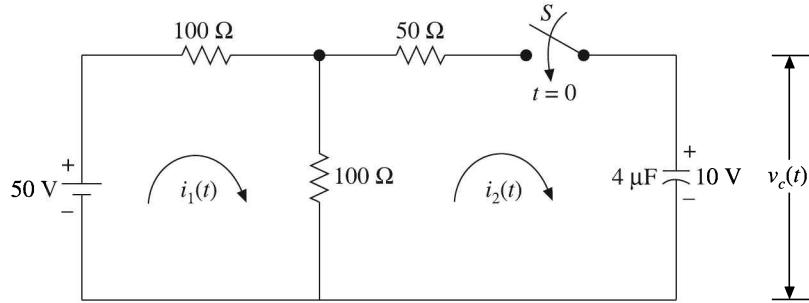
$$I(s)(2s + s^2 + 5) = 5$$

$$\text{Hence } I(s) = \frac{5}{s^2 + 2s + 5} = \frac{5}{(s+1)^2 + 2^2} = \frac{5}{2} \frac{2}{(s+1)^2 + 2^2}$$

Taking inverse Laplace transform, we have

$$i(t) = 2.5e^{-t} \sin 2tu(t)$$

**EXAMPLE 9.99** In the circuit shown in Figure 9.61, determine the voltage  $v_c(t)$  across the capacitor for  $t \geq 0$ , if  $v_c(0^-) = 10$



**Figure 9.61** Circuit for Example 9.99.

**Solution:** The KVL equations around the loops in the circuit are:

$$200i_1(t) - 100i_2(t) = 50$$

i.e.

$$4i_1(t) - 2i_2(t) = 1$$

and

$$150i_2(t) - 100i_1(t) + \frac{1}{4 \times 10^{-6}} \int_0^t i_2(t) dt = -10$$

i.e.

$$-10i_1(t) + 15i_2(t) + \frac{1}{4 \times 10^{-5}} \int_0^t i_2(t) dt = -1$$

Taking Laplace transform on both sides of the above two equations, we have

$$4I_1(s) - 2I_2(s) = \frac{1}{s}$$

i.e.

$$I_1(s) = \frac{1}{4} \left[ \frac{1}{s} + 2I_2(s) \right]$$

and

$$-10I_1(s) + I_2(s) \left( 15 + \frac{25000}{s} \right) = -\frac{1}{s}$$

i.e.

$$10I_1(s) - I_2(s) \left( 15 + \frac{25000}{s} \right) = \frac{1}{s}$$

i.e.

$$10 \left\{ \frac{1}{4} \left[ \frac{1}{s} + 2I_2(s) \right] \right\} - I_2(s) \left( 15 + \frac{25000}{s} \right) = \frac{1}{s}$$

i.e.

$$I_2(s) \left( 5 - 15 - \frac{25000}{s} \right) = \frac{1}{s} - \frac{10}{4s} = -\frac{3}{2s}$$

i.e.

$$I_2(s) \left( 10 + \frac{25000}{s} \right) = \frac{3}{2s}$$

$$\therefore I_2(s) = \frac{3}{20s} \left( \frac{s}{s + 2500} \right) = \frac{0.15}{s + 2500}$$

Taking inverse Laplace transform, we get

$$i_2(t) = 0.15e^{-2500t}$$

Also  $v_c(t) = \frac{1}{4 \times 10^{-6}} \int_0^t i_2(t) dt + v_c(0^-)$

or  $v_c(t) = \frac{0.15}{4 \times 10^{-6}} \left[ \frac{e^{-2500t}}{-2500} \right]_0^t + v_c(0^-)$

or  $v_c(t) = -15 [e^{-2500t} - 1] + 10$

or  $v_c(t) = 10 + 15 [1 - e^{-2500t}]$   
 $= 25 u(t) - 15e^{-2500t} u(t)$

## MATLAB PROGRAMS

### Program 9.1

```
% Generation of the Laplace transform of signals
clc; clear all; close all;
syms t a w
% laplace transform of x1(t)=t*exp(-at)
disp('the input signal x1(t) is')
x1=t*exp(-a*t)
disp('laplace transform of x1(t) is')
X1=laplace(x1)
% laplace transform of x2(t)=cos(wt)
disp('the input signal x2(t) is')
x2=cos(w*t)
disp('laplace transform of x2(t) is')
X2=laplace(x2)
% laplace transform of x3(t)=exp(-5t)
disp('the input signal x3(t) is')
x3=exp(-5*t)
disp('laplace transform of x3(t) is')
X3=laplace(x3)
```

### Output:

```
the input signal x1(t) is
x1 =
t/exp(a*t)
```

```
laplace transform of x1(t) is
X1 =
1/(a + s)^2
the input signal x2(t) is
x2 =
cos(t*w)
laplace transform of x2(t) is
X2 =
s/(s^2 + w^2)
the input signal x3(t) is
x3 =
1/exp(5*t)
laplace transform of x3(t) is
X3 =
1/(s + 5)
```

### Program 9.2

```
% Generation of the Laplace transform of signals
clc;clear all;close all;
syms t a w
% laplace transform of x1(t)=t*exp(-at)
disp('the input signal x1(t) is')
x1=t*exp(-a*t)
disp('laplace transform of x1(t) is')
X1=laplace(x1)
% laplace transform of x2(t)=cos(wt)
disp('the input signal x2(t) is')
x2=cos(w*t)
disp('laplace transform of x2(t) is')
X2=laplace(x2)
% laplace transform of x3(t)=exp(-a|t|)
disp('the input signal x3(t) is')
x3=exp(-5*t)
disp('laplace transform of x3(t) is')
X3=laplace(x3)
```

### Output:

```
the input signal x1(t) is
x1 =
t/exp(a*t)
laplace transform of x1(t) is
X1 =
1/(a + s)^2
```

```

the input signal x2(t) is
x2 =
cos(t*w)
laplace transform of x2(t) is
X2 =
s/(s^2 + w^2)
the input signal x3(t) is
x3 =
1/exp(5*t)
laplace transform of x3(t) is
X3 =
1/(s + 5)

```

### Program 9.3

```

% Finding the Laplace transform of signals
clc;close all;clear all;
syms t;
% input signals
x=exp(-t);
y=x*cos(10*t);
% plotting of signals
subplot(2,1,1);ezplot(x,[0,5]);
axis([0 5 0 1.1]);title('x(t)');
subplot(2,1,2);ezplot(y,[-1,5]);
axis([0 5 -1.1 1.1]);title('y(t)');
% displaying the Laplace transforms
disp('laplace transform of x(t) is')
X=laplace(x)
disp('laplace transform of y(t) is')
Y=laplace(y)
% frequency responses
Xm=abs(X);
figure;
subplot(2,1,1);ezplot(Xm);
title('mag response of X(S)');
Ym=abs(Y);
subplot(2,1,2);ezplot(Ym);
title('mag response of Y(S)');

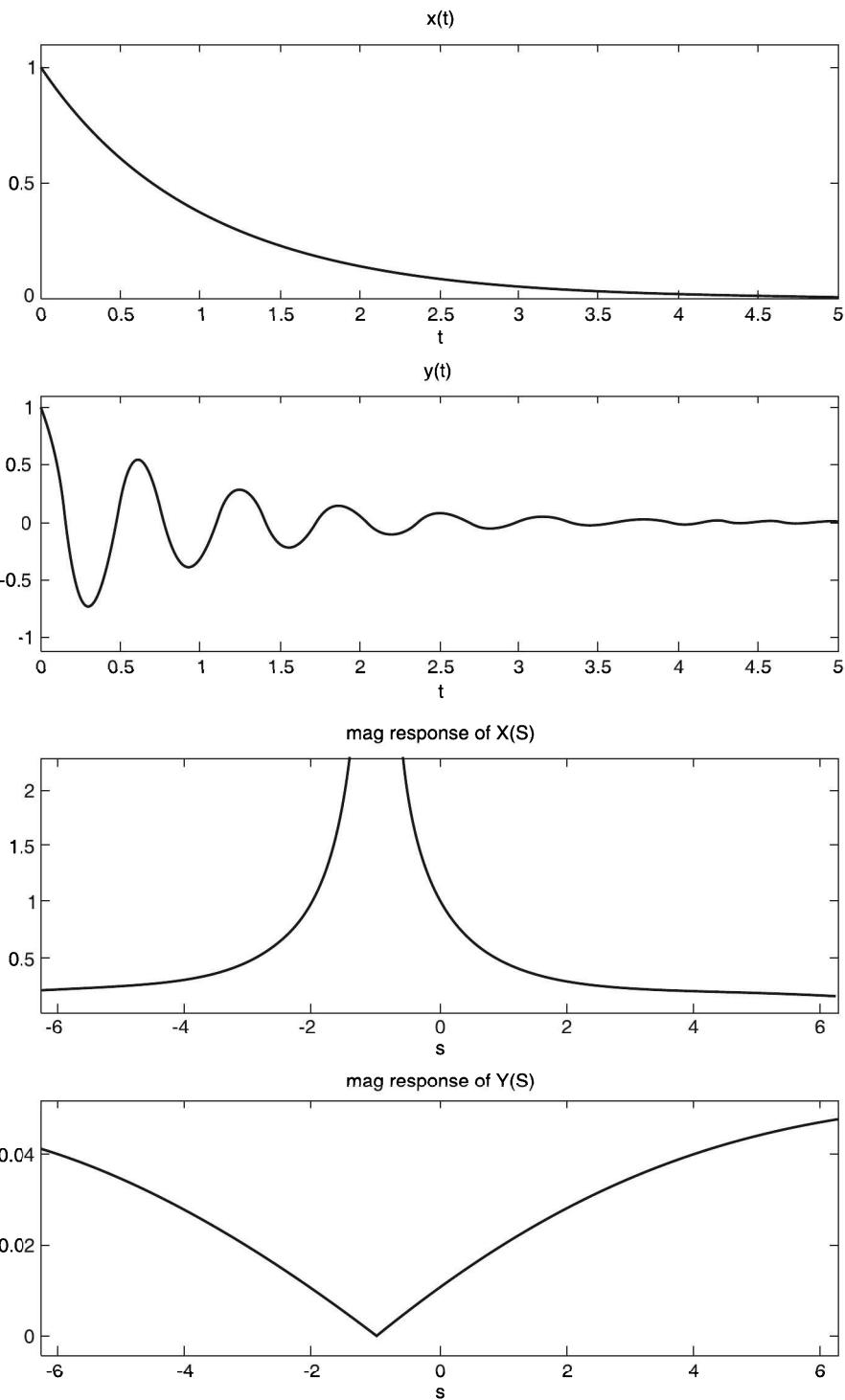
```

### Output:

```

laplace transform of x(t) is
X =
1/(s + 1)
laplace transform of y(t) is
Y =
(s + 1)/((s + 1)^2 + 100)

```



**Program 9.4**

```
% Generation of partial fraction expansion in Laplace transform
clc; clear all; close all;
num=input('enter the numerator coefficients');
den=input('enter the denominator coefficients');
[r,p,k]=residue(num,den);
disp('residues in the partial fraction are')
disp(r)
disp('poles of the system are')
disp(p)
```

**Output:**

```
enter the numerator coefficients
[1 1]
enter the denominator coefficients
[1 4 6 4]
residues in the partial fraction are
 -0.5000
 0.2500 - 0.2500i
 0.2500 + 0.2500i
poles of the system are
 -2.0000
 -1.0000 + 1.0000i
 -1.0000 - 1.0000i
```

**Program 9.5**

```
% Time shifting property of Laplace transform
syms t real
% laplace transform of the input
disp('input signal');
x1=(t^2).*heaviside(t)
% laplace transform of the input signal
X1=laplace(x1);
disp('laplace transform of the input signal')
X1=simplify(X1)
% delayed input signal
disp('delayed input signal');
x2=((t-2)^2).*heaviside(t-2)
% laplace transform of the delayed input signal
X2=laplace(x2);
disp('laplace transform of the delayed input signal');
X2=simplify(X2)
```

**Output:**

```
input signal
x1 =
t^2*heaviside(t)
laplace transform of the input signal
```

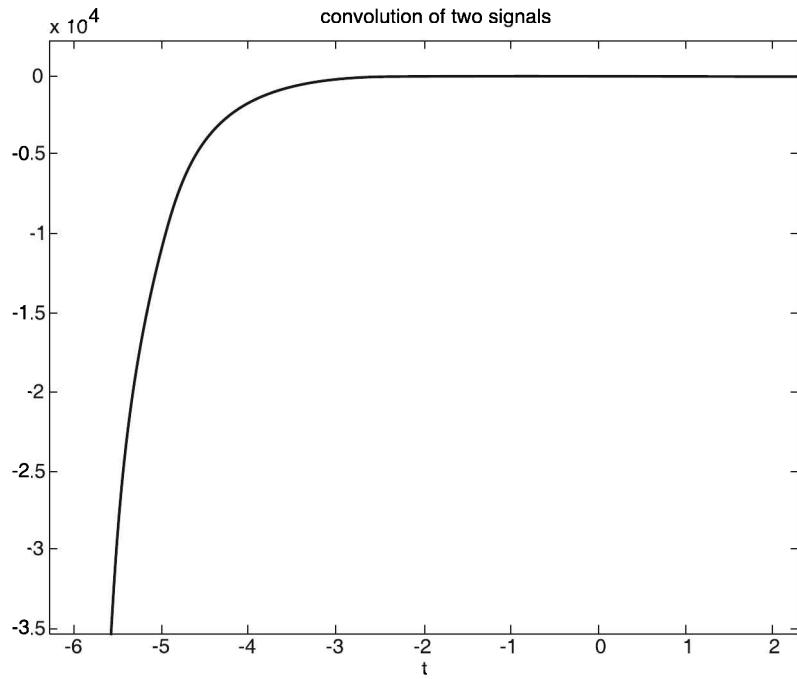
```
X1 =
2/s^3
delayed input signal
x2 =
heaviside(t - 2)*(t - 2)^2
laplace transform of the delayed input signal
X2 =
2/(s^3*exp(2*s))
```

### Program 9.6

```
% Convolution property of Laplace transform
syms t
x1=exp(-2*t);
x2=heaviside(t);
disp('laplace transform of x1(t) is')
X1=laplace(x1);
X1=simplify(X1)
disp('laplace transform of x2(t) is')
X2=laplace(x2);
X2=simplify(X2)
% convolution using Laplace transform
Y=X1.*X2;
disp('convolution of two signals is')
y=ilaplace(Y)
% plotting the convolution
ezplot(y);
```

### Output:

```
input signal
x1 =
t^2*heaviside(t)
laplace transform of the input signal
X1 =
2/s^3
delayed input signal
x2 =
heaviside(t - 2)*(t - 2)^2
laplace transform of the delayed input signal
X2 =
2/(s^3*exp(2*s))
laplace transform of x1(t) is
X1 =
1/(s + 2)
laplace transform of x2(t) is
X2 =
1/s
convolution of two signals is
y =
1/2 - 1/(2*exp(2*t))
```

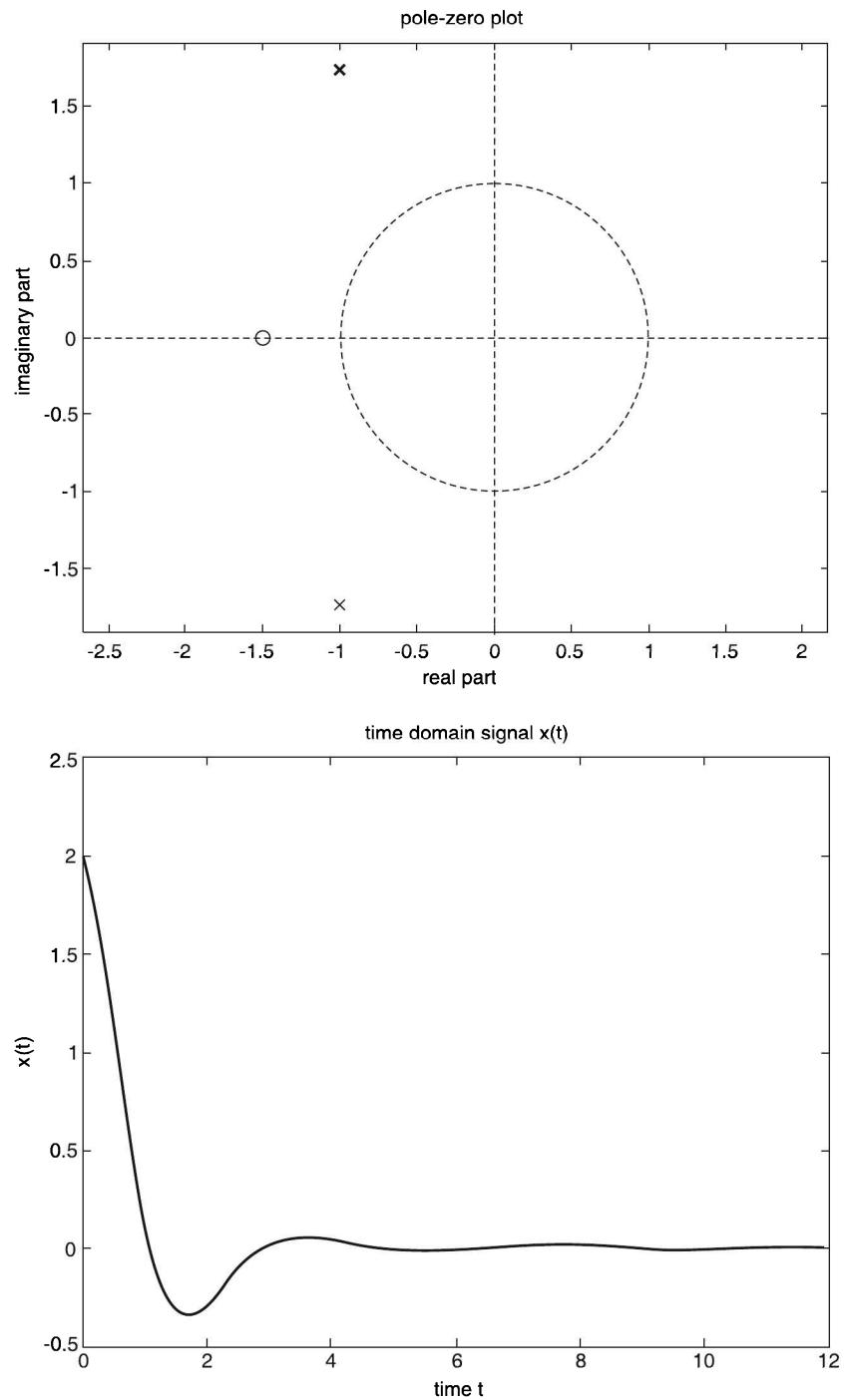


### Program 9.7

```
%Inverse Laplace transform of the given X(s)
clc;close all; clear all;
syms s t w;
num=[0 2 3];
den=[1 2 4];
zplane(num,den);
xlabel('real part');ylabel('imaginary part');
title('pole-zero plot');
disp('Inverse laplace transform');
x=ilaplace((2*s+3)/(s^2+2*s+4))
figure;
ezplot(x,[0,12])
xlabel('time t');ylabel('x(t)');
title('time domain signal x(t)');
axis([0 12 -0.5 2.5]);
```

### Output:

```
Inverse laplace transform
x =
(2*cos(3^(1/2)*t) + (3^(1/2)*sin(3^(1/2)*t))/6)/exp(t)
```



### Program 9.8

```
% Inverse Laplace transform of the given X(s)
clc;close all;clear all;
% Inverse laplace transform of X1(S)
syms s complex
X1=(s+4)/(s^2+5*s+6);
disp('inverse laplace transform of X1(S) is')
x1=ilaplace(X1);
x1=simplify(x1)
% Inverse laplace transform of X2(S)
X2=(s+2)/(s^2*(s+1)^2);
disp('inverse laplace transform of X2(S) is')
x2=ilaplace(X2);
x2=simplify(x2)
% Inverse laplace transform of X3(S)
X3=(1+exp(-2*s))/(s^2*(s+1));
disp('inverse laplace transform of X3(S) is')
x3=ilaplace(X3);
x3=simplify(x3)
```

#### Output:

```
inverse laplace transform of X1(S) is
x1 =
(2*exp(t) - 1)/exp(3*t)
inverse laplace transform of X2(S) is
x2 =
2*t + 3/exp(t) + t/exp(t) - 3
inverse laplace transform of X3(S) is
x3 =
t + 1/exp(t) + heaviside(t - 2)*(t + exp(2 - t) - 3) - 1
```

### SHORT QUESTIONS WITH ANSWERS

- How is Laplace transform useful in the analysis of LTI systems?

*Ans.* The Laplace transform is a powerful mathematical technique used to convert the differential equations in time domain into algebraic equations in s-domain. For analysis, the system is expressed in terms of differential equations. The differential equations are converted into algebraic equations using Laplace transform and the initial conditions are inserted. The algebraic equations are manipulated and then solution is obtained in s-domain. The result is converted into time domain by taking the inverse Laplace transform. It is a simple and systematic method which provides the complete solution in one stroke by taking into account the initial conditions in a natural way at the beginning of the process itself.

2. What is the unique characteristic of an exponential function?

*Ans.* The unique characteristic of an exponential function is its integration as well as its differentiation results in the same original function.

3. What is region of convergence (ROC)?

*Ans.* The set of points in the s-plane for which the Laplace transform of  $x(t)$ , i.e. the function  $X(s)$  converges is called the ROC (or the range of  $\text{Re}(s)$ , i.e.  $\sigma$  for which the Laplace transform converges is known as the ROC).

4. Why there is a one-to-one correspondence between only the one-sided Laplace transform and its inverse Laplace transform?

*Ans.* In the one-sided Laplace transform, all the time functions are assumed to be positive, but in the two-sided Laplace transform, the time functions may be +ve or -ve. Hence, there is a one-to-one correspondence only between the one-sided Laplace transform and its inverse Laplace transform.

5. What is the usual condition for  $x(t)$  to be Laplace transformable?

*Ans.* The usual condition for  $x(t)$  to be Laplace transformable is that it should be piece-wise continuous and must be of exponential order.

6. Why one-sided Laplace transform is most often used for solving practical problems?

*Ans.* The one-sided Laplace transform is very useful in practical problems (with causal signals) where the signal is applied to a system at a particular point in time which can be conveniently taken as time origin (or  $t = 0$ ). Thus, the one-sided Laplace transform comes in handy in solving differential equations with given initial conditions. Further, its ROC is simple and unique for all causal functions. There is a one-to-one correspondence between the Laplace transform and its inverse Laplace transform. Hence, it is the one-sided Laplace transform which is used most often for solving practical problems.

7. What is the relation between Laplace transform and Fourier transform?

*Ans.* The relation between the Laplace transform and the Fourier transform is that The Laplace transform of  $x(t)$ , i.e.  $X(s)$  is the Fourier transform of  $x(t)e^{-\sigma t}$  or Fourier transform is the Laplace transform evaluated along the imaginary axis of s-plane, i.e.  $X(\omega) = X(s)|_{s=j\omega}$ .

8. State initial value theorem.

*Ans.* The initial value theorem states that  $\lim_{t \rightarrow 0} x(t) = x(0) = \lim_{s \rightarrow \infty} sX(s)$ .

This theorem enables us to calculate the initial value of a function  $x(t)$ , i.e.  $x(\infty)$  directly from its transform  $X(s)$  without the need for finding the inverse transform of  $X(s)$ .

9. State final value theorem.

*Ans.* The final value theorem states that  $\lim_{t \rightarrow \infty} x(t) = x(\infty) = \lim_{s \rightarrow 0} sX(s)$ .

This theorem enables us to determine the final value of a function  $x(t)$ , i.e.  $x(\infty)$  directly from its Laplace transform  $X(s)$  without the need for finding the inverse transform of  $X(s)$ .

To apply the final value theorem, we must cancel the common factors, if any, in the numerator and denominator of  $sX(s)$ . If any poles of  $sX(s)$  after cancellation of the common factors lie in the right-half of the s-plane, then the final value theorem does not hold. A simple pole in  $X(s)$  at the origin is permitted. Otherwise all other poles of  $X(s)$  must be strictly in the left-half of the s-plane.

10. What are proper rational functions?

*Ans.* Proper rational functions are functions in which the order of the numerator is smaller than that of the denominator.

11. When does the Laplace transform of a function  $x(t)$  exist?

*Ans.* The Laplace transform of a function  $x(t)$ , i.e.  $X(s)$  exists only if

$$\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} |x(t) e^{-st}| dt < \infty$$

That means,  $x(t)e^{-\sigma t}$  must be absolutely integrable for ROC to exist.

12. Why ROC cannot contain any poles?

*Ans.* The ROC cannot contain any poles because at a pole, the value of  $X(s) = \infty$  and the ROC is defined as that region of the s-plane in which  $X(s)$  converges.

13. Why ROC consists of strips of the s-plane parallel to the  $j\omega$  axis?

*Ans.* The ROC consists of strips of the s-plane parallel to the  $j\omega$  axis because the ROC of the Laplace transform of any signal is generally specified in terms of a range of  $\text{Re}(s)$  like  $\text{Re}(s) > \sigma_1$  or  $\text{Re}(s) < \sigma_2$  or  $\sigma_1 < \text{Re}(s) < \sigma_2$ .

14. What is a right-sided signal? What is its ROC?

*Ans.* A signal  $x(t)$  is said to be a right-sided signal, if  $x(t) = 0$  for  $t < T_1$  for some finite time  $T_1$ . For a right-sided signal  $x(t)$ , the ROC of  $X(s)$  is  $\text{Re}(s) > \sigma_2$ , where  $\sigma_2$  is some constant, i.e. the ROC is to the right of the line  $\sigma = \sigma_2$ . A causal signal is a right-sided signal.

15. What is a left-sided signal? What is its ROC?

*Ans.* A signal  $x(t)$  is said to be a left-sided signal, if  $x(t) = 0$  for  $t > T_2$ , for some finite time  $T_2$ . For a left-sided signal  $x(t)$ , the ROC of  $X(s)$  is  $\text{Re}(s) < \sigma_1$ , where  $\sigma_1$  is some constant, i.e. the ROC is to the left of the line  $\sigma = \sigma_1$ . An anticausal signal is a left-sided signal.

16. What is a two-sided signal? What is its ROC?

*Ans.* A signal  $x(t)$  is said to be a two-sided signal if it extends from  $-\infty$  to  $+\infty$ . It can be visualised as the sum of two non-overlapping signals, one of which is left-sided and the other right-sided. For a two-sided signal, the ROC of  $X(s)$  is in the form of a strip in the s-plane bounded by two lines  $\sigma = \sigma_R$  and  $\sigma = \sigma_L$ .

17. What is a finite duration signal? What is its ROC?

*Ans.* A signal  $x(t)$  is said to be a finite duration signal if  $x(t) = 0$  for  $t$  less than some finite  $T_1$  and also for  $t$  greater than some finite  $T_2$ , where  $T_1 < T_2$ . For a finite duration signal which is absolutely integrable, the ROC of its Laplace transform extends over the entire s-plane.

18. What is natural response of the system?  
*Ans.* The natural response of the system is the response due to the initial conditions alone, when the input is zero. It is also called the free response.
19. What is forced response of the system?  
*Ans.* The forced response of a system is the response due to input alone, when the initial conditions are zero. It is also called the zero state response. It consists of two parts: the steady-state response and the transient response.
20. What is total response of the system?  
*Ans.* The total response of the system is the sum of the natural (free) and forced responses.
21. On what does the transfer function of a system depend?  
*Ans.* The transfer function  $H(s)$  of a system depends only on the coefficients of the differential equations, i.e. only on the parameters of the system. It does not depend on the input signal or the initial energy storage.
22. What is transient response?  
*Ans.* The transient response is the response due to the poles of the system function  $H(s)$ . It vanishes after some time and hence is called the transient response of the system.
23. What is steady-state response?  
*Ans.* The steady-state response of a system is the response due to the poles of the input function  $X(s)$ . It remains as  $t \rightarrow \infty$  and hence is called the steady-state response.
24. What is the sum of transient and steady-state response called?  
*Ans.* The sum of transient and steady-state response is called the forced response.

## REVIEW QUESTIONS

1. Compare Laplace and Fourier transforms.
2. What are the advantages and limitations of Laplace transforms?
3. Obtain the relation between Laplace transform and Fourier transform.
4. Distinguish between unilateral and bilateral Laplace transforms.
5. Prove that the signals  $x(t) = e^{-at} u(t)$  and  $x(t) = -e^{-at} u(-t)$  have the same  $X(s)$  and differ only in ROC.
6. State the properties of Laplace transform.
7. State and prove the initial and final value theorems.
8. State and prove the Parseval's relation and the convolution property.
9. State and prove the time shifting property and the shifting in  $s$ -domain property.
10. State and prove the time scaling property and the time reversal property.
11. State and prove the time differentiation property and the differentiation in  $s$ -domain property.

12. State and prove the multiplication in time domain property and the periodicity property.
13. Discuss partial fraction method of finding the inverse Laplace transform.
14. What is ROC? Discuss about ROCs of various classes of signals.
15. Write the properties of ROC for Laplace transforms.
16. Obtain the step and impulse responses of series  $R-C$  circuit.
17. Obtain the step and impulse responses of series  $R-L$  circuit.

### FILL IN THE BLANKS

1. An LTI system is described by \_\_\_\_\_ equations.
2. Fourier transform of a function  $x(t)$  can be expressed as a \_\_\_\_\_ of exponentials of the form \_\_\_\_\_.
3. Laplace transform of a function  $x(t)$  is expressed as a \_\_\_\_\_ of complex exponentials of the form \_\_\_\_\_.
4.  $s$  is a complex frequency denoted by \_\_\_\_\_.
5. Laplace transform is used to solve the \_\_\_\_\_ equations.
6. Laplace transform converts a \_\_\_\_\_ equation into an \_\_\_\_\_ equation.
7. The range of  $\sigma$  for which the Laplace transform converges is known as the \_\_\_\_\_.
8. The condition for the Lapalce transform of a function  $x(t)$  to exist is:  $x(t) e^{-\sigma t}$  must be \_\_\_\_\_.
9. Fourier transform is nothing but the Laplace transform evaluated along the \_\_\_\_\_ of the s-plane.
10. The poles of the transform  $X(s)$  are the values of  $s$  for which the transform is \_\_\_\_\_.
11. The zeros of the transform  $X(s)$  are the values of  $s$  for which the transform is \_\_\_\_\_.
12. The roots of the denominator polynomial of  $X(s)$  are same as the \_\_\_\_\_ of  $X(s)$ .
13. The unilateral Laplace transform is applied to the signals that are \_\_\_\_\_; that is for signals whose magnitude is zero \_\_\_\_\_.
14. Unilateral Laplace transform is applicable only for \_\_\_\_\_ signals where as bilateral Laplace transform is useful for \_\_\_\_\_ signals.
15. Total response of a system is the sum of \_\_\_\_\_ and \_\_\_\_\_.
16. Forced response of a system is the sum of \_\_\_\_\_ and the \_\_\_\_\_.
17. If the degree of the denominator is greater than the degree of the numerator, then the transfer function is called a \_\_\_\_\_ transfer function.
18. The graphical representation of pole and zero locations is called a \_\_\_\_\_ diagram.
19. The forced response is due to (a) the poles of the \_\_\_\_\_ and (b) the poles of the \_\_\_\_\_.

20. The response due to the poles of the system is called the \_\_\_\_\_ response.

21. The response due to the poles of the input is called the \_\_\_\_\_ response.

22. The ROC of \_\_\_\_\_ Laplace transform is simple and unique for all causal signals.

23. The Laplace transform of  $x(t)$  is the Fourier transform of \_\_\_\_\_.

24. The Laplace transform of the signals  $e^{-bt} u(t)$  and \_\_\_\_\_ are identical but their ROCs are different.

25. The ROC of a \_\_\_\_\_ signal is  $\text{Re}(s) > a$  and the ROC of a \_\_\_\_\_ signal is  $\text{Re}(s) < a$ , where  $a$  is some constant.

26. The ROC of the sum of two signals is equal to the \_\_\_\_\_ of the ROCs of the two signals.

27. The partial fraction expansion can be used only for \_\_\_\_\_ rational functions.

28. If a pole of  $X(s)$  lies to the left of the ROC, then this pole gives rise to a \_\_\_\_\_ signal and if a pole of  $X(s)$  lies to the right of the ROC, then this pole gives rise to a \_\_\_\_\_ signal.

29. If the degree of numerator  $\geq$  the degree of the denominator in  $X(s)$ , then it is called an \_\_\_\_\_ function.

30. A constant term in partial fractions gives rise to \_\_\_\_\_ function.

31. The ROC cannot contain any \_\_\_\_\_ because at a \_\_\_\_\_ the value of  $X(s)$  is infinity.

32. A \_\_\_\_\_ signal is a right-sided signal and for a right-sided signal, the ROC of  $X(s)$  is  $\text{Re}(s) \geq \sigma_2$  where  $\sigma_2$  is some constant.

33. A \_\_\_\_\_ signal is a left-sided signal and for a left-sided signal the ROC is  $\text{Re}(s) \leq \sigma_2$  where  $\sigma_2$  is some constant.

34. For a two-sided signal, the ROC of  $X(s)$  is in the form of a \_\_\_\_\_ in the s-plane.

35. For a finite duration signal which is absolutely integrable, the ROC of its Laplace transform extends \_\_\_\_\_.

36. The ROC of  $X(s)$  the Laplace transform of  $x(t)$  is bounded by \_\_\_\_\_ or extends upto \_\_\_\_\_. Further the ROC does not contain any \_\_\_\_\_.

37. If  $x(t)$  is a right-sided signal, the ROC of  $X(s)$  extends to the right of the \_\_\_\_\_ pole and no pole is located \_\_\_\_\_ the ROC.

38. If  $x(t)$  is a left-sided signal, the ROC of  $X(s)$  extends to the left of the \_\_\_\_\_ pole and no pole is located \_\_\_\_\_ the ROC.

## **OBJECTIVE TYPE QUESTIONS**

2. A first order system is given by  $(dy/dt) + 3y = x$ . The system is initially at rest and its input is  $x = 3u(t)$ , where  $u(t)$  is a unit step. For  $t > 0$ ,  $y(t)$  is given by  
 (a)  $1 - e^{-3t}$       (b)  $3 - e^{-3t}$       (c)  $3e^{-3t}$       (d)  $4e^{-3t}$
3. The impulse response of a system is  $h(t)$ . When the input is  $x(t)$ , the output  $y(t)$  will be  
 (a)  $h(t) x(t)$       (b)  $h(t) \delta(t)$       (c)  $h(t) * x(t)$       (d)  $x(t) \delta(t)$
4. A system described by the differential equation  $\frac{d^3y}{dt^3} + 3\frac{d^2y}{dt^2} + 2\frac{dy}{dt} = x$  is initially at rest. For input  $x(t) = 2\delta(t)$ , the output  $y(t)$  is  
 (a)  $(1 - 2e^{-t} + 2e^{-2t}) u(t)$       (b)  $(1 - 2e^{-t} - 2e^{-2t}) u(t)$   
 (c)  $(0.5 - e^{-t} + 2e^{-2t}) u(t)$       (d)  $(0.5 - e^{-t} + e^{-2t}) u(t)$
5. The transfer function of a system is given by  $H(s) = 1/s^2(s + 2)^2$ . The impulse response of the system is  
 (a)  $t^2 u(t) * e^{-2t} u(t)$       (b)  $t u(t) * t e^{-2t} u(t)$   
 (c)  $(t e^{-2t})^2 u(t)$       (d)  $t e^{-2t} u(t) * t e^{-2t} u(t)$
6. Figure 9.62[(a) and (b)] shows the input  $x(t)$  to an LTI system and the impulse response  $h(t)$  of the system. The output of the system is zero everywhere except for

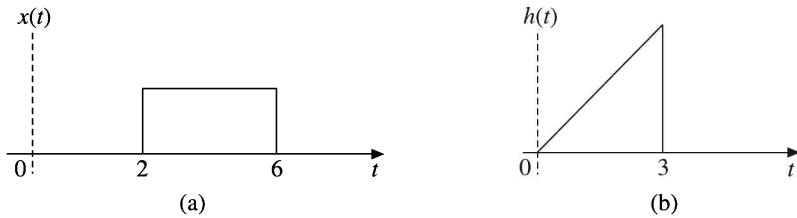
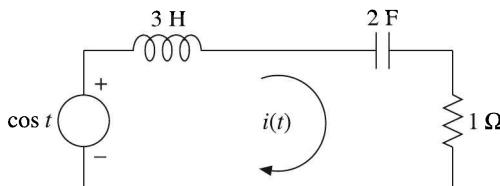


Figure 9.62 LTI system.

- (a)  $0 < t < 6$       (b)  $a < t < 7$       (c)  $2 < t < 7$       (d)  $2 < t < 9$
7. Let  $x_1(t) = \begin{cases} 6 & \text{for } 0 < t < 4 \\ 0 & \text{otherwise} \end{cases}$  and  $x_2(t) = u(t - 2)$   
 If  $y(t) = x_1(t) * x_2(t)$ , then the value of  $y(4)$  is  
 (a) 0      (b) 6      (c) 12      (d) 24
8. The differential equation for current  $i(t)$  in the circuit shown in Figure 9.63 is

Figure 9.63 Current  $i(t)$  in circuit.

(a)  $3\frac{d^2i}{dt^2} + \frac{di}{dt} + \frac{1}{2}i = \sin t$

(b)  $2\frac{d^2i}{dt^2} + 2\frac{di}{dt} + i = \sin t$

(c)  $2\frac{d^2i}{dt^2} + \frac{di}{dt} + 2i = \cos t$

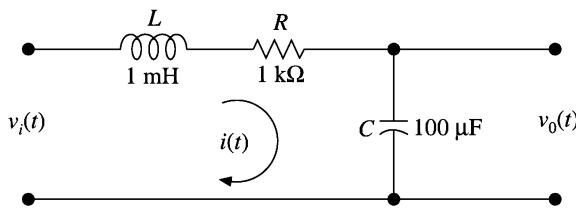
(d)  $\frac{d^2i}{dt^2} + 3\frac{di}{dt} + 2i = \sin t$

9. The differential equation  $5\frac{d^3y}{dt^3} + 4\frac{d^2y}{dt^2} + 2\left(\frac{dy}{dt}\right)^2 + 3y = x$  has

- (a) degree = 3, order = 2  
 (c) degree = 4, order = 2

- (b) degree = 2, order = 3  
 (d) degree = 3, order = 4

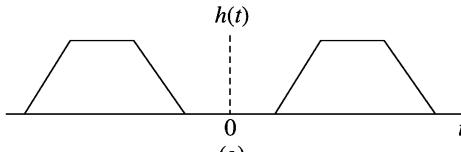
10. The transfer function of the system shown in Figure 9.64 is  $H(s) = V_o(s)/V_i(s) =$



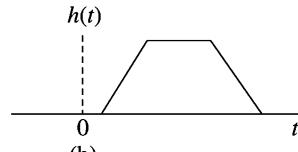
**Figure 9.64** A system.

(a)  $\frac{10^7}{s^2 + 10^6 s + 10^7}$    (b)  $\frac{10^6}{s^2 + 10^6 s + 10^7}$    (c)  $\frac{10^6}{s^2 + 10^6 s + 10^6}$    (d)  $\frac{10^7}{s^2 + 10^7 s + 10^6}$

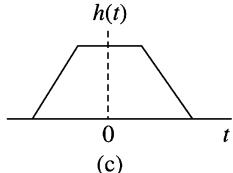
11. Which one of the systems shown in Figure 9.65 can be the impulse response of a causal system?



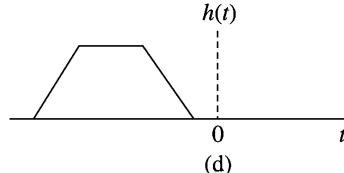
(a)



(b)



(c)



(d)

**Figure 9.65** Impulse responses.

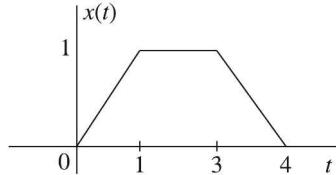
12. The final value of  $L^{-1}\left(\frac{3s+4}{s^4+8s^3+10s^2+2s}\right)$  is

- (a)  $\infty$

- (b) 2

- (c) 1

- (d) 0



**Figure 9.66** Function  $x(t)$ .

- (a)  $\frac{1}{s^2}(1 - e^{-s} - e^{-3s} + e^{-4s})$       (b)  $\frac{1}{s}(1 + e^{-s} - e^{-3s} + e^{-4s})$   
 (c)  $\frac{1}{s^2}(1 - e^{-s} + e^{-3s} - e^{-4s})$       (d)  $\frac{1}{s}(1 + e^{-s} + e^{-3s} - e^{-4s})$

20. The convolution  $u(t) * u(t)$  is  
 (a)  $u^2(t)$       (b)  $tu(t)$       (c)  $t^2 u(t) t^2 u(t)$       (d)  $u(t) + u(t)$

21. The convolution  $u(t - 3) * u(t - 3)$  is  
 (a)  $u(t - 6)$       (b)  $u(t - 3) u(t - 3)$       (c)  $t - 6$       (d)  $(t - 3)^2$

22. The convolution  $tu(t) * tu(t)$  is  
 (a)  $t^2$       (b)  $t^2/6$       (c)  $t^3/6$       (d)  $2t$

23.  $L^{-1} \left[ \frac{1}{(s+1)(s+2)} \right]$  for ROC;  $-2 < \text{Re}(s) < -1$  is  
 (a)  $e^{-t} u(t) - e^{-2t} u(t)$       (b)  $-e^{-t} u(-t) - e^{-2t} u(t)$   
 (c)  $e^{-t} u(-t) - e^{-2t} u(-t)$       (d)  $e^{-t} u(t) + e^{-2t} u(-t)$
24.  $L^{-1} \left[ \frac{3}{s(s+3)} \right]$  for ROC;  $\text{Re}(s) > 0$  is  
 (a)  $u(t) - u(t+3)$       (b)  $u(t) - e^{-3t} u(t)$       (c)  $u(-t) - e^{-3t} u(-t)$       (d) none of the above
25. ROC of  $L[te^{-2t}]$  is  
 (a)  $\text{Re}(s) > -2$       (b)  $\text{Re}(s) < -2$       (c)  $0 < \text{Re}(s) < 2$       (d)  $-2 < \text{Re}(s) < 0$
26. Which one of the following cannot be the ROC of  $\frac{5}{(s+1)(s+2)}$   
 (a)  $\text{Re}(s) > -1$       (b)  $\text{Re}(s) < -2$       (c)  $-2 < \text{Re}(s) < -1$       (d)  $-1 < \text{Re}(s) < -2$

## PROBLEMS

- Using properties of Laplace transform, find the Laplace transform of the following signals:  
 (a)  $x(t) = te^{-3t} u(t)$       (b)  $x(t) = t^2 e^{-t} u(t)$   
 (c)  $x(t) = e^{-2t} \sin 3t u(t)$       (d)  $x(t) = te^{-t} \cos 2t u(t)$   
 (e)  $x(t) = e^{-3t} \sinh 2t u(t)$       (f)  $x(t) = tu(t-2)$   
 (g)  $x(t) = te^{-2t} u(t-3)$       (h)  $x(t) = (t-2) u(t-1)$
- A signal has Laplace transform  $X(s) = \frac{s+1}{s^2 + 5s + 6}$ .  
 Find the Laplace transform  $Y(s)$  of the following signals:  
 (a)  $y_1(t) = t x(t)$       (b)  $y_2(t) = e^{-t} x(t)$       (c)  $y_3(t) = x(t) * x(t)$
- Find the inverse Laplace transform of  
 (a)  $X(s) = \frac{10s}{s^2 + 2s + 2}$       (b)  $X(s) = \frac{s^3 + 7s^2 + 25s + 18}{s^2 + 6s + 18}$   
 (c)  $X(s) = \frac{s^2 + 2s + 3}{s^2 + 3s + 2}$       (d)  $X(s) = \frac{-1000}{s^2 - 100}$   
 (e)  $X(s) = \frac{2s - 1}{s^2 + 2s + 1}$       (f)  $X(s) = \frac{-3}{(s+2)(s-1)}$   
 (g)  $X(s) = \frac{s + 1}{s^2 + 8s + 25}$       (h)  $X(s) = \frac{5}{s^3 + 9s^2 + 20s + 12}$   
 (i)  $X(s) = \frac{1}{s(s+2)^2}$

4. Find  $x(t)$  if its bilateral Laplace transform is given

$$(a) X(s) = \frac{5s + 4}{s^2 + 2s + 1} \quad \text{Re}(s) < -1 \quad (b) X(s) = \frac{5s + 4}{s^2 + 2s + 1} \quad \text{Re}(s) > -1$$

$$(c) X(s) = \frac{1}{s(s+1)^2} \quad -1 < \text{Re}(s) < 0 \quad (d) X(s) = \frac{2s - 3}{(s-2)(s+3)} \quad -3 < \text{Re}(s) < 2$$

$$(e) X(s) = \frac{1}{s(s+1)^2} \quad \text{Re}(s) < -1$$

5. Find all possible inverse Laplace transforms:

$$(a) X(s) = \frac{2}{(s+3)(s+2)} \quad (b) X(s) = \frac{2}{(s+4)(s-1)}$$

$$(c) X(s) = \frac{1}{(s+5)(s+1)} \quad (d) X(s) = \frac{2}{(s^2+1)(s+1)}$$

6. If  $x(t) = e^{-2t} u(t)$  and  $h(t) = e^{-4t} u(t)$ , determine  $y(t) = x(t) * h(t)$  by time domain method and frequency domain method.

7. Use the convolution theorem of Laplace transform to find  $y(t) = x_1(t) * x_2(t)$  where  $x_1(t)$  and  $x_2(t)$  are as given below. Verify the result by time domain method.

$$(a) x_1(t) = \cos 4t u(t) \text{ and } x_2(t) = \sin 2t u(t)$$

$$(b) x_1(t) = e^{-3t} u(t) \text{ and } x_2(t) = u(t - 2)$$

8. Find the initial and final values of

$$(a) \frac{s+3}{s^2+5s+4} \quad (b) \frac{s^2+2s+5}{s^2+3s+4} \quad (c) \frac{1}{s^2+9} \quad (d) \frac{10}{s^3+3s^2+5s}$$

9. Using Laplace transform find the impulse response of an LTI system described by the differential equation:

$$\frac{d^2y(t)}{dt^2} - \frac{dy(t)}{dt} - 2y(t) = x(t)$$

10. Consider the continuous time LTI system initially at rest and described by the differential equation  $\frac{d^2y(t)}{dt^2} - \frac{dy(t)}{dt} - 2y(t) = x(t)$ . Determine the step response.

11. Determine the complete response of the system described by

$$\frac{d^2y(t)}{dt^2} + 2\frac{dy(t)}{dt} + y(t) = 2\frac{dx(t)}{dt} + x(t)$$

for the input  $x(t) = 2e^{-t} u(t)$  with initial conditions  $y(0) = 1$  and  $dy(0)/dt = 1$ .

12. The input  $x(t) = e^{-2t} u(t)$  is given to a system. The output response of the system to the input is  $y(t) = e^{-t} u(t)$ . Find the frequency response and impulse response of the system.

13. Consider an LTI system whose response to the input  $x(t) = [e^{-t} + e^{-3t}] u(t)$  is  $y(t) = [2e^{-t} - 2e^{-4t}] u(t)$ . Find the system's impulse response.

14. A system has the transfer function  $(3s - 1)/[(s + 3)(s - 2)]$ . Find the impulse response assuming that the system is stable and causal.

15. An LTI system is described by

$$\frac{d^2y(t)}{dt^2} + 3\frac{dy(t)}{dt} + 2y(t) = x(t)$$

- (a) Find the impulse response of the system when the initial conditions are zero.  
 (b) If the initial conditions are  $y(0^-) = [dy(0^-)/dt] = 1$ , find the impulse response. Also indicate the natural response and forced response.

16. Using Laplace transform, solve the following differential equation for the given initial conditions:

$$\frac{d^2x(t)}{dt^2} + 5\frac{dx(t)}{dt} + 6x(t) = \delta(t) + 6u(t) \text{ with } x(0) = 1 \text{ and } \frac{dx(0)}{dt} = 2$$

17. Find the forced response of the system with transfer function  $H(s) = \frac{1}{(s + 0.5)(s + 1)}$  for unit step input.

18. By using Laplace transform, solve the following differential equations:

$$(a) \frac{d^2y(t)}{dt^2} + 3\frac{dy(t)}{dt} + 2y(t) = x(t) \text{ if } y(0^-) = 2; \frac{dy(0^-)}{dt} = 1 \text{ and } x(t) = e^{-t}u(t).$$

$$(b) \frac{d^3y(t)}{dt^3} + 7\frac{d^2y(t)}{dt^2} + 16\frac{dy(t)}{dt} + 12y(t) = x(t) \text{ if } y(0^-) = \frac{dy(0^-)}{dt} = \frac{d^2y(0^-)}{dt^2} = 0 \text{ and } x(t) = \delta(t)$$

$$(c) \frac{d^2y(t)}{dt^2} + 7\frac{dy(t)}{dt} + 12y(t) = x(t) \text{ if } y(0^-) = -2; \frac{dy(0^-)}{dt} = 0 \text{ and } x(t) = u(t)$$

19. Find the zero state response when the input  $x(t)$  is  $e^{-3t}u(t)$  for a system with transfer function

$$H(s) = \frac{s + 5}{s^2 + 5s + 6}$$

20. Find the impulse and step response of the following systems:

$$(a) H(s) = \frac{10}{s^2 + 6s + 10}$$

$$(b) \frac{s + 2}{s^2 + 5s + 4}$$

21. For the transfer function  $H(s) = \frac{s + 10}{s^2 + 3s + 2}$ , find the response due to input  $x(t) = \sin 2t u(t)$ .

22. Find the Laplace transform of the waveforms shown in Figure 9.67 using waveform synthesis:

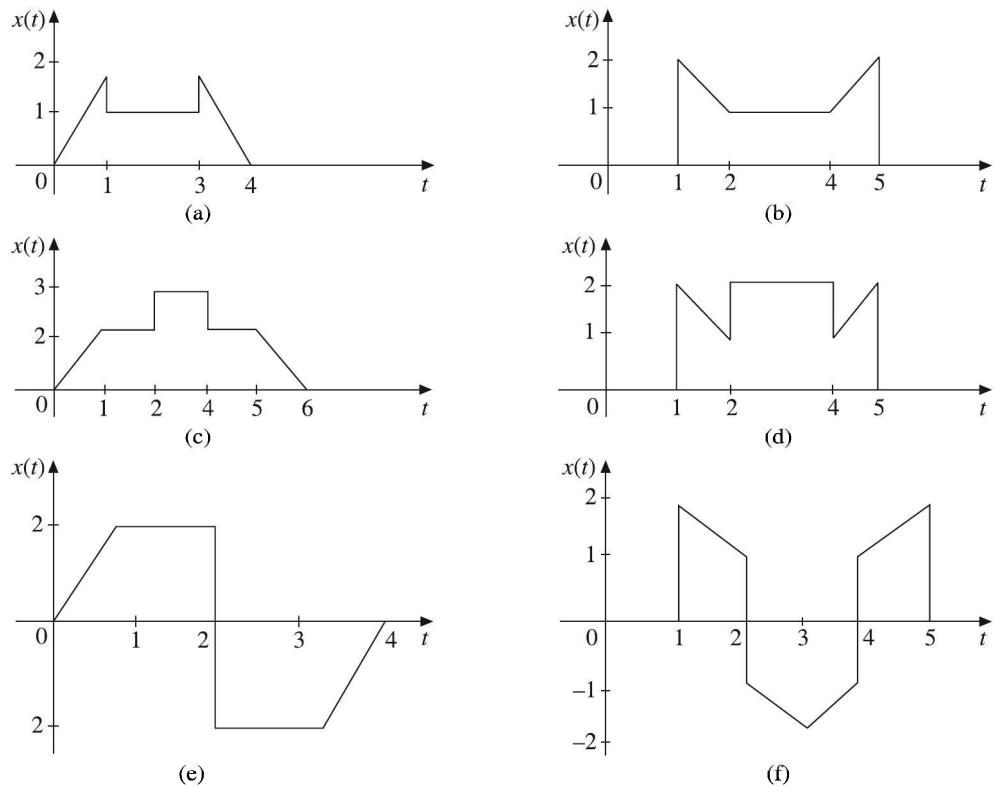


Figure 9.67 Waveforms for Problem 22.

23. Find the Laplace transforms of the waveforms shown in Figure 9.68 by direct computation:

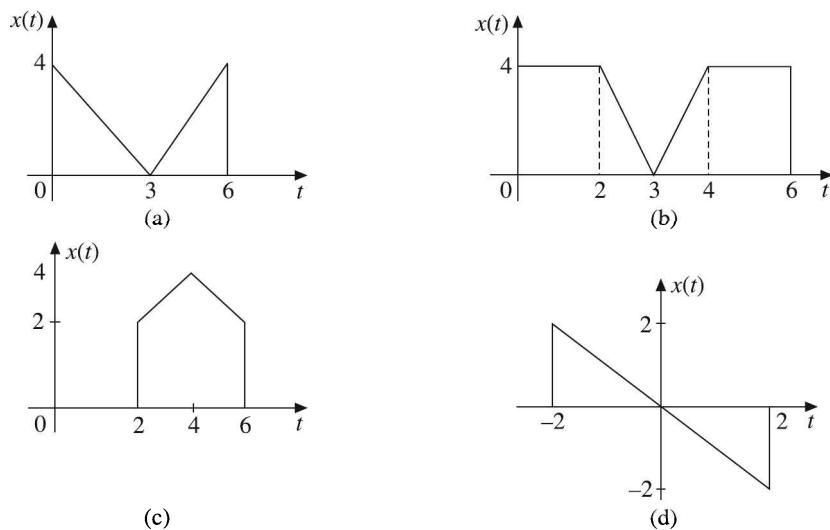
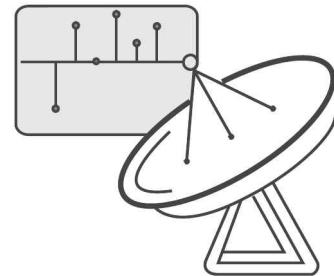


Figure 9.68 Waveforms for Problem 23.

# 10

## Z-Transforms



### 10.1 INTRODUCTION

We know that a linear time invariant (LTI) continuous-time system is represented by differential equations and a linear time invariant discrete-time system is represented by difference equations. The direct solution of higher order differential equations as well as higher order difference equations is quite tedious and time consuming. So usually they are solved by indirect methods. To solve the differential equations which are in time domain, they are first converted into algebraic equations in frequency domain using Laplace transforms, the algebraic equations are manipulated in  $s$ -domain and the result obtained in frequency domain is converted back into time domain using inverse Laplace transform. The Laplace transform has the advantage that it is a simple and systematic method and the complete solution can be obtained in one step and also the initial conditions can be introduced in the beginning of the process itself. The Z-transform plays the same role for discrete-time systems as that played by Laplace transform for continuous-time systems. The Z-transform is the discrete-time counterpart of the Laplace transform. It is the Laplace transform of the discretized version of the continuous-time signal  $x(t)$ . Just as the Laplace transform is a powerful mathematical tool to convert the differential equations into algebraic equations, the Z-transform is a powerful mathematical tool used to convert the difference equations into algebraic equations. To solve the difference equations which are in time domain, they are converted first into algebraic equations in  $z$ -domain using Z-transform, the algebraic equations are manipulated in  $z$ -domain and the result obtained is converted back into time domain using inverse Z-transform. Like the Laplace transform, the Z-transform has the advantage that it is a simple and systematic method and the complete solution can be obtained in one step and the initial conditions can be introduced in the beginning of the process itself. Also just as the Laplace transform is a very useful tool in the analysis of linear

time invariant (LTI) systems, the Z-transform is a very useful tool in the analysis of linear shift invariant (LSI) systems. Like the Laplace transform, the Z-transform may be one-sided (unilateral) or two-sided (bilateral). As in the case of Laplace transform, it is the one-sided or unilateral Z-transform that is more useful because we mostly deal with causal sequences. Further, it is eminently suited for solving difference equations with initial conditions. Just as the range of values of  $s$  for which  $X(s)$  converges is called the ROC of  $X(s)$  the range of values of  $z$  for which  $X(z)$  converges is called the ROC of  $X(z)$ .

The *bilateral* or *two-sided* Z-transform of a discrete-time signal or a sequence  $x(n)$  is defined as:

$$X(z) = \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} x(n) z^{-n}$$

where  $z$  is a complex variable.

The *one-sided* or *unilateral* Z-transform is defined as:

$$X(z) = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} x(n) z^{-n}$$

### **Region of convergence (ROC)**

For any given sequence, the Z-transform may or may not converge.

The set of values of  $z$  or equivalently the set of points in  $z$ -plane, for which  $X(z)$  converges is called the region of convergence (ROC) of  $X(z)$ .

If there is no value of  $z$  (i.e. no point in the  $z$ -plane) for which  $X(z)$  converges, then the sequence  $x(n)$  is said to be having no Z-transform.

### **Advantages of Z-transform**

1. The Z-transform converts the difference equations of a discrete-time system into linear algebraic equations so that the analysis become easy and simple.
2. Convolution in time domain is converted into multiplication in  $z$ -domain.
3. Z-transform exists for most of the signals for which discrete-time Fourier transform (DTFT) does not exist.

### **Limitation**

Frequency domain response cannot be achieved and cannot be plotted.

## **10.2 RELATION BETWEEN DISCRETE TIME FOURIER TRANSFORM (DTFT) AND Z-TRANSFORM**

The discrete-time Fourier transform (DTFT) of a sequence  $x(n)$  is given by

$$X(\omega) = \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} x(n) e^{-j\omega n}$$

For the existence of DTFT, the above summation should converge, i.e.  $x(n)$  must be absolutely summable. The Z-transform of the sequence  $x(n)$  is given by

$$Z[x(n)] = X(z) = \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} x(n) z^{-n}$$

where  $z$  is a complex variable and is given by

$$z = re^{j\omega}$$

where  $r$  is the radius of a circle.

$$\begin{aligned} \therefore X(z) &= X(re^{j\omega}) = \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} x(n) (re^{j\omega})^{-n} \\ &= \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} [x(n) r^{-n}] e^{-j\omega n} \end{aligned}$$

For the existence of Z-transform, the above summation should converge, i.e.  $x(n) r^{-n}$  must be absolutely summable, i.e.  $\sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} |x(n) r^{-n}| < \infty$ .

The above equation represents the discrete-time Fourier transform of a signal  $x(n) r^{-n}$ . Hence, we can say that the Z-transform of  $x(n)$  is same as the discrete-time Fourier transform of  $x(n) r^{-n}$ .

For the DTFT to exist, the discrete sequence  $x(n)$  must be absolutely summable, i.e.

$$\sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} |x(n)| < \infty.$$

So for many sequences the DTFT may not exist but the Z-transform may exist. When  $r = 1$ , the DTFT is same as the Z-transform, i.e. the DTFT is nothing but the Z-transform evaluated along the unit circle centred at the origin of the z-plane.

The set of values of  $z$  for which  $X(z)$  converges is called the ROC of  $X(z)$ .

## 10.3 Z-TRANSFORMS OF SOME COMMON SEQUENCES

### 10.3.1 The Unit-sample Sequence (The Unit-impulse Sequence) [ $x(n) = \delta(n)$ ]

We know that

$$\begin{aligned} \delta(n) &= 1 \quad \text{for } n = 0 \\ &= 0 \quad \text{for } n \neq 0 \end{aligned}$$

$$\therefore X(z) = Z[x(n)] = Z[\delta(n)] = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \delta(n) z^{-n} = 1 \quad (\text{for all } z)$$

i.e. the ROC is the entire z-plane.

$$\boxed{\delta(n) \xrightarrow{\text{ZT}} 1 \text{ for all } z}$$

### 10.3.2 The Unit-step Sequence [ $x(n) = u(n)$ ]

We know that

$$\begin{aligned} u(n) &= 1 && \text{for } n \geq 0 \\ &= 0 && \text{for } n < 0 \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned} \therefore X(z) &= Z[x(n)] = Z[u(n)] = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} u(n) z^{-n} \\ &= \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} 1z^{-n} = 1 + z^{-1} + z^{-2} + z^{-3} + \dots = \frac{1}{1 - z^{-1}} = \frac{z}{z - 1} \end{aligned}$$

The above series converges if  $|z^{-1}| < 1$ , i.e. ROC is  $|z| > 1$ . So, the ROC is the exterior of the unit circle in the z-plane.

$$\boxed{u(n) \xrightarrow{\text{ZT}} \frac{z}{z - 1}; \text{ ROC; } |z| > 1}$$

### 10.3.3 The Unit-ramp Sequence [ $x(n) = r(n) = nu(n)$ ]

We know that

$$\begin{aligned} r(n) &= n && \text{for } n \geq 0 \\ &= 0 && \text{for } n < 0 \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned} \therefore X(z) &= Z[x(n)] = Z[r(n)] = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} r(n) z^{-n} = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} nz^{-n} \\ &= 0 + 1z^{-1} + 2z^{-2} + 3z^{-3} + \dots = z^{-1}(1 + 2z^{-1} + 3z^{-2} + \dots) \\ &= z^{-1}(1 - z^{-1})^{-2} = z^{-1} \frac{1}{(1 - z^{-1})^2} = \frac{z}{(z - 1)^2} \end{aligned}$$

The above series converges if  $|z^{-1}| < 1$ , i.e ROC is  $|z| > 1$ . So the ROC is the exterior of the unit circle in the z-plane.

$$\boxed{nu(n) \xrightarrow{\text{ZT}} \frac{z^{-1}}{(1 - z^{-1})^2} = \frac{z}{(z - 1)^2}; \text{ ROC; } |z| > 1}$$

### 10.3.4 The Exponential Sequence [ $x(n) = e^{-j\omega n} u(n)$ ]

$$\begin{aligned} x(n) &= e^{-j\omega n} u(n) = e^{-j\omega n} \quad \text{for } n \geq 0 \\ &= 0 \quad \text{for } n < 0 \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned} \therefore X(z) &= Z[e^{-j\omega n} u(n)] = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} e^{-j\omega n} z^{-n} = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} (z^{-1} e^{-j\omega})^n \\ &= 1 + (z^{-1} e^{-j\omega}) + (z^{-1} e^{-j\omega})^2 + (z^{-1} e^{-j\omega})^3 + \dots \\ &= [1 - (z^{-1} e^{-j\omega})]^{-1} = \frac{1}{1 - z^{-1} e^{-j\omega}} = \frac{z}{z - e^{-j\omega}} \end{aligned}$$

The above series converges if  $|z^{-1}| < 1$ , i.e. ROC  $|z| > 1$ .

$$e^{-j\omega n} u(n) \xrightarrow{\text{ZT}} \frac{1}{1 - z^{-1} e^{-j\omega}} = \frac{z}{z - e^{-j\omega}}; \text{ ROC; } |z| > 1$$

On similar lines,

$$e^{j\omega n} u(n) \xrightarrow{\text{ZT}} \frac{1}{1 - z^{-1} e^{j\omega}} = \frac{z}{z - e^{j\omega}}; \text{ ROC; } |z| > |1|$$

### 10.3.5 The Sinusoidal Sequence [ $x(n) = \sin \omega n u(n)$ ]

$$\begin{aligned} x(n) &= \sin \omega n u(n) = \sin \omega n \quad \text{for } n \geq 0 \\ &= 0 \quad \text{for } n < 0 \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned} \therefore X(z) &= Z[\sin \omega n u(n)] = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \sin \omega n z^{-n} \\ &= \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \left( \frac{e^{j\omega n} - e^{-j\omega n}}{2j} \right) z^{-n} = \frac{1}{2j} \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} (e^{j\omega n} z^{-n} - e^{-j\omega n} z^{-n}) \\ &= \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \frac{(z^{-1} e^{j\omega})^n - (z^{-1} e^{-j\omega})^n}{2j} \\ &= \frac{1}{2j} \left[ \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} (z^{-1} e^{j\omega})^n - \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} (z^{-1} e^{-j\omega})^n \right] \end{aligned}$$

The above series converges for  $|z^{-1}| < 1$ , i.e.  $|z| > 1$ .

$$\begin{aligned}\therefore X(z) &= \frac{1}{2j} \left( \frac{1}{1-z^{-1}e^{j\omega}} - \frac{1}{1-z^{-1}e^{-j\omega}} \right) = \frac{1}{2j} \left( \frac{z}{z-e^{j\omega}} - \frac{z}{z-e^{-j\omega}} \right) \\ &= \frac{1}{2j} \left[ \frac{z(z-e^{-j\omega}) - z(z-e^{j\omega})}{(z-e^{j\omega})(z-e^{-j\omega})} \right] = \frac{1}{2j} \left[ \frac{z(e^{j\omega}-e^{-j\omega})}{z^2 - z(e^{j\omega}+e^{-j\omega}) + 1} \right] \\ &= \frac{z \sin \omega}{z^2 - 2z \cos \omega + 1}\end{aligned}$$

$$\boxed{\sin \omega n u(n) \xrightarrow{\text{ZT}} \frac{z^{-1} \sin \omega}{1 - 2z^{-1} \cos \omega + z^{-2}} = \frac{z \sin \omega}{z^2 - 2z \cos \omega + 1}; \text{ ROC; } |z| > 1}$$

### 10.3.6 The Cosinusoidal Sequence [ $x(n) = \cos \omega n u(n)$ ]

$$\begin{aligned}\cos \omega n u(n) &= \cos \omega n && \text{for } n \geq 0 \\ &= 0 && \text{for } n < 0\end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}Z[\cos \omega n u(n)] &= Z \left[ \frac{e^{j\omega n} + e^{-j\omega n}}{2} u(n) \right] = \frac{1}{2} \{Z[e^{j\omega n} u(n)] + Z[e^{-j\omega n} u(n)]\} \\ &= \frac{1}{2} \left( \frac{z}{z-e^{j\omega}} + \frac{z}{z-e^{-j\omega}} \right) = \frac{1}{2} \left[ \frac{z(z-e^{-j\omega}) + z(z-e^{j\omega})}{(z-e^{j\omega})(z-e^{-j\omega})} \right]; |z| > 1 \\ &= \frac{1}{2} \left\{ \frac{z[2z - (e^{j\omega} + e^{-j\omega})]}{z^2 - z(e^{j\omega} + e^{-j\omega}) + 1} \right\} = \frac{z(z - \cos \omega)}{z^2 - 2z \cos \omega + 1}; \text{ ROC; } |z| > 1\end{aligned}$$

$$\boxed{\cos \omega n u(n) \xrightarrow{\text{ZT}} \frac{1 - z^{-1} \cos \omega}{1 - 2z^{-1} \cos \omega + z^{-2}} = \frac{z(z - \cos \omega)}{z^2 - 2z \cos \omega + 1}; \text{ ROC; } |z| > 1}$$

**EXAMPLE 10.1** Distinguish between one-sided and two-sided Z-transforms. What are their applications?

**Solution:** The one-sided or unilateral Z-transform is defined only for causal signals and is given by

$$X(z) = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} x(n) z^{-n}$$

The two-sided or bilateral Z-transform is defined for bidirectional signals and is given by

$$X(z) = \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} x(n) z^{-n}$$

If the signal is causal, i.e.  $x(n) = 0$  for  $n < 0$ , then the one-sided and two-sided Z-transforms are identical.

Several properties, viz., superposition, scale change, integration, and differentiation are identical in both the Z-transforms; but the initial value theorem is fundamentally a unilateral Z-transform property.

The time reversal property of the bilateral Z-transform has no meaning in the unilateral Z-transform.

The inverse Z-transform of unilateral Z-transform is unique because its ROC is unique. Its ROC is always  $|z| > a$ . The inverse Z-transform of bilateral Z-transform is not unique because its ROC is not unique. Its ROC may be  $|z| > a$  or  $|z| < a$  or  $a < |z| < b$  where  $a$  and  $b$  are some constants. The one-sided Z-transform is more practical because most of the signals are causal signals.

### **Applications**

Unilateral Z-transform with time delay can be used to solve linear constant coefficient differential equations with zero initial conditions.

Z-transform can be used to analyse linear systems.

### **EXAMPLE 10.2** Compare Laplace transform and Z-transform.

**Solution:** The Laplace and Z-transforms are compared as follows:

<i>Laplace transform</i>	<i>Z-transform</i>
1. It is used to analyse LTI continuous-time systems.	1. It is used to analyse LTI discrete-time systems.
2. It converts differential equations which are in time domain into algebraic equations in $s$ -domain.	2. It converts difference equations which are in time domain into algebraic equations in $z$ -domain.
3. It is a simple and systematic method and the complete solution can be obtained in one step and also the initial conditions can be introduced in the beginning of the process itself.	3. It is also a simple and systematic method and the complete solution can be obtained in one step and also the initial conditions can be introduced in the beginning of the process itself.
4. Laplace transform may be one-sided (unilateral) or two-sided (bilateral).	4. Z-transform also may be one-sided (unilateral) or two-sided (bilateral).
5. The range of values of $s$ for which $X(s)$ converges is called ROC of $X(s)$ .	5. The range of values of $z$ for which $X(z)$ converges is called ROC of $X(z)$ .
6. The ROC of $X(s)$ consists of strips parallel to $j\omega$ axis in $s$ -plane.	6. The ROC of $X(z)$ consists of a ring or disc in $z$ -plane centred at the origin.
7. If the real part of $s$ , i.e. $\sigma = 0$ , then the Laplace transform becomes the continuous-time Fourier transform.	7. If the magnitude of $z$ , i.e. $ z  = 1$ , then the Z-transform becomes DTFT.
8. Convolution in time domain is equal to multiplication in $s$ -domain.	8. Convolution in time domain is equal to multiplication in $z$ -domain.

**EXAMPLE 10.3** Prove that, for causal sequences, the ROC is the exterior of a circle of radius  $r$ .

**Solution:** Causal sequences are the sequences defined for only positive integer values of  $n$  and do not exist for negative times, i.e.,

$$x(n) = 0 \quad \text{for } n < 0$$

Consider a causal sequence,

$$x(n) = r^n u(n)$$

From the definition of Z-transform of  $x(n)$ , we have

$$\begin{aligned} X(z) &= \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} x(n) z^{-n} \\ &= \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} r^n u(n) z^{-n} \\ &= \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} r^n z^{-n} \\ &= \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} (rz^{-1})^n \end{aligned}$$

The above summation converges for

$$|rz^{-1}| < 1, \text{ i.e. for } |z| > r$$

Hence, for the causal sequences, the ROC is the exterior of a circle of radius  $r$ .

**EXAMPLE 10.4** Derive the relation between Laplace and Z-transforms.

**Solution:** Let  $x(t)$  be a continuous signal. The discrete version of the signal  $x(t)$  is  $x^*(t)$ .  $x^*(t)$  is obtained by sampling  $x(t)$  with a sampling period of  $T$  sec, i.e.  $x^*(t)$  is obtained by multiplying  $x(t)$  with a sequence of impulses  $T$  sec apart.

$$\therefore x^*(t) = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} x(nT) \delta(t - nT)$$

The Laplace transform of  $x^*(t)$  is given by

$$L[x^*(t)] = X^*(s) = L \left[ \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} x(nT) \delta(t - nT) \right] = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} x(nT) L[\delta(t - nT)] = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} x(nT) e^{-nTs}$$

The Z-transform of signal  $x(nT)$  is given by

$$Z[x^*(t)] = Z[x(nT)] = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} x(nT) z^{-n}$$

So the relation between Laplace transform and Z-transform is:

$$\mathcal{L}[x^*(t)] = \mathcal{Z}[x^*(t)] \text{ with } z = e^{Ts}$$

**EXAMPLE 10.5** Find the Z-transform of

- |                            |                            |
|----------------------------|----------------------------|
| (a) $n\delta(n)$           | (b) $\delta(n - 4)$        |
| (c) $\delta(n + 3)$        | (d) $n\delta(n - 2)$       |
| (e) $y(n) = x(n - 1) u(n)$ | (f) $y(n) = x(n + 1) u(n)$ |

**Solution:**

(a) Given  $x(n) = n\delta(n)$

We know that  $\begin{aligned} \delta(n) &= 1 && \text{for } n = 0 \\ &= 0 && \text{for } n \neq 0 \end{aligned}$

From the definition of Z-transform, we have

$$\begin{aligned} X(z) &= \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} x(n) z^{-n} = \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} n\delta(n) z^{-n} \\ &= -\infty \delta(-\infty) z^{\infty} - \dots - 1 \delta(-1) z^1 + 0 \delta(0) z^0 + 1 \delta(1) z^{-1} + \dots + \infty \delta(\infty) z^{-\infty} \\ &= -\infty \times 0 \times z^{\infty} - \dots - 1 \times 0 \times z^1 + 0 \times 1 \times z^0 + 1 \times 0 \times z^{-1} + \dots + \infty \times 0 \times z^{-\infty} \\ &= 0 \end{aligned}$$

Hence  $\mathcal{Z}[n\delta(n)] = 0$

(b) Given  $x(n) = \delta(n - 4)$

We know that  $\begin{aligned} \delta(n - 4) &= 1 && \text{for } n = 4 \\ &= 0 && \text{otherwise} \end{aligned}$

$$\therefore X(z) = \mathcal{Z}[\delta(n - 4)] = \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} \delta(n - 4) z^{-n} = z^{-4}$$

Hence  $\mathcal{Z}[\delta(n - 4)] = z^{-4}$ ; ROC; Entire z-plane except at  $z = 0$

(c) Given  $x(n) = \delta(n + 3)$

We know that  $\begin{aligned} \delta(n + 3) &= 1 && \text{for } n = -3 \\ &= 0 && \text{otherwise} \end{aligned}$

$$\therefore X(z) = \mathcal{Z}[\delta(n + 3)] = \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} \delta(n + 3) z^{-n} = z^3$$

Hence  $\mathcal{Z}[\delta(n + 3)] = z^3$ ; ROC; Entire z-plane except at  $z = \infty$

(d) Given  $x(n) = n\delta(n - 2)$

We know that

$$\begin{aligned}\delta(n - 2) &= 1 \quad \text{for } n = 2 \\ &= 0 \quad \text{otherwise}\end{aligned}$$

$$\therefore X(z) = Z[n\delta(n - 2)] = \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} n\delta(n - 2) z^{-n} = 2z^{-2}$$

Hence  $Z[n\delta(n - 2)] = 2z^{-2}$ ; ROC; Entire z-plane except at  $z = 0$

(e) Given  $y(n) = x(n - 1) u(n)$

$$Y(z) = \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} x(n - 1) u(n) z^{-n} = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} x(n - 1) z^{-n}$$

Let

$$n - 1 = k$$

$$\therefore$$

$$n = k + 1$$

$$\begin{aligned}\therefore Y(z) &= \sum_{k=-1}^{\infty} x(k) z^{-(k+1)} = z^{-1} \sum_{k=-1}^{\infty} x(k) z^{-k} \\ &= z^{-1} \left[ \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} x(k) z^{-k} + x(-1) z \right] \\ &= z^{-1} \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} x(k) z^{-k} + x(-1) \\ &= z^{-1} X(z) + x(-1)\end{aligned}$$

$$\therefore Z[x(n - 1) u(n)] = z^{-1} X(z) + x(-1)$$

(f) Given  $y(n) = x(n + 1) u(n)$

$$Y(z) = \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} x(n + 1) u(n) z^{-n} = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} x(n + 1) z^{-n}$$

Let

$$n + 1 = k$$

$$\therefore$$

$$n = k - 1$$

$$\begin{aligned}\therefore Y(z) &= \sum_{k=1}^{\infty} x(k) z^{-(k-1)} = z \sum_{k=1}^{\infty} x(k) z^{-k} \\ &= z \left[ \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} x(k) z^{-k} - x(0) z^{-0} \right] = z \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} x(k) z^{-k} - zx(0) \\ &= zX(z) - zx(0)\end{aligned}$$

$$\therefore Z[x(n + 1) u(n)] = zX(z) - zx(0)$$

**EXAMPLE 10.6** Prove that the sequences

(a)  $x(n) = a^n u(n)$  and

(b)  $x(n) = -a^n u(-n - 1)$

have the same  $X(z)$  and differ only in ROC. Also plot their ROCs.

**Solution:**

(a) The given sequence  $a^n u(n)$  is a causal infinite duration sequence, i.e.

$$x(n) = \begin{cases} a^n, & n \geq 0 \\ 0, & n < 0 \end{cases} \text{ because } u(n) = \begin{cases} 1 & \text{for } n \geq 0 \\ 0 & \text{for } n < 0 \end{cases}$$

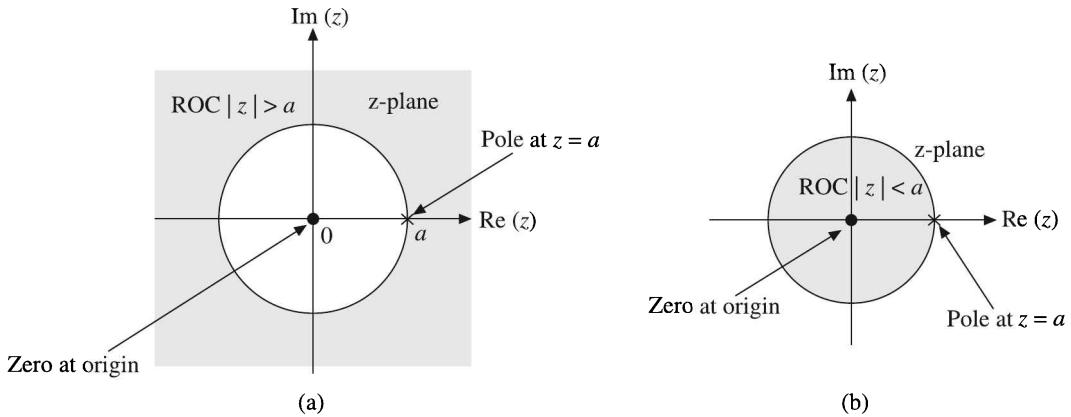
$$\begin{aligned} \therefore Z[x(n)] &= Z[a^n u(n)] = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} a^n u(n) z^{-n} \\ &= \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} a^n z^{-n} = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} [az^{-1}]^n = 1 + az^{-1} + (az^{-1})^2 + (az^{-1})^3 + \dots \end{aligned}$$

This is a geometric series of infinite length, and converges if  $|az^{-1}| < 1$ , i.e. if  $|z| > |a|$ .

$$\therefore X(z) = \frac{1}{1 - az^{-1}} = \frac{z}{z - a}; \text{ ROC; } |z| > |a|$$

which implies that the ROC is exterior to the circle of radius  $a$  as shown in Figure 10.1(a)

$$\boxed{a^n u(n) \xleftrightarrow{\text{ZT}} \frac{1}{1 - az^{-1}} = \frac{z}{z - a}; \text{ ROC; } |z| > a}$$



**Figure 10.1** (a) ROC of  $a^n u(n)$ , (b) ROC of  $-a^n u(-n - 1)$ .

(b) The given signal  $x(n) = -a^n u(-n - 1)$  is a non-causal infinite duration sequence, i.e.

$$\begin{aligned} x(n) &= \begin{cases} -a^n, & n \leq -1 \\ 0, & n \geq 0 \end{cases} \text{ because } u(-n - 1) = \begin{cases} 1 & \text{for } n \leq -1 \\ 0 & \text{for } n \geq 0 \end{cases} \\ \therefore X(z) = Z[-a^n u(-n - 1)] &= \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} -a^n u(-n - 1) z^{-n} = \sum_{n=-\infty}^{-1} -a^n z^{-n} \\ &= \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} -a^{-n} z^n = -\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} (a^{-1} z)^n \end{aligned}$$

This is a geometric series of infinite length and converges if  $|a^{-1}z| < 1$  or  $|z| < |a|$ . Hence

$$\begin{aligned} X(z) &= - \left[ \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} (a^{-1} z)^n - 1 \right] = 1 - \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} (a^{-1} z)^n \\ &= 1 - \frac{1}{1 - a^{-1} z} = -\frac{a^{-1} z}{1 - a^{-1} z} = \frac{1}{1 - az^{-1}} = \frac{z}{z - a}; \text{ ROC; } |z| < |a| \end{aligned}$$

That is, the ROC is the interior of the circle of radius  $a$  as shown in Figure 10.1(b).

From this example, we can observe that the Z-transform of the sequences  $a^n u(n)$  and  $-a^n u(-n - 1)$  are same, even though the sequences are different. Only ROC differentiates them. Therefore, to find the correct inverse Z-transform, it is essential to know the ROC. The ROCs are shown in Figure 10.1[(a) and (b)].

In general, the ROC of a causal signal is  $|z| > a$  and the ROC of a non-causal signal is  $|z| < a$ , where  $a$  is some constant.

**EXAMPLE 10.7** Find the Z-transform of the following sequences:

$$(a) y(n) = x(n - 2) u(n) \quad (b) y(n) = x(n + 2) u(n)$$

**Solution:**

(a) Given

$$y(n) = x(n - 2) u(n)$$

$$\therefore Y(z) = Z[y(n)] = Z[x(n - 2) u(n)] = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} x(n - 2) u(n) z^{-n} = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} x(n - 2) z^{-n}$$

Let  $n - 2 = p$ , i.e.  $n = p + 2$

$$\begin{aligned} \therefore Y(z) &= \sum_{p=-2}^{\infty} x(p) z^{-(p+2)} = z^{-2} \left[ \sum_{p=-2}^{\infty} x(p) z^{-p} \right] \\ &= z^{-2} \left[ x(-2) z^2 + x(-1) z^1 + \sum_{p=0}^{\infty} x(p) z^{-p} \right] \\ &= z^{-2} X(z) + z^{-1} x(-1) + x(-2) \end{aligned}$$

(b) Given

$$y(n) = x(n+2)u(n)$$

$$\therefore Y(z) = Z[y(n)] = Z[x(n+2)u(n)] = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} x(n+2)u(n)z^{-n} = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} x(n+2)z^{-n}$$

Let  $n+2 = p$ , i.e.  $n = p - 2$

$$\begin{aligned} \therefore Y(z) &= \sum_{p=2}^{\infty} x(p)z^{-(p-2)} = z^2 \left[ \sum_{p=2}^{\infty} x(p)z^{-p} \right] \\ &= z^2 \left[ \sum_{p=0}^{\infty} x(p)z^{-p} - x(0) - x(1)z^{-1} \right] \\ &= z^2 X(z) - z^2 x(0) - zx(1) \end{aligned}$$

**EXAMPLE 10.8** Find the Z-transform and ROC of  $x(n) = a^n u(-n)$ .

**Solution:** The given sequence is a non-causal infinite duration sequence, i.e.

$$x(n) = \begin{cases} a^n, & n \leq 0 \\ 0, & n > 0 \end{cases}$$

$$\therefore Z[x(n)] = X(z) = \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} a^n u(-n) z^{-n} = \sum_{n=-\infty}^0 a^n z^{-n} = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} (a^{-1}z)^n$$

The above series converges if  $|a^{-1}z| < 1$  or  $|z| < a$ .

$$\therefore X(z) = \frac{1}{1 - a^{-1}z} = \frac{a}{a - z}; \text{ ROC: } |z| < a$$

**EXAMPLE 10.9** Determine the Z-transform and ROC of

$$x(n) = a^n u(n) - b^n u(-n-1)$$

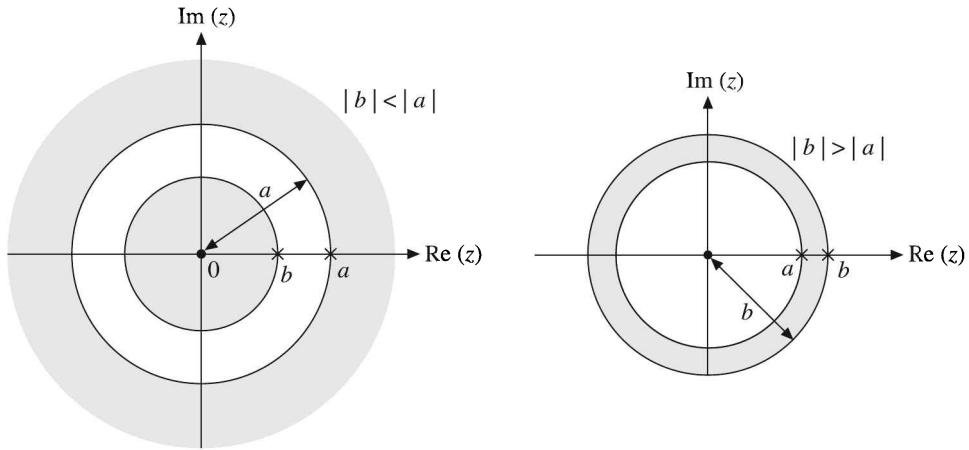
**Solution:** The given sequence is a two-sided infinite duration sequence.

$$\begin{aligned} \therefore Z[x(n)] = X(z) &= \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} [a^n u(n) - b^n u(-n-1)] z^{-n} \\ &= \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} a^n z^{-n} - \sum_{n=-\infty}^{-1} b^n z^{-n} = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} [az^{-1}]^n - \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} [b^{-1}z]^n \end{aligned}$$

The first series converges if  $|az^{-1}| < 1$  or  $|z| > |a|$  and the second series converges if  $|b^{-1}z| < 1$  or  $|z| < |b|$ . If  $|b| < |a|$ , the two ROCs do not overlap as shown in Figure 10.2(a) and the conditions  $|z| > |a|$  and  $|z| < |b|$  cannot be satisfied simultaneously, so the Z-transform  $X(z)$  does not exist.

If  $|b| > |a|$ , the two ROCs overlap as shown in Figure 10.2(b) and the conditions  $|z| > |a|$  and  $|z| < |b|$  can be satisfied simultaneously, so  $X(z)$  exists. Therefore, the ROC of  $X(z)$  is  $|a| < |z| < |b|$ . This implies that *for an infinite duration two-sided signal, the ROC is a ring in the z-plane.*

$$\therefore X(z) = \frac{z}{z-a} + \frac{z}{z-b}; \text{ ROC: } |a| < |z| < |b|$$



**Figure 10.2** ROC of two-sided sequence for (a)  $|b| < |a|$ , and (b)  $|b| > |a|$ .

From the above discussion, the following conclusions can be drawn:

1. The ROC of a causal sequence is  $|z| > |a|$ , i.e. it is the exterior of a circle of radius  $a$ , where  $z = a$  is the largest pole in  $X(z)$ .
2. The ROC of a non-causal sequence is  $|z| < |a|$ , i.e. it is the interior of a circle of radius  $a$ , where  $z = a$  is the smallest pole in  $X(z)$ .
3. The ROC of a two-sided sequence is a ring in z-plane or the Z-transform does not exist at all.
4. The ROC of the sum of two or more sequences is equal to the intersection of the ROCs of those sequences.

**EXAMPLE 10.10** Find the Z-transform and ROC of  $X(z)$  for

$$x(n) = 3\left(\frac{5}{7}\right)^n u(n) + 2\left(-\frac{1}{3}\right)^n u(n)$$

Also find the pole-zero location.

**Solution:** Given  $x(n) = 3\left(\frac{5}{7}\right)^n u(n) + 2\left(-\frac{1}{3}\right)^n u(n)$

We have

$$\begin{aligned}
 X(z) &= \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} x(n) z^{-n} = \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} \left[ 3\left(\frac{5}{7}\right)^n u(n) + 2\left(-\frac{1}{3}\right)^n u(n) \right] z^{-n} \\
 &= \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \left[ 3\left(\frac{5}{7}\right)^n z^{-n} + 2\left(-\frac{1}{3}\right)^n z^{-n} \right] = 3 \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \left(\frac{5}{7}\right)^n z^{-n} + 2 \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \left(-\frac{1}{3}\right)^n z^{-n} \\
 &= 3 \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \left(\frac{5}{7}z^{-1}\right)^n + 2 \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \left(-\frac{1}{3}z^{-1}\right)^n
 \end{aligned}$$

The first summation converges for  $\left|\frac{5}{7}z^{-1}\right| < 1$  or  $|z| > \frac{5}{7}$  and the second summation converges for  $\left|-\frac{1}{3}z^{-1}\right| < 1$  or  $|z| > \frac{1}{3}$ .

Therefore,  $X(z)$  converges for  $|z| > 5/7$ .

Now,

$$\begin{aligned}
 X(z) &= 3 \frac{1}{1 - (5/7)z^{-1}} + 2 \frac{1}{1 + (1/3)z^{-1}} = 3 \frac{z}{z - (5/7)} + 2 \frac{z}{z + (1/3)} \\
 &= \frac{3z[z + (1/3)] + 2z[z - (5/7)]}{[z - (5/7)][z + (1/3)]} = \frac{5z^2 - (3/7)z}{[z - (5/7)][z + (1/3)]} \\
 &= \frac{5z^2 - (3/7)z}{[z - (5/7)][z + (1/3)]} = \frac{5z[z - (3/35)]}{[z - (5/7)][z + (1/3)]}
 \end{aligned}$$

The poles of  $X(z)$  are at  $z = (5/7)$  and  $z = -(1/3)$ . So the ROC is  $|z| > (5/7)$ , i.e. the ROC is the exterior of the circle with radius  $5/7$ . The zeros are at  $z = 0$  and  $z = (3/35)$ . The pole-zero location is shown in Figure 10.3.

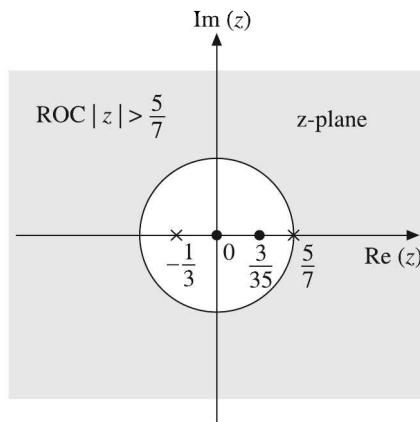


Figure 10.3 Pole-zero location and ROC for Example 10.10.

**EXAMPLE 10.11** Determine the Z-transform and ROC of

$$x(n) = \left(\frac{1}{2}\right)^n u(-n) - 2^n u(-n-1)$$

Also indicate the pole-zero locations.

**Solution:** Given  $x(n) = \left(\frac{1}{2}\right)^n u(-n) - 2^n u(-n-1)$

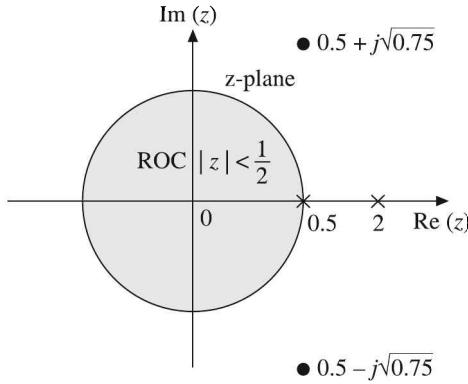
$$\begin{aligned} X(z) &= \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} \left[ \left(\frac{1}{2}\right)^n u(-n) - 2^n u(-n-1) \right] z^{-n} \\ &= \sum_{n=-\infty}^0 \left(\frac{1}{2}\right)^n z^{-n} + \sum_{n=-\infty}^{-1} - (2)^n z^{-n} \\ &= \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \left(\frac{1}{2}\right)^{-n} z^n - \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} 2^{-n} z^n \\ &= \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \left[\left(\frac{1}{2}\right)^{-1} z\right]^n - \left[-1 + \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} (2^{-1} z)^n\right] \end{aligned}$$

The first series converges if  $\left|\left(\frac{1}{2}\right)^{-1} z\right| < 1$  or  $|z| < \frac{1}{2}$  and the second series converges if

$|2^{-1}z| < 1$  or  $|z| < 2$ . So  $X(z)$  converges for  $|z| < 1/2$  and the ROC is the interior of the circle of radius  $1/2$ . The ROC is  $|z| < 1/2$ .

$$\begin{aligned} \therefore X(z) &= \frac{1}{1 - (1/2)^{-1} z} + 1 - \frac{1}{1 - 2^{-1} z} \\ &= \frac{1}{1 - (1/2)^{-1} z} - \frac{2^{-1} z}{1 - 2^{-1} z} \\ &= -\frac{0.5}{z - 0.5} + \frac{z}{z - 2} = \frac{z^2 - z + 1}{(z - 0.5)(z - 2)} \\ &= \frac{(z - 0.5 - j\sqrt{0.75})(z - 0.5 + j\sqrt{0.75})}{(z - 0.5)(z - 2)} \end{aligned}$$

The ROC and the pole-zero locations are shown in Figure 10.4.



**Figure 10.4** Pole-zero location and ROC for Example 10.11.

**EXAMPLE 10.12** Find the Z-transform of the sequence

$$x(n) = \left(\frac{1}{4}\right)^n \cos\left(\frac{\pi}{3}n\right) u(n)$$

Also sketch the ROC and pole-zero location.

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Solution: Given } x(n) &= \left(\frac{1}{4}\right)^n \cos\left(\frac{\pi}{3}n\right) u(n) = \left(\frac{1}{4}\right)^n \left[ \frac{e^{j(\pi/3)n} + e^{-j(\pi/3)n}}{2} \right] u(n) \\ &= \frac{1}{2} \left[ \left(\frac{1}{4}e^{j(\pi/3)}\right)^n + \left(\frac{1}{4}e^{-j(\pi/3)}\right)^n \right] u(n) \end{aligned}$$

We have

$$\begin{aligned} X(z) &= \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} x(n) z^{-n} \\ &= \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} \frac{1}{2} \left[ \left(\frac{1}{4}e^{j(\pi/3)}\right)^n + \left(\frac{1}{4}e^{-j(\pi/3)}\right)^n \right] u(n) z^{-n} \\ &= \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \frac{1}{2} \left(\frac{1}{4}e^{j(\pi/3)}\right)^n z^{-n} + \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \frac{1}{2} \left(\frac{1}{4}e^{-j(\pi/3)}\right)^n z^{-n} \\ &= \frac{1}{2} \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \left[ \frac{1}{4}e^{j(\pi/3)} z^{-1} \right]^n + \frac{1}{2} \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \left[ \frac{1}{4}e^{-j(\pi/3)} z^{-1} \right]^n \\ &= \frac{1}{2} \frac{1}{1 - (1/4)e^{j(\pi/3)} z^{-1}} + \frac{1}{2} \frac{1}{1 - (1/4)e^{-j(\pi/3)} z^{-1}} \end{aligned}$$

The first series converges if  $\left| \frac{1}{4} z^{-1} e^{j(\pi/3)} \right| < 1$ , i.e.  $|z| > \frac{1}{4}$  and the second series converges if  $\left| \frac{1}{4} z^{-1} e^{-j(\pi/3)} \right| < 1$ , i.e.  $|z| > \frac{1}{4}$ . So the ROC is  $|z| > \frac{1}{4}$ .

$$\begin{aligned}\therefore X(z) &= \frac{1}{2} \frac{z}{z - (1/4) e^{j(\pi/3)}} + \frac{1}{2} \frac{z}{z - (1/4) e^{-j(\pi/3)}} \\ &= \frac{z[z - (1/4) \cos(\pi/3)]}{[z - (1/4) e^{j(\pi/3)}][z - (1/4) e^{-j(\pi/3)}]} = \frac{z[z - (1/8)]}{[z - (1/8) - j(\sqrt{3}/8)][z - (1/8) + j(\sqrt{3}/8)]}\end{aligned}$$

The poles are at  $z = (1/4) e^{j(\pi/3)}$  and  $z = (1/4) e^{-j(\pi/3)}$  and the zeros are at  $z = 0$  and  $z = (1/8)$ . The pole-zero location and the ROC are sketched in Figure 10.5.

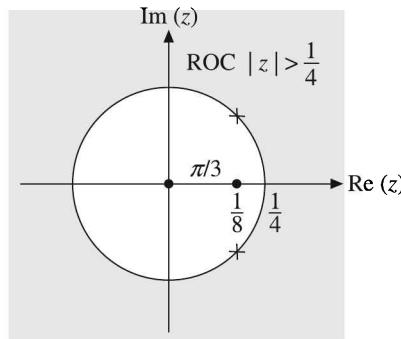


Figure 10.5 Pole-zero location and ROC for Example 10.12.

**EXAMPLE 10.13** Find the Z-transform and ROC of

$$x(n) = 2\left(\frac{5}{6}\right)^n u(-n-1) + 3\left(\frac{1}{2}\right)^{2n} u(n)$$

Sketch the ROC and pole-zero location.

$$\text{Solution: Given } x(n) = 2\left(\frac{5}{6}\right)^n u(-n-1) + 3\left(\frac{1}{2}\right)^{2n} u(n) = 2\left(\frac{5}{6}\right)^n u(-n-1) + 3\left(\frac{1}{4}\right)^n u(n)$$

We have

$$\begin{aligned}X(z) &= \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} x(n) z^{-n} = \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} \left[ 2\left(\frac{5}{6}\right)^n u(-n-1) + 3\left(\frac{1}{4}\right)^n u(n) \right] z^{-n} \\ &= \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} 2\left(\frac{5}{6}\right)^n u(-n-1) z^{-n} + \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} 3\left(\frac{1}{4}\right)^n u(n) z^{-n} = \sum_{n=-\infty}^{-1} 2\left(\frac{5}{6}\right)^n z^{-n} + \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} 3\left(\frac{1}{4}\right)^n z^{-n} \\ &= \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} 2\left[\left(\frac{5}{6}\right)^{-1} z\right]^n + \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} 3\left(\frac{1}{4} z^{-1}\right)^n\end{aligned}$$

The first series converges if  $(5/6)^{-1} z < 1$  or  $z < (5/6)$  and the second series converges if  $(1/4) z^{-1} < 1$  or  $z > (1/4)$ .

So the region of convergence for  $X(z)$  is  $(1/4) < z < (5/6)$ , i.e. it is a ring with  $(1/4) < z < (5/6)$ .

$$\begin{aligned}\therefore X(z) &= 2 \left\{ -1 + \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \left[ \left( \frac{5}{6} \right)^{-1} z \right]^n \right\} + \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} 3 \left( \frac{1}{4} z^{-1} \right)^n \\ &= \left\{ 2 \left[ -1 + \frac{1}{1 - (5/6)^{-1} z} \right] + 3 \frac{1}{1 - (1/4) z^{-1}} \right\} = -2 \frac{z}{z - (5/6)} + 3 \frac{z}{z - (1/4)} \\ &= \frac{-2z^2 + (z/2) + 3z^2 - (5z/2)}{[z - (5/6)][z - (1/4)]} = \frac{z(z - 2)}{[z - (5/6)][z - (1/4)]}\end{aligned}$$

The ROC and the pole-zero plot are shown in Figure 10.6.

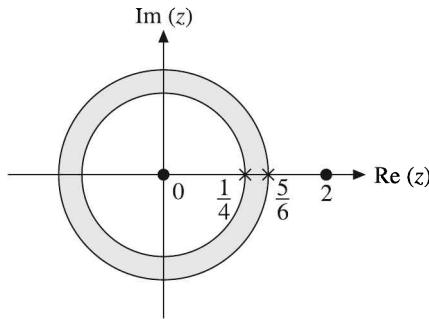


Figure 10.6 Pole-zero plot and ROC for Example 10.13.

**EXAMPLE 10.14** Find the Z-transform and ROC of

$$x(n) = a^{|n|}; |a| < 1$$

**Solution:** Given

$$x(n) = a^{|n|}; |a| < 1$$

We have

$$\begin{aligned}X(z) &= \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} a^{|n|} z^{-n} = \sum_{n=-\infty}^{-1} a^{-n} z^{-n} + \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} a^n z^{-n} \\ &= \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} a^n z^n + \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} a^n z^{-n} = -1 + \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} (az)^n + \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} (az^{-1})^n\end{aligned}$$

The first series  $(az)^n$  converges for  $az < 1$ , i.e. if  $|z| < |1/a|$  and the second series converges if  $az^{-1} < 1$ , i.e. if  $|z| > |a|$ . So  $X(z)$  converges if  $|a| < |z| < |1/a|$ .

$$\begin{aligned}\therefore X(z) &= -1 + \frac{1}{1-az} + \frac{1}{1-a z^{-1}} = \frac{az}{1-az} + \frac{z}{z-a} \\ &= -\frac{z}{z-(1/a)} + \frac{z}{z-a} = \frac{z[a-(1/a)]}{(z-a)[z-(1/a)]} \\ \therefore X(z) &= \frac{z[a-(1/a)]}{[z-(1/a)](z-a)}; \text{ ROC: } |a| < |z| < \left| \frac{1}{a} \right|\end{aligned}$$

*Alternatively*

$$\begin{aligned}a^{|n|} &= a^n u(n) + a^{-n} u(-n-1) = a^n u(n) + \left(\frac{1}{a}\right)^n u(-n-1) \\ \therefore Z[a^{|n|}] &= Z[a^n u(n)] + Z\left[\left(\frac{1}{a}\right)^n u(-n-1)\right] \\ &= \frac{z}{z-a} - \frac{z}{z-(1/a)} = \frac{z[a-(1/a)]}{(z-a)[z-z-(1/a)]}; \text{ ROC: } |a| < |z| < \left| \frac{1}{a} \right|\end{aligned}$$

**EXAMPLE 10.15** Find the Z-transform of the following sequences:

(a)  $x(n) = (a^n + a^{-n}) u(n)$ ; where  $a$  is real

(b)  $x(n) = (-1)^n 3^{-n} u(n)$

(c)  $x(n) = (1 + 2^n + 3^n) u(n)$

(d)  $x(n) = 2(n-1)(1/2)^n u(n-1)$

(e)  $x(n) = \begin{cases} 2^n, & n \leq 0 \\ 0, & n > 0 \end{cases}$

**Solution:**

(a) The given sequence is:

$$x(n) = (a^n + a^{-n}) u(n)$$

$$\begin{aligned}X(z) &= \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} (a^n + a^{-n}) u(n) z^{-n} = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} (a^n + a^{-n}) z^{-n} \\ &= \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} a^n z^{-n} + \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} a^{-n} z^{-n} = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} (az^{-1})^n + \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} (a^{-1}z^{-1})^n\end{aligned}$$

The first series converges if  $|az^{-1}| < 1$ , i.e. if  $|z| > |a|$  and the second series converges if  $|a^{-1}z^{-1}| < 1$ , i.e. if  $|z| > |1/a|$ .

$$\therefore X(z) \text{ converges if } |z| > \max \left[ |a|, \left| \frac{1}{a} \right| \right]$$

$$\begin{aligned}\therefore X(z) &= \frac{1}{1 - az^{-1}} + \frac{1}{1 - a^{-1}z^{-1}} = \frac{z}{z-a} + \frac{z}{z-(1/a)} \\ &= \frac{z\{2z - [a + (1/a)]\}}{(z-a)[z-(1/a)]}; \text{ ROC; } |z| > \max(|a|, \frac{1}{|a|})\end{aligned}$$

(b) Given  $x(n) = (-1)^n 3^{-n} u(n)$

$$\begin{aligned}X(z) &= \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} x(n) z^{-n} = \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} (-1)^n 3^{-n} u(n) z^{-n} \\ &= \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} [-1(3)^{-1}]^n z^{-n} = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \left(-\frac{1}{3}z^{-1}\right)^n\end{aligned}$$

The above series converges if

$$\left|-\frac{1}{3}z^{-1}\right| < 1, \text{ i.e. if } \left|\frac{1}{3}z^{-1}\right| < 1, \text{ i.e. if } |z| > \frac{1}{3}$$

$$\therefore X(z) = \frac{1}{1 - [-(1/3)z^{-1}]} = \frac{1}{1 + (1/3)z^{-1}} = \frac{z}{z + (1/3)}; \text{ ROC; } |z| > \frac{1}{3}$$

(c) Given  $x(n) = (1 + 2^n + 3^n) u(n)$

$$\begin{aligned}X(z) &= \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} x(n) z^{-n} = \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} (1 + 2^n + 3^n) u(n) z^{-n} \\ &= \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} z^{-n} + \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} 2^n z^{-n} + \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} 3^n z^{-n} = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} (z^{-1})^n + \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} (2z^{-1})^n + \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} (3z^{-1})^n\end{aligned}$$

The first series converges if  $|z^{-1}| < 1$ , i.e. if  $|z| > 1$ .

The second series converges if  $|2z^{-1}| < 1$ , i.e. if  $|z| > 2$ .

The third series converges if  $|3z^{-1}| < 1$ , i.e. if  $|z| > 3$ .

So  $X(z)$  converges if  $|z| > 3$ , i.e. the ROC is  $|z| > 3$ .

$$\begin{aligned}\therefore X(z) &= \frac{1}{1 - z^{-1}} + \frac{1}{1 - 2z^{-1}} + \frac{1}{1 - 3z^{-1}} \\ &= \frac{z}{z-1} + \frac{z}{z-2} + \frac{z}{z-3}; \text{ ROC; } |z| > 3\end{aligned}$$

(d) The given sequence is:

$$x(n) = 2(n-1) \left(\frac{1}{2}\right)^n u(n-1)$$

$$\begin{aligned}\therefore X(z) &= \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} 2(n-1) \left(\frac{1}{2}\right)^n u(n-1) z^{-n} = \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} 2(n-1) (0.5 z^{-1})^n \\ &= 2[0 + (0.5 z^{-1})^2 + 2(0.5 z^{-1})^3 + 3(0.5 z^{-1})^4 + 4(0.5 z^{-1})^5 + \dots] \\ &= 2(0.5 z^{-1})^2 [1 + 2(0.5 z^{-1}) + 3(0.5 z^{-1})^2 + 4(0.5 z^{-1})^3 + \dots] \\ &= 0.5 z^{-2} [(1 - 0.5 z^{-1})^{-2}] = \frac{0.5 z^{-2}}{(1 - 0.5 z^{-1})^2} \\ \therefore X(z) &= \frac{0.5}{(z - 0.5)^2}; \text{ ROC; } |z| > 0.5\end{aligned}$$

(e) The given sequence is:

$$x(n) = \begin{cases} 2^n, & n \leq 0 \\ 0, & n > 0 \end{cases}$$

$$\begin{aligned}X(z) &= \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} x(n) z^{-n} = \sum_{n=-\infty}^0 2^n z^{-n} = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} 2^{-n} z^n \\ &= \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} (2^{-1} z)^n = \frac{1}{1 - 2^{-1} z} = \frac{2}{2 - z} \text{ ROC; } |z| < 2\end{aligned}$$

(because for the above series to converge  $|2^{-1} z| < 1$ , i.e.  $|z| < 2$ .)

**EXAMPLE 10.16** Determine the Z-transform and ROC of the signal

$$x(n) = \left(\frac{1}{3}\right)^n [u(n) - u(n-6)]$$

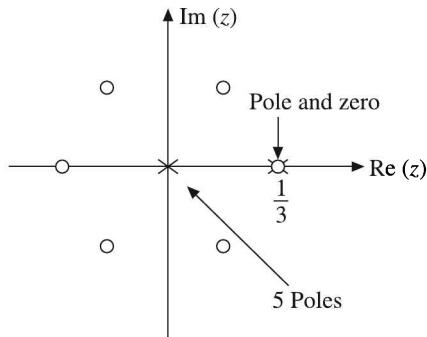
Sketch the ROC, poles and zeros in the z-plane.

**Solution:** Given

$$x(n) = \left(\frac{1}{3}\right)^n [u(n) - u(n-6)]$$

$$\begin{aligned}X(z) &= \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} x(n) z^{-n} = \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} \left(\frac{1}{3}\right)^n [u(n) - u(n-6)] z^{-n} \\ &= \sum_{n=0}^5 \left(\frac{1}{3}\right)^n z^{-n} = \sum_{n=0}^5 \left(\frac{1}{3} z^{-1}\right)^n \\ &= \frac{1 - [(1/3) z^{-1}]^6}{1 - (1/3) z^{-1}} = \frac{1}{z^5} \frac{z^6 - (1/3)^6}{z - (1/3)} \quad \begin{cases} \sum_{n=0}^{N-1} \alpha^n = \frac{1 - \alpha^N}{1 - \alpha} & \text{if } \alpha \neq 1 \\ = N & \text{if } \alpha = 1 \end{cases}\end{aligned}$$

The given sequence is a finite duration right-sided sequence. So ROC is all  $z$  except  $z = 0$ . The ROC and pole-zero locations are shown in Figure 10.7.



**Figure 10.7** Pole-zero location and ROC for Example 10.16.

**EXAMPLE 10.17** Find the Z-transform and ROC of

$$x(n) = \left(\frac{1}{2}\right)^n u(n-2)$$

Sketch the pole-zero location and ROC.

**Solution:** Given

$$x(n) = \left(\frac{1}{2}\right)^n u(n-2)$$

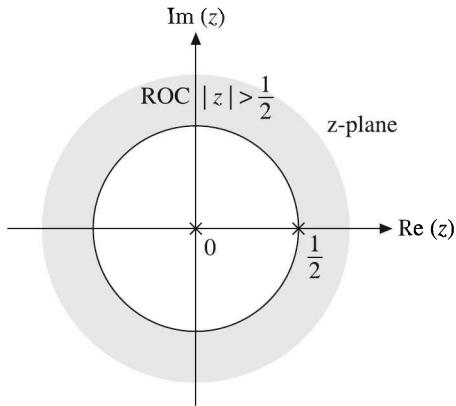
$$X(z) = \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} \left(\frac{1}{2}\right)^n u(n-2) z^{-n} = \sum_{n=2}^{\infty} \left(\frac{1}{2}\right)^n z^{-n} = \sum_{n=2}^{\infty} \left(\frac{1}{2} z^{-1}\right)^n$$

The above series converges if  $\left|\frac{1}{2} z^{-1}\right| < 1$ , i.e. if  $|z| > \frac{1}{2}$

So, the ROC of  $X(z)$  is  $|z| > \frac{1}{2}$ .

$$\begin{aligned} \therefore X(z) &= \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \left(\frac{1}{2} z^{-1}\right)^n - \sum_{n=0}^1 \left(\frac{1}{2} z^{-1}\right)^n = \frac{1}{1 - (1/2) z^{-1}} - \left(1 + \frac{1}{2} z^{-1}\right) \\ &= \frac{1 - [1 - (1/4) z^{-2}]}{1 - (1/2) z^{-1}} = \frac{[(1/2) z^{-1}]^2}{1 - (1/2) z^{-1}} \\ &= \frac{1}{4z[z - (1/2)]}; \text{ ROC; } |z| > \frac{1}{2} \end{aligned}$$

The ROC and pole-zero locations are shown in Figure 10.8.



**Figure 10.8** Pole-zero location and ROC for Example 10.17.

**EXAMPLE 10.18** Find the Z-transform of the following:

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| (a) $x(n) = \left(\frac{1}{4}\right)^n u(n) - \cos\left(\frac{n\pi}{4}\right)u(n)$ | (b) $x(n) = a^n \sin(n\omega) u(n)$                    |
| (c) $x(n) = a^n \cos \frac{n\pi}{2}$   | (d) $x(n) = a^{-n} u(-n-1)$                            |
| (e) $x(n) = u(-n)$   | (f) $x(n) = \frac{b^n}{n!} \quad \text{for } n \geq 0$ |
| (g) $x(n) = \begin{cases} 2, 1, 3, 5, 0, 7 \\ \uparrow \end{cases}$                | (h) $x(n) = u(-n+1)$                                   |
| (i) $x(n) = u(-n-2)$   | (j) $x(n) = 2^n u(n-2)$                                |

**Solution:**

$$\begin{aligned}
 \text{(a) Given } x(n) &= \left(\frac{1}{4}\right)^n u(n) - \cos\left(\frac{n\pi}{4}\right)u(n) \\
 \text{Z}[x(n)] = X(z) &= \text{Z}\left[\left(\frac{1}{4}\right)^n u(n) - \cos\left(\frac{n\pi}{4}\right)u(n)\right] \\
 &= \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} \left[ \left(\frac{1}{4}\right)^n u(n) - \cos\left(\frac{n\pi}{4}\right)u(n) \right] z^{-n} \\
 &= \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \left( \frac{1}{4} \right)^n z^{-n} - \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \left[ \frac{e^{j(n\pi/4)} + e^{-j(n\pi/4)}}{2} \right] z^{-n}
 \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
 &= \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \left( \frac{1}{4} z^{-1} \right)^n - \frac{1}{2} \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} [e^{(j\pi/4)} z^{-1}]^n - \frac{1}{2} \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} [e^{-(j\pi/4)} z^{-1}]^n \\
 &= \frac{1}{1 - (1/4) z^{-1}} - \frac{1}{2} \frac{1}{1 - e^{(j\pi/4)} z^{-1}} - \frac{1}{2} \frac{1}{1 - e^{-(j\pi/4)} z^{-1}} \\
 &= \frac{z}{z - (1/4)} - \frac{1}{2} \left[ \frac{z}{z - e^{(j\pi/4)}} + \frac{z}{z - e^{(-j\pi/4)}} \right] \\
 &= \frac{z}{z - (1/4)} - \frac{1}{2} \frac{z [2z - (e^{(j\pi/4)} + e^{-(j\pi/4)})]}{z^2 - z(e^{(j\pi/4)} + e^{(-j\pi/4)}) + 1} \\
 &= \frac{z}{z - (1/4)} - \frac{z [z - \cos(\pi/4)]}{z^2 - 2z \cos(\pi/4) + 1}
 \end{aligned}$$

(b) Given

$$x(n) = a^n \sin(n\omega) u(n)$$

$$\begin{aligned}
 Z[x(n)] = X(z) &= Z \left[ a^n \left( \frac{e^{j\omega n} - e^{-j\omega n}}{2j} \right) \right] \\
 &= \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} a^n \left( \frac{e^{j\omega n} - e^{-j\omega n}}{2j} \right) z^{-n} = \frac{1}{2j} \left[ \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} (ae^{j\omega} z^{-1})^n - \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} (ae^{-j\omega} z^{-1})^n \right] \\
 &= \frac{1}{2j} \left( \frac{1}{1 - ae^{j\omega} z^{-1}} - \frac{1}{1 - ae^{-j\omega} z^{-1}} \right) = \frac{1}{2j} \left( \frac{z}{z - ae^{j\omega}} - \frac{z}{z - ae^{-j\omega}} \right) \\
 &= \frac{1}{2j} \left[ \frac{z(z - ae^{-j\omega} - z + ae^{j\omega})}{(z - ae^{j\omega})(z - ae^{-j\omega})} \right] = \frac{1}{2j} \left[ \frac{za(e^{j\omega} - e^{-j\omega})}{z^2 - 2za \cos \omega + a^2} \right] \\
 &= \frac{za \sin \omega}{z^2 - 2za \cos \omega + a^2}
 \end{aligned}$$

(c) Given

$$x(n) = a^n \cos \frac{n\pi}{2} = a^n \frac{e^{j(n\pi/2)} + e^{-j(n\pi/2)}}{2} u(n)$$

$$\begin{aligned}
 \therefore Z[x(n)] &= Z \left( a^n \cos \frac{n\pi}{2} \right) = Z \left[ a^n \left[ \frac{e^{j(n\pi/2)} + e^{-j(n\pi/2)}}{2} \right] u(n) \right] \\
 &= \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} a^n \left[ \frac{e^{j(n\pi/2)} + e^{-j(n\pi/2)}}{2} \right] z^{-n} \\
 &= \frac{1}{2} \left\{ \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} [ae^{j(\pi/2)} z^{-1}]^n + \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} [ae^{-j(\pi/2)} z^{-1}]^n \right\}
 \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
 &= \frac{1}{2} \left[ \frac{1}{1 - ae^{(j\pi/2)} z^{-1}} + \frac{1}{1 - ae^{(-j\pi/2)} z^{-1}} \right] = \frac{1}{2} \left( \frac{z}{z - ae^{j\pi/2}} + \frac{z}{z - ae^{-j\pi/2}} \right) \\
 &= \frac{1}{2} \frac{z(z - ae^{-j\pi/2} + z - ae^{j\pi/2})}{z^2 - za(e^{j\pi/2} + e^{-j\pi/2}) + a^2} = \frac{1}{2} \frac{z\{2z - 2a[(e^{j\pi/2} + e^{-j\pi/2})/2]\}}{z^2 - 2za[(e^{j\pi/2} + e^{-j\pi/2})/2] + a^2} \\
 &= \frac{z[z - a \cos(\pi/2)]}{z^2 - 2az \cos(\pi/2) + a^2} = \frac{z^2}{z^2 + a^2}
 \end{aligned}$$

(d) Given

$$x(n) = a^{-n} u(-n - 1)$$

$$\begin{aligned}
 Z[x(n)] = X(z) = Z[a^{-n} u(-n - 1)] &= \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} a^{-n} u(-n - 1) z^{-n} \\
 &= \sum_{n=-\infty}^{-1} a^{-n} z^{-n} = \sum_{n=-\infty}^{-1} (az)^{-n} = \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} (az)^n \\
 &= \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} (az)^n - 1 = \frac{1}{1 - az} - 1 = \frac{az}{1 - az} = \frac{z}{(1/a) - z} = -\frac{z}{z - (1/a)}
 \end{aligned}$$

i.e.

$$Z[a^{-n} u(-n - 1)] = -\frac{z}{z - (1/a)}$$

(e) Given

$$x(n) = u(-n)$$

$$\begin{aligned}
 Z[x(n)] = X(z) = Z[u(-n)] &= \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} u(-n) z^{-n} \\
 &= \sum_{n=-\infty}^0 1 z^{-n} = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} z^n = \frac{1}{1 - z} \quad \text{or} \quad -\frac{1}{z - 1} \\
 \text{i.e.} \quad Z[u(-n)] &= \frac{1}{1 - z}
 \end{aligned}$$

(f) Given

$$x(n) = \frac{b^n}{n!} \quad \text{for } n \geq 0$$

From the definition of Z-transform of  $x(n)$ , we can write

$$X(z) = \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} x(n) z^{-n} = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \frac{b^n}{n!} z^{-n} = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \frac{(bz^{-1})^n}{n!}$$

We know that

$$e^x = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \frac{x^n}{n!}$$

$$\therefore X(z) = e^{bz^{-1}}$$

i.e.  $Z\left(\frac{b^n}{n!}\right)$  for  $n \geq 0$  is  $e^{bz^{-1}}$

(g) Given  $x(n) = \begin{cases} 2, 1, 3, 5, 0, 7 \\ \uparrow \end{cases}$

We have unilateral Z-transform

$$X(z) = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} x(n) z^{-n}$$

The given sequence  $x(n)$  exists for both positive and negative values of  $n$ . But unilateral Z-transform is defined only for non-negative values of  $n$ .

Unilateral Z-transform is:

$$X(z) = 3 + 5z^{-1} + 7z^{-3}$$

We have bilateral Z-transform:

$$X(z) = \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} x(n) z^{-n}$$

Bilateral Z-transform is:

$$X(z) = 2z^2 + z + 3 + 5z^{-1} + 7z^{-3}$$

(h) Given  $x(n) = u(-n+1)$

From the definition of Z-transform, we have

$$\begin{aligned} X(z) &= Z[u(-n+1)] = \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} u(-n+1) z^{-n} = \sum_{n=-\infty}^1 z^{-n} = \sum_{n=-1}^{\infty} z^n = z^n \Big|_{n=-1} + \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} z^n \\ &= z^{-1} + \frac{1}{1-z} = \frac{z^{-1}}{1-z} = -\frac{1}{z(z-1)}; \text{ ROC; } 0 < |z| < 1 \end{aligned}$$

(i) Given  $x(n) = u(-n-2)$

From the definition of Z-transform, we have

$$\begin{aligned} Z[u(-n-2)] &= \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} u(-n-2) z^{-n} = \sum_{n=-\infty}^{-2} z^{-n} = \sum_{n=2}^{\infty} z^n \\ &= \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} z^n - \sum_{n=0}^1 z^n = \frac{1}{1-z} - 1 - z = \frac{z^2}{1-z}; \text{ ROC; } |z| < 1 \end{aligned}$$

(j) Given

$$x(n) = 2^n u(n-2)$$

$$\begin{aligned} X(z) = Z[x(n)] &= \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} 2^n u(n-2) z^{-n} = \sum_{n=2}^{\infty} (2z^{-1})^n = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} (2z^{-1})^n - \sum_{n=0}^1 (2z^{-1})^n \\ &= \frac{1}{1-2z^{-1}} - (2z^{-1})^0 - (2z^{-1})^1 = \frac{z}{z-2} - 1 - \frac{2}{z} = \frac{4}{z(z-2)} \end{aligned}$$

**EXAMPLE 10.19** Consider the sequence

$$x(n) = \begin{cases} a^n & 0 \leq n \leq N-1, a < 0 \\ 0 & \text{otherwise} \end{cases}$$

Find  $X(z)$ .

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Solution: } Z[x(n)] = X(z) &= \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} x(n) z^{-n} = \sum_{n=0}^{N-1} a^n z^{-n} = \sum_{n=0}^{N-1} (az^{-1})^n \\ &= \frac{1 - (az^{-1})^N}{1 - az^{-1}} = \frac{1 - (a/z)^N}{1 - (a/z)} = \frac{(z^N - a^N)/z^N}{(z-a)/z} = \frac{z^N - a^N}{z^{N-1}(z-a)} \\ \therefore X(z) &= \frac{1}{z^{N-1}} \frac{z^N - a^N}{z - a} \end{aligned}$$

**EXAMPLE 10.20** For the given signal as under:

- (a) Determine the parameter values for which Z-transform will exist.
- (b) Find the Z-transform.
- (c) Plot the ROC.

$$x(n) = -b^n u(-n-1) + (0.5)^n u(n)$$

$$\text{Solution: Given } x(n) = -b^n u(-n-1) + (0.5)^n u(n)$$

$$\begin{aligned} Z[x(n)] = X(z) &= Z[-b^n u(-n-1) + (0.5)^n u(n)] \\ &= \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} [-b^n u(-n-1) + (0.5)^n u(n)] z^{-n} \\ &= \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} -b^n u(-n-1) z^{-n} + \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} (0.5)^n u(n) z^{-n} \\ &= \sum_{n=-\infty}^{-1} -b^n z^{-n} + \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} (0.5)^n z^{-n} \\ &= -\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} b^{-n} z^n + \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} (0.5z^{-1})^n = -\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} (b^{-1}z)^n + \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} (0.5z^{-1})^n \end{aligned}$$

The first summation converges for  $b^{-1}z < 1$ , i.e. for  $|z| < b$  and the second summation converges for  $0.5z^{-1} < 1$ , i.e. for  $|z| > 0.5$ .

$$\begin{aligned}\therefore X(z) &= - \left[ \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} (b^{-1}z)^n - 1 \right] + \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} (0.5z^{-1})^n \\ &= 1 - \frac{1}{1 - b^{-1}z} + \frac{1}{1 - 0.5z^{-1}} \\ &= -\frac{b^{-1}z}{1 - b^{-1}z} + \frac{1}{1 - 0.5z^{-1}} \\ &= -\frac{1}{(1/b^{-1}z) - 1} + \frac{1}{1 - 0.5z^{-1}} \\ &= -\frac{z}{b - z} + \frac{1}{1 - 0.5z^{-1}} \\ &= \frac{z}{z - b} + \frac{z}{z - 0.5}\end{aligned}$$

So the ROC or the parameter values for which the Z-transform will exist is  $0.5 < |z| < b$ . The ROC is plotted in Figure 10.9.

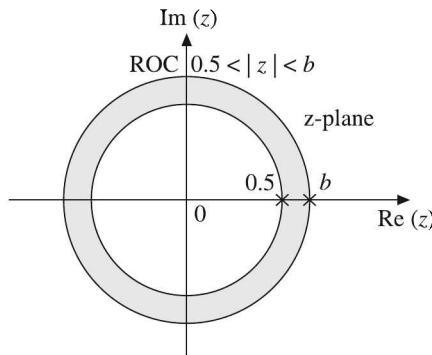


Figure 10.9 Pole-zero plot and ROC for Example 10.20.

**EXAMPLE 10.21** For the sequence

$$x(n) = 2^n, n < 0$$

$$= \left(\frac{1}{2}\right)^n, n = 0, 2, 4, \dots$$

$$= \left(\frac{1}{3}\right)^n, n = 1, 3, 5, \dots$$

Prove that the absolute convergence region is given by  $(1/2) < z < 2$ .

**Solution:** For the given  $x(n)$ ,

$$\begin{aligned} X(z) = Z[x(n)] &= \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} x(n) z^{-n} \\ &= \sum_{n=-\infty}^{-1} 2^n z^{-n} + \sum_{n=0,2,4,\dots}^{\infty} \left(\frac{1}{2}\right)^n z^{-n} + \sum_{n=1,3,5,\dots}^{\infty} \left(\frac{1}{3}\right)^n z^{-n} \\ &= \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} (2^{-1}z)^n + \sum_{n=0,2,4,\dots}^{\infty} \left(\frac{1}{2}z^{-1}\right)^n + \sum_{n=1,3,5,\dots}^{\infty} \left(\frac{1}{3}z^{-1}\right)^n \end{aligned}$$

In the above expression,

The first series converges for  $|2^{-1}z| < 1$  i.e. for  $|z| < 2$

The second series converges for  $\left|\frac{1}{2}z^{-1}\right| < 1$ , i.e. for  $|z| > \frac{1}{2}$

The third series converges for  $\left|\frac{1}{3}z^{-1}\right| < 1$  i.e. for  $|z| > \frac{1}{3}$

The absolute convergence region for  $X(z)$  is the intersection of the above three convergence regions.

So the ROC is given by  $|1/2| < |z| < 2$

$$\begin{aligned} \therefore X(z) &= \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} (2^{-1}z)^n + \sum_{n=0,2,4}^{\infty} \left(\frac{1}{2}z^{-1}\right)^n + \sum_{n=1,3,5}^{\infty} \left(\frac{1}{3}z^{-1}\right)^n \\ &= \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} (2^{-1}z)^n - 1 + \sum_{n=0,1,2,\dots}^{\infty} \left[ \left(\frac{1}{2}z^{-1}\right)^2 \right]^n + \left(\frac{1}{3}z^{-1}\right) \sum_{n=0,1,2,\dots}^{\infty} \left[ \left(\frac{1}{3}z^{-1}\right)^2 \right]^n \\ &= \frac{1}{1 - 2^{-1}z} - 1 + \sum_{n=0,1,2,\dots}^{\infty} \left[ \left(\frac{1}{2}z^{-1}\right)^2 \right]^n + \left(\frac{1}{3}z^{-1}\right) \sum_{n=0,1,2,\dots}^{\infty} \left[ \left(\frac{1}{3}z^{-1}\right)^2 \right]^n \\ &= -\frac{z}{z-2} + \frac{1}{1 - [(1/2)z^{-1}]^2} + \frac{1}{3}z^{-1} \frac{1}{1 - [(1/3)z^{-1}]^2} \\ &= -\frac{z}{z-2} + \frac{z^2}{z^2 - (1/4)} + \frac{1}{3} \frac{z}{z^2 - (1/3)} \end{aligned}$$

## 10.4 Z-TRANSFORM AND ROC OF FINITE DURATION SEQUENCES

Finite duration sequences are sequences having a finite number of samples. Finite duration sequences may be right hand sequences or left hand sequences or two-sided sequences.

### Right hand sequence

A right hand sequence is one for which  $x(n) = 0$  for  $n < n_0$ , where  $n_0$  is positive or negative but finite. If  $n_0 \geq 0$ , the resulting sequence is a causal or a positive time sequence. For a causal or a positive time sequence, the ROC is entire z-plane except at  $z = 0$ .

**EXAMPLE 10.22** Find the ROC and Z-transform of the causal sequence

$$x(n) = \{1, 0, -2, 3, 5, 4\}$$

↑

**Solution:** The given sequence values are:

$$x(0) = 1, x(1) = 0, x(2) = -2, x(3) = 3, x(4) = 5 \text{ and } x(5) = 4.$$

We know that

$$X(z) = \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} x(n) z^{-n}$$

For the given sample values,

$$X(z) = x(0) + x(1)z^{-1} + x(2)z^{-2} + x(3)z^{-3} + x(4)z^{-4} + x(5)z^{-5}$$

$$\therefore Z[x(n)] = X(z) = 1 - 2z^{-2} + 3z^{-3} + 5z^{-4} + 4z^{-5}$$

The  $X(z)$  converges for all values of  $z$  except at  $z = 0$ .

**EXAMPLE 10.23** A finite sequence  $x(n)$  is defined as  $x(n) = \{5, 3, -2, 0, 4, -3\}$ . Find  $X(z)$  and its ROC.

**Solution:** Given  $x(n) = \{5, 3, -2, 0, 4, -3\}$

$$\therefore x(n) = 5\delta(n) + 3\delta(n-1) - 2\delta(n-2) + 4\delta(n-4) - 3\delta(n-5)$$

The given sequence is a right-sided sequence. So the ROC is entire z-plane except at  $z = 0$ .

Taking Z-transform on both sides of the above equation, we have

$$\therefore X(z) = 5 + 3z^{-1} - 2z^{-2} + 4z^{-4} - 3z^{-5}$$

ROC: Entire z-plane except at  $z = 0$ .

### Left hand sequence

A left hand sequence is one for which  $x(n) = 0$  for  $n \geq n_0$  where  $n_0$  is positive or negative but finite. If  $n_0 \leq 0$ , the resulting sequence is anticausal sequence. For such type of sequence, the ROC is entire z-plane except at  $z = \infty$ .

**EXAMPLE 10.24** Find the Z-transform and ROC of the anticausal sequence.

$$x(n) = \{4, 2, 3, -1, -2, 1\}$$

↑

**Solution:** The given sequence values are:

$$x(-5) = 4, x(-4) = 2, x(-3) = 3, x(-2) = -1, x(-1) = -2, x(0) = 1$$

We know that

$$X(z) = \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} x(n) z^{-n}$$

For the given sample values,  $X(z)$  is:

$$\begin{aligned} X(z) &= x(-5) z^5 + x(-4) z^4 + x(-3) z^3 + x(-2) z^2 + x(-1) z + x(0) \\ \therefore Z[x(n)] &= X(z) = 4z^5 + 2z^4 + 3z^3 - z^2 - 2z + 1 \end{aligned}$$

The  $X(z)$  converges for all values of  $z$  except at  $z = \infty$ .

### **Two-sided sequence**

A sequence that has finite duration on both the left and right sides is known as a two-sided sequence. For a two-sided sequence, the ROC is entire z-plane except at  $z = 0$  and  $z = \infty$ .

**EXAMPLE 10.25** Find the Z-transform and ROC of the sequence

$$x(n) = \{2, 1, -3, 0, 4, 3, 2, 1, 5\}$$

↑

**Solution:** The given sequence values are:

$$x(-4) = 2, x(-3) = 1, x(-2) = -3, x(-1) = 0, x(0) = 4, x(1) = 3, x(2) = 2, x(3) = 1, x(4) = 5$$

We know that

$$X(z) = \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} x(n) z^{-n}$$

For the given sample values,

$$\begin{aligned} X(z) &= x(-4)z^4 + x(-3)z^3 + x(-2)z^2 + x(-1)z + x(0) + x(1)z^{-1} + x(2)z^{-2} + x(3)z^{-3} + x(4)z^{-4} \\ &= 2z^4 + z^3 - 3z^2 + 4 + 3z^{-1} + 2z^{-2} + z^{-3} + 5z^{-4} \end{aligned}$$

The ROC is entire z-plane except at  $z = 0$  and  $z = \infty$ .

**EXAMPLE 10.26** Find the Z-transform of the following sequences:

$$(a) u(n) - u(n-4) \quad (b) u(-n) - u(-n-3) \quad (c) u(2-n) - u(-2-n)$$

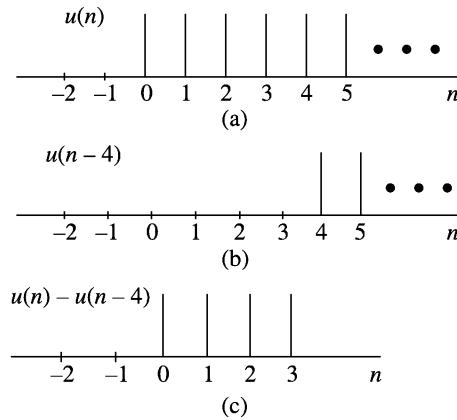
**Solution:**

(a) The given sequence is:

$$x(n) = u(n) - u(n-4)$$

From Figure 10.10, we notice that the sequence values are:

$$\begin{aligned} x(n) &= 1, \quad \text{for } 0 \leq n \leq 3 \\ &= 0, \quad \text{otherwise} \end{aligned}$$



**Figure 10.10** Sequences (a)  $u(n)$ , (b)  $u(n-4)$  and (c)  $u(n) - u(n-4)$ .

We know that

$$X(z) = \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} x(n) z^{-n}$$

Substituting the sequence values, we get

$$X(z) = 1 + z^{-1} + z^{-2} + z^{-3}$$

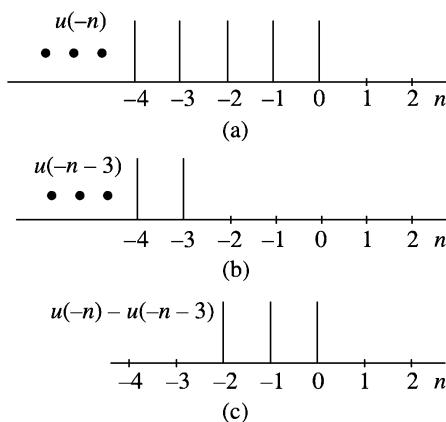
The ROC is entire  $z$ -plane except at  $z = 0$ .

(b) The given sequence is:

$$x(n) = u(-n) - u(-n-3)$$

From Figure 10.11, we notice that the sequence values are:

$$\begin{aligned} x(n) &= 1, && \text{for } -2 \leq n \leq 0 \\ &= 0, && \text{otherwise} \end{aligned}$$



**Figure 10.11** Sequences (a)  $u(-n)$ , (b)  $u(-n-3)$ , and (c)  $u(-n) - u(-n-3)$ .

We know that

$$X(z) = \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} x(n)z^{-n}$$

Substituting the sequence values, we get

$$X(z) = 1 + z + z^2$$

The ROC is entire z-plane except at  $z = \infty$ .

- (c) The given sequence is:

$$x(n) = u(2 - n) - u(-2 - n)$$

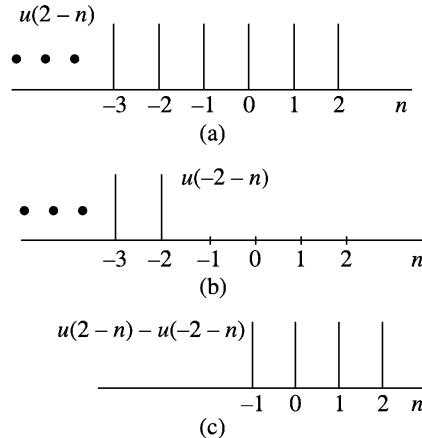
From Figure 10.12, we notice that the sequence values are:

$$\begin{aligned} x(n) &= 1, \quad \text{for } -1 \leq n \leq 2 \\ &= 0, \quad \text{otherwise} \end{aligned}$$

Substituting the sequence values, we get

$$X(z) = z + 1 + z^{-1} + z^{-2}$$

The ROC is entire z-plane except at  $z = 0$  and  $z = \infty$ .



**Figure 10.12** Sequences (a)  $u(2 - n)$ , (b)  $u(-2 - n)$ , and (c)  $u(2 - n) - u(-2 - n)$ .

## 10.5 PROPERTIES OF ROC

1. The ROC is a ring or disk in the z-plane centred at the origin.
2. The ROC cannot contain any poles.
3. If  $x(n)$  is an infinite duration causal sequence, the ROC is  $|z| > \alpha$ , i.e. it is the exterior of a circle of radius  $\alpha$ .  
If  $x(n)$  is a finite duration causal sequence (right-sided sequence), the ROC is entire z-plane except at  $z = 0$ .
4. If  $x(n)$  is an infinite duration anticausal sequence, the ROC is  $|z| < \beta$ , i.e. it is the interior of a circle of radius  $\beta$ .  
If  $x(n)$  is a finite duration anticausal sequence (left-sided sequence), the ROC is entire z-plane except at  $z = \infty$ .

5. If  $x(n)$  is a finite duration two-sided sequence, the ROC is entire z-plane except at  $z = 0$  and  $z = \infty$ .
6. If  $x(n)$  is an infinite duration, two-sided sequence, the ROC consists of a ring in the z-plane ( $\text{ROC}; \alpha < |z| < \beta$ ) bounded on the interior and exterior by a pole, not containing any poles.
7. The ROC of an LTI stable system contains the unit circle.
8. The ROC must be a connected region. If  $X(z)$  is rational, then its ROC is bounded by poles or extends up to infinity.
9.  $x(n) = \delta(n)$  is the only signal whose ROC is entire z-plane.

## 10.6 PROPERTIES OF Z-TRANSFORM

The Z-transform has several properties that can be used in the study of discrete-time signals and systems. They can be used to find the closed form expression for the Z-transform of a given sequence. Many of the properties are analogous to those of the DTFT. They make the Z-transform a powerful tool for the analysis and design of discrete-time LTI systems. In general, both one-sided and two-sided Z-transforms have almost same properties.

### 10.6.1 Linearity Property

The linearity property of Z-transform states that, the Z-transform of a weighted sum of two signals is equal to the weighted sum of individual Z-transforms. That is, the linearity property states that

$$\text{If } x_1(n) \xrightarrow{\text{ZT}} X_1(z), \text{ with ROC} = R_1$$

$$\text{and } x_2(n) \xrightarrow{\text{ZT}} X_2(z), \text{ with ROC} = R_2$$

$$\text{Then } ax_1(n) + bx_2(n) \xrightarrow{\text{ZT}} aX_1(z) + bX_2(z), \text{ with ROC} = R_1 \cap R_2$$

$$\text{Proof: We know that } Z[x(n)] = X(z) = \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} x(n) z^{-n}$$

$$\begin{aligned} \therefore Z[ax_1(n) + bx_2(n)] &= \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} [ax_1(n) + bx_2(n)] z^{-n} \\ &= \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} ax_1(n) z^{-n} + \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} bx_2(n) z^{-n} \\ &= a \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} x_1(n) z^{-n} + b \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} x_2(n) z^{-n} \\ &= aX_1(z) + bX_2(z); \text{ ROC; } R_1 \cap R_2 \end{aligned}$$

$$\boxed{ax_1(n) + bx_2(n) \xrightarrow{\text{ZT}} aX_1(z) + bX_2(z)}$$

The ROC for the Z-transform of a sum of sequences is equal to the intersection of the ROCs of the individual transforms.

### 10.6.2 Time Shifting Property

The time shifting property of Z-transform states that

If  $x(n) \xrightarrow{\text{ZT}} X(z)$ , with zero initial conditions with ROC = R

Then  $x(n - m) \xrightarrow{\text{ZT}} z^{-m} X(z)$

with ROC = R except for the possible addition or deletion of the origin or infinity.

*Proof:* We know that

$$\begin{aligned} Z[x(n)] &= X(z) = \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} x(n) z^{-n} \\ \therefore Z[x(n-m)] &= \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} x(n-m) z^{-n} \end{aligned}$$

Let  $n - m = p$  in the summation, then  $n = m + p$ .

$$\begin{aligned} Z[x(n-m)] &= \sum_{p=-\infty}^{\infty} x(p) z^{-(m+p)} \\ \therefore &= z^{-m} \sum_{p=-\infty}^{\infty} x(p) z^{-p} \\ &= z^{-m} X(z) \end{aligned}$$

$$x(n-m) \xrightarrow{\text{ZT}} z^{-m} X(z)$$

Similarly

$$x(n+m) \xrightarrow{\text{ZT}} z^m X(z)$$

If the initial conditions are not neglected, we have

(a) Time delay  $Z[x(n-m)] = z^{-m} X(z) + z^{-m} \sum_{k=1}^m x(-k) z^k$

(b) Time advance  $Z[x(n+m)] = z^m X(z) - z^m \sum_{k=0}^{m-1} x(k) z^{-k}$

*Proof:*

$$\begin{aligned} (a) \quad Z[x(n-m)] &= \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} x(n-m) z^{-n} = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} x(n-m) z^{-(n-m)} z^{-m} \\ &= z^{-m} \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} x(n-m) z^{-(n-m)} \end{aligned}$$

Let  $n - m = p$  in the summation, then

$$\begin{aligned} Z[x(n-m)] &= z^{-m} \sum_{p=-m}^{\infty} x(p) z^{-p} \\ &= z^{-m} \left[ \sum_{p=0}^{\infty} x(p) z^{-p} + \sum_{p=-m}^{-1} x(p) z^{-p} \right] \end{aligned}$$

Substituting  $p = -k$  in the second summation, we obtain

$$\begin{aligned} Z[x(n-m)] &= z^{-m} X(z) + z^{-m} \sum_{k=1}^m x(-k) z^k \\ \therefore Z[x(n-m)] &= z^{-m} X(z) + z^{-(m-1)} x(-1) + z^{-(m-2)} x(-2) + z^{-(m-3)} x(-3) + \dots \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned} (b) \quad Z[x(n+m)] &= \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} x(n+m) z^{-n} = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} x(n+m) z^{-(n+m)} z^m \\ &= z^m \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} x(n+m) z^{-(n+m)} \end{aligned}$$

Let  $p = n + m$ , then

$$\begin{aligned} Z[x(n+m)] &= z^m \sum_{p=m}^{\infty} x(p) z^{-p} \\ &= \left[ z^m \sum_{p=0}^{\infty} x(p) z^{-p} - \sum_{p=0}^{m-1} x(p) z^{-p} \right] \\ &= z^m X(z) - z^m \sum_{p=0}^{m-1} x(p) z^{-p} \end{aligned}$$

$$\text{i.e. } Z[x(n+m)] = z^m X(z) - z^m x(0) - z^{m-1} x(1) - z^{m-2} x(2)$$

This time shifting property is very useful in finding the output  $y(n)$  of a system described in difference equation for an input  $x(n)$ .

$$\begin{aligned} Z[x(n+1)] &= zX(z) - zx(0) \\ Z[x(n+2)] &= z^2 X(z) - z^2 x(0) - zx(1) \\ Z[x(n+3)] &= z^3 X(z) - z^3 x(0) - z^2 x(1) - zx(2) \\ Z[x(n-1)] &= z^{-1} X(z) + x(-1) \\ Z[x(n-2)] &= z^{-2} X(z) + z^{-1} x(-1) + x(-2) \\ Z[x(n-3)] &= z^{-3} X(z) + z^{-2} x(-1) + z^{-1} x(-2) + x(-3) \end{aligned}$$

### 10.6.3 Multiplication by an Exponential Sequence Property

The multiplication by an exponential sequence property of Z-transform states that

If  $x(n) \xrightarrow{\text{ZT}} X(z)$  with ROC = R

Then  $a^n x(n) \xrightarrow{\text{ZT}} X\left(\frac{z}{a}\right)$  with ROC =  $|a| R$

where  $a$  is a complex number.

*Proof:* We know that

$$\begin{aligned} Z[x(n)] = X(z) &= \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} x(n) z^{-n} \\ \therefore Z[a^n x(n)] &= \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} a^n x(n) z^{-n} \\ &= \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} x(n) \left(\frac{z}{a}\right)^{-n} \\ &= X\left(\frac{z}{a}\right) \end{aligned}$$

$a^n x(n) \xrightarrow{\text{ZT}} X\left(\frac{z}{a}\right)$

**Note:**  $e^{j\omega n} x(n) \xrightarrow{\text{ZT}} X\left(\frac{z}{e^{j\omega}}\right) = X(e^{-j\omega} z)$

$$e^{-j\omega n} x(n) \xrightarrow{\text{ZT}} X\left(\frac{z}{e^{-j\omega}}\right) = X(e^{j\omega} z)$$

### 10.6.4 Time Reversal Property

The time reversal property of Z-transform states that

If  $x(n) \xrightarrow{\text{ZT}} X(z)$ , with ROC = R

Then  $x(-n) \xrightarrow{\text{ZT}} X\left(\frac{1}{z}\right)$ , with ROC =  $\frac{1}{R}$

*Proof:* We know that

$$Z[x(n)] = X(z) = \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} x(n) z^{-n}$$

$$\therefore Z[x(-n)] = \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} x(-n) z^{-n}$$

Let  $p = -n$  in the above summation, then

$$\begin{aligned} Z[x(-n)] &= \sum_{p=-\infty}^{\infty} x(p) z^p \\ Z[x(-n)] &= \sum_{p=-\infty}^{\infty} x(p) (z^{-1})^{-p} \\ &= X(z^{-1}) = X\left(\frac{1}{z}\right) \end{aligned}$$

$$\boxed{x(-n) \xrightarrow{\text{ZT}} X(z^{-1})}$$

### 10.6.5 Time Expansion Property

The time expansion property of Z-transform states that

If  $x(n) \xrightarrow{\text{ZT}} X(z)$ , with ROC =  $R$

Then  $x_k(n) \xrightarrow{\text{ZT}} X(z^k)$ , with ROC =  $R^{1/k}$

where  $x_k(n) = x\left(\frac{n}{k}\right)$ , if  $n$  is an integer multiple of  $k$   
 $= 0$ , otherwise

$x_k(n)$  has  $k - 1$  zeros inserted between successive values of the original signal.

*Proof:* We know that

$$\begin{aligned} Z[x(n)] &= X(z) = \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} x(n) z^{-n} \\ \therefore Z[x_k(n)] &= \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} x_k(n) z^{-n} = \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} x\left(\frac{n}{k}\right) z^{-n} \end{aligned}$$

Let

$$\frac{n}{k} = p$$

$$\begin{aligned} Z[x_k(n)] &= \sum_{p=-\infty}^{\infty} x(p) z^{-pk} \\ &= \sum_{p=-\infty}^{\infty} x(p) (z^k)^{-p} \\ &= X(z^k) \end{aligned}$$

$$\boxed{x\left(\frac{n}{k}\right) \xleftrightarrow{\text{ZT}} X(z^k)}$$

### 10.6.6 Multiplication by $n$ or Differentiation in z-domain Property

The multiplication by  $n$  or differentiation in  $z$ -domain property of Z-transform states that

If  $x(n) \xleftrightarrow{\text{ZT}} X(z)$ , with ROC =  $R$

Then  $nx(n) \xleftrightarrow{\text{ZT}} -z \frac{d}{dz} X(z)$ , with ROC =  $R$

*Proof:* We know that

$$Z[x(n)] = X(z) = \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} x(n) z^{-n}$$

Differentiating both sides with respect to  $z$ , we get

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{d}{dz} X(z) &= \frac{d}{dz} \left[ \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} x(n) z^{-n} \right] = \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} x(n) \frac{d}{dz} (z^{-n}) \\ &= \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} x(n) (-n) z^{-n-1} \\ &= -z^{-1} \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} [nx(n)] z^{-n} \\ &= -z^{-1} Z[nx(n)] \end{aligned}$$

$$\therefore Z[nx(n)] = -z \frac{d}{dz} X(z)$$

$$\boxed{nx(n) \xleftrightarrow{\text{ZT}} -z \frac{d}{dz} X(z)}$$

In the same way,

$$Z[n^k x(n)] = (-1)^k z^k \frac{d^k X(z)}{dz^k}$$

### 10.6.7 Conjugation Property

The conjugation property of Z-transform states that

If  $x(n) \xleftrightarrow{\text{ZT}} X(z)$ , with ROC =  $R$

Then  $x^*(n) \xleftrightarrow{\text{ZT}} X^*(z^*)$ , with ROC =  $R$

*Proof:* We have

$$Z[x(n)] = X(z) = \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} x(n) z^{-n}$$

$$\therefore Z[x^*(n)] = \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} x^*(n) z^{-n}$$

$$= \left[ \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} x(n) (z^*)^{-n} \right]^*$$

$$= [X(z^*)]^* = X^*(z^*)$$

$$x^*(n) \xleftrightarrow{ZT} X^*(z^*)$$

### 10.6.8 Convolution Property

The convolution property of Z-transform states that the Z-transform of the convolution of two signals is equal to the multiplication of their Z-transforms, i.e.

If  $x_1(n) \xleftrightarrow{ZT} X_1(z)$ , with ROC =  $R_1$

and  $x_2(n) \xleftrightarrow{ZT} X_2(z)$  with ROC =  $R_2$

Then  $x_1(n) * x_2(n) \xleftrightarrow{ZT} X_1(z) X_2(z)$ , with ROC =  $R_1 \cap R_2$

*Proof:* We know that

$$x_1(n) * x_2(n) = \sum_{k=-\infty}^{\infty} x_1(k) x_2(n-k)$$

Let  $x(n) = x_1(n) * x_2(n)$

We have

$$Z[x(n)] = X(z) = \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} x(n) z^{-n}$$

$$\therefore Z[x_1(n) * x_2(n)] = \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} [x_1(n) * x_2(n)] z^{-n}$$

$$= \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} \left[ \sum_{k=-\infty}^{\infty} x_1(k) x_2(n-k) \right] z^{-n}$$

$$= \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} \sum_{k=-\infty}^{\infty} x_1(k) x_2(n-k) z^{-(n-k)} z^{-k}$$

Interchanging the order of summations,

$$X(z) = \sum_{k=-\infty}^{\infty} x_1(k) z^{-k} \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} x_2(n-k) z^{-(n-k)}$$

Replacing  $(n - k)$  by  $p$  in the second summation, we get

$$\begin{aligned} X(z) &= \sum_{k=-\infty}^{\infty} x_1(k) z^{-k} \sum_{p=-\infty}^{\infty} x_2(p) z^{-p} \\ &= X_1(z) X_2(z) \end{aligned}$$

$x_1(n) * x_2(n) \xrightarrow{\text{ZT}} X_1(z) X_2(z); \text{ ROC: } R_1 \cap R_2$

### 10.6.9 The Multiplication Property or Complex Convolution Property

The multiplication property or complex convolution property of Z-transform states that

If  $x_1(n) \xrightarrow{\text{ZT}} X_1(z)$  and  $x_2(n) \xrightarrow{\text{ZT}} X_2(z)$

Then  $x_1(n) x_2(n) \xrightarrow{\text{ZT}} \frac{1}{2\pi j} \oint_c X_1(v) X_2\left(\frac{z}{v}\right) v^{-1} dv$

**Proof:** From the definition of Z-transform, we have

$$Z[x_1(n) x_2(n)] = \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} [x_1(n) x_2(n)] z^{-n}$$

But from the inverse Z-transform, we have

$$x(n) = \frac{1}{2\pi j} \oint_c X(z) z^{n-1} dz$$

Changing the complex variable  $z$  to  $v$  and substituting back, we get

$$\begin{aligned} Z[x_1(n) x_2(n)] &= \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} \left[ \frac{1}{2\pi j} \oint_c X_1(v) v^{n-1} dv \right] x_2(n) z^{-n} \\ &= \frac{1}{2\pi j} \oint_c X_1(v) \left[ \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} x_2(n) (v^{-1} z)^{-n} \right] v^{-1} dv \\ &= \frac{1}{2\pi j} \oint_c X_1(v) X_2\left(\frac{z}{v}\right) v^{-1} dv \end{aligned}$$

$x_1(n) x_2(n) \xrightarrow{\text{ZT}} \frac{1}{2\pi j} \oint_c X_1(v) X_2\left(\frac{z}{v}\right) v^{-1} dv$

### 10.6.10 Correlation Property

The correlation property of Z-transform states that

$$\text{If } x_1(n) \xrightarrow{\text{ZT}} X_1(z) \quad \text{and} \quad x_2(n) \xrightarrow{\text{ZT}} X_2(z)$$

$$\text{Then } R_{12}(n) = x_1(n) \otimes x_2(n) \xrightarrow{\text{ZT}} X_1(z) X_2(z^{-1})$$

*Proof:* From the definition of the Z-transform, we have

$$Z[x_1(n) \otimes x_2(n)] = \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} [x_1(n) \otimes x_2(n)] z^{-n}$$

But from the correlation sum, we have

$$x_1(n) \otimes x_2(n) = \sum_{l=-\infty}^{\infty} x_1(l) x_2(l-n) \quad \text{or} \quad x_1(n) \otimes x_2(n) = \sum_{l=-\infty}^{\infty} x_1(l-n) x_2(l)$$

Substituting back, we get

$$Z[x_1(n) \otimes x_2(n)] = \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} \left[ \sum_{l=-\infty}^{\infty} x_1(l) x_2(l-n) \right] z^{-n}$$

Interchanging the order of summation, we have

$$Z[x_1(n) \otimes x_2(n)] = \sum_{l=-\infty}^{\infty} x_1(l) \left[ \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} x_2(l-n) z^{-n} \right]$$

Letting  $l - n = m$  in the second summation, we have  $n = l - m$ .

$$\begin{aligned} \therefore Z[x_1(n) \otimes x_2(n)] &= \sum_{l=-\infty}^{\infty} x_1(l) \left[ \sum_{m=\infty}^{\infty} x_2(m) z^{-(l-m)} \right] \\ &= \left[ \sum_{l=-\infty}^{\infty} x_1(l) z^{-l} \right] \left[ \sum_{m=-\infty}^{\infty} x_2(m) z^m \right] \\ &= \left[ \sum_{l=-\infty}^{\infty} x_1(l) z^{-l} \right] \left[ \sum_{m=-\infty}^{\infty} x_2(m) (z^{-1})^{-m} \right] \\ &= X_1(z) X_2(z^{-1}) \end{aligned}$$

$$R_{12}(n) = x_1(n) \otimes x_2(n) \xrightarrow{\text{ZT}} X_1(z) X_2(z^{-1})$$

### 10.6.11 Accumulation Property

The accumulation property of Z-transform states that

If

$$x(n) \xleftrightarrow{\text{ZT}} X(z)$$

Then

$$\sum_{k=-\infty}^n x(k) \xleftrightarrow{\text{ZT}} \frac{1}{1-z^{-1}} X(z)$$

*Proof:* From the definition of Z-transform, we have

$$Z \left[ \sum_{k=-\infty}^n x(k) \right] = \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} \sum_{k=-\infty}^n x(k) z^{-n}$$

Substituting  $n - k = r$  (or  $n = k + r$  or  $k = n - r$ ) at RHS, we get

$$\begin{aligned} Z \left[ \sum_{k=-\infty}^n x(k) \right] &= \sum_{k=-\infty-r}^{k=\infty-r} \sum_{r=n-(-\infty)}^{r=n-n} x(k) z^{-(k+r)} \\ &= \sum_{k=-\infty}^{\infty} \sum_{r=\infty}^0 x(k) z^{-k} z^{-r} = \left( \sum_{r=0}^{\infty} z^{-r} \right) \sum_{k=-\infty}^{\infty} x(k) z^{-k} \\ &= \left( \sum_{r=0}^{\infty} z^{-r} \right) X(z) = \frac{1}{1-z^{-1}} X(z) \end{aligned}$$

$$\sum_{k=-\infty}^n x(k) \xleftrightarrow{\text{ZT}} \frac{1}{1-z^{-1}} X(z)$$

### 10.6.12 Parseval's Theorem or Relation or Property

The Parseval's relation or theorem or property of Z-transform states that

If

$$x_1(n) \xleftrightarrow{\text{ZT}} X_1(z) \quad \text{and} \quad x_2(n) \xleftrightarrow{\text{ZT}} X_2(z)$$

Then

$\sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} x_1(n) x_2^*(n) = \frac{1}{2\pi j} \oint X_1(z) X_2^*[(z^*)^{-1}] z^{-1} dz$ 
for complex  $x_1(n)$  and  $x_2(n)$

*Proof:* Substituting the relation of the inverse Z-transform at LHS, we get

$$\begin{aligned} \text{LHS} &= \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} \left[ \frac{1}{2\pi j} \oint X_1(z) z^{n-1} dz \right] x_2^*(n) \\ &= \frac{1}{2\pi j} \oint X_1(z) \left[ \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} x_2^*(n) (z^{-1})^{-n} \right] z^{-1} dz \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
&= \frac{1}{2\pi j} \oint X_1(z) \left\{ \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} x_2(n) [(z^*)^{-1}]^{-n} \right\}^* z^{-1} dz \\
&= \frac{1}{2\pi j} \oint X_1(z) \left\{ X_2[(z^*)^{-1}] \right\}^* z^{-1} dz \\
&= \frac{1}{2\pi j} \oint X_1(z) X_2^*[(z^*)^{-1}] z^{-1} dz = \text{RHS}
\end{aligned}$$

$$\boxed{\sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} x_1(n) x_2^*(n) = \frac{1}{2\pi j} \oint X_1(z) X_2^*[(z^*)^{-1}] z^{-1} dz}$$

### 10.6.13 Initial Value Theorem

The initial value theorem of Z-transform states that, for a causal signal  $x(n)$

If  $x(n) \xleftrightarrow{\text{ZT}} X(z)$

Then  $\text{Lt}_{n \rightarrow 0} x(n) = x(0) = \text{Lt}_{z \rightarrow \infty} X(z)$

*Proof:* We know that for a causal signal

$$\begin{aligned}
Z[x(n)] = X(z) &= \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} x(n) z^{-n} = x(0) + x(1) z^{-1} + x(2) z^{-2} + \dots \\
&= x(0) + \frac{x(1)}{z} + \frac{x(2)}{z^2} + \dots
\end{aligned}$$

Taking the limit  $z \rightarrow \infty$  on both sides, we have

$$\begin{aligned}
\text{Lt}_{z \rightarrow \infty} X(z) &= \text{Lt}_{z \rightarrow \infty} \left[ x(0) + \frac{x(1)}{z} + \frac{x(2)}{z^2} + \frac{x(3)}{z^3} + \dots \right] = x(0) + 0 + 0 + \dots = x(0) \\
\therefore \text{Lt}_{n \rightarrow 0} x(n) &= x(0) = \text{Lt}_{z \rightarrow \infty} X(z)
\end{aligned}$$

$$\boxed{x(0) = \text{Lt}_{z \rightarrow \infty} X(z)}$$

This theorem helps us to find the initial value of  $x(n)$  from  $X(z)$  without taking its inverse Z-transform.

### 10.6.14 Final Value Theorem

The final value theorem of Z-transform states that, for a causal signal

If  $x(n) \xleftrightarrow{\text{ZT}} X(z)$

and if  $X(z)$  has no poles outside the unit circle, and it has no double or higher order poles on the unit circle centred at the origin of the z-plane, then

$$\text{Lt}_{n \rightarrow \infty} x(n) = x(\infty) = \text{Lt}_{z \rightarrow 1} (z - 1) X(z)$$

*Proof:* We know that for a causal signal

$$\begin{aligned} Z[x(n)] &= X(z) = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} x(n) z^{-n} \\ Z[x(n+1)] &= zX(z) - zx(0) = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} x(n+1) z^{-n} \\ \therefore Z[x(n+1)] - Z[x(n)] &= zX(z) - zx(0) - X(z) = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} x(n+1) z^{-n} - \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} x(n) z^{-n} \\ \text{i.e. } (z-1) X(z) - zx(0) &= \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} [x(n+1) - x(n)] z^{-n} \\ \text{i.e. } (z-1) X(z) - zx(0) &= [x(1) - x(0)] z^{-0} + [x(2) - x(1)] z^{-1} + [x(3) - x(2)] z^{-2} + \dots \end{aligned}$$

Taking limit  $z \rightarrow 1$  on both sides, we have

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Lt}_{z \rightarrow 1} (z-1) X(z) - x(0) &= [x(1) - x(0) + x(2) - x(1) + x(3) - x(2) + \dots + x(\infty) - x(\infty-1)] \\ &= x(\infty) - x(0) \\ \therefore x(\infty) &= \text{Lt}_{z \rightarrow 1} (z-1) X(z) \\ \text{or } x(\infty) &= \text{Lt}_{z \rightarrow 1} (1 - z^{-1}) X(z) \\ \boxed{x(\infty) = \text{Lt}_{z \rightarrow 1} (z-1) X(z)} \end{aligned}$$

This theorem enables us to find the steady-state value of  $x(n)$ , i.e.  $x(\infty)$  without taking the inverse Z-transform of  $X(z)$ .

Some common Z-transform pairs are given in Table B.7 (Appendix B). The properties of Z-transform are given in Table B.8 (Appendix B).

**EXAMPLE 10.27** Using properties of Z-transform, find the Z-transform of the following signals:

- |                      |                         |
|----------------------|-------------------------|
| (a) $x(n) = u(-n)$   | (b) $x(n) = u(-n+1)$    |
| (c) $x(n) = u(-n-2)$ | (d) $x(n) = 2^n u(n-2)$ |

**Solution:**

- (a) Given  $x(n) = u(-n)$

We know that  $Z[u(n)] = \frac{z}{z-1} = \frac{1}{1-z^{-1}}$ ; ROC;  $|z| > 1$

Using the time reversal property,

$$Z[u(-n)] = \frac{z}{z-1} \Big|_{z=(1/z)} = \frac{1/z}{(1/z)-1} = \frac{1}{1-z} = -\frac{1}{z-1}; \text{ ROC; } |z| < 1$$

(b) Given  $x(n) = u(-n+1) = u[-(n-1)]$

$$\begin{aligned} \therefore Z[x(n)] &= X(z) = Z[u(-n+1)] = Z\{u[-(n-1)]\} \\ &= z^{-1} Z[u(-n)] = z^{-1} \frac{1}{1-z} = -\frac{1}{z(z-1)} \end{aligned}$$

(c) Given  $x(n) = u(-n-2) = u[-(n+2)]$

$$\begin{aligned} \therefore Z[x(n)] &= X(z) = Z[u(-n-2)] = Z\{u[-(n+2)]\} \\ &= z^2 Z[u(-n)] = \frac{z^2}{1-z} = -\frac{z^2}{z-1} \end{aligned}$$

(d) Given  $x(n) = 2^n u(n-2)$

$$\begin{aligned} Z[u(n-2)] &= z^{-2} Z[u(n)] = z^{-2} \frac{z}{z-1} = \frac{z^{-1}}{z-1} = \frac{1}{z(z-1)} \\ Z[2^n u(n-2)] &= Z[u(n-2)] \Big|_{z=(z/2)} = \frac{1}{z(z-1)} \Big|_{z=(z/2)} = \frac{1}{(z/2)[(z/2)-1]} = \frac{4}{z(z-2)} \end{aligned}$$

**EXAMPLE 10.28** Using properties of Z-transform, find the Z-transform of the sequence

$$(a) x(n) = \alpha^{n-2} u(n-2) \quad (b) x(n) = \begin{cases} 1, & \text{for } 0 \leq n \leq N-1 \\ 0, & \text{elsewhere} \end{cases}$$

**Solution:**

(a) The Z-transform of the sequence  $x(n) = \alpha^n u(n)$  is given by

$$X(z) = \frac{z}{z-\alpha}; \text{ ROC; } |z| > |\alpha|$$

Using the time shifting property of Z-transform, we have

$$Z[x(n-m)] = z^{-m} X(z)$$

In the same way,

$$Z[\alpha^{n-2} u(n-2)] = z^{-2} Z[\alpha^n u(n)] = z^{-2} \frac{z}{z-\alpha} = \frac{1}{z(z-\alpha)}; \text{ ROC; } |z| > |\alpha|$$

(b) Given  $x(n) = \begin{cases} 1, & \text{for } 0 \leq n \leq N-1 \\ 0, & \text{elsewhere} \end{cases}$

implies that  $x(n) = u(n) - u(n-N)$ .

We know that  $Z[u(n)] = \frac{z}{z-1}$

Using the time shifting property, we have

$$Z[u(n-N)] = z^{-N} Z[u(n)] = z^{-N} \frac{z}{z-1}$$

Using the linearity property, we have

$$Z[u(n) - u(n-N)] = Z[u(n)] - Z[u(n-N)] = \frac{z}{z-1} - z^{-N} \frac{z}{z-1} = \frac{z}{z-1} [1 - z^{-N}]$$

**EXAMPLE 10.29** Using appropriate properties, find the Z-transform of the signal

$$x(n) = 2(3)^n u(-n)$$

**Solution:** Given

$$x(n) = 2(3)^n u(-n)$$

We know that

$$Z[u(n)] = \frac{1}{1-z^{-1}}; \text{ ROC: } |z| > 1$$

Using the time reversal property, we have

$$Z[u(-n)] = Z[u(n)] \Big|_{z \rightarrow 1/z} = \frac{1}{1-z} \Big|_{z \rightarrow 1/z} = \frac{1}{1-(z/3)}; \text{ ROC: } |z| > |\alpha|$$

Using scaling in  $z$ -domain property, we have

$$Z[3^n u(-n)] = Z[u(-n)] \Big|_{z \rightarrow z/3} = \frac{1}{1-z} \Big|_{z \rightarrow z/3} = \frac{1}{1-(z/3)}; \text{ ROC: } |z| < 3$$

Using the linearity property, we have

$$Z[2(3)^n u(-n)] = 2Z[3^n u(-n)] = 2 \frac{1}{1-(z/3)} = \frac{2}{1-(1/3)z}; \text{ ROC: } |z| < 3$$

**EXAMPLE 10.30** Using appropriate properties, find the Z-transform of

$$x(n) = n^2 \left(\frac{1}{3}\right)^n u(n-2)$$

**Solution:** Given  $x(n) = n^2 \left(\frac{1}{3}\right)^n u(n-2)$

$$= n^2 \left(\frac{1}{3}\right)^2 \left(\frac{1}{3}\right)^{n-2} u(n-2) = \frac{1}{9} n^2 \left(\frac{1}{3}\right)^{n-2} u(n-2)$$

We know that

$$Z[u(n)] = \frac{z}{z-1}; \text{ ROC: } |z| > 1$$

From the property of multiplication by an exponential, we have

$$Z\left[\left(\frac{1}{3}\right)^n u(n)\right] = Z[u(n)]|_{z \rightarrow [z/(1/3)] = 3z} = \frac{3z}{3z-1} = \frac{z}{z-(1/3)}, |z| > \frac{1}{3}$$

Using the time shifting property, we have

$$Z\left[\left(\frac{1}{3}\right)^{n-2} u(n-2)\right] = z^{-2} Z\left[\left(\frac{1}{3}\right)^n u(n)\right] = z^{-2} \frac{z}{z-(1/3)} = \frac{1}{z[z-(1/3)]} = \frac{1}{z^2-(1/3)z}$$

Using differentiation in  $z$ -domain property, we have

$$\begin{aligned} Z\left[n\left(\frac{1}{3}\right)^{n-2} u(n-2)\right] &= -z \frac{d}{dz} \left\{ Z\left[\left(\frac{1}{3}\right)^{n-2} u(n-2)\right] \right\} \\ &= -z \frac{d}{dz} \left[ \frac{1}{z^2-(1/3)z} \right] = -z \left\{ \frac{-1[2z-(1/3)]}{[z^2-(1/3)z]^2} \right\} \\ &= \frac{2z^2-(1/3)z}{[z^2-(1/3)z]^2} \end{aligned}$$

Again using differentiation in  $z$ -domain property, we have

$$\begin{aligned} Z\left[n^2\left(\frac{1}{3}\right)^{n-2} u(n-2)\right] &= -z \frac{d}{dz} \left\{ Z\left[n\left(\frac{1}{3}\right)^{n-2} u(n-2)\right] \right\} = -z \frac{d}{dz} \left\{ \frac{2z^2-(1/3)z}{[z^2-(1/3)z]^2} \right\} \\ &= -z \left\{ \frac{[z^2-(1/3)z]^2 [4z-(1/3)] - [2z^2-(1/3)z] 2[z^2-(1/3)z][2z-(1/3)]}{[z^2-(1/3)z]^4} \right\} \\ &= -z \left[ \frac{-4z^3 + z^2 - (1/9)z}{[z^2-(1/3)z]^3} \right] = \left\{ \frac{z^2[4z^2-z+(1/9)]}{z^3[z-(1/3)]^3} \right\} = \left\{ \frac{4z^2-z+(1/9)}{z[z-(1/3)]^3} \right\} \end{aligned}$$

Using the linearity property, we get

$$Z\left[\frac{1}{9}n^2\left(\frac{1}{3}\right)^{n-2} u(n-2)\right] = \frac{1}{9} \left\{ \frac{4z^2-z+(1/9)}{z[z-(1/3)]^3} \right\}$$

**EXAMPLE 10.31** Using appropriate properties of Z-transform, find the Z-transform of the signal

$$x(n) = n2^n \sin\left(\frac{\pi}{2}n\right)u(n)$$

**Solution:** Given

$$x(n) = n2^n \sin\left(\frac{\pi}{2}n\right)u(n)$$

We know that

$$Z\left[\sin\left(\frac{\pi}{2}n\right)u(n)\right] = \frac{z \sin(\pi/2)}{z^2 - 2z \cos(\pi/2) + 1} = \frac{z}{z^2 + 1}$$

Using the multiplication by an exponential property, we have

$$\begin{aligned} Z\left[2^n \sin\left(\frac{\pi}{2}n\right)u(n)\right] &= Z\left[\sin\left(\frac{\pi}{2}n\right)u(n)\right]_{z \rightarrow (z/2)} \\ &= \frac{z}{z^2 + 1} \Big|_{z \rightarrow (z/2)} = \frac{z/2}{(z/2)^2 + 1} \\ &= \frac{2z}{z^2 + 4} \end{aligned}$$

Using differentiation in z-domain property, we have

$$\begin{aligned} Z\left[n2^n \sin\left(\frac{\pi}{2}n\right)u(n)\right] &= -z \frac{d}{dz} \left\{ Z\left[2^n \sin\left(\frac{\pi}{2}n\right)u(n)\right] \right\} \\ &= -z \frac{d}{dz} \left( \frac{2z}{z^2 + 4} \right) = -z \left[ \frac{(z^2 + 4)(2) - 2z(2z)}{(z^2 + 4)^2} \right] \\ &= -z \left[ \frac{-2z^2 + 8}{(z^2 + 4)^2} \right] = \frac{2z(z^2 - 4)}{(z^2 + 4)^2} \end{aligned}$$

**EXAMPLE 10.32** Determine the Z-transform of the following signals and sketch the ROC:

$$(a) \quad x_1(n) = \begin{cases} (1/2)^n, & n \geq 0 \\ (1/4)^{-n}, & n < 0 \end{cases}$$

(b) Using properties of Z-transform, determine  $x_2(n) = x_1(n + 2)$ .

**Solution:**

(a) Given

$$x_1(n) = \begin{cases} (1/2)^n, & n \geq 0 \\ (1/4)^{-n}, & n < 0 \end{cases}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
\therefore X_1(z) &= \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} x_1(n) z^{-n} \\
&= \sum_{n=-\infty}^{-1} \left(\frac{1}{4}\right)^{-n} z^{-n} + \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \left(\frac{1}{2}\right)^n z^{-n} \\
&= \sum_{n=-1}^{-\infty} \left(\frac{1}{4}z\right)^{-n} + \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \left(\frac{1}{2}z^{-1}\right)^n \\
&= \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \left(\frac{1}{4}z\right)^n + \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \left(\frac{1}{2}z^{-1}\right)^n = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \left(\frac{1}{4}z\right)^n - 1 + \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \left(\frac{1}{2}z^{-1}\right)^n
\end{aligned}$$

The first sequence converges if  $|(1/4)z| < 1$ , i.e.  $|z| < 4$  and the second sequence converges if  $|(1/2)z^{-1}| < 1$ , i.e. if  $|z| > 1/2$ .

So  $X_1(z)$  converges if  $1/2 < |z| < 4$ .

$$\begin{aligned}
\therefore X_1(z) &= \frac{(1/4)z}{1 - (1/4)z} + \frac{1}{1 - (1/2)z^{-1}}; \text{ ROC; } \frac{1}{2} < |z| < 4 \\
&= -\frac{z}{z - 4} + \frac{z}{z - (1/2)} = \frac{-(7/2)z}{(z - 4)[z - (1/2)]}
\end{aligned}$$

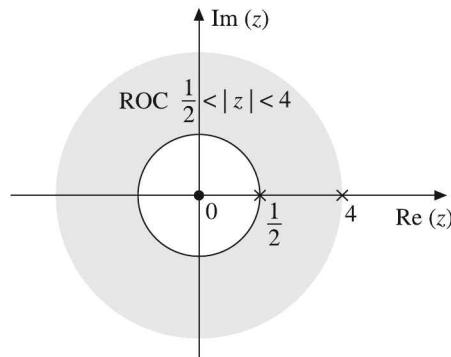
(b)

$$x_2(n) = x_1(n+2)$$

Using the time shifting property

$$\begin{aligned}
X_2(z) &= Z[x_1(n+2)] = z^2 Z[x_1(n)] \\
&= z^2 X_1(z) = \frac{-(7/2)z^3}{(z - 4)[z - (1/2)]}; \text{ ROC; } \frac{1}{2} < |z| < 4
\end{aligned}$$

The pole-zero location and ROC are shown in Figure 10.13.



**Figure 10.13** Pole-zero location and ROC for Example 10.32.

**EXAMPLE 10.33** Determine the Z-transform of the following signal:

$$x(n) = \frac{1}{3}(n^2 + n)\left(\frac{1}{2}\right)^{n-1} u(n-1)$$

**Solution:** Given

$$\begin{aligned} x(n) &= \frac{1}{3}(n^2 + n)\left(\frac{1}{2}\right)^{n-1} u(n-1) \\ &= \frac{1}{3}n^2\left(\frac{1}{2}\right)^{n-1} u(n-1) + \frac{1}{3}n\left(\frac{1}{2}\right)^{n-1} u(n-1) \end{aligned}$$

We know that

$$Z\left[\left(\frac{1}{2}\right)^n u(n)\right] = \frac{z}{z - (1/2)}; \text{ ROC; } |z| > \frac{1}{2}$$

Using the time shifting property, we have

$$Z\left[\left(\frac{1}{2}\right)^{n-1} u(n-1)\right] = z^{-1}Z\left[\left(\frac{1}{2}\right)^n u(n)\right] = z^{-1} \frac{z}{z - (1/2)} = \frac{1}{z - (1/2)}$$

Using the multiplication by  $n$  property, we have

$$\begin{aligned} Z\left[n\left(\frac{1}{2}\right)^{n-1} u(n-1)\right] &= -z \frac{d}{dz} \left\{ Z\left[\left(\frac{1}{2}\right)^{n-1} u(n-1)\right] \right\} = -z \frac{d}{dz} \left[ \frac{1}{z - (1/2)} \right] \\ &= -z \left[ \frac{-1}{[z - (1/2)]^2} \right] = \frac{z}{[z - (1/2)]^2} \end{aligned}$$

Using the multiplication by  $n$  property, we have

$$\begin{aligned} Z\left[n^2\left(\frac{1}{2}\right)^{n-1} u(n-1)\right] &= -z \frac{d}{dz} \left\{ Z\left[n\left(\frac{1}{2}\right)^{n-1} u(n-1)\right] \right\} = -z \frac{d}{dz} \left\{ \frac{z}{[z - (1/2)]^2} \right\} \\ &= -z \left\{ \frac{[z - (1/2)]^2 - z \cdot 2[z - (1/2)]}{[z - (1/2)]^4} \right\} = -z \frac{[z - (1/2) - 2z]}{[z - (1/2)]^3} \\ &= \frac{-z[-z - (1/2)]}{[z - (1/2)]^3} = \frac{z[z + (1/2)]}{[z - (1/2)]^3} \end{aligned}$$

Using the linearity property, we have

$$\begin{aligned} X(z) &= \frac{1}{3} \left\{ Z\left[n^2\left(\frac{1}{2}\right)^{n-1} u(n-1)\right] + Z\left[n\left(\frac{1}{2}\right)^{n-1} u(n-1)\right] \right\} \\ &= \frac{1}{3} \left\{ \frac{z[z + (1/2)]}{[z - (1/2)]^3} + \frac{z}{[z - (1/2)]^2} \right\} = \frac{(2/3)z^2}{[z - (1/2)]^3} \end{aligned}$$

**EXAMPLE 10.34** Express the Z-transform of

$$y(n) = \sum_{k=-\infty}^n x(k)$$

in terms of  $X(z)$ .

**Solution:** Given

$$y(n) = \sum_{k=-\infty}^n x(k)$$

$$\therefore y(n-1) = \sum_{k=-\infty}^{n-1} x(k)$$

$$\therefore y(n) - y(n-1) = \sum_{k=-\infty}^n x(k) - \sum_{k=-\infty}^{n-1} x(k) = x(n)$$

Taking Z-transform on both sides, we have

$$Y(z) - z^{-1}Y(z) = X(z)$$

i.e.

$$Y(z)(1 - z^{-1}) = X(z)$$

$$\therefore Y(z) = \frac{1}{1 - z^{-1}} X(z)$$

**EXAMPLE 10.35** Find the Z-transform of  $x(n) = n^2 u(n)$ .

**Solution:** Given

$$x(n) = n^2 u(n)$$

We have

$$Z[u(n)] = \frac{z}{z-1}$$

Using the multiplication by  $n$  property, we have

$$\begin{aligned} Z[nu(n)] &= -z \frac{d}{dz} [Z\{u(n)\}] = -z \frac{d}{dz} \left( \frac{z}{z-1} \right) \\ &= -z \left[ \frac{(z-1)(1) - z(1)}{(z-1)^2} \right] = \frac{z}{(z-1)^2} \end{aligned}$$

Again using the multiplication by  $n$  property, we have

$$\begin{aligned} Z[n^2u(n)] &= -z \frac{d}{dz} \{Z[nu(n)]\} = -z \frac{d}{dz} \left[ \frac{z}{(z-1)^2} \right] \\ &= -z \left[ \frac{(z-1)^2 - z2(z-1)}{(z-1)^4} \right] = -z \left[ \frac{z-1-2z}{(z-1)^3} \right] \\ &= \frac{-z(-z-1)}{(z-1)^3} = \frac{z(z+1)}{(z-1)^3} \end{aligned}$$

**EXAMPLE 10.36** Find the Z-transform of the signal  $x(n) = n\left(\frac{1}{2}\right)^{n+2} u(n+2)$ .

**Solution:** The given sequence is:

$$x(n) = n\left(\frac{1}{2}\right)^{n+2} u(n+2) = (n+2)\left(\frac{1}{2}\right)^{n+2} u(n+2) - 2\left(\frac{1}{2}\right)^{n+2} u(n+2)$$

Using the time shifting property, the Z-transform is:

$$\begin{aligned} X(z) &= Z[x(n)] = Z\left[(n+2)\left(\frac{1}{2}\right)^{n+2} u(n+2)\right] - Z\left[2\left(\frac{1}{2}\right)^{n+2} u(n+2)\right] \\ &= z^2 Z\left[n\left(\frac{1}{2}\right)^n u(n)\right] - 2z^2 Z\left[\left(\frac{1}{2}\right)^n u(n)\right] \\ &= z^2 \left\{ -z \frac{d}{dz} \left[ \frac{z}{z - (1/2)} \right] \right\} - 2z^2 \left[ \frac{z}{z - (1/2)} \right] \\ &= z^2 \left\{ -z \left[ \frac{[z - (1/2)] - z}{[z - (1/2)]^2} \right] \right\} - 2z^2 \left[ \frac{z}{z - (1/2)} \right] \\ &= \frac{(1/2)z^3(3 - 4z)}{[z - (1/2)]^2} \end{aligned}$$

*Alternate method*

Given  $x(n) = n\left(\frac{1}{2}\right)^{n+2} u(n+2)$

$$\begin{aligned} X(z) &= -z \frac{d}{dz} \left\{ Z\left[\left(\frac{1}{2}\right)^{n+2} u(n+2)\right] \right\} = -z \frac{d}{dz} \left\{ z^2 Z\left[\left(\frac{1}{2}\right)^n u(n)\right] \right\} \\ &= -z \frac{d}{dz} \left\{ z^2 \left[ \frac{z}{z - (1/2)} \right] \right\} = -z \frac{d}{dz} \left[ \frac{z^3}{z - (1/2)} \right] = -z \left\{ \frac{[z - (1/2)] 3z^2 - z^3}{[z - (1/2)]^2} \right\} \\ &= \frac{(1/2)z^3(3 - 4z)}{[z - (1/2)]^2} \end{aligned}$$

**EXAMPLE 10.37** Find the Z-transform of the following signal:

$$x(n) = n\left(\frac{1}{2}\right)^n u(n) * \left[ \delta(n) - \frac{1}{2} \delta(n-1) \right]$$

**Solution:** The given sequence is:

$$x(n) = n \left( \frac{1}{2} \right)^n u(n) * \left[ \delta(n) - \frac{1}{2} \delta(n-1) \right]$$

Let

$$x(n) = x_1(n) * x_2(n)$$

where  $x_1(n) = n \left( \frac{1}{2} \right)^n u(n)$  and  $x_2(n) = \delta(n) - \frac{1}{2} \delta(n-1)$

$$\begin{aligned} \therefore X_1(z) &= Z \left[ n \left( \frac{1}{2} \right)^n u(n) \right] = -z \frac{d}{dz} \left[ \frac{z}{z - (1/2)} \right] \\ &= -\frac{z \{ [z - (1/2)] - z \}}{[z - (1/2)]^2} = \frac{(1/2)z}{[z - (1/2)]^2} \end{aligned}$$

$$X_2(z) = Z \left[ \delta(n) - \frac{1}{2} \delta(n-1) \right] = 1 - \frac{1}{2} z^{-1} = \frac{z - (1/2)}{z}$$

Using the convolution property of Z-transforms, we get

$$X(z) = X_1(z) X_2(z) = \frac{(1/2)z}{[z - (1/2)]^2} \frac{z - (1/2)}{z} = \frac{(1/2)}{z - (1/2)}; \text{ ROC; } |z| > \frac{1}{2}$$

**Alternate method**

$$\begin{aligned} x(n) &= x_1(n) * x_2(n) = \sum_{k=-\infty}^{\infty} x_1(k) x_2(n-k) \\ &= \sum_{k=-\infty}^{\infty} \left[ k \left( \frac{1}{2} \right)^k u(k) \right] \left[ \delta(n-k) - \frac{1}{2} \delta(n-k-1) \right] \\ &= \sum_{k=-\infty}^{\infty} k \left( \frac{1}{2} \right)^k u(k) \delta(n-k) - \frac{1}{2} \sum_{k=-\infty}^{\infty} k \left( \frac{1}{2} \right)^k u(k) \delta(n-k-1) \\ &= n \left( \frac{1}{2} \right)^n u(n) - \frac{1}{2} (n-1) \left( \frac{1}{2} \right)^{n-1} u(n-1) \end{aligned}$$

Taking Z-transform on both sides, we have

$$X(z) = \frac{(1/2)z}{[z - (1/2)]^2} - \frac{1}{2} z^{-1} \left[ \frac{(1/2)z}{[z - (1/2)]^2} \right] = \frac{(1/2)}{z - (1/2)}; \text{ ROC; } |z| > \frac{1}{2}$$

**EXAMPLE 10.38** Find the Z-transform of the following signal using convolution property of Z-transforms.

$$x(n) = \left(\frac{1}{2}\right)^n u(n) * \left(\frac{1}{4}\right)^n u(n)$$

**Solution:** Let

$$x_1(n) = \left(\frac{1}{2}\right)^n u(n)$$

∴

$$X_1(z) = \frac{z}{z - (1/2)}; \text{ ROC}; |z| > \frac{1}{2}$$

and

$$x_2(n) = \left(\frac{1}{4}\right)^n u(n)$$

∴

$$X_2(z) = \frac{z}{z - (1/4)}; \text{ ROC}; |z| > \frac{1}{4}$$

Now,

$$x(n) = x_1(n) * x_2(n)$$

∴

$$\begin{aligned} Z[x(n)] &= X(z) = Z[x_1(n) * x_2(n)] = X_1(z) X_2(z); \text{ ROC}; |z| > \frac{1}{2} \\ &= \frac{z}{z - (1/2)} \frac{z}{z - (1/4)}; \text{ ROC}; |z| > \frac{1}{2} \end{aligned}$$

**EXAMPLE 10.39** Find the Z-transform of the signal

$$x(n) = n \left[ \left(\frac{1}{2}\right)^n u(n) * \left(\frac{1}{3}\right)^n u(n) \right]$$

**Solution:** Let

$$x_1(n) = \left(\frac{1}{2}\right)^n u(n)$$

∴

$$X_1(z) = \frac{1}{1 - (1/2)z^{-1}} = \frac{z}{z - (1/2)}; \text{ ROC}; |z| > \frac{1}{2}$$

and

$$x_2(n) = \left(\frac{1}{3}\right)^n u(n)$$

∴

$$X_2(z) = \frac{1}{1 - (1/3)z^{-1}} = \frac{z}{z - (1/3)}; \text{ ROC}; |z| > \frac{1}{3}$$

Using convolution in the time domain property, we have

$$Z[x_1(n) * x_2(n)] = X_1(z) X_2(z)$$

$$\therefore Z\left[\left(\frac{1}{2}\right)^n u(n) * \left(\frac{1}{3}\right)^n u(n)\right] = \frac{z}{z - (1/2)} \frac{z}{z - (1/3)}$$

Using differentiation in  $z$ -domain property, we have

$$\begin{aligned} Z\left\{n\left[\left(\frac{1}{2}\right)^n u(n) * \left(\frac{1}{3}\right)^n u(n)\right]\right\} &= -z \frac{d}{dz} \left\{Z\left[\left(\frac{1}{2}\right)^n u(n) * \left(\frac{1}{3}\right)^n u(n)\right]\right\} \\ &= -z \frac{d}{dz} \left\{ \frac{z^2}{[z - (1/2)][z - (1/3)]} \right\} \\ &= -z \left[ \frac{[z^2 - (5/6)z + (1/6)]2z - z^2[2z - (5/6)]}{[z^2 - (5/6)z + (1/6)]^2} \right] \\ &= -z \left[ \frac{2z^3 - (5/3)z^2 + (1/3)z - 2z^3 + (5/6)z^2}{[z^2 - (5/6)z + (1/6)]^2} \right] \\ &= \frac{(5/6)z^2[z - (2/5)]}{[z - (1/2)]^2[z - (1/3)]^2} \end{aligned}$$

**EXAMPLE 10.40** Using Z-transform, find the convolution of the sequences

$$x_1(n) = \{2, 1, 0, -1, 3\}; x_2(n) = \{1, -3, 2\}$$

**Solution:** From the convolution property of Z-transforms, we have

$$Z\{x_1(n) * x_2(n)\} = X_1(z) X_2(z) \text{ which implies that}$$

$$x_1(n) * x_2(n) = Z^{-1}[X_1(z) X_2(z)]$$

Given

$$x_1(n) = \{2, 1, 0, -1, 3\}$$

$\therefore$

$$X_1(z) = 2 + z^{-1} - z^{-3} + 3z^{-4}$$

and

$$x_2(n) = \{1, -3, 2\}$$

$\therefore$

$$X_2(z) = 1 - 3z^{-1} + 2z^{-2}$$

$\therefore$

$$\begin{aligned} X_1(z) X_2(z) &= (2 + z^{-1} - z^{-3} + 3z^{-4})(1 - 3z^{-1} + 2z^{-2}) \\ &= 2 - 5z^{-1} + z^{-2} + z^{-3} + 6z^{-4} - 11z^{-5} + 6z^{-6} \end{aligned}$$

Taking inverse Z-transform on both sides,

$$x(n) = \{2, -5, 1, 1, 6, -11, 6\}$$

**EXAMPLE 10.41** Find the convolution of the sequences

$$x_1(n) = \left(\frac{1}{2}\right)^n u(n) \quad \text{and} \quad x_2(n) = \left(\frac{1}{3}\right)^{n-2} u(n-2)$$

using (a) Convolution property of Z-transforms and (b) Time domain method

**Solution:**

(a) **Convolution property of Z-transforms**

$$\text{Given} \quad x_1(n) = \left(\frac{1}{2}\right)^n u(n) \quad \text{and} \quad x_2(n) = \left(\frac{1}{3}\right)^{n-2} u(n-2)$$

$$\therefore X_1(z) = Z\left[\left(\frac{1}{2}\right)^n u(n)\right] = \frac{1}{1 - (1/2)z^{-1}} = \frac{z}{z - (1/2)}; \text{ ROC: } |z| > \frac{1}{2}$$

$$\begin{aligned} \text{and} \quad X_2(z) &= Z\left[\left(\frac{1}{3}\right)^{n-2} u(n-2)\right] = z^{-2} Z\left[\left(\frac{1}{3}\right)^n u(n)\right] \\ &= z^{-2} \frac{1}{1 - (1/3)z^{-1}} = \frac{z^{-1}}{z - (1/3)}; \text{ ROC: } |z| > \frac{1}{3} \end{aligned}$$

We know that

$$\begin{aligned} x(n) &= x_1(n) * x_2(n) \\ \therefore Z[x(n)] &= X(z) = Z[x_1(n) * x_2(n)] = X_1(z) X_2(z) \\ \therefore Z[x_1(n) * x_2(n)] &= \frac{z}{z - (1/2)} \frac{z^{-1}}{z - (1/3)} = \frac{1}{[z - (1/2)][z - (1/3)]} \\ \therefore x(n) &= Z^{-1}\left\{\frac{1}{[z - (1/2)][z - (1/3)]}\right\} = Z^{-1}\left[\frac{1}{z - (1/2)} - \frac{1}{z - (1/3)}\right]_6 \\ &= 6 \left[ \left(\frac{1}{2}\right)^{n-1} u(n-1) - \left(\frac{1}{3}\right)^{n-1} u(n-1) \right] \end{aligned}$$

(b) **Time domain method**

$$\begin{aligned} x_1(n) * x_2(n) &= \sum_{k=0}^n x_1(k) x_2(n-k) \\ &= \sum_{k=0}^{n-2} \left(\frac{1}{2}\right)^k u(k) \left(\frac{1}{3}\right)^{n-2-k} u(n-2-k) \\ &= \sum_{k=0}^{n-2} \left(\frac{1}{2}\right)^k \left(\frac{1}{3}\right)^{n-2-k} = \sum_{k=0}^{n-2} \left(\frac{1}{2}\right)^k \left(\frac{1}{3}\right)^n \left(\frac{1}{3}\right)^{-2} \left(\frac{1}{3}\right)^{-k} \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
 &= 9\left(\frac{1}{3}\right)^n \sum_{k=0}^{n-2} \left(\frac{3}{2}\right)^k = 9\left(\frac{1}{3}\right)^n \left[ \frac{1 - (3/2)^{n-1}}{1 - (3/2)} \right] = -18\left(\frac{1}{3}\right)^n \left[ 1 - \left(\frac{3}{2}\right)^{n-1} \right] \\
 &= -6 \left[ \left(\frac{1}{3}\right)^{n-1} u(n-1) - \left(\frac{1}{3}\right)^{n-1} \left(\frac{3}{2}\right)^{n-1} u(n-1) \right] \\
 &= -6 \left[ \left(\frac{1}{3}\right)^{n-1} u(n-1) - \left(\frac{1}{2}\right)^{n-1} u(n-1) \right]
 \end{aligned}$$

**EXAMPLE 10.42** Find the convolution of the sequences  $x_1(n) = (1/3)^n u(n)$  and  $x_2(n) = (1/5)^n u(n)$  using (a) Convolution property of Z-transforms and (b) Time domain method.

**Solution:**

(a) **Convolution property of Z-transforms**

$$\text{Given } x_1(n) = \left(\frac{1}{3}\right)^n u(n) \text{ and } x_2(n) = \left(\frac{1}{5}\right)^n u(n)$$

$$\therefore X_1(z) = Z\left[\left(\frac{1}{3}\right)^n u(n)\right] = \frac{1}{1 - (1/3)z^{-1}} = \frac{z}{z - (1/3)}; \text{ ROC: } |z| > \frac{1}{3}$$

$$\text{and } X_2(z) = Z\left[\left(\frac{1}{5}\right)^n u(n)\right] = \frac{1}{1 - (1/5)z^{-1}} = \frac{z}{z - (1/5)}; \text{ ROC: } |z| > \frac{1}{5}$$

We know that

$$x(n) = x_1(n) * x_2(n)$$

$$\therefore Z[x(n)] = X(z) = Z[x_1(n) * x_2(n)] = X_1(z) X_2(z)$$

$$\therefore Z[x_1(n) * x_2(n)] = \frac{z}{z - (1/3)} \frac{z}{z - (1/5)}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
 \therefore x(n) &= Z^{-1}\left[\frac{z}{z - (1/3)} \frac{z}{z - (1/5)}\right] = Z^{-1}\left[\frac{5}{2} \frac{z}{z - (1/3)} - \frac{3}{2} \frac{z}{z - (1/5)}\right] \\
 &= \frac{5}{2} \left(\frac{1}{3}\right)^n u(n) - \frac{3}{2} \left(\frac{1}{5}\right)^n u(n)
 \end{aligned}$$

(b) **Time domain method**

$$\text{Given } x_1(n) = \left(\frac{1}{3}\right)^n u(n) \text{ and } x_2(n) = \left(\frac{1}{5}\right)^n u(n)$$

$$\begin{aligned}
x(n) &= x_1(n) * x_2(n) = \sum_{k=0}^n x_1(k) x_2(n-k) \\
&= \sum_{k=0}^n \left(\frac{1}{3}\right)^k u(k) \left(\frac{1}{5}\right)^{n-k} u(n-k) \\
&= \sum_{k=0}^n \left(\frac{1}{3}\right)^k \left(\frac{1}{5}\right)^n \left(\frac{1}{5}\right)^{-k} = \left(\frac{1}{5}\right)^n \sum_{k=0}^n \left(\frac{1}{3} \times \frac{5}{1}\right)^k = \left(\frac{1}{5}\right)^n \sum_{k=0}^n \left(\frac{5}{3}\right)^k \\
&= \left(\frac{1}{5}\right)^n \left[ \frac{1 - (5/3)^{n+1}}{1 - (5/3)} \right] = -\frac{3}{2} \left\{ \left(\frac{1}{5}\right)^n \left[ 1 - \left(\frac{5}{3}\right)^n \frac{5}{3} \right] \right\} \\
&= -\frac{3}{2} \left(\frac{1}{5}\right)^n + \frac{3}{2} \left(\frac{1}{5}\right)^n \left(\frac{5}{3}\right)^n \frac{5}{3} = \frac{5}{2} \left(\frac{1}{3}\right)^n u(n) - \frac{3}{2} \left(\frac{1}{5}\right)^n u(n)
\end{aligned}$$

**EXAMPLE 10.43** Using final value theorem, find  $x(\infty)$ , if  $X(z)$  is given by

$$(a) \frac{z+1}{(z-0.6)^2} \quad (b) \frac{z+2}{4(z-1)(z+0.7)} \quad (c) \frac{2z+3}{(z+1)(z+3)(z-1)}$$

**Solution:**

$$(a) \text{ Given } X(z) = \frac{z+1}{(z-0.6)^2}$$

Looking at  $X(z)$ , we notice that the ROC of  $X(z)$  is  $|z| > 0.6$  and  $(z-1)X(z)$  has no poles on or outside the unit circle. Therefore,

$$x(\infty) = \text{Lt}_{z \rightarrow 1} (z-1) X(z) = \text{Lt}_{z \rightarrow 1} (z-1) \frac{z+1}{(z-0.6)^2} = 0$$

$$\begin{aligned}
(b) \text{ Given } X(z) &= \frac{z+2}{4(z-1)(z+0.7)} \\
(z-1) X(z) &= \frac{z+2}{4(z+0.7)}
\end{aligned}$$

$(z-1) X(z)$  has no poles on or outside the unit circle.

$$\therefore x(\infty) = \text{Lt}_{z \rightarrow 1} (z-1) X(z) = \text{Lt}_{z \rightarrow 1} \left[ \frac{z+2}{4(z+0.7)} \right] = \frac{3}{6.8} = 0.44$$

$$\begin{aligned}
(c) \text{ Given } X(z) &= \frac{2z+3}{(z+1)(z+3)(z-1)} \\
(z-1) X(z) &= \frac{(z-1)(2z+3)}{(z+1)(z+3)(z-1)} = \frac{2z+3}{(z+1)(z+3)}
\end{aligned}$$

$(z-1) X(z)$  has one pole on the unit circle and one pole outside the unit circle. So  $x(\infty)$  tends to infinity as  $n \rightarrow \infty$ .

**EXAMPLE 10.44** Find  $x(0)$  if  $X(z)$  is given by

$$(a) \frac{z^2 + 2z + 2}{(z+1)(z+0.5)}$$

$$(b) \frac{z+3}{(z+1)(z+2)}$$

**Solution:**

$$(a) \text{ Given } X(z) = \frac{z^2 + 2z + 2}{(z+1)(z+0.5)} = \frac{1 + (2/z) + (2/z^2)}{[1 + (1/z)][1 + (0.5/z)]}$$

$$x(0) = \underset{z \rightarrow \infty}{\text{Lt}} X(z) = \underset{z \rightarrow \infty}{\text{Lt}} \frac{[1 + (2/z) + (2/z^2)]}{[1 + (1/z)][1 + (0.5/z)]} = 1$$

$$(b) \text{ Given } X(z) = \frac{z+3}{(z+1)(z+2)} = \frac{z[1 + (3/z)]}{z^2[1 + (1/z)][1 + (2/z)]} = \frac{1}{z} \frac{1 + (3/z)}{[1 + (1/z)][1 + (2/z)]}$$

$$x(0) = \underset{z \rightarrow \infty}{\text{Lt}} X(z) = \underset{z \rightarrow \infty}{\text{Lt}} \frac{1}{z} \frac{1 + (3/z)}{[1 + (1/z)][1 + (2/z)]} = 0$$

**EXAMPLE 10.45** Prove that the final value of  $x(n)$  for  $X(z) = z^2/(z - 1)(z - 0.2)$  is 1.25 and its initial value is unity.

$$\text{Solution: Given } X(z) = \frac{z^2}{(z-1)(z-0.2)}$$

The final value theorem states that

$$\underset{n \rightarrow \infty}{\text{Lt}} x(n) = x(\infty) = \underset{z \rightarrow 1}{\text{Lt}} (z-1) X(z)$$

$$\therefore x(\infty) = \underset{z \rightarrow 1}{\text{Lt}} (z-1) \frac{z^2}{(z-1)(z-0.2)} = \underset{z \rightarrow 1}{\text{Lt}} \frac{z^2}{z-0.2} = \frac{1}{1-0.2} = 1.25$$

The initial value theorem states that

$$\underset{n \rightarrow 0}{\text{Lt}} x(n) = x(0) = \underset{z \rightarrow \infty}{\text{Lt}} X(z)$$

$$\therefore x(0) = \underset{z \rightarrow \infty}{\text{Lt}} \frac{1}{[1 - (1/z)][1 - (0.2/z)]} = 1$$

## 10.7 INVERSE Z-TRANSFORM

In the last few sections, we have defined the Z-transform, found out the Z-transform of some simple signals (sequences) and then studied some Z-transform properties and theorems. These properties and theorems enable us to determine the Z-transforms of more complicated signals in terms of the Z-transforms of simple signals.

We shall now discuss about the inverse Z-transform. The process of finding the time domain signal  $x(n)$  from its Z-transform  $X(z)$  is called the inverse Z-transform which is denoted as:

$$x(n) = Z^{-1}[X(z)]$$

We have

$$X(z) = X(re^{j\omega}) = \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} [x(n) r^{-n}] e^{-j\omega n}$$

This is the DTFT of the signal  $x(n) r^{-n}$ . Hence the inverse discrete-time Fourier transform (IDTFT) of  $X(re^{j\omega})$  must be  $x(n) r^{-n}$ . Therefore, we can write

$$\begin{aligned} x(n)r^{-n} &= \frac{1}{2\pi} \int_{-\pi}^{\pi} X(re^{j\omega}) e^{j\omega n} d\omega \\ \text{i.e. } x(n) &= \frac{1}{2\pi} \int_{-\pi}^{\pi} X(re^{j\omega}) (re^{j\omega})^n d\omega \end{aligned}$$

We have

$$\begin{aligned} z &= re^{j\omega} \\ \therefore \frac{dz}{d\omega} &= jre^{j\omega}, \text{ i.e. } d\omega = \frac{dz}{jre^{j\omega}} \\ \therefore x(n) &= \frac{1}{2\pi j} \oint_c X(z) z^{n-1} dz \end{aligned}$$

where the symbol  $\oint_c$  denotes integration around the circle of radius  $|z| = r$  in a counter clockwise direction.

This is the direct method of finding the inverse Z-transform of  $X(z)$ . It is quite tedious. So inverse Z-transform is normally found using indirect methods. The Z-transform  $X(z)$  is a ratio of two polynomials in  $z$  given by

$$X(z) = \frac{b_0 z^M + b_1 z^{M-1} + b_2 z^{M-2} + \dots + b_M}{z^N + a_1 z^{N-1} + a_2 z^{N-2} + \dots + a_N}$$

The roots of the numerator polynomial are those values of  $z$  for which  $X(z) = 0$  and are referred to as the zeros of  $X(z)$ . The roots of the denominator polynomial are those values of  $z$  for which  $X(z) = \infty$  and are referred to as poles of  $X(z)$ . In z-plane, zero locations are denoted by • (a small circle) symbol and the pole locations with × (cross) symbol.

Basically there are four methods that are often used to find the inverse Z-transform. They are:

- (a) Power series method or long division method
- (b) Partial fraction expansion method
- (c) Complex inversion integral method (also known as the residue method)
- (d) Convolution integral method

The long division method is simple, but does not give a closed form expression for the time signal. Further, it can be used only if the ROC of the given  $X(z)$  is either of the form  $|z| > \alpha$  or of the form  $|z| < \alpha$ , i.e. it is useful only if the sequence  $x(n)$  is either purely right-sided or purely left-sided. The partial fraction expansion method enables us to determine the

time signal  $x(n)$  making use of our knowledge of some basic Z-transform pairs and Z-transform theorems. The inversion integral method requires a knowledge of the theory of complex variables, but is quite powerful and useful. The convolution integral method uses convolution property of Z-transforms and can be used when given  $X(z)$  can be written as the product of two functions.

### 10.7.1 Long Division Method

The Z-transform of a two-sided sequence  $x(n)$  is given by

$$X(z) = \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} x(n) z^{-n}$$

The  $X(z)$  has both positive powers of  $z$  as well as negative powers of  $z$ . We cannot obtain a two-sided sequence by long division. If the sequence  $x(n)$  is causal, then

$$X(z) = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} x(n) z^{-n} = x(0) z^0 + x(1) z^{-1} + x(2) z^{-2} + \dots$$

has only negative powers of  $z$ , with ROC;  $|z| > \alpha$ .

If the sequence  $x(n)$  is anticausal, then

$$X(z) = \sum_{n=-\infty}^0 x(n) z^{-n} = \dots + x(-3) z^3 + x(-2) z^2 + x(-1) z^1 + x(0) z^0$$

has only positive powers of  $z$ , with ROC;  $|z| < \alpha$ .

Since determination of the inverse Z-transform of  $X(z)$  is only the determination of  $x(n)$ , i.e.  $x(0), x(1), x(2), \dots$  if it is a causal signal or  $x(0), x(-1), x(-2), \dots$  if it is an anticausal signal. To determine the inverse Z-transform, if  $X(z)$  is a ratio of the polynomials

$$X(z) = \frac{N(z)}{D(z)} = \frac{b_0 + b_1 z^{-1} + b_2 z^{-2} + \dots + b_M z^{-M}}{1 + a_1 z^{-1} + a_2 z^{-2} + \dots + a_N z^{-N}}$$

we can generate a series in  $z$  by dividing the numerator of  $X(z)$  by its denominator.

If  $X(z)$  converges for  $|z| > \alpha$ , we obtain the series

$$X(z) = x(0) + x(1) z^{-1} + x(2) z^{-2} + \dots$$

We can identify the coefficients of  $z^{-n}$  as  $x(n)$  of a causal sequence.

If  $X(z)$  converges for  $|z| < \alpha$ , we obtain the series

$$X(z) = x(0) + x(-1) z^1 + x(-2) z^2 + \dots$$

we can identify the coefficients of  $z^{-n}$  as  $x(n)$  of a non-causal sequence.

For getting a causal sequence, first put  $N(z)$  and  $D(z)$  either in descending powers of  $z$  or in ascending powers of  $z^{-1}$  before long division.

For getting a non-causal sequence, first put  $N(z)$  and  $D(z)$  either in ascending powers of  $z$  or in descending powers of  $z^{-1}$  before long division. This method is best illustrated by the following examples.

**EXAMPLE 10.46** Find the inverse Z-transform of

$$X(z) = z^3 + 2z^2 + z + 1 - 2z^{-1} - 3z^{-2} + 4z^{-3}$$

**Solution:** We know that

$$\begin{aligned} X(z) = \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} x(n) z^{-n} &= \dots x(-3) z^3 + x(-2) z^2 + x(-1) z^1 + x(0) + x(1) z^{-1} \\ &\quad + x(2) z^{-2} + x(3) z^{-3} + \dots \end{aligned}$$

Comparing this  $X(z)$  with the given  $X(z)$ , we have

$$x(n) = \{1, 2, 1, 1, -2, -3, 4\}$$

↑

Alternatively, taking inverse Z-transform of  $X(z)$ , we have

$$x(n) = \delta(n+3) + 2\delta(n+2) + \delta(n+1) + \delta(n) - 2\delta(n-1) - 3\delta(n-2) + 4\delta(n-3)$$

**EXAMPLE 10.47** Determine the inverse Z-transform of

$$\begin{array}{ll} \text{(a)} \quad X(z) = \frac{1}{z-a}; \text{ ROC; } |z| > a & \text{(b)} \quad X(z) = \frac{1}{1-az^{-1}}; \text{ ROC; } |z| > a \\ \text{(c)} \quad X(z) = \frac{1}{1-z^{-4}}; \text{ ROC; } |z| > 1 & \end{array}$$

**Solution:**

$$\begin{aligned} \text{(a) Given } X(z) &= \frac{1}{z-a}; \text{ ROC; } |z| > a \\ &= \frac{1}{z(1-az^{-1})} = z^{-1}(1-az^{-1})^{-1} = z^{-1}(1+az^{-1}+a^2z^{-2}+a^3z^{-3}+\dots) \\ &= z^{-1} + az^{-2} + a^2z^{-3} + \dots = \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} a^{n-1} z^{-n} = \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} a^{n-1} u(n-1) z^{-n} \\ \therefore \quad x(n) &= a^{n-1} u(n-1) \end{aligned}$$

$$\text{(b) Given } X(z) = \frac{1}{1-az^{-1}}; \text{ ROC; } |z| > a$$

By Taylor's series expansion, we have

$$X(z) = \frac{1}{1-az^{-1}} = 1 + az^{-1} + a^2z^{-2} + a^3z^{-3} + \dots = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} a^n z^{-n} = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} a^n u(n) z^{-n}$$

Therefore,

$$x(n) = a^n u(n)$$

(c) From infinite sum formula, we have

$$\sum_{k=0}^{\infty} \alpha^k = \frac{1}{1-\alpha}; |\alpha| < 1$$

$$\text{Given } X(z) = \frac{1}{1-z^{-4}} = \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} (z^{-4})^k = \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} z^{-4k} \quad [|z^{-4}| < 1, \text{ i.e. } |z| > 1]$$

Taking inverse Z-transform on both sides, we get

$$x(n) = \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} \delta(n - 4k)$$

$$\therefore \begin{aligned} x(n) &= 1, & \text{when } n = 4k, \text{ i.e. when } n \text{ is an integer multiple of 4} \\ &= 0, & \text{otherwise} \end{aligned}$$

**EXAMPLE 10.48** Find the inverse Z-transform of

$$X(z) = \sum_{k=4}^{8} \left( \frac{1}{2k} \right) z^{-k}; \text{ ROC; } |z| > 0$$

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Solution: Given } X(z) &= \sum_{k=4}^{8} \left( \frac{1}{2k} \right) z^{-k} \\ &= \frac{1}{8} z^{-4} + \frac{1}{10} z^{-5} + \frac{1}{12} z^{-6} + \frac{1}{14} z^{-7} + \frac{1}{16} z^{-8} \end{aligned}$$

Taking the inverse Z-transform, we get

$$\begin{aligned} x(n) &= \frac{1}{8} \delta(n-4) + \frac{1}{10} \delta(n-5) + \frac{1}{12} \delta(n-6) + \frac{1}{14} \delta(n-7) + \frac{1}{16} \delta(n-8) \\ &= \sum_{k=4}^{8} \left( \frac{1}{2k} \right) \delta(n-k) \end{aligned}$$

**EXAMPLE 10.49** Determine the inverse Z-transform of the sequences:

$$(a) \quad X(z) = \cos(3z); \text{ ROC; } |z| < \infty \qquad (b) \quad X(z) = \sin(z); \text{ ROC; } |z| < \infty$$

**Solution:**

$$(a) \quad \text{Given} \quad X(z) = \cos(3z)$$

The corresponding  $x(n)$  must be a left-sided sequence because ROC is  $|z| < \infty$ .  
From the trigonometric series or Taylor series, we have

$$\cos \theta = 1 - \frac{\theta^2}{2!} + \frac{\theta^4}{4!} - \frac{\theta^6}{6!} + \dots = \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} (-1)^k \frac{\theta^{2k}}{(2k)!}$$

$$\begin{aligned}\therefore X(z) = \cos(3z) &= \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} (-1)^k \frac{(3z)^{2k}}{(2k)!} = 1 - \frac{(3z)^2}{2!} + \frac{(3z)^4}{4!} - \frac{(3z)^6}{6!} + \dots \\ &= \dots - \frac{81}{80}z^6 + \frac{27}{8}z^4 - \frac{9}{2}z^2 + 1\end{aligned}$$

Therefore, the inverse Z-transform is:

$$x(n) = \left[ \dots, -\frac{81}{80}, 0, \frac{27}{8}, 0, -\frac{9}{2}, 0, 1 \right] \uparrow$$

- (b) Given  $X(z) = \sin(2z)$ . The corresponding  $x(n)$  must be a left-sided sequence because ROC is  $|z| < \infty$ . From the trigonometric series or Taylor series, we have

$$\sin \theta = \theta - \frac{\theta^3}{3!} + \frac{\theta^5}{5!} - \frac{\theta^7}{7!} + \dots = \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} (-1)^k \frac{\theta^{2k+1}}{(2k+1)!}$$

$$\begin{aligned}\therefore X(z) = \sin(2z) &= \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} (-1)^k \frac{(2z)^{2k+1}}{(2k+1)!} = (2z) - \frac{(2z)^3}{3!} + \frac{(2z)^5}{5!} - \frac{(2z)^7}{7!} + \dots \\ &= \dots - \frac{8}{315}z^7 + \frac{4}{15}z^5 - \frac{4}{3}z^3 + 2z\end{aligned}$$

Therefore, the inverse Z-transform is:

$$x(n) = \left[ \dots, -\frac{8}{315}, 0, \frac{4}{15}, 0, -\frac{4}{3}, 0, 2, 0 \right] \uparrow$$

**EXAMPLE 10.50** Determine the inverse Z-transform of the following transformed signals:

$$(a) X(z) = e^z + e^{1/z} \quad (b) X(z) = \log_{10}(1 + az^{-1}); \text{ ROC}; |z| > a$$

**Solution:**

$$(a) \text{ Given } X(z) = e^z + e^{1/z}$$

From the exponential series or Taylor series, we have

$$\begin{aligned}X(z) = e^z + e^{1/z} &= e^z + e^{z^{-1}} \\ &= \left\{ 1 + \frac{z}{1!} + \frac{z^2}{2!} + \frac{z^3}{3!} + \frac{z^4}{4!} + \dots \right\} + \left\{ 1 + \frac{z^{-1}}{1!} + \frac{z^{-2}}{2!} + \frac{z^{-3}}{3!} + \frac{z^{-4}}{4!} + \dots \right\} \\ &= \dots + \frac{1}{24}z^4 + \frac{1}{6}z^3 + \frac{1}{2}z^2 + z + 2 + z^{-1} + \frac{1}{2}z^{-2} + \frac{1}{6}z^{-3} + \frac{1}{24}z^{-4} + \dots\end{aligned}$$

Therefore, the inverse Z-transform is:

$$x(n) = \left( \dots, \frac{1}{24}, \frac{1}{6}, \frac{1}{2}, 1, 2, 1, \frac{1}{2}, \frac{1}{6}, \frac{1}{24}, \dots \right)$$

↑

(b) Given

$$X(z) = \log_{10}(1 + az^{-1})$$

Since the given signal is of base 10, manipulating, we get

$$\begin{aligned} X(z) &= \log_{10}(1 + az^{-1}) = \frac{\log_e(1 + az^{-1})}{\log_e(10)} \\ &= \frac{1}{\log_e(10)} \left[ az^{-1} - \frac{(az^{-1})^2}{2} + \frac{(az^{-1})^3}{3} - \frac{(az^{-1})^4}{4} + \frac{(az^{-1})^5}{5} - \dots \right] \\ &= - \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{(-az^{-1})^n}{n \log_e(10)} = - \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{(-a)^n}{n \log_e(10)} z^{-n} \end{aligned}$$

Therefore, the inverse Z-transform is:

$$\begin{aligned} x(n) &= \left[ 0, \frac{a}{\log_e(10)}, -\frac{a^2}{2 \log_e(10)}, \frac{a^3}{3 \log_e(10)}, -\frac{a^4}{4 \log_e(10)}, \dots \right] \\ &= - \frac{(-a)^n}{n \log_e(10)} u(n-1) \end{aligned}$$

**EXAMPLE 10.51** Using power series expansion method, determine the inverse Z-transform of

$$X(z) = \ln(1 + z^{-1}); \text{ ROC}; |z| > 0$$

**Solution:** Given

$$X(z) = \ln(1 + z^{-1})$$

The corresponding  $x(n)$  must be right-sided sequence because ROC is  $|z| > 0$ . We know that

$$\ln(1 + \theta) = \theta - \frac{\theta^2}{2} + \frac{\theta^3}{3} - \frac{\theta^4}{4} + \dots = \sum_{k=1}^{\infty} (-1)^{k-1} \frac{\theta^k}{k}; \text{ if } |\theta| < 1$$

$$\therefore X(z) = \ln(1 + z^{-1}) = \sum_{k=1}^{\infty} (-1)^{k-1} \frac{(z^{-1})^k}{k} = \sum_{k=1}^{\infty} (-1)^{k-1} \frac{z^{-k}}{k}$$

Taking inverse Z-transform on both sides, we get

$$x(n) = \sum_{k=1}^{\infty} (-1)^{k-1} \frac{\delta(n-k)}{k}$$

**EXAMPLE 10.52** Using power series expansion method, determine the inverse Z-transform of

$$X(z) = \ln(1 - 2z); \text{ ROC; } |z| < \frac{1}{2}$$

**Solution:** Given  $X(z) = \ln(1 - 2z); \text{ ROC; } |z| < \frac{1}{2}$

Since ROC is  $|z| = (1/2)$ , the corresponding sequence  $x(n)$  must be a left-sided sequence. We know that

$$\begin{aligned} \ln(1 - \theta) &= -\theta - \frac{\theta^2}{2} - \frac{\theta^3}{3} - \frac{\theta^4}{4} - \dots = -\sum_{k=1}^{\infty} \frac{\theta^k}{k} \\ \therefore X(z) &= \ln(1 - 2z) = -\sum_{k=1}^{\infty} \frac{(2z)^k}{k} = -\sum_{k=1}^{\infty} \frac{2^k}{k} z^k \end{aligned}$$

Taking inverse Z-transform on both sides, we get

$$x(n) = -\sum_{k=1}^{\infty} \frac{2^k}{k} \delta(n+k)$$

**EXAMPLE 10.53** Determine the inverse Z-transform of

$$X(z) = \ln\left(\frac{\alpha}{\alpha - z^{-1}}\right); \text{ ROC; } |z| > \frac{1}{\alpha}$$

**Solution:** Given  $X(z) = \ln\left(\frac{\alpha}{\alpha - z^{-1}}\right) = \ln\left[\frac{1}{1 - (\alpha z)^{-1}}\right] = -\ln[1 - (\alpha z)^{-1}]$

We know that

$$\begin{aligned} \ln(1 - \theta) &= -\theta - \frac{\theta^2}{2} - \frac{\theta^3}{3} - \frac{\theta^4}{4} - \dots \\ \therefore X(z) &= -\ln[1 - (\alpha z)^{-1}] = (\alpha z)^{-1} + \frac{(\alpha z)^{-2}}{2} + \frac{(\alpha z)^{-3}}{3} + \frac{(\alpha z)^{-4}}{4} + \dots = \sum_{k=1}^{\infty} \frac{[(\alpha z)^{-1}]^k}{k} \end{aligned}$$

The above series converges for  $(\alpha z)^{-1} < 1$ , i.e. for  $|z| > (1/|\alpha|)$ .

$$\therefore X(z) = \sum_{k=1}^{\infty} \frac{\alpha^{-k}}{k} z^{-k}$$

Taking inverse Z-transform, we get

$$\begin{aligned} x(n) &= \sum_{k=1}^{\infty} \frac{\alpha^{-k}}{k} \delta(n-k) \\ x(n) &= \frac{\alpha^{-n}}{n} \quad \text{for } n > 0, \text{ i.e. } x(n) = \left(\frac{\alpha^{-n}}{n}\right) u(n-1) \end{aligned}$$

**EXAMPLE 10.54** Determine the inverse Z-transform of

$$(a) \quad X(z) = \log_e \left( \frac{1}{1 - a^{-1}z} \right); \text{ ROC; } |z| < |a| \quad (b) \quad X(z) = \log_e \left( \frac{1}{1 - az^{-1}} \right); \text{ ROC; } |z| > |a|$$

**Solution:**

$$\begin{aligned} (a) \quad \text{Given} \quad X(z) &= \log_e \left( \frac{1}{1 - a^{-1}z} \right); \text{ ROC; } |z| < |a| \\ X(z) &= \log_e \left( \frac{1}{1 - a^{-1}z} \right) = -\log_e (1 - a^{-1}z) \\ &= -\left[ -a^{-1}z - \frac{(a^{-1}z)^2}{2} - \frac{(a^{-1}z)^3}{3} - \frac{(a^{-1}z)^4}{4} - \dots \right] \\ \therefore \quad X(z) &= \dots + \frac{1}{4a^4}z^4 + \frac{1}{3a^3}z^3 + \frac{1}{2a^2}z^2 + \frac{1}{a}z = \sum_{n=-\infty}^{-1} \left( \frac{a^n}{-n} \right) z^{-n} \\ \text{Hence} \quad x(n) &= -\frac{a^n}{n} \text{ for } n < 0 \\ \text{that is,} \quad x(n) &= \left( -\frac{a^n}{n} \right) u(-n-1) \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned} (b) \quad \text{Given} \quad X(z) &= \log_e \left( \frac{1}{1 - az^{-1}} \right); \text{ ROC; } |z| > |a| \\ X(z) &= \log_e \left( \frac{1}{1 - az^{-1}} \right) = -\log_e (1 - az^{-1}) \\ &= -\left[ -az^{-1} - \frac{(az^{-1})^2}{2} - \frac{(az^{-1})^3}{3} - \frac{(az^{-1})^4}{4} - \dots \right] \\ \therefore \quad X(z) &= az^{-1} + \frac{(az^{-1})^2}{2} + \frac{(az^{-1})^3}{3} + \frac{(az^{-1})^4}{4} + \dots = \sum_{k=1}^{\infty} \frac{(az^{-1})^k}{k} = \sum_{k=1}^{\infty} \frac{a^k}{k} z^{-k} \end{aligned}$$

Taking inverse Z-transform, we have

$$x(n) = \sum_{k=1}^{\infty} \frac{a^k}{k} \delta(n-k) = \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{a^n}{n} = \frac{a^n}{n} u(n-1)$$

**EXAMPLE 10.55** Discuss the methods by which inverse Z-transformation can be found out?

**Solution:** The process of finding  $x(n)$  from its Z-transform  $X(z)$  is called the inverse Z-transform and is denoted as:

$$x(n) = Z^{-1}[X(z)]$$

There are four methods often used to find the inverse Z-transform.

1. Power series method or long division method
2. Partial fraction method
3. Complex inversion integral method or residue method
4. Convolution integral method

The long division method is simple and the advantage of this method is: it is more general and can be applied to any problem, but the disadvantage is: it is difficult to get the solution in closed form. Further it can be used only if the ROC of the given  $X(z)$  is either of the form  $|z| > \alpha$  or of the form  $|z| < \alpha$ , i.e. it is useful only if the sequence  $x(n)$  is either purely right-sided or purely left-sided. It cannot be used for bidirectional sequences.

If  $X(z)$  is a ratio of two polynomials, then

$$X(z) = \frac{N(z)}{D(z)} = \frac{b_0 + b_1 z^{-1} + b_2 z^{-2} + \dots + b_M z^{-M}}{1 + a_1 z^{-1} + a_2 z^{-2} + \dots + a_N z^{-N}}$$

We can generate a series in  $z$  by dividing the numerator by the denominator.

If ROC is  $|z| > a$ , it yields a causal sequence.

$$X(z) = x(0) + x(1) z^{-1} + x(2) z^{-2} + \dots$$

So  $X(z)$  is to be expressed in negative powers of  $z$ .

If ROC is  $|z| < a$ , it yields an anticausal sequence.

$$X(z) = x(0) + x(-1) z^1 + x(-2) z^2 + \dots$$

So  $X(z)$  is to be expressed in positive powers of  $z$ .

In long division method to realise a causal sequence (i.e. if ROC is  $|z| > a$ ) both numerator and denominator are expressed either in descending powers of  $z$  or in ascending powers of  $z^{-1}$ , and the numerator is divided by the denominator continuously. To realise an anticausal sequence (i.e. ROC is  $|z| < a$ ) both numerator and denominator are expressed either in ascending powers of  $z$  or in descending power of  $z^{-1}$  and the numerator is divided by the denominator continuously.

For partial fraction expansion method,  $X(z)/z$  must be proper and the denominator should be in factored form. If it is not proper, it is to be written as the sum of a polynomial and a proper transfer function. The proper function  $X(z)/z$  is written in terms of partial fractions and inverse Z-transform of each partial fraction is found by using the table of standard Z-transform pairs and all of them are added.

In the residue method, the inverse Z-transform of  $X(z)$  can be obtained using the equation:

$$x(n) = \frac{1}{2\pi j} \oint_c X(z) z^{n-1} dz$$

where  $c$  is a circle in the z-plane in the ROC of  $X(z)$ . The above equation can also be written as

$$\begin{aligned} x(n) &= \sum \text{Residues of } X(z) z^{n-1} \text{ at the poles inside } c \\ &= \sum_i (z - z_i) X(z) z^{n-1} \Big|_{z=z_i} \end{aligned}$$

If  $X(z)$  has repeated poles of order  $k$ , the residue at that pole is given by

$$\frac{1}{(k-1)!} \frac{d^{k-1}}{dz^{k-1}} (z - z_i)^k X(z) z^{n-1} \Big|_{z=z_i}$$

The convolution integral method uses convolution property of Z-transforms to determine the inverse Z-transform and can be used when the given  $X(z)$  can be written as the product of two functions. In this method, the given  $X(z)$  is written as the product of two functions  $X_1(z)$  and  $X_2(z)$  and the inverse Z-transform of those two functions, i.e.  $x_1(n)$  and  $x_2(n)$  are determined separately. The inverse Z-transform of  $X(z)$  is then obtained by convolving  $x_1(n)$  and  $x_2(n)$  in time domain.

**EXAMPLE 10.56** Determine the inverse Z-transform of

$$X(z) = \log_e(1 + az^{-1}); \text{ ROC: } |z| > a$$

**Solution:** Given

$$X(z) = \log_e(1 + az^{-1})$$

Differentiating the given Z-transform with respect to  $z$ , we get

$$\frac{dX(z)}{dz} = \frac{1}{1 + az^{-1}} (-az^{-2}) = \frac{-az^{-2}}{1 + az^{-1}}$$

or

$$-z \frac{dX(z)}{dz} = \frac{az^{-1}}{1 + az^{-1}} = az^{-1} \left[ \frac{1}{1 - (-a)z^{-1}} \right]$$

But from the property of differentiation in  $z$ -domain, we have

$$nx(n) \xrightarrow{\text{ZT}} -z \frac{dX(z)}{dz}$$

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Hence } nx(n) &= Z^{-1} \left[ az^{-1} \left( \frac{1}{1 - (-a)z^{-1}} \right) \right] = -Z^{-1} \left[ \frac{(-a)z^{-1}}{1 - (-a)z^{-1}} \right] \\ &= -(-a) Z^{-1} \left[ \frac{1}{z - (-a)} \right] = -(-a)[(-a)^{n-1} u(n-1)] = -(-a)^n u(n-1) \\ \therefore x(n) &= -\frac{(-a)^n}{n} u(n-1) \end{aligned}$$

*Alternately*

$$X(z) = \log_e(1 + az^{-1}) = az^{-1} - \frac{(az^{-1})^2}{2} + \frac{(az^{-1})^3}{3} - \frac{(az^{-1})^4}{4} + \dots$$

$$= - \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{(-az^{-1})^n}{n} = - \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{(-a)^n}{n} z^{-n} = -\frac{(-a)^n}{n} u(n-1)$$

$$\therefore x(n) = -\frac{(-a)^n}{n} u(n-1)$$

**EXAMPLE 10.57** Using long division, determine the inverse Z-transform of

$$X(z) = \frac{z^2 + 2z}{z^3 - 3z^2 + 4z + 1}; \text{ ROC: } |z| > 1$$

**Solution:** Since ROC is  $|z| > 1$ ,  $x(n)$  must be a causal sequence. For getting a causal sequence, the  $N(z)$  and  $D(z)$  of  $X(z)$  must be put either in descending powers of  $z$  or in ascending powers of  $z^{-1}$  before performing long division.

In the given  $X(z)$  both  $N(z)$  and  $D(z)$  are already in descending powers of  $z$ .

$$\begin{array}{r} z^{-1} + 5z^{-2} + 11z^{-3} + 12z^{-4} - 13z^{-5} \\ \hline z^3 - 3z^2 + 4z + 1 \left| \begin{array}{r} z^2 + 2z \\ z^2 - 3z + 4 + z^{-1} \\ \hline 5z - 4 - z^{-1} \\ 5z - 15 + 20z^{-1} + 5z^{-2} \\ \hline 11 - 21z^{-1} - 5z^{-2} \\ 11 - 33z^{-1} + 44z^{-2} + 11z^{-3} \\ \hline 12z^{-1} - 49z^{-2} - 11z^{-3} \\ 12z^{-1} - 36z^{-2} + 48z^{-3} + 12z^{-4} \\ \hline -13z^{-2} - 59z^{-3} - 12z^{-4} \end{array} \right. \end{array}$$

$$\therefore X(z) = z^{-1} + 5z^{-2} + 11z^{-3} + 12z^{-4} - 13z^{-5} \dots$$

$$\therefore x(n) = \{0, 1, 5, 11, 12, -13, \dots\}$$

Writing  $N(z)$  and  $D(z)$  of  $X(z)$  in ascending powers of  $z^{-1}$ , we have

$$\begin{array}{r} N(z) = \frac{z^2 + 2z}{z^3 - 3z^2 + 4z + 1} = \frac{z^{-1} + 2z^{-2}}{1 - 3z^{-1} + 4z^{-2} + z^{-3}} \\ \hline 1 - 3z^{-1} + 4z^{-2} + z^{-3} \left| \begin{array}{r} z^{-1} + 5z^{-2} + 11z^{-3} + 12z^{-4} - 13z^{-5} \\ \hline z^{-1} + 2z^{-2} \\ z^{-1} - 3z^{-2} + 4z^{-3} + z^{-4} \\ \hline 5z^{-2} - 4^{-3} - z^{-4} \\ 5z^{-2} - 15z^{-3} + 20z^{-4} + 5z^{-5} \\ \hline 11z^{-3} - 21z^{-4} - 5z^{-5} \\ 11z^{-3} - 33z^{-4} + 44z^{-5} + 11z^{-6} \\ \hline 12z^{-4} - 49z^{-5} - 11z^{-6} \\ 12z^{-4} - 36z^{-5} + 48z^{-6} + 12z^{-7} \\ \hline -13z^{-5} - 59z^{-6} - 12z^{-7} \end{array} \right. \end{array}$$

$$\therefore X(z) = z^{-1} + 5z^{-2} + 11z^{-3} + 12z^{-4} - 13z^{-5} \dots$$

$$\therefore x(n) = \{0, 1, 5, 11, 12, -13, \dots\}$$

Observe that both the methods give the same sequence  $x(n)$ .

**EXAMPLE 10.58** Using long division, determine the inverse Z-transform of

$$X(z) = \frac{z^2 + z + 2}{z^3 - 2z^2 + 3z + 4}; \text{ ROC: } |z| < 1$$

**Solution:** Since ROC is  $|z| < 1$ ,  $x(n)$  must be a non-causal sequence. For getting a non-causal sequence, the  $N(z)$  and  $D(z)$  must be put either in ascending powers of  $z$  or in descending powers of  $z^{-1}$  before performing long division.

$$\begin{aligned} X(z) &= \frac{z^2 + z + 2}{z^3 - 2z^2 + 3z + 4} = \frac{2 + z + z^2}{4 + 3z - 2z^2 + z^3} \\ &\quad \begin{array}{c} \frac{1}{2} - \frac{1}{8}z + \frac{19}{32}z^2 - \frac{81}{128}z^3 + \frac{411}{512}z^4 \\ \hline 4 + 3z - 2z^2 + z^3 \end{array} \\ &\quad \left[ \begin{array}{c} 2 + z + z^2 \\ 2 + \frac{3}{2}z - z^2 + \frac{1}{2}z^3 \\ \hline -\frac{1}{2}z + 2z^2 - \frac{1}{2}z^3 \end{array} \right] \\ &\quad \begin{array}{c} -\frac{1}{2}z - \frac{3}{8}z^2 + \frac{1}{4}z^3 - \frac{1}{8}z^4 \\ \hline \frac{19}{8}z^2 - \frac{3}{4}z^3 + \frac{1}{8}z^4 \end{array} \\ &\quad \begin{array}{c} \frac{19}{8}z^2 + \frac{57}{32}z^3 - \frac{19}{16}z^4 + \frac{19}{32}z^5 \\ \hline -\frac{81}{32}z^3 + \frac{21}{16}z^4 - \frac{19}{32}z^5 \end{array} \\ &\quad \begin{array}{c} -\frac{81}{32}z^3 - \frac{243}{128}z^4 + \frac{81}{64}z^5 - \frac{81}{128}z^6 \\ \hline \frac{411}{128}z^4 - 129z^5 + \frac{81}{128}z^6 \end{array} \end{aligned}$$

$$\therefore X(z) = \frac{1}{2} - \frac{1}{8}z + \frac{19}{32}z^2 - \frac{81}{128}z^3 + \frac{411}{512}z^4 \dots$$

$$\therefore x(n) = \left\{ \dots, \frac{411}{512}, -\frac{81}{128}, \frac{19}{32}, -\frac{1}{8}, \frac{1}{2} \right\}$$

$$\text{Also } X(z) = \frac{2 + z + z^2}{4 + 3z - 2z^2 + z^3} = \frac{2z^{-3} + z^{-2} + z^{-1}}{4z^{-3} + 3z^{-2} - 2z^{-1} + 1}$$

$$\begin{array}{r}
 \frac{1}{2} - \frac{1}{8}z + \frac{19}{32}z^2 - \frac{81}{128}z^3 + \frac{411}{512}z^4 + \dots \\
 \hline
 4z^{-3} + 3z^{-2} - 2z^{-1} + 1 \quad \left| \begin{array}{l} 2z^{-3} + z^{-2} + z^{-1} \\ 2z^{-3} + \frac{3}{2}z^{-2} - z^{-1} + \frac{1}{2} \end{array} \right. \\
 \hline
 -\frac{1}{2}z^{-2} + 2z^{-1} - \frac{1}{2} \\
 -\frac{1}{2}z^{-2} - \frac{3}{8}z^{-1} + \frac{1}{4} - \frac{1}{8}z \\
 \hline
 \frac{19}{8}z^{-1} - \frac{3}{4} + \frac{1}{8}z \\
 \frac{19}{8}z^{-1} + \frac{57}{32} - \frac{19}{16}z + \frac{19}{32}z^2 \\
 \hline
 -\frac{81}{32} + \frac{21}{16}z - \frac{19}{32}z^2 \\
 -\frac{18}{32} - \frac{243}{128}z + \frac{81}{64}z^2 - \frac{81}{128}z^3 \\
 \hline
 \frac{411}{128}z - \frac{119}{69}z^2 + \frac{81}{128}z^3
 \end{array}$$

$$\therefore X(z) = \frac{1}{2} - \frac{1}{8}z + \frac{19}{32}z^2 - \frac{81}{128}z^3 + \frac{411}{512}z^4 + \dots$$

$$\therefore x(n) = \left\{ \dots, \frac{411}{512}, -\frac{81}{128}, \frac{19}{32}, -\frac{1}{8}, \frac{1}{2} \right\}$$

↑

Observe that both the methods give the same sequence  $x(n)$ .

We can say from the above examples that, this method does not give  $x(n)$  in a closed form expression in terms of  $n$  and hence is useful only if one is interested in determining the first few terms of the sequence  $x(n)$ .

**EXAMPLE 10.59** Using the power series expansion technique, find the inverse Z-transform of the following  $X(z)$ :

$$(a) \quad X(z) = \frac{z}{2z^2 - 3z + 1}; \text{ ROC; } |z| < \frac{1}{2} \quad (b) \quad X(z) = \frac{z}{2z^2 - 3z + 1}; \text{ ROC; } |z| > 1$$

**Solution:**

$$(a) \quad \text{Given} \quad X(z) = \frac{z}{2z^2 - 3z + 1}; \text{ ROC; } |z| < \frac{1}{2}$$

Since ROC is  $|z| < 1/2$ , the given signal is a non-causal signal. So express both numerator and denominator in ascending powers of  $z$  or in descending powers of  $z^{-1}$  and make long division.

$$\begin{array}{r}
 z + 3z^2 + 7z^3 + 15z^4 + 31z^5 + 63z^6 + \dots \\
 \hline
 1 - 3z + 2z^2 \left| \begin{array}{l} z \\ z - 3z^2 + 2z^3 \\ \hline 3z^2 - 2z^3 \\ 3z^2 - 9z^3 + 6z^4 \\ \hline 7z^3 - 6z^4 \\ 7z^3 - 21z^4 + 14z^5 \\ \hline 15z^4 - 14z^5 \\ 15z^4 - 45z^5 + 30z^6 \\ \hline 31z^5 - 30z^6 \\ 31z^5 - 93z^6 + 62z^7 \\ \hline 63z^6 - 62z^7 \end{array} \right.
 \end{array}$$

$$\therefore X(z) = \frac{z}{2z^2 - 3z + 1}; \text{ ROC; } |z| < \frac{1}{2} = z + 3z^2 + 7z^3 + 15z^4 + 31z^5 + 63z^6 + \dots$$

$$\begin{aligned}
 \therefore x(n) &= Z^{-1}[z/(2z^2 - 3z + 1)] \\
 &= \delta(n+1) + 3\delta(n+2) + 7\delta(n+3) + 15\delta(n+4) + 31\delta(n+5) + 63\delta(n+6) + \dots \\
 \therefore x(n) &= \{\dots, 63, 31, 15, 7, 3, 1, 0\}
 \end{aligned}$$

(b) Given  $X(z) = z/(2z^2 - 3z + 1)$ ; ROC;  $|z| > 1$

Since ROC is  $|z| > 1$ , the given signal is a causal signal. So express both numerator and denominator in descending powers of  $z$  or in ascending powers of  $z^{-1}$  before long division.

$$\begin{array}{r}
 \frac{1}{2}z^{-1} + \frac{3}{4}z^{-2} + \frac{7}{8}z^{-3} + \frac{15}{16}z^{-4} + \frac{31}{32}z^{-5} \\
 \hline
 2z^2 - 3z + 1 \left| \begin{array}{l} z \\ z - \frac{3}{2} + \frac{1}{2}z^{-1} \\ \hline \frac{3}{2} - \frac{1}{2}z^{-1} \\ \frac{3}{2} - \frac{9}{4}z^{-1} + \frac{3}{4}z^{-2} \\ \hline \frac{7}{4}z^{-1} - \frac{3}{4}z^{-2} \\ \frac{7}{4}z^{-1} - \frac{21}{8}z^{-2} + \frac{7}{8}z^{-3} \\ \hline \frac{15}{8}z^{-2} - \frac{7}{8}z^{-3} \\ \frac{15}{8}z^{-2} - \frac{45}{16}z^{-3} + \frac{15}{16}z^{-4} \\ \hline \frac{31}{16}z^{-3} - \frac{15}{16}z^{-4} \end{array} \right.
 \end{array}$$

$$\begin{aligned}\therefore X(z) &= \frac{z}{2z^2 - 3z + 1}; \text{ ROC; } |z| > 1 = \frac{1}{2}z^{-1} + \frac{3}{4}z^{-2} + \frac{7}{8}z^{-3} + \frac{15}{16}z^{-4} + \frac{31}{32}z^{-5} + \dots \\ \therefore x(n) &= Z^{-1}\left(\frac{z}{2z^2 - 3z + 1}\right) \\ &= \frac{1}{2}\delta(n-1) + \frac{3}{4}\delta(n-2) + \frac{7}{8}\delta(n-3) + \frac{15}{16}\delta(n-4) + \frac{31}{32}\delta(n-5) + \dots \\ \therefore x(n) &= \left\{0, \frac{1}{2}, \frac{3}{4}, \frac{7}{8}, \frac{15}{16}, \frac{31}{32}, \dots\right\}\end{aligned}$$

**EXAMPLE 10.60** Determine the inverse Z-transform of  $X(z) = \frac{1}{2 - 4z^{-1} + 2z^{-2}}$  by long division method when

(a) ROC;  $|z| > 1$

(b) ROC;  $|z| < 1/2$

**Solution:** Given  $X(z) = \frac{1}{2 - 4z^{-1} + 2z^{-2}} = \frac{z^2}{2z^2 - 4z + 2}$

(a) ROC;  $|z| > 1$

When ROC is  $|z| > 1$ , all the terms must be causal. So express both numerator and denominator of  $X(z)$  in descending powers of  $z$  before long division.

$$\begin{array}{r} \frac{1}{2} + z^{-1} + \frac{3}{2}z^{-2} + 2z^{-3} + \frac{5}{2}z^{-4} + 3z^{-5} \\ \hline 2z^2 - 4z + 2 \quad \left[ \begin{array}{r} z^2 \\ z^2 - 2z + 1 \\ \hline 2z - 1 \\ 2z - 4 + 2z^{-1} \\ \hline 3 - 2z^{-1} \\ 3 - 6z^{-1} + 3z^{-2} \\ \hline 4z^{-1} - 3z^{-2} \\ 4z^{-1} - 8z^{-2} + 4z^{-3} \\ \hline 5z^{-2} - 4z^{-3} \\ 5z^{-2} - 10z^{-3} + 5z^{-4} \\ \hline 6z^{-3} - 5z^{-4} \end{array} \right] \end{array}$$

$$\therefore X(z) = \frac{1}{2 - 4z^{-1} + 2z^{-2}} = \frac{1}{2} + z^{-1} + \frac{3}{2}z^{-2} + 2z^{-3} + \frac{5}{2}z^{-4} + 3z^{-5} + \dots$$

$$\therefore x(n) = Z^{-1}\left(\frac{1}{2 - 4z^{-1} + 2z^{-2}}\right)$$

$$= \frac{1}{2}\delta(n) + \delta(n-1) + \frac{3}{2}\delta(n-2) + 2\delta(n-3) + \frac{5}{2}\delta(n-4) + 3\delta(n-5) + \dots$$

$$\therefore x(n) = \left\{ \frac{1}{2}, 1, \frac{3}{2}, 2, \frac{5}{2}, 3, \dots \right\}$$

(b) ROC;  $|z| < 1/2$

When ROC is  $|z| < 1/2$  all the terms must be anticausal. So express both numerator and denominator in ascending powers of  $z$  or in descending powers of  $z^{-1}$  before making long division.

$$\therefore X(z) = \frac{z^2}{2 - 4z + 2z^2}$$

$$\begin{array}{r} \frac{1}{2}z^2 + z^3 + \frac{3}{2}z^4 + 2z^5 + \frac{5}{2}z^6 + \dots \\ \hline 2 - 4z + 2z^2 \end{array}$$

$$\begin{array}{r} z^2 \\ z^2 - 2z^3 + z^4 \\ \hline 2z^3 - z^4 \\ 2z^3 - 4z^4 + 2z^5 \\ \hline 3z^4 - 2z^5 \\ 3z^4 - 6z^5 + 3z^6 \\ \hline 4z^5 - 3z^6 \\ 4z^5 - 8z^6 + 4z^7 \\ \hline 5z^6 - 4z^7 \end{array}$$

$$\therefore X(z) = \frac{1}{2 - 4z^{-1} + 2z^{-2}} = \frac{1}{2}z^2 + z^3 + \frac{3}{2}z^4 + 2z^5 + \frac{5}{2}z^6 + \dots$$

$$\therefore x(n) = Z^{-1}[X(z)] = Z^{-1}\left(\frac{1}{2 - 4z^{-1} + 2z^{-2}}\right) \text{ for ROC; } |z| < \frac{1}{2}$$

$$x(n) = \frac{1}{2} \delta(n+2) + \delta(n+3) + \frac{3}{2} \delta(n+4) + 2\delta(n+5) + \frac{5}{2} \delta(n+6) + \dots$$

$$\therefore x(n) = \left\{ \dots, \frac{5}{2}, 2, \frac{3}{2}, 1, \frac{1}{2}, 0, 0 \right\}$$

**EXAMPLE 10.61** Find the inverse Z-transform of  $X(z)$  using long division method.

$$X(z) = \frac{2 + 3z^{-1}}{(1 + z^{-1})(1 + (1/4)z^{-1} - (1/8)z^{-2})}$$

**Solution:** Given  $X(z) = \frac{2 + 3z^{-1}}{(1 + z^{-1})(1 + (1/4)z^{-1} - (1/8)z^{-2})} = \frac{2 + 3z^{-1}}{1 + (5/4)z^{-1} + (1/8)z^{-2} - (1/8)z^{-3}}$

Let us assume that a causal sequence is to be obtained.

*Long division*

$$\begin{array}{r}
 2 + \frac{1}{2}z^{-1} - \frac{7}{8}z^{-2} + \frac{41}{32}z^{-3} - \frac{183}{128}z^{-4} + \dots \\
 \boxed{1 + \frac{5}{4}z^{-1} + \frac{1}{8}z^{-2} - \frac{1}{8}z^{-3}} \quad \boxed{2 + 3z^{-1}} \\
 \begin{array}{c}
 2 + \frac{5}{2}z^{-1} + \frac{1}{4}z^{-2} - \frac{1}{4}z^{-3} \\
 \hline
 \frac{1}{2}z^{-1} - \frac{1}{4}z^{-2} + \frac{1}{4}z^{-3} \\
 \hline
 \frac{1}{2}z^{-1} + \frac{5}{8}z^{-2} + \frac{1}{16}z^{-3} - \frac{1}{16}z^{-4} \\
 \hline
 -\frac{7}{8}z^{-2} + \frac{3}{16}z^{-3} + \frac{1}{16}z^{-4} \\
 \hline
 -\frac{7}{8}z^{-2} - \frac{35}{32}z^{-3} - \frac{7}{64}z^{-4} + \frac{7}{64}z^{-5} \\
 \hline
 \frac{41}{32}z^{-3} + \frac{11}{64}z^{-4} - \frac{7}{64}z^{-5} \\
 \hline
 \frac{41}{32}z^{-3} + \frac{205}{128}z^{-4} + \frac{41}{256}z^{-5} - \frac{41}{256}z^{-6} \\
 \hline
 -\frac{183}{128}z^{-4}
 \end{array}
 \end{array}$$

$\therefore X(z) = 2 + \frac{1}{2}z^{-1} - \frac{7}{8}z^{-2} + \frac{41}{32}z^{-3} - \frac{183}{128}z^{-4} + \dots$

Taking inverse Z-transform on both sides, we have

$$x(n) = 2\delta(n) + \frac{1}{2}\delta(n-1) - \frac{7}{8}\delta(n-2) + \frac{41}{32}\delta(n-3) - \frac{183}{128}\delta(n-4) + \dots$$

or  $x(n) = \left\{ 2, \frac{1}{2}, \frac{-7}{8}, \frac{41}{32}, \frac{-183}{128}, \dots \right\}$

**EXAMPLE 10.62** Given

$$(a) \quad X(z) = \frac{1}{1 - az^{-1}}; \text{ ROC}; |z| > a \qquad (b) \quad X(z) = \frac{z^2}{z^2 - 1.5z + 0.5}; |z| < 0.5$$

Find  $x(n)$  using long division.

*Solution:*

$$(a) \quad \text{Given} \quad X(z) = \frac{1}{1 - az^{-1}} = \frac{z}{z - a}; \text{ ROC}; |z| > a$$

Since ROC is  $|z| > a$ , the signal must be a causal signal. Hence, the numerator and denominator must be in descending powers of  $z$  for long division.

$$\begin{array}{c}
 \frac{1 + \frac{a}{z} + \frac{a^2}{z^2} + \frac{a^3}{z^3} + \frac{a^4}{z^4} + \dots}{z - a} \\
 \overline{\left| \begin{array}{c} z \\ z - a \\ \hline a \end{array} \right.} \\
 \frac{a - \frac{a^2}{z}}{a^2} \\
 \overline{\left| \begin{array}{c} z \\ \hline a^2 \end{array} \right.} \\
 \frac{\frac{a^2}{z} - \frac{a^3}{z^2}}{a^3} \\
 \overline{\left| \begin{array}{c} z^2 \\ \hline a^3 \end{array} \right.} \\
 \frac{\frac{a^3}{z^2} - \frac{a^4}{z^3}}{a^4} \\
 \overline{\left| \begin{array}{c} z^3 \\ \hline a^4 \end{array} \right.}
 \end{array}$$

$$\therefore X(z) = \frac{z}{z - a} = 1 + az^{-1} + a^2z^{-2} + a^3z^{-3} + a^4z^{-4} + \dots$$

Taking inverse Z-transform on both sides, we have

$$\begin{aligned}
 x(n) &= 1 + a\delta(n-1) + a^2\delta(n-2) + a^3\delta(n-3) + a^4\delta(n-4) + \dots \\
 \therefore x(n) &= \{1, a, a^2, a^3, a^4, \dots\}
 \end{aligned}$$

$$(b) \text{ Given } X(z) = \frac{z^2}{z^2 - 1.5z + 0.5}; |z| < 0.5$$

Since ROC is  $|z| < 0.5$  the signal must be an anticausal signal. Hence the numerator and denominator must be in ascending powers of  $z$  for long division.

$$\begin{array}{c}
 \frac{2z^2 + 6z^3 + 14z^4 + 30z^5 + \dots}{0.5 - 1.5z + z^2} \\
 \overline{\left| \begin{array}{c} z^2 \\ z^2 - 3z^3 + 2z^4 \\ \hline 3z^3 - 2z^4 \end{array} \right.} \\
 \frac{3z^3 - 9z^4 + 6z^5}{7z^4 - 6z^5} \\
 \overline{\left| \begin{array}{c} 7z^4 - 21z^5 + 14z^6 \\ 15z^5 - 14z^6 \end{array} \right.}
 \end{array}$$

$$\begin{aligned}\therefore X(z) &= \frac{z}{z^2 - 1.5z + 0.5} = 2z^2 + 6z^3 + 14z^4 + 30z^5 + \dots \\ \therefore x(n) &= 2\delta(n+2) + 6\delta(n+3) + 14\delta(n+4) + 30\delta(n+5) + \dots \\ &= \{ \dots, 30, 14, 6, 2, 0, 0 \}\end{aligned}$$

### 10.7.2 Partial Fraction Expansion Method

To find the inverse Z-transform of  $X(z)$  using partial fraction expansion method, its denominator must be in factored form. It is similar to the partial fraction expansion method used earlier for the inversion of Laplace transforms. However, in this case, we try to obtain the partial fraction expansion of  $X(z)/z$  instead of  $X(z)$ . This is because, the Z-transform of time domain signals have  $z$  in their numerators. This method can be applied only if  $X(z)/z$  is a proper rational function (i.e. the order of its denominator is greater than the order of its numerator). If  $X(z)/z$  is not proper, then it should be written as the sum of a polynomial and a proper function before applying this method. The disadvantage of this method is that, the denominator must be factored. Using known Z-transform pairs and the properties of Z-transform, the inverse Z-transform of each partial fraction can be found.

Consider a rational function  $X(z)/z$  given by

$$\frac{X(z)}{z} = \frac{b_0 z^M + b_1 z^{M-1} + b_2 z^{M-2} + \dots + b_M}{z^N + a_1 z^{N-1} + a_2 z^{N-2} + \dots + a_N}$$

When  $M < N$ , it is a proper function.

When  $M \geq N$ , it is not a proper function, so write it as:

$$\frac{X(z)}{z} = \underbrace{c_0 z^{N-M} + c_1 z^{N-M-1} + \dots + c_{N-M}}_{\text{polynomial}} + \underbrace{\frac{N_1(z)}{D(z)}}_{\text{Proper rational function}}$$

There are two cases for the proper rational function  $X(z)/z$ .

**CASE 1**  $X(z)/z$  has all distinct poles.

When all the poles of  $X(z)/z$  are distinct, then  $X(z)/z$  can be expanded in the form

$$\frac{X(z)}{z} = \frac{C_1}{z - P_1} + \frac{C_2}{z - P_2} + \dots + \frac{C_N}{z - P_N}$$

The coefficients  $C_1, C_2, \dots, C_N$  can be determined using the formula

$$C_k = (z - P_k) \left. \frac{X(z)}{z} \right|_{z=P_k}, \quad k = 1, 2, \dots, N$$

**CASE 2**  $X(z)/z$  has  $l$ -repeated poles and the remaining  $N-l$  poles are simple. Let us say the  $k$ th pole is repeated  $l$  times. Then,  $X(z)/z$  can be written as:

$$\frac{X(z)}{z} = \underbrace{\frac{C_1}{z - P_1} + \frac{C_2}{z - P_2} + \dots + \frac{C_{k1}}{z - P_k}}_{(N-l) \text{ terms}} + \frac{C_{k2}}{(z - P_k)^2} + \dots + \frac{C_{kl}}{(z - P_k)^l}$$

where

$$C_{kl} = (z - P_k)^l \left. \frac{X(z)}{z} \right|_{z=P_k}$$

In general,

$$C_{ki} = \frac{1}{(l-i)!} \left. \frac{d^{l-i}}{dz^{l-i}} \left[ (z - P_k)^l \frac{X(z)}{z} \right] \right|_{z=P_k}$$

If  $X(z)$  has a complex pole, then the partial fraction can be expressed as:

$$\frac{X(z)}{z} = \frac{C_1}{z - P_1} + \frac{C_1^*}{z - P_1^*}$$

where  $C_1^*$  is complex conjugate of  $C_1$  and  $P_1^*$  is complex conjugate of  $P_1$ .

In other words, complex conjugate poles result in complex conjugate coefficients in the partial fraction expansion.

**EXAMPLE 10.63** Find the inverse Z-transform of

$$X(z) = \frac{z^{-1}}{3 - 4z^{-1} + z^{-2}}; \text{ ROC: } |z| > 1$$

**Solution:** Given  $X(z) = \frac{z^{-1}}{3 - 4z^{-1} + z^{-2}} = \frac{z}{3z^2 - 4z + 1}$

$$= \frac{z}{3[z^2 - (4z/3) + (1/3)]} = \frac{1}{3} \frac{z}{(z-1)[z-(1/3)]}$$

$$\therefore \frac{X(z)}{z} = \frac{1}{3} \frac{1}{(z-1)[z-(1/3)]} = \frac{A}{z-1} + \frac{B}{z-(1/3)}$$

where  $A$  and  $B$  can be evaluated as follows:

$$A = (z-1) \left. \frac{X(z)}{z} \right|_{z=1} = (z-1) \frac{1}{3} \left. \frac{1}{(z-1)[z-(1/3)]} \right|_{z=1} = \frac{1}{3} \frac{1}{1-(1/3)} = \frac{1}{2}$$

$$B = \left( z - \frac{1}{3} \right) \left. \frac{X(z)}{z} \right|_{z=1/3} = \left( z - \frac{1}{3} \right) \frac{1}{3} \left. \frac{1}{(z-1)[z-(1/3)]} \right|_{z=1/3} = \frac{1}{3} \frac{1}{(1/3)-1} = -\frac{1}{2}$$

$$\therefore \frac{X(z)}{z} = \frac{1}{2} \frac{1}{z-1} - \frac{1}{2} \frac{1}{z-(1/3)}$$

or

$$X(z) = \frac{1}{2} \left[ \frac{z}{z-1} - \frac{z}{z-(1/3)} \right]; \text{ ROC; } |z| > 1$$

Since ROC is  $|z| > 1$ , both the sequences must be causal. Therefore, taking inverse Z-transform, we have

$$x(n) = \frac{1}{2} \left[ u(n) - \left( \frac{1}{3} \right)^n u(n) \right]; \text{ ROC; } |z| > 1$$

**EXAMPLE 10.64** Find the inverse Z-transform of the following:

$$X(z) = \frac{(1/6)z^{-1}}{[1 - (1/2)z^{-1}][1 - (1/3)z^{-1}]}; \text{ ROC; } |z| > \frac{1}{2}$$

**Solution:** Given  $X(z) = \frac{(1/6)z^{-1}}{[1 - (1/2)z^{-1}][1 - (1/3)z^{-1}]}$ ; ROC;  $|z| > \frac{1}{2}$

Multiplying the numerator and denominator of  $X(z)$  by  $z^2$ , we have

$$X(z) = \frac{(1/6)z}{[z - (1/2)][z - (1/3)]}$$

The above equation can be expressed in partial fraction form as:

$$\frac{X(z)}{z} = \frac{1/6}{[z - (1/2)][z - (1/3)]} = \frac{C_1}{z - (1/2)} + \frac{C_2}{z - (1/3)}$$

where  $C_1$  and  $C_2$  can be evaluated as follows:

$$C_1 = \left( z - \frac{1}{2} \right) \frac{X(z)}{z} \Big|_{z=1/2} = \frac{1}{6} \frac{1}{z - (1/3)} \Big|_{z=1/2} = \frac{1}{6} \frac{1}{(1/2) - (1/3)} = 1$$

$$C_2 = \left( z - \frac{1}{3} \right) \frac{X(z)}{z} \Big|_{z=1/3} = \frac{1}{6} \frac{1}{z - (1/2)} \Big|_{z=1/3} = \frac{1}{6} \frac{1/6}{(1/3) - (1/2)} = -1$$

$$\therefore \frac{X(z)}{z} = \frac{1}{z - (1/2)} - \frac{1}{z - (1/3)}$$

or  $X(z) = \frac{z}{z - (1/2)} - \frac{z}{z - (1/3)}; \text{ ROC; } |z| > \frac{1}{2}$

Since ROC is  $|z| > 1/2$ , both the sequences must be causal. Taking inverse Z-transform, we have

$$x(n) = \left( \frac{1}{2} \right)^n u(n) - \left( \frac{1}{3} \right)^n u(n)$$

**EXAMPLE 10.65** Find the inverse Z-transform of

$$X(z) = \frac{z(z-1)}{(z+1)^3(z+2)}; \text{ ROC: } |z| > 2$$

**Solution:** Given  $X(z) = \frac{z(z-1)}{(z+1)^3(z+2)}$ ; ROC;  $|z| > 2$

$$\therefore \frac{X(z)}{z} = \frac{z-1}{(z+1)^3(z+2)} = \frac{C_1}{z+1} + \frac{C_2}{(z+1)^2} + \frac{C_3}{(z+1)^3} + \frac{C_4}{z+2}$$

where the constants  $C_1$ ,  $C_2$ ,  $C_3$  and  $C_4$  can be obtained as follows:

$$\begin{aligned} C_4 &= (z+2) \left. \frac{X(z)}{z} \right|_{z=-2} = \left. \frac{z-1}{(z+1)^3} \right|_{z=-2} = \frac{-2-1}{(-2+1)^3} = 3 \\ C_3 &= (z+1)^3 \left. \frac{X(z)}{z} \right|_{z=-1} = \left. \frac{z-1}{(z+2)} \right|_{z=-1} = \frac{-1-1}{-1+2} = -2 \\ C_2 &= \frac{1}{1!} \left. \frac{d}{dz} \left[ (z+1)^3 \frac{X(z)}{z} \right] \right|_{z=-1} = \left. \frac{d}{dz} \left( \frac{z-1}{z+2} \right) \right|_{z=-1} = \left. \frac{(z+2)(1)-(z-1)(1)}{(z+2)^2} \right|_{z=-1} = 3 \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned} C_1 &= \frac{1}{2!} \left. \frac{d^2}{dz^2} \left[ (z+1)^3 \frac{X(z)}{z} \right] \right|_{z=-1} = \frac{1}{2!} \left. \frac{d^2}{dz^2} \left( \frac{z-1}{z+2} \right) \right|_{z=-1} \\ &= \frac{1}{2!} \left. \frac{d}{dz} \left[ \frac{3}{(z+2)^2} \right] \right|_{z=-1} = \frac{1}{2} \left. \frac{-3 \times 2(z+2)}{(z+2)^4} \right|_{z=-1} = \frac{-3(-1+2)}{(-1+2)^3} = -3 \end{aligned}$$

$$\therefore \frac{X(z)}{z} = \frac{-3}{z+1} + \frac{3}{(z+1)^2} - \frac{2}{(z+1)^3} + \frac{3}{z+2}$$

$$\therefore X(z) = \frac{-3z}{z+1} + \frac{3z}{(z+1)^2} - \frac{2z}{(z+1)^3} + \frac{3z}{z+2}; \text{ ROC: } |z| > 2$$

Since ROC is  $|z| > 2$ , all the above sequences must be causal. Taking inverse Z-transform on both sides, we have

$$\begin{aligned} x(n) &= -3(-1)^n u(n) + 3n(-1)^n u(n) - 2(n)(n-1)(-1)^n u(n) + 3(-2)^n u(n) \\ &= [-3 + 3n - 2n(n-1)] (-1)^n u(n) + 3(-2)^n u(n) \end{aligned}$$

**EXAMPLE 10.66** Find the inverse Z-transform of

$$X(z) = \frac{2z-7}{z^2-5z+6}; \text{ ROC: } |z| < 2$$

**Solution:** Given  $X(z) = \frac{2z-7}{z^2-5z+6}$ ; ROC;  $|z| < 2$

$$\frac{X(z)}{z} = \frac{2z-7}{z(z^2-5z+6)} = \frac{2z-7}{z(z-2)(z-3)} = \frac{C_1}{z} + \frac{C_2}{z-2} + \frac{C_3}{z-3}$$

where  $C_1$ ,  $C_2$  and  $C_3$  are determined as follows:

$$C_1 = z \frac{X(z)}{z} \Big|_{z=0} = \frac{2z-7}{(z-2)(z-3)} \Big|_{z=0} = -\frac{7}{6}$$

$$C_2 = (z-2) \frac{X(z)}{z} \Big|_{z=2} = \frac{2z-7}{z(z-3)} \Big|_{z=2} = \frac{3}{2}$$

$$C_3 = (z-3) \frac{X(z)}{z} \Big|_{z=3} = \frac{2z-7}{z(z-2)} \Big|_{z=3} = -\frac{1}{3}$$

$$\therefore \frac{X(z)}{z} = -\frac{7}{6} \left( \frac{1}{z} \right) + \frac{3}{2} \left( \frac{1}{z-2} \right) - \frac{1}{3} \left( \frac{1}{z-3} \right)$$

$$\therefore X(z) = -\frac{7}{6} + \frac{3}{2} \frac{z}{z-2} - \frac{1}{3} \frac{z}{z-3}; \text{ ROC; } |z| < 2$$

Since ROC is  $|z| < 2$ , all the sequences must be anticausal. Hence taking inverse Z-transform of  $X(z)$ , we have

$$x(n) = -\frac{7}{6} \delta(n) - \frac{3}{2} (2)^n u(-n-1) + \frac{1}{3} (3)^n u(-n-1)$$

**EXAMPLE 10.67** Find the inverse Z-transform of

$$X(z) = \frac{3z^{-1}}{(1-z^{-1})(1-2z^{-1})}$$

- (a) If ROC;  $|z| > 2$  (b) If ROC;  $|z| < 1$  (c) If ROC;  $1 < |z| < 2$

**Solution:** Given  $X(z) = \frac{3z^{-1}}{(1-z^{-1})(1-2z^{-1})}$

Multiplying the numerator and denominator by  $z^2$ , we have

$$X(z) = \frac{3z}{(z-1)(z-2)}$$

$$\therefore \frac{X(z)}{z} = \frac{3}{(z-1)(z-2)} = \frac{C_1}{z-1} + \frac{C_2}{z-2}$$

where  $C_1$  and  $C_2$  are determined as follows:

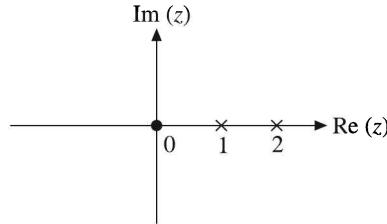
$$C_1 = (z - 1) \frac{X(z)}{z} \Big|_{z=1} = \frac{3}{z - 2} \Big|_{z=1} = -3$$

$$C_2 = (z - 2) \frac{X(z)}{z} \Big|_{z=2} = \frac{3}{z - 1} \Big|_{z=2} = 3$$

$$\therefore \frac{X(z)}{z} = -\frac{3}{z - 1} + \frac{3}{z - 2}$$

or  $X(z) = -3 \frac{z}{z - 1} + 3 \frac{z}{z - 2}$

The pole-zero plot is shown in Figure 10.14.



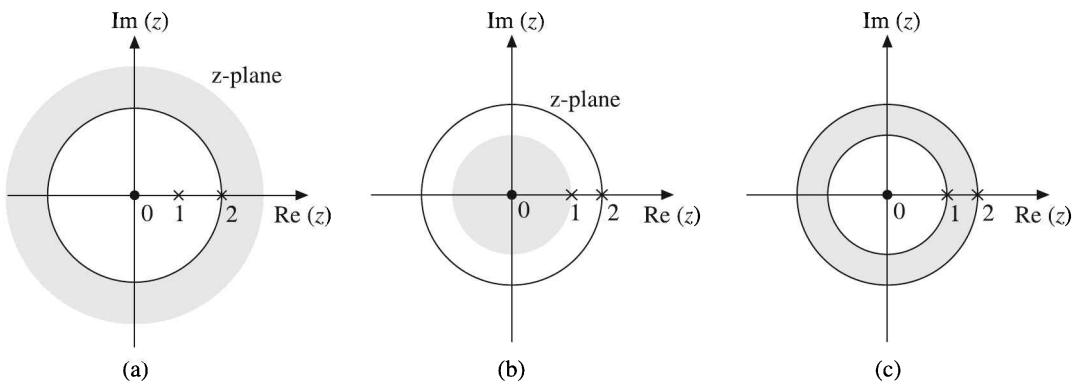
**Figure 10.14** Pole-zero plot for Example 10.67.

We know that the ROC of the sum of two signals is equal to the intersection of the ROCs of the two signals. Therefore,

- (a) If ROC is  $|z| > 2$ , both the signals must be causal.

Hence  $x(n) = -3u(n) + 3(2)^n u(n)$

The ROC is sketched as shown in Figure 10.15(a).



**Figure 10.15** (a) ROC  $|z| > 2$ , (b) ROC  $|z| < 1$ , (c) ROC  $1 < |z| < 2$ .

- (b) If ROC is  $|z| < 1$ , both the signals must be anticausal.

Hence  $x(n) = 3u(-n-1) - 3(2)^n u(-n-1)$

The ROC is sketched as shown in Figure 10.15(b).

- (c) If ROC is  $1 < |z| < 2$ , one signal (with pole at  $z = 1$ ) must be causal and the second one (with pole at  $z = 2$ ) must be anticausal.

Hence  $x(n) = 3u(n) - 3(2)^n u(-n-1)$

The ROC is sketched as shown in Figure 10.15(c).

**EXAMPLE 10.68** Determine all possible signals  $x(n)$  associated with Z-transform.

$$X(z) = \frac{(1/4)z^{-1}}{[1 - (1/2)z^{-1}][1 - (1/4)z^{-1}]}$$

**Solution:** Given  $X(z) = \frac{(1/4)z^{-1}}{[1 - (1/2)z^{-1}][1 - (1/4)z^{-1}]}$

Multiplying the numerator and denominator with  $z^2$ , we obtain

$$X(z) = \frac{(1/4)z}{[z - (1/2)][z - (1/4)]}$$

Now,  $X(z)$  has two poles, one at  $z = (1/2)$  and the other at  $z = 1/4$  as shown in Figure 10.16. The possible ROCs are:

- (a) ROC;  $|z| > \frac{1}{2}$       (b) ROC;  $|z| < \frac{1}{4}$       (c) ROC;  $\frac{1}{4} < |z| < \frac{1}{2}$

Hence there are three possible signals  $x(n)$  corresponding to these ROCs.

Now,  $\frac{X(z)}{z} = \frac{1/4}{[z - (1/2)][z - (1/4)]} = \frac{C_1}{z - (1/2)} + \frac{C_2}{z - (1/4)} = \frac{1}{z - (1/2)} - \frac{1}{z - (1/4)}$

or  $X(z) = \frac{z}{z - (1/2)} - \frac{z}{z - (1/4)}$

- (a) ROC;  $|z| > \frac{1}{2}$

Here both the poles, i.e.  $z = (1/2)$  and  $z = (1/4)$  correspond to causal terms.

$$\therefore x(n) = \left(\frac{1}{2}\right)^n u(n) - \left(\frac{1}{4}\right)^n u(n)$$

- (b) ROC;  $|z| < \frac{1}{4}$

Here both the poles must correspond to anticausal terms.

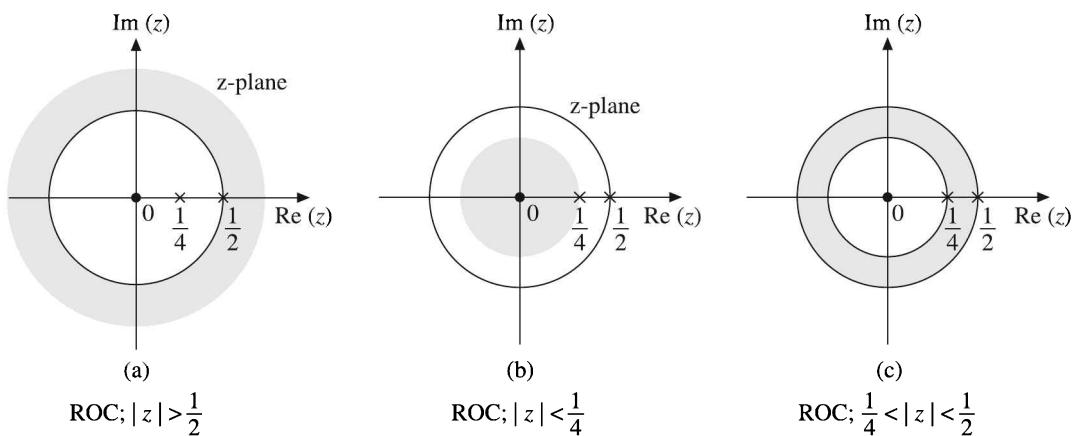
$$\therefore x(n) = -\left(\frac{1}{2}\right)^n u(-n-1) + \left(\frac{1}{4}\right)^n u(-n-1)$$

$$(c) \text{ ROC; } \frac{1}{4} < |z| < \frac{1}{2}$$

Here the pole at  $z = (1/4)$  must correspond to causal term and the pole at  $z = (1/2)$  must correspond to anticausal term.

$$\therefore x(n) = -\left(\frac{1}{2}\right)^n u(-n-1) - \left(\frac{1}{4}\right)^n u(n)$$

The ROCs are shown in Figure 10.16.



**Figure 10.16** ROCs for Example 10.68.

**EXAMPLE 10.69** Determine all possible values of  $x(n)$  for

$$X(z) = \frac{1 + 2z^{-1} + z^{-2}}{1 - (3/2)z^{-1} + (1/2)z^{-2}}$$

**Solution:** Given

$$X(z) = \frac{1 + 2z^{-1} + z^{-2}}{1 - (3/2)z^{-1} + (1/2)z^{-2}}$$

Multiplying the numerator and denominator by  $z^2$ , we have

$$X(z) = \frac{z^2 + 2z + 1}{z^2 - (3/2)z + (1/2)} = \frac{(z+1)^2}{(z-1)[z-(1/2)]}$$

$$\therefore \frac{X(z)}{z} = \frac{(z+1)^2}{z(z-1)[z-(1/2)]} = \frac{C_1}{z} + \frac{C_2}{z-1} + \frac{C_3}{z-(1/2)} = \frac{2}{z} + \frac{8}{z-1} - \frac{9}{z-(1/2)}$$

$$\therefore X(z) = 2 + \frac{8z}{z-1} - \frac{9z}{z-(1/2)}$$

$X(z)$  has two poles one at  $z = 1$  and the other at  $z = (1/2)$ . The possible ROCs are:

$$(a) \ |z| > 1 \quad (b) \ |z| < \frac{1}{2} \quad (c) \ \frac{1}{2} < |z| < 1$$

So there are three possible values of  $x(n)$ .

(a) When ROC;  $|z| > 1$ , both terms must be causal.

$$\therefore x(n) = 2\delta(n) + 8u(n) - 9\left(\frac{1}{2}\right)^n u(n)$$

(b) When ROC;  $|z| < \frac{1}{2}$ , both terms must be anticausal.

$$\therefore x(n) = 2\delta(n) - 8u(-n-1) + 9\left(\frac{1}{2}\right)^n u(-n-1)$$

(c) When ROC;  $\frac{1}{2} < |z| < 1$ , the term with pole at  $z = 1/2$  must be causal and the term with pole at  $z = 1$  must be anticausal.

$$\therefore x(n) = 2\delta(n) - 8u(-n-1) - 9\left(\frac{1}{2}\right)^n u(n)$$

**EXAMPLE 10.70** Determine all possible values of  $x(n)$  for

$$X(z) = \frac{z^3 + z^2 + (3/2)z + (1/2)}{z^3 + (3/2)z^2 + (1/2)z}$$

**Solution:** Given  $X(z) = \frac{z^3 + z^2 + (3/2)z + (1/2)}{z^3 + (3/2)z^2 + (1/2)z} = \frac{z^3 + z^2 + (3/2)z + (1/2)}{z(z+1)[z+(1/2)]}$

$$\therefore \frac{X(z)}{z} = \frac{z^3 + z^2 + (3/2)z + (1/2)}{z^2(z+1)[z+(1/2)]}$$

Taking partial fractions, we have

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{X(z)}{z} &= \frac{z^3 + z^2 + (3/2)z + (1/2)}{z^2(z+1)[z+(1/2)]} = \frac{A}{z^2} + \frac{B}{z} + \frac{C}{z+1} + \frac{D}{z+(1/2)} = \frac{1}{z^2} + \frac{2}{z+1} - \frac{1}{z+(1/2)} \\ \therefore X(z) &= \frac{1}{z} + \frac{2z}{z+1} - \frac{z}{z+(1/2)} = z^{-1} + 2\frac{z}{z+1} - \frac{z}{z+(1/2)} \end{aligned}$$

(a) When ROC is  $|z| > 1$ , both the terms must be causal.

$$\therefore x(n) = \delta(n-1) + 2(-1)^n u(n) - \left(-\frac{1}{2}\right)^n u(n)$$

- (b) When ROC is  $|z| > 1/2$ , both the terms must be anticausal.

$$\therefore x(n) = \delta(n-1) - 2(-1)^n u(-n-1) + \left(-\frac{1}{2}\right)^n u(-n-1)$$

- (c) When ROC is  $1/2 < |z| < 1$ , the term with pole at  $z = 1/2$  must be causal and the term with pole at  $z = 1$  must be anticausal.

$$\therefore x(n) = \delta(n-1) + 2(-1)^n u(n) + \left(-\frac{1}{2}\right)^n u(-n-1)$$

**EXAMPLE 10.71** Determine all possible inverse Z-transforms of the following  $X(z)$ :

$$X(z) = \frac{4 - 3z^{-1} + 3z^{-2}}{(z+2)(z-3)^2}$$

using partial fraction expansion method.

**Solution:** Given  $X(z) = \frac{4 - 3z^{-1} + 3z^{-2}}{(z+2)(z-3)^2} = \frac{z^{-2}(4z^2 - 3z + 3)}{(z+2)(z-3)^2}$

The given  $X(z)$  has 3 poles, one at  $z = -2$  and a double pole at  $z = 3$ . So it can have three ROCs.

- (a) ROC;  $|z| > 3$     (b) ROC;  $|z| < 2$     (c) ROC;  $2 < |z| < 3$

So it can have three inverse Z-transforms.

Now,  $\frac{X(z)}{z} = \frac{z^{-2}(4z^2 - 3z + 3)}{z(z+2)(z-3)^2} = z^{-3} \left[ \frac{4z^2 - 3z + 3}{(z+2)(z-3)^2} \right]$

Let  $X_1(z) = \frac{(4z^2 - 3z + 3)}{(z+2)(z-3)^2} = \frac{C_1}{z+2} + \frac{C_2}{(z-3)^2} + \frac{C_3}{z-3} = \left[ \frac{1}{z+2} + \frac{6}{(z-3)^2} + \frac{3}{z-3} \right]$

$\therefore X(z) = z^{-3} \left[ \frac{z}{z+2} + \frac{6z}{(z-3)^2} + \frac{3z}{z-3} \right]$

Now,  $Z^{-1} \left( \frac{z}{z+2} \right) = (-2)^n u(n); Z^{-1} \left[ \frac{z}{(z-3)^2} \right] = n(3)^n u(n); Z^{-1} \left( \frac{z}{z-3} \right) = (3)^n u(n)$

- (a) When ROC is  $|z| > 3$ , all the terms in  $x(n)$  will be causal.

$$\therefore x(n) = (-2)^{n-3} u(n-3) + 6(n-3)3^{n-3} u(n-3) + 3(3)^{n-3} u(n-3)$$

- (b) When ROC is  $|z| < 2$ , all the terms in  $x(n)$  will be anticausal.

$$\therefore x(n) = -(-2)^{n-3} u(-n-4) - 6(n-3)3^{n-3} u(-n-4) - 3(3)^{n-3} u(-n-4)$$

- (c) When ROC is  $2 < |z| < 3$  the term with pole at  $z = 2$  will be causal and the terms with pole at  $z = 3$  will be anticausal.

$$\therefore x(n) = (-2)^{n-3} u(n-3) - 6(n-3)(3)^{n-3} u(-n-4) - 3(3)^{n-3} u(-n-4)$$

**EXAMPLE 10.72** Find all possible inverse Z-transforms of the following function

$$X(z) = \frac{z^2}{z-1} + \frac{z^2}{z-3}$$

**Solution:** Given  $X(z) = \frac{z^2}{z-1} + \frac{z^2}{z-3} = z\left(\frac{z}{z-1}\right) + z\left(\frac{z}{z-3}\right)$

The poles are at  $z = 1$  and  $z = 3$ . So the possible ROCs are:

- (a)  $|z| > 3$       (b)  $|z| < 1$       (c)  $1 < |z| < 3$

Therefore, using time shifting property, the inverse Z-transforms are:

- (a)  $x(n) = u(n+1) + 3^{n+1} u(n+1)$ ; ROC;  $|z| > 3$   
 (b)  $x(n) = -u(-n) - 3^{n+1} u(-n)$ ; ROC;  $|z| < 1$   
 (c)  $x(n) = u(n+1) - 3^{n+1} u(-n)$ ; ROC;  $1 < |z| < 3$

**EXAMPLE 10.73** Find all possible inverse Z-transforms of the following function:

$$X(z) = \frac{z(z^2 - 4z + 5)}{z^3 - 6z^2 + 11z - 6}$$

**Solution:** Given  $X(z) = \frac{z(z^2 - 4z + 5)}{z^3 - 6z^2 + 11z - 6} = \frac{z(z^2 - 4z + 5)}{(z-1)(z-2)(z-3)}$

The poles of  $X(z)$  are at  $z = 1$ ,  $z = 2$  and  $z = 3$ . So the possible ROCs are:

- (a)  $|z| > 3$       (b)  $|z| < 1$       (c)  $2 < |z| < 3$  and      (d)  $1 < |z| < 2$

Using partial fraction method, we have

$$\frac{X(z)}{z} = \frac{z^2 - 4z + 5}{(z-1)(z-2)(z-3)} = \frac{A}{z-1} + \frac{B}{z-2} + \frac{C}{z-3} = \frac{1}{z-1} - \frac{1}{z-2} + \frac{1}{z-3}$$

or

$$X(z) = \frac{z}{z-1} - \frac{z}{z-2} + \frac{z}{z-3}$$

Therefore, the possible inverse Z-transforms are:

- (a)  $x(n) = u(n) - 2^n u(n) + 3^n u(n)$ ; ROC;  $|z| > 3$   
 (b)  $x(n) = -u(-n-1) + 2^n u(-n-1) - 3^n u(-n-1)$ ; ROC;  $|z| < 1$   
 (c)  $x(n) = u(n) - 2^n u(n) - 3^n u(-n-1)$ ; ROC;  $2 < |z| < 3$   
 (d)  $x(n) = u(n) + 2^n u(-n-1) - 3^n u(-n-1)$ ; ROC;  $1 < |z| < 2$

**EXAMPLE 10.74** Find the inverse Z-transform of the following function:

$$X(z) = \frac{1}{1 - 1.8z^{-1} + 0.8z^{-2}}$$

for the following ROC:

- (a)  $|z| > 1$       (b)  $|z| < 0.8$       (c)  $0.8 < |z| < 1$

**Solution:** Given  $X(z) = \frac{1}{1 - 1.8z^{-1} + 0.8z^{-2}} = \frac{z^2}{z^2 - 1.8z + 0.8} = \frac{z^2}{(z - 1)(z - 0.8)}$

Taking partial fractions of  $X(z)/z$ , we have

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{X(z)}{z} &= \frac{z}{(z - 1)(z - 0.8)} = \frac{A}{z - 1} + \frac{B}{z - 0.8} = \frac{5}{z - 1} - \frac{4}{z - 0.8} \\ \therefore X(z) &= 5\left(\frac{z}{z - 1}\right) - 4\left(\frac{z}{z - 0.8}\right) \end{aligned}$$

The given function has two poles one at  $z = 1$  and the other one at  $z = 0.8$ . So it has three possible ROCs:

- (a) ROC;  $|z| > 1$       (b) ROC;  $|z| < 0.8$       (c) ROC;  $0.8 < |z| < 1$

(a) For ROC;  $|z| > 1$ , both the terms must be causal

$$\therefore x(n) = 5u(n) - 4(0.8)^n u(n)$$

(b) For ROC;  $|z| < 0.8$ , both the terms must be non-causal

$$\therefore x(n) = -5u(-n - 1) + 4(0.8)^n u(-n - 1)$$

(c) For ROC;  $0.8 < |z| < 1$ , the term with pole at  $z = 0.8$  must be causal and the term with pole at  $z = 1$  must be non-causal.

$$\therefore x(n) = -5u(-n - 1) - 4(0.8)^n u(n)$$

**EXAMPLE 10.75** (a) Find the inverse Z-transform of the following function:

$$X(z) = \frac{2z^3 - 5z^2 + z + 4}{(z - 1)(z - 2)}; \text{ ROC; } |z| < 1$$

(b) Find the inverse Z-transform of

$$X(z) = \frac{3}{z - 2}; \text{ ROC; } |z| > 2$$

**Solution:** (a) Given  $X(z) = \frac{2z^3 - 5z^2 + z + 4}{(z - 1)(z - 2)} = \frac{2z^3 - 5z^2 + z + 4}{z^2 - 3z + 2}$

$$\therefore \frac{X(z)}{z} = \frac{2z^3 - 5z^2 + z + 4}{z^3 - 3z^2 + 2z}$$

Since the order of the numerator is equal to that of the denominator, the function  $X(z)/z$  is an improper function. So divide the numerator by the denominator and remove a term such that the remaining function is a proper function.

$$\begin{aligned} & \frac{2}{z^3 - 3z^2 + 2z} \overline{\frac{2z^3 - 5z^2 + z + 4}{2z^3 - 6z^2 + 4z}} \\ & \frac{2z^3 - 6z^2 + 4z}{z^2 - 3z - 4} \\ \therefore \quad & \frac{X(z)}{z} = 2 + \frac{z^2 - 3z + 4}{z^3 - 3z^2 + 2z} = 2 + \frac{z^2 - 3z + 4}{z(z-1)(z-2)} \\ & \frac{z^2 - 3z + 4}{z(z-1)(z-2)} = \frac{A}{z} + \frac{B}{z-1} + \frac{C}{z-2} = \frac{2}{z} - \frac{2}{z-1} + \frac{1}{z-2} \\ \therefore \quad & \frac{X(z)}{z} = 2 + \frac{2}{z} - \frac{2}{z-1} + \frac{1}{z-2} \\ \text{or} \quad & X(z) = 2z + 2 - 2\frac{z}{z-1} + \frac{z}{z-2} \end{aligned}$$

Taking inverse Z-transform on both sides, we have

$$x(n) = 2\delta(n+1) + 2\delta(n) - 2u(n) + (2)^n u(n)$$

$$(b) \text{ Given } X(z) = \frac{3}{z-2} \quad |z| > 2$$

We have

$$X(z) = \frac{3}{z-2} = 3z^{-1} \frac{z}{z-2}$$

We know that

$$\begin{aligned} & Z^{-1}\left(\frac{z}{z-2}\right) = (2)^n u(n) \\ \therefore \quad & Z^{-1}\left(z^{-1} \frac{z}{z-2}\right) = Z^{-1}\left(\frac{z}{z-2}\right) \Big|_{n \rightarrow n-1} \\ & = (2)^n u(n) \Big|_{n=n-1} = (2)^{n-1} u(n-1) \\ \therefore \quad & Z^{-1}\left(\frac{3}{z-2}\right) = Z^{-1}\left(3z^{-1} \frac{z}{z-2}\right) = 3(2)^{n-1} u(n-1) \end{aligned}$$

**EXAMPLE 10.76** Find the inverse Z-transform of

$$X(z) = \frac{2+z^3+3z^{-4}}{z^2+4z+3}; \text{ ROC, } |z| > 0$$

**Solution:** Given  $X(z) = \frac{2+z^3+3z^{-4}}{z^2+4z+3} = (2+z^3+3z^{-4}) \frac{1}{(z^2+4z+3)}$

Let

$$X_1(z) = \frac{1}{z^2+4z+3} = \frac{1}{(z+1)(z+3)}$$

Taking partial fractions of  $X_1(z)/z$  we have

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{X_1(z)}{z} &= \frac{1}{z(z+1)(z+3)} = \frac{A}{z} + \frac{B}{z+1} + \frac{C}{z+3} = \frac{1}{3}\left(\frac{1}{z}\right) - \frac{1}{2}\left(\frac{1}{z+1}\right) + \frac{1}{6}\left(\frac{1}{z+3}\right) \\ \therefore X_1(z) &= \frac{1}{3} - \frac{1}{2}\left(\frac{z}{z+1}\right) + \frac{1}{6}\left(\frac{z}{z+3}\right) \end{aligned}$$

Taking inverse Z-transform, we have

$$Z^{-1}[X_1(z)] = x_1(n) = \frac{1}{3}\delta(n) - \frac{1}{2}(-1)^n u(n) + \frac{1}{6}(-3)^n u(n)$$

Using linearity and shifting properties, we have

$$\begin{aligned} Z^{-1}\left(\frac{2}{z^2+4z+3}\right) &= 2Z^{-1}\left(\frac{1}{z^2+4z+3}\right) = 2\left[\frac{1}{3}\delta(n) - \frac{1}{2}(-1)^n u(n) + \frac{1}{6}(-3)^n u(n)\right] \\ Z^{-1}\left(\frac{z^3}{z^2+4z+3}\right) &= Z^{-1}\left(\frac{1}{z^2+4z+3}\right) \Big|_{n=n+3} \\ &= \left[\frac{1}{3}\delta(n+3) - \frac{1}{2}(-1)^{n+3} u(n+3) + \frac{1}{6}(-3)^{n+3} u(n+3)\right] \\ Z^{-1}\left(\frac{z^{-4}}{z^2+4z+3}\right) &= Z^{-1}\left(\frac{1}{z^2+4z+3}\right) \Big|_{n=n-4} \\ &= \left[\frac{1}{3}\delta(n-4) - \frac{1}{2}(-1)^{n-4} u(n-4) + \frac{1}{6}(-3)^{n-4} u(n-4)\right] \\ \therefore x(n) &= 2\left[\frac{1}{3}\delta(n) - \frac{1}{2}(-1)^n u(n) + \frac{1}{6}(-3)^n u(n)\right] \\ &\quad + \left[\frac{1}{3}\delta(n+3) - \frac{1}{2}(-1)^{n+3} u(n+3) + \frac{1}{6}(-3)^{n+3} u(n+3)\right] \\ &\quad + \left[\frac{1}{3}\delta(n-4) - \frac{1}{2}(-1)^{n-4} u(n-4) + \frac{1}{6}(-3)^{n-4} u(n-4)\right] \end{aligned}$$

### 10.7.3 Residue Method

The inverse Z-transform of  $X(z)$  can be obtained using the equation:

$$x(n) = \frac{1}{2\pi j} \oint_c X(z) z^{n-1} dz$$

where  $c$  is a circle in the z-plane in the ROC of  $X(z)$ . The above equation can be evaluated by finding the sum of all residues of the poles that are inside the circle  $c$ . Therefore,

$$\begin{aligned} x(n) &= \sum \text{Residues of } X(z) z^{n-1} \text{ at the poles inside } c \\ &= \sum_i (z - z_i) X(z) z^{n-1} \Big|_{z=z_i} \end{aligned}$$

If  $X(z) z^{n-1}$  has no poles inside the contour  $c$  for one or more values of  $n$ , then  $x(n) = 0$  for these values.

**EXAMPLE 10.77** Explain in detail, the contour integration method of finding inverse Z-transform.

**Solution:** The Z-transform of a discrete-time sequence  $x(n)$  is defined as:

$$X(z) = \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} x(n) z^{-n}$$

where  $z$  is a complex variable. In polar form,  $z = re^{j\omega}$  where  $r$  is the radius of a circle.

$$\therefore X(re^{j\omega}) = \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} x(n) (re^{j\omega})^{-n} = \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} [x(n)r^{-n}] e^{-j\omega n}$$

The above equation represents the Fourier transform of a signal  $x(n)r^{-n}$ . Hence, the inverse DTFT of  $X(re^{j\omega})$  must be  $x(n)r^{-n}$ . Therefore, we can write

$$\begin{aligned} x(n)r^{-n} &= \frac{1}{2\pi} \int_{-\pi}^{\pi} X(re^{j\omega}) e^{j\omega n} d\omega \\ z &= re^{j\omega} \\ dz &= re^{j\omega} j d\omega \\ d\omega &= \frac{dz}{re^{j\omega} j} = \frac{dz}{jz} \\ \therefore x(n) &= \frac{1}{2\pi} \int_{-\pi}^{\pi} X(re^{j\omega}) (re^{j\omega})^n d\omega \end{aligned}$$

Substituting  $z = re^{j\omega}$  and  $d\omega = dz/jz$  in the above equation, we have

$$x(n) = \frac{1}{2\pi j} \oint_c X(z) z^{n-1} dz$$

where the symbol  $\oint_c$  denotes integration around the circle of radius  $|z| = r$  in a counter clockwise direction.

The above equation can be evaluated by finding the sum of all residues of the poles that are inside the circle  $c$ . Therefore, the above equation can be written as:

$$\begin{aligned} x(n) &= \sum \text{(Residues of } X(z) z^{n-1} \text{ at the poles inside } c) \\ &= \sum_i (z - z_i) X(z) z^{n-1} \Big|_{z=z_i} \end{aligned}$$

If  $X(z) z^{n-1}$  has multiple poles of order  $k$ , the residue at the pole  $z = z_i$  is given by

$$\frac{1}{(k-1)!} \frac{d^{k-1}}{dz^{k-1}} (z - z_i)^k X(z) z^{n-1} \Big|_{z=z_i}$$

**EXAMPLE 10.78** Using residue method, find the inverse Z-transform of

$$X(z) = \frac{1+2z^{-1}}{1+4z^{-1}+3z^{-2}}; \text{ ROC; } |z| > 3$$

**Solution:** Given  $X(z) = \frac{1+2z^{-1}}{1+4z^{-1}+3z^{-2}} = \frac{z(z+2)}{z^2+4z+3} = \frac{z(z+2)}{(z+1)(z+3)}$

$\therefore x(n) = \sum \text{Residues of } X(z) z^{n-1} \text{ at the poles of } X(z) z^{n-1} \text{ within } c$

$$= \sum \text{Residues of } \frac{z(z+2) z^{n-1}}{(z+1)(z+3)} = \frac{z^n(z+2)}{(z+1)(z+3)} \text{ at the poles of same within } c$$

$$\therefore x(n) = \sum \text{Residues of } \frac{z^n(z+2)}{(z+1)(z+3)} \text{ at poles } z = -1 \text{ and } z = -3$$

$$= (z+1) \frac{z^n(z+2)}{(z+1)(z+3)} \Big|_{z=-1} + \frac{(z+3) z^n(z+2)}{(z+1)(z+3)} \Big|_{z=-3}$$

$$= \frac{1}{2}(-1)^n u(n) + \frac{1}{2}(-3)^n u(n)$$

**EXAMPLE 10.79** Determine the inverse Z-transform using the complex integral

$$X(z) = \frac{3z^{-1}}{[1 - (1/2) z^{-1}]^2}; \text{ ROC; } |z| > \frac{1}{4}$$

**Solution:** We know that the inverse Z-transform of  $X(z)$  can be obtained using the equation:

$$x(n) = \frac{1}{2\pi j} \oint_c X(z) z^{n-1} dz$$

at the poles inside  $c$  where  $c$  is a circle in the  $z$ -plane in the ROC of  $X(z)$ .

This can be evaluated by finding the sum of all residues of the poles that are inside the circle  $c$ . Therefore, the above equation can be written as:

$$\begin{aligned} x(n) &= \sum \text{Residues of } X(z)z^{n-1} \text{ at the poles inside } c \\ &= \sum_i (z - z_i) X(z)z^{n-1} \Big|_{z=z_i} \end{aligned}$$

If there is a pole of multiplicity  $k$ , then the residue at that pole is:

$$= \frac{1}{(k-1)!} \frac{d^{k-1}}{dz^{k-1}} [(z - z_i)^k X(z)z^{n-1}] \text{ at the pole } z = z_i$$

Given  $X(z) = \frac{3z^{-1}}{[1 - (1/2)z^{-1}]^2} = \frac{3z}{[z - (1/2)]^2}$

The given  $X(z)$  has a pole of order 2 at  $z = 1/2$ .

$$\begin{aligned} x(n) &= \sum \text{Residues of } X(z)z^{n-1} \text{ at its poles} \\ &= \sum \text{Residue of } 3z^n/[z - (1/2)]^2 \text{ at the pole } z = (1/2) \text{ of multiplicity 2} \\ \therefore x(n) &= \frac{1}{1!} \frac{d}{dz} \left[ \left( z - \frac{1}{2} \right)^2 \frac{3z^n}{[z - (1/2)]^2} \right] \Big|_{z=1/2} = 3nz^{n-1} \Big|_{z=1/2} = 3n \left( \frac{1}{2} \right)^{n-1} u(n) \end{aligned}$$

**EXAMPLE 10.80** Given  $X(z) = z/(z - 1)^3$ , find  $x(n)$  using contour integration method.

**Solution:** Given  $X(z) = \frac{z}{(z - 1)^3}$

The given  $X(z)$  has a pole of order 3 at  $z = 1$ , i.e.  $k = 3$ .

$$\begin{aligned} \therefore x(n) &= \sum \text{Residues of } X(z)z^{n-1} \text{ at its poles} \\ &= \sum \text{Residues of } \frac{z^n}{(z - 1)^3} \text{ at the pole } z = 1 \text{ of multiplicity 3} \\ \therefore x(n) &= \frac{1}{2!} \frac{d^2}{dz^2} \left[ (z - 1)^3 \frac{z}{(z - 1)^3} z^{n-1} \right] \Big|_{z=1} \\ &= \frac{1}{2} \frac{d^2}{dz^2} [z^n] \Big|_{z=1} = \frac{1}{2} \frac{d}{dz} [nz^{n-1}] \Big|_{z=1} = \frac{1}{2} n(n-1) z^{n-2} \Big|_{z=1} \\ &= \frac{1}{2} n(n-1) \quad \text{for } n > 0 \\ &= 0 \quad \text{for } n < 0 \\ \therefore x(n) &= \frac{n(n-1)}{2} u(n) \end{aligned}$$

**EXAMPLE 10.81** Determine the inverse Z-transform using residue method.

$$X(z) = \frac{3z^{-1}}{(1-z^{-1})(1-4z^{-1})}; \text{ ROC; } 1 < |z| < 4$$

**Solution:** Given  $X(z) = \frac{3z^{-1}}{(1-z^{-1})(1-4z^{-1})} = \frac{3z}{(z-1)(z-4)}$ ; ROC;  $1 < |z| < 4$

$X(z)$  has two poles, one at  $z = 1$  and the second one at  $z = 4$ .

Residue of  $X(z) z^{n-1}$  at pole  $z = 1$  is:

$$(z-1) \frac{3z z^{n-1}}{(z-1)(z-4)} \Big|_{z=1} = \frac{3z^n}{z-4} \Big|_{z=1} = -1$$

Residue of  $X(z) z^{n-1}$  at pole  $z = 4$  is:

$$(z-4) \frac{3z z^{n-1}}{(z-1)(z-4)} \Big|_{z=4} = \frac{3z^n}{z-1} \Big|_{z=4} = (4)^n$$

The contour of integration  $c$  lies in the annual region of ROC.

$$x(n) = \begin{cases} -\text{Residue of } X(z) z^{n-1} \text{ at pole } z = 4 \text{ for } n < 0 \\ +\text{Residue of } X(z) z^{n-1} \text{ at pole } z = 1 \text{ for } n \geq 0 \end{cases}$$

$\therefore$  For  $n < 0$ ,  $x(n) = (4)^n$

and For  $n \geq 0$ ,  $x(n) = -1$

Therefore,

$$x(n) = -u(n) - (4)^n u(-n-1)$$

**EXAMPLE 10.82** Find all possible inverse Z-transforms of  $X(z) = \frac{z(z+1)}{z^2 - 3z + 2}$  using contour integration (residue theorem) method.

**Solution:** Given  $X(z) = \frac{z(z+1)}{z^2 - 3z + 2} = \frac{z(z+1)}{(z-1)(z-2)}$

$X(z)$  has two poles, one at  $z = 1$  and the second one at  $z = 2$ . So there are three possible inverse Z-transforms.

- (a) With ROC;  $|z| > 2$
- (b) With ROC;  $|z| < 1$
- (c) With ROC;  $1 < |z| < 2$

Residue of  $X(z) z^{n-1}$  at pole  $z = 1$  is:

$$\frac{(z-1) z^n (z+1)}{(z-1)(z-2)} \Big|_{z=1} = (1)^n (-2) = -2$$

Residue of  $X(z)z^{n-1}$  at pole  $z = 2$  is:

$$\left. \frac{(z-2)z^n(z+1)}{(z-1)(z-2)} \right|_{z=2} = 3(2)^n$$

So the possible inverse Z-transforms are

- (a) ROC;  $|z| > 2$ , both the poles are interior to  $c$ . So the residues are positive.

$$\therefore x(n) = -2u(n) + 3(2)^n u(n)$$

- (b) ROC;  $|z| < 1$ , both the poles are exterior to  $c$ . So the residues are negative.

$$\therefore x(n) = 2u(-n-1) - 3(2)^n u(-n-1)$$

- (c) ROC;  $1 < |z| < 2$ , the pole at  $z = 1$  is interior to  $c$  and the pole at  $z = 2$  is exterior to  $c$ . So the residue at  $z = 1$  is positive and the residue at  $z = 2$  is negative.

$$\therefore x(n) = -2u(n) - 3(2)^n u(-n-1)$$

**EXAMPLE 10.83** Find all possible inverse Z-transforms of  $X(z) = \frac{z}{(z+1)^2(z+2)^3}$  using contour integration (residue) method.

**Solution:** Given

$$X(z) = \frac{z}{(z+1)^2(z+2)^3}$$

$X(z)$  has two poles, one of order 2 at  $z = -1$  and the second one of order 3 at  $z = -2$ . So there are three possible inverse Z-transforms:

- (a) with ROC;  $|z| > 2$
- (b) with ROC;  $|z| < 1$
- (c) with ROC;  $1 < |z| < 2$

We know that  $x(n)$  is given by the sum of the residues of  $X(z)z^{n-1}$  at the poles of  $X(z)$ .

Residue of  $X(z)z^{n-1} = \frac{z^n}{(z+1)^2(z+2)^3}$  at the pole  $z = -1$  of order 2 is:

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{1}{1!} \frac{d}{dz} \left[ (z+1)^2 \frac{z^n}{(z+1)^2(z+2)^3} \right] \Bigg|_{z=-1} &= \frac{d}{dz} \left[ \frac{z^n}{(z+2)^3} \right] \Bigg|_{z=-1} \\ &= \frac{(z+2)^3 (nz^{n-1}) - z^n 2(z+2)^2}{(z+2)^6} \Bigg|_{z=-1} \\ &= -(n+3)(-1)^n \end{aligned}$$

Residue of  $X(z)z^{n-1} = \frac{z^n}{(z+1)^2(z+2)^3}$  at the pole  $z = -2$  of order 3 is:

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{1}{2!} \frac{d^2}{dz^2} \left[ (z+2)^3 \frac{z^n}{(z+1)^2 (z+2)^3} \right]_{z=-2} &= \frac{1}{2} \frac{d^2}{dz^2} \left[ \frac{z^n}{(z+1)^2} \right]_{z=-2} \\ &= (-2)^n [0.125n^2 - 1.125n + 3] \end{aligned}$$

(a) When ROC;  $|z| > 2$ , both the residues must be positive.

$$\therefore x(n) = -(n+3)(-1)^n u(n) + (0.125n^2 - 1.125n + 3)(-2)^n u(n)$$

(b) When ROC;  $|z| < 1$ , both the residues must be negative.

$$\therefore x(n) = (n+3)(-1)^n u(-n-1) - (0.125n^2 - 1.125n + 3)(-2)^n u(-n-1)$$

(c) When ROC;  $1 \leq |z| \leq 2$ , residue at pole  $z = -1$  is positive and the residue at pole at  $z = -2$  is negative.

$$\therefore x(n) = -(n+3)(-1)^n u(n) - (0.125n^2 - 1.125n + 3)(-2)^n u(-n-1)$$

**EXAMPLE 10.84** Find the inverse Z-transform of  $X(z) = \frac{1}{z^3(z-1)}$  using (a) Contour integration method (b) Verify by any other method.

*Solution:* (a) *Contour integration method*

Given

$$X(z) = \frac{1}{z^3(z-1)}$$

$X(z)z^{n-1} = \frac{z^{n-1}}{z^3(z-1)}$  has a pole of 3rd order at  $z = 0$  and a simple pole at  $z = 1$ .

$\therefore x(n) = \text{Sum of the residues of the pole of 3rd order at } z = 0 \text{ and the pole at } z = 1.$

Residue of pole of 3rd order at  $z = 0$  is:

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{1}{2} \frac{d^2}{dz^2} \left[ \frac{z^3(z^{n-1})}{z^3(z-1)} \right]_{z=0} &= \frac{1}{2} \frac{d^2}{dz^2} \left[ \frac{z^{n-1}}{z-1} \right]_{z=0} \\ &= \frac{1}{2} \frac{d}{dz} \left[ \frac{(z-1)(n-1)z^{n-2} - z^{n-1}(1)}{(z-1)^2} \right]_{z=0} \\ &= \frac{1}{2} \frac{(z-1)^2 \{(n-1)[(n-1)z^{n-2} - (n-2)z^{(n-3)}] z^{n-2}\}}{(z-1)^4} \\ &\quad - [(z-1)(n-1) z^{n-2} - z^{n-1}] 2(z-1) \Big|_{z=0} = 0 \end{aligned}$$

Residue of pole at  $z = 0$  is:

$$(z-1) \frac{z^{n-1}}{z^3(z-1)} \Big|_{z=0} = \frac{z^{n-1}}{z^3} \Big|_{z=1} = z^{n-4} \Big|_{z=1} = (1)^{n-4}$$

$$\therefore x(n) = 0 u(n) + (1)^{n-4} u(n-4) = u(n-4)$$

(b) *Second method*

Given

$$X(z) = \frac{1}{z^3(z-1)} = z^{-4} \left( \frac{z}{z-1} \right)$$

We know that

$$Z^{-1} \left( \frac{z}{z-1} \right) = u(n)$$

$$\therefore Z^{-1} \left( z^{-4} \frac{z}{z-1} \right) = Z^{-1} \left[ \frac{z}{z-1} \right]_{n=n-4} = u(n-4)$$

#### 10.7.4 Convolution Method

The inverse Z-transform can also be determined using convolution method. In this method, the given  $X(z)$  is splitted into  $X_1(z)$  and  $X_2(z)$  such that  $X(z) = X_1(z) X_2(z)$ . Then,  $x_1(n)$  and  $x_2(n)$  are obtained by taking the inverse Z-transform of  $X_1(z)$  and  $X_2(z)$  respectively. Then,  $x(n)$  is obtained by performing convolution of  $x_1(n)$  and  $x_2(n)$  in time domain.

$$\begin{aligned} Z[x_1(n) * x_2(n)] &= X_1(z) X_2(z) = X(z) \\ \therefore x(n) &= Z^{-1}[X(z)] = Z^{-1}[Z\{x_1(n) * x_2(n)\}] = x_1(n) * x_2(n) = \sum_{k=0}^n x_1(k) x_2(n-k) \end{aligned}$$

**EXAMPLE 10.85** Explain how the analysis of discrete-time invariant system can be obtained using convolution properties of Z-transform.

**Solution:** One of the most important properties of Z-transform used in the analysis of discrete-time systems is convolution property. According to this property, the Z-transform of the convolution of two signals is equal to the multiplication of their Z-transforms. The analysis of a discrete-time system means the input to the system  $x(n)$  and its impulse response  $h(n)$  are known and we have to determine the output  $y(n)$  of the system. If the input sequence to the LTI system is  $x(n)$  and the impulse response is  $h(n)$ , then first determine the Z-transforms of  $x(n)$  and  $h(n)$ .

Let  $Z[x(n)] = X(z)$  and  $Z[h(n)] = H(z)$ , then obtain the product of these Z-transforms, i.e.  $Y(z) = H(z) X(z)$ . We know that the output  $y(n) = x(n) * h(n)$ .

As per the linear convolution property,

$$Y(z) = Z[x(n) * h(n)] = Z[x(n)] Z[h(n)] = X(z) H(z)$$

So having obtained  $Y(z) = X(z) H(z)$ , take the inverse Z-transform of  $X(z) H(z)$ . This gives  $y(n)$  which is the response of the system for the input  $x(n)$ .

**EXAMPLE 10.86** Find the inverse Z-transform of  $X(z) = \frac{z^2}{(z-2)(z-3)}$  using convolution property of Z-transforms.

**Solution:** Given

$$X(z) = \frac{z^2}{(z-2)(z-3)}$$

Let

$$X(z) = X_1(z)X_2(z) = \frac{z}{z-2} \frac{z}{z-3}$$

$\therefore$

$$x_1(n) = Z^{-1}[X_1(z)] = Z^{-1}\left(\frac{z}{z-2}\right) = 2^n u(n)$$

$$x_2(n) = Z^{-1}[X_2(z)] = Z^{-1}\left(\frac{z}{z-3}\right) = 3^n u(n)$$

$\therefore$

$$x_1(n) * x_2(n) = \sum_{k=0}^n x_1(k) x_2(n-k)$$

$$= \sum_{k=0}^n 2^k u(k) 3^{n-k} u(n-k)$$

$$= 3^n \sum_{k=0}^n \left(\frac{2}{3}\right)^k = 3^n \left[ \frac{1 - (2/3)^{n+1}}{1 - (2/3)} \right]$$

$$= 3^{n+1} \left[ 1 - \left(\frac{2}{3}\right)^{n+1} \right] = 3^{n+1} u(n) - 2^{n+1} u(n)$$

**EXAMPLE 10.87** Find the inverse Z-transform of  $X(z) = \frac{z}{(z-1)[z-(1/2)]}$  using convolution property of Z-transforms.

**Solution:** Given

$$X(z) = \frac{z}{(z-1)[z-(1/2)]}$$

Let

$$X(z) = X_1(z)X_2(z) = \frac{z}{(z-1)} \frac{1}{[z-(1/2)]}$$

$\therefore$

$$x_1(n) = Z^{-1}[X_1(z)] = Z^{-1}\left(\frac{z}{z-1}\right) = u(n)$$

$$x_2(n) = Z^{-1}[X_2(z)] = Z^{-1}\left[\frac{1}{z-(1/2)}\right] = \left(\frac{1}{2}\right)^{n-1} u(n-1)$$

$\therefore$

$$x_1(n) * x_2(n) = \sum_{k=0}^n x_1(k) x_2(n-k)$$

$$= \sum_{k=0}^{n-1} u(k) \left(\frac{1}{2}\right)^{n-1-k} u(n-1-k)$$

$$= \left(\frac{1}{2}\right)^{n-1} \left[ \sum_{k=0}^{n-1} \left(\frac{1}{2}\right)^{-k} \right] = \left(\frac{1}{2}\right)^{n-1} \sum_{k=0}^{n-1} \left[ \left(\frac{1}{2}\right)^{-1} \right]^k$$

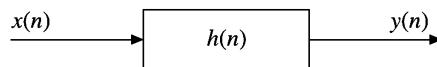
$$\begin{aligned}
&= \left(\frac{1}{2}\right)^{n-1} \left\{ \frac{1 - [(1/2)^{-1}]^n}{1 - (1/2)^{-1}} \right\} = \left(\frac{1}{2}\right)^{n-1} \left[ \frac{1 - (1/2)^{-n}}{-1} \right] \\
&= \left(\frac{1}{2}\right)^{-1} - \left(\frac{1}{2}\right)^n \left(\frac{1}{2}\right)^{-1} = 2u(n) - 2\left(\frac{1}{2}\right)^n u(n)
\end{aligned}$$

## 10.8 TRANSFORM ANALYSIS OF LTI SYSTEMS

The Z-transform plays an important role in the analysis and design of discrete-time LTI systems.

### 10.8.1 System Function and Impulse Response

Consider a discrete-time LTI system having an impulse response  $h(n)$  as shown in Figure 10.17.



**Figure 10.17** Discrete-time LTI system.

Let us say it gives an output  $y(n)$  for an input  $x(n)$ . Then, we have

$$y(n) = x(n) * h(n)$$

Taking Z-transform on both sides, we get

$$Y(z) = X(z) H(z)$$

where

$Y(z)$  = Z-transform of the output  $y(n)$

$X(z)$  = Z-transform of the input  $x(n)$

$H(z)$  = Z-transform of the impulse response  $h(n)$

$$\therefore H(z) = \frac{Y(z)}{X(z)}$$

$H(z)$  is called *the system function* or *the transfer function* of the LTI discrete system and is defined as:

The ratio of the Z-transform of the output sequence  $y(n)$  to the Z-transform of the input sequence  $x(n)$  when the initial conditions are neglected.

If the input  $x(n)$  is an impulse sequence, then  $X(z) = 1$ . So  $Y(z) = H(z)$ . So the transfer function is also defined as the Z-transform of the impulse response of the system.

The poles and zeros of the system function offer an insight into the system characteristics. The poles of the system are defined as the values of  $z$  for which the system function  $H(z)$  is infinity and the zeros of the system are the values of  $z$  for which the system function  $H(z)$  is zero.

### 10.8.2 Relationship between Transfer Function and Difference Equation

In terms of a difference equation, an  $n$ th order discrete-time LTI system is specified as:

$$\sum_{k=0}^N a_k y(n-k) = \sum_{k=0}^M b_k x(n-k)$$

Expanding it, we have

$$\begin{aligned} a_0 y(n) + a_1 y(n-1) + a_2 y(n-2) + \cdots + a_N y(n-N) &= b_0 x(n) + b_1 x(n-1) + b_2 x(n-2) \\ &\quad + \cdots + b_M x(n-M) \end{aligned}$$

Taking Z-transform on both sides and neglecting the initial conditions, we obtain

$$\begin{aligned} a_0 Y(z) + a_1 z^{-1} Y(z) + a_2 z^{-2} Y(z) + \cdots + a_N z^{-N} Y(z) &= b_0 X(z) + b_1 z^{-1} X(z) + b_2 z^{-2} X(z) \\ &\quad + \cdots + b_M z^{-M} X(z) \end{aligned}$$

i.e.  $Y(z)[a_0 + a_1 z^{-1} + a_2 z^{-2} + \cdots + a_N z^{-N}] = X(z)[b_0 + b_1 z^{-1} + b_2 z^{-2} + \cdots + b_M z^{-M}]$

$$\begin{aligned} \therefore \frac{Y(z)}{X(z)} &= \frac{b_0 + b_1 z^{-1} + b_2 z^{-2} + \cdots + b_M z^{-M}}{a_0 + a_1 z^{-1} + a_2 z^{-2} + \cdots + a_N z^{-N}} \\ &= \frac{\sum_{k=0}^M b_k z^{-k}}{\sum_{k=0}^N a_k z^{-k}} \end{aligned}$$

Now,  $Y(z)/X(z) = H(z)$  is called the transfer function of the system or the system function. The frequency response of a system is obtained by substituting  $z = e^{j\omega}$  in  $H(z)$ .

### 10.9 STABILITY AND CAUSALITY

We know that the necessary and sufficient condition for a causal linear time invariant discrete-time system to be BIBO stable is:

$$\sum_{n=0}^{\infty} |h(n)| < \infty$$

i.e. an LTI discrete-time system is BIBO stable if its impulse response is absolutely summable.

We also know that for a system to be causal, its impulse response must be equal to zero for  $n < 0$  [i.e.  $h(n) = 0$  for  $n < 0$ ]. Alternately, if the system is causal, then the ROC for  $H(z)$  will be outside the outermost pole.

For a causal LTI system to be stable, all the poles of  $H(z)$  must lie inside the unit circle in the  $z$ -plane, i.e. for a causal LTI system to be stable, the ROC of the system function must include the unit circle. The pole locations of the system function and the corresponding impulse responses are shown in Figure 10.18.

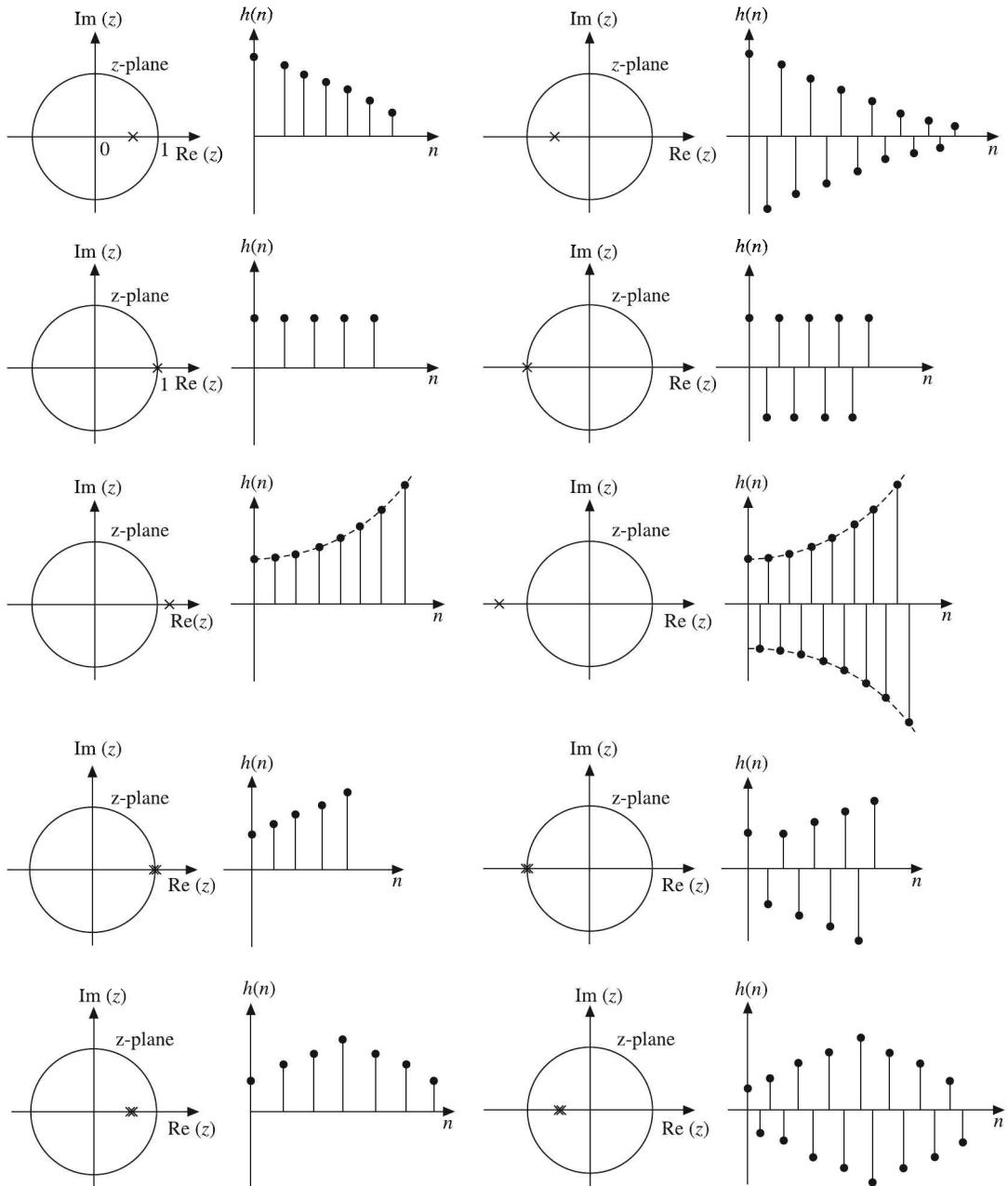


Figure 10.18 Pole locations of the system function and the corresponding impulse responses.

**EXAMPLE 10.88** Show that for a stable system, the ROC of a system function includes the unit circle.

**Solution:** We know that the necessary and sufficient condition for a causal linear time invariant system to be BIBO stable is:

$$\sum_{n=0}^{\infty} |h(n)| < \infty$$

The system function of a causal LTI system is:

$$H(z) = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} h(n) z^{-n}$$

The magnitude of the Z-transform is:

$$|H(z)| = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} |h(n)z^{-n}| \leq \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} |h(n)| |z^{-n}|$$

The evaluation of  $|H(z)|$  on unit circle yields

$$|H(z)| \leq \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} |h(n)| < \infty \quad (\because |z| = 1 \text{ for unit circle})$$

Therefore, for a stable system, the ROC of a system function includes the unit circle.

**EXAMPLE 10.89** Derive the time domain condition for the stability of LTI discrete-time systems.

Or

Prove that the impulse response of an LTI system is absolutely summable for stability of the system.

**Solution:** A system is said to be stable if a bounded input sequence always produces a bounded output sequence. If the output sequence is unbounded for a bounded input sequence, then the system is said to be unstable.

Let  $x(n)$  be a bounded input sequence satisfying  $|x(n)| \leq M_x \leq \infty$ ,  $h(n)$  be the impulse response of the system, then the output of the system  $y(n)$  can be found by using convolution sum. That is,

$$y(n) = \sum_{k=-\infty}^{\infty} x(k) h(n-k) = \sum_{k=-\infty}^{\infty} h(k) x(n-k)$$

The magnitude of output is given by

$$|y(n)| = \left| \sum_{k=-\infty}^{\infty} h(k) x(n-k) \right|$$

We know that the magnitude of the sum of terms is less than or equal to the sum of the magnitudes.

Hence

$$|y(n)| = \left| \sum_{k=-\infty}^{\infty} h(k) x(n-k) \right| \leq \sum_{k=-\infty}^{\infty} |h(k)| |x(n-k)|$$

Let the bounded value of the input is equal to  $M$ , then the above equation can be written as:

$$|y(n)| \leq M \sum_{k=-\infty}^{\infty} |h(k)|$$

For stability since  $|y(n)| < \infty$ , the above condition will be satisfied when  $\sum_{k=-\infty}^{\infty} |h(k)| < \infty$ .

Therefore, the necessary and sufficient condition for stability is  $\sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} |h(n)| < \infty$ . That is an LTI system is stable if its impulse response is absolutely summable.

**EXAMPLE 10.90** Consider an LTI system with a system function  $H(z) = \frac{1}{1 - (1/2)z^{-1}}$ .

Find the difference equation.

**Solution:** Given  $H(z) = \frac{Y(z)}{X(z)} = \frac{1}{1 - (1/2)z^{-1}}$

That is  $Y(z) - \frac{1}{2}z^{-1}Y(z) = X(z)$

Taking inverse Z-transform on both sides (applying the time shifting property), we get the difference equation

$$y(n) - \frac{1}{2}y(n-1) = x(n)$$

**EXAMPLE 10.91** A causal system is represented by

$$H(z) = \frac{z+2}{2z^2 - 3z + 4}$$

Find the difference equation and the frequency response of the system.

**Solution:** Given  $H(z) = \frac{z+2}{2z^2 - 3z + 4}$

As the system is causal,  $H(z)$  is expressed in negative powers of  $z$ .

Let  $H(z) = \frac{Y(z)}{X(z)}$

$$= \frac{z+2}{2z^2 - 3z + 4} = \frac{z^{-1} + 2z^{-2}}{2 - 3z^{-1} + 4z^{-2}}$$

i.e.  $2Y(z) - 3z^{-1}Y(z) + 4z^{-2}Y(z) = z^{-1}X(z) + 2z^{-2}X(z)$

Taking inverse Z-transform on both sides, we have

$$2y(n) - 3y(n-1) + 4y(n-2) = x(n-1) + 2x(n-2)$$

which is the required difference equation.

Putting  $z = e^{j\omega}$  in  $H(z)$ , we get the frequency response  $H(e^{j\omega})$  of the system.

$$\begin{aligned} H(e^{j\omega}) &= \frac{z+2}{2z^2-3z+4} \Big|_{z=e^{j\omega}} = \frac{e^{j\omega}+2}{2e^{j2\omega}-3e^{j\omega}+4} \\ &= \frac{2+\cos\omega+j\sin\omega}{4+(2\cos 2\omega-3\cos\omega)+j(2\sin 2\omega-3\sin\omega)} \end{aligned}$$

**EXAMPLE 10.92** Determine the system function of a discrete-time system described by the difference equation

$$y(n) - \frac{1}{3}y(n-1) + \frac{1}{5}y(n-2) = x(n) - 2x(n-1)$$

**Solution:** Taking Z-transform on both sides of the given difference equation, we get

$$Y(z) - \frac{1}{3}z^{-1}Y(z) + \frac{1}{5}z^{-2}Y(z) = X(z) - 2z^{-1}X(z)$$

Hence the system function or transfer function of the given system is:

$$H(z) = \frac{Y(z)}{X(z)} = \frac{1-2z^{-1}}{1-(1/3)z^{-1}+(1/5)z^{-2}} = \frac{z(z-2)}{z^2-(1/3)z+(1/5)}$$

**EXAMPLE 10.93** Plot the pole-zero pattern and determine which of the following systems are stable:

- (a)  $y(n) = y(n-1) - 0.8y(n-2) + x(n) + x(n-2)$
- (b)  $y(n) = 2y(n-1) - 0.8y(n-2) + x(n) + 0.8x(n-1)$

**Solution:**

- (a) Given  $y(n) = y(n-1) - 0.8y(n-2) + x(n) + x(n-2)$

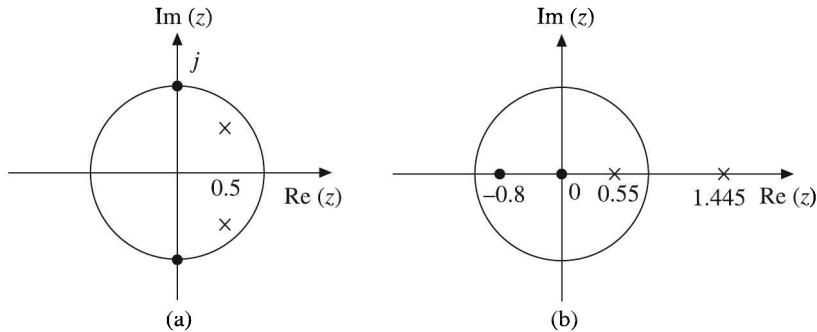
Taking Z-transform on both sides and neglecting the initial conditions, we have

$$Y(z) = z^{-1}Y(z) - 0.8z^{-2}Y(z) + X(z) + z^{-2}X(z)$$

$$\text{i.e. } Y(z)[1 - z^{-1} + 0.8z^{-2}] = X(z)(1 + z^{-2})$$

The transfer function of the system is:

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{Y(z)}{X(z)} &= H(z) \\ &= \frac{1+z^{-2}}{1-z^{-1}+0.8z^{-2}} = \frac{z^2+1}{z^2-z+0.8} \\ &= \frac{(z+j)(z-j)}{(z-0.5-j0.74)(z-0.50+j0.74)} \end{aligned}$$



**Figure 10.19** (a) Pole-zero plots for Example 10.93.

The zeros of  $H(z)$  are  $z = +j1$  and  $z = -j1$ .

The poles of  $H(z)$  are  $z = 0.5 - j0.74$  and  $z = 0.5 + j0.74$ .

The pole-zero plot is shown in Figure 10.19(a).

All the poles are inside the unit circle. Hence, the system is stable.

- (b) Given  $y(n) = 2y(n-1) - 0.8y(n-2) + x(n) + 0.8x(n-1)$

Taking Z-transform on both sides and neglecting the initial conditions, we have

$$Y(z) = 2z^{-1}Y(z) - 0.8z^{-2}Y(z) + X(z) + 0.8z^{-1}X(z)$$

$$\text{i.e. } Y(z)[1 - 2z^{-1} + 0.8z^{-2}] = X(z)[1 + 0.8z^{-1}]$$

The transfer function of the system is:

$$\therefore \frac{Y(z)}{X(z)} = H(z) = \frac{1 + 0.8z^{-1}}{1 - 2z^{-1} + 0.8z^{-2}} = \frac{z(z + 0.8)}{z^2 - 2z + 0.8}$$

$$= \frac{z(z + 0.8)}{(z - 1.445)(z - 0.555)}$$

The zeros of  $H(z)$  are  $z = 0$  and  $z = -0.8$ .

The poles of  $H(z)$  are  $z = 1.445$  and  $z = 0.555$ .

The pole-zero plot is shown in Figure 10.19(b).

One pole is outside the unit circle. Therefore, the system is unstable.

**EXAMPLE 10.94** A causal system has input  $x(n)$  and output  $y(n)$ . Find the system function, frequency response and impulse response of the system if

$$x(n) = \delta(n) + \frac{1}{6}\delta(n-1) - \frac{1}{6}\delta(n-2)$$

and

$$y(n) = \delta(n) - \frac{2}{3}\delta(n-1)$$

**Solution:** Given

$$x(n) = \delta(n) + \frac{1}{6}\delta(n-1) - \frac{1}{6}\delta(n-2)$$

end

$$y(n) = \delta(n) - \frac{2}{3}\delta(n-1)$$

Taking Z-transform of the above equations, we get

$$X(z) = 1 + \frac{1}{6}z^{-1} - \frac{1}{6}z^{-2}$$

and

$$Y(z) = 1 - \frac{2}{3}z^{-1}$$

The system function or the transfer function of the system is:

$$\frac{Y(z)}{X(z)} = H(z) = \frac{1 - (2/3)z^{-1}}{1 + (1/6)z^{-1} - (1/6)z^{-2}} = \frac{z[z - (2/3)]}{[z - (1/3)][z + (1/2)]}$$

The frequency response of the system is:

$$H(e^{j\omega}) = \left. \frac{z[z - (2/3)]}{[z - (1/3)][z + (1/2)]} \right|_{z=e^{j\omega}} = \frac{e^{j\omega}[e^{j\omega} - (2/3)]}{[e^{j\omega} - (1/3)][e^{j\omega} + (1/2)]}$$

By partial fraction expansion, we have

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{H(z)}{z} &= \frac{[z - (2/3)]}{[z - (1/3)][z + (1/2)]} = \frac{A}{z - (1/3)} + \frac{B}{z + (1/2)} = \frac{-2/5}{z - (1/3)} + \frac{7/5}{z + (1/2)} \\ \therefore H(z) &= -\frac{2}{5} \left[ \frac{z}{z - (1/3)} \right] + \frac{7}{5} \left[ \frac{z}{z + (1/2)} \right] \end{aligned}$$

Both the poles of  $H(z)$  are inside the unit circle. So the system is stable. Taking inverse Z-transform on both sides, we get the impulse response as:

$$h(n) = -\frac{2}{5} \left( \frac{1}{3} \right)^n u(n) + \frac{7}{5} \left( -\frac{1}{2} \right)^n u(n)$$

**EXAMPLE 10.95** We want to design a causal discrete-time LTI system with the property that if the input is  $x(n) = \left(\frac{1}{3}\right)^n u(n) - \frac{1}{5} \left(\frac{1}{3}\right)^{n-1} u(n-1)$ , then the output is  $y(n) = \left(\frac{1}{2}\right)^n u(n)$ .

Determine the transfer function  $H(z)$ , the impulse response  $h(n)$  and frequency response  $H(e^{j\omega})$  of the system that satisfies this condition.

**Solution:** Given  $x(n) = \left(\frac{1}{3}\right)^n u(n) - \frac{1}{5} \left(\frac{1}{3}\right)^{n-1} u(n-1)$

and  $y(n) = \left(\frac{1}{2}\right)^n u(n)$

We want to design a causal system.

$$\therefore h(n) = 0 \quad \text{for } n < 0$$

Taking Z-transform on both sides of the above equations, we have

$$X(z) = \frac{z}{z - (1/3)} - \frac{1}{5} z^{-1} \frac{z}{z - (1/3)} = \frac{z}{z - (1/3)} - \frac{1}{5} \frac{1}{z - (1/3)} = \frac{z - (1/5)}{z - (1/3)}$$

and

$$Y(z) = \frac{z}{z - (1/2)}$$

The system function  $H(z)$  is:

$$\begin{aligned} H(z) &= \frac{Y(z)}{X(z)} \\ &= \frac{z}{z - (1/2)} \div \frac{z - (1/5)}{z - (1/3)} = \frac{z[z - (1/3)]}{[z - (1/2)][z - (1/5)]} \end{aligned}$$

By partial fraction expansion of  $H(z)/z$ , we get

$$\begin{aligned} \therefore \frac{H(z)}{z} &= \frac{z - (1/3)}{[z - (1/2)][z - (1/5)]} = \frac{A}{z - (1/2)} + \frac{B}{z - (1/5)} = \frac{5/9}{z - (1/2)} + \frac{4/9}{z - (1/5)} \\ H(z) &= \frac{5}{9} \left[ \frac{z}{z - (1/2)} \right] + \frac{4}{9} \left[ \frac{z}{z - (1/5)} \right] \end{aligned}$$

Taking inverse Z-transform of  $H(z)$ , we get the impulse response  $h(n)$  as:

$$h(n) = \frac{5}{9} \left( \frac{1}{2} \right)^n u(n) + \frac{4}{9} \left( \frac{1}{5} \right)^n u(n)$$

The frequency response is:

$$H(e^{j\omega}) = \frac{z[z - (1/3)]}{[z - (1/2)][z - (1/5)]} \Big|_{z=e^{j\omega}} = \frac{e^{j\omega}[e^{j\omega} - (1/3)]}{[e^{j\omega} - (1/2)][e^{j\omega} - (1/5)]}$$

**EXAMPLE 10.96** A system has impulse response  $h(n) = (1/3)^n u(n)$ . Determine the transfer function and frequency response of the system. Also determine the input to the system if the output is given by

$$y(n) = \frac{1}{2}u(n) + \frac{1}{4} \left( -\frac{1}{3} \right)^n u(n)$$

**Solution:** Given

$$y(n) = \frac{1}{2}u(n) + \frac{1}{4} \left( -\frac{1}{3} \right)^n u(n)$$

and

$$h(n) = \left( \frac{1}{3} \right)^n u(n)$$

Taking Z-transform on both sides, we have the output

$$Y(z) = \frac{1}{2} \frac{z}{z - 1} + \frac{1}{4} \frac{z}{z + (1/3)} = \frac{(3/4)z[z - (1/9)]}{(z - 1)[z + (1/3)]}$$

and

$$\text{Transfer function } H(z) = \frac{z}{z - (1/3)}$$

The frequency response of the system is:

$$H(e^{j\omega}) = \frac{z}{z - (1/3)} \Big|_{z=e^{j\omega}} = \frac{e^{j\omega}}{e^{j\omega} - (1/3)}$$

Then

$$\text{System function } H(z) = \frac{Y(z)}{X(z)}$$

$$\therefore \text{Input } X(z) = \frac{Y(z)}{H(z)}$$

$$\frac{(3/4) z [z - (1/9)]}{(z - 1)[z + (1/3)]} \div \frac{z}{z - (1/3)} = \frac{(3/4)[z - (1/3)][z - (1/9)]}{(z - 1)[z + (1/3)]}$$

Making partial fraction expansion of  $X(z)/z$ , we get

$$\begin{aligned} \therefore \frac{X(z)}{z} &= \frac{3}{4} \frac{[z - (1/3)][z - (1/9)]}{z(z - 1)[z + (1/3)]} = \frac{A}{z} + \frac{B}{z - 1} + \frac{C}{z + (1/3)} = \frac{1/12}{z} + \frac{5/12}{z - 1} + \frac{1/4}{z + (1/3)} \\ X(z) &= \frac{1}{12} + \frac{5}{12} \frac{z}{z - 1} + \frac{1}{4} \frac{z}{z + (1/3)} \end{aligned}$$

Taking inverse Z-transform, we get

$$x(n) = \frac{1}{12} \delta(n) + \frac{5}{12} u(n) + \frac{1}{4} \left( -\frac{1}{3} \right)^n u(n)$$

**EXAMPLE 10.97** Find the transfer function and impulse response of the system described by the difference equation

$$y(n) - \frac{1}{3} y(n-1) = 4x(n-1)$$

**Solution:** The given difference equation is:

$$y(n) - \frac{1}{3} y(n-1) = 4x(n-1)$$

Taking Z-transform on both sides, we get

$$Y(z) - \frac{1}{3} z^{-1} Y(z) = 4z^{-1} X(z)$$

i.e.

$$Y(z) \left( 1 - \frac{1}{3} z^{-1} \right) = 4z^{-1} X(z)$$

The transfer function of the system is:

$$\frac{Y(z)}{X(z)} = H(z) = \frac{4z^{-1}}{1 - (1/3)z^{-1}} = \frac{4}{z - (1/3)}$$

Taking inverse Z-transform, the impulse response is:

$$h(n) = 4 \left( \frac{1}{3} \right)^{n-1} u(n-1)$$

**EXAMPLE 10.98** A causal LTI system is described by the difference equation

$$y(n) = y(n-1) + y(n-2) + x(n) + 2x(n-1)$$

Find the system function and frequency response of the system. Plot the poles and zeros and indicate the ROC. Also determine the stability and impulse response of the system.

*Solution:* The given difference equation is:

$$y(n) = y(n-1) + y(n-2) + x(n) + 2x(n-1)$$

Taking Z-transform on both sides, we have

$$Y(z) = z^{-1}Y(z) + z^{-2}Y(z) + X(z) + 2z^{-1}X(z)$$

i.e.

$$Y(z)(1 - z^{-1} - z^{-2}) = X(z)(1 + 2z^{-1})$$

The system function is:

$$\frac{Y(z)}{X(z)} = H(z) = \frac{1 + 2z^{-1}}{1 - z^{-1} - z^{-2}} = \frac{z(z+2)}{z^2 - z - 1} = \frac{z(z+2)}{(z-1.62)(z+0.62)}$$

The frequency response of the system is:

$$H(e^{j\omega}) = \frac{z(z+2)}{(z-1.62)(z+0.62)} \Big|_{z=e^{j\omega}} = \frac{e^{j\omega}(e^{j\omega}+2)}{(e^{j\omega}-1.62)(e^{j\omega}+0.62)}$$

$H(z)$  has the zeros at  $z = 0$  and  $z = -2$ .

$H(z)$  has the poles at  $z = 1.62$  and  $z = -0.62$ . One of the pole is outside the unit circle. So the system is unstable. The poles and zeros and the ROC are shown in Figure 10.20.

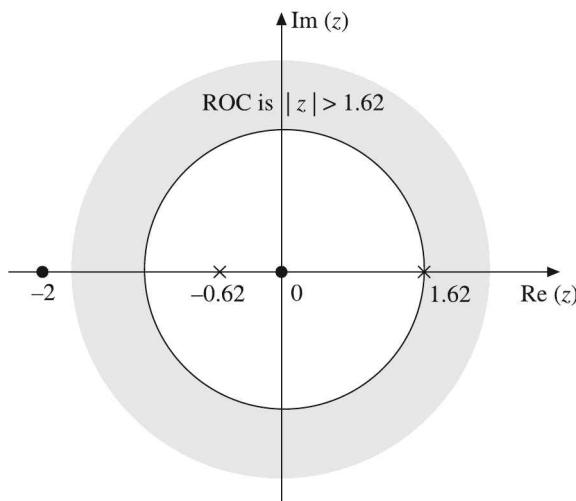
To find the impulse response  $h(n)$ , partial fraction expansion of  $H(z)/z$  gives

$$\frac{H(z)}{z} = \frac{z+2}{(z-1.62)(z+0.62)} = \frac{A}{z-1.62} + \frac{B}{z+0.62} = \frac{1.62}{z-1.62} - \frac{0.62}{z+0.62}$$

$$\therefore H(z) = 1.62 \left( \frac{z}{z-1.62} \right) - 0.62 \left( \frac{z}{z+0.62} \right)$$

Taking inverse Z-transform, the impulse response is:

$$h(n) = 1.62(1.62)^n u(n) - 0.62(-0.62)^n u(n)$$

**Figure 10.20** Pole-zero plot and ROC for Example 10.98.

**EXAMPLE 10.99** Determine whether the following systems are both causal and stable.

$$(a) \quad H(z) = \frac{3 + z^{-1}}{1 + z^{-1} - (4/9)z^{-2}}$$

$$(b) \quad H(z) = \frac{1 + 2z^{-1}}{1 + (6/5)z^{-1} + (9/25)z^{-2}}$$

**Solution:**

$$(a) \quad \text{Given } H(z) = \frac{3 + z^{-1}}{1 + z^{-1} - (4/9)z^{-2}} = \frac{z(z+3)}{z^2 + z - (4/9)} = \frac{z(z+3)}{[z - (1/3)][z + (4/3)]}$$

The poles of  $H(z)$  are:  $z = 1/3$  and  $z = -4/3$

For a causal system to be stable, the ROC must include the unit circle. Now, for a causal  $H(z)$ , the ROC is  $|z| > 4/3$ . Since one pole is lying outside the unit circle, the given system is not both causal and stable.

$$(b) \quad \text{Given } H(z) = \frac{1 + 2z^{-1}}{1 + (6/5)z^{-1} + (9/25)z^{-2}} = \frac{z(z+2)}{z^2 + (6/5)z + (9/25)} = \frac{z(z+2)}{[z + (3/5)]^2}$$

The location of the poles is at  $z = -3/5$ .

Since all the poles are lying inside the unit circle in the  $z$ -plane, the system is both causal and stable.

**EXAMPLE 10.100** An LTI system is described by the difference equation.

$$y(n) - \frac{9}{4}y(n-1) + \frac{1}{2}y(n-2) = x(n) - 3x(n-1)$$

Specify the ROC of  $H(z)$ , and determine  $h(n)$  for the following conditions:

- (a) The system is stable.
- (b) The system is causal.

**Solution:** Given  $y(n) - \frac{9}{4}y(n-1) + \frac{1}{2}y(n-2) = x(n) - 3x(n-1)$

Taking Z-transform on both sides, we have

$$Y(z) - \frac{9}{4}z^{-1}Y(z) + \frac{1}{2}z^{-2}Y(z) = X(z) - 3z^{-1}X(z)$$

$$Y(z) \left( 1 - \frac{9}{4}z^{-1} + \frac{1}{2}z^{-2} \right) = X(z) (1 - 3z^{-1})$$

The system function is:

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{Y(z)}{X(z)} &= H(z) \\ &= \frac{1 - 3z^{-1}}{1 - (9/4)z^{-1} + (1/2)z^{-2}} = \frac{z(z-3)}{z^2 - (9/4)z + (1/2)} = \frac{z(z-3)}{[z - (1/4)](z-2)} \end{aligned}$$

By partial fraction expansion of  $H(z)/z$ , we have

$$\frac{H(z)}{z} = \frac{(z-3)}{[z - (1/4)](z-2)} = \frac{A}{z - (1/4)} + \frac{B}{z-2} = \frac{11}{7} \frac{z}{z - (1/4)} - \frac{4}{7} \frac{z}{z-2}$$

The system function has poles at  $z = 1/4$  and  $z = 2$ .

- (a) For the system to be stable, its ROC must include the unit circle. Therefore, ROC is  $\frac{1}{4} < |z| < 2$ .

Taking the inverse Z-transform of  $H(z)$ , we have the impulse response as:

$$h(n) = \frac{11}{7} \left( \frac{1}{4} \right)^n u(n) + \frac{4}{7} (2)^n u(-n-1)$$

Here the system is stable but non-causal.

- (b) For the system to be causal, the ROC should be outside the outermost pole.

$$\therefore \text{ROC is } |z| > 2$$

$$\therefore h(n) = \frac{11}{7} \left( \frac{1}{4} \right)^n u(n) - \frac{4}{7} (2)^n u(n)$$

Here the system is causal, but unstable.

**EXAMPLE 10.101** An LTI system is described by the equation

$$y(n) = x(n) + 0.81x(n-1) - 0.81x(n-2) - 0.45y(n-2)$$

Determine the transfer function of the system. Sketch the poles and zeros on the z-plane. Assess the stability.

**Solution:** The given difference equation is:

$$y(n) = x(n) + 0.81x(n-1) - 0.81x(n-2) - 0.45y(n-2)$$

Taking Z-transform on both sides and neglecting initial conditions, we have

$$Y(z) = X(z) + 0.81z^{-1}X(z) - 0.81z^{-2}X(z) - 0.45z^{-2}Y(z)$$

$$\text{i.e. } Y(z)[1 + 0.45z^{-2}] = X(z)[1 + 0.81z^{-1} - 0.81z^{-2}]$$

The transfer function of the system  $H(z)$  is:

$$H(z) = \frac{Y(z)}{X(z)} = \frac{1 + 0.81z^{-1} - 0.81z^{-2}}{1 + 0.45z^{-2}} = \frac{z^2 + 0.81z - 0.81}{z^2 + 0.45}$$

Equating the denominator to zero, we have  $z^2 + 0.45 = 0$ , i.e.  $z^2 = -0.45$

$$\therefore z = \pm j\sqrt{0.45} = \pm j0.67$$

So the poles are  $z = +j0.67$  and  $z = -j0.67$ .

Equating the numerator to zero, we have

$$z^2 + 0.81z - 0.81 = 0$$

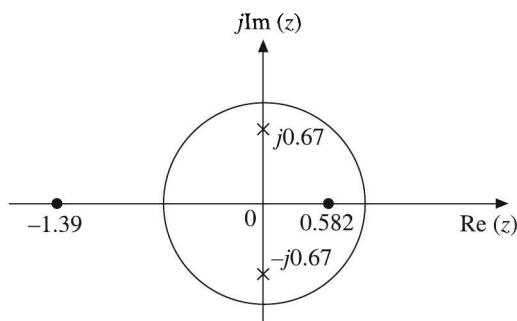
$$\begin{aligned} \therefore z &= \frac{-0.81 \pm \sqrt{0.656 + 3.24}}{2} \\ &= \frac{-0.81 \pm \sqrt{3.896}}{2} = -0.81 \pm 1.974 = -1.39, 0.582 \end{aligned}$$

The zeros are at  $z = -1.39$  and  $z = 0.58$ .

$$\therefore \frac{Y(z)}{X(z)} = \frac{(z + 1.39)(z - 0.582)}{(z - j0.67)(z + j0.67)}$$

The pole-zero plot is shown in Figure 10.21.

The system is stable as both the poles are inside the unit circle.



**Figure 10.21** Pole-zero plot for Example 10.101.

**EXAMPLE 10.102** Test the condition for stability of the first order infinite impulse response (IIR) filter governed by the equation

$$y(n) = x(n) + bx(n - 1)$$

**Solution:** Given difference equation is:

$$y(n) = x(n) + bx(n - 1)$$

Taking Z-transform on both sides, we have

$$\begin{aligned} Y(z) &= X(z) + bz^{-1}X(z) \\ &= X(z)[1 + bz^{-1}] \end{aligned}$$

The transfer function of the system  $H(z)$  is:

$$\begin{aligned} H(z) &= \frac{Y(z)}{X(z)} \\ &= 1 + bz^{-1} = \frac{z + b}{z} \end{aligned}$$

The system has a zero at  $z = -b$  and a pole at  $z = 0$ . So the system is stable for all values of  $b$ .

**EXAMPLE 10.103** Determine the impulse response of the system described by the difference equation

$$y(n) - 3y(n - 1) - 4y(n - 2) = x(n) + 2x(n - 1)$$

using Z-transform.

**Solution:** Given difference equation is:

$$y(n) - 3y(n - 1) - 4y(n - 2) = x(n) + 2x(n - 1)$$

Taking Z-transform on both sides, we have

$$Y(z) - 3z^{-1}Y(z) - 4z^{-2}Y(z) = X(z) + 2z^{-1}X(z)$$

i.e.

$$Y(z)(1 - 3z^{-1} - 4z^{-2}) = X(z)(1 + 2z^{-1})$$

The transfer function of the system is:

$$\begin{aligned} H(z) &= \frac{Y(z)}{X(z)} \\ &= \frac{1 + 2z^{-1}}{1 - 3z^{-1} - 4z^{-2}} = \frac{z(z + 2)}{z^2 - 3z - 4} \end{aligned}$$

Taking partial fractions of  $H(z)/z$ , we have

$$\therefore \frac{H(z)}{z} = \frac{z + 2}{z^2 - 3z - 4} = \frac{z + 2}{(z - 4)(z + 1)} = \frac{A}{z - 4} + \frac{B}{z + 1} = \frac{1.2}{z - 4} - \frac{0.2}{z + 1}$$

$$\therefore H(z) = 1.2 \left( \frac{z}{z-4} \right) - 0.2 \left( \frac{z}{z+1} \right)$$

Taking inverse Z-transform on both sides, the impulse response  $h(n)$  is given by

$$h(n) = 1.2(4)^n u(n) - 0.2(-1)^n u(n)$$

**EXAMPLE 10.104** Determine the impulse response and step response of the causal system given below and discuss on stability

$$y(n) - y(n-1) - 2y(n-2) = x(n-1) + 2x(n-2)$$

**Solution:** The given difference equation is:

$$y(n) - y(n-1) - 2y(n-2) = x(n-1) + 2x(n-2)$$

Taking Z-transform on both sides, we have

$$Y(z) - z^{-1}Y(z) - 2z^{-2}Y(z) = z^{-1}X(z) + 2z^{-2}X(z)$$

i.e.

$$Y(z)[1 - z^{-1} - 2z^{-2}] = X(z)[z^{-1} + 2z^{-2}]$$

The transfer function of the system  $H(z)$  is:

$$\begin{aligned} H(z) &= \frac{Y(z)}{X(z)} \\ &= \frac{z^{-1} + 2z^{-2}}{1 - z^{-1} - 2z^{-2}} = \frac{(z+2)}{z^2 - z - 2} = \frac{(z+2)}{(z-2)(z+1)} \end{aligned}$$

The impulse response of the system is:

$$\begin{aligned} h(n) &= Z^{-1}[H(z)] = Z^{-1}\left[\frac{z+2}{(z-2)(z+1)}\right] = Z^{-1}\left(\frac{A}{z-2} + \frac{B}{z+1}\right) \\ &= Z^{-1}\left(\frac{4}{3} \frac{1}{z-2}\right) - Z^{-1}\left(\frac{1}{3} \frac{1}{z+1}\right) \\ &= \frac{4}{3}(2)^{n-1} u(n-1) - \frac{1}{3}(-1)^{n-1} u(n-1) \end{aligned}$$

For step response,  $x(n) = u(n)$

$$\therefore X(z) = \frac{z}{z-1}$$

$$\therefore \text{Output } Y(z) = H(z) X(z) = \frac{z+2}{(z-2)(z+1)} \frac{z}{z-1}$$

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{Y(z)}{z} &= \frac{z+2}{(z-2)(z+1)(z-1)} = \frac{A}{z-2} + \frac{B}{z+1} + \frac{C}{z-1} = \frac{4/3}{z-2} + \frac{1/6}{z+1} - \frac{3/2}{z-1} \\ \therefore Y(z) &= \frac{4}{3} \left( \frac{z}{z-2} \right) + \frac{1}{6} \left( \frac{z}{z+1} \right) - \frac{3}{2} \left( \frac{z}{z-1} \right) \end{aligned}$$

Taking inverse Z-transform on both sides, we have the step response

$$y(n) = \frac{4}{3}(2)^n u(n) + \frac{1}{6}(-1)^n u(n) - \frac{3}{2}u(n)$$

**EXAMPLE 10.105** Consider a discrete-time linear time invariant system described by the difference equation

$$y(n) - \frac{3}{4}y(n-1) + \frac{1}{8}y(n-2) = x(n) + \frac{1}{3}x(n-1)$$

where  $y(n)$  is the output and  $x(n)$  is the input. Assuming that the system is relaxed initially, obtain the unit sample response of the system.

**Solution:** The given difference equation is:

$$y(n) - \frac{3}{4}y(n-1) + \frac{1}{8}y(n-2) = x(n) + \frac{1}{3}x(n-1)$$

Taking Z-transform on both sides and assuming that the system is relaxed initially, i.e. neglecting the initial conditions, we have

$$\begin{aligned} Y(z) - \frac{3}{4}z^{-1}Y(z) + \frac{1}{8}z^{-2}Y(z) &= X(z) + \frac{1}{3}z^{-1}X(z) \\ \text{i.e. } Y(z) \left( 1 - \frac{3}{4}z^{-1} + \frac{1}{8}z^{-2} \right) &= X(z) \left( 1 + \frac{1}{3}z^{-1} \right) \end{aligned}$$

The system function  $H(z)$  is:

$$\begin{aligned} H(z) &= \frac{Y(z)}{X(z)} \\ &= \frac{1 + (1/3)z^{-1}}{1 - (3/4)z^{-1} + (1/8)z^{-2}} = \frac{z[z + (1/3)]}{z^2 - (3/4)z + (1/8)} \end{aligned}$$

Taking partial fractions of  $H(z)/z$ , we have

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{H(z)}{z} &= \frac{[z + (1/3)]}{[z - (1/2)][z - (1/4)]} = \frac{A}{z - (1/2)} + \frac{B}{z - (1/4)} = \frac{10/3}{z - (1/2)} - \frac{7/3}{z - (1/4)} \\ \therefore H(z) &= \frac{10}{3} \frac{z}{z - (1/2)} - \frac{7}{3} \frac{z}{z - (1/4)} \end{aligned}$$

Taking inverse Z-transform on both sides, the unit sample response of the system is:

$$h(n) = \frac{10}{3} \left(\frac{1}{2}\right)^n u(n) - \frac{7}{3} \left(\frac{1}{4}\right)^n u(n)$$

**EXAMPLE 10.106** Find the

- (a) Impulse response
- (b) Output response for a step input applied at  $n = 0$  of a discrete-time linear time invariant system whose difference equation is given by

$$y(n) = y(n-1) + 0.5y(n-2) + x(n) + x(n-1)$$

**Solution:**

- (a) The given difference equation is:

$$y(n) = y(n-1) + 0.5y(n-2) + x(n) + x(n-1)$$

Taking Z-transform on both sides and neglecting the initial conditions, we have

$$Y(z) = z^{-1}Y(z) + 0.5z^{-2}Y(z) + X(z) + z^{-1}X(z)$$

$$\text{i.e. } Y(z)(1 - z^{-1} - 0.5z^{-2}) = X(z)(1 + z^{-1})$$

The system function  $H(z)$  is:

$$\begin{aligned} H(z) &= \frac{Y(z)}{X(z)} \\ &= \frac{1 + z^{-1}}{1 - z^{-1} - 0.5z^{-2}} = \frac{z(z+1)}{z^2 - z - 0.5} \end{aligned}$$

$$z^2 - z - 0.5 = 0, \quad z = \frac{1 \pm \sqrt{1+2}}{2} = \frac{1}{2} \pm \sqrt{0.75} = 0.5 \pm 0.866 = 1.366, -0.366$$

$$\therefore H(z) = \frac{z(z+1)}{(z-1.366)(z+0.366)}$$

To find the impulse response  $h(n)$  we have to take the inverse Z-transform of  $H(z)$ . Taking partial fractions of  $H(z)/z$ , we have

$$\frac{H(z)}{z} = \frac{z+1}{(z-1.366)(z+0.366)} = \frac{A}{z-1.366} + \frac{B}{z+0.366} = \frac{1.366}{z-1.366} - \frac{0.366}{z+0.366}$$

$$\therefore H(z) = 1.366 \frac{z}{z-1.366} - 0.366 \frac{z}{z+0.366}$$

Taking inverse Z-transform, the impulse response of the system is:

$$h(n) = 1.366(1.366)^n u(n) - 0.366(-0.366)^n u(n)$$

(b) For a unit step input,  $x(n) = u(n)$

$$\therefore X(z) = \frac{z}{z-1}$$

Therefore, the output for a step input is:

$$Y(z) = \frac{z(z+1)z}{(z-1.366)(z+0.366)(z-1)}$$

Taking partial fractions of  $Y(z)/z$ , we have

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{Y(z)}{z} &= \frac{z(z+1)}{(z-1.366)(z+0.366)(z-1)} = \frac{A}{z-1.366} + \frac{B}{z+0.366} + \frac{C}{z-1} \\ &= \frac{5}{z-1.366} + \frac{0.1}{z+0.366} + \frac{4}{z-1} \\ \therefore Y(z) &= 5 \frac{z}{z-1.366} + 0.1 \frac{z}{z+0.366} + 4 \frac{z}{z-1} \end{aligned}$$

Taking inverse Z-transform on both sides, the output response for a step input is:

$$y(n) = 5(1.366)^n u(n) + 0.1(-0.366)^n u(n) + 4u(n)$$

**EXAMPLE 10.107** A causal system is represented by

$$H(z) = \frac{z+2}{z^2 - 3z + 4}$$

Find the difference equation and the corresponding frequency response of the system.

**Solution:** Given

$$H(z) = \frac{z+2}{z^2 - 3z + 4}$$

As the system is causal,  $H(z)$  is to be expressed in negative powers of  $z$ .

$$\begin{aligned} \therefore \frac{Y(z)}{X(z)} &= H(z) \\ &= \frac{z+2}{z^2 - 3z + 4} = \frac{z^{-1} + 2z^{-2}}{1 - 3z^{-1} + 4z^{-2}} \\ \therefore Y(z)(1 - 3z^{-1} + 4z^{-2}) &= X(z)(z^{-1} + 2z^{-2}) \end{aligned}$$

$$\text{i.e. } Y(z) - 3z^{-1}Y(z) + 4z^{-2}Y(z) = z^{-1}X(z) + 2z^{-2}X(z)$$

Taking inverse Z-transform, we get the difference equation

$$y(n) - 3y(n-1) + 4y(n-2) = x(n-1) + 2x(n-2)$$

The frequency response  $H(e^{j\omega})$  of the system is obtained by substituting  $z = e^{j\omega}$  in  $H(z)$ .

$$\therefore H(e^{j\omega}) = \frac{z+2}{z^2 - 3z + 4} \Big|_{z=e^{j\omega}} = \frac{e^{j\omega} + 2}{e^{j2\omega} - 3e^{j\omega} + 4}$$

or 
$$H(e^{j\omega}) = \frac{2 + \cos \omega + j \sin \omega}{\cos 2\omega - 3 \cos \omega + 4 + j(\sin 2\omega - 3 \sin \omega)}$$

## 10.10 SOLUTION OF DIFFERENCE EQUATIONS USING Z-TRANSFORMS

To solve the difference equation, first it is converted into algebraic equation by taking its Z-transform. The solution is obtained in  $z$ -domain and the time domain solution is obtained by taking its inverse Z-transform.

The response of the system due to input alone when the initial conditions are neglected is called the forced response of the system. The response of the system due to initial conditions alone when the input is neglected is called the free or natural response of the system. The response due to input and initial conditions considered simultaneously is called the total response of the system.

When input is a unit impulse input, the response is called the impulse response of the system and when the input is a unit step input, the response is called the step response of the system.

**EXAMPLE 10.108** A linear shift invariant system is described by the difference equation

$$y(n) - \frac{3}{4}y(n-1) + \frac{1}{8}y(n-2) = x(n) + x(n-1)$$

with  $y(-1) = 0$  and  $y(-2) = -1$

Find (a) the natural response of the system (b) the forced response of the system and (c) the frequency response of the system for a step input.

**Solution:**

- (a) The natural response is the response due to initial conditions only. So make  $x(n) = 0$ . Then the difference equation becomes

$$y(n) - \frac{3}{4}y(n-1) + \frac{1}{8}y(n-2) = 0$$

Taking Z-transform on both sides, we have

$$Y(z) - \frac{3}{4}[z^{-1}Y(z) + y(-1)] + \frac{1}{8}[z^{-2}Y(z) + z^{-1}y(-1) + y(-2)] = 0$$

i.e. 
$$-Y(z)\left(1 - \frac{3}{4}z^{-1} + \frac{1}{8}z^{-2}\right) - \frac{1}{8} = 0$$

$$\therefore Y(z) = \frac{1/8}{1 - (3/4)z^{-1} + (1/8)z^{-2}} = \frac{1/8z^2}{z^2 - (3/4)z + (1/8)} = \frac{1/8z^2}{[z - (1/2)][z - (1/4)]}$$

The partial fraction expansion of  $Y(z)/z$  gives

$$\begin{aligned}\frac{Y(z)}{z} &= \frac{(1/8)z}{[z - (1/2)][z - (1/4)]} = \frac{A}{z - (1/2)} + \frac{B}{z - (1/4)} = \frac{1/4}{z - (1/2)} - \frac{1/8}{z - (1/4)} \\ \therefore Y(z) &= \frac{1}{4} \frac{z}{z - (1/2)} - \frac{1}{8} \frac{z}{z - (1/4)}\end{aligned}$$

Taking inverse Z-transform on both sides, we get the natural response as:

$$y(n) = \frac{1}{4} \left( \frac{1}{2} \right)^n u(n) - \frac{1}{8} \left( \frac{1}{4} \right)^n u(n)$$

(b) To find the forced response due to a step input, put  $x(n) = u(n)$ . So we have

$$y(n) - \frac{3}{4}y(n-1) + \frac{1}{8}y(n-2) = u(n) + u(n-1)$$

We know that the forced response is due to input alone. So for forced response, the initial conditions are neglected. Taking Z-transform on both sides of the above equation and neglecting the initial conditions, we have

$$\begin{aligned}Y(z) - \frac{3}{4}z^{-1}Y(z) + \frac{1}{8}z^{-2}Y(z) &= U(z) + z^{-1}U(z) = \frac{z}{z-1} + \frac{1}{z-1} \\ \text{i.e. } Y(z) \left( 1 - \frac{3}{4}z^{-1} + \frac{1}{8}z^{-2} \right) &= \frac{z+1}{z-1} \\ \therefore Y(z) &= \frac{z+1}{(z-1)[1 - (3/4)z^{-1} + (1/8)z^{-2}]} = \frac{z^2(z+1)}{(z-1)[z^2 - (3/4)z + (1/8)]} \\ &= \frac{z^2(z+1)}{(z-1)[z - (1/2)][z - (1/4)]}\end{aligned}$$

Taking partial fractions of  $Y(z)/z$ , we have

$$\begin{aligned}\therefore \frac{Y(z)}{z} &= \frac{z(z+1)}{(z-1)[z - (1/2)][z - (1/4)]} = \frac{A}{z-1} + \frac{B}{z - (1/2)} + \frac{C}{z - (1/4)} \\ &= \frac{16/3}{z-1} - \frac{6}{z - (1/2)} + \frac{5/3}{z - (1/4)}\end{aligned}$$

$$\text{or } Y(z) = \frac{16}{3} \left( \frac{z}{z-1} \right) - 6 \left[ \frac{z}{z - (1/2)} \right] + \frac{5}{3} \left[ \frac{z}{z - (1/4)} \right]$$

Taking the inverse Z-transform on both sides, we have the forced response for a step input.

$$y(n) = \frac{16}{3}u(n) - 6\left(\frac{1}{2}\right)^n u(n) + \frac{5}{3}\left(\frac{1}{4}\right)^n u(n)$$

(c) The frequency response of the system  $H(e^{j\omega})$  is obtained by putting  $z = e^{j\omega}$  in  $H(z)$ .

Here  $H(z) = \frac{Y(z)}{X(z)} = \frac{z(z+1)}{z^2 - (3/4)z + (1/8)}$

Therefore,  $H(e^{j\omega}) = \frac{e^{j\omega}(e^{j\omega}+1)}{(e^{j\omega})^2 - (3/4)e^{j\omega} + (1/8)}$

**EXAMPLE 10.109** (a) Determine the free response of the system described by the difference equation

$$y(n) - \frac{5}{6}y(n-1) + \frac{1}{6}y(n-2) = x(n) \text{ with } y(-1) = 1 \text{ and } y(-2) = 0$$

(b) Determine the forced response for an input

$$x(n) = \left(\frac{1}{4}\right)^n u(n)$$

**Solution:** The free response, also called the natural response, is the response due to initial conditions only [i.e. make  $x(n) = 0$ ].

So, the difference equation is:

$$y(n) - \frac{5}{6}y(n-1) + \frac{1}{6}y(n-2) = 0$$

Taking Z-transform on both sides, we get

$$\begin{aligned} Y(z) - \frac{5}{6}[z^{-1}Y(z) + y(-1)] + \frac{1}{6}[z^{-2}Y(z) + z^{-1}y(-1) + y(-2)] &= 0 \\ Y(z)\left(1 - \frac{5}{6}z^{-1} + \frac{1}{6}z^{-2}\right) - \frac{5}{6} + \frac{1}{6}z^{-1} &= 0 \\ \therefore Y(z) = \frac{(5/6) - (1/6)z^{-1}}{1 - (5/6)z^{-1} + (1/6)z^{-2}} &= \frac{5/6[z - (1/5)]z}{z^2 - (5/6)z + (1/6)} = \frac{(5/6)z[z - (1/5)]}{[z - (1/2)][z - (1/3)]} \end{aligned}$$

Taking partial fractions of  $Y(z)/z$ , we have

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{Y(z)}{z} &= \frac{5/6[z - (1/5)]}{[z - (1/2)][z - (1/3)]} = \frac{A}{z - (1/2)} + \frac{B}{z - (1/3)} = \frac{3/2}{z - (1/2)} - \frac{2/3}{z - (1/3)} \\ \therefore Y(z) &= \frac{3}{2} \frac{z}{z - (1/2)} - \frac{2}{3} \frac{z}{z - (1/3)} \end{aligned}$$

Taking inverse Z-transform on both sides, we get the free response of the system as:

$$y(n) = \frac{3}{2} \left(\frac{1}{2}\right)^n u(n) - \frac{2}{3} \left(\frac{1}{3}\right)^n u(n)$$

- (b) To determine the forced response, the initial conditions are to be neglected.

The given difference equation is:

$$y(n) - \frac{5}{6}y(n-1) + \frac{1}{6}y(n-2) = x(n) = \left(\frac{1}{4}\right)^n u(n)$$

Taking Z-transform on both sides and neglecting the initial conditions, we have

$$Y(z) - \frac{5}{6}z^{-1}Y(z) + \frac{1}{6}z^{-2}Y(z) = \frac{z}{z - (1/4)}$$

i.e. 
$$Y(z) \left(1 - \frac{5}{6}z^{-1} + \frac{1}{6}z^{-2}\right) = \frac{z}{z - (1/4)}$$

$$\therefore Y(z) = \frac{z}{z - (1/4)} \frac{1}{1 - (5/6)z^{-1} + (1/6)z^{-2}} = \frac{z^3}{[z - (1/4)][z - (1/2)][z - (1/3)]}$$

Partial fraction expansion of  $Y(z)/z$  gives

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{Y(z)}{z} &= \frac{z^2}{[z - (1/4)][z - (1/3)][z - (1/2)]} = \frac{A}{z - (1/4)} + \frac{B}{z - (1/3)} + \frac{C}{z - (1/2)} \\ &= \frac{3}{z - (1/4)} - \frac{8}{z - (1/3)} + \frac{6}{z - (1/2)} \end{aligned}$$

Multiplying both sides by  $z$ , we get

$$Y(z) = 3 \frac{z}{z - (1/4)} - 8 \frac{z}{z - (1/3)} + 6 \frac{z}{z - (1/2)}$$

Taking inverse Z-transform on both sides, the forced response of the system is:

$$y(n) = 3 \left(\frac{1}{4}\right)^n u(n) - 8 \left(\frac{1}{3}\right)^n u(n) + 6 \left(\frac{1}{2}\right)^n u(n)$$

**EXAMPLE 10.110** Find the impulse and step response of the system

$$y(n) = 2x(n) - 3x(n-1) + x(n-2) - 4x(n-3)$$

**Solution:** For impulse response,  $x(n) = \delta(n)$

The impulse response of the system is:

$$y(n) = 2\delta(n) - 3\delta(n-1) + \delta(n-2) - 4\delta(n-3)$$

For step response,  $x(n) = u(n)$

The step response of the system is:

$$y(n) = 2u(n) - 3u(n-1) + u(n-2) - 4u(n-3)$$

**EXAMPLE 10.111** Solve the following difference equation

$$y(n) + 2y(n-1) = x(n)$$

with  $x(n) = (1/3)^n u(n)$  and the initial condition  $y(-1) = 1$ .

**Solution:** The solution of the difference equation considering the initial condition and input simultaneously gives the total response of the system.

The given difference equation is:

$$y(n) + 2y(n-1) = x(n) = \left(\frac{1}{3}\right)^n u(n) \text{ with } y(-1) = 1$$

Taking Z-transform on both sides, we get

$$Y(z) + 2[z^{-1}Y(z) + y(-1)] = X(z) = \frac{1}{1 - (1/3)z^{-1}}$$

Substituting the initial conditions, we have

$$\begin{aligned} Y(z)(1 + 2z^{-1}) &= -2(1) + \frac{1}{1 - (1/3)z^{-1}} \\ \therefore Y(z) &= \frac{-2}{1 + 2z^{-1}} + \frac{1}{[1 - (1/3)z^{-1}][1 + 2z^{-1}]} \\ &= \frac{-2z}{z + 2} + \frac{z^2}{[z - (1/3)][z + 2]} \end{aligned}$$

Let

$$Y_1(z) = \frac{z^2}{[z - (1/3)][z + 2]}$$

Taking partial fractions of  $Y_1(z)/z$ , we have

$$\frac{Y_1(z)}{z} = \frac{z}{[z - (1/3)][z + 2]} = \frac{A}{z - (1/3)} + \frac{B}{z + 2} = \frac{1/7}{z - (1/3)} + \frac{6/7}{z + 2}$$

Multiplying both sides by  $z$ , we have

$$\begin{aligned} Y_1(z) &= \frac{1}{7} \frac{z}{z - (1/3)} + \frac{6}{7} \frac{z}{z + 2} \\ \therefore Y(z) &= -\frac{2z}{z + 2} + \frac{6}{7} \frac{z}{z + 2} + \frac{1}{7} \frac{z}{z - (1/3)} = -\frac{8}{7} \frac{z}{z + 2} + \frac{1}{7} \frac{z}{z - (1/3)} \end{aligned}$$

Taking inverse Z-transform on both sides, the solution of the difference equation is:

$$y(n) = -\frac{8}{7}(-2)^n u(n) + \frac{1}{7} \left(\frac{1}{3}\right)^n u(n)$$

**EXAMPLE 10.112** Solve the following difference equation using unilateral Z-transform.

$$y(n) - \frac{7}{12}y(n-1) + \frac{1}{12}y(n-2) = x(n) \text{ for } n \geq 0$$

with initial conditions  $y(-1) = 2$ ,  $y(-2) = 4$  and  $x(n) = \left(\frac{1}{5}\right)^n u(n)$

**Solution:** The solution of the difference equation gives the total response of the system (i.e. the sum of the natural (free) response and the forced response)

The given difference equation is:

$$y(n) - \frac{7}{12}y(n-1) + \frac{1}{12}y(n-2) = x(n) = \left(\frac{1}{5}\right)^n u(n)$$

with initial conditions  $y(-1) = 2$  and  $y(-2) = 4$ .

Taking Z-transform on both sides, we have

$$Y(z) - \frac{7}{12}[z^{-1}Y(z) + y(-1)] + \frac{1}{12}[z^{-2}Y(z) + z^{-1}y(-1) + y(-2)] = \frac{1}{1 - (1/5)z^{-1}}$$

i.e.  $Y(z)\left(1 - \frac{7}{12}z^{-1} + \frac{1}{12}z^{-2}\right) = \frac{7}{12}(2) - \frac{1}{12}(2z^{-1}) - \frac{1}{12}(4) + \frac{1}{1 - (1/5)z^{-1}}$

i.e.  $Y(z)\left(1 - \frac{7}{12}z^{-1} + \frac{1}{12}z^{-2}\right) = \frac{5}{6}\left(1 - \frac{1}{5}z^{-1}\right) + \frac{1}{1 - (1/5)z^{-1}}$

$$\begin{aligned} \therefore Y(z) &= \frac{(5/6)[1 - (1/5)z^{-1}]}{[1 - (7/12)z^{-1} + (1/12)z^{-2}]} + \frac{1}{[1 - (1/5)z^{-1}][1 - (7/12)z^{-1} + (1/12)z^{-2}]} \\ &= \frac{(5/6)[z - (1/5)]z}{[z - (1/4)][z - (1/3)]} + \frac{z^3}{[z - (1/4)][z - (1/3)][z - (1/4)][z - (1/3)]} \\ &= \frac{z[(11/6)z^2 - (1/3)z + (1/30)]}{[z - (1/5)][z - (1/4)][z - (1/3)]} \end{aligned}$$

Taking partial fractions of  $Y(z)/z$ , we have

$$\frac{Y(z)}{z} = \frac{A}{z - (1/5)} + \frac{B}{z - (1/4)} + \frac{C}{z - (1/3)} = \frac{6}{5} \frac{1}{z - (1/5)} + \frac{1}{8} \frac{1}{z - (1/4)} + \frac{100}{27} \frac{1}{z - (1/3)}$$

Multiplying both sides by  $z$ , we have

$$Y(z) = \frac{6}{5} \frac{z}{z - (1/5)} + \frac{1}{8} \frac{z}{z - (1/4)} + \frac{102}{27} \frac{z}{z - (1/3)}$$

Taking inverse Z-transform on both sides, the solution of the difference equation is:

$$y(n) = \frac{6}{5} \left(\frac{1}{5}\right)^n u(n) + \frac{1}{8} \left(\frac{1}{4}\right)^n u(n) + \frac{102}{27} \left(\frac{1}{3}\right)^n u(n)$$

## MATLAB PROGRAMS

### Program 10.1

```
% Generation of the Z-transform of the sequences
clc; close all; clear all;
syms a b w0 n;
disp('the sequence x1(n) is')
x1=sin(w0*n)
X1=ztrans(x1);
disp('the Z-Transform of x1(n) is ');
X1=simplify(X1)
disp('the sequence x2(n) is')
x2=cos(w0*n)
X2=ztrans(x2);
disp('the Z-Transform of x2(n) is ')
X2=simplify(X2)
disp('the sequence x3(n) is')
x3=a.^n+b.^n
X3=ztrans(x3);
disp('the Z-Transform of x3(n) is ')
X3=simplify(X3)
```

#### Output:

```
the sequence x1(n) is
x1 =
sin(n*w0)
the Z-Transform of x1(n) is
X1 =
(z*sin(w0))/(z^2 - 2*cos(w0)*z + 1)
the sequence x2(n) is
x2 =
cos(n*w0)
the Z-Transform of x2(n) is
X2 =
(z^2/2 - 1/2)/(z^2 - 2*cos(w0)*z + 1) + 1/2
the sequence x3(n) is
x3 =
a^n + b^n
the Z-Transform of x3(n) is
X3 =
- z/(a - z) - z/(b - z)
```

### Program 10.2

```
% Z-transform and Inverse Z-transform of given sequences
clc; clear all; close all;
```

```

syms n wo
% first signal x1(n)
x1=n+1;
disp('The input equation is')
disp(x1)
X1=ztrans(x1);
disp('The z-transform is')
disp(X1)
x11=iztrans(X1);
disp('The inverse z-transform is')
disp(x11')
% second signal x2(n)
x2=cos(wo*n);
disp('The input equation is')
disp(x2)
X2=ztrans(x2);
disp('The z-transform is')
disp(X2)
x22=iztrans(X2);
disp('The inverse z-transform is')
disp(x22)

```

### Output:

```

The input equation is
n + 1
    The z-transform is
z/(z - 1) + z/(z - 1)^2
    The inverse z-transform is
n + 1
    The input equation is
cos(n*wo)
    The z-transform is
(z*(z - cos(wo)))/(z^2 - 2*cos(wo)*z + 1)
    The inverse z-transform is
cos(n*acos(cos(wo)))

```

### Program 10.3

```

%FINDING THE POLES AND RESIDUES AND POLO-ZERO PLOT OF THE FUNCTION
X(z) = z^3/(z - 0.5)(z - 0.75)(z - 1)
clc; clear all; close all;
syms z
% The denominator of X(z)
d=(z-0.5)*(z-0.75)*(z-1);
a1=collect(d);

```

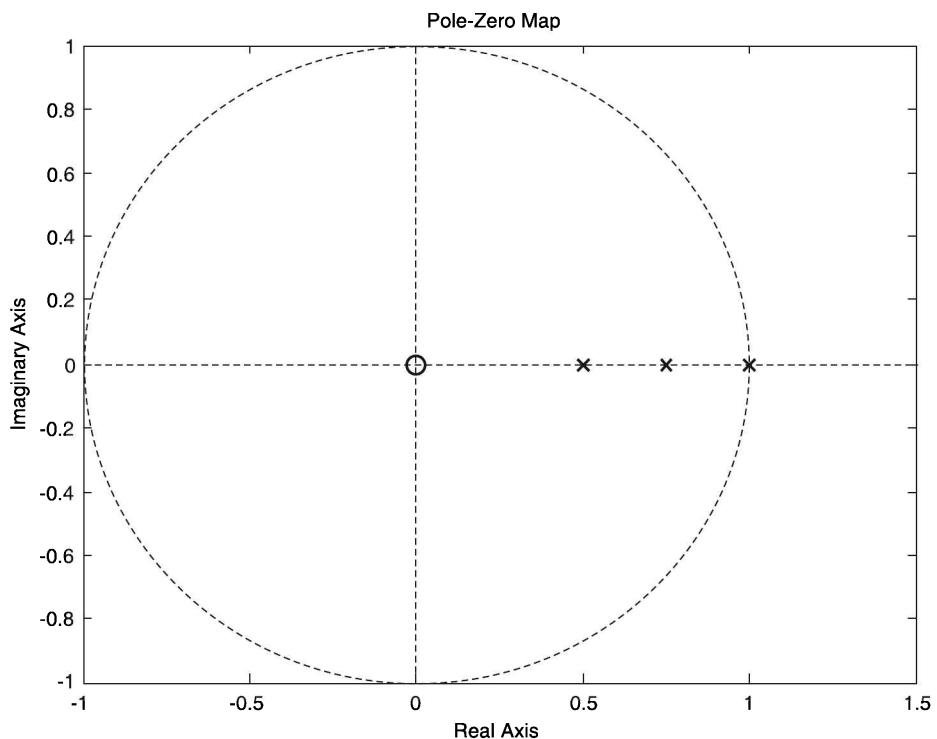
```

den=sym2poly(a1);
% The numerator of X(z)
num=[0 1 0 0];
% residues and poles of X(z)
[num1,den1]=residue(num,den);
fprintf('r1 = %4.2f \t', num(1));
fprintf('p1 = %4.2f \t', den(1));
fprintf('r2 = %4.2f \t', num(2));
fprintf('p2 = %4.2f \t', den(2));
fprintf('r3 = %4.2f \t', num(3));
fprintf('p3 = %4.2f \t', den(3));
% Pole-zero plot
Ts=0.2;
H=tf('z');
H=tf(num,den,Ts);
pzmap(H);

```

**Output:**

r1 = 0.00	p1 = 1.00
r2 = 1.00	p2 = -2.25
r3 = 0.00	p3 = 1.63



**Program 10.4**

```
% Generation of partial fraction expansion and pole-zero plot of a
function
clc;clear all;close all;
% partial fraction expansion of X(Z)
num=input('enter the numerator coefficients');
den=input('enter the denominator coefficients');
disp('residues,poles and constant terms of the given ZT are')
[r,p,k]=residue(num,den)
% pole-zero plot of X(Z)
zplane(num,den);
title('pole-zero plot')
```

**Output:**

```
enter the numerator coefficients[1 1/2]
enter the denominator coefficients[1 -3/5 2/25]
residues,poles and constant terms of the given ZT are
r =
    4.5000
   -3.5000
p =
    0.4000
    0.2000
k =
    []
```

**Program 10.5**

```
% Generation of transfer function and finding its residues and
poles
clc;close all;clear all;
Ts=0.2;
num=[1 -4 5 0];
den=[1 -6 11 -6];
H=tf('z');
disp('The Transfer function H(Z) is');
H=tf([num],[den],Ts)
disp('the residues,poles and constant terms of X(Z) are');
[r,p,k]=residue(num,den)
```

**Output:**

```
The Transfer function H(Z) is
Transfer function:

$$\frac{z^3 - 4 z^2 + 5 z}{z^3 - 6 z^2 + 11 z - 6}$$

```

```
Sampling time: 0.2
the residues,poles and constant terms of X(Z) are
r =
    3.0000
   -2.0000
    1.0000
p =
    3.0000
    2.0000
    1.0000
k =
    1
```

### **Program 10.6**

```
% Finding the poles and zeros and pole-zero plot of the given
function
clc;close all;clear all;
syms z
% poles and zeros
num=[1 1 1.5 0.5];
den=[1 1.5 0.5 0];
disp('Zeros of the given ZT are ');
zeros=roots(num)
disp('Poles of the given ZT are ');
poles=roots(den)
% Pole-zero plot
Ts=0.2;
H=tf('z');
disp('the taken ZT is')
H=tf(num,den,Ts)
pzmap(H);
```

### **Output:**

```
Zeros of the given ZT are
zeros =
    -0.3017 + 1.0815i
    -0.3017 - 1.0815i
    -0.3966
Poles of the given ZT are
poles =
    0
   -1.0000
   -0.5000
```

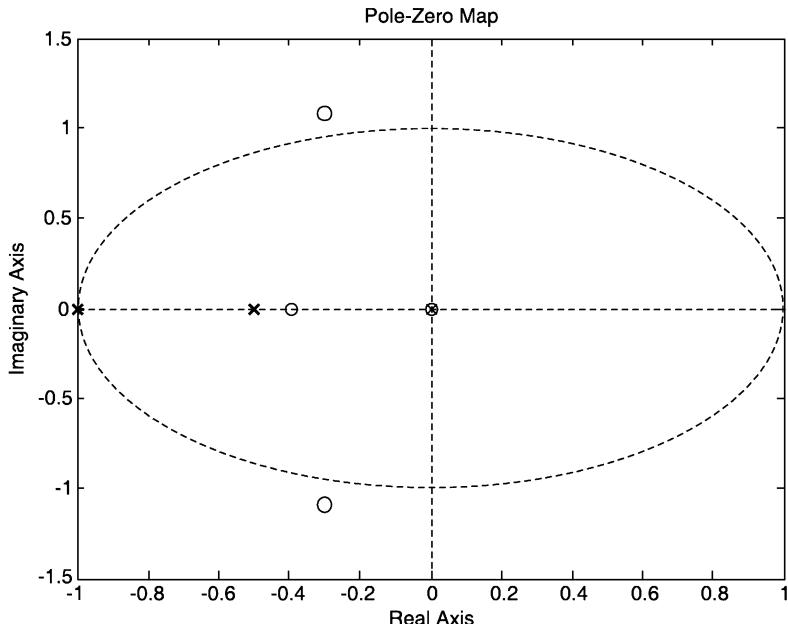
the taken ZT is

Transfer function:

$$\frac{z^3 + z^2 + 1.5 z + 0.5}{z^3 + 1.5 z^2 + 0.5 z}$$

$$z^3 + 1.5 z^2 + 0.5 z$$

Sampling time: 0.2



### Program 10.7

```
% Inverse Z-transform by the polynomial division method
x(z)=(1+2*z^(-1)+z^(-2))/(1-z^(-1)+0.3561*z^(-2))
clc; clear all; close all;
b=[1 2 1];
a=[1 -1 0.3561];
%number of power series points
n=5;
b=[b zeros(1,n-1)];
[h,om]=deconv(b,a);
disp('The terms of inverse z-transforms are')
disp(h)
```

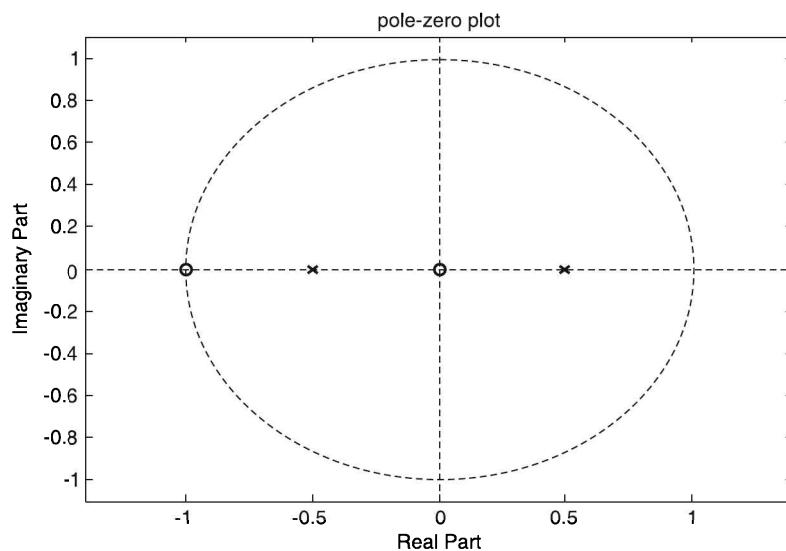
Output:

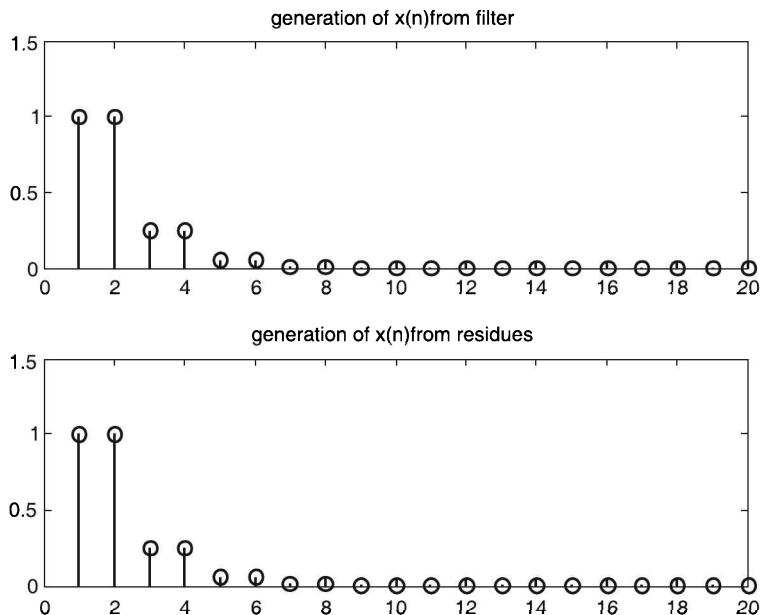
The terms of inverse z-transforms are  
1.0000 3.0000 3.6439 2.5756 1.2780

### Program 10.8

```
% Finding Inverse Z-transform
% Denominator coefficients
p1=poly(0.5);p2=poly(-0.5);
a=conv(p1,p2);
% Numerator coefficients
z1=poly(0);z2=poly(-1);
b=conv(z1,z2);
z=roots(b);
% partial fraction expansion
[r,p,k]=residuez(b,a);
zplane(b,a);
title('pole-zero plot')
d=[1 zeros(1,99)];
% generation of x(n) from filter
x1=filter(b,a,d);
figure;
subplot(2,1,1);stem(x1);
axis([0 20 0 1.5]);
title('generation of x(n) from filter');
% generation of x(n) from residues
n=0:99;
x2=r(1)*p(1).^n+r(2)*p(2).^n;
subplot(2,1,2);stem(x2);
axis([0 20 0 1.5]);
title('generation of x(n) from residues')
```

Output:





### Program 10.9

```
% Inverse Z-transform for the cascaded form using polynomial
division method
%x(z)=[N1(z)*N2(z)*N3(z)]/[D1(z)*D2(z)*D3(z)]
%N1(z)=1-0.22346z^(-1)+z^(-2)
%N2(z)=1-0.437883z^(-1)+z^(-2)
%N3(z)=1+z^(-1)
%D1(z)=1-1.433509z^(-1)+0.85811z^(-2)
%D2(z)=1-1.293601z^(-1)+0.556929z^(-2)
%D3(z)=1-0.612159z^(-1)
clc; clear all; close all;
n=5;% number of power series points
n1=[1 -0.22346 1];
n2=[1 -0.4377883 1];
n3=[1 1 0];
d1=[1 -1.433509 0.85811];
d2=[1 -1.293601 0.556929];
d3=[1 -0.612159 0];
b=[n1; n2; n3];
a=[d1; d2; d3];
[b,a]=sos2tf([b a]);
b=[b zeros(1,n-1)];
[x r]=deconv(b,a);
disp('The first five values of inverse Z-transform are')
disp(x)
```

**Output:**

The first five values of inverse Z-transform are  
1.0000 3.6780 8.7796 16.4987 24.8055

**Program 10.10**

```
% The convolution property of Z-transform
clc;close all;clear all;
syms n z
disp('the first sequence x1(n) is')
x1n=2.^n
disp('the second sequence x2(n) is')
x2n=(1/3).^n
X1Z=ztrans(x1n);
X2Z=ztrans(x2n);
XZ=X1Z*X2Z;
yn=iztrans(XZ);
disp('convolution of two sequences is')
simplify(yn)
```

**Output:**

```
the first sequence x1(n) is
x1n =
2^n
the second sequence x2(n) is
x2n =
(1/3)^n
convolution of two sequences is
ans =
(6*2^n)/5 - 1/(5*3^n)
```

**Program 10.11**

```
% Convolution using Z-transform
clc; clear all; close all;
% X1Z=2+z^(-1)-z^(-3)+3*z^(-4)
disp('coefficients of X1(Z) represents x1(n) and is')
x1=[2 1 0 -1 3]
subplot(2,1,1);stem(x1);
title('first sequence x1(n)')
%X2Z=1-3*z^(-1)+2*z^(-2)
disp('coefficients of X2(Z) represents x2(n) and is')
x2=[1 -3 2]
subplot(2,1,2);stem(x2);
title('second sequence x2(n)')
disp('convolution of x1(n) and x2(n) is')
y=conv(x1,x2)
figure;stem(y);
title('convolution of x1(n) and x2(n)')
```

Output:

coefficients of  $x_1(z)$  represents  $x_1(n)$  and is

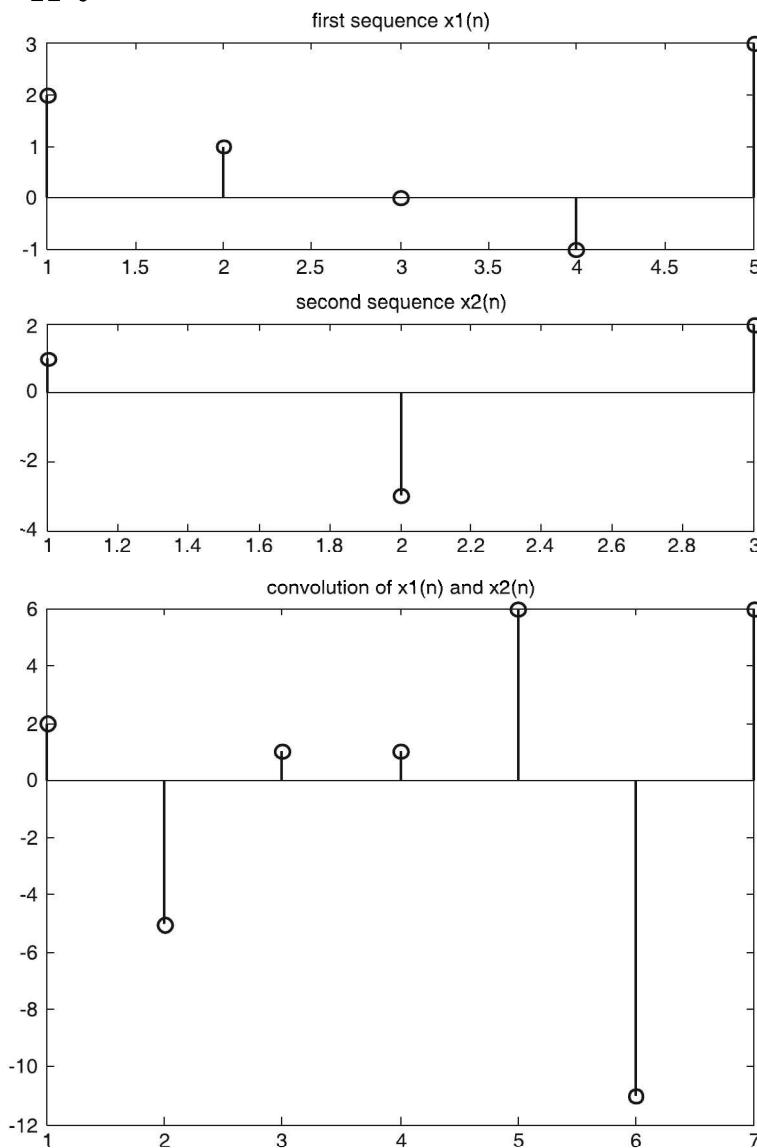
$x_1 =$   
2 1 0 -1 3

coefficients of  $x_2(z)$  represents  $x_2(n)$  and is

$x_2 =$   
1 -3 2

convolution of  $x_1(n)$  and  $x_2(n)$  is

$y =$   
2 -5 1 1 6 -11 6



## SHORT QUESTIONS WITH ANSWERS

1. How are discrete-time systems analysed using Z-transforms?

*Ans.* Discrete-time systems are described by difference equations. The difference equations, which are in time domain, are converted into algebraic equations in  $z$ -domain using Z-transforms. Those algebraic equations are manipulated and result is obtained in  $z$ -domain. Using inverse Z-transform, the result is converted into time domain.

2. Define Z-transform.

*Ans.* The Z-transform of a bilateral discrete-time signal  $x(n)$  is defined as:

$$X(z) = \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} x(n) z^{-n}$$

The Z-transform of a unilateral discrete-time signal  $x(n)$  is defined as:

$$X(z) = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} x(n) z^{-n}$$

where  $z$  is a complex variable given by  $z = re^{j\omega}$  and  $r$  is the radius of a circle which decides the ROC.

3. What are the advantages and limitations of Z-transform?

*Ans. Advantages of Z-transform:*

1. They convert the difference equations of a discrete-time system into linear algebraic equations so that the analysis becomes easy and simple.
2. Convolution in time domain is converted into multiplication in  $z$ -domain.
3. Z-transform exists for most of the signals for which DTFT does not exist.

**Limitation:** Frequency domain response cannot be achieved and cannot be plotted.

4. What is the condition for Z-transform to exist?

*Ans.* The condition for the Z-transform to exist is the sum  $\sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} |x(n)r^{-n}| < \infty$ , i.e.

$|x(n)r^{-n}|$  must be absolutely summable.

5. What is the relation between discrete-time Fourier transform and Z-transform?

*Ans.* The relation between Z-transform and discrete-time Fourier transform is:

The Z-transform of  $x(n)$  is same as the discrete-time Fourier transform of  $x(n)r^{-n}$ , i.e.  $Z[x(n)] = \text{DTFT}[x(n)r^{-n}]$ .

6. When are the Z-transform and discrete-time Fourier transform same?

*Ans.* In general,  $Z[x(n)] = \text{DTFT}[x(n)r^{-n}]$

When  $r = 1$ ,  $Z[x(n)] = \text{DTFT}[x(n)]$ , i.e. the discrete-time Fourier transform is the Z-transform evaluated along the unit circle centred at the origin of the  $z$ -plane.

7. How do you get the DTFT from the Z-transform?

*Ans.* The DTFT can be obtained from the Z-transform by substituting  $z = e^{j\omega}$  in  $X(z)$ .

8. What is ROC of Z-transform?

*Ans.* The range of values of  $|z|$  for which  $X(z)$  converges is called ROC of  $X(z)$ .

9. What is the ROC of an infinite duration causal sequence?

*Ans.* The ROC of an infinite duration causal sequence is  $|z| > \alpha$ , i.e. it is the exterior of a circle of radius  $\alpha$  where  $z = \alpha$  is the largest pole in  $X(z)$ .

10. What is the ROC of an infinite duration non-causal sequence?

*Ans.* The ROC of an infinite duration non-causal sequence is  $|z| < \alpha$ , i.e. it is the interior of a circle of radius  $\alpha$  where  $z = \alpha$  is the smallest pole in  $X(z)$ .

11. What is the ROC of an infinite duration two-sided sequence?

*Ans.* The ROC of an infinite duration two-sided sequence is a ring in z-plane or the Z-transform does not exist at all.

12. What is the ROC of the sum of two or more sequences?

*Ans.* The ROC of the sum of two or more sequences is equal to the intersection of the ROCs of these sequences.

13. What is the ROC of a finite duration positive time sequence?

*Ans.* The ROC of a finite duration positive time sequence is the entire z-plane except at  $z = 0$ .

14. What is the ROC of a finite duration negative time sequence?

*Ans.* The ROC of a finite duration negative time sequence is the entire z-plane except at  $z = \infty$ .

15. What is the ROC of a finite duration two-sided sequence?

*Ans.* The ROC of a finite duration two-sided sequence is the entire z-plane except at  $z = 0$  and  $z = \infty$ .

16. State the linearity property of Z-transforms.

*Ans.* The linearity property of Z-transform states that the Z-transform of a weighted sum of two signals is equal to the weighted sum of individual Z-transforms, i.e.

$$\text{If} \quad x_1(n) \xrightarrow{\text{ZT}} X_1(z)$$

$$\text{and} \quad x_2(n) \xrightarrow{\text{ZT}} X_2(z)$$

$$\text{Then} \quad ax_1(n) + bx_2(n) \xrightarrow{\text{ZT}} aX_1(z) + bX_2(z)$$

17. State the initial and final value theorems of Z-transforms.

*Ans.* The initial value theorem of Z-transforms states that

$$x(0) = \underset{n \rightarrow 0}{\text{Lt}} x(n) = \underset{z \rightarrow \infty}{\text{Lt}} X(z)$$

The final value theorem of Z-transforms states that

$$x(\infty) = \text{Lt}_{n \rightarrow \infty} x(n) = \text{Lt}_{z \rightarrow 1} (z - 1) X(z)$$

18. What is inverse Z-transform?

*Ans.* The process of finding the time domain signal  $x(n)$  from its Z-transform  $X(z)$  is called the inverse Z-transform.

19. What is the direct method of finding the inverse Z-transform?

*Ans.* The direct method of finding the inverse Z-transform is using the function

$$x(n) = \frac{1}{2\pi j} \oint_c X(z) z^{n-1} dz$$

20. What are the methods of finding the inverse Z-transform?

*Ans.* The basic methods for finding the inverse Z-transform are:

1. The power series method or long division method
2. The partial fraction expansion method
3. The complex inversion integral method (also known as residence method) and
4. Using the convolution property of Z-transforms.

21. Compare the methods of finding the inverse Z-transform.

*Ans.* The long division method is simple, but does not give a closed form expression for the time signal. Further, it can be used only if the ROC of the given  $X(z)$  is either of the form  $|z| > \alpha$  or of the form  $|z| < \alpha$ , i.e. it is useful only if the sequence  $x(n)$  is either purely right-sided or purely left-sided. It cannot be used for two-sided signals. The partial fraction expansion method requires factorization of the denominator which may not be easy but has the advantage that it always yields a closed solution. It enables us to determine the time signal  $x(n)$  making use of our knowledge of some basic Z-transform pairs and Z-transform theorems. The inversion integral method requires a knowledge of the theory of complex variables, but is quite powerful and useful. The convolution method helps in finding the inverse Z-transform by splitting  $X(z)$  into the product of two smaller functions.

22. Discuss long division method.

*Ans.* In the long division method, to get a causal sequence, both the numerator and denominator must be expressed either in ascending powers of  $z^{-1}$  or in descending powers of  $z$  before performing long division. Similarly, to get a non-causal signal, both the numerator and denominator must be expressed either in descending powers of  $z^{-1}$  or in ascending powers of  $z$  before performing long division. The numerator is then continuously divided by the denominator and then the coefficient of  $z^{-n}$  in the quotient terms gives the value of the signal at the  $n$ th sampling instant.

23. Define transfer function of a system.

*Ans.* The transfer function of a discrete-time system is defined as the ratio of the Z-transform of the output to the Z-transform of the input when the initial conditions are neglected.

The transfer function of a system is also defined as the Z-transform of the impulse response of the system.

24. What is the necessary and sufficient condition for the stability of discrete-time systems?

*Ans.* The necessary and sufficient condition for the stability of discrete-time systems is its impulse response must be absolutely summable, i.e.  $\sum_{n=0}^{\infty} |h(n)| < \infty$ .

## REVIEW QUESTIONS

1. Derive the relation between Z-transform and DTFT.
2. Compare Fourier, Laplace and Z-transforms.
3. Distinguish between one-sided and two-sided Z-transforms. What are their applications?
4. Derive the relation between Laplace and Z-transforms.
5. Prove that the sequences (a)  $x(n) = a^n u(n)$  and  $x(n) = -a^n u(-n - 1)$  have the same  $X(z)$  and differ only in ROC. Also plot their ROCs.
6. What are the ROCs of finite duration sequences?
7. Write the properties of ROC of  $X(z)$ .
8. State and prove integration and differentiation properties of Z-transforms.
9. State and prove the time shifting, time reversal and time expansion properties of Z-transforms.
10. State and prove Parseval's relation.
11. State and prove the convolution property of Z-transforms. (or) Prove that convolution in time domain leads to multiplication in  $z$ -domain.
12. State and prove initial and final value theorems of Z-transforms.
13. Define inverse Z-transform. Explain in detail the different methods of finding the inverse Z-transform.
14. Explain how the analysis of discrete-time time invariant systems can be obtained using convolution properties of Z-transforms.
15. Prove that for causal sequences, the ROC is the exterior of a circle of radius  $r$ .
16. Derive the time domain condition for stability of LTI discrete-time systems.
17. Explain in detail the contour integration method of finding inverse Z-transforms.

## FILL IN THE BLANKS

1. A linear time invariant continuous-time system is represented by \_\_\_\_\_ equations.
2. A linear shift invariant discrete-time system is represented by \_\_\_\_\_ equations.
3. The Laplace transform converts \_\_\_\_\_ equations into \_\_\_\_\_ equations.

4. The Z-transform converts \_\_\_\_\_ equations into \_\_\_\_\_ equations
5. The Z-transform plays the same role for \_\_\_\_\_ systems as that played by Laplace transform for \_\_\_\_\_ systems.
6. The Z-transform is the \_\_\_\_\_ counter part of the Laplace transform.
7. The Z-transform is the Laplace transform of the \_\_\_\_\_ version of the continuous-time signal.
8. The range of values of  $z$  for which  $X(z)$  converges is called the \_\_\_\_\_.
9. The Z-transform of  $x(n)$  is same as the discrete-time Fourier transform of \_\_\_\_\_.
10. The DTFT is same as the Z-transform when \_\_\_\_\_.
11. The ROC of the sum of two or more sequences is equal to the \_\_\_\_\_ of the ROCs of those sequences.
12. The ROC of a causal sequence is the \_\_\_\_\_ of a circle of radius  $\alpha$ .
13. The ROC of a non-causal sequence is the \_\_\_\_\_ of a circle of radius  $\alpha$ .
14. For a finite duration causal or positive time sequence, the ROC is the entire z-plane except at \_\_\_\_\_.
15. For a finite duration anticausal or negative time sequence, the ROC is the entire z-plane except at \_\_\_\_\_.
16. For a finite duration two-sided sequence, the ROC is the entire z-plane except at \_\_\_\_\_ and \_\_\_\_\_.
17.  $x(n) = \dots$  is the only signal whose ROC is the entire z-plane.
18. If  $X(z)$  is rational, its ROC is bounded by \_\_\_\_\_ or extends upto \_\_\_\_\_.
19. Initial value theorem states that for a causal signal  $x(0) = \dots$ .
20. Final value theorem states that for a causal signal  $x(\infty) = \dots$ .
21. We cannot obtain a \_\_\_\_\_ sided sequence by long division.
22. The transfer function is defined as the Z-transform of the \_\_\_\_\_ of the system.
23. The frequency response of a system is obtained by substituting \_\_\_\_\_ in  $H(z)$ .
24. The necessary and sufficient condition for a causal LTI system to be stable is—its impulse response is \_\_\_\_\_.
25. For a system to be causal, its impulse response must be equal to \_\_\_\_\_ for  $n < 0$ .
26. For a causal LTI system to be stable, all the poles of  $H(z)$  must lie \_\_\_\_\_ in the z-plane.
27. For a causal LTI system to be stable, the ROC of the system function must include the \_\_\_\_\_.
28. The response of the system due to input alone, when the initial conditions are neglected is called the \_\_\_\_\_ of the system.
29. The response of the system due to initial conditions alone, when the input is neglected is called the \_\_\_\_\_ of the system.

30. The response due to input and initial conditions considered simultaneously is called the \_\_\_\_\_ of the system.
31. The output due to unit sample sequence is called the \_\_\_\_\_ of the system.

### OBJECTIVE TYPE QUESTIONS

1. The Z-transform of a discrete-time signal  $\sum_{k=0}^{\infty} \delta(n-k)$  is
 

(a) $\frac{1}{z-1}$	(b) $\frac{z}{z-1}$	(c) $\frac{z-1}{z}$	(d) $\frac{z}{(z-1)^2}$
---------------------	---------------------	---------------------	-------------------------
2. The Z-transform of a discrete-time signal  $x(nT) = a^{nT} u(nT)$  is
 

(a) $\frac{z}{z-a^T}$	(b) $\frac{z}{z-a^{nT}}$	(c) $\frac{z}{z-a}$	(d) $\frac{z}{z+a^T}$
-----------------------	--------------------------	---------------------	-----------------------
3. If  $x(n)$  and  $X(z)$  are the Z-transform pair, the Z-transform of  $\sum_{k=-\infty}^{\infty} x(n-k)$  is
 

(a) $z^{-k}X(z)$	(b) $z^{-k}$	(c) $\sum_{k=-\infty}^{\infty} z^{-k}X(z)$	(d) $\sum_{k=-\infty}^{\infty} z^{-k}$
------------------	--------------	--	--
4. The Z-transform of  $e^{3n} u(n)$  is
 

(a) $\frac{z}{z-e^3}$ ; ROC; $ z  < e^3$	(b) $\frac{z}{z+e^3}$ ; ROC; $ z  < e^3$
(c) $\frac{z}{z-e^3}$ ; ROC; $ z  > e^3$	(d) $\frac{z}{z+e^3}$ ; ROC; $ z  > e^3$
5. The ROC of Z-transform of a sequence  $\left(\frac{4}{5}\right)^n u(n) - \left(\frac{5}{4}\right)^n u(n)$  must be
 

(a) $ z  < \frac{4}{5}$	(b) $ z  > \frac{5}{4}$	(c) $\frac{4}{5} <  z  < \frac{5}{4}$	(d) $\frac{5}{4} <  z  < \frac{4}{5}$
-------------------------	-------------------------	---------------------------------------	---------------------------------------
6. The inverse Z-transform of  $2 + 3z^{-1} + 4z$  is
 

(a) $\begin{bmatrix} 2, 3, 4 \\ \uparrow \end{bmatrix}$	(b) $\begin{bmatrix} 3, 4, 2 \\ \uparrow \end{bmatrix}$	(c) $\begin{bmatrix} 4, 2, 3 \\ \uparrow \end{bmatrix}$	(d) $\begin{bmatrix} 3, 2, 4 \\ \uparrow \end{bmatrix}$
---	---	---	---
7. Which sequence cannot be the inverse Z-transform of  $\left(\frac{1}{1-3z^{-1}} - \frac{1}{1-4z^{-1}}\right)$ ?
 

(a) $3^n u(n) - 4^n u(n)$	(b) $-3^n u(-n-1) + 4^n u(n-1)$
(c) $3^n u(n) + 4^n u(-n-1)$	(d) $-3^n u(-n-1) - 4^n u(n)$

8. Which sequence cannot be the inverse Z-transform of  $\left[ \frac{1}{1-(1/3)z^{-1}} - \frac{1}{1-(1/4)z^{-1}} \right]$ ?
- (a)  $\left(\frac{1}{3}\right)^n u(n) - \left(\frac{1}{4}\right)^n u(n)$       (b)  $-\left(\frac{1}{3}\right)^n u(-n-1) + \left(\frac{1}{4}\right)^n u(n-1)$   
 (c)  $\left(\frac{1}{3}\right)^n u(n) + \left(\frac{1}{4}\right)^n u(-n-1)$       (d)  $-\left(\frac{1}{3}\right)^n u(-n-1) - \left(\frac{1}{4}\right)^n u(n)$
9. The Z-transform of a system is  $H(z) = z/(z - 0.8)$ . If the ROC is  $|z| < 0.8$ , the impulse response of the system is
- (a)  $(0.8)^n u(n)$       (b)  $-(0.8)^n u(-n-1)$   
 (c)  $-(0.8)^n u(n)$       (d)  $(0.8)^n u(-n-1)$
10. A system is described by  $H(z) = \frac{z(z+1)}{(z-2)(z+2)}$ . The initial value of the system is
- (a) 1      (b)  $-1/4$       (c)  $-4$       (d)  $\infty$
11. Which one is the ROC of a sequence  $x(n) = a^n u(n) - b^n u(-n-1)$ , where  $a > b$ ?
- (a)  $|z| > a$       (b)  $|z| < b$       (c)  $b < |z| < a$       (d) none
12. Which statement about ROC is not true?
- (a) ROC does not contain any poles.  
 (b) ROC consists of a circle in the z-plane centred at the origin.  
 (c) ROC is a ring or disc in z-plane.  
 (d) ROC contains both poles and zeros.
13. The only signal whose ROC is the entire z-plane is
- (a)  $\delta(n)$       (b)  $u(n)$       (c)  $r(n)$       (d)  $a^n$
14. Unilateral Z-transform of  $x(n)$  is equivalent to bilateral Z-transform of
- (a)  $x(n) u(-n)$       (b)  $x(n) u(n)$       (c)  $\delta(n)$       (d)  $x(-n) u(-n)$
15. DTFT is a special case of
- (a) Z-transform      (b) Laplace transform  
 (c) Continuous time Fourier transform      (d) none
16. ROC is defined as the range of values of  $z$  for which  $X(z)$
- (a) converges      (b) diverges      (c) is zero      (d) is infinite
17.  $Z[a^{-n} x(n)]$  is equal to
- (a)  $X(az)$       (b)  $X(1/az)$       (c)  $X(z/a)$       (d)  $X(a/z)$
18. If  $x(n) \xrightarrow{\text{ZT}} X(z)$ , then the initial value theorem states that  $x(0) =$
- (a)  $\underset{z \rightarrow 1}{\text{Lt}} (z-1) X(z)$       (b)  $\underset{z \rightarrow 0}{\text{Lt}} X(z)$       (c)  $\underset{z \rightarrow \infty}{\text{Lt}} X(z)$       (d)  $\underset{z \rightarrow \infty}{\text{Lt}} zX(z)$

19. If  $x(n) \xrightarrow{ZT} X(z)$ , then the final value theorem states that  $x(\infty) =$
- (a)  $\text{Lt}_{z \rightarrow 1} (z-1) X(z)$     (b)  $\text{Lt}_{z \rightarrow 0} X(z)$     (c)  $\text{Lt}_{z \rightarrow \infty} X(z)$     (d)  $\text{Lt}_{z \rightarrow \infty} zX(z)$
20. The ROC of the sum of two or more sequences is equal to
- (a) intersection of those ROCs    (b) union of those ROCs  
 (c) sum of those ROCs    (d) product of those ROCs
21. For a finite duration causal sequence, the ROC is entire z-plane except at
- (a)  $z = 0$     (b)  $z = \infty$   
 (c)  $z = 0$  and  $z = \infty$     (d) none of the above
22. For a finite duration non-causal sequence, the ROC is entire z-plane except at
- (a)  $z = 0$     (b)  $z = \infty$   
 (c)  $z = 0$  and  $z = \infty$     (d) none of the above
23. For a finite duration two-sided sequence, the ROC is entire z-plane except at
- (a)  $z = 0$     (b)  $z = \infty$   
 (c)  $z = 0$  and  $z = \infty$     (d) none of the above
24. The ROC of  $X(z)$  cannot contain any
- (a) poles of  $X(z)$     (b) zeros of  $X(z)$   
 (c) poles or zeros of  $X(z)$     (d) multiple poles of  $X(z)$
25. Long division method cannot yield a sequence, which is
- (a) causal    (b) non-causal  
 (c) two-sided    (d) none of the above
26. The Z-transform of a signal with  $X(s) = (1/s)$  is
- (a)  $\frac{1}{1-z^{-1}}$     (b)  $\frac{1}{1-z}$     (c)  $\frac{1}{1+z^{-1}}$     (d)  $\frac{z}{1-z}$
27. Which one cannot be the ROC of  $X(z) = \frac{z}{z-1} - 2\frac{z}{z-2} - 3\frac{z}{z-3}$
- (a)  $|z| < 1$     (b)  $|z| > 3$     (c)  $1 < |z| < 3$     (d)  $2 < |z| < 3$
28. The ROC of a causal stable system must include the
- (a) origin    (b) infinity    (c) a ring    (d) unit circle
29. The Z-transform of  $x(n)$  is the discrete-time Fourier transform of
- (a)  $x(n) r^{-n}$     (b)  $x(n) r^n$     (c)  $x(n) u(n)$     (d)  $x(n) r(n)$
30.  $Z^{-1}[X_1(z) X_2(z)] =$
- (a)  $x_1(n) x_2(n)$     (b)  $x_1(n) * x_2(n)$     (c)  $x_1(n) \otimes x_2(n)$     (d)  $x_1(n) x_2(-n)$
31.  $Z[u(-n)]$  is
- (a)  $-\frac{z}{z-1}$     (b)  $\frac{1}{z-1}$     (c)  $\frac{1}{1-z}$     (d)  $\frac{z}{z-1}$

## PROBLEMS

1. Find the Z-transform and ROC of the following sequences:

(a)  $x_1(n) = \{2, 1, 3, -4, 1, 2\}$   
 $\uparrow$

(b)  $x_2(n) = \{1, 3, -2, 0, 2, 4\}$   
 $\uparrow$

(c)  $x_3(n) = \{2, 4, 1, 0, 1, 3, 5\}$   
 $\uparrow$

2. Find the Z-transform of

(a)  $x_1(n) = a^n \sin(n\pi) u(n)$

(b)  $x_2(n) = \left(\frac{1}{3}\right)^n u(n) + \left(-\frac{1}{2}\right)^n u(-n)$

(c)  $x_3(n) = u(n) - u(n-4)$

(d)  $x_4(n) = n[u(n) - u(n-3)]$

(e)  $x_5(n) = \left(\frac{1}{4}\right)^n u(n) + \left(\frac{1}{5}\right)^n u(n)$

(f)  $x_6(n) = \left(\frac{1}{5}\right)^n u(n) + \left(\frac{1}{4}\right)^n u(-n-1)$

(g)  $x_7(n) = \left(\frac{1}{2}\right)^n u(n) + \left(\frac{1}{3}\right)^n u(-n-1)$

3. Using properties of Z-transform, find the Z-transform of the following sequences.

(a)  $x_1(n) = nu(n-1)$

(b)  $x_2(n) = n^2 u(n)$

(c)  $x_3(n) = n\left(\frac{1}{2}\right)^n u(n)$

(d)  $x_4(n) = 2^n \cos 3n u(n)$

(e)  $x_5(n) = \left(\frac{1}{3}\right)^n \sin\left(\frac{\pi}{4}n\right) u(n)$

(f)  $x_6(n) = \begin{cases} 0; & n < 0 \\ 1; & 0 \leq n \leq 9 \\ 0; & n > 9 \end{cases}$

(g)  $x_7(n) = \left[3\left(\frac{4}{5}\right)^n - \left(\frac{2}{3}\right)^{2n}\right] u(n)$

(h)  $x_8(n) = \left(\frac{1}{3}\right)^n u(-n)$

(i)  $x_9(n) = \left(\frac{1}{2}\right)^n [u(n) - u(n-8)]$

(j)  $x_{10}(n) = 3(2)^n u(-n)$

(k)  $x_{11}(n) = n^2 \left(\frac{1}{3}\right)^n u(n-3)$

4. Using power series expansion, find the inverse Z-transform of

(a)  $X(z) = \frac{1}{1 - 1.5z^{-1} + 0.5z^{-2}}$ ; ROC;  $|z| > 1$

(b)  $X(z) = \frac{1}{1 - 15z^{-1} + 0.5z^{-2}}$ ; ROC;  $|z| < \frac{1}{2}$

5. Find the inverse Z-transform of

$$X(z) = \sum_{k=5}^{10} \left( \frac{1}{k} \right) z^{-k}$$

6. Using power series expansion method, determine the inverse Z-transform of

$$(a) X(z) = \cos(2z); |z| < 0 \quad (b) X(z) = \cos(-z^2); |z| > 0$$

7. Find the inverse Z-transform of

$$(a) X(z) = \frac{1}{(1+z^{-1})^2(1-z^{-1})}; \text{ ROC; } |z| > 1$$

$$(b) X(z) = \frac{1 - (1/4)z^{-1}}{1 + (5/6)z^{-1} + (1/6)z^{-2}}; \text{ ROC; } |z| > \frac{1}{2}$$

$$(c) X(z) = \frac{1 - (1/3)z^{-1}}{1 - (1/9)z^{-2}}; \text{ ROC; } |z| > \frac{1}{3}$$

$$(d) X(z) = \frac{z^3 + z^2 + (3/2)z + (1/2)}{z^3 + (3/2)z^2 + (1/2)z}; \text{ ROC; } |z| > \frac{1}{2}$$

$$(e) X(z) = \frac{1 - (1/2)z^{-1}}{1 + (3/4)z^{-1} + (1/8)z^{-2}}; \text{ ROC; } |z| > \frac{1}{2}$$

$$(f) X(z) = \frac{4 - 3z^{-1} + 3z^2}{(1 + 2z^{-1})(1 - 3z^{-1})^2}$$

$$(g) X(z) = \frac{3 - 2z^{-1} + z^2}{(1 - z^{-1})[1 - (1/3)z^{-1}]^2}$$

8. Using partial fraction expansion method, obtain all possible inverse Z-transforms of the following  $X(z)$ :

$$(a) X(z) = \frac{(1/4)z}{[z - (1/2)][z - (1/4)]}$$

$$(b) \frac{z^2 - 3z}{z^3 + (3/2)z - 1}$$

$$(c) X(z) = \frac{1 + 2z^{-1} + z^{-2}}{1 - (3/2)z^{-1} + (1/2)z^{-2}}$$

$$(d) X(z) = \frac{4 - 3z^{-1} + 3z^{-2}}{(z + 2)(z - 3)^2}$$

9. Using convolution theorem, find the inverse Z-transform for

$$(a) X(z) = \frac{z}{(z - 1)^2}$$

$$(b) X(z) = \frac{z}{(z - 1)^3}$$

10. Determine the inverse Z-transform of

$$X(z) = \frac{1}{1 - z^{-3}}$$

11. A causal system has input  $x(n)$  and output  $y(n)$ . Find the impulse response of the system

If

$$x(n) = \delta(n) + \frac{1}{4}\delta(n-1) - \frac{1}{8}\delta(n-2)$$

$$y(n) = \delta(n) - \frac{3}{4}\delta(n-1)$$

12. A causal discrete-time LTI system is to be designed with the property that if the input is

$$x(n) = \left(\frac{1}{2}\right)^n u(n) - \left(\frac{1}{4}\right)\left(\frac{1}{2}\right)^{n-1} u(n-1), \text{ then the output is } y(n) = \left(\frac{1}{3}\right)^n u(n).$$

Determine the impulse response  $h(n)$  and the system function  $H(z)$  of that system.

13. A system has impulse response  $h(n) = \left(\frac{1}{2}\right)^n u(n)$ . Determine the input to the system if

the output is given by  $y(n) = \frac{1}{3}u(n) + \frac{2}{3}\left(-\frac{1}{2}\right)^n u(n)$ .

14. Find the transfer function and the impulse response of the system described by the following difference equations:

(a)  $y(n) - \frac{1}{2}y(n-1) = 2x(n-1)$

(b)  $y(n) - \frac{1}{4}y(n-1) - \frac{3}{8}y(n-2) = -x(n) + 2x(n-1)$

15. A causal LTI system is described by the difference equation

$$y(n) = y(n-1) + y(n-2) + x(n-1)$$

Find the impulse response and the system function.

16. Determine whether the system described below is causal and stable.

(a)  $H(z) = \frac{2z+1}{z^2+z-(5/16)}$

(b)  $H(z) = \frac{1+2z^{-1}}{1+(14/8)z^{-1}+(49/64)z^{-2}}$

17. An LTI discrete-time system is given by the system function

$$H(z) = \frac{3-4z^{-1}}{1-3.5z^{-1}+1.5z^{-2}}$$

Specify the ROC of  $H(z)$  and determine  $h(n)$  for the following conditions:

- (a) The system is stable.  
(b) The system is causal.

18. Find the natural response of the system described by the difference equation

$$y(n) - \frac{1}{4}y(n-1) - \frac{1}{8}y(n-2) = x(n) + x(n-1) \text{ with } y(-1) = 0 \text{ and } y(-2) = 1.$$

19. Determine the forced response of the system described by the difference equation

$$y(n) - \frac{5}{6}y(n-1) + \frac{1}{6}y(n-2) = x(n)$$

If input  $x(n) = 2^n u(n)$ ,  $y(-1) = 2$  and  $y(-2) = 1$ .

20. Solve the following difference equation  $y(n) + 3y(n-1) = x(n)$  with  $x(n) = u(n)$  and the initial condition  $y(-1) = 1$ .

21. Solve the following difference equation for the given initial conditions and input

$$y(n) - \frac{1}{9}y(n-2) = x(n-1)$$

with  $y(-1) = 0$ ,  $y(-2) = 1$ , and  $x(n) = 3u(n)$ .

22. Solve the following difference equation using unilateral Z-transform:

$$y(n) - \frac{3}{2}y(n-1) + \frac{1}{2}y(n-2) = x(n) \text{ for } n \geq 0$$

with initial conditions  $y(-1) = 4$ ,  $y(-2) = 10$  and  $x(n) = (1/4)^n u(n)$ .

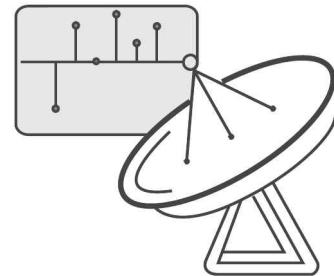
23. Determine the step response of the system

$$y(n) = \alpha y(n-1) + x(n)$$

with the initial condition  $y(-1) = 1$ ,  $-1 < \alpha < 1$ .

# 11

## System Realization



### 11.1 INTRODUCTION

Systems may be continuous-time systems or discrete-time systems. Discrete-time systems may be FIR (Finite impulse response) systems or IIR (Infinite impulse response) systems. Realization of a system means obtaining a network corresponding to the differential equation or difference equation or transfer function of the system. In this chapter, various methods of realization of continuous-time systems are discussed.

### 11.2 REALIZATION OF CONTINUOUS-TIME SYSTEMS

There are four different types of system realization of continuous-time linear time invariant systems. They are:

1. Direct form-I realization
2. Direct form-II realization
3. Cascade form realization
4. Parallel form realization

A transfer function can be realized either by using integrators or differentiators. However, because of certain drawbacks, differentiators are not used in realizing practical systems. The most serious drawback of differentiators is that they amplify the high frequency noise, whereas the integrators suppress the high frequency noise. Hence, only integrators are used for the realization of continuous-time systems. Other elements used to construct a block diagram of a continuous-time system are: adders and multipliers.

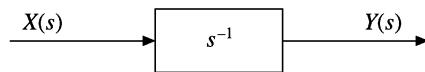
### **Integrator**

An integrator is an element used to integrate the input signal.

The transfer function of an ideal integrator is given by

$$H(s) = \frac{1}{s} = s^{-1}$$

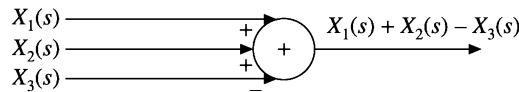
The representation of an ideal integrator is shown in Figure 11.1



**Figure 11.1** Ideal integrator.

### **Adder**

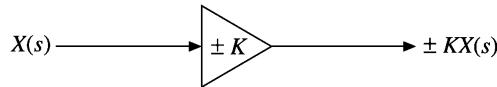
The adder is an element used to perform the addition and subtraction of signals. Pictorially it is represented by a small circle that has at least two input terminals and one output terminal as shown in Figure 11.2. The output variable is the algebraic sum of all the input variables.



**Figure 11.2** Adder.

### **Multiplier**

The multiplier is an element used to multiply the signal by a constant. The gain can be positive or negative. Its magnitude may be larger or smaller than 1. The multiplier is represented as shown in Figure 11.3.



**Figure 11.3** Multiplier.

Consider an  $N$ th order system represented by the differential equation

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{d^N y(t)}{dt^N} + a_{N-1} \frac{d^{N-1} y(t)}{dt^{N-1}} + \dots + a_1 \frac{dy(t)}{dt} + a_0 y(t) \\ = b_M \frac{d^M x(t)}{dt^M} + b_{M-1} \frac{d^{M-1} x(t)}{dt^{M-1}} + \dots + b_1 \frac{dx(t)}{dt} + b_0 x(t) \end{aligned}$$

The transfer function of the system is:

$$H(s) = \frac{Y(s)}{X(s)} = \frac{b_M s^M + b_{M-1} s^{M-1} + \dots + b_1 s + b_0}{s^N + a_{N-1} s^{N-1} + \dots + a_1 s + a_0}$$

If  $M > N$ , the system is non-causal and is not physically realizable. The realization of transfer functions using various structures is illustrated below with examples.

### 11.2.1 Realization of Systems in Direct Form-I

Direct form-I realization of a continuous-time system is nothing but the direct implementation of the differential equation or transfer function describing the system. It is the simplest and most straight forward realization structure available. This structure uses separate integrators for input and output variables. Hence for realizing this structure, more number of integrators is required. Hence, it is more complex. The direct form structure provides a direct relation between time domain and  $s$ -domain equations. For direct form-I realization, express the output variable in terms of all other terms in the equation. The following examples illustrate the procedure to obtain direct form-I realization of continuous-time systems described by the transfer functions or differential equations.

**EXAMPLE 11.1** Realize the system with the following transfer function in direct form-I:

$$H(s) = \frac{s^2 + 4s + 3}{s^2 + 2s + 5}$$

**Solution:** To realize the above system, first express the numerator and denominator in powers of  $s^{-1}$ .

$$\therefore H(s) = \frac{Y(s)}{X(s)} = \frac{s^2 + 4s + 3}{s^2 + 2s + 5} = \frac{s^2(1 + 4s^{-1} + 3s^{-2})}{s^2(1 + 2s^{-1} + 5s^{-2})} = \frac{1 + 4s^{-1} + 3s^{-2}}{1 + 2s^{-1} + 5s^{-2}}$$

Cross multiplying, we get

$$Y(s)[1 + 2s^{-1} + 5s^{-2}] = X(s)[1 + 4s^{-1} + 3s^{-2}]$$

$$\text{i.e. } Y(s) + 2s^{-1}Y(s) + 5s^{-2}Y(s) = X(s) + 4s^{-1}X(s) + 3s^{-2}X(s)$$

$$\text{Let } X(s) + 4s^{-1}X(s) + 3s^{-2}X(s) = W(s)$$

$$\begin{aligned} \therefore Y(s) &= X(s) + 4s^{-1}X(s) + 3s^{-2}X(s) - 2s^{-1}Y(s) - 5s^{-2}Y(s) \\ &= W(s) - 2s^{-1}Y(s) - 5s^{-2}Y(s) \end{aligned}$$

The above equation can be realized as follows:

For this, first we realize  $W(s)$  as shown in Figure 11.4(a), then we realize  $Y(s)$  in terms of  $W(s)$  as shown in Figure 11.4(b). Combining Figures 11.4(a) and 11.4(b), we get the realization as shown in Figure 11.5.

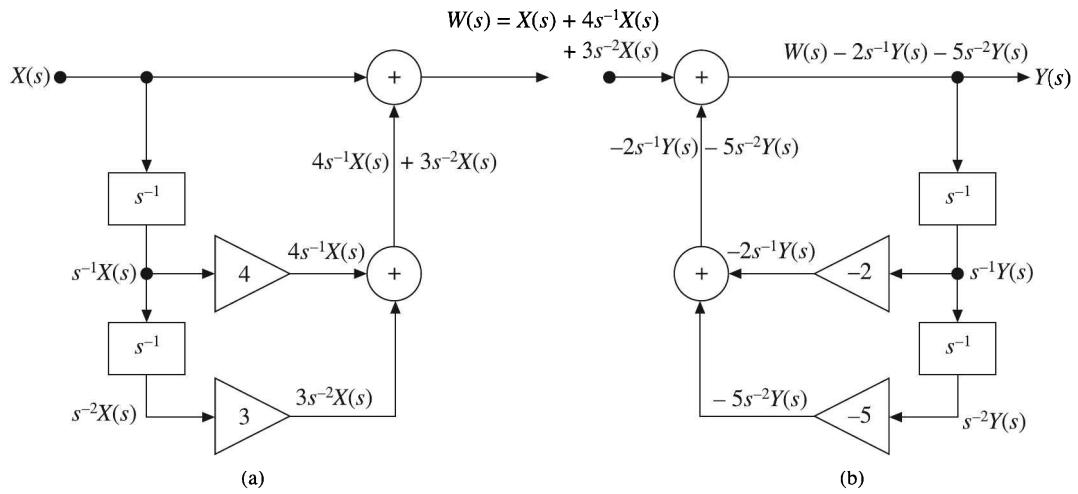
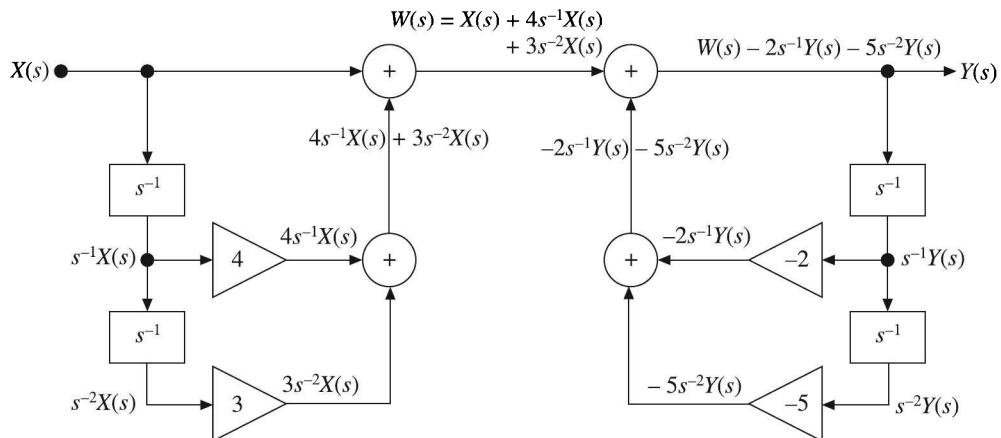
Figure 11.4 Realization of (a)  $W(s)$  and (b)  $Y(s)$ .

Figure 11.5 Direct form-I realization (Example 11.1).

**EXAMPLE 11.2** Realize the system with the following transfer function in direct form-I:

$$H(s) = \frac{s+5}{s^2 + 2s + 4}$$

**Solution:** Given  $H(s) = \frac{Y(s)}{X(s)} = \frac{s+5}{s^2 + 2s + 4} = \frac{s^{-1} + 5s^{-2}}{1 + 2s^{-1} + 4s^{-2}}$

Cross multiplying, we get

$$Y(s)(1 + 2s^{-1} + 4s^{-2}) = X(s)(s^{-1} + 5s^{-2})$$

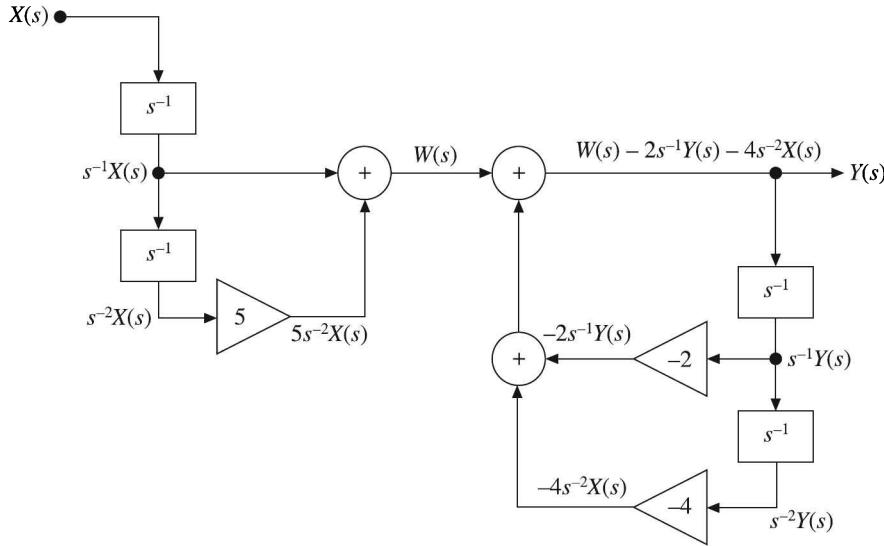
i.e.  $Y(s) + 2s^{-1}Y(s) + 4s^{-2}Y(s) = s^{-1}X(s) + 5s^{-2}X(s)$

Let

$$W(s) = s^{-1}X(s) + 5s^{-2}X(s)$$

$$\begin{aligned} Y(s) &= s^{-1}X(s) + 5s^{-2}X(s) - 2s^{-1}Y(s) - 4s^{-2}Y(s) \\ \therefore &= W(s) - 2s^{-1}Y(s) - 4s^{-2}Y(s) \end{aligned}$$

The direct form-I realization of  $Y(s)$  is shown in Figure 11.6.



**Figure 11.6** Direct form-I realization (Example 11.2).

**EXAMPLE 11.3** Realize the system described by the following differential equation in direct form-I:

$$\frac{d^3y(t)}{dt^3} + 3\frac{d^2y(t)}{dt^2} + 5\frac{dy(t)}{dt} + 7y(t) = 2\frac{d^2x(t)}{dt^2} + 4\frac{dx(t)}{dt} + 6x(t)$$

**Solution:** Given  $\frac{d^3y(t)}{dt^3} + 3\frac{d^2y(t)}{dt^2} + 5\frac{dy(t)}{dt} + 7y(t) = 2\frac{d^2x(t)}{dt^2} + 4\frac{dx(t)}{dt} + 6x(t)$

Taking Laplace transform on both sides and neglecting initial conditions, we have

$$s^3Y(s) + 3s^2Y(s) + 5sY(s) + 7Y(s) = 2s^2X(s) + 4sX(s) + 6X(s)$$

i.e.  $Y(s) + 3s^{-1}Y(s) + 5s^{-2}Y(s) + 7s^{-3}Y(s) = 2s^{-1}X(s) + 4s^{-2}X(s) + 6s^{-3}X(s)$

Let

$$W(s) = 2s^{-1}X(s) + 4s^{-2}X(s) + 6s^{-3}X(s)$$

Then  $Y(s) = 2s^{-1}X(s) + 4s^{-2}X(s) + 6s^{-3}X(s) - 3s^{-1}Y(s) - 5s^{-2}Y(s) - 7s^{-3}Y(s)$

$$= W(s) - 3s^{-1}Y(s) - 5s^{-2}Y(s) - 7s^{-3}Y(s)$$

The realization of the given transfer function in direct form-I is shown in Figure 11.7.

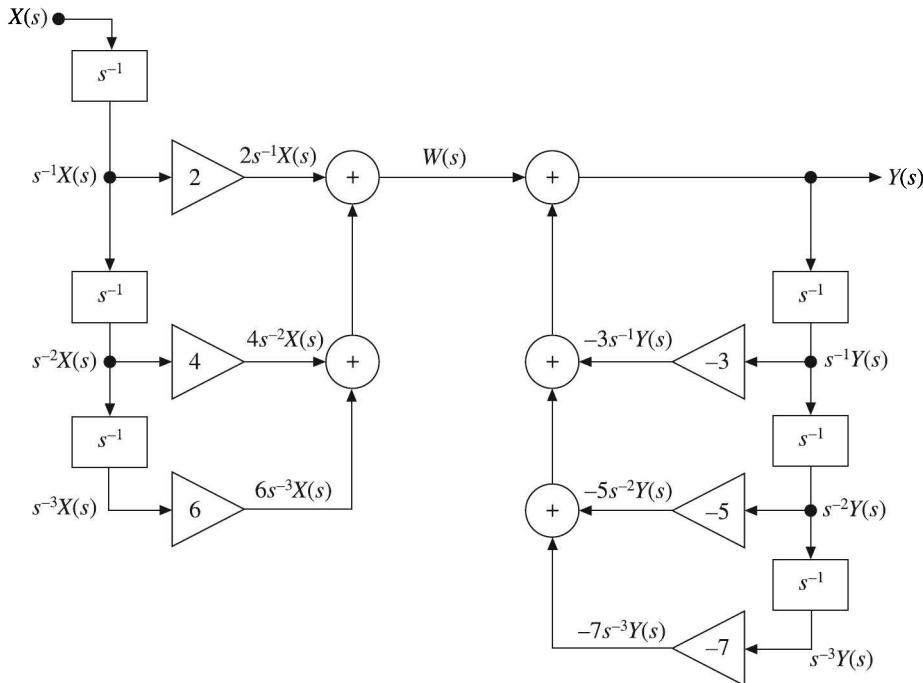


Figure 11.7 Direct form-I realization (Example 11.3).

### 11.2.2 Realization of Systems in Direct Form-II

Direct form-II realization has the advantage that it uses minimum number of integrators. Instead of using separate integrators for integrating the input and output variables separately, an intermediate variable is integrated. The following examples illustrate the procedure to obtain direct form-II realization of continuous-time systems described by the transfer functions or differential equations.

**EXAMPLE 11.4** Realize an LTI system with the following transfer function in direct form-II:

$$H(s) = \frac{s^2 + 3s + 4}{s^2 + 5s + 2}$$

**Solution:** Given transfer function expressed in negative powers of  $s$  is:

$$H(s) = \frac{s^2 + 3s + 4}{s^2 + 5s + 2} = \frac{1 + 3s^{-1} + 4s^{-2}}{1 + 5s^{-1} + 2s^{-2}}$$

Divide the given transfer function into two parts as follows:

$$H(s) = \frac{Y(s)}{X(s)} = \frac{Y(s)}{W(s)} \frac{W(s)}{X(s)}$$

where

$$\frac{W(s)}{X(s)} = \frac{1}{1 + 5s^{-1} + 2s^{-2}}$$

and

$$\frac{Y(s)}{W(s)} = 1 + 3s^{-1} + 4s^{-2}$$

Cross multiplying the above equations, we get

$$X(s) = W(s) + 5s^{-1}W(s) + 2s^{-2}W(s)$$

i.e.

$$W(s) = X(s) - 5s^{-1}W(s) - 2s^{-2}W(s)$$

and

$$Y(s) = W(s) + 3s^{-1}W(s) + 4s^{-2}W(s)$$

$W(s)$  can be realized as shown in Figure 11.8(a), and  $Y(s)$  can be realized as shown in Figure 11.8(b). Cascading Figures 11.8(a) and 11.8(b), we get the realization of  $H(s)$  as shown in Figure 11.9. Since the inputs and outputs of the integrators are the same, they can be treated as one as shown in Figure 11.10.

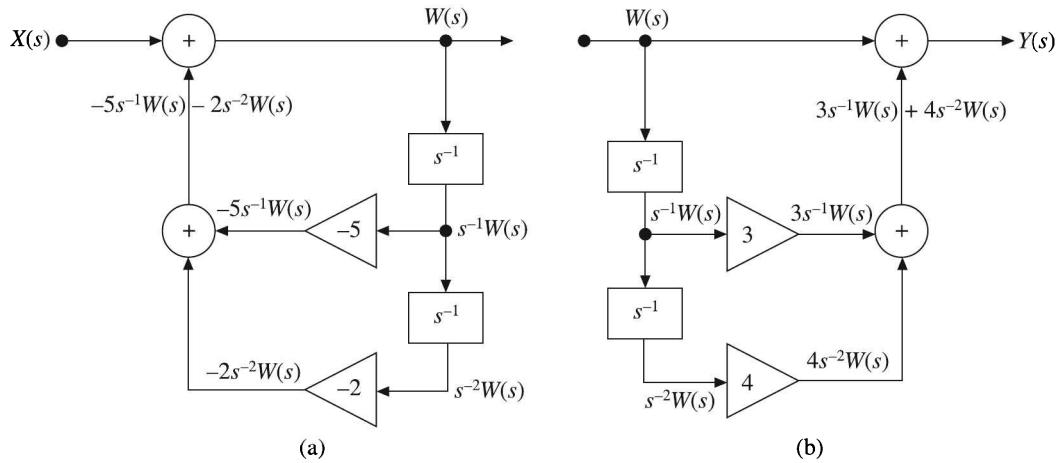


Figure 11.8 Realization of (a)  $W(s)$ , and (b)  $Y(s)$  (Example 11.4).

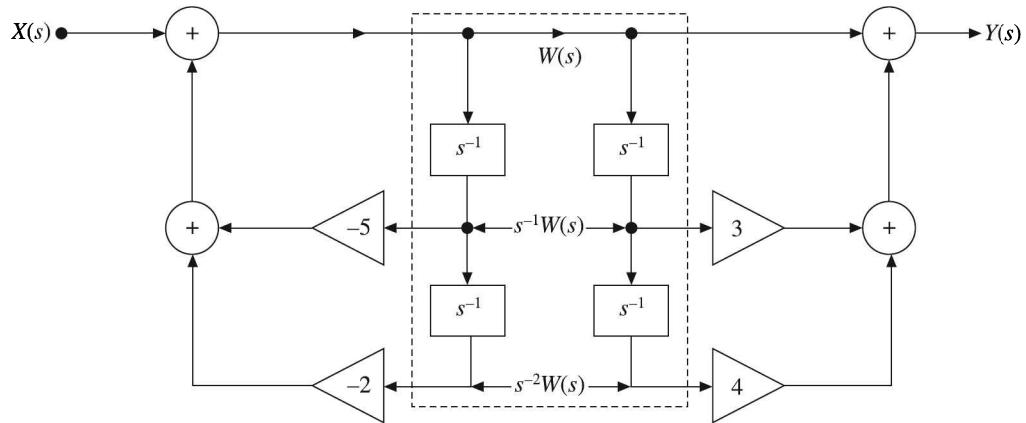
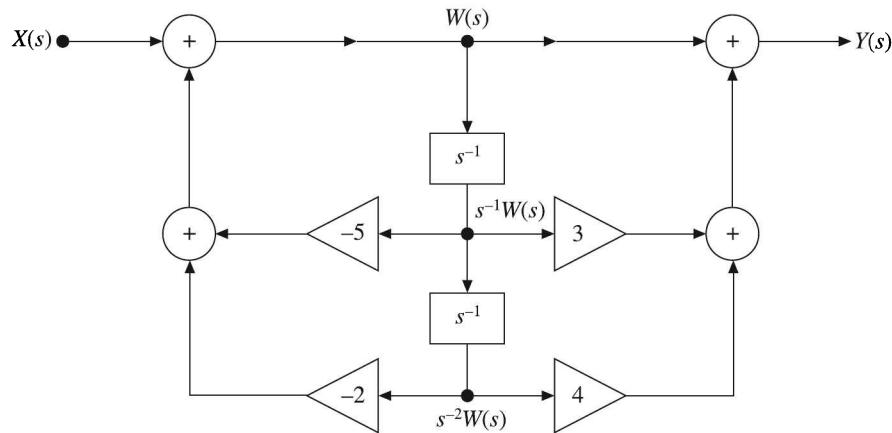


Figure 11.9 Combine the integrators.



**Figure 11.10** Direct form-II realization (Example 11.4).

**EXAMPLE 11.5** Realize the following system in direct form-II:

$$H(s) = \frac{s+4}{s^2 + 3s + 5}$$

**Solution:** Given transfer function is expressed in negative powers of  $s$  as:

$$H(s) = \frac{s+4}{s^2 + 3s + 5} = \frac{s^{-1} + 4s^{-2}}{1 + 3s^{-1} + 5s^{-2}}$$

Dividing the transfer function into two parts, we have

$$H(s) = \frac{Y(s)}{X(s)} = \frac{Y(s)}{W(s)} \frac{W(s)}{X(s)} = (s^{-1} + 4s^{-2}) \frac{1}{1 + 3s^{-1} + 5s^{-2}}$$

where

$$\frac{W(s)}{X(s)} = \frac{1}{1 + 3s^{-1} + 5s^{-2}}$$

and

$$\frac{Y(s)}{W(s)} = s^{-1} + 4s^{-2}$$

$\therefore$

$$Y(s) = s^{-1}W(s) + 4s^{-2}W(s)$$

and

$$X(s) = W(s) + 3s^{-1}W(s) + 5s^{-2}W(s)$$

i.e.

$$W(s) = X(s) - 3s^{-1}W(s) - 5s^{-2}W(s)$$

The given transfer function is realized in direct form-II as shown in Figure 11.11.

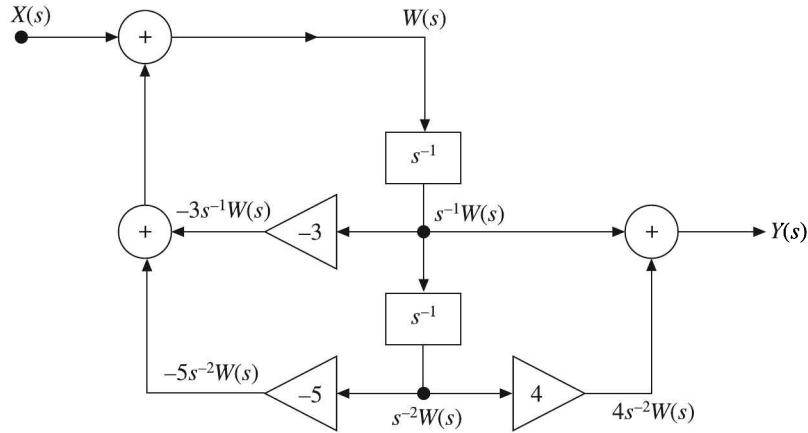


Figure 11.11 Direct form-II realization (Example 11.5).

**EXAMPLE 11.6** Realize the system described by the following differential equation in direct form-II:

$$\frac{d^3y(t)}{dt^3} + 4\frac{d^2y(t)}{dt^2} + 3\frac{dy(t)}{dt} + 6y(t) = 2\frac{d^2x(t)}{dt^2} + 5\frac{dx(t)}{dt} + 7x(t)$$

**Solution:** The given differential equation is:

$$\frac{d^3y(t)}{dt^3} + 4\frac{d^2y(t)}{dt^2} + 3\frac{dy(t)}{dt} + 6y(t) = 2\frac{d^2x(t)}{dt^2} + 5\frac{dx(t)}{dt} + 7x(t)$$

Taking Laplace transform on both sides and neglecting initial conditions, we have

$$s^3Y(s) + 4s^2Y(s) + 3sY(s) + 6Y(s) = 2s^2X(s) + 5sX(s) + 7X(s)$$

The transfer function of the system is:

$$H(s) = \frac{Y(s)}{X(s)} = \frac{2s^2 + 5s + 7}{s^3 + 4s^2 + 3s + 6} = \frac{2s^{-1} + 5s^{-2} + 7s^{-3}}{1 + 4s^{-1} + 3s^{-2} + 6s^{-3}}$$

Let

$$\frac{Y(s)}{X(s)} = \frac{Y(s)}{W(s)} \cdot \frac{W(s)}{X(s)}$$

where

$$\frac{W(s)}{X(s)} = \frac{1}{1 + 4s^{-1} + 3s^{-2} + 6s^{-3}}$$

and

$$\frac{Y(s)}{W(s)} = 2s^{-1} + 5s^{-2} + 7s^{-3}$$

∴

$$Y(s) = 2s^{-1}W(s) + 5s^{-2}W(s) + 7s^{-3}W(s)$$

and

$$X(s) = W(s) + 4s^{-1}W(s) + 3s^{-2}W(s) + 6s^{-3}W(s)$$

i.e.

$$W(s) = X(s) - 4s^{-1}W(s) - 3s^{-2}W(s) - 6s^{-3}W(s)$$

Using the equations for  $Y(s)$  and  $W(s)$  the system transfer function is realized as shown in Figure 11.12.

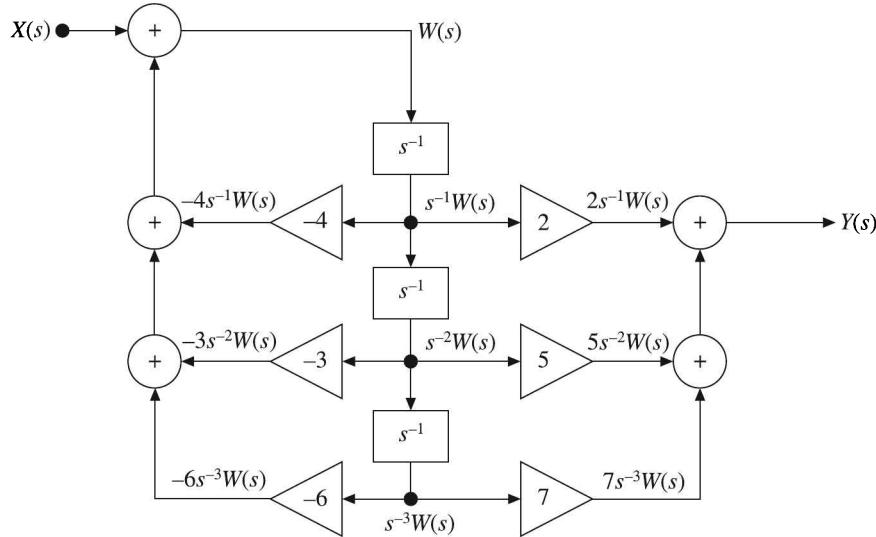


Figure 11.12 Direct form-II realization (Example 11.6).

### 11.2.3 Realization of Systems in Cascade Form

In cascade form realization, the given transfer function is expressed as a product of several transfer functions (of first and second orders) and each of these transfer functions is realized in direct form-II, and then all those realized structures are cascaded, i.e. connected in series, i.e. the output of the first one is connected to the input of the second one, the output of the second to the input of the third and so on. The input is connected to the first one and the output is taken from the last one.

**EXAMPLE 11.7** Realize the system with transfer function

$$H(s) = \frac{4(s^2 + 4s + 3)}{s^3 + 6.5s^2 + 11s + 4}$$

in cascade form.

**Solution:** Given

$$H(s) = \frac{4(s^2 + 4s + 3)}{s^3 + 6.5s^2 + 11s + 4}$$

Expressing it as a product of several transfer functions, we have

$$H(s) = \frac{4(s+1)(s+3)}{(s+0.5)(s+2)(s+4)} = \underbrace{\left(\frac{4}{s+0.5}\right)}_{H_1(s)} \underbrace{\left(\frac{s+1}{s+2}\right)}_{H_2(s)} \underbrace{\left(\frac{s+3}{s+4}\right)}_{H_3(s)}$$

Each of these transfer functions can be realized in direct form-II as shown in Figure 11.13.

The realization of  $H_1(s) = \frac{4}{s+0.5}$  is shown in Figure 11.13(a).

The realization of  $H_2(s) = \frac{s+1}{s+2}$  is shown in Figure 11.13(b).

The realization of  $H_3(s) = \frac{s+3}{s+4}$  is shown in Figure 11.13(c).

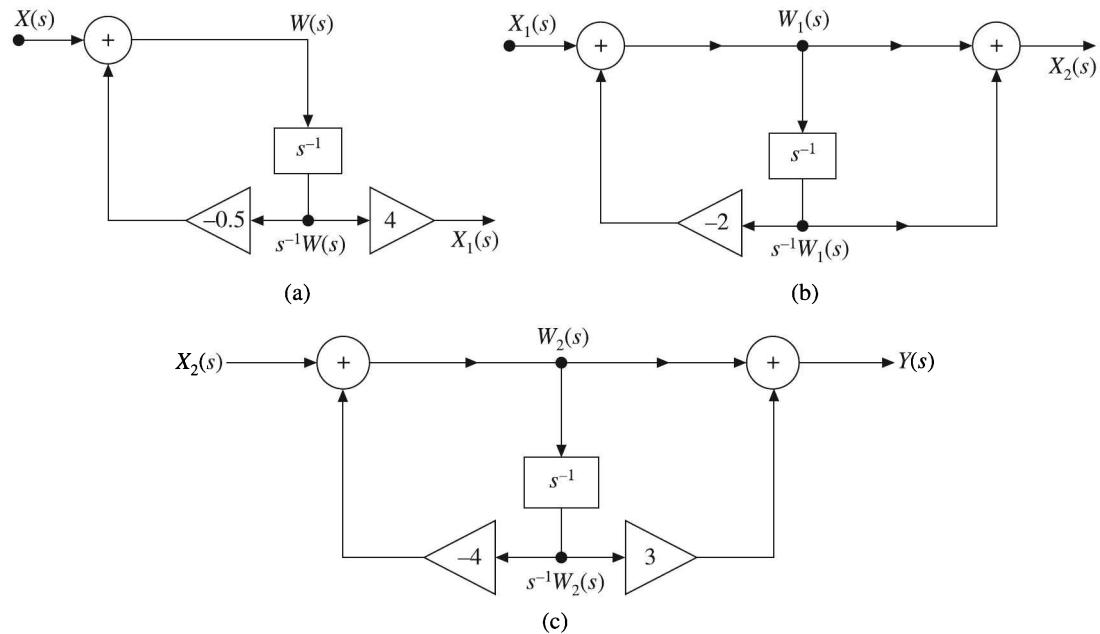


Figure 11.13 Realization of factors (a)  $H_1(s)$ , (b)  $H_2(s)$ , and (c)  $H_3(s)$  (Example 11.7).

The individual realizations of  $H_1(s)$ ,  $H_2(s)$  and  $H_3(s)$  are connected in cascade to get the cascade realization of the transfer function  $H(s)$  as shown in Figure 11.14.

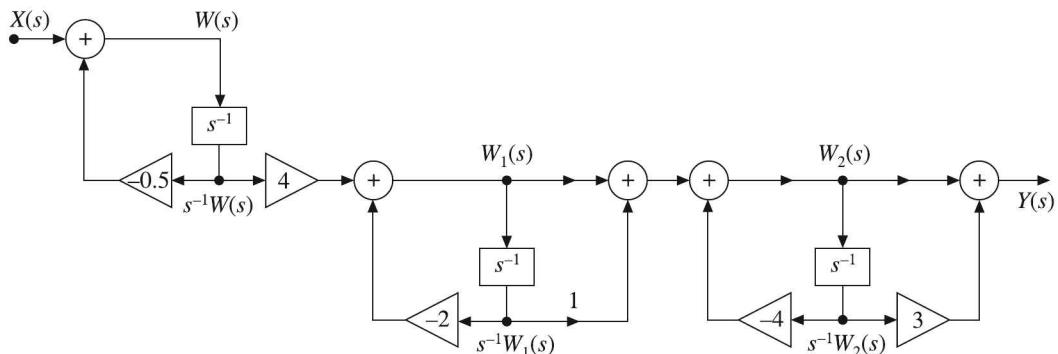


Figure 11.14 Cascade realization of  $H(s)$  (Example 11.7).

**EXAMPLE 11.8** Realize the system described by the transfer function

$$H(s) = \frac{(s+2)(s+4)}{(s+3)(s^2 + 5s + 6)}$$

in cascade form.

**Solution:** Given

$$H(s) = \frac{(s+2)(s+4)}{(s+3)(s^2 + 5s + 6)}$$

In cascade form,

$$H(s) = \frac{Y(s)}{X(s)} = \underbrace{\frac{(s+2)}{(s+3)}}_{H_1(s)} \cdot \underbrace{\frac{s+4}{s^2 + 5s + 6}}_{H_2(s)}$$

Now, realize  $H_1(s)$  and  $H_2(s)$  separately in direct form-II and connect them in cascade.

**Realization of  $H_1(s)$**

Let

$$H_1(s) = \frac{Y_1(s)}{X(s)} = \frac{Y_1(s)}{W_1(s)} \cdot \frac{W_1(s)}{X(s)} = \frac{s+2}{s+3} = \frac{1+2s^{-1}}{1+3s^{-1}}$$

where

$$\frac{W_1(s)}{X(s)} = \frac{1}{1+3s^{-1}}$$

i.e.

$$W_1(s) = X(s) - 3s^{-1}W_1(s)$$

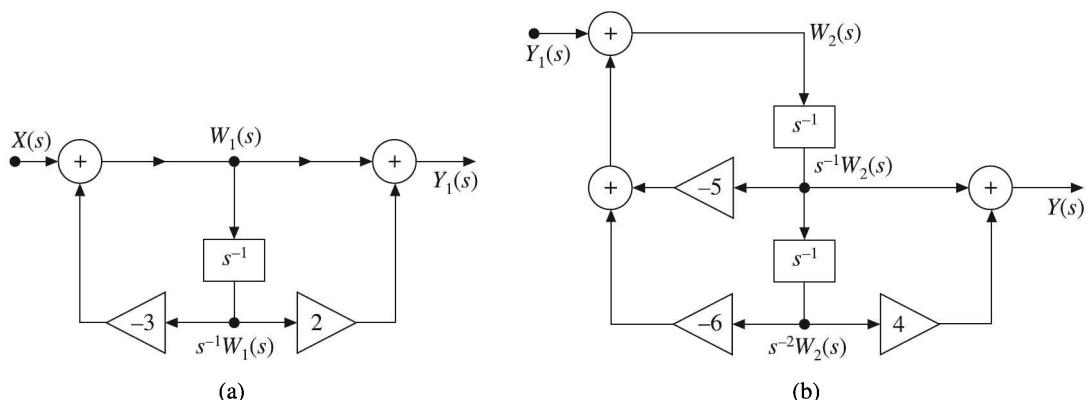
and

$$\frac{Y_1(s)}{W_1(s)} = 1 + 2s^{-1}$$

i.e.

$$Y_1(s) = W_1(s) + 2s^{-1}W_1(s)$$

The realization of  $H_1(s)$  is shown in Figure 11.15(a).



**Figure 11.15** (a) Realization of  $H_1(s)$  (b) Realization of  $H_2(s)$  (Example 11.8).

**Realization of  $H_2(s)$** 

$$H_2(s) = \frac{Y(s)}{Y_1(s)} = \frac{Y(s)}{W_2(s)} \cdot \frac{W_2(s)}{Y_1(s)} = \frac{s+4}{s^2 + 5s + 6} = \frac{s^{-1} + 4s^{-2}}{1 + 5s^{-1} + 6s^{-2}}$$

Let

$$\frac{W_2(s)}{Y_1(s)} = \frac{1}{1 + 5s^{-1} + 6s^{-2}}$$

i.e.

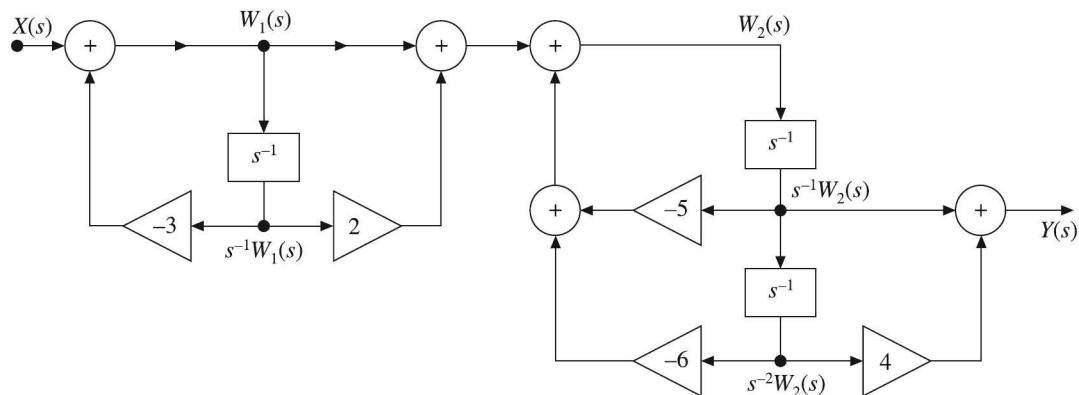
$$W_2(s) = Y_1(s) - 5s^{-1}W_2(s) - 6s^{-2}W_2(s)$$

$$\frac{Y(s)}{W_2(s)} = s^{-1} + 4s^{-2}$$

i.e

$$Y(s) = s^{-1}W_2(s) + 4s^{-2}W_2(s)$$

The realization of  $H_2(s)$  is shown in Figure 11.15(b).  $H(s)$  is realized by cascading  $H_1(s)$  and  $H_2(s)$  as shown in Figure 11.16.



**Figure 11.16** Realization of  $H(s)$  (Example 11.8).

#### 11.2.4 Realization of Systems in Parallel Form

In parallel form realization, the given transfer function is expressed into its partial fractions and each factor is realized in direct form-II, and all those realized structures are connected in parallel, i.e. the input is applied to each one of those structures and all the outputs are added together.

**EXAMPLE 11.9** Realize the system given by the following transfer function in parallel form:

$$H(s) = \frac{s(s+1)}{(s+2)(s+3)(s+5)}$$

**Solution:** The given transfer function is:

$$H(s) = \frac{s(s+1)}{(s+2)(s+3)(s+5)}$$

In partial fraction form, it is:

$$H(s) = \frac{A}{s+2} + \frac{B}{s+3} + \frac{C}{s+5}$$

where the coefficients  $A$ ,  $B$  and  $C$  are:

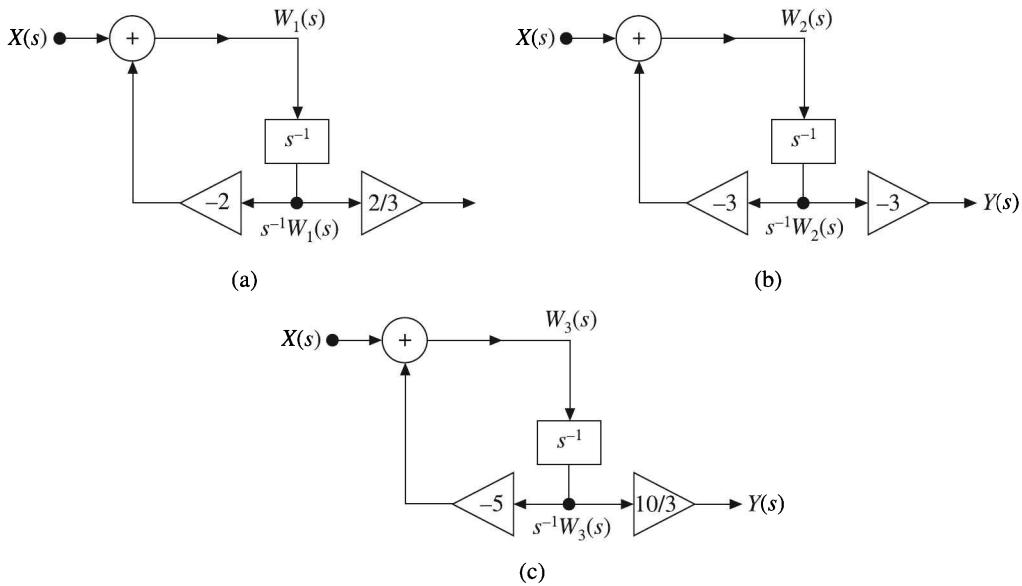
$$A = (s+2)H(s)|_{s=-2} = \frac{s(s+1)}{(s+3)(s+5)} \Big|_{s=-2} = \frac{(-2)(-2+1)}{(-2+3)(-2+5)} = \frac{2}{3}$$

$$B = (s+3)H(s)|_{s=-3} = \frac{s(s+1)}{(s+2)(s+5)} \Big|_{s=-3} = \frac{(-3)(-3+1)}{(-3+2)(-3+5)} = -3$$

$$C = (s+5)H(s)|_{s=-5} = \frac{s(s+1)}{(s+2)(s+3)} \Big|_{s=-5} = \frac{(-5)(-5+1)}{(-5+2)(-5+3)} = \frac{10}{3}$$

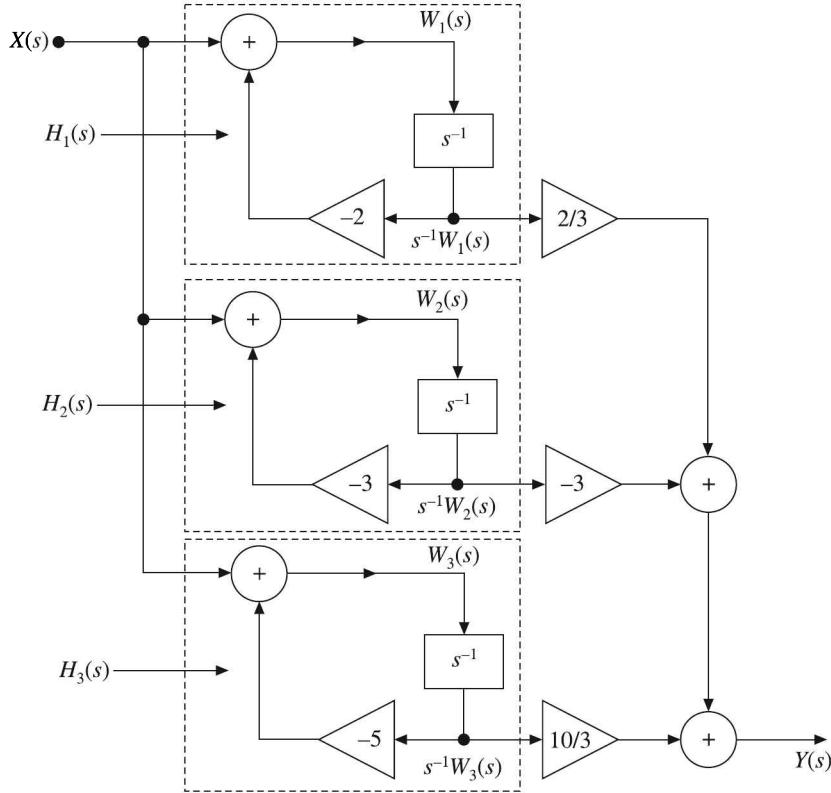
$$\therefore H(s) = \underbrace{\frac{2/3}{s+2}}_{H_1(s)} - \underbrace{\frac{3}{s+3}}_{H_2(s)} + \underbrace{\frac{10/3}{s+5}}_{H_3(s)}$$

To realize  $H(s)$ , realize  $H_1(s)$ ,  $H_2(s)$  and  $H_3(s)$  separately as shown in Figure 11.17[(a), (b) and (c) respectively] and connect all of them in parallel as shown in Figure 11.18.



**Figure 11.17** Realizations of (a)  $H_1(s)$ , (b)  $H_2(s)$ , and (c)  $H_3(s)$  (Example 11.9).

Connecting all the three in parallel, the realization of  $H(s)$  is as shown in Figure 11.18.



**Figure 11.18** Parallel form realization of  $H(s)$  (Example 11.9).

**EXAMPLE 11.10** Realize the system with the following transfer function in parallel form:

$$H(s) = \frac{s(s+1)}{(s^2 + 2s + 3)(s^2 + 3s + 4)}$$

**Solution:** The given transfer function is:

$$H(s) = \frac{s(s+1)}{(s^2 + 2s + 3)(s^2 + 3s + 4)}$$

In partial fraction form, it is:

$$\begin{aligned} H(s) &= \frac{s(s+1)}{(s^2 + 2s + 3)(s^2 + 3s + 4)} = \frac{As + B}{s^2 + 2s + 3} + \frac{Cs + D}{s^2 + 3s + 4} \\ &= \underbrace{\frac{1}{2}s - \frac{3}{2}}_{H_1(s)} + \underbrace{\frac{-1}{2}s + 2}_{H_2(s)} \end{aligned}$$

Now, to realize  $H(s)$  in parallel form, realize  $H_1(s)$  and  $H_2(s)$  separately in direct form-II and connect them in parallel.

#### Realization of $H_1(s)$ in direct form-II

$$H_1(s) = \frac{\frac{1}{2}s - \frac{3}{2}}{s^2 + 2s + 3} = \frac{\frac{1}{2}s^{-1} - \frac{3}{2}s^{-2}}{1 + 2s^{-1} + 3s^{-2}}$$

Let  $H_1(s) = \frac{Y_1(s)}{X(s)} = \frac{Y_1(s)}{W_1(s)} \frac{W_1(s)}{X(s)} = \left( \frac{1}{2}s^{-1} - \frac{3}{2}s^{-2} \right) \left( \frac{1}{1 + 2s^{-1} + 3s^{-2}} \right)$

where

$$\frac{W_1(s)}{X(s)} = \frac{1}{1 + 2s^{-1} + 3s^{-2}}$$

$$\therefore X(s) = W_1(s) + 2s^{-1}W_1(s) + 3s^{-2}W_1(s)$$

$$\text{i.e. } W_1(s) = X(s) - 2s^{-1}W_1(s) - 3s^{-2}W_1(s)$$

and

$$\frac{Y_1(s)}{W_1(s)} = \frac{1}{2}s^{-1} - \frac{3}{2}s^{-2}$$

i.e.

$$Y_1(s) = \frac{1}{2}s^{-1}W_1(s) - \frac{3}{2}s^{-2}W_1(s)$$

Based on these equations for  $W_1(s)$  and  $Y_1(s)$ ,  $H_1(s)$  is realized as shown in Figure 11.19(a).

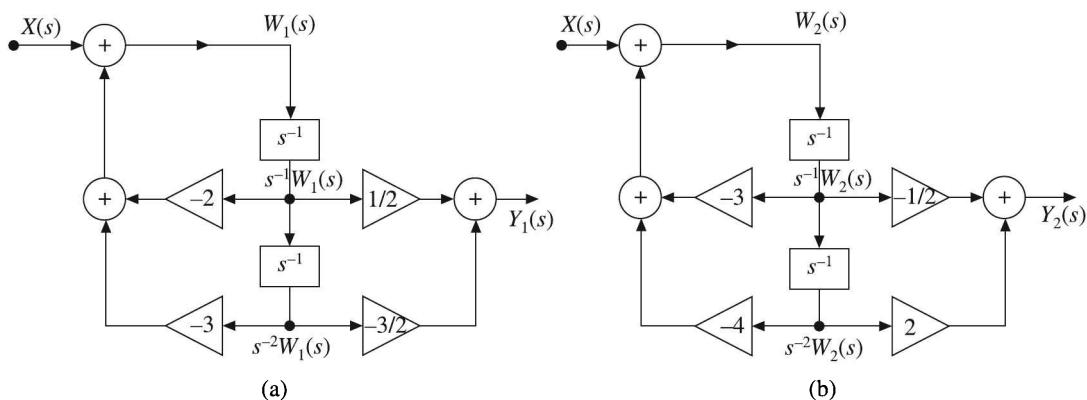


Figure 11.19 (a) Realization of  $H_1(s)$ , (b) Realization of  $H_2(s)$  (Example 11.10).

#### Realization of $H_2(s)$ in Direct form-II

$$H_2(s) = \frac{Y_2(s)}{X(s)} = \frac{Y_2(s)}{W_2(s)} \cdot \frac{W_2(s)}{X(s)} = \frac{-\frac{1}{2}s + 2}{s^2 + 3s + 4} = \frac{-\frac{1}{2}s^{-1} + 2s^{-2}}{1 + 3s^{-1} + 4s^{-2}}$$

Let

$$\frac{W_2(s)}{X(s)} = \frac{1}{1 + 3s^{-1} + 4s^{-2}}$$

$\therefore$

$$W_2(s) + 3s^{-1}W_2(s) + 4s^{-2}W_2(s) = X(s)$$

i.e.

$$W_2(s) = X(s) - 3s^{-1}W_2(s) - 4s^{-2}W_2(s)$$

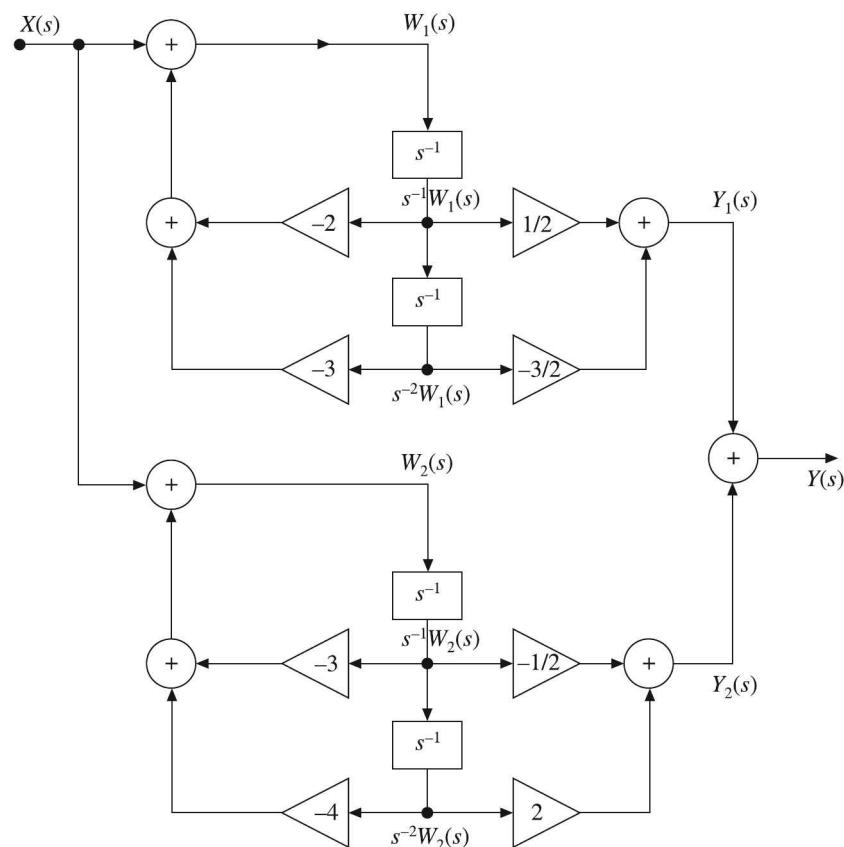
and

$$\frac{Y_2(s)}{W_2(s)} = -\frac{1}{2}s^{-1} + 2s^{-2}$$

$\therefore$

$$Y_2(s) = -\frac{1}{2}s^{-1}W_2(s) + 2s^{-2}W_2(s)$$

Based on these equations for  $W_2(s)$  and  $Y_2(s)$ ,  $H_2(s)$  is realized as shown in Figure 11.19(b). Now,  $H(s)$  is realized by connecting  $H_1(s)$  and  $H_2(s)$  in parallel as shown in Figure 11.20.

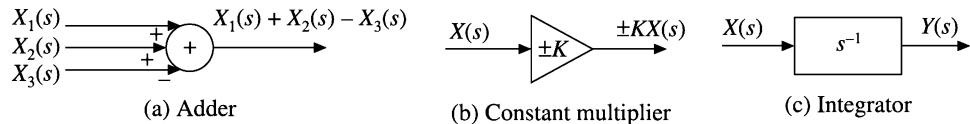


**Figure 11.20** Parallel form realization of  $H(s)$  (Example 11.10).

## SHORT QUESTIONS WITH ANSWERS

1. What are the basic elements used to construct the block diagrams of continuous-time systems? Draw their symbols.

*Ans.* The basic elements used to construct the block diagram of a continuous-time system are: Adder, Constant multiplier and Integrator. The symbols are given below.



2. List the different types of system realization of continuous-time systems.

*Ans.* The different types of system realization of continuous-time systems are:

- Direct form-I realization
- Direct form-II realization
- Cascade form realization
- Parallel form realization

3. What is the main advantage of using integrators over differentiators in realization of continuous-time systems?

*Ans.* The main advantage of using integrators over differentiators in the realization of continuous-time systems is ‘The integrators suppress the high frequency noise, whereas the differentiators amplify the high frequency noise’.

4. When is a continuous-time system not physically realizable?

*Ans.* The transfer function of a continuous-time system is given by

$$H(s) = \frac{Y(s)}{X(s)} = \frac{b_M s^M + b_{M-1} s^{M-1} + \dots + b_1 s + b_0}{s^N + a_{N-1} s^{N-1} + \dots + a_1 s + a_0}$$

When  $M > N$ , i.e. when the order of the numerator polynomial in the transfer function is greater than the order of the denominator polynomial, the system is non-causal and is not physically realizable.

5. What is the advantage and disadvantage of direct form-I structure for realization of continuous-time systems?

*Ans.* The advantage of direct form-I structure for realization of continuous-time systems is that it provides a direct relation between time domain and  $s$ -domain equations. The disadvantage is: this structure uses separate integrator for input and output variables. Hence for realizing this structure, more number of integrators are required. Hence, it is more complex.

6. What is the advantage of direct form-II realization?

*Ans.* The advantage of direct form-II realization is that it uses minimum number of integrators. Hence it is less complex.

7. What is cascade form realization?

*Ans.* Cascade form realization is one in which the given transfer function is expressed as a product of several transfer functions and each of these transfer functions is realized in direct form-II, and then all of them are cascaded.

8. What is parallel form realization?

*Ans.* Parallel form realization is one in which the given transfer function is expressed in its partial fractions and each factor is realized in direct form-II, and then all those realized structures are connected in parallel.

### REVIEW QUESTION

1. Discuss the different methods of realization of continuous-time systems.

### FILL IN THE BLANKS

1. The basic elements used to construct the block diagram of a continuous-time system are \_\_\_\_\_.
2. Integrators \_\_\_\_\_ the high frequency noise, whereas differentiators \_\_\_\_\_ the high frequency noise.
3. The transfer function of an  $N$ th order continuous-time system is \_\_\_\_\_.
4. The different types of system realization of continuous-time systems are \_\_\_\_\_, \_\_\_\_\_, \_\_\_\_\_, \_\_\_\_\_.
5. The \_\_\_\_\_ structure provides a direct relation between time domain and  $s$ -domain equations.
6. \_\_\_\_\_ realization uses minimum number of integrators.

### OBJECTIVE TYPE QUESTIONS

1. For a system to be physically realizable, the degree of numerator polynomial  $M$  and the degree of denominator polynomial  $N$  should be such that
  - (a)  $M \geq N$
  - (b)  $M \leq N$
  - (c)  $M = N$
  - (d) no constraint on  $M$  and  $N$
2. The structure which provides a direct relation between input and output variables is
  - (a) direct form-I
  - (b) direct form-II
  - (c) cascade form
  - (d) parallel form
3. The continuous-time system structure which uses minimum number of integrators is
  - (a) direct form-I
  - (b) direct form-II
  - (c) cascade form
  - (d) parallel form

**PROBLEMS**

1. Realize the system with transfer function given below in direct form-I and direct form-II

(a)  $H(s) = \frac{s^2 + 4s + 2}{s^2 + 2s + 3}$

(b)  $H(s) = \frac{s^2 + s + 2}{s^2 + 5s + 3}$

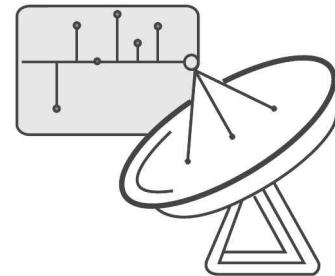
(c)  $H(s) = \frac{s + 2}{s^2 + 3s + 4}$

2. Realize the system with transfer function given below in (a) cascade form (b) parallel form

$$H(s) = \frac{(s + 1)(s + 3)}{(s + 2)(s^2 + 3s + 4)}$$

# 12

## Discrete-time Fourier Transform



### 12.1 INTRODUCTION

A continuous-time signal can be represented in the frequency domain using Laplace transform or continuous-time Fourier transform (CTFT). Similarly, a discrete-time signal can be represented in the frequency domain using Z-transform or discrete-time Fourier transform. The Fourier transform of a discrete-time signal is called discrete-time Fourier transform (DTFT). DTFT is very popular for digital signal processing because of the fact that using this the complicated operation of convolution of two sequences in the time domain can be converted into a much simpler multiplicative operation in the frequency domain. In this chapter, we discuss about DTFT, its properties and its use in the analysis of signals.

### 12.2 DISCRETE-TIME FOURIER TRANSFORM (DTFT)

The Fourier transform of discrete-time signals is called the discrete-time Fourier transform (DTFT).

If  $x(n)$  is the given discrete-time sequence, then  $X(\omega)$  or  $X(e^{j\omega})$  is the discrete-time Fourier transform of  $x(n)$ .

The DTFT of  $x(n)$  is defined as:

$$F[x(n)] = X(\omega) = \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} x(n) e^{-j\omega n}$$

The inverse DTFT of  $X(\omega)$  is defined as:

$$F^{-1}[X(\omega)] = x(n) = \frac{1}{2\pi} \int_{-\pi}^{\pi} X(\omega) e^{j\omega n} d\omega$$

We also refer to  $x(n)$  and  $X(\omega)$  as a Fourier transform pair and this relation is expressed as:

$$x(n) \xleftarrow{\text{FT}} X(\omega)$$

### 12.3 EXISTENCE OF DTFT

The Fourier transform exists for a discrete-time sequence  $x(n)$  if and only if the sequence is absolutely summable, i.e. the sequence has to satisfy the condition:

$$\sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} |x(n)| < \infty$$

The DTFT does not exist for the sequences that are growing exponentially (ex.  $a^n u(n)$ ,  $a > 1$ ) since they are not absolutely summable. Therefore, DTFT method of analyzing a system can be applied for a limited class of signals. Moreover this method can be applied only to asymptotically stable systems and it cannot be applied for unstable systems. That is, DTFT can be used only for the systems whose system function  $H(z)$  has poles inside the unit circle.

The Fourier transform  $X(\omega)$  of a signal  $x(n)$  represents the frequency content of  $x(n)$ . We can say that, by taking Fourier transform, the signal  $x(n)$  is decomposed into its frequency components. Hence  $X(\omega)$  is called signal spectrum.

The difference between the Fourier transforms of a discrete-time signal and analog signal are as follows:

1. The Fourier transform of analog signals consists of a spectrum with a frequency range  $-\infty$  to  $\infty$ . But the Fourier transform of discrete-time signals is unique in the frequency range  $-\pi$  to  $\pi$  (or equivalently 0 to  $2\pi$ ). Also Fourier transforms of discrete-time signals are periodic with period  $2\pi$ . Hence the frequency range for any discrete-time signal is limited to  $-\pi$  to  $\pi$  (or 0 to  $2\pi$ ) and any frequency outside this interval has an equivalent frequency within this interval.
2. Since the analog signals are continuous, the Fourier transform of analog signals involves integration, but the Fourier transform of discrete-time signals involves summation because the signals are discrete.

### 12.4 RELATION BETWEEN Z-TRANSFORM AND FOURIER TRANSFORM

The Z-transform of a discrete sequence  $x(n)$  is defined as:

$$X(z) = \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} x(n) z^{-n}$$

where  $z$  is a complex variable.

The Fourier transform of a discrete-time sequence  $x(n)$  is defined as:

$$X(\omega) = \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} x(n) e^{-j\omega n}$$

The  $X(z)$  can be viewed as a unique representation of the sequence  $x(n)$  in the complex z-plane.

Let  $z = re^{j\omega}$

$$\begin{aligned}\therefore X(z) &= \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} x(n) (re^{j\omega})^{-n} \\ &= \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} [x(n) r^{-n}] e^{-j\omega n}\end{aligned}$$

The RHS is the Fourier transform of  $x(n) r^{-n}$ , i.e. the Z-transform of  $x(n)$  is the Fourier transform of  $x(n) r^{-n}$ .

When  $r = 1$ ,

$$X(z) = \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} x(n) e^{-j\omega n} = X(\omega)$$

The RHS is the Fourier transform of  $x(n)$ . So we can conclude that the Fourier transform of  $x(n)$  is same as the Z-transform of  $x(n)$  evaluated along the unit circle centred at the origin of the z-plane.

$$\therefore X(\omega) = X(z) \Big|_{z=e^{j\omega}} = \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} x(n) z^{-n} \Big|_{z=e^{j\omega}} = \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} x(n) e^{-j\omega n}$$

For  $X(\omega)$  to exist, the ROC must include the unit circle. Since ROC cannot contain any poles of  $X(z)$  all the poles must lie inside the unit circle. Therefore, we can conclude that Fourier transform can be obtained for any sequence  $x(n)$ , from its Z-transform  $X(z)$  if the poles of  $X(z)$  are inside the unit circle.

**EXAMPLE 12.1** Find the DTFT of the following sequences:

- |                                     |                           |
|-------------------------------------|---------------------------|
| (a) $\delta(n)$                     | (b) $u(n)$                |
| (c) $\delta(n - m)$                 | (d) $u(n - m)$            |
| (e) $a^n u(n)$                      | (f) $-a^n u(-n - 1)$      |
| (g) $\delta(n + 3) - \delta(n - 3)$ | (h) $u(n + 3) - u(n - 3)$ |

**Solution:**

- (a) Given

$$x(n) = \delta(n)$$

$$\delta(n) = \begin{cases} 1 & \text{for } n = 0 \\ 0 & \text{for } n \neq 0 \end{cases}$$

$$X(\omega) = F\{\delta(n)\} = \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} \delta(n) e^{-j\omega n} \Big|_{n=0} = 1$$

$$\therefore F\{\delta(n)\} = 1$$

$$\delta(n) \xrightarrow{\text{FT}} 1$$

(b) Given

$$x(n) = u(n)$$

$$u(n) = \begin{cases} 1 & \text{for } n \geq 0 \\ 0 & \text{for } n < 0 \end{cases}$$

$$X(\omega) = F\{u(n)\} = \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} u(n) e^{-j\omega n}$$

$$= \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} (1) e^{-j\omega n} = \frac{1}{1 - e^{-j\omega}}$$

$$\therefore F\{u(n)\} = \frac{1}{1 - e^{-j\omega}}$$

$$u(n) \xrightarrow{\text{FT}} \frac{1}{1 - e^{-j\omega}}$$

(c) Given

$$x(n) = \delta(n - m)$$

$$\delta(n - m) = \begin{cases} 1 & \text{for } n = m \\ 0 & \text{for } n \neq m \end{cases}$$

$$X(\omega) = F\{\delta(n - m)\} = \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} \delta(n - m) e^{-j\omega n} = e^{-j\omega n} \Big|_{n=m} = e^{-j\omega m}$$

$$\therefore F\{\delta(n - m)\} = e^{-j\omega m}$$

$$\delta(n - m) \xrightarrow{\text{FT}} e^{-j\omega m}$$

(d) Given

$$x(n) = u(n - m)$$

$$u(n - m) = \begin{cases} 1 & \text{for } n \geq m \\ 0 & \text{for } n < m \end{cases}$$

$$\begin{aligned} X(\omega) = F\{u(n - m)\} &= \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} u(n - m) e^{-j\omega n} = \sum_{n=m}^{\infty} (1) e^{-j\omega n} \\ &= e^{-j\omega m} + e^{-j\omega(m+1)} + e^{-j\omega(m+2)} + \dots \\ &= e^{-j\omega m} (1 + e^{-j\omega} + e^{-j2\omega} + \dots) \\ &= \frac{e^{-j\omega m}}{1 - e^{-j\omega}} \end{aligned}$$

$$\therefore F\{u(n - m)\} = \frac{e^{-j\omega m}}{1 - e^{-j\omega}}$$

$$u(n - m) \xrightarrow{\text{FT}} \frac{e^{-j\omega m}}{1 - e^{-j\omega}}$$

(e) Given

$$x(n) = a^n u(n)$$

$$\begin{aligned} X(\omega) &= \mathcal{F}\{a^n u(n)\} = \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} a^n u(n) e^{-j\omega n} \\ &= \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} (ae^{-j\omega})^n = \frac{1}{1 - ae^{-j\omega}} \\ \therefore \quad \mathcal{F}\{a^n u(n)\} &= \frac{1}{1 - ae^{-j\omega}} \\ a^n u(n) &\xleftarrow{\text{FT}} \frac{1}{1 - ae^{-j\omega}} \end{aligned}$$

(f) Given

$$x(n) = -a^n u(-n - 1)$$

$$\begin{aligned} X(\omega) &= \mathcal{F}\{-a^n u(-n - 1)\} \\ &= \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} -a^n u(-n - 1) e^{-j\omega n} \\ &= \sum_{n=-\infty}^{-1} -a^n e^{-j\omega n} = -\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} a^{-n} e^{j\omega n} = -\sum_{n=1}^{\infty} (a^{-1} e^{j\omega})^n \\ &= -[a^{-1} e^{j\omega} + (a^{-1} e^{j\omega})^2 + (a^{-1} e^{j\omega})^3 + \dots] \\ &= -a^{-1} e^{j\omega} [1 + (a^{-1} e^{j\omega})^1 + (a^{-1} e^{j\omega})^2 + \dots] \\ &= \frac{-a^{-1} e^{j\omega}}{1 - a^{-1} e^{j\omega}} \\ \therefore \quad \mathcal{F}\{-a^n u(-n - 1)\} &= \frac{1}{1 - ae^{-j\omega}} \\ -a^n u(-n - 1) &\xleftarrow{\text{FT}} \frac{1}{1 - ae^{-j\omega}} \end{aligned}$$

(g) Given

$$x(n) = \delta(n + 3) - \delta(n - 3)$$

$$\begin{aligned} X(\omega) &= \mathcal{F}\{\delta(n + 3) - \delta(n - 3)\} \\ &= \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} \{\delta(n + 3) - \delta(n - 3)\} e^{-j\omega n} \\ &= e^{-j\omega n} \Big|_{n=-3} - e^{-j\omega n} \Big|_{n=3} \\ &= e^{j3\omega} - e^{-j3\omega} = 2j \sin 3\omega \end{aligned}$$

(h) Given  $x(n) = u(n+3) - u(n-3)$

$$\begin{aligned} X(\omega) &= F\{u(n+3) - u(n-3)\} \\ &= \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} \{u(n+3) - u(n-3)\} e^{-j\omega n} = \sum_{n=-3}^{\infty} (1) e^{-j\omega n} - \sum_{n=3}^{\infty} (1) e^{-j\omega n} \\ &= e^{j3\omega} + e^{j2\omega} + e^{j\omega} + 1 + e^{-j\omega} + e^{-j2\omega} + \dots - e^{-j3\omega} - e^{-j4\omega} - \dots \\ &= e^{j3\omega} + e^{j2\omega} + e^{j\omega} + 1 + e^{-j\omega} + e^{-j2\omega} \end{aligned}$$

**EXAMPLE 12.2** Find the DTFT of:

(a)  $x(n) = \{1, -2, 2, 3\}$

(b)  $x(n) = 3^n u(n)$

(c)  $x(n) = (0.5)^n u(n) + 2^n u(-n-1)$

(d)  $x(n) = \left(\frac{1}{4}\right)^n u(n+1)$

(e)  $x(n) = \begin{cases} n, & -4 \leq n \leq 4 \\ 0, & \text{otherwise} \end{cases}$

(f)  $x(n) = \begin{cases} 1, & 0 \leq n \leq 3 \\ 0, & \text{otherwise} \end{cases}$

(g)  $x(n) = a^{|n|}$

**Solution:**

(a) Given  $x(n) = \{1, -2, 2, 3\}$

$$\begin{aligned} X(\omega) &= F\{x(n)\} = \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} x(n) e^{-j\omega n} \\ &= x(0) + x(1) e^{-j\omega} + x(2) e^{-j2\omega} + x(3) e^{-j3\omega} \\ &= 1 - 2e^{-j\omega} + 2e^{-j2\omega} + 3e^{-j3\omega} \end{aligned}$$

(b) Given  $x(n) = 3^n u(n)$ . The given sequence is not absolutely summable. Therefore, its DTFT does not exist.

(c) Given  $x(n) = (0.5)^n u(n) + 2^n u(-n-1)$

$$\begin{aligned} X(\omega) &= F\{x(n)\} = \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} \{(0.5)^n u(n) + 2^n u(-n-1)\} e^{-j\omega n} \\ &= \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} \{(0.5)^n u(n)\} e^{-j\omega n} + \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} \{2^n u(-n-1)\} e^{-j\omega n} \\ &= \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} (0.5)^n e^{-j\omega n} + \sum_{n=-\infty}^{-1} 2^n e^{-j\omega n} \\ &= \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} (0.5e^{-j\omega})^n + \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} (2^{-1}e^{j\omega})^n \\ &= \frac{1}{1 - 0.5e^{-j\omega}} + \frac{2^{-1}e^{j\omega}}{1 - 2^{-1}e^{j\omega}} \\ &= \frac{1}{1 - 0.5e^{-j\omega}} - \frac{1}{1 - 2e^{-j\omega}} \end{aligned}$$

(d) Given  $x(n) = \left(\frac{1}{4}\right)^n u(n+1)$

$$\begin{aligned} X(\omega) &= F\left\{\left(\frac{1}{4}\right)^n u(n+1)\right\} = \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} \left(\frac{1}{4}\right)^n u(n+1) e^{-j\omega n} \\ &= \sum_{n=-1}^{\infty} \left(\frac{1}{4}\right)^n e^{-j\omega n} = \sum_{n=-1}^{\infty} \left(\frac{1}{4} e^{-j\omega}\right)^n \\ &= \left(\frac{1}{4} e^{-j\omega}\right)^{-1} \left[ \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \frac{1}{4} e^{-j\omega n} \right] = 4e^{j\omega} \left[ \frac{1}{1 - (1/4)e^{-j\omega}} \right] \\ &= \frac{4e^{j\omega}}{1 - (1/4)e^{-j\omega}} \end{aligned}$$

(e) Given  $x(n) = \begin{cases} n, & -4 \leq n \leq 4 \\ 0, & \text{otherwise} \end{cases}$

$$\begin{aligned} X(\omega) &= F\{x(n)\} = \sum_{n=-4}^4 n e^{-j\omega n} \\ &= -4e^{j4\omega} - 3e^{j3\omega} - 2e^{j2\omega} - e^{j\omega} + e^{-j\omega} + 2e^{-j2\omega} + 3e^{-j3\omega} + 4e^{-j4\omega} \\ &= -2j \{4 \sin 4\omega + 3 \sin 3\omega + 2 \sin 2\omega + \sin \omega\} \end{aligned}$$

(f) Given  $x(n) = \begin{cases} 1, & 0 \leq n \leq 3 \\ 0, & \text{otherwise} \end{cases}$

By definition of Fourier transform,

$$\begin{aligned} X(\omega) &= \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} x(n) e^{-j\omega n} = \sum_{n=0}^3 (1) e^{-j\omega n} \\ &= \frac{1 - e^{-j4\omega}}{1 - e^{-j\omega}} = \frac{1 - e^{-j2\omega} e^{-j2\omega}}{1 - e^{(-j\omega/2)} e^{(-j\omega/2)}} \\ &= \frac{e^{-j2\omega} \{e^{j2\omega} - e^{-j2\omega}\}}{e^{(-j\omega/2)} \{e^{(j\omega/2)} - e^{(-j\omega/2)}\}} = \left[ \frac{2j \sin 2\omega}{2j \sin(\omega/2)} \right] e^{-j2\omega + (j\omega/2)} \\ &= \frac{\sin 2\omega}{\sin(\omega/2)} e^{-j(3/2)\omega} \end{aligned}$$

(g) Given  $x(n) = a^{|n|}$

$$\begin{aligned} X(\omega) &= F\{a^{|n|}\} = \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} a^{|n|} e^{-j\omega n} \\ &= \sum_{n=-\infty}^{-1} a^{-n} e^{-j\omega n} + \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} a^n e^{-j\omega n} = \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} (ae^{j\omega})^n + \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} (ae^{-j\omega})^n \\ &= \frac{ae^{j\omega}}{1 - ae^{j\omega}} + \frac{1}{1 - ae^{-j\omega}} = \frac{1 - a^2}{1 - 2a \cos \omega + a^2} \end{aligned}$$

**EXAMPLE 12.3** Find the DTFT of the following sequences:

$$(a) \sin\left(\frac{n\pi}{2}\right)u(n)$$

$$(b) \cos\left(\frac{n\pi}{3}\right)u(n)$$

$$(c) \left(\frac{1}{2}\right)^n \sin\left(\frac{n\pi}{4}\right)u(n)$$

$$(d) \left(\frac{1}{2}\right)^{n-2} u(n-2)$$

$$(e) \cos(\omega_0 n) u(n)$$

$$(f) \sin(\omega_0 n) u(n)$$

**Solution:**

(a) Given

$$x(n) = \sin\left(\frac{n\pi}{2}\right)u(n)$$

$$\begin{aligned} X(\omega) &= F\left\{\sin\left(\frac{n\pi}{2}\right)u(n)\right\} = \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} \left\{\sin\left(\frac{n\pi}{2}\right)u(n)\right\} e^{-j\omega n} \\ &= \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \frac{e^{j(n\pi/2)} - e^{-j(n\pi/2)}}{2j} e^{-j\omega n} = \frac{1}{2j} \left[ \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} e^{j[(\pi/2) - \omega]n} - \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} e^{-j[(\pi/2) + \omega]n} \right] \\ &= \frac{1}{2j} \left[ \frac{1}{1 - e^{j[(\pi/2) - \omega]}} - \frac{1}{1 - e^{-j[(\pi/2) + \omega]}} \right] \\ &= \frac{1}{2j} \left[ \frac{1 - e^{-j(\pi/2)} e^{-j\omega} - 1 + e^{j(\pi/2)} e^{-j\omega}}{1 + e^{-j2\omega} - e^{-j\omega} [e^{j(\pi/2)} + e^{-j(\pi/2)}]} \right] \\ &= \frac{e^{-j\omega} \sin(\pi/2)}{1 + e^{-j2\omega}} = \frac{e^{-j\omega}}{1 + e^{-j2\omega}} \end{aligned}$$

(b) Given

$$x(n) = \cos\left(\frac{n\pi}{3}\right)u(n)$$

$$\begin{aligned} X(\omega) &= F\left\{\cos\left(\frac{n\pi}{3}\right)u(n)\right\} = \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} \left\{\cos\left(\frac{n\pi}{3}\right)u(n)\right\} e^{-j\omega n} \\ &= \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} \left[ \frac{e^{j(n\pi/3)} + e^{-j(n\pi/3)}}{2} u(n) \right] e^{-j\omega n} = \frac{1}{2} \left[ \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} e^{j[(\pi/3) - \omega]n} + \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} e^{-j[(\pi/3) + \omega]n} \right] \\ &= \frac{1}{2} \left[ \frac{1}{1 - e^{j[(\pi/3) - \omega]}} + \frac{1}{1 - e^{-j[(\pi/3) + \omega]}} \right] \\ &= \frac{1}{2} \left[ \frac{1 - e^{-j(\pi/3)} e^{-j\omega} + 1 - e^{j(\pi/3)} e^{-j\omega}}{1 + e^{-j2\omega} - e^{-j\omega} [e^{j(\pi/3)} + e^{-j(\pi/3)}]} \right] \\ &= \frac{1}{2} \left[ \frac{2 - e^{-j\omega}}{1 - e^{-j\omega} + e^{-j2\omega}} \right] \end{aligned}$$

(c) Given

$$\begin{aligned}
 x(n) &= \left(\frac{1}{2}\right)^n \sin\left(\frac{n\pi}{4}\right) u(n) \\
 X(\omega) &= F\left\{\left(\frac{1}{2}\right)^n \sin\left(\frac{n\pi}{4}\right) u(n)\right\} \\
 &= \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} \left\{\left(\frac{1}{2}\right)^n \sin\left(\frac{n\pi}{4}\right) u(n)\right\} e^{-j\omega n} = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \left(\frac{1}{2}\right)^n \sin\left(\frac{n\pi}{4}\right) e^{-j\omega n} \\
 &= \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \left(\frac{1}{2}\right)^n \left\{ \frac{e^{j(n\pi/4)} - e^{-j(n\pi/4)}}{2j} \right\} e^{-j\omega n} \\
 &= \frac{1}{2j} \left[ \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \left(\frac{1}{2}\right)^n e^{j[(\pi/4) - \omega]n} - \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \left(\frac{1}{2}\right)^n e^{-j[(\pi/4) + \omega]n} \right] \\
 &= \frac{1}{2j} \left[ \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \left(\frac{1}{2} e^{j[(\pi/4) - \omega]}\right)^n - \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \left(\frac{1}{2} e^{-j[(\pi/4) + \omega]}\right)^n \right] \\
 &= \frac{1}{2j} \left[ \frac{1}{1 - (1/2) e^{j[(\pi/4) - \omega]}} - \frac{1}{1 - (1/2) e^{-j[(\pi/4) + \omega]}} \right] \\
 &= \frac{(1/2) e^{-j\omega} \sin(\pi/4)}{1 + (1/4) e^{-j2\omega} - e^{-j\omega} \cos(\pi/4)} \\
 &= \frac{(1/2\sqrt{2}) e^{-j\omega}}{1 - (1/\sqrt{2}) e^{-j\omega} + (1/4)e^{-j2\omega}}
 \end{aligned}$$

(d) Given

$$x(n) = \left(\frac{1}{2}\right)^{n-2} u(n-2)$$

$$\begin{aligned}
 X(\omega) &= F\{x(n)\} = \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} \left[ \left(\frac{1}{2}\right)^{n-2} u(n-2) \right] e^{-j\omega n} \\
 &= \sum_{n=2}^{\infty} \left(\frac{1}{2}\right)^{n-2} e^{-j\omega n} \\
 &= e^{-j2\omega} + \frac{1}{2} e^{-j3\omega} + \left(\frac{1}{2}\right)^2 e^{-j4\omega} + \dots \\
 &= e^{-j2\omega} \left[ 1 + \frac{1}{2} e^{-j\omega} + \left(\frac{1}{2}\right)^2 e^{-j2\omega} + \dots \right] \\
 &= \frac{e^{-j2\omega}}{1 - (1/2) e^{-j\omega}}
 \end{aligned}$$

(e) Given

$$x(n) = \cos(\omega_0 n) u(n)$$

$$\begin{aligned} X(\omega) &= F\{x(n)\} = \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} \{\cos(\omega_0 n) u(n)\} e^{-j\omega n} \\ &= \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \left[ \frac{e^{j\omega_0 n} + e^{-j\omega_0 n}}{2} \right] e^{-j\omega n} \\ &= \frac{1}{2} \left\{ \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} [e^{j(\omega_0 - \omega)}]^n + \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} [e^{-j(\omega_0 + \omega)}]^n \right\} \\ &= \frac{1}{2} \left[ \frac{1}{1 - e^{j(\omega_0 - \omega)}} + \frac{1}{1 - e^{-j(\omega_0 + \omega)}} \right] \\ &= \frac{1}{2} \left[ \frac{1 - e^{-j(\omega_0 + \omega)} + 1 - e^{j(\omega_0 - \omega)}}{1 + e^{-j2\omega} - e^{-j\omega}(e^{j\omega_0} + e^{-j\omega_0})} \right] \\ &= \frac{1 - e^{-j\omega} \cos \omega_0}{1 - 2e^{-j\omega} \cos \omega_0 + e^{-j2\omega}} \end{aligned}$$

(f) Given

$$x(n) = \sin(\omega_0 n) u(n)$$

$$\begin{aligned} X(\omega) &= F\{x(n)\} = \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} \{\sin(\omega_0 n) u(n)\} e^{-j\omega n} \\ &= \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \left\{ \frac{e^{j\omega_0 n} - e^{-j\omega_0 n}}{2j} \right\} e^{-j\omega n} = \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \left\{ \frac{e^{j(\omega_0 - \omega)n} - e^{-j(\omega_0 + \omega)n}}{2j} \right\} \\ &= \frac{1}{2j} \left[ \frac{1}{1 - e^{j(\omega_0 - \omega)}} - \frac{1}{1 - e^{-j(\omega_0 + \omega)}} \right] \\ &= \frac{1}{2j} \left[ \frac{1 - e^{-j(\omega_0 + \omega)} - 1 + e^{j(\omega_0 - \omega)}}{1 + e^{-j2\omega} - e^{-j\omega}(e^{j\omega_0} + e^{-j\omega_0})} \right] \\ &= \frac{e^{-j\omega} \sin \omega_0}{1 - 2e^{-j\omega} \cos \omega_0 + e^{-j2\omega}} \end{aligned}$$

**EXAMPLE 12.4** Find the DTFT of the rectangular pulse sequence:

$$x(n) = \begin{cases} A, & |n| \leq N \\ 0, & |n| > N \end{cases}$$

**Solution:** Given

$$x(n) = \begin{cases} A, & |n| \leq N \\ 0, & |n| > N \end{cases}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
X(\omega) &= \sum_{n=-N}^N Ae^{-j\omega n} = \sum_{n=-N}^{-1} Ae^{-j\omega n} + \sum_{n=0}^N Ae^{-j\omega n} \\
&= \sum_{n=1}^N Ae^{j\omega n} + \sum_{n=0}^N Ae^{-j\omega n} = Ae^{j\omega} \sum_{n=0}^{N-1} e^{j\omega n} + A \sum_{n=0}^N e^{-j\omega n} \\
&= Ae^{j\omega} \left[ \frac{1 - e^{j\omega N}}{1 - e^{j\omega}} \right] + A \left[ \frac{1 - e^{-j\omega(N+1)}}{1 - e^{-j\omega}} \right] \\
&= A \left[ \frac{e^{j\omega} - e^{j\omega(N+1)}}{1 - e^{j\omega}} \right] + A \left[ \frac{1 - e^{-j\omega(N+1)}}{1 - e^{-j\omega}} \right] \\
&= A \left[ \frac{e^{j\omega} - 1 - e^{j\omega(N+1)} + e^{j\omega N} + 1 - e^{j\omega} - e^{-j\omega(N+1)} + e^{-j\omega N}}{1 + 1 - e^{j\omega} - e^{-j\omega}} \right] \\
&= A \left[ \frac{(e^{j\omega N} + e^{-j\omega N}) - (e^{j\omega(N+1)} + e^{-j\omega(N+1)})}{2 - (e^{j\omega} + e^{-j\omega})} \right] \\
&= A \left[ \frac{2 \cos \omega N - 2 \cos \omega(N+1)}{2 - 2 \cos \omega} \right] \\
&= A \left[ \frac{2 \sin \omega [N + (1/2)] \sin(\omega/2)}{2 \sin^2(\omega/2)} \right] = \frac{A \sin \omega [N + (1/2)]}{\sin(\omega/2)}
\end{aligned}$$

## 12.5 INVERSE DISCRETE-TIME FOURIER TRANSFORM

The process of finding the discrete-time sequence  $x(n)$  from its frequency response  $X(\omega)$  is called the inverse discrete-time Fourier transform.

$$x(n) = \frac{1}{2\pi} \int_{-\pi}^{\pi} X(\omega) e^{j\omega n} d\omega$$

The integral solution of the above equation for  $x(n)$ , i.e., for the inverse Fourier transform is useful for analytic purpose, but it is usually very difficult to evaluate for typical functional forms of  $X(\omega)$ . An alternate and more useful method of determining the values of  $x(n)$  follows directly from the definition of the Fourier transform.

$$X(\omega) = \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} x(n) e^{-j\omega n} = \cdots + x(-2) e^{j2\omega} + x(-1) e^{j\omega} + x(0) + x(1) e^{-j\omega} + x(2) e^{-j2\omega} + \cdots$$

From the defining equation of  $X(\omega)$  we can say that, if  $X(\omega)$  can be expressed as a series of complex exponentials as shown in the above equation for  $X(\omega)$ , then  $x(n)$  is simply the coefficient of  $e^{-j\omega n}$ . Inverse Fourier transform can be obtained by using the partial fraction method or by using the convolution theorem.

**EXAMPLE 12.5** Determine the signal  $x(n)$  for the given Fourier transforms:

$$(a) \quad X(\omega) = e^{-j\omega} \text{ for } -\pi \leq \omega \leq \pi \quad (b) \quad X(\omega) = e^{-j\omega} (1 + \cos \omega)$$

**Solution:**

(a) Given

$$X(\omega) = e^{-j\omega}$$

$$\begin{aligned} x(n) &= F^{-1}\{X(\omega)\} = \frac{1}{2\pi} \int_{-\pi}^{\pi} e^{-j\omega} e^{j\omega n} d\omega \\ &= \frac{1}{2\pi} \int_{-\pi}^{\pi} e^{j\omega(n-1)} d\omega = \frac{1}{2\pi} \left[ \frac{e^{j\omega(n-1)}}{j(n-1)} \right]_{-\pi}^{\pi} \\ &= \frac{1}{2\pi} \left[ \frac{e^{j\pi(n-1)} - e^{-j\pi(n-1)}}{j(n-1)} \right] = \frac{1}{\pi(n-1)} \left[ \frac{e^{j\pi(n-1)} - e^{-j\pi(n-1)}}{2j} \right] \\ &= \frac{\sin \pi(n-1)}{\pi(n-1)} \end{aligned}$$

(b) Given

$$X(\omega) = e^{-j\omega}(1 + \cos \omega)$$

$$\begin{aligned} &= e^{-j\omega} \left( 1 + \frac{e^{j\omega} + e^{-j\omega}}{2} \right) \\ &= e^{-j\omega} + 0.5 + 0.5e^{-j2\omega} \\ &= x(0) + x(1)e^{-j\omega} + x(2)e^{-j2\omega} \end{aligned}$$

Therefore,

$$x(0) = 0.5, x(1) = 1, x(2) = 0.5$$

$$x(n) = 0, \text{ otherwise}$$

i.e.

$$x(n) = \{0.5, 1, 0.5\}$$

**EXAMPLE 12.6** Obtain the impulse response of the system described by

$$H(\omega) = \begin{cases} 1, & \text{for } |\omega| \leq \omega_0 \\ 0, & \text{for } \omega_0 \leq |\omega| \leq \pi \end{cases}$$

**Solution:** Given

$$H(\omega) = \begin{cases} 1, & \text{for } |\omega| \leq \omega_0 \\ 0, & \text{for } \omega_0 \leq |\omega| \leq \pi \end{cases}$$

The impulse response  $h(n)$  is given by

$$\begin{aligned} h(n) &= \frac{1}{2\pi} \int_{-\pi}^{\pi} H(\omega) e^{j\omega n} d\omega \\ &= \frac{1}{2\pi} \int_{-\omega_0}^{\omega_0} (1) e^{j\omega n} d\omega = \frac{1}{2\pi} \left( \frac{e^{j\omega_0 n}}{jn} \right)_{-\omega_0}^{\omega_0} \\ &= \frac{1}{2\pi} \left( \frac{e^{j\omega_0 n} - e^{-j\omega_0 n}}{jn} \right) = \frac{\sin(\omega_0 n)}{\pi n} \end{aligned}$$

**EXAMPLE 12.7** Find the inverse Fourier transform of the following:

$$X(\omega) = \begin{cases} 1, & \frac{\pi}{3} \leq |\omega| \leq \frac{2\pi}{3} \\ 0, & \frac{2\pi}{3} \leq |\omega| \leq \pi \end{cases}$$

**Solution:** The Fourier transform  $X(\omega)$  is given. Then, the inverse Fourier transform of  $X(\omega)$  is given by

$$\begin{aligned} x(n) &= \frac{1}{2\pi} \int_{-\pi}^{\pi} X(\omega) e^{j\omega n} d\omega \\ &= \frac{1}{2\pi} \left[ \int_{-2\pi/3}^{-\pi/3} 1 e^{j\omega n} d\omega + \int_{\pi/3}^{2\pi/3} 1 e^{j\omega n} d\omega \right] = \frac{1}{2\pi} \left[ \left( \frac{e^{j\omega n}}{jn} \right)^{-\pi/3}_{-2\pi/3} + \left( \frac{e^{j\omega n}}{jn} \right)^{2\pi/3}_{\pi/3} \right] \\ &= \frac{1}{n\pi} \left[ \frac{e^{-jn(\pi/3)} - e^{-jn(2\pi/3)} + e^{jn(2\pi/3)} - e^{jn(\pi/3)}}{2j} \right] \\ &= \frac{1}{n\pi} \left[ \frac{e^{jn(2\pi/3)} - e^{-jn(2\pi/3)}}{2j} - \frac{e^{jn(\pi/3)} - e^{-jn(\pi/3)}}{2j} \right] = \frac{1}{n\pi} \left[ \sin n \frac{2\pi}{3} - \sin n \frac{\pi}{3} \right] \end{aligned}$$

**EXAMPLE 12.8** Find the inverse Fourier transform of

$$X(\omega) = 2 + e^{-j\omega} + 3e^{-j3\omega} + 4e^{-j4\omega}$$

**Solution:** Given

$$X(\omega) = 2 + e^{-j\omega} + 3e^{-j3\omega} + 4e^{-j4\omega}$$

We know that

$$\begin{aligned} X(\omega) &= \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} x(n) e^{-j\omega n} \\ &= \dots + x(-2) e^{j2\omega} + x(-1) e^{j\omega} + x(0) + x(1) e^{-j\omega} + x(2) e^{-j2\omega} \\ &\quad + x(3) e^{-j3\omega} + x(4) e^{-j4\omega} + \dots \end{aligned}$$

Comparing the above two values of  $X(\omega)$ , we get

i.e.

$$x(0) = 2, x(1) = 1, x(2) = 0, x(3) = 3, x(4) = 4$$

$$x(n) = \{2, 1, 0, 3, 4\}$$

## 12.6 PROPERTIES OF DISCRETE-TIME FOURIER TRANSFORM

### 12.6.1 Linearity Property

The linearity property of DTFT states that

If  $F[x_1(n)] = X_1(\omega)$  and  $F[x_2(n)] = X_2(\omega)$

Then  $F[ax_1(n) + bx_2(n)] = aX_1(\omega) + bX_2(\omega)$

$$\begin{aligned}
 \text{Proof: } F\{ax_1(n) + bx_2(n)\} &= \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} [ax_1(n) + bx_2(n)] e^{-j\omega n} \\
 &= \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} ax_1(n) e^{-j\omega n} + \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} bx_2(n) e^{-j\omega n} = aX_1(\omega) + bX_2(\omega)
 \end{aligned}$$

### 12.6.2 Periodicity Property

The periodicity property of DTFT states that the DTFT  $X(\omega)$  is periodic in  $\omega$  with period  $2\pi$ , i.e.

$$X(\omega + 2n\pi) = X(\omega)$$

**Implication:** We need only one period of  $X(\omega)$  {i.e.,  $\omega \in (0, 2\pi)$  or  $(-\pi, \pi)$ } for analysis and not the whole range  $-\infty < \omega < \infty$ .

### 12.6.3 Time Shifting Property

The time shifting property of DTFT states that

$$\text{If } F[x(n)] = X(\omega)$$

Then  $F[x(n - m)] = e^{-j\omega m} X(\omega)$  where  $m$  is an integer.

$$\text{Proof: } F\{x(n - m)\} = \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} x(n - m) e^{-j\omega n}$$

Let  $n - m = p$

$$\therefore n = p + m$$

$$\begin{aligned}
 \therefore F\{x(n - m)\} &= \sum_{p=-\infty}^{\infty} x(p) e^{-j\omega(p+m)} \\
 &= e^{-j\omega m} \sum_{p=-\infty}^{\infty} x(p) e^{-j\omega p} = e^{-j\omega m} X(\omega)
 \end{aligned}$$

This result shows that the time shifting of a signal by  $m$  units does not change its amplitude spectrum but the phase spectrum is changed by  $-\omega m$ .

### 12.6.4 Frequency Shifting Property

The frequency shifting property of DTFT states that

$$\text{If } F[x(n)] = X(\omega)$$

$$\text{Then } F\{x(n) e^{j\omega_0 n}\} = X(\omega - \omega_0)$$

$$\begin{aligned}
 \text{Proof: } F\{x(n) e^{j\omega_0 n}\} &= \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} \{x(n) e^{j\omega_0 n}\} e^{-j\omega n} \\
 &= \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} x(n) e^{-j(\omega - \omega_0)n} = X(\omega - \omega_0)
 \end{aligned}$$

This property is the dual of the time shifting property.

### 12.6.5 Time Reversal Property

The time reversal property of DTFT states that

If  $\mathcal{F}\{x(n)\} = X(\omega)$

Then  $\mathcal{F}\{x(-n)\} = X(-\omega)$

*Proof:*

$$\begin{aligned}\mathcal{F}\{x(-n)\} &= \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} x(-n) e^{-j\omega n} \\ &= \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} x(n) e^{j\omega n} \\ &= \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} x(n) e^{-j(-\omega)n} \\ &= X(-\omega)\end{aligned}$$

That is, folding in the time domain corresponds to the folding in the frequency domain.

### 12.6.6 Differentiation in the Frequency Domain Property

The differentiation in the frequency domain property of DTFT states that

If  $\mathcal{F}\{x(n)\} = X(\omega)$

Then  $\mathcal{F}\{nx(n)\} = j \frac{d}{d\omega} [X(\omega)]$

*Proof:*

$$\mathcal{F}\{x(n)\} = X(\omega) = \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} x(n) e^{-j\omega n}$$

Differentiating both sides w.r.t.  $\omega$ , we get

$$\begin{aligned}\frac{d}{d\omega} \{X(\omega)\} &= \frac{d}{d\omega} \left\{ \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} x(n) e^{-j\omega n} \right\} \\ &= \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} x(n) \frac{d}{d\omega} e^{-j\omega n} \\ &= \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} x(n) (-jn) e^{-j\omega n} \\ &= -j \left\{ \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} n x(n) e^{-j\omega n} \right\}\end{aligned}$$

$$\therefore \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} nx(n) e^{-j\omega n} = \mathcal{F}\{nx(n)\} = j \frac{d}{d\omega} [X(\omega)]$$

### 12.6.7 Time Convolution Property

The time convolution property of DTFT states that

$$\text{If } \mathcal{F}\{x_1(n)\} = X_1(\omega) \text{ and } \mathcal{F}\{x_2(n)\} = X_2(\omega)$$

Then

$$\mathcal{F}\{x_1(n) * x_2(n)\} = X_1(\omega) X_2(\omega)$$

*Proof:*

$$x_1(n) * x_2(n) = \sum_{k=-\infty}^{\infty} x_1(k) x_2(n-k)$$

∴

$$\begin{aligned} \mathcal{F}\{x_1(n) * x_2(n)\} &= \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} [x_1(n) * x_2(n)] e^{-j\omega n} \\ &= \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} \left\{ \sum_{k=-\infty}^{\infty} [x_1(k) x_2(n-k)] \right\} e^{-j\omega n} \end{aligned}$$

Interchanging the order of summations, we get

$$\mathcal{F}\{x_1(n) * x_2(n)\} = \sum_{k=-\infty}^{\infty} x_1(k) \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} x_2(n-k) e^{-j\omega n}$$

Put  $n - k = p$  in the second summation.

$$\therefore n = p + k$$

$$\begin{aligned} \mathcal{F}\{x_1(n) * x_2(n)\} &= \sum_{k=-\infty}^{\infty} x_1(k) \sum_{p=-\infty}^{\infty} x_2(p) e^{-j\omega(p+k)} \\ &= \sum_{k=-\infty}^{\infty} x_1(k) e^{-j\omega k} \sum_{p=-\infty}^{\infty} x_2(p) e^{-j\omega p} \\ &= X_1(\omega) X_2(\omega) \end{aligned}$$

That is, the convolution of the signals in the time domain is equal to multiplying their spectra in the frequency domain.

### 12.6.8 Frequency Convolution Property

The frequency convolution property of DTFT states that

$$\text{If } \mathcal{F}\{x_1(n)\} = X_1(\omega) \text{ and } \mathcal{F}\{x_2(n)\} = X_2(\omega)$$

Then

$$\mathcal{F}\{x_1(n) x_2(n)\} = X_1(\omega) * X_2(\omega) = \frac{1}{2\pi} \int_{-\pi}^{\pi} X_1(\theta) X_2(\omega - \theta) d\theta$$

*Proof:*

$$\begin{aligned} \mathcal{F}[x_1(n) x_2(n)] &= \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} x_1(n) x_2(n) e^{-j\omega n} \\ &= \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} \left[ \frac{1}{2\pi} \int_{-\pi}^{\pi} X_1(\theta) e^{j\theta n} d\theta \right] e^{-j\omega n} x_2(n) \end{aligned}$$

Interchanging the order of summation and integration, we get

$$\begin{aligned} F\{x_1(n)x_2(n)\} &= \frac{1}{2\pi} \int_{-\pi}^{\pi} X_1(\theta) \left[ \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} x_2(n) e^{-j(\omega-\theta)n} \right] d\theta \\ &= \frac{1}{2\pi} \int_{-\pi}^{\pi} X_1(\theta) X_2(\omega - \theta) d\theta \end{aligned}$$

This operation is known as periodic convolution because it is the convolution of two periodic functions  $X_1(\omega)$  and  $X_2(\omega)$ .

### 12.6.9 The Correlation Theorem

The correlation theorem of DTFT states that

If  $F\{x_1(n)\} = X_1(\omega)$  and  $F\{x_2(n)\} = X_2(\omega)$

Then  $F\{R_{x_1x_2}(l)\} = X_1(\omega)X_2(-\omega) = \Gamma_{x_1x_2}(\omega)$

The function  $\Gamma_{x_1x_2}(\omega)$  is called the cross energy spectrum of the signals  $x_1(n)$   $x_2(n)$ .

### 12.6.10 The Modulation Theorem

If  $F\{x(n)\} = X(\omega)$

Then  $F\{x(n)\cos\omega_0 n\} = \frac{1}{2}\{X(\omega + \omega_0) + X(\omega - \omega_0)\}$

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Proof: } F\{x(n)\cos\omega_0 n\} &= \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} x(n) \frac{e^{j\omega_0 n} + e^{-j\omega_0 n}}{2} e^{-j\omega n} \\ &= \frac{1}{2} \left\{ \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} x(n) e^{-j(\omega - \omega_0)n} + \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} x(n) e^{-j(\omega + \omega_0)n} \right\} \\ &= \frac{1}{2} \{X(\omega - \omega_0) + X(\omega + \omega_0)\} \end{aligned}$$

### 12.6.11 Parseval's Theorem

If  $F\{x(n)\} = X(\omega)$

$$\begin{aligned} \text{Then } E &= \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} |x(n)|^2 \\ &= \frac{1}{2\pi} \int_{-\pi}^{\pi} |X(\omega)|^2 d\omega \end{aligned}$$

*Proof:*

$$\begin{aligned}
 E &= \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} |x(n)|^2 = \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} x(n) x^*(n) \\
 &= \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} x(n) \left\{ \frac{1}{2\pi} \int_{-\pi}^{\pi} X(\omega) e^{j\omega n} d\omega \right\}^* \\
 &= \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} x(n) \left\{ \frac{1}{2\pi} \int_{-\pi}^{\pi} X^*(\omega) e^{-j\omega n} d\omega \right\}
 \end{aligned}$$

Interchanging the order of summation and integration, we get

$$\begin{aligned}
 E &= \frac{1}{2\pi} \int_{-\pi}^{\pi} X^*(\omega) \left\{ \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} x(n) e^{-j\omega n} \right\} d\omega \\
 &= \frac{1}{2\pi} \int_{-\pi}^{\pi} X^*(\omega) X(\omega) d\omega \\
 &= \frac{1}{2\pi} \int_{-\pi}^{\pi} |X(\omega)|^2 d\omega
 \end{aligned}$$

The properties of DTFT are summarized in Table B.9 in the Appendix B.

### 12.6.12 Symmetry Properties

The DTFT  $X(\omega)$  is a complex function of  $\omega$  and can be expressed as:

$$X(\omega) = X_R(\omega) + jX_I(\omega)$$

where  $X_R(\omega)$  is real part and  $X_I(\omega)$  is imaginary part of  $X(\omega)$  respectively. We have

$$\begin{aligned}
 X(\omega) &= \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} x(n) e^{-j\omega n} \\
 &= \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} x(n) \cos \omega n - j \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} x(n) \sin \omega n
 \end{aligned}$$

i.e.

$$X_R(\omega) + jX_I(\omega) = \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} x(n) \cos \omega n - j \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} x(n) \sin \omega n$$

Comparing LHS and RHS, we have

$$\begin{aligned}
 X_R(\omega) &= \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} x(n) \cos \omega n \\
 X_I(\omega) &= - \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} x(n) \sin \omega n
 \end{aligned}$$

Since  $\cos(-\omega)n = \cos \omega n$ , and  $\sin(-\omega)n = -\sin \omega n$

$$X_R(-\omega) = \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} x(n) \cos(-\omega)n = \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} x(n) \cos \omega n = X_R(\omega)$$

i.e.

$$X_R(-\omega) = X_R(\omega) \quad (\text{Even symmetry})$$

$$X_I(-\omega) = - \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} x(n) \sin(-\omega)n = - \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} x(n) \sin \omega n = -X_I(\omega)$$

i.e.

$$X_I(-\omega) = -X_I(\omega) \quad (\text{Odd symmetry})$$

Therefore,  $X_R(\omega)$  is an even function of  $\omega$  and  $X_I(\omega)$  is an odd function of  $\omega$ . We can write  $X_R(\omega)$  in the polar form as:

$$X(\omega) = |X(\omega)| e^{j\theta(\omega)}$$

where  $|X(\omega)|$  is the magnitude and  $\theta(\omega)$  is the phase of  $X(\omega)$ .

Expanding

$$X(\omega) = |X(\omega)| \{ \cos \theta(\omega) + j \sin \theta(\omega) \}$$

i.e.

$$X_R(\omega) + jX_I(\omega) = |X(\omega)| \cos \theta(\omega) + j|X(\omega)| \sin \theta(\omega)$$

Comparing LHS and RHS, we get

$$X_R(\omega) = |X(\omega)| \cos \theta(\omega)$$

$$X_I(\omega) = |X(\omega)| \sin \theta(\omega)$$

$$|X(\omega)|^2 = \{X_R(\omega)\}^2 + \{X_I(\omega)\}^2$$

i.e.

$$X(\omega) = \sqrt{\{X_R(\omega)\}^2 + \{X_I(\omega)\}^2}$$

and

$$\tan \theta(\omega) = \frac{X_I(\omega)}{X_R(\omega)}$$

or

$$\theta(\omega) = \tan^{-1} \frac{X_I(\omega)}{X_R(\omega)}$$

Similarly,

$$\begin{aligned} |X(-\omega)| &= \sqrt{\{X_R(-\omega)\}^2 + \{X_I(-\omega)\}^2} \\ &= \sqrt{|X_R(\omega)|^2 + |X_I(\omega)|^2} \\ &= |X(\omega)| \end{aligned}$$

Therefore,  $X(\omega)$  is an even function of  $\omega$ ,

$$\begin{aligned} \theta(-\omega) &= \tan^{-1} \frac{X_I(-\omega)}{X_R(-\omega)} \\ &= \tan^{-1} \frac{-X_I(\omega)}{X_R(\omega)} \\ &= -\tan^{-1} \frac{X_I(\omega)}{X_R(\omega)} = -\theta(\omega) \end{aligned}$$

$$\therefore \theta(-\omega) = -\theta(\omega)$$

That is

$$|X(-\omega)| = -|X(\omega)|$$

Therefore  $|X(\omega)|$  is an odd function of  $\omega$ .

**Implication:** Due to this symmetry property, to plot  $X(\omega)$ , we need to consider only a half period of  $X(\omega)$ . Generally this period is chosen to be  $[0, \pi]$ .

A sequence  $x(n)$  can be expressed as:

$$x(n) = x_e(n) + x_o(n)$$

where

$$x_e(n) = \frac{1}{2}\{x(n) + x^*(-n)\}$$

and

$$x_o(n) = \frac{1}{2}\{x(n) - x^*(-n)\}$$

A Fourier transformation  $X(\omega)$  can be decomposed into

$$X(\omega) = X_e(\omega) + jX_o(\omega)$$

where

$$X_e(\omega) = \frac{1}{2}\{X(\omega) + X^*(-\omega)\}$$

and

$$X_o(\omega) = \frac{1}{2}\{X(\omega) - X^*(-\omega)\}$$

If  $F\{x(n)\} = X(\omega)$ , then  $F\{x^*(n)\} = X^*(-\omega)$  and  $F\{x^*(-n)\} = X^*(\omega)$

$$\therefore F\{x_e(n)\} = \frac{1}{2}\{F[x(n) + x^*(n)]\} = \frac{1}{2}\{X(\omega) + X^*(-\omega)\} = \text{Re}\{X(\omega)\}$$

$$F\{x_e(n)\} = \text{Re}\{X(\omega)\}$$

i.e.

$$F\{x_o(n)\} = \frac{1}{2}\{F[x(n) - x^*(-n)]\} = \frac{1}{2}\{X(\omega) - X^*(\omega)\} = j \text{Im}\{X(\omega)\}$$

i.e.

$$F\{x_o(n)\} = j \text{Im}\{X(\omega)\}$$

$$F\{\text{Re}[x(n)]\} = F\left\{\frac{1}{2}[x(n) + x^*(n)]\right\} = \frac{1}{2}\{X(\omega) + X^*(-\omega)\} = X_e(\omega)$$

i.e.

$$F\{\text{Re}[x(n)]\} = X_e(\omega)$$

$$F\{j \text{Im}[x(n)]\} = F\left\{\frac{1}{2}[x(n) - x^*(n)]\right\} = \frac{1}{2}\{X(\omega) - X^*(-\omega)\} = X_o(\omega)$$

i.e.

$$F\{j \text{Im}[x(n)]\} = X_o(\omega)$$

**EXAMPLE 12.9** Using properties of DTFT, find the DTFT of the following:

$$(a) \left(\frac{1}{4}\right)^{|n-2|}$$

$$(b) \left(\frac{1}{3}\right)^{|n-3|} u(n-3)$$

$$(c) \delta(n-2) - \delta(n+2)$$

$$(d) u(n+1) - u(n+2)$$

$$(e) n2^n u(n)$$

$$(f) u(-n)$$

$$(g) n3^{-n} u(-n)$$

$$(h) e^{3n} u(n)$$

**Solution:**

(a) Using the time shifting property, we have

$$\begin{aligned} F\left\{\left(\frac{1}{4}\right)^{|n-2|}\right\} &= e^{-j2\omega} F\left\{\left(\frac{1}{4}\right)^{|n|}\right\} \\ F\left\{\left(\frac{1}{4}\right)^{|n|}\right\} &= \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} \left(\frac{1}{4}\right)^{|n|} e^{-j\omega n} \\ &= \sum_{n=-\infty}^{-1} \left(\frac{1}{4}\right)^{-n} e^{-j\omega n} + \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \left(\frac{1}{4}\right)^n e^{-j\omega n} \\ &= \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \left(\frac{1}{4}\right)^n e^{j\omega n} + \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} \left(\frac{1}{4}\right)^n e^{-j\omega n} \\ &= \frac{1}{4} e^{j\omega} \frac{1}{1 - (1/4) e^{j\omega}} + \frac{1}{1 - (1/4) e^{-j\omega}} = \frac{15/16}{(17/16) - (1/2) \cos \omega} \\ \therefore F\left\{\left(\frac{1}{4}\right)^{|n-2|}\right\} &= e^{-j2\omega} \frac{15/16}{(17/16) - (1/2) \cos \omega} \end{aligned}$$

(b) Using the time shifting property, we have

$$F\left\{\left(\frac{1}{3}\right)^{|n-3|} u(n-3)\right\} = e^{-j3\omega} F\left\{\left(\frac{1}{3}\right)^n u(n)\right\} = e^{-j3\omega} \left\{ \frac{1}{1 - (1/3) e^{-j\omega}} \right\}$$

(c) Using the time shifting property, we have

$$\begin{aligned} F\{\delta(n-2) - \delta(n+2)\} &= F\{\delta(n-2)\} - F\{\delta(n+2)\} \\ &= e^{-j2\omega} F\{\delta(n)\} - e^{j2\omega} F\{\delta(n)\} \\ &= e^{-j2\omega} - e^{j2\omega} = -2 j \sin 2\omega \end{aligned}$$

(d) Using the time shifting property, we have

$$\begin{aligned} F\{u(n+1) - u(n+2)\} &= F\{u(n+1)\} - F\{u(n+2)\} \\ &= e^{j\omega} F\{u(n)\} - e^{j2\omega} F\{u(n)\} \\ &= \frac{e^{j\omega}}{1 - e^{-j\omega}} - \frac{e^{j2\omega}}{1 - e^{-j\omega}} \end{aligned}$$

(e) Using differentiation in the frequency domain property, we have

$$\begin{aligned} F\left\{n\left(\frac{1}{2}\right)^n u(n)\right\} &= j \frac{d}{d\omega} \left[ F\left\{\left(\frac{1}{2}\right)^n u(n)\right\} \right] \\ &= j \frac{d}{d\omega} \left[ \frac{1}{1 - (1/2)e^{-j\omega}} \right] \\ &= j \frac{\{-[-(1/2)e^{-j\omega}(-j)]\}}{\{1 - (1/2)e^{-j\omega}\}^2} = \frac{(1/2)e^{-j\omega}}{\{1 - (1/2)e^{-j\omega}\}^2} \end{aligned}$$

(f) Using the time reversal property, we have

$$F\{u(-n)\} = F\{u(n)\}|_{\omega=-\omega} = \left\{ \frac{1}{1 - e^{-j\omega}} \right\}_{\omega=-\omega} = \frac{1}{1 - e^{j\omega}}$$

(g) Using differentiation in frequency domain and time reversal properties, we have

$$\begin{aligned} F\{n3^{-n} u(-n)\} &= j \frac{d}{d\omega} [F\{3^{-n} u(-n)\}] \\ &= j \frac{d}{d\omega} [F\{3^n u(n)\}]|_{\omega=-\omega} = j \frac{d}{d\omega} \left[ \frac{1}{1 - 3e^{-j\omega}} \right]_{\omega=-\omega} \\ &= j \frac{d}{d\omega} \left[ \frac{1}{1 - 3e^{j\omega}} \right] = j \frac{-[-3e^{j\omega}(j)]}{[1 - 3e^{j\omega}]^2} = \frac{-3e^{j\omega}}{\{1 - 3e^{j\omega}\}^2} \end{aligned}$$

(h) Using the frequency shifting property, we have

$$\begin{aligned} F\{e^{j3n} u(n)\} &= F\{u(n)\}|_{\omega=\omega-3} \\ &= \left\{ \frac{1}{1 - e^{-j\omega}} \right\}_{\omega=\omega-3} = \frac{1}{1 - e^{-j(\omega-3)}} \end{aligned}$$

**EXAMPLE 12.10** Find the inverse Fourier transform for the first order recursive filter

$$H(\omega) = (1 - ae^{-j\omega})^{-1}$$

**Solution:** Given  $H(\omega) = (1 - ae^{-j\omega})^{-1} = \frac{1}{1 - ae^{-j\omega}}$

$$= 1 + ae^{-j\omega} + a^2 e^{-j2\omega} + a^3 e^{-j3\omega} + \dots$$

Let  $h(n)$  be the inverse Fourier transform of  $H(\omega)$ .

$$\therefore H(\omega) = \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} h(n) e^{-j\omega n} = \dots + h(-2) e^{j2\omega} + h(-1) e^{j\omega} + h(0) + h(1) e^{-j\omega} + h(2) e^{-j2\omega} + \dots$$

On comparing the two expressions for  $H(\omega)$ , we can say that the samples of  $h(n)$  are the coefficients of  $e^{-j\omega n}$ .

$$\therefore h(n) = \{1, a, a^2, \dots, a^k, \dots\}$$

$$\text{i.e. } h(n) = \begin{cases} a^n, & n \geq 0 \\ 0, & n < 0 \end{cases} \text{ or } h(n) = a^n u(n)$$

**EXAMPLE 12.11** Determine the output sequence from the output spectrum:

$$Y(\omega) = \frac{1}{4} \frac{e^{j2\omega} + 1 + e^{-j2\omega}}{1 - ae^{-j\omega}}$$

$$\text{Solution: Given } Y(\omega) = \frac{1}{4} \frac{e^{j2\omega} + 1 + e^{-j2\omega}}{1 - ae^{-j\omega}}$$

The output sequence  $y(n)$  is the inverse Fourier transform of  $Y(\omega)$ .

$$\begin{aligned} \therefore y(n) &= F^{-1} \left\{ \frac{1}{4} \frac{e^{j2\omega} + 1 + e^{-j2\omega}}{1 - ae^{-j\omega}} \right\} \\ &= \frac{1}{4} \left[ F^{-1} \left\{ \frac{e^{j2\omega}}{1 - ae^{-j\omega}} \right\} + F^{-1} \left\{ \frac{1}{1 - ae^{-j\omega}} \right\} + F^{-1} \left\{ \frac{e^{-j2\omega}}{1 - ae^{-j\omega}} \right\} \right] \end{aligned}$$

Using the time shifting property, we have

$$F^{-1} \left\{ \frac{e^{j2\omega}}{1 - ae^{-j\omega}} \right\} = F^{-1} \left\{ \frac{1}{1 - ae^{-j\omega}} \right\} \Big|_{n=n+2} = a^n u(n) \Big|_{n=n+2} = a^{n+2} u(n+2)$$

Also, we know that

$$F^{-1} \left\{ \frac{1}{1 - ae^{-j\omega}} \right\} = a^n u(n)$$

Using the time shifting property, we have

$$F^{-1} \left\{ \frac{e^{-j2\omega}}{1 - ae^{-j\omega}} \right\} = F^{-1} \left\{ \frac{1}{1 - ae^{-j\omega}} \right\} \Big|_{n=n-2} = a^{n-2} u(n-2)$$

$$\therefore y(n) = \frac{1}{4} \{a^{n+2} u(n+2) + a^n u(n) + a^{n-2} u(n-2)\}$$

**EXAMPLE 12.12** The impulse response of a LTI system is  $h(n) = \{1, 2, 1, -2\}$ . Find the response of the system for the input  $x(n) = \{1, 3, 2, 1\}$ .

**Solution:** The response of the system  $y(n)$  for an input  $x(n)$  and impulse response  $h(n)$  is given by

$$y(n) = x(n) * h(n)$$

Using the convolution property of Fourier transform, we get

$$Y(\omega) = X(\omega) H(\omega)$$

∴

$$y(n) = F^{-1}\{X(\omega) H(\omega)\}$$

Given

$$x(n) = \{1, 3, 2, 1\}$$

∴

$$X(\omega) = 1 + 3e^{-j\omega} + 2e^{-j2\omega} + e^{-j3\omega}$$

Given

$$h(n) = \{1, 2, 1, -2\}$$

∴

$$H(\omega) = 1 + 2e^{-j\omega} + e^{-j2\omega} - 2e^{-j3\omega}$$

$$\begin{aligned} Y(\omega) &= X(\omega) H(\omega) = (1 + 3e^{-j\omega} + 2e^{-j2\omega} + e^{-j3\omega})(1 + 2e^{-j\omega} + e^{-j2\omega} - 2e^{-j3\omega}) \\ &= 1 + 5e^{-j\omega} + 9e^{-j2\omega} + 6e^{-j3\omega} - 2e^{-j4\omega} - 3e^{-j5\omega} - 2e^{-j6\omega} \end{aligned}$$

Taking inverse Fourier transform on both sides, we get

$$y(n) = 1 + 5\delta(n-1) + 9\delta(n-2) + 6\delta(n-3) - 2\delta(n-4) - 3\delta(n-5) - 2\delta(n-6)$$

or

$$y(n) = \{1, 5, 9, 6, -2, -3, -2\}$$

**EXAMPLE 12.13** Find the convolution of the signals given below using Fourier transform:

$$x_1(n) = \left(\frac{1}{2}\right)^n u(n)$$

$$x_2(n) = \left(\frac{1}{3}\right)^n u(n)$$

**Solution:** Given

$$x_1(n) = \left(\frac{1}{2}\right)^n u(n)$$

∴

$$X_1(\omega) = \frac{1}{1 - (1/2)e^{-j\omega}}$$

$$x_2(n) = \left(\frac{1}{3}\right)^n u(n)$$

∴

$$X_2(\omega) = \frac{1}{1 - (1/3)e^{-j\omega}}$$

Using the convolution property of Fourier transform, we get

$$\begin{aligned}
 F[x_1(n) * x_2(n)] &= X_1(\omega) X_2(\omega) \\
 &= \left[ \frac{1}{1 - (1/2)e^{-j\omega}} \right] \left[ \frac{1}{1 - (1/3)e^{-j\omega}} \right] \\
 \therefore x_1(n) * x_2(n) &= F^{-1} \left\{ \left[ \frac{1}{1 - (1/2)e^{-j\omega}} \right] \left[ \frac{1}{1 - (1/3)e^{-j\omega}} \right] \right\} \\
 \text{Let } X(\omega) &= \left( \frac{1}{1 - (1/2)e^{-j\omega}} \right) \left( \frac{1}{1 - (1/3)e^{-j\omega}} \right) = \left[ \frac{e^{j\omega}}{e^{j\omega} - (1/2)} \right] \left[ \frac{e^{j\omega}}{e^{j\omega} - (1/3)} \right] \\
 \therefore \frac{X(\omega)}{e^{j\omega}} &= \frac{e^{j\omega}}{[e^{j\omega} - (1/2)][e^{j\omega} - (1/3)]} \\
 &= \frac{A}{e^{j\omega} - (1/2)} + \frac{B}{e^{j\omega} - (1/3)} = \frac{3}{e^{j\omega} - (1/2)} + \frac{-2}{e^{j\omega} - (1/3)} \\
 \therefore X(\omega) &= \frac{3e^{j\omega}}{e^{j\omega} - (1/2)} - \frac{2e^{j\omega}}{e^{j\omega} - (1/3)} \\
 &= 3 \frac{1}{1 - (1/2)e^{-j\omega}} - 2 \frac{1}{1 - (1/3)e^{-j\omega}}
 \end{aligned}$$

Taking inverse Fourier transform on both sides, we have

$$x(n) = x_1(n) * x_2(n) = 3 \left( \frac{1}{2} \right)^n u(n) - 2 \left( \frac{1}{3} \right)^n u(n)$$

**EXAMPLE 12.14** Consider a discrete-time LTI system with impulse response

$$\begin{aligned}
 h(n) &= \left( \frac{1}{2} \right)^n u(n). \quad \text{Use Fourier transform to determine the response to the signal} \\
 x(n) &= \left( \frac{3}{4} \right)^n u(n).
 \end{aligned}$$

**Solution:** Given the impulse response  $h(n)$  and the input  $x(n)$  to the system, the response  $y(n)$  is given by

$$y(n) = x(n) * h(n)$$

Using the convolution property of Fourier transform, we have

$$y(n) = x(n) * h(n) = F^{-1}[X(\omega) H(\omega)]$$

where  $X(\omega)$  and  $H(\omega)$  are the Fourier transforms of  $x(n)$  and  $h(n)$ , respectively.

$$x(n) = \left( \frac{3}{4} \right)^n u(n)$$

$$\begin{aligned}
 & \therefore X(\omega) = \frac{1}{1 - (3/4)e^{-j\omega}} \\
 & \qquad h(n) = \left(\frac{1}{2}\right)^n u(n) \\
 & \therefore H(\omega) = \frac{1}{1 - (1/2)e^{-j\omega}} \\
 & \therefore Y(\omega) = X(\omega) H(\omega) = \left[ \frac{1}{1 - (3/4)e^{-j\omega}} \right] \left[ \frac{1}{1 - (1/2)e^{-j\omega}} \right] \\
 & \qquad = \left[ \frac{e^{j\omega}}{e^{j\omega} - (3/4)} \right] \left[ \frac{e^{j\omega}}{e^{j\omega} - (1/2)} \right] \\
 & \therefore \frac{Y(\omega)}{e^{j\omega}} = \frac{e^{j\omega}}{[e^{j\omega} - (3/4)][e^{j\omega} - (1/2)]} \\
 & \qquad = \frac{A}{e^{j\omega} - (3/4)} + \frac{B}{e^{j\omega} - (1/2)} = \frac{3}{e^{j\omega} - (3/4)} + \frac{-2}{e^{j\omega} - (1/2)} \\
 & \therefore Y(\omega) = \frac{3e^{j\omega}}{e^{j\omega} - (3/4)} - \frac{2e^{j\omega}}{e^{j\omega} - (1/2)} = \frac{3}{1 - (3/4)e^{-j\omega}} - \frac{2}{1 - (1/2)e^{-j\omega}}
 \end{aligned}$$

Taking inverse Fourier transform on both sides, we get the response

$$y(n) = 3\left(\frac{3}{4}\right)^n u(n) - 2\left(\frac{1}{2}\right)^n u(n)$$

## 12.7 TRANSFER FUNCTION

If  $X(\omega)$  is the Fourier transform of the input signal  $x(n)$ , and  $Y(\omega)$  is the Fourier transform of the output signal  $y(n)$ , then  $H(\omega)$ , the transfer function of the system is given by

$$H(\omega) = \frac{Y(\omega)}{X(\omega)}$$

i.e. the transfer function of an LTI system is defined as the ratio of the Fourier transform of the output to the Fourier transform of the input. It is also defined as the Fourier transform of the impulse response  $h(n)$  of the system. It can be obtained as follows:

If the input to the system is of the form  $e^{j\omega n}$ , then the output  $y(n)$  is given by

$$y(n) = h(n) * x(n) = \sum_{k=-\infty}^{\infty} h(k) e^{j\omega(n-k)} = e^{j\omega n} H(\omega)$$

i.e.  $y(n) = x(n) H(\omega)$

We have

$$x(n) = \frac{1}{2\pi} \int_{-\pi}^{\pi} X(\omega) e^{j\omega n} d\omega$$

$$y(n) = \frac{1}{2\pi} \int_{-\pi}^{\pi} X(\omega) e^{j\omega n} d\omega H(\omega) = \frac{1}{2\pi} \int_{-\pi}^{\pi} X(\omega) H(\omega) e^{j\omega n} d\omega$$

$y(n)$  in terms of  $Y(\omega)$  is given by

$$y(n) = \frac{1}{2\pi} \int_{-\pi}^{\pi} Y(\omega) e^{j\omega n} d\omega$$

Comparing the above two expressions for  $y(n)$ , we get

$$Y(\omega) = X(\omega) H(\omega)$$

$$\therefore H(\omega) = \frac{Y(\omega)}{X(\omega)}$$

where  $H(\omega)$  is known as the transfer function of the system.

## 12.8 FREQUENCY RESPONSE OF DISCRETE-TIME SYSTEMS

The frequency response of a linear time invariant discrete-time system can be obtained by applying a spectrum of input sinusoids to the system. The frequency response gives the gain and phase response of the system to the input sinusoids at all frequencies.

Let  $h(n)$  be the impulse response of an LTI discrete system, and let the input  $x(n)$  to the system be a complex exponential  $e^{j\omega n}$ .

The output of the system  $y(n)$  can be obtained by using convolution sum.

$$y(n) = h(n) * x(n) = \sum_{k=-\infty}^{\infty} h(k) x(n-k)$$

For  $x(n) = e^{j\omega n}$ ,

$$\begin{aligned} y(n) &= \sum_{k=-\infty}^{\infty} h(k) e^{j\omega(n-k)} \\ &= e^{j\omega n} \sum_{k=-\infty}^{\infty} h(k) e^{-j\omega k} \\ &= \underbrace{e^{j\omega n}}_{\text{Input}} \underbrace{H(\omega)}_{\text{Frequency response}} \end{aligned}$$

That is, if we force the system with a complex exponential  $e^{j\omega n}$ , then the output is of the form  $H(\omega)e^{j\omega n}$ . Therefore, the output of the system is identical to the input modified in amplitude and phase by  $H(\omega)$ . The quantity  $H(\omega)$  is the frequency response of the system.

It is same as the transfer function  $H(\omega)$  in the frequency domain. The frequency response  $H(\omega)$  is complex and can be expressed in the polar form as:

$$H(\omega) = |H(\omega)| e^{j\angle H(\omega)}$$

where the magnitude of  $H(\omega)$ , i.e.  $|H(\omega)|$  is called the magnitude response and phase angle of  $H(\omega)$ , i.e.  $\angle H(\omega)$  is called the phase response. The plot of  $|H(\omega)|$  versus  $\omega$  is called the magnitude response plot and the plot of  $\angle H(\omega)$  versus  $\omega$  is called the phase response plot.

### Properties of frequency response

Frequency response is a complex function that describes the magnitude and phase shift of a filter over a range of frequencies. If  $h(n)$  is a real sequence, the frequency response  $H(\omega)$  has the following properties:

1.  $H(\omega)$  takes on values for all  $\omega$ , i.e. on a continuum of  $\omega$ .
2.  $H(\omega)$  is periodic in  $\omega$ , with period of  $2\pi$ .
3. The magnitude response  $|H(\omega)|$  is an even function of  $\omega$  and symmetrical about  $\pi$ .
4. The phase response  $\angle H(\omega)$  is an odd function of  $\omega$  and antisymmetrical about  $\pi$ .

**EXAMPLE 12.15** Write a difference equation that characterizes a system whose frequency response is:

$$X(\omega) = \frac{1 - e^{-j\omega} - 3e^{-j2\omega}}{1 + (1/3)e^{-j\omega} + (1/6)e^{-j2\omega}}$$

**Solution:** Given  $H(\omega) = \frac{Y(\omega)}{X(\omega)} = \frac{1 - e^{-j\omega} - 3e^{-j2\omega}}{1 + (1/3)e^{-j\omega} + (1/6)e^{-j2\omega}}$

On cross multiplication, we get

$$Y(\omega) + \frac{1}{3}e^{-j\omega}Y(\omega) + \frac{1}{6}e^{-j2\omega}Y(\omega) = X(\omega) - e^{-j\omega}X(\omega) - 3e^{-j2\omega}X(\omega)$$

Taking inverse Fourier transform on both sides, we get the difference equation:

$$y(n) + \frac{1}{3}y(n-1) + \frac{1}{6}y(n-2) = x(n) - x(n-1) - 3x(n-2)$$

**EXAMPLE 12.16** Find the frequency response of the following causal systems:

$$(a) \quad y(n) - y(n-1) + \frac{3}{16}y(n-2) = x(n) - \frac{1}{2}x(n-1)$$

$$(b) \quad y(n) - \frac{1}{4}y(n-1) - \frac{3}{8}y(n-2) = x(n) + x(n-1)$$

**Solution:** The frequency response of a system is given by  $H(\omega) = [Y(\omega)/X(\omega)]$ , where  $Y(\omega)$  and  $X(\omega)$  are the Fourier transforms of output and input signals respectively.

$$(a) \quad \text{Given} \quad y(n) - y(n-1) + \frac{3}{16}y(n-2) = x(n) - \frac{1}{2}x(n-1)$$

Taking Fourier transform on both sides, we have

$$Y(\omega) - e^{-j\omega}Y(\omega) + \frac{3}{16}e^{-j2\omega}Y(\omega) = X(\omega) - \frac{1}{2}e^{-j\omega}X(\omega)$$

$$\text{i.e. } Y(\omega) \left( 1 - e^{-j\omega} + \frac{3}{16} e^{-j2\omega} \right) = X(\omega) \left( 1 - \frac{1}{2} e^{-j\omega} \right)$$

$$\therefore H(\omega) = \frac{Y(\omega)}{X(\omega)} = \frac{1 - (1/2)e^{-j\omega}}{1 - e^{-j\omega} + (3/16)e^{-j2\omega}} = \frac{e^{j\omega}[e^{j\omega} - (1/2)]}{e^{j2\omega} - e^{j\omega} + (3/16)}$$

(b) Given  $y(n) - \frac{1}{4}y(n-1) - \frac{3}{8}y(n-2) = x(n) + x(n-1)$

Taking Fourier transform on both sides, we have

$$Y(\omega) - \frac{1}{4}e^{-j\omega}Y(\omega) - \frac{3}{8}e^{-j2\omega}Y(\omega) = X(\omega) + e^{-j\omega}X(\omega)$$

$$\text{i.e. } Y(\omega) \left( 1 - \frac{1}{4}e^{-j\omega} - \frac{3}{8}e^{-j2\omega} \right) = X(\omega)(1 + e^{-j\omega})$$

$$\therefore H(\omega) = \frac{Y(\omega)}{X(\omega)} = \frac{1 + e^{-j\omega}}{1 - (1/4)e^{-j\omega} - (3/8)e^{-j2\omega}} = \frac{e^{j\omega}(e^{j\omega} + 1)}{e^{j2\omega} - (1/4)e^{j\omega} - (3/8)}$$

**EXAMPLE 12.17** A discrete system is given by the following difference equation:

$$y(n) - 5y(n-1) = x(n) + 4x(n-1)$$

where  $x(n)$  is the input and  $y(n)$  is the output. Determine its magnitude and phase response.

**Solution:** Given  $y(n) - 5y(n-1) = x(n) + 4x(n-1)$

Taking Fourier transform on both sides, we have

$$Y(\omega) - 5e^{-j\omega}Y(\omega) = X(\omega) + 4e^{-j\omega}X(\omega)$$

$$\text{i.e. } Y(\omega)\{1 - 5e^{-j\omega}\} = X(\omega)\{1 + 4e^{-j\omega}\}$$

The transfer function of the system, i.e. the frequency response of the system is:

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{Y(\omega)}{X(\omega)} &= H(\omega) = \frac{1 + 4e^{-j\omega}}{1 - 5e^{-j\omega}} = \frac{e^{j\omega} + 4}{e^{j\omega} - 5} \\ &= \frac{\cos \omega + j \sin \omega + 4}{\cos \omega + j \sin \omega - 5} \end{aligned}$$

The magnitude response of the system is:

$$|H(\omega)| = \frac{\sqrt{(4 + \cos \omega)^2 + (\sin \omega)^2}}{\sqrt{(\cos \omega - 5)^2 + (\sin \omega)^2}} = \frac{\sqrt{17 + 8 \cos \omega}}{\sqrt{26 - 10 \cos \omega}}$$

The phase response of the system is:

$$H(\omega) = \tan^{-1} \left\{ \frac{\sin \omega}{4 + \cos \omega} \right\} - \tan^{-1} \left\{ \frac{\sin \omega}{\cos \omega - 5} \right\}$$

**EXAMPLE 12.18** The output  $y(n)$  for a linear shift invariant system, with input  $x(n)$  is given by

$$y(n) = x(n) - 2x(n-1) + x(n-2)$$

Determine the magnitude and phase response of the system.

**Solution:** Given  $y(n) = x(n) - 2x(n-1) + x(n-2)$

Taking Fourier transform on both sides, we have

$$Y(\omega) = X(\omega) - 2e^{-j\omega}X(\omega) + e^{-j2\omega}X(\omega)$$

The transfer function of the system, i.e. the frequency response of the system is:

$$\begin{aligned} H(\omega) &= \frac{Y(\omega)}{X(\omega)} = 1 - 2e^{-j\omega} + e^{-j2\omega} \\ &= 1 - 2[\cos \omega - j \sin \omega] + \cos 2\omega - j \sin 2\omega \\ &= [1 - 2 \cos \omega + \cos 2\omega] + j[2 \sin \omega - \sin 2\omega] \end{aligned}$$

The magnitude response of the system is:

$$|H(\omega)| = \sqrt{[1 - 2 \cos \omega + \cos 2\omega]^2 + [2 \sin \omega - \sin 2\omega]^2}$$

The phase response of the system is given as:

$$\underline{H(\omega)} = \tan^{-1} \left\{ \frac{2 \sin \omega - \sin 2\omega}{1 - 2 \cos \omega + \cos 2\omega} \right\}$$

**EXAMPLE 12.19** The impulse response of a system is:

$$h(n) = \begin{cases} 1 & \text{for } 0 \leq n \leq N-1 \\ 0 & \text{otherwise} \end{cases}$$

Find the transfer function, frequency response, magnitude response and phase response.

**Solution:** The transfer function  $H(\omega)$  is obtained by taking the Fourier transform of  $h(n)$ .

$$\begin{aligned} \therefore H(\omega) &= \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} h(n) e^{-j\omega n} = \sum_{n=0}^{N-1} (1) e^{-j\omega n} \\ &= \frac{1 - e^{-j\omega N}}{1 - e^{-j\omega}} \end{aligned}$$

The frequency response of the system is same as the transfer function, i.e.

$$H(\omega) = \frac{1 - e^{-j\omega N}}{1 - e^{-j\omega}}$$

The magnitude function is given as:

$$\begin{aligned}
 |H(\omega)| &= \{H(\omega) H^*(\omega)\}^{1/2} \\
 &= \left\{ \left[ \frac{1 - e^{-j\omega N}}{1 - e^{-j\omega}} \right] \left[ \frac{1 - e^{j\omega N}}{1 - e^{j\omega}} \right] \right\}^{1/2} \\
 &= \left\{ \frac{1 + 1 - e^{j\omega N} - e^{-j\omega N}}{1 + 1 - e^{j\omega} - e^{-j\omega}} \right\}^{1/2} \\
 &= \left\{ \frac{2 - (e^{j\omega N} + e^{-j\omega N})}{2 - (e^{j\omega} + e^{-j\omega})} \right\}^{1/2} = \left\{ \frac{1 - \cos \omega N}{1 - \cos \omega} \right\}^{1/2}
 \end{aligned}$$

In order to determine the phase function, the real and imaginary parts of  $H(\omega)$  have to be separated.

$$\begin{aligned}
 \therefore H(\omega) &= \frac{1 - e^{-j\omega N}}{1 - e^{-j\omega}} \times \frac{1 - e^{j\omega}}{1 - e^{j\omega}} = \frac{1 - e^{j\omega} - e^{-j\omega N} + e^{-j\omega(N-1)}}{2 - (e^{j\omega} + e^{-j\omega})} \\
 &= \frac{1 - (\cos \omega + j \sin \omega) - (\cos \omega N - j \sin \omega N) + [\cos \omega(N-1) - j \sin \omega(N-1)]}{2 - 2 \cos \omega}
 \end{aligned}$$

Now,

$$H_R(\omega) = \frac{1 - \cos \omega - \cos \omega N + \cos \omega(N-1)}{2 - 2 \cos \omega}$$

$$H_I(\omega) = \frac{-\sin \omega + \sin \omega N - \sin \omega(N-1)}{2 - 2 \cos \omega}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
 \therefore |H(\omega)| &= \tan^{-1} \frac{H_I(\omega)}{H_R(\omega)} \\
 &= \tan^{-1} \left\{ \frac{-\sin \omega + \sin \omega N - \sin \omega(N-1)}{1 - \cos \omega - \cos \omega N + \cos \omega(N-1)} \right\}
 \end{aligned}$$

**EXAMPLE 12.20** The impulse response of a LTI system is given by  $h(n) = 0.6^n u(n)$ . Find the frequency response, magnitude and phase response.

**Solution:** Given  $h(n) = 0.6^n u(n)$

The frequency response of the system is:

$$H(\omega) = F\{0.6^n u(n)\} = \frac{1}{1 - 0.6e^{-j\omega}}$$

Here  $H(\omega)$  is a complex function of frequency. To separate the real and imaginary parts of  $H(\omega)$ , multiply the numerator and denominator by the complex conjugate of the denominator. Thus,

$$\begin{aligned}
 H(\omega) &= \frac{1}{1 - 0.6e^{-j\omega}} \times \frac{1 - 0.6e^{j\omega}}{1 - 0.6e^{j\omega}} = \frac{1 - 0.6e^{j\omega}}{1 - 0.6e^{j\omega} - 0.6e^{-j\omega} + 0.36} \\
 &= \frac{1 - 0.6 \cos \omega}{1.36 - 1.2 \cos \omega} - j \frac{0.6 \sin \omega}{1.36 - 1.2 \cos \omega} \\
 \therefore H_R(\omega) &= \frac{1 - 0.6 \cos \omega}{1.36 - 1.2 \cos \omega} \quad \text{and} \quad H_I(\omega) = \frac{-0.6 \sin \omega}{1.36 - 1.2 \cos \omega}
 \end{aligned}$$

The magnitude function of  $H(\omega)$  is:

$$\begin{aligned}
 |H(\omega)| &= \{H_R(\omega)^2 + H_I(\omega)^2\}^{1/2} \\
 &= \left\{ \left[ \frac{1 - 0.6 \cos \omega}{1.36 - 1.2 \cos \omega} \right]^2 + \left[ \frac{-0.6 \sin \omega}{1.36 - 1.2 \cos \omega} \right]^2 \right\}^{1/2} \\
 &= \frac{1}{(1.36 - 1.2 \cos \omega)^{1/2}}
 \end{aligned}$$

The phase function of  $H(\omega)$  is:

$$H(\omega) = \tan^{-1} \frac{H_I(\omega)}{H_R(\omega)} = \tan^{-1} \left\{ \frac{-0.6 \sin \omega}{1 - 0.6 \cos \omega} \right\}$$

The magnitude function  $|H(\omega)|$  can be obtained as follows:

$$\begin{aligned}
 |H(\omega)| &= \{H(\omega) H^*(\omega)\}^{1/2} = \{H(\omega) H(-\omega)\}^{1/2} \\
 &= \left( \frac{1}{1 - 0.6e^{-j\omega}} \times \frac{1}{1 - 0.6e^{j\omega}} \right)^{1/2} = \left[ \frac{1}{1 + 0.36 - 0.6(e^{j\omega} + e^{-j\omega})} \right]^{1/2} \\
 &= \frac{1}{(1.36 - 1.2 \cos \omega)^{1/2}}
 \end{aligned}$$

**EXAMPLE 12.21** A causal LTI system is described by the difference equation:

$$y(n) - ay(n-1) = bx(n) + x(n-1)$$

where  $a$  is real and less than 1 in magnitude. Find a value of  $b$  ( $b \neq a$ ) such that the frequency response of the system satisfies  $|H(\omega)| = 1$  for all  $\omega$  (an all pass system, the magnitude of the frequency response is constant independent of frequency).

**Solution:** Given  $y(n) - ay(n-1) = bx(n) + x(n-1)$

Taking Fourier transform on both sides, we have

$$\begin{aligned}
 Y(\omega)[1 - ae^{-j\omega}] &= X(\omega)[b + e^{-j\omega}] \\
 \therefore H(\omega) &= \frac{Y(\omega)}{X(\omega)} = \frac{b + e^{-j\omega}}{1 - ae^{-j\omega}} = \frac{b + \cos \omega - j \sin \omega}{1 - a \cos \omega + ja \sin \omega}
 \end{aligned}$$

$$|H(\omega)|^2 = \frac{(b + \cos \omega)^2 + \sin^2 \omega}{(1 - a \cos \omega)^2 + a^2 \sin^2 \omega} = \frac{1 + b^2 + 2b \cos \omega}{1 + a^2 - 2a \cos \omega}$$

For magnitude to be independent of frequency,

$$\frac{d}{d\omega} |H(\omega)|^2 = 0$$

i.e.

$$\frac{d}{d\omega} \left( \frac{1 + b^2 + 2b \cos \omega}{1 + a^2 - 2a \cos \omega} \right) = 0$$

Simplifying, we get  $b = 1/a$ .

**EXAMPLE 12.22** A causal and stable LTI system has the property that

$$\left( \frac{4}{5} \right)^n u(n) \longrightarrow n \left( \frac{4}{5} \right)^n u(n)$$

- (a) Determine the frequency response  $H(\omega)$  for the system.
- (b) Determine a difference equation relating any input  $x(n)$  and the corresponding output  $y(n)$ .

**Solution:** Given

$$x(n) = \left( \frac{4}{5} \right)^n u(n)$$

∴

$$X(\omega) = \frac{1}{1 - (4/5)e^{-j\omega}}$$

$$y(n) = n \left( \frac{4}{5} \right)^n u(n)$$

∴

$$Y(\omega) = j \frac{d}{d\omega} [X(\omega)] = \frac{(4/5)e^{-j\omega}}{[1 - (4/5)e^{-j\omega}]^2}$$

∴

$$Y(\omega) = \frac{(4/5)e^{-j\omega}}{[1 - (4/5)e^{-j\omega}]} \frac{1}{[1 - (4/5)e^{-j\omega}]} = \frac{(4/5)e^{-j\omega}}{[1 - (4/5)e^{-j\omega}]} X(\omega)$$

Therefore, the frequency response is:

$$H(\omega) = \frac{Y(\omega)}{X(\omega)} = \frac{(4/5)e^{-j\omega}}{[1 - (4/5)e^{-j\omega}]}$$

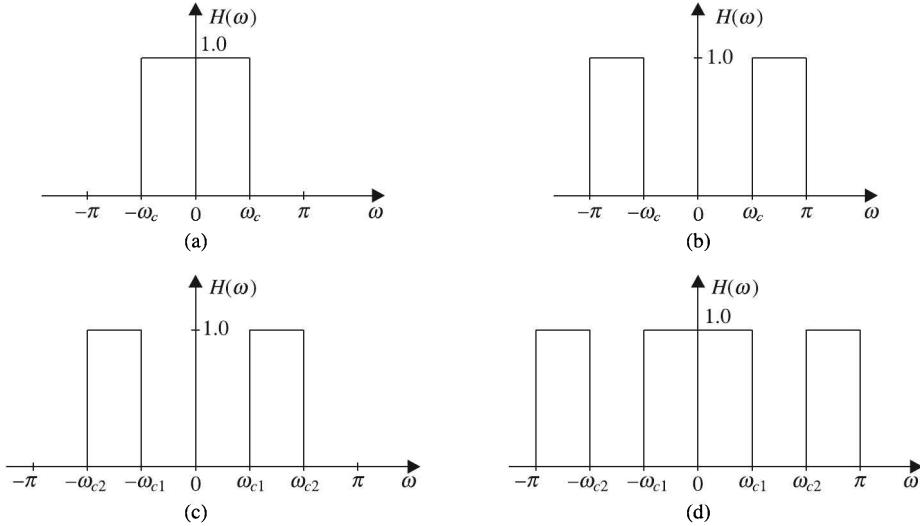
Cross multiplying, we get

$$Y(\omega) - \frac{4}{5}e^{-j\omega} Y(\omega) = \frac{4}{5}e^{-j\omega} X(\omega)$$

Taking inverse Fourier transform, we get the difference equation:

$$y(n) - \frac{4}{5}y(n-1) = \frac{4}{5}x(n-1)$$

**EXAMPLE 12.23** Determine the impulse response of all the four types of ideal filters shown in Figure 12.1.



**Figure 12.1** Frequency response of ideal filters, (a) lowpass filter, (b) highpass filter, (c) bandpass filter, and (d) bandstop filter.

**Solution:**

(a) For an ideal lowpass filter shown in Figure 12.1(a),

$$H(\omega) = \begin{cases} 1, & \text{for } 0 \leq |\omega| \leq \omega_c \\ 0, & \text{otherwise} \end{cases}$$

We have 
$$h(n) = \frac{1}{2\pi} \int_{-\pi}^{\pi} H(\omega) e^{j\omega n} d\omega$$

$$= \frac{1}{2\pi} \int_{-\omega_c}^{\omega_c} e^{j\omega n} d\omega = \frac{e^{j\omega_c n} - e^{-j\omega_c n}}{\pi n(2j)} = \frac{\sin \omega_c n}{\pi n}$$

i.e. 
$$h(n) = \frac{\sin \omega_c n}{\pi n} \quad -\infty \leq n \leq \infty$$

(b) For an ideal highpass filter shown in Figure 12.1(b),

$$H(\omega) = \begin{cases} 0, & \text{for } 0 \leq |\omega| \leq \omega_c \\ 1, & \text{for } |\omega| \geq \pi \end{cases}$$

We have 
$$h(n) = \frac{1}{2\pi} \int_{-\pi}^{\pi} H(\omega) e^{j\omega n} d\omega$$

$$= \frac{1}{2\pi} \left[ \int_{-\pi}^{-\omega_c} e^{j\omega n} d\omega + \int_{\omega_c}^{\pi} e^{j\omega n} d\omega \right]$$

$$\begin{aligned}
 &= \frac{1}{2\pi j n} [e^{-j\omega_c n} - e^{-j\pi n} + e^{j\pi n} - e^{j\omega_c n}] \\
 &= \frac{1}{\pi n} \left[ \left( \frac{e^{j\pi n} - e^{-j\pi n}}{2j} \right) - \left( \frac{e^{j\omega_c n} - e^{-j\omega_c n}}{2j} \right) \right] \\
 &= \frac{1}{\pi n} [\sin \pi n - \sin \omega_c n] \\
 &= -\frac{\sin \omega_c n}{\pi n} \\
 \text{i.e. } h(n) &= -\frac{\sin \omega_c n}{\pi n} \quad -\infty \leq n \leq \infty
 \end{aligned}$$

(c) For an ideal bandpass filter shown in Figure 12.1(c),

$$H(\omega) = \begin{cases} 1, & \text{for } \omega_{c1} \leq |\omega| \leq \omega_{c2} \\ 0, & \text{otherwise} \end{cases}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
 \text{We have } h(n) &= \frac{1}{2\pi} \int_{-\pi}^{\pi} H(\omega) e^{j\omega n} d\omega \\
 &= \frac{1}{2\pi} \left( \int_{-\omega_{c2}}^{-\omega_{c1}} e^{j\omega n} d\omega + \int_{\omega_{c1}}^{\omega_{c2}} e^{j\omega n} d\omega \right) \\
 &= \frac{1}{2\pi j n} [e^{-j\omega_{c1} n} - e^{-j\omega_{c2} n} + e^{j\omega_{c2} n} - e^{j\omega_{c1} n}] \\
 &= \frac{1}{\pi n} \left[ \left( \frac{e^{j\omega_{c2} n} - e^{-j\omega_{c2} n}}{2j} \right) - \left( \frac{e^{j\omega_{c1} n} - e^{-j\omega_{c1} n}}{2j} \right) \right] \\
 &= \frac{1}{\pi n} [\sin \omega_{c2} n - \sin \omega_{c1} n]
 \end{aligned}$$

$$\text{i.e. } h(n) = \frac{\sin \omega_{c2} n - \sin \omega_{c1} n}{\pi n} \quad -\infty \leq n \leq \infty$$

(d) For an ideal bandstop filter shown in Figure 12.1(d),

$$H(\omega) = \begin{cases} 1, & \text{for } |\omega| \leq \omega_{c1} \text{ and } \omega_{c2} \leq |\omega| \leq \pi \\ 0, & \text{for } \omega_{c1} \leq |\omega| \leq \omega_{c2} \end{cases}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
 \text{We have } h(n) &= \frac{1}{2\pi} \int_{-\pi}^{\pi} H(\omega) e^{j\omega n} d\omega \\
 &= \frac{1}{2\pi} \left( \int_{-\omega_{c2}}^{-\omega_{c1}} e^{j\omega n} d\omega + \int_{-\omega_{c1}}^{\omega_{c1}} e^{j\omega n} d\omega + \int_{\omega_{c2}}^{\pi} e^{j\omega n} d\omega \right)
 \end{aligned}$$

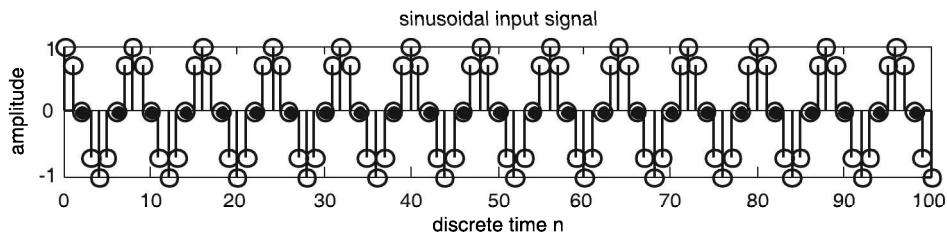
$$\begin{aligned}
&= \frac{1}{2\pi j n} [e^{-j\omega_{c2}n} - e^{-j\pi n} + e^{j\omega_{c1}n} - e^{-j\omega_{c1}n} + e^{j\pi n} - e^{j\omega_{c2}n}] \\
&= \frac{1}{\pi n} \left[ -\left( \frac{e^{j\omega_{c2}n} - e^{-j\omega_{c2}n}}{2j} \right) + \left( \frac{e^{j\omega_{c1}n} - e^{-j\omega_{c1}n}}{2j} \right) + \left( \frac{e^{j\pi n} - e^{-j\pi n}}{2j} \right) \right] \\
&= \frac{1}{\pi n} [\sin \omega_{c1}n - \sin \omega_{c2}n] \\
\text{i.e. } h(n) &= \frac{\sin \omega_{c1}n - \sin \omega_{c2}n}{\pi n} \quad -\infty \leq n \leq \infty
\end{aligned}$$

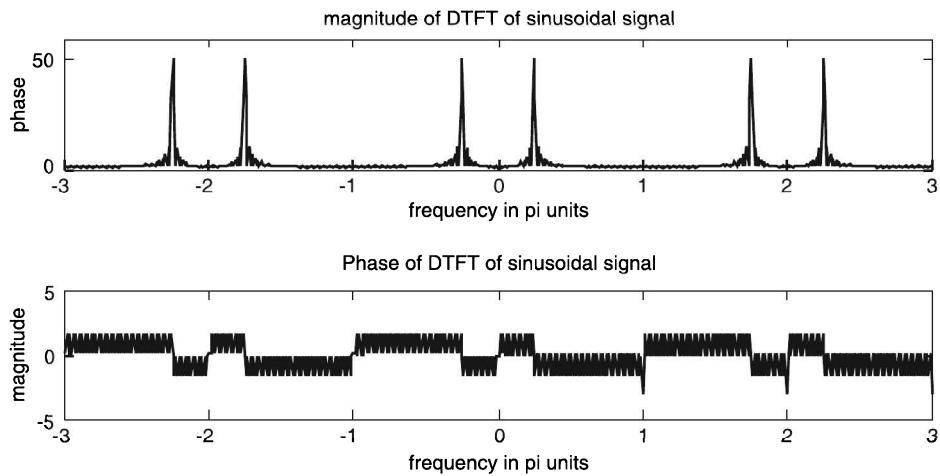
## MATLAB PROGRAMS

### Program 12.1

```
% Finding the DTFT of a sequence x(n)= cos(pi*n/2) for 0<=n<=100
clc;close all;clear all;
n=0:1:100;
x=cos(pi*n/4);
k=-300:300;w=(pi/100)*k;
X=x*(exp(-j*pi/100)).^(n'*k);
subplot(3,1,1);stem(n,x);
title('sinusoidal input signal');
xlabel('discrete time n');ylabel('amplitude');
Xm=abs(X);
subplot(3,1,2);plot(w/pi,Xm);
axis([-3 3 0 60]);
title('magnitude of DTFT of sinusoidal signal');
xlabel('frequency in pi units');ylabel('phase');
Xp=phase(X);
subplot(3,1,3);plot(w/pi,Xp);
title('Phase of DTFT of sinusoidal signal');
xlabel('frequency in pi units');ylabel('magnitude');
```

Output:

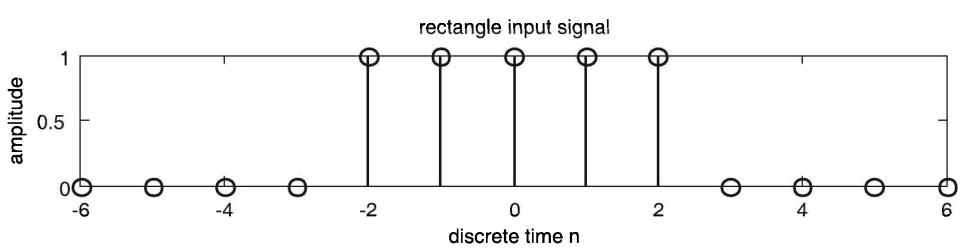


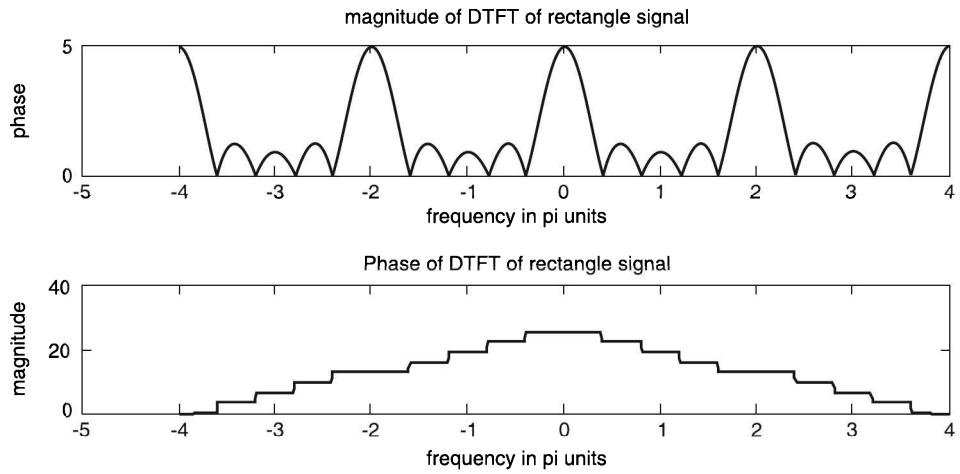


### Program 12.2

```
% Finding the DTFT of the sequence x(n)=1 for -2<=n<=2
clc;close all;clear all;
n=-6:1:6;
x=[zeros(1,4),ones(1,5),zeros(1,4)];
k=-400:400;w=(pi/100)*k;
X=x*(exp(-j*pi/100)).^(n.*k);
subplot(3,1,1);stem(n,x);
title('rectangle input signal');
xlabel('discrete time n');ylabel('amplitude');
Xm=abs(X);
subplot(3,1,2);plot(w/pi,Xm);
title('magnitude of DTFT of rectangle signal');
xlabel('frequency in pi units');ylabel('phase');
Xp=phase(X);
subplot(3,1,3);plot(w/pi,Xp);
title('Phase of DTFT of rectangle signal');
xlabel('frequency in pi units');ylabel('magnitude');
```

Output:

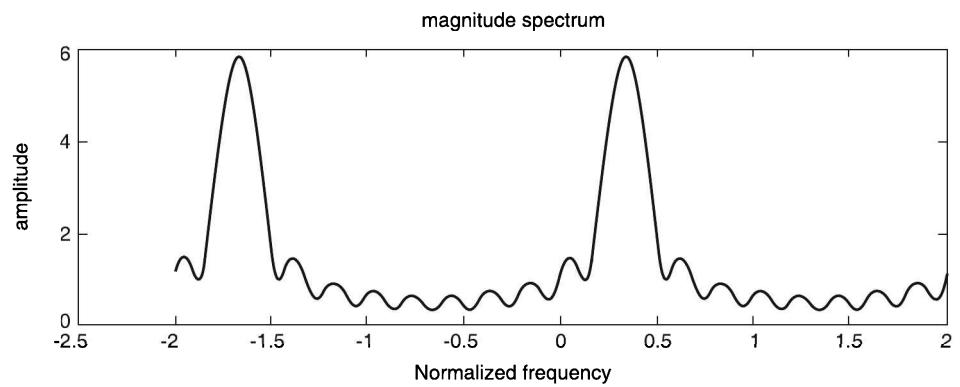


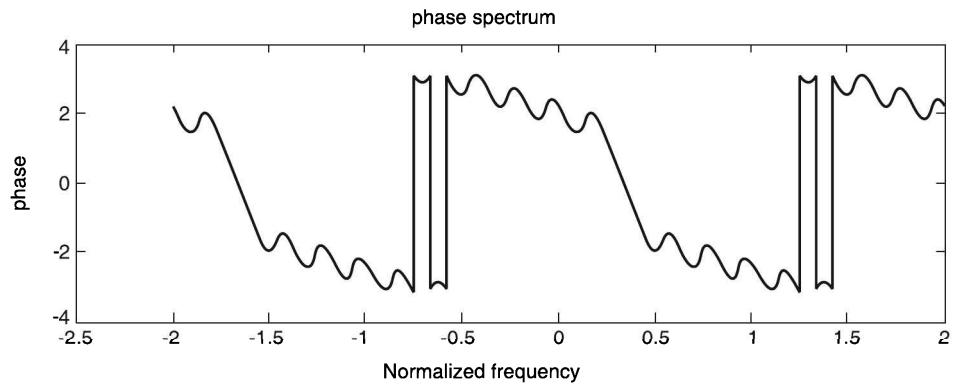


### Program 12.3

```
% Generation of DTFT of a sequence
clc; clear all; close all;
n=1:10;
x=(0.9*exp(i*pi/3)).^n;
k=-200:200;
w=(pi/100)*k;
x1=x*exp(-i*pi/100).^(n'*k);
subplot(2,1,1); plot(w/pi,abs(x1));
xlabel('Normalized frequency')
ylabel('Amplitude')
title('magnitude spectrum ')
subplot(2,1,2); plot(w/pi,angle(x1));
xlabel('Normalized frequency')
ylabel('phase')
title('phase spectrum ')
```

Output:

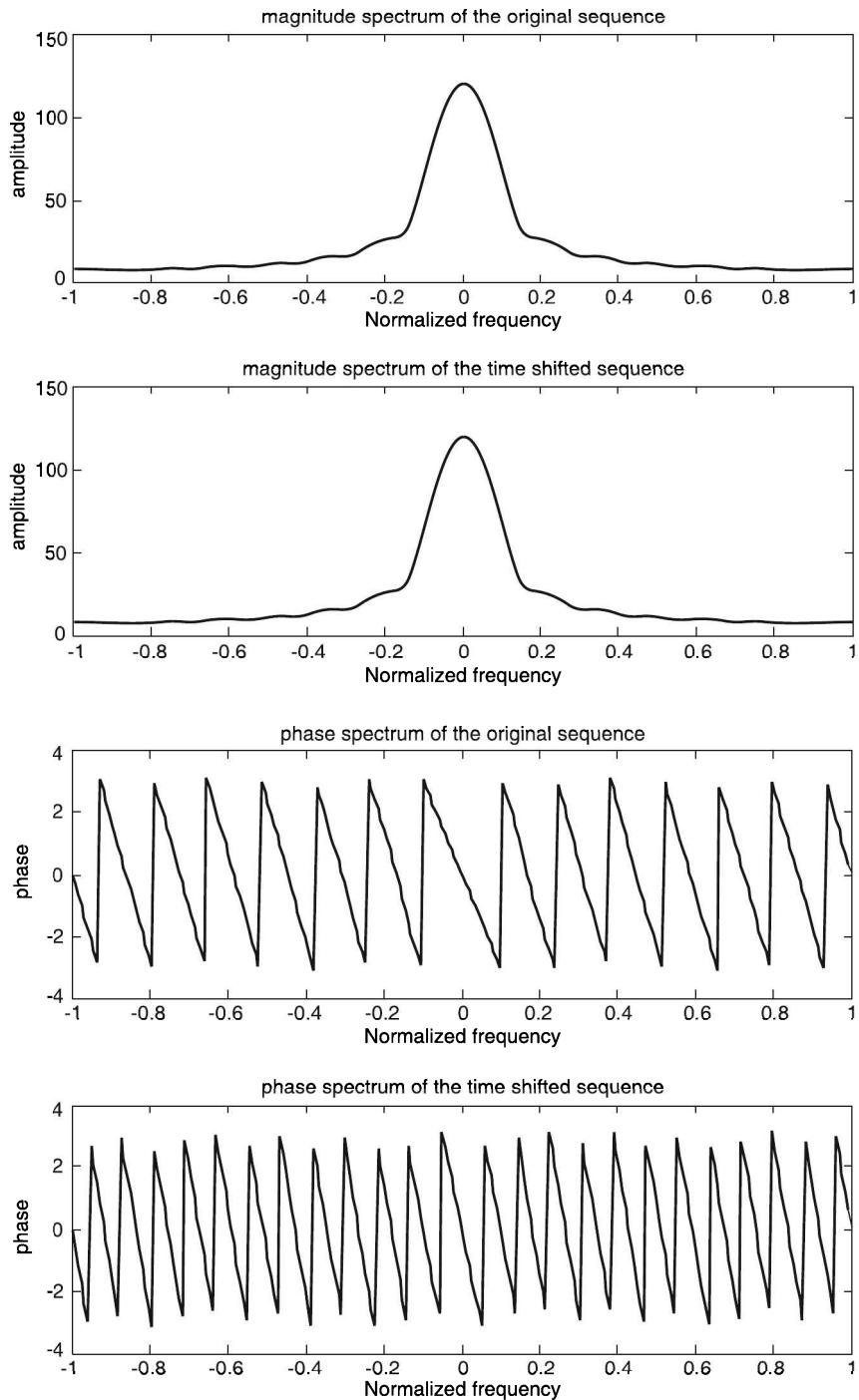




### Program 12.4

```
% Time shifting property of DTFT
clc; clear all; close all
w=-pi:2*pi/255:pi;
d=10;num=1:15;
h1=freqz(num,1,w);
a=[zeros(1,d) num];%shifting
h2=freqz(a,1,w);
subplot(2,1,1);plot(w/pi,abs(h1));
xlabel('Normalized frequency')
ylabel('Amplitude')
title('magnitude spectrum of the original sequence')
subplot(2,1,2); plot(w/pi,abs(h2));
xlabel('Normalized frequency')
ylabel('Amplitude')
title('magnitude spectrum of the time shifted sequence')
figure;
subplot(2,1,1);plot(w/pi,angle(h1));
xlabel('Normalized frequency')
ylabel('phase')
title('phase spectrum of the original sequence')
subplot(2,1,2),;plot(w/pi,angle(h2));
xlabel('Normalized frequency')
ylabel('phase')
title('phase spectrum of the time shifted sequence')
```

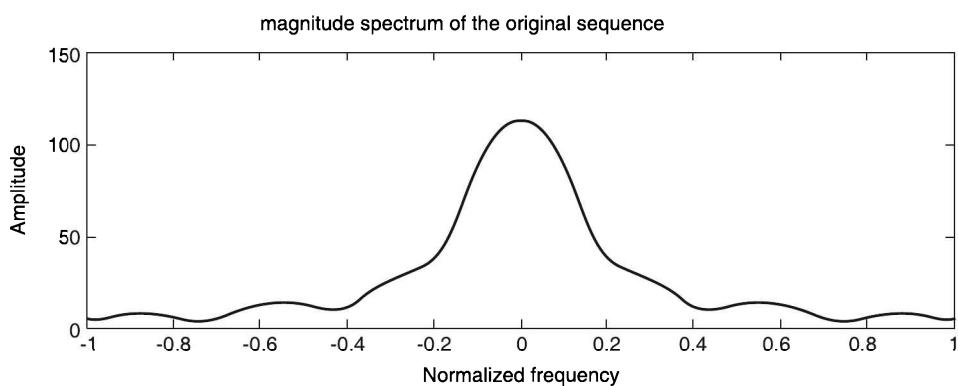
Output:

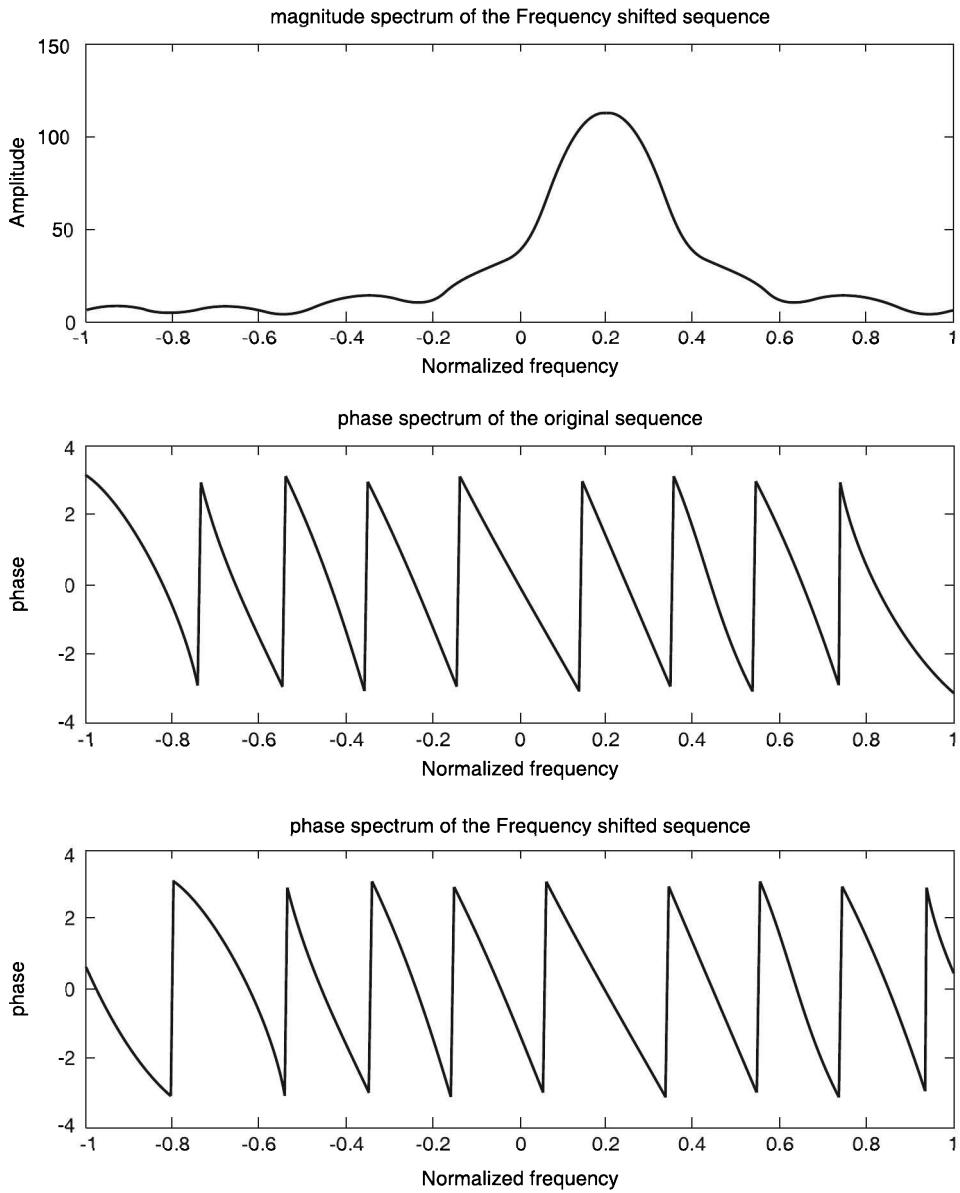


### Program 12.5

```
% Frequency shifting property of DTFT
clc; clear all; close all;
w=-pi:2*pi/255:pi;
wo=0.2*pi;
num1=[1 3 5 7 5 11 13 17 18 21 12];
l=length(num1);
h1=freqz(num1,1,w);
n=0:l-1;
num2=exp(wo*i*n).*num1;
h2=freqz(num2,1,w);
subplot(2,1,1);plot(w/pi,abs(h1));
xlabel('Normalized frequency')
ylabel('Amplitude')
title('magnitude spectrum of the original sequence')
subplot(2,1,2);plot(w/pi,abs(h2));
xlabel('Normalized frequency')
ylabel('Amplitude')
title('magnitude spectrum of the Frequency shifted sequence')
figure;
subplot(2,1,1);plot(w/pi,angle(h1));
xlabel('Normalized frequency')
ylabel('phase')
title('phase spectrum of the original sequence')
subplot(2,1,2);plot(w/pi,angle(h2));
xlabel('Normalized frequency')
ylabel('phase')
title('phase spectrum of the Frequency shifted sequence')
```

Output:



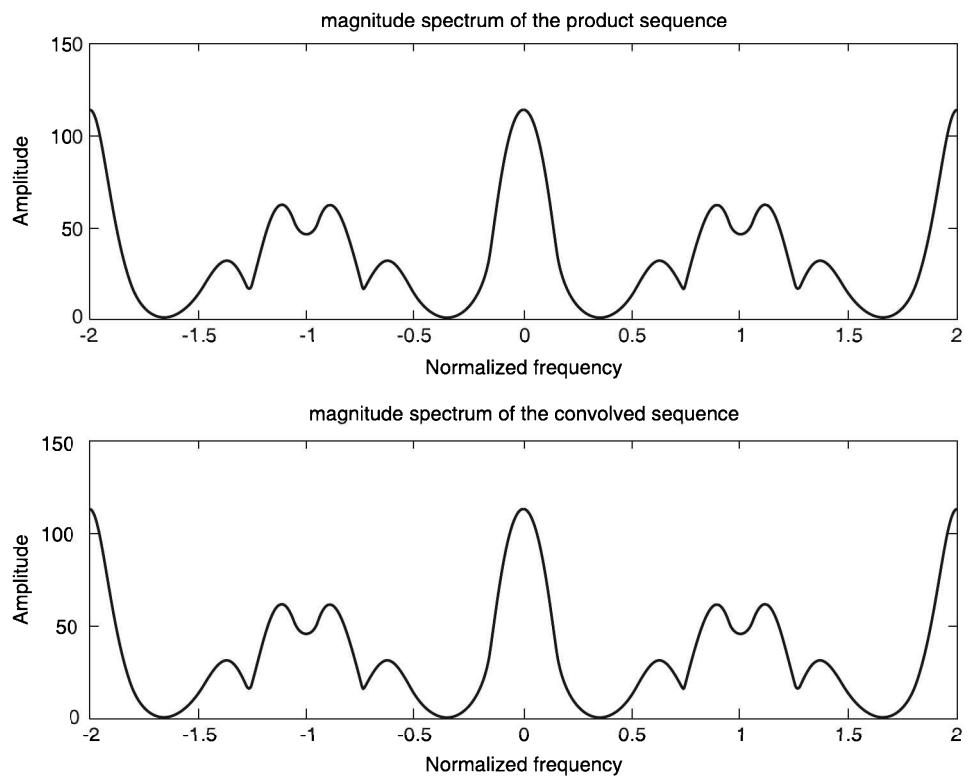


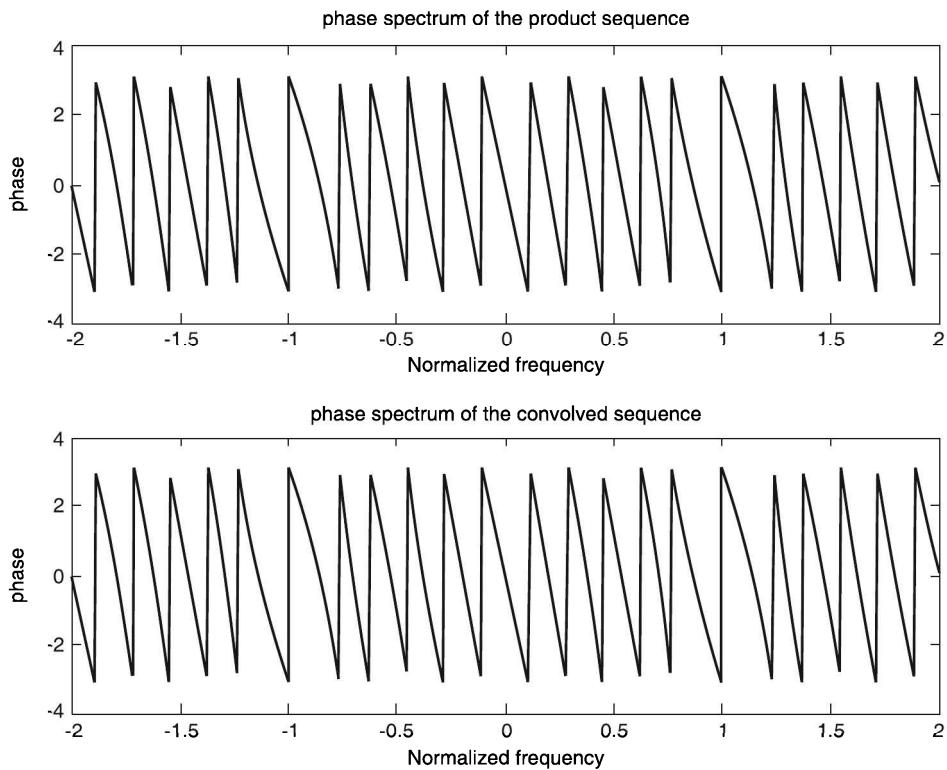
### Program 12.6

```
% Time convolution property of DTFT
clc; clear all; close all;
w=-2*pi:2*pi/255:2*pi;
x1=[1 3 5 7 5 11 13 17 18 21 12];
x2=[1 -2 3 -2 1];
y=conv(x1,x2);
h1=freqz(x1,1,w);
```

```
h2=freqz(x2,1,w);
h=h1.*h2;
h3=freqz(y,1,w);
subplot(2,1,1); plot(w/pi,abs(h));
xlabel('Normalized frequency')
ylabel('Amplitude')
title('magnitude spectrum of the product sequence')
subplot(2,1,2); plot(w/pi,abs(h3));
xlabel('Normalized frequency')
ylabel('Amplitude')
title('magnitude spectrum of the convolved sequence')
figure
subplot(2,1,1),;plot(w/pi,angle(h));
xlabel('Normalized frequency')
ylabel('phase')
title('phase spectrum of the product sequence')
subplot(2,1,2);plot(w/pi,angle(h3));
xlabel('Normalized frequency')
ylabel('phase')
title('phase spectrum of the convolved sequence')
```

Output:



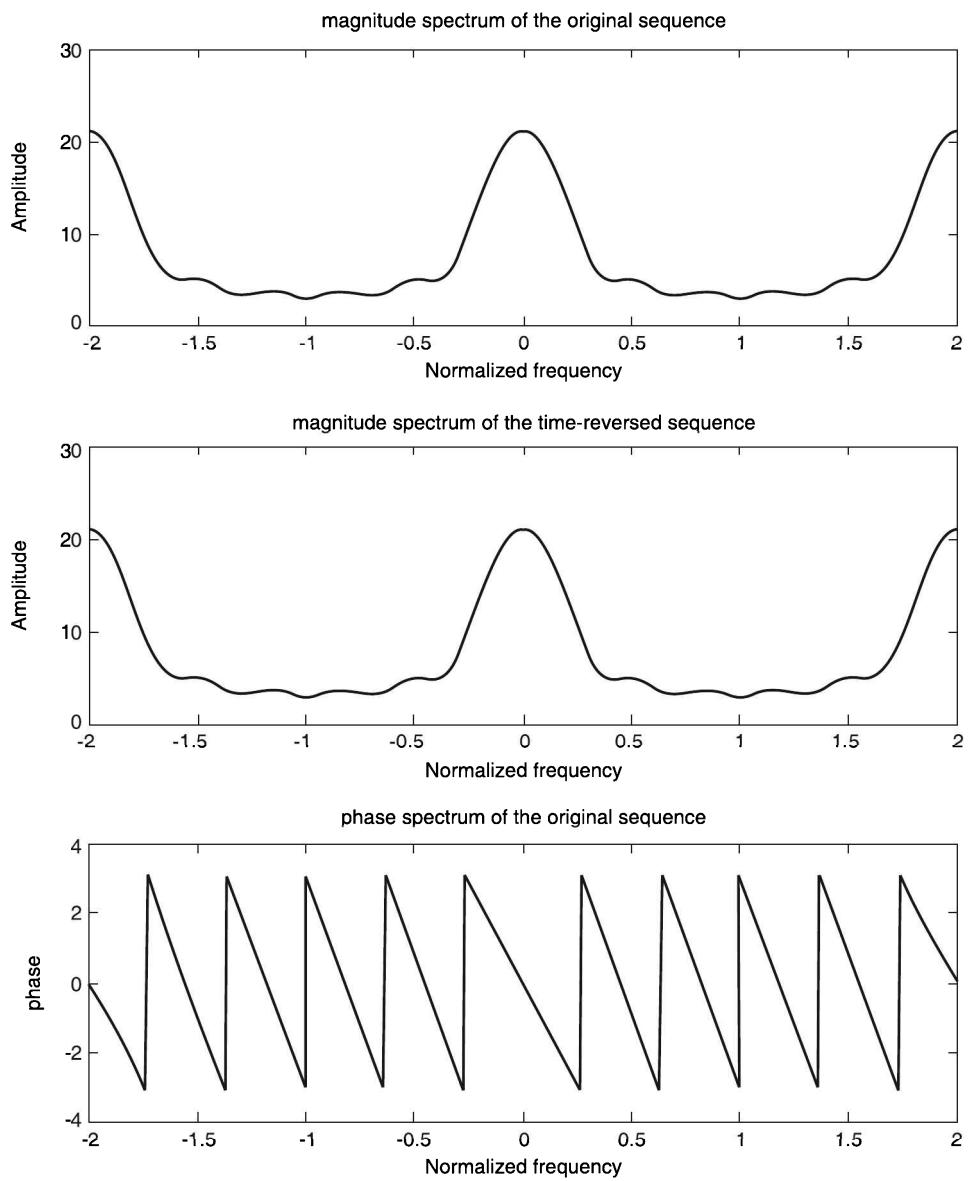


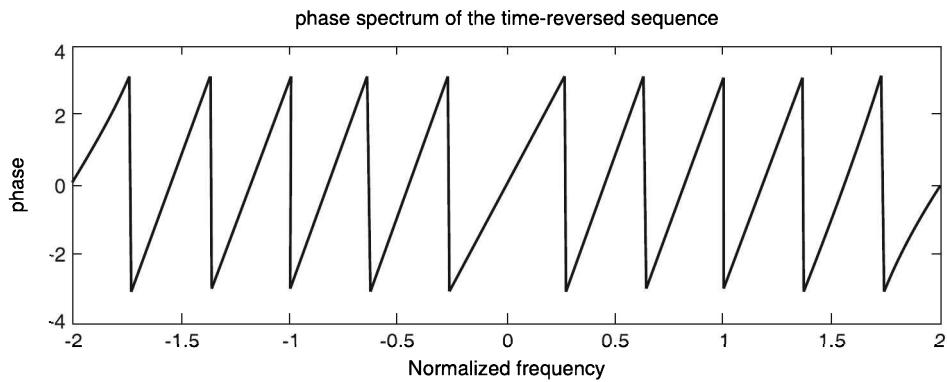
### Program 12.7

```
% Time reversal property of DTFT
clc; clear all; close all
w=-2*pi:2*pi/255:2*pi;
x=[1 2 3 4 5 6];
l=length(x)-1;
h1=freqz(x,1,w);
h2=freqz(fliplr(x),1,w);
h3=exp(w*l*i).*h2;
subplot(2,1,1); plot(w/pi,abs(h1));
xlabel('Normalized frequency')
ylabel('Amplitude')
title('magnitude spectrum of the original sequence')
subplot(2,1,2);plot(w/pi,abs(h3));
xlabel('Normalized frequency')
ylabel('Amplitude')
title('magnitude spectrum of the time-reversed sequence')
figure
subplot(2,1,1); plot(w/pi,angle(h1));
```

```
xlabel('Normalized frequency')
ylabel('phase')
title('phase spectrum of the original sequence')
subplot(2,1,2); plot(w/pi,angle(h3));
xlabel('Normalized frequency')
ylabel('phase')
title('phase spectrum of the time-reversed sequence')
```

Output:





## SHORT QUESTIONS WITH ANSWERS

1. Define Fourier transform of a discrete-time signal.

*Ans.* The Fourier transform of a discrete-time signal  $x(n)$  is defined as:

$$F\{x(n)\} = X(\omega) = \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} x(n) e^{-j\omega n}$$

The Fourier transform exists only if  $\sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} |x(n)| < \infty$ , i.e. only if the sequence is absolutely summable.

2. Define inverse discrete-time Fourier transform.

*Ans.* The inverse discrete-time Fourier transform of  $X(\omega)$  is defined as:

$$F^{-1}\{X(\omega)\} = x(n) = \frac{1}{2\pi} \int_{-\pi}^{\pi} X(\omega) e^{j\omega n} d\omega$$

3. Why the Fourier transform of a discrete-time signal is called signal spectrum?

*Ans.* By taking Fourier transform of a discrete-time signal  $x(n)$  it is decomposed into its frequency components. Hence the Fourier transform is called signal spectrum.

4. List the differences between Fourier transform of discrete-time signal and analog signal.

*Ans.*

1. The Fourier transform of analog signal consists of a spectrum with frequency range  $-\infty$  to  $\infty$ , but the Fourier transform of a discrete-time signal is unique in the range  $-\pi$  to  $\pi$  (or 0 to  $2\pi$ ), and also it is periodic with periodicity of  $2\pi$ .
2. The Fourier transform of analog signal involves integration, but Fourier transform of discrete-time signal involves summation.

5. Give some applications of discrete-time Fourier transform.

*Ans.* Some applications of discrete-time Fourier transform are:

1. The frequency response of LTI system is given by the Fourier transform of the impulse response of the system.

2. The ratio of the Fourier transform of output to the Fourier transform of input is called the transfer function of the system in the frequency domain.
3. The response of an LTI system can be easily computed using the convolution property of Fourier transform.
6. What is the relation between discrete-time Fourier transform and Z-transform?

*Ans.* The Fourier transform of the discrete-time sequence  $x(n)$  is the Z-transform of the sequence  $x(n)$  evaluated along the unit circle centred at the origin of the z-plane.

$$X(\omega) = X(z) \Big|_{z=e^{j\omega}} = \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} x(n) z^{-n} \Big|_{z=e^{j\omega}} = \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} x(n) e^{-j\omega n}$$

7. Write the properties of frequency response of LTI system.

*Ans.* The properties of frequency response of LTI system are:

1. The frequency response is periodic function of  $\omega$  with a period of  $2\pi$ .
2. If  $h(n)$  is real, then  $|H(\omega)|$  is symmetric and  $\underline{H(\omega)}$  is antisymmetric.
3. If  $h(n)$  is complex, then the real part of  $H(\omega)$  is symmetric and the imaginary part of  $H(\omega)$  is antisymmetric over the interval  $0 \leq \omega \leq 2\pi$ .
4. The frequency response is a continuous function of  $\omega$ .
8. What is frequency response of LTI systems?

*Ans.* The Fourier transform of the impulse response  $h(n)$  of the system is called frequency response of the system. It is denoted by  $H(\omega)$ .  $\{F[h(n)] = H(\omega)\}$ . The frequency response has two components: magnitude function  $|H(\omega)|$  and phase function  $\underline{H(\omega)}$ .

9. What is the sufficient condition for the existence of DTFT?

*Ans.* The sufficient condition for the existence of DTFT for a sequence  $x(n)$  is:

$$\sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} |x(n)| < \infty$$

i.e. the sequence  $x(n)$  must be absolutely summable.

10. State Parseval's energy theorem for discrete-time aperiodic signals.

*Ans.* The Parseval's energy theorem for discrete-time aperiodic signals is given by

$$E = \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} |x(n)|^2 = \frac{1}{2\pi} \int_{-\pi}^{\pi} |X(\omega)|^2 d\omega$$

11. Define DTFT pair.

*Ans.* The Fourier transform pair of a discrete-time signal is:

$$X(\omega) = \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} x(n) e^{-j\omega n}$$

and

$$x(n) = \frac{1}{2\pi} \int_{-\pi}^{\pi} X(\omega) e^{j\omega n} d\omega$$

12. If  $F\{x(n)\} = X(\omega)$ , what is the  $F\{x(n-m)\}$ ?

$$\text{Ans. } F\{x(n-m)\} = e^{-j\omega m} X(\omega)$$

13. If  $F\{x(n)\} = X(\omega)$ , what is the  $F\{e^{j\omega_0 n} x(n)\}$ ?

$$\text{Ans. } F\{e^{j\omega_0 n} x(n)\} = X(\omega - \omega_0)$$

14. If  $F\{x(n)\} = X(\omega)$ , what is the  $F\{x(-n)\}$ ?

$$\text{Ans. } F\{x(-n)\} = X(-\omega)$$

15. If  $F\{x(n)\} = X(\omega)$ , what is the  $F\{nx(n)\}$ ?

$$\text{Ans. } F\{nx(n)\} = j \frac{d}{d\omega} [X(\omega)]$$

16. If  $F\{x_1(n)\} = X_1(\omega)$  and  $F\{x_2(n)\} = X_2(\omega)$ , what is the  $F\{x_1(n) * x_2(n)\}$ ?

$$\text{Ans. } F\{x_1(n) * x_2(n)\} = X_1(\omega) X_2(\omega)$$

17. If  $F\{x_1(n)\} = X_1(\omega)$  and  $F\{x_2(n)\} = X_2(\omega)$ , what is the  $F\{x_1(n) x_2(n)\}$ ?

$$\text{Ans. } F\{x_1(n) x_2(n)\} = X_1(\omega) * X_2(\omega) = \frac{1}{2\pi} \int_{-\pi}^{\pi} X_1(\theta) X_2(\omega - \theta) d\theta$$

18. If  $F\{x(n)\} = X(\omega)$ , what is the  $F\{x(n) \cos \omega_0 n\}$ ?

$$\text{Ans. } F\{x(n) \cos \omega_0 n\} = \frac{1}{2} \{X(\omega - \omega_0) + X(\omega + \omega_0)\}$$

## REVIEW QUESTIONS

1. State and prove the time shifting and frequency shifting properties of DTFT.
2. State and prove the time reversal and differentiation in frequency domain properties of DTFT.
3. State and prove the time convolution and frequency convolution properties of DTFT.
4. State and prove the modulation theorem and Parseval's theorem.
5. Compare the Fourier transforms of discrete-time signal and analog signal.
6. What are the applications of DTFT?

## FILL IN THE BLANKS

1. The DTFT of  $x(n)$  is defined as \_\_\_\_\_.
2. The DTFT exists only if \_\_\_\_\_.
3. The FT of a discrete-time signal is called \_\_\_\_\_.
4. The FT of a discrete-time signal is periodic with period \_\_\_\_\_.

5. The FT of an analog signal involves \_\_\_\_\_, but the FT of discrete-time signal involves \_\_\_\_\_.
6. The FT of analog signals consists of a spectrum with a frequency range \_\_\_\_\_, but the FT of a discrete-time signal is unique in the range \_\_\_\_\_.
7. The inverse Fourier transform of  $X(\omega)$  is defined as \_\_\_\_\_.
8. The FT of  $x(n)$  is nothing but the Z-transform of  $x(n)$  evaluated along the \_\_\_\_\_ centred at the origin of z-plane.
9. The relation between DTFT  $X(\omega)$  and Z-transform  $X(z)$  is \_\_\_\_\_.
10. The FT of a discrete and aperiodic sequence is \_\_\_\_\_.
11. The frequency response of LTI system is given by the FT of the \_\_\_\_\_ of the system.
12. The impulse response is the inverse Fourier transform of the \_\_\_\_\_ of the system.
13. The ratio of the FT of the output to the FT of the input is called the \_\_\_\_\_ or \_\_\_\_\_ of the system.
14. The frequency response is a \_\_\_\_\_ function of  $\omega$ .
15. The frequency response has two components: 1. \_\_\_\_\_ 2. \_\_\_\_\_.
16. If  $h(n)$  is real, then  $|H(\omega)|$  is \_\_\_\_\_  $[H(\omega)]$  \_\_\_\_\_.
17. If  $h(n)$  is complex, then the \_\_\_\_\_ part of  $H(\omega)$  is symmetric and the \_\_\_\_\_ part of  $H(\omega)$  is antisymmetric over the interval  $0 \leq \omega \leq 2\pi$ .
18. The Fourier transform of \_\_\_\_\_ is equal to the product  $X(\omega) H(\omega)$ .

### OBJECTIVE TYPE QUESTIONS

1. The DTFT of a sequence  $x(n)$  is defined as  $X(\omega) =$ 
  - (a)  $\sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} x(n) e^{j\omega n}$
  - (b)  $\sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} x(n) e^{-j\omega n}$
  - (c)  $\sum_{n=0}^{\infty} x(n) e^{j\omega n}$
  - (d)  $\sum_{n=0}^{\infty} x(n) e^{-j\omega n}$
2. The inverse DTFT of  $X(\omega)$  is defined as  $x(n) =$ 
  - (a)  $\frac{1}{2\pi} \int_{-\pi}^{\pi} X(\omega) e^{-j\omega n} d\omega$
  - (b)  $\frac{1}{2\pi} \int_{-\pi}^{\pi} X(\omega) e^{j\omega n} d\omega$
  - (c)  $\frac{1}{2\pi} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} X(\omega) e^{-j\omega n} d\omega$
  - (d)  $\frac{1}{2\pi} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} X(\omega) e^{j\omega n} d\omega$
3. The FT of a discrete-time signal is periodic with period
 

(a) $2\pi$	(b) $\pi$	(c) $\infty$	(d) finite
------------	-----------	--------------	------------

4. The relation between DTFT and Z-transform is  $X(\omega) =$
- (a)  $X(z)|_{z=e^{j\omega}}$       (b)  $X(z)|_{z=e^{-j\omega}}$       (c)  $X(z)|_{z=j\omega}$       (d)  $X(z)|_{z=\omega}$
5. The frequency response of LTI system is given by the FT of the \_\_\_\_\_ of the system.
- (a) transfer function      (b) output  
 (c) impulse response      (d) input
6. The Fourier transform of  $x(n) * h(n)$  is equal to
- (a)  $X(\omega) H(\omega)$       (b)  $X(\omega) * H(\omega)$       (c)  $X(\omega) H(-\omega)$       (d)  $X(\omega) * H(-\omega)$
7. The FT of analog signal consists of a spectrum with frequency range
- (a)  $-\pi$  to  $\pi$       (b) 0 to  $2\pi$       (c) 0 to  $\infty$       (d)  $-\infty$  to  $\infty$
8. The FT of a discrete-time signal is unique in the range
- (a)  $-\infty$  to  $\infty$       (b) 0 to  $\infty$       (c)  $-\pi$  to  $\pi$       (d) 0 to  $\pi$
9. The FT of  $\delta(n)$  is
- (a) 0      (b) 1      (c)  $\infty$       (d) not defined
10. The FT of  $u(n)$  is
- (a)  $\frac{1}{1-e^{-j\omega}}$       (b)  $\frac{1}{1-e^{j\omega}}$       (c)  $\frac{1}{1-\omega}$       (d)  $\frac{1}{1-j\omega}$
11. The FT of  $a^n u(n)$  is
- (a)  $\frac{1}{1-ae^{j\omega}}$       (b)  $\frac{1}{1-ae^{-j\omega}}$       (c)  $\frac{1}{1-ja\omega}$       (d)  $\frac{1}{1+ja\omega}$
12. The FT of  $-a^n u(-n - 1)$  is
- (a)  $\frac{1}{1-ae^{j\omega}}$       (b)  $\frac{1}{1-ae^{-j\omega}}$       (c)  $\frac{1}{1-ja\omega}$       (d)  $\frac{1}{1+aj\omega}$
13. The FT of  $\left(\frac{1}{2}\right)^{n-1} u(n-1)$  is
- (a)  $\frac{e^{-j\omega}}{1-(1/2)e^{-j\omega}}$       (b)  $\frac{e^{j\omega}}{1-(1/2)e^{j\omega}}$       (c)  $\frac{e^{-j\omega}}{1-(1/2)e^{j\omega}}$       (d)  $\frac{e^{j\omega}}{1-(1/2)e^{-j\omega}}$
14. The FT of  $2^n u(n)$  is
- (a)  $\frac{1}{1-2e^{-j\omega}}$       (b)  $\frac{1}{1-2e^{j\omega}}$       (c)  $\frac{1}{1+2e^{j\omega}}$       (d) does not exist
15. The FT of  $\delta(n + 2) - \delta(n - 2)$  is
- (a)  $2j \sin 2\omega$       (b)  $2 \cos 2\omega$   
 (c)  $\sin 2\omega$       (d)  $\cos 2\omega$

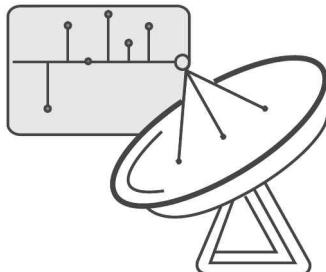
## PROBLEMS

1. Find the DTFT of
 

(a) $x(n) = \{2, -1, 3, 2\}$ (c) $x(n) = (0.2)^n u(n) - 2^n u(-n-1)$	(b) $\left(\frac{1}{4}\right)^n u(n+2)$ (d) $x(n) = a^n \cos \omega_0 n$
---	---
2. Using properties of DTFT, find the FT of the following:
 

(a) $\left(\frac{1}{2}\right)^{ n-3 }$ (c) $n u(-n)$ (e) $n 3^{-n} u(-n)$	(b) $\left(\frac{1}{2}\right)^{n-4} u(n-4)$ (d) $e^{j2n} u(n)$
---	---
3. The impulse response of an LTI system is  $h(n) = \{1, 2, 1, -1\}$ . Find the response of the system for the input  $x(n) = \{1, 3, 2, 1\}$ .
4. Find the convolution of the sequences  $x_1(n) = x_2(n) = \{1, 1, 1\}$
5. Find the frequency response of  $x(n) = \{2, 1, 2\}$ .
6. Determine the output sequence from the spectrum  $Y(\omega)$ .
 
$$Y(\omega) = \frac{1}{3} \frac{e^{j\omega} + 1 + e^{-j\omega}}{1 - ae^{-j\omega}}$$
7. A system has unit sample response  $h(n)$  given by
 
$$h(n) = -\frac{1}{4} \delta(n+1) + \frac{1}{2} \delta(n) - \frac{1}{4} \delta(n-1)$$

Find the frequency response.
8. Determine the frequency response, magnitude response and phase response of the LTI system governed by the difference equation:
 
$$y(n) = x(n) + 0.81x(n-1) + 0.81x(n-2) - 0.45y(n-2)$$



# Appendix A

## 1. Series Expansion

$$(i) \frac{1}{1-x} = 1 + x + x^2 + x^3 + \dots \quad (ii) \frac{1}{1+x} = 1 - x + x^2 - x^3 + \dots$$

$$(iii) \frac{1}{(1-x)^2} = 1 + 2x + 3x^2 + 4x^3 + \dots \quad (iv) \frac{1}{(1+x)^2} = 1 - 2x + 3x^2 - 4x^3 + \dots$$

$$(v) \frac{1}{(1-x)(1+x)} = 1 + x^2 + x^4 + x^6 + \dots \quad (vi) e^x = 1 + \frac{x}{1!} + \frac{x^2}{2!} + \frac{x^3}{3!} + \dots$$

$$(vii) \cos x = 1 - \frac{x^2}{2!} + \frac{x^4}{4!} + \dots \quad (viii) \sin x = x - \frac{x^3}{3!} + \frac{x^5}{5!} - \dots$$

$$(ix) \tan x = x + \frac{x^3}{3} + \frac{2}{15}x^5 + \dots \quad (x) \text{sinc } x = 1 - \frac{1}{3!}(\pi x)^2 + \frac{1}{5}(\pi x)^5 - \dots$$

$$(xi) \log(1+x) = x - \frac{x^2}{2} + \frac{x^3}{3} - \dots \text{ if } |x| < 1$$

$$(xii) \sum_{n=0}^{\infty} a^n = \frac{1}{1-a}$$

$$(xiii) \sum_{n=0}^{N-1} a^n = \begin{cases} \frac{1-a^N}{1-a} & \text{if } a \neq 1 \\ N & \text{if } a = 1 \end{cases}$$

## 2. Some Useful Limits

$$(i) \lim_{x \rightarrow 0} \cos x = 1$$

$$(ii) \lim_{x \rightarrow 0} \sin x = 0$$

$$(iii) \lim_{x \rightarrow 0} \frac{\sin x}{x} = 1$$

$$(iv) \lim_{x \rightarrow a} \frac{x^n - a^n}{x - a} = na^{n-1}$$

### 3. Trigonometric Identities

- (i)  $e^{\pm jx} = \cos x \pm j \sin x$
- (ii)  $\cos x = \frac{e^{jx} + e^{-jx}}{2}$
- (iii)  $\sin x = \frac{e^{jx} - e^{-jx}}{2j}$
- (iv)  $\sin(x \pm y) = \sin x \cos y \pm \cos x \sin y$
- (v)  $\cos(x \pm y) = \cos x \cos y \mp \sin x \sin y$
- (vi)  $\cos 2x = \cos^2 x - \sin^2 x$
- (vii)  $\sin 2x = 2 \sin x \cos x$
- (viii)  $\cos^2 x = \frac{1 + \cos 2x}{2}$
- (ix)  $\sin^2 x = \frac{1 - \cos 2x}{2}$
- (x)  $\cos 3x = 4 \cos^3 x - 3 \sin x$
- (xi)  $\sin 3x = 3 \sin x - 4 \sin^3 x$

### 4. Some Useful Definite Integrals

- (i)  $\int_0^\infty e^{-ax^2} dx = \frac{1}{2} \sqrt{\frac{\pi}{a}}$ ;  $a > 0$
- (ii)  $\int_0^\infty x^2 e^{-ax^2} dx = \frac{1}{4a} \sqrt{\frac{\pi}{a}}$ ;  $a > 0$
- (iii)  $\int_0^\infty \text{sinc } x dx = \int_0^\infty \text{sinc}^2 x dx = \frac{1}{2}$
- (iv)  $\int_0^\infty \frac{x \sin(ax)}{(b^2 + x^2)} dx = \frac{\pi}{2} e^{-ab}$ ;  $a$  and  $b > 0$
- (v)  $\int_0^\infty \frac{\cos(ax)}{(b^2 + x^2)} dx = \frac{\pi}{2b} e^{-ab}$ ;  $a$  and  $b > 0$
- (vi)  $\int_0^\infty e^{-ax} \cos(bx) dx = \frac{a}{a^2 + b^2}$ ;  $a > 0$
- (vii)  $\int_0^\infty e^{-ax} \sin(bx) dx = \frac{b}{a^2 + b^2}$ ;  $a > 0$
- (viii)  $\int_0^\infty e^{\pm j2\pi yx} dx = \delta(y)$

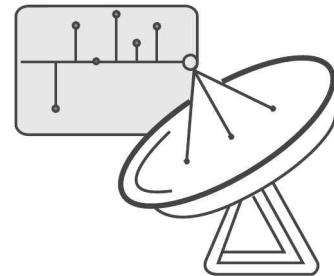
### 5. Integration

- (i)  $\int e^x dx = e^x + c$
- (ii)  $\int a^x dx = \frac{a^x}{\log a} + c$
- (iii)  $\int x^n dx = \frac{x^{n+1}}{n+1} + c$
- (iv)  $\int \frac{1}{x} dx = \log x + c$
- (v)  $\int \sin x dx = -\cos x + c$
- (vi)  $\int \cos x dx = \sin x + c$
- (vii)  $\int \tan x dx = -\log |\cos x| + c$
- (viii)  $\int \cot x dx = \log |\sin x| + c$
- (ix)  $\int \frac{dx}{\sqrt{1-x^2}} = \sin^{-1} x + c = -\cos^{-1} x + c$
- (x)  $\int \frac{dx}{1+x^2} = \tan^{-1} x + c = -\cot^{-1} x + c$
- (xi)  $\int \frac{dx}{x^2+a^2} = \frac{1}{a} \tan^{-1} \frac{x}{a} + c$
- (xii)  $\int \frac{dx}{x^2-a^2} = \frac{1}{2a} \log \left| \frac{x-a}{x+a} \right| + c$

- 
- (xiii)  $\int \frac{dx}{\sqrt{x^2 - a^2}} = \log [x + \sqrt{x^2 - a^2}] + c$  (xiv)  $\int \frac{dx}{\sqrt{a^2 - x^2}} = \sin^{-1} \frac{x}{a} + c$
- (xv)  $\int \frac{dx}{\sqrt{a^2 + x^2}} = \log [x + \sqrt{x^2 + a^2}] + c$
- (xvi)  $\int x \sin(ax) dx = \frac{1}{a^2} [\sin(ax) - ax \cos(ax)] + c$
- (xvii)  $\int x \cos(ax) dx = \frac{1}{a^2} [\cos(ax) + ax \sin(ax)] + c$
- (xviii)  $\int xe^{ax} dx = \frac{1}{a^2} e^{ax} (ax - 1) + c$  (xix)  $\int xe^{ax^2} dx = \frac{1}{2a} e^{ax^2} + c$

## 6. Differentiation

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| (i) $\frac{d}{dx}(x^n) = nx^{n-1}$                         | (ii) $\frac{d}{dx}(e^x) = e^x$                              |
| (iii) $\frac{d}{dx}(a^x) = a^x \log a$                     | (iv) $\frac{d}{dx}(\cos x) = -\sin x$                       |
| (v) $\frac{d}{dx}(\sin x) = \cos x$                        | (vi) $\frac{d}{dx}(\tan x) = \sec^2 x$                      |
| (vii) $\frac{d}{dx}(\log x) = \frac{1}{x}$                 | (viii) $\frac{d}{dx}(\sin^{-1} x) = \frac{1}{\sqrt{1-x^2}}$ |
| (ix) $\frac{d}{dx}(\cos^{-1} x) = \frac{-1}{\sqrt{1-x^2}}$ | (x) $\frac{d}{dx}(\tan^{-1} x) = \frac{1}{1+x^2}$           |
| (xi) $\frac{d}{dx}(\cot^{-1} x) = \frac{-1}{1+x^2}$        |   |



## Appendix B

**Table B.1** Summary of the Properties of Continuous-Time Fourier Series

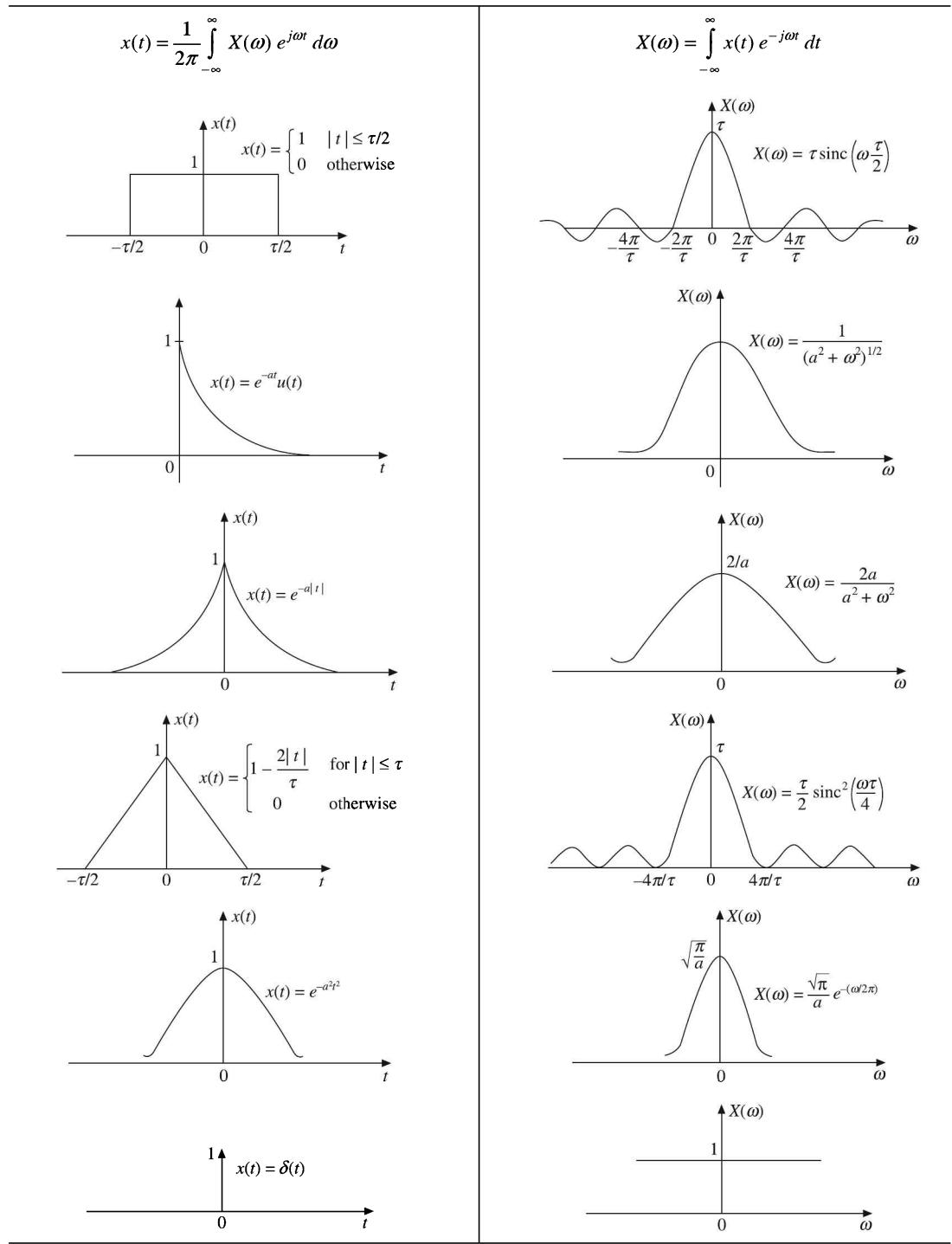
S.No.	Property	Statement
If	$x_1(t) \xrightarrow{\text{FS}} C_n$ and $x_2(t) \xrightarrow{\text{FS}} D_n$ then	
1.	Linearity	$Ax_1(t) + Bx_2(t) \xrightarrow{\text{FS}} AC_n + BD_n$
2.	Time shifting	$x(t - t_0) \xrightarrow{\text{FS}} e^{-jna\omega_0 t_0} C_n$
3.	Time reversal	$x(-t) \xrightarrow{\text{FS}} C_{-n}$
4.	Time scaling	$x(\alpha t) \xrightarrow{\text{FS}} C_n$ with $\omega_0 \rightarrow n\omega_0$
5.	Time differentiation	$dx(t)/dt \xrightarrow{\text{FS}} jn\omega_0 C_n$
6.	Time integration	$\int_{-\infty}^t x(\tau) d\tau \xrightarrow{\text{FS}} \frac{C_n}{jn\omega_0}$
7.	Convolution	$x_1(t) * x_2(t) \xrightarrow{\text{FS}} TC_n D_n$
8.	Multiplication	$x_1(t) x_2(t) \xrightarrow{\text{FS}} \sum_{l=-\infty}^{\infty} C_l D_{n-l}$
9.	Conjugation	$x^*(t) \xrightarrow{\text{FS}} C_{-n}^*$
	Conjugate symmetry	$C_{-n} = C_n^*$
10.	Parseval's relation	$\frac{1}{T} \int_0^T x_1(t) x_2^*(t) dt = \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} C_n D_n^*$
	Parseval's identity	$\frac{1}{T} \int_0^T  x(t) ^2 dt = \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty}  C_n ^2$

**Table B.2 Fourier Transform Properties**

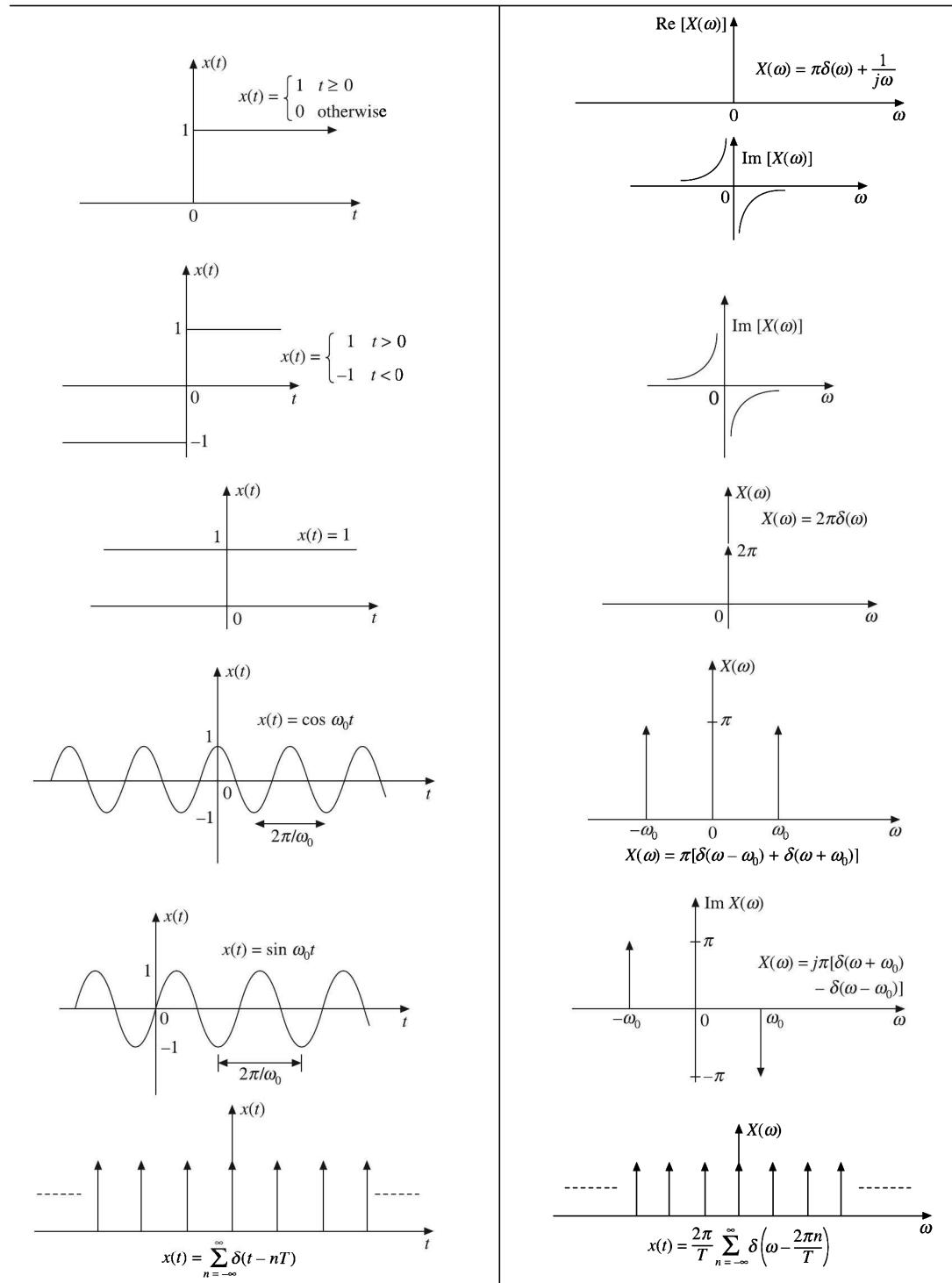
S.No.	Property	$x(t)$	$X(\omega)$
	<b>Direct transform</b>	$x(t)$	$\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} x(t) e^{-j\omega t} dt$
	<b>Inverse transform</b>	$\frac{1}{2\pi} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} X(\omega) e^{j\omega t} d\omega$	$X(\omega)$
1.	<b>Linearity</b>	$ax_1(t) + bx_2(t)$	$aX_1(\omega) + bX_2(\omega)$
2.	<b>Time shifting</b>	$x(t \pm t_0)$	$e^{\pm j\omega_0 t_0} X(\omega)$
3.	<b>Frequency shifting</b>	$e^{\pm j\omega_0 t} x(t)$	$X(\omega \mp \omega_0)$
4.	<b>Time reversal</b>	$x(-t)$	$X(-\omega)$
5.	<b>Time scaling</b>	$x(at)$	$\frac{1}{ a } X\left(\frac{\omega}{a}\right)$
6.	<b>Differentiation in time domain</b>	$\frac{d}{dt} x(t)$	$j\omega X(\omega)$
7.	<b>Differentiation in frequency domain</b>	$tx(t)$	$j \frac{d}{d\omega} X(\omega)$
8.	<b>Time integration</b>	$\int_{-\infty}^t x(\tau) d\tau$	$\frac{1}{j\omega} X(j\omega)$
9.	<b>Convolution</b>	$x_1(t) * x_2(t)$	$X_1(\omega) X_2(\omega)$
10.	<b>Multiplication</b>	$x_1(t) x_2(t)$	$\frac{1}{2\pi} [X_1(\omega) * X_2(\omega)]$
11.	<b>Duality</b>	$X(t)$	$2\pi x(-\omega)$
12.	<b>Modulation</b>	$x(t) \cos \omega_c t$	$\frac{1}{2} [X(\omega - \omega_c) + X(\omega + \omega_c)]$
		$x(t) \sin \omega_c t$	$\frac{1}{2j} [X(\omega - \omega_c) - X(\omega + \omega_c)]$
13.	<b>Conjugation</b>	$x^*(t)$	$X^*(-\omega)$
14.	<b>Auto-correlation</b>	$R(\tau)$	$ X(\omega) ^2$
15.	<b>Parseval's theorem</b>	$\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} x_1(t) x_2^*(t) dt$ $E = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty}  x(t) ^2 dt$	$\frac{1}{2\pi} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} X_1(\omega) X_2^*(\omega) d\omega$ $\frac{1}{2\pi} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty}  X(\omega) ^2 d\omega$
16.	<b>Area under the curve</b>	$\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} x(t) dt$ $x(0)$	$\frac{1}{2\pi} X(0)$ $\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} X(\omega) d\omega$

**Table B.3** Fourier Transform Pairs

S.No.	Function $x(t)$	Fourier transform $X(\omega)$
1.	$\delta(t)$	1
2.	$\delta(t - t_0)$	$e^{-j\omega t_0}$
3.	1	$2\pi\delta(\omega)$
4.	$u(t)$	$\pi\delta(\omega) + \frac{1}{j\omega}$
5.	$\sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} \delta(t - nT)$	$\omega_0 \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} \delta(\omega - n\omega_0), \omega_0 = \frac{2\pi}{T}$
6.	$\operatorname{sgn}(t)$	$\frac{2}{j\omega}$
7.	$e^{j\omega_0 t}$	$2\pi\delta(\omega - \omega_0)$
8.	$\cos \omega_0 t$	$\pi [\delta(\omega - \omega_0) + \delta(\omega + \omega_0)]$
9.	$\sin \omega_0 t$	$-j\pi [\delta(\omega - \omega_0) - \delta(\omega + \omega_0)]$
10.	$e^{-at} u(t), a > 0$	$\frac{1}{j\omega + a}$
11.	$t e^{-at} u(t), a > 0$	$\frac{1}{(j\omega + a)^2}$
12.	$e^{-a t }, a > 0$	$\frac{2a}{a^2 + \omega^2}$
13.	$e^{- t }$	$\frac{2}{1 + \omega^2}$
14.	$\frac{1}{\pi t}$	$-j \operatorname{sgn}(\omega)$
15.	$\frac{1}{a^2 + t^2}$	$\frac{\pi}{a} e^{-a \omega }$
16.	$\Pi\left(\frac{t}{\tau}\right)$	$\tau \operatorname{sinc} \frac{\omega\tau}{2}$
17.	$\Delta\left(\frac{t}{\tau}\right)$	$\frac{\tau}{2} \operatorname{sinc}^2\left(\frac{\omega\tau}{4}\right)$
18.	$\frac{\sin at}{\pi t}$	$P_a(\omega) = \begin{cases} 1, &  \omega  < a \\ 0, &  \omega  > a \end{cases}$
19.	$\cos \omega_0 t u(t)$	$\frac{\pi}{2} [\delta(\omega - \omega_0) + \delta(\omega + \omega_0)] + \frac{j\omega}{(j\omega)^2 + \omega_0^2}$
20.	$\sin \omega_0 t u(t)$	$-j\frac{\pi}{2} [\delta(\omega - \omega_0) - \delta(\omega + \omega_0)] + \frac{\omega_0}{(j\omega)^2 + \omega_0^2}$

**Table B.4** Fourier Transform of Signals

(contd.)



**Table B.5** Useful Laplace Transform Pairs

<i>Function</i> $x(t)$	<i>Laplace transform</i> $X(s)$	<i>Region of convergence ROC</i>
$\delta(t)$	1	All $s$
$\delta(t - a)$	$e^{-as}$	All $s$
$u(t)$	$1/s$	$\text{Re}(s) > 0$
$u(t - a)$	$e^{-as}/s$	$\text{Re}(s) > 0$
$u(-t)$	$-1/s$	$\text{Re}(s) < 0$
$tu(t)$	$1/s^2$	$\text{Re}(s) > 0$
$t^2u(t)$	$2!/s^3$	$\text{Re}(s) > 0$
$t^n u(t)$	$n!/s^{n+1}$	$\text{Re}(s) > 0$
$e^{-at}u(t)$	$1/(s + a)$	$\text{Re}(s) > -a$
$e^{at}u(t)$	$1/(s - a)$	$\text{Re}(s) > a$
$te^{-at}u(t)$	$1/(s + a)^2$	$\text{Re}(s) > -a$
$t^n e^{-at}u(t)$	$\frac{n!}{(s + a)^{n+1}}$	$\text{Re}(s) > -a$
$\sin \omega t u(t)$	$\frac{\omega}{s^2 + \omega^2}$	$\text{Re}(s) > 0$
$\cos \omega t u(t)$	$\frac{s}{s^2 + \omega^2}$	$\text{Re}(s) > 0$
$e^{-at} \sin \omega t u(t)$	$\frac{\omega}{(s + a)^2 + \omega^2}$	$\text{Re}(s) > -a$
$e^{-at} \cos \omega t u(t)$	$\frac{s + a}{(s + a)^2 + \omega^2}$	$\text{Re}(s) > -a$
$\sinh \omega t u(t)$	$\frac{\omega}{s^2 - \omega^2}$	$\text{Re}(s) > \omega$
$\cosh \omega t u(t)$	$\frac{s}{s^2 - \omega^2}$	$\text{Re}(s) > \omega$
$\sin(\omega t + \theta)$	$\frac{s \sin \theta + \omega \cos \theta}{s^2 + \omega^2}$	$\text{Re}(s) > 0$
$\cos(\omega t + \theta)$	$\frac{s \cos \theta + \omega \sin \theta}{s^2 + \omega^2}$	$\text{Re}(s) > 0$
$t \sin \omega t u(t)$	$\frac{2\omega s}{(s^2 + \omega^2)^2}$	$\text{Re}(s) > 0$
$t \cos \omega t u(t)$	$\frac{s^2 - \omega^2}{(s^2 + \omega^2)^2}$	$\text{Re}(s) > 0$
$e^{-at} \sinh \omega t u(t)$	$\frac{\omega}{(s + a)^2 - \omega^2}$	$\text{Re}(s) > \omega - a$
$e^{-at} \cosh \omega t u(t)$	$\frac{s + a}{(s + a)^2 - \omega^2}$	$\text{Re}(s) > \omega - a$

**Table B.6** Properties of Laplace Transform

<i>Property</i>	<i>Function</i> $x(t)$	<i>Laplace transform</i> $X(s)$
	$x_1(t)$	$X_1(s)$
	$x_2(t)$	$X_2(s)$
1. Scalar multiplication	$kx(t)$	$kX(s)$
2. Linearity	$ax_1(t) + bx_2(t)$	$aX_1(s) + bX_2(s)$
3. Time shifting	$x(t - t_0)$	$e^{-t_0 s} X(s)$
4. Frequency shifting	$e^{-at} x(t)$	$X(s + a)$
5. Time differentiation	$\frac{dx(t)}{dt}$	$sX(s) - x(0^-)$
	$\frac{d^2x(t)}{dt^2}$	$s^2 X(s) - sx(0^-) - \frac{dx(0^-)}{dt}$
	$\frac{d^n x(t)}{dt^n}$	$s^n X(s) - s^{n-1}x(0^-) - \dots - \frac{d^{n-1}x(0^-)}{dt^{n-1}}$
6. Time integration	$\int_{0^-}^t x(\tau) d\tau$	$\frac{X(s)}{s}$
	$\int_{-\infty}^t x(\tau) d\tau$	$\frac{X(s)}{s} + \frac{1}{s} \int_{-\infty}^{0^-} x(\tau) d\tau$
7. Frequency differentiation	$tx(t)$	$-\frac{d}{ds} X(s)$
	$t^n x(t)$	$(-1)^n \frac{d^n}{ds^n} X(s)$
8. Frequency integration	$\frac{x(t)}{t}$	$\int_s^\infty X(s) ds$
9. Time scaling	$x(at)$	$\frac{1}{ a } X\left(\frac{s}{a}\right)$
10. Time convolution	$x_1(t) * x_2(t)$	$X_1(s) X_2(s)$
11. Frequency convolution	$x_1(t) x_2(t)$	$\frac{1}{2\pi j} X_1(s) * X_2(s) = \frac{1}{2\pi j} \int_{c-j\infty}^{c+j\infty} X_1(u) X_2(s-u) du$
12. Initial value theorem	$x(0^-)$	$\text{Lt}_{s \rightarrow \infty} sX(s)$
13. Final value theorem	$x(\infty)$	$\text{Lt}_{s \rightarrow 0} sX(s)$
14. Time periodicity	$x(t) = x(t + nT) \quad n = 1, 2, \dots$	$\frac{1}{1 - e^{-sT}} X_1(s), \text{ where } X_1(s) = \int_0^T x(t) e^{-st} dt$

**Table B.7** Some Common Z-transform Pairs

Sequence $x(n)$	Z-transform $X(z)$	ROC
1. $\delta(n)$	1	All $z$
2. $u(n)$	$z/(z-1) = 1/(1-z^{-1})$	$ z  > 1$
3. $u(-n)$	$\frac{1}{1-z} = -\frac{1}{z-1} = -\frac{z^{-1}}{1-z^{-1}}$	$ z  < 1$
4. $u(-n-1)$	$z/(z-1) = 1/(1-z^{-1})$	$ z  < 1$
5. $u(-n-2)$	$z^2/(z-1)$	$ z  < 1$
6. $u(-n-k)$	$z^k/(z-1)$	$ z  < 1$
7. $\delta(n-k)$	$z^k$	All $z$ except at $z=0$ (if $k>0$ ) All $z$ except at $z=\infty$ (if $k<0$ )
8. $a^n u(n)$	$(z/(z-a)) = 1/(1-az^{-1})$	$ z  >  a $
9. $-a^n u(-n)$	$a/(z-a)$	$ z  <  a $
10. $-a^n u(-n-1)$	$z/(z-a) = 1/(1-az^{-1})$	$ z  <  a $
11. $nu(n)$	$-z/(z-1)^2 = -[z^{-1}/(1-z^{-1})^2]$	$ z  > 1$
12. $na^n u(n)$	$az/(z-a)^2 = az^{-1}/(1-az^{-1})^2$	$ z  >  a $
13. $-na^n u(-n-1)$	$az/(z-a)^2 = az^{-1}/(1-az^{-1})^2$	$ z  <  a $
14. $e^{-j\omega n} u(n)$	$z/(z-e^{-j\omega}) = 1/(1-z^{-1}e^{-j\omega})$	$ z  >  1 $
15. $\cos \omega n u(n)$	$\frac{z(z-\cos \omega)}{z^2-2z\cos \omega+1} = \frac{1-z^{-1}\cos \omega}{1-2z^{-1}\cos \omega+z^{-2}}$	$ z  > 1$
16. $\sin \omega n u(n)$	$\frac{z \sin \omega}{z^2-2z\cos \omega+1} = \frac{z^{-1} \sin \omega}{1-2z^{-1}\cos \omega+z^{-2}}$	$ z  > 1$
17. $a^n \cos \omega n u(n)$	$\frac{z(z-a\cos \omega)}{z^2-2az\cos \omega+a^2} = \frac{1-z^{-1}a\cos \omega}{1-2az^{-1}\cos \omega+a^2z}$	$ z  >  a $
18. $a^n \sin \omega n u(n)$	$\frac{az \sin \omega}{z^2-2az\cos \omega+a^2} = \frac{az^{-1} \sin \omega}{1-2az^{-1}\cos \omega+a^2z^{-2}}$	$ z  >  a $
19. $(n+1)a^n u(n)$	$z^2/(z-a)^2 = 1/(1-az^{-1})^2$	$ z  >  a $
20. $-nu(-n-1)$	$z/(z-1)^2 = z^{-1}/(1-z^{-1})^2$	$ z  <  1 $
21. $na^n u(n)$	$z/(z-a)^2$	$ z  >  a $
22. $[n(n-1)a^{n-2}u(n)]/2!$	$z/(z-a)^3$	$ z  >  a $
23. $\frac{n(n-1)\dots[n-(k-2)]a^{n-k+1}}{(k-1)!}u(n)$	$z/(z-a)^k$	$ z  >  a $
24. $1/n, n > 0$	$-\ln(1-z^{-1})$	$ z  >  1 $
25. $n^k a^n, k < 0$	$-\left(-z \frac{d}{dz}\right)^n \frac{1}{1-az^{-1}}$	$ z  <  a $
26. $a^{ n } \text{ for all } n$	$(1-a^2)/[(1-az)(1-az^{-1})]$	$ a  <  z  <  1/a $

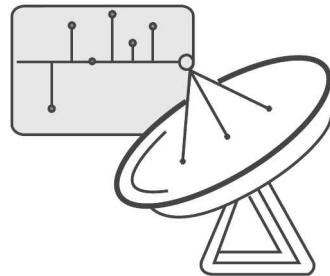
**Table B.8** Properties of Z-transforms

Property	Response	ROC
	$x_1(n) \xrightarrow{\text{ZT}} X_1(z)$	$R_1$
	$x_2(n) \xrightarrow{\text{ZT}} X_2(z)$	$R_2$
Linearity	$ax_1(n) + bx_2(n) \xrightarrow{\text{ZT}} aX_1(z) + bX_2(z)$	$R_1 \cap R_2$
Time shifting	$x(n-m) \xrightarrow{\text{ZT}} z^{-m} X(z)$	Same as $X(z)$ except $z = 0$
	$x(n+m) \xrightarrow{\text{ZT}} z^m X(z)$	Same as $X(z)$ except $z = \infty$
Multiplication by exponential sequence or scaling in $z$ -domain	$a^n u(n) \xrightarrow{\text{ZT}} X\left(\frac{z}{a}\right)$	$ a  R_1 <  z  <  a  R_2$
Time reversal	$x(-n) \xrightarrow{\text{ZT}} X(z^{-1})$	$\frac{1}{R_2} <  z  < \frac{1}{R_1}$
Time expansion	$x\left(\frac{n}{k}\right) \xrightarrow{\text{ZT}} X(z^k)$	
Differentiation in $z$ -domain	$nx(n) \xrightarrow{\text{ZT}} -z \frac{d}{dz} X(z)$	$R_1 <  z  < R_2$
Conjugation	$x^*(n) \xrightarrow{\text{ZT}} X^*(z)^*$	$R_1 <  z  < R_2$
Accumulation	$\sum_{k=-\infty}^n x(k) \xrightarrow{\text{ZT}} \frac{1}{1-z^{-1}} X(z)$	
Convolution	$x_1(n) * x_2(n) \xrightarrow{\text{ZT}} X_1(z) X_2(z)$	At least the intersection of $R_1$ and $R_2$
Correlation	$R_{x_1 x_2}(n) = x_1(n) \otimes x_2(n) \xrightarrow{\text{ZT}} X_1(z) X_2(z^{-1})$	At least the intersection of the ROC of $X_1(z)$ and $X_2(z^{-1})$
Multiplication	$x_1(n) x_2(n) \xrightarrow{\text{ZT}} \frac{1}{2\pi j} \oint_c X_1(v) X_2\left(\frac{z}{v}\right) v^{-1} dv$	At least $R_{1l} R_{2l} <  z  < R_{1u} R_{2u}$
Parseval's theorem	$\sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} x_1(n) x_2^*(n) = \frac{1}{2\pi j} \oint_c X_1(v) X_2^*\left(\frac{1}{v^*}\right) v^{-1} dv$	
Initial value theorem	$x(0) = \lim_{n \rightarrow 0} x(n) = \lim_{z \rightarrow \infty} X(z)$	
Final value theorem	$x(\infty) = \lim_{n \rightarrow \infty} x(n) = \lim_{z \rightarrow 1} (z-1) X(z),$ If $(1-z^{-1})$ has no pole on or outside the unit circle	

**Note:** The initial value theorem and the final value theorem hold true only for causal signals.

**Table B.9** Properties of DTFT

<i>Property</i>	<i>Sequence</i>	<i>DTFT</i>
	$x(n)$	$X(\omega)$
	$x_1(n)$	$X_1(\omega)$
	$x_2(n)$	$X_2(\omega)$
Linearity	$ax_1(n) + bx_2(n)$	$aX_1(\omega) + bX_2(\omega)$
Time shifting	$x(n - m)$	$e^{-j\omega m} X(\omega)$
Time reversal	$x(-n)$	$X(-\omega_0)$
Frequency shifting	$x(n)e^{j\omega_0 n}$	$X(\omega - \omega_0)$
Differentiation in frequency domain	$nx(n)$	$j \frac{d}{d\omega} [X(\omega)]$
Convolution	$x_1(n) * x_2(n)$	$X_1(\omega) X_2(\omega)$
Multiplication	$x_1(n) x_2(n)$	$X_1(\omega) * X_2(\omega)$
Correlation	$R_{x_1 x_2}(l)$	$X_1(\omega) X_2(-\omega)$
Modulation theorem	$x(n) \cos \omega_0 n$	$\frac{1}{2} \{X(\omega + \omega_0) + X(\omega - \omega_0)\}$
Parseval's theorem	$\sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty}  x(n) ^2$	$\frac{1}{2\pi} \int_{-\pi}^{\pi}  X(\omega) ^2 d\omega$
Symmetry property	$x^*(n)$ $x^*(-n)$ $x_R(n)$ $jx_I(n)$ $x_e(n)$ $x_0(n)$	$X(-\omega)$ $X^*(\omega)$ $X_e(\omega)$ $X_0(\omega)$ $X_R(\omega)$ $jX_I(\omega)$



# Glossary

**Aliasing** The phenomenon in which a high frequency component in the frequency spectrum of a signal takes identity of a lower frequency component in the spectrum of the sampled signal.

**Amplitude spectrum** A plot of amplitude of Fourier coefficients versus frequency.

**Analog signal** Other name of continuous-time signal.

**Anti-aliasing filter** An LPF used for band limiting a signal before sampling.

**Aperiodic signal** A signal which does not repeat at regular intervals of time.

**Aperture effect** The distortion wherein the amplitudes of the high frequency components are reduced relative to the amplitudes of the low frequency components.

**Autocorrelation** A measure of similarity or match or relatedness or coherence between a signal and its time delayed version.

**Average power** The power dissipated by a voltage applied across a  $1\ \Omega$  resistor (or by a current flowing through a  $1\ \Omega$  resistor).

**Band pass sampling theorem** A theorem which specifies the minimum rate at which a band pass signal is to be sampled compared to the bandwidth of the signal for signal recovery.

**BIBO stability criterion** A necessary and sufficient condition for a system to be BIBO stable. It states that the impulse response must be absolutely integrable for a system to be stable.

**BP** A frequency selective network which allows transmission of only a particular band of frequencies.

**BRF** A frequency selective network which rejects transmission of only a particular band of frequencies.

**Cascade form realization** Realization of complex system as a cascade of subsystems.

**Causal signal** A signal which does not exist for  $t < 0[n < 0]$ .

**Causal system** A system in which the output at any instant depends only on the present and past values of the input and not on future inputs.

**Continuous-time signals** Signals defined for all instants of time.

**Continuous-time system** A system which transforms continuous-time input signals into continuous-time output signals.

**Convolution** A mathematical operation which is used to express the input-output relationship of an LTI system.

**Correlation** An operation between two signals which gives the degree of similarity between those two signals.

**Correlation theorem** A theorem which states that the cross correlation of two energy signals corresponds to the multiplication of the Fourier transform of one signal by the complex conjugate of the Fourier transform of the second signal.

**Cross correlation** A measure of similarity or match or relatedness or coherence between one signal and the time delayed version of another signal.

**Data reconstruction** Also called interpolation is the process of obtaining the analog signal  $x(t)$  from the sampled signal  $x_s(t)$ .

**Deterministic signal** A signal exhibiting no uncertainty of its magnitude and phase at any given instant of time. It can be represented by a mathematical equation.

**Digital signals** Signals which are discrete in time and quantized in amplitude.

**Direct form-I realization** The direct implementation of the differential equation or transfer function describing the system.

**Direct form-II realization** A method of implementing the system with minimum number of integrators.

**Dirichlet conditions** The sufficient but not necessary conditions to be satisfied for a periodic signal to be represented by Fourier series.

**Discrete-time Fourier transform** A transformation technique which transforms signals from the discrete-time domain to the corresponding frequency domain.

**Discrete-time signals** Signals defined only at discrete instants of time.

**Discrete-time system** A system which transforms discrete-time input signals into discrete-time output signals.

**Distortion** Change of shape of the signal when it is transmitted through a system.

**Distortionless transmission** Transmission where the output of the system is an exact replica of the input.

**Distributed parameter system** A system in which signals are functions of space as well as time.

**Dynamic system** A system in which the output is due to past or future inputs also.

**Energy signal** A signal whose total energy is finite and average power is zero.

**Energy spectral density** The distribution of energy of a signal in frequency domain.

**Equalizer** A device used in cascade with the reconstruction filter to reduce the distortion within the message frequency band.

**Even signal** A symmetric signal with  $x(-t) = x(t)$  [ $x(-n) = x(n)$ ] for all  $t(n)$ .

**Even symmetry** Also called mirror symmetry which is said to exist if the signal  $x(t)$  satisfies the condition  $x(t) = x(-t)$ .

**Exponential Fourier series** The representation of signals over a certain interval of time in terms of linear combination of exponential functions which are orthogonal to each other.

**Filter** A frequency selective network.

**Finite duration signal** A signal which is equal to zero for  $t < T_1$  and for  $t > T_2$  where  $T_1$  and  $T_2$  are finite and  $T_1 < T_2$ .

**Flat top sampling** A type of sampling in which the top of samples remains constant during the sampling time.

**Forced response** The response due to input alone when the initial conditions are zero.

**Fourier spectrum** A plot of Fourier coefficients of a periodic signal versus frequency  $\omega$ .

**Fourier transform** A transformation technique which transforms signals from the continuous-time domain to the corresponding frequency domain.

**Frequency convolution theorem** A theorem which states that multiplication of two functions in time domain is equivalent to convolution of their spectra in frequency domain.

**Frequency response** The transfer function in frequency domain.

**Frequency spectrum** Amplitude spectrum and phase spectrum together.

**Functional representation** A way of representing a discrete-time signal where the amplitude of the signal is written against the value of  $n$ .

**Fundamental period** The smallest value of  $T(N)$  that satisfies the condition  $x(t + T) = x(t)$  [ $x(n + N) = x(n)$ ] for all values of  $t(n)$ .

**Generalized Fourier series representation** Representation of a function by a set of infinite mutually orthogonal functions.

**Gibbs phenomenon** The ripples present at the point of discontinuity in signal approximation.

**Graphical representation** A way of representing a discrete-time signal as a plot with value of  $x(n)$  at the sampling instant  $n$  indicated.

**Guard band** The separation between the spectral replicates.

**Halfwave symmetry** A type of symmetry which is said to exist if the signal  $x(t)$  satisfies the condition  $x(t) = -x[t \pm (T/2)]$ .

**HPF** A frequency selective network which allows transmission of only high frequency signals.

**Ideal filter** A frequency selective network with sharp cut off characteristics.

**Impulse response** The output of the system for a unit impulse input.

**Impulse sampling** A type of sampling which is equivalent to multiplying the input signal by an impulse train.

**Incoherent signals** The signals for which the cross correlation is zero for all values of  $\tau$ .

**Inverse discrete-time Fourier transform** The process of finding the discrete-time sequence from its frequency response.

**Inverse Fourier transform** A transformation technique which transforms signals from the frequency domain to the corresponding continuous-time domain.

**Inverse Laplace transform** A transformation technique which transforms signals from the complex frequency domain ( $s$ -domain) to the corresponding continuous-time domain.

**Inverse Z-transform** A transformation technique which transforms signals from the Z-domain to the corresponding discrete-time domain.

**Invertible system** A system which has a unique relationship between its input and output.

**Laplace transform** A transformation technique which transforms signals from the continuous-time domain to the corresponding complex frequency domain ( $s$ -domain).

**Left-sided signal** A signal which is equal to zero for  $t > T_2$  for some finite  $T_2$ .

**Linear phase systems** Systems for which the phase drops linearly with increase in frequency.

**Linear system** A system which obeys the principle of superposition and homogeneity.

**LPF** A frequency selective network which allows transmission of only low frequency signals.

**LTI system** A system which is both linear and time invariant.

**LTV system** A system which is linear but time variant.

**Lumped parameter system** A system in which each component is lumped at one point in space.

**Main lobe** The response between the first two zero crossings when the amplitude spectrum is a sinc function.

**Mean square error** Average of the square error.

**Memory system** Same as dynamic system.

**Memoryless system** Same as static system.

**Natural response** Also called the free response is the response due to the initial conditions alone, when the input is zero.

- Natural sampling** A type of sampling which is equivalent to multiplying the input signal by a pulse train.
- Non-invertible system** A system which does not have a unique relationship between its input and output.
- Non-causal signal** A signal which exists for  $t < 0$  [ $n < 0$ ] also.
- Non-causal system** A system in which the output at any time depends on future inputs.
- Non-linear system** A system which does not obey the principle of superposition and homogeneity.
- Normalized energy** The energy dissipated by a voltage signal applied across an  $1 \Omega$  resistor (or by a current signal flowing through an  $1 \Omega$  resistor).
- Nyquist interval** The time interval between any two adjacent samples when sampling rate is Nyquist rate.
- Nyquist rate of sampling** The theoretical minimum sampling rate at which a signal can be sampled and still be recovered from its samples without any distortion.
- Odd signal** An antisymmetric signal with  $x(-t) = -x(t)$  [ $x(-n) = -x(n)$ ] for all  $t(n)$ .
- Odd symmetry** Also called rotation symmetry which is said to exist if the signal  $x(t)$  satisfies the condition  $x(-t) = -x(t)$ .
- One-dimensional signal** A signal which depends on only one independent variable.
- One-sided spectra** Spectra which can be plotted only for positive frequencies.
- Orthogonal signal space** A set of  $n$  functions which are orthogonal to one another over an interval  $t_1$  to  $t_2$ .
- Orthogonal signals** Signals whose integral of the product over an interval is zero i.e. signals which do not have a component of the other.
- Orthogonal vector space** The set of vectors  $(x_1, x_2, \dots, x_n)$  which are mutually perpendicular to each other with  $x_m x_n = 0$  for  $m \neq n$  and  $x_m x_n = 1$  for  $m = n$ .
- Orthogonal vectors** Vectors which are mutually perpendicular to each other.
- Orthonormal vector space** The set of vectors  $(x_1, x_2, \dots, x_n)$  which are mutually perpendicular to each other with  $x_m x_n = 0$  for  $m \neq n$  and  $x_m x_n = k_m$  for  $m = n$ .
- Over sampling** Sampling at a rate greater than Nyquist rate.
- Paley-Wiener Criterion for physical realization** The frequency domain criterion for physical realization.
- Parallel form realization** Realization of a complex system as a parallel connection of subsystems.
- Pass band** The band of frequencies that is allowed by the filter.
- Periodic signal** A signal which repeats itself at regular intervals of time.
- Phase spectrum** A plot of the phase of the Fourier coefficients versus frequency.
- Power signal** A signal whose average power is finite and total energy is infinite.

**Power spectral density** The distribution of average power of the signal in the frequency domain.

**Proper functions** Functions in which the order of the numerator is smaller than that of the denominator.

**Quarter wave symmetry** A type of symmetry which is said to exist if the signal  $x(t)$  satisfies the condition  $x(t) = x(-t)$  or  $x(t) = -x(-t)$  and also  $x(t) = -x[t \pm (T/2)]$ .

**Random signal** A signal characterized by uncertainty about its occurrence. It cannot be represented by a mathematical equation.

**Realization** Obtaining a network corresponding to the differential equation or difference equation or transfer function of the system.

**Right-sided signal** A signal which is equal to zero for  $t < T_1$  for some finite  $T_1$ .

**ROC of Laplace transform** The range of values of  $\text{Re}(s)$  for which  $X(s)$  converges.

**ROC of Z-transform** The range of values of  $|z|$  for which  $X(z)$  converges.

**Sampling** The process of converting a continuous-time signal into a discrete-time signal.

**Sampling frequency** The reciprocal of sampling period which indicates the number of samples per second.

**Sampling interval** Same as sampling period.

**Sampling period** The time interval between two successive sampling instants.

**Sampling theorem** A condition to be satisfied by the sampling frequency for a band limited signal to be recovered from its samples without distortion.

**Sequence representation** A way of representing a discrete-time signal where the values of  $x(n)$  at the sampling instants are written as a sequence with an arrow pointing towards  $x(0)$ .

**Signal** A single-valued function of one or more independent variables which contain some information.

**Signal bandwidth** The band of frequencies that contain most of the signal energy.

**Smoothing filter** An LPF connected at the output of a ZOH to smooth the corners on the step approximations generated by the ZOH.

**Spectral density** The distribution of power or energy of a signal per unit bandwidth as a function of frequency.

**Stable system** A system which produces a bounded output for a bounded input.

**Standard signals** Signals like unit step, unit ramp, unit impulse etc. in terms of which any given signal can be expressed.

**Static system** A system in which the response is due to present input alone.

**Steady state response** The response due to the poles of the input function. It remains as  $t \rightarrow \infty$ .

**Step response** The output of the system for a unit step input.

**Stop band** The band of frequencies that is rejected by the filter.

**Strong Dirichlet conditions** The conditions which when satisfied guarantee the existence and also convergence of the Fourier series.

**System** An entity that acts on an input signal and transforms it into an output signal.

**System bandwidth** The range of frequencies over which the magnitude  $|H(\omega)|$  remains within  $1/\sqrt{2}$  times of its value at midband.

**Tabular representation** A way of representing a discrete-time signal where the magnitude of the signal at the sampling instant is represented in tabular form.

**Time convolution theorem** A theorem which states that convolution in time domain is equivalent to multiplication of their spectra in frequency domain.

**Time invariant system** A system whose input/output characteristics do not change with time.

**Time variant system** A system whose input/output characteristics change with time.

**Total response** The sum of the natural and forced responses.

**Transfer function** The ratio of the Fourier transform/Laplace transform/Z-transform of the output to the Fourier transform/Laplace transform/Z-transform of the input of the system when the initial conditions are neglected. It is also the Fourier transform/Laplace transform/DTFT/Z-transform of the impulse response of the system.

**Transient response** The response due to the poles of the system function. It vanishes after some time.

**Trigonometric Fourier series** The representation of signals over a certain interval of time in terms of linear combination of trigonometric functions which are orthogonal.

**Two-sided signal** A signal which extends from  $-\infty$  to  $\infty$ .

**Two-sided spectra** Spectra which can be plotted for both positive and negative frequencies.

**Under sampling** Sampling at a rate lower than Nyquist rate.

**Unit impulse function** A function which exists only at  $t = 0$  with a magnitude of unity.

**Unit parabolic function** A function whose magnitude is zero for  $t < 0$  and is  $t^2/2$  for  $t \geq 0$ .

**Unit ramp function** A function whose magnitude is zero for  $t \leq 0$ , and rises linearly with a slope of unity for  $t > 0$ .

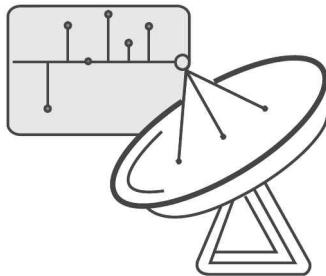
**Unit step function** A function whose magnitude is zero for  $t < 0$  [ $n < 0$ ], suddenly jumps to 1 level at  $t = 0$  [ $n = 0$ ] and remains constant at that value for  $t > 0$  [ $n > 0$ ].

**Unstable system** A system which produces an unbounded output for a bounded input.

**Weak Dirichlet condition** The condition which when satisfied guarantees the existence of Fourier series even though the series may not converge at every point.

**Zero order hold** A device which reconstructs the continuous-time signal from its samples by holding the given sample for an interval until the next sample is received.

**Z-transform** A transformation technique which transforms signals from the discrete-time domain to the corresponding Z-domain.



# Answers

## CHAPTER 1

### Answers to Fill in the Blanks

- |                         |                          |                        |                     |
|-------------------------|--------------------------|------------------------|---------------------|
| 1. one dimensional      | 2. signal modeling       | 3. every value of time |                     |
| 4. discrete, continuous | 5. digital signals       | 6. integrating         | 7. differentiating  |
| 8. integrating          | 9. differentiating       | 10. integrating        | 11. differentiating |
| 12. time reversal       | 13. deterministic signal |                        | 14. random signal   |
| 15. rational number     | 16. continuous           | 17. discrete           | 18. $x(t)$          |
| 19. $-x(t)$             | 20. finite, zero         | 21. finite, infinity   | 22. $t > 0$         |
| 23. ramp                | 24. step                 | 25. parabolic          | 26. impulse         |

### Answers to Objective Type Questions

- |         |         |         |         |
|---------|---------|---------|---------|
| 1. (c)  | 2. (a)  | 3. (c)  | 4. (a)  |
| 5. (b)  | 6. (b)  | 7. (c)  | 8. (c)  |
| 9. (b)  | 10. (d) | 11. (a) | 12. (a) |
| 13. (d) | 14. (b) | 15. (a) | 16. (a) |
| 17. (b) | 18. (a) | 19. (b) | 20. (c) |
| 21. (a) | 22. (d) | 23. (c) | 24. (b) |
| 25. (a) | 26. (c) | 27. (d) | 28. (a) |
| 29. (c) | 30. (b) | 31. (b) | 32. (a) |
| 33. (a) | 34. (c) | 35. (c) |         |

**Answers to Problems**

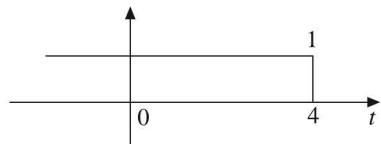
1. (a)  $e^{-9}$   
(e)  $e^4$

(b) 8  
(f) 9

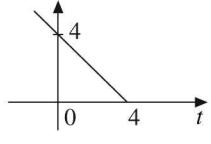
(c)  $e^6$   
(g) 1

(d) 0  
(h) 0

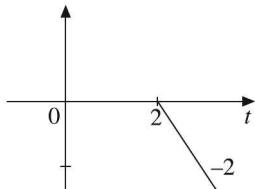
2.



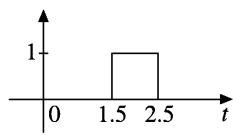
(a)



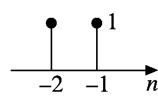
(b)



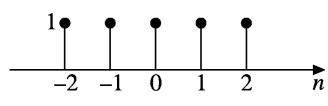
(c)



(d)

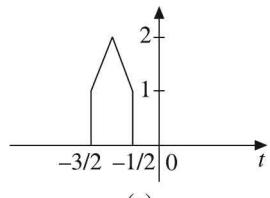


(e)

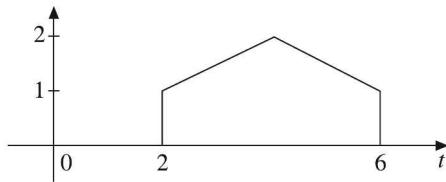


(f)

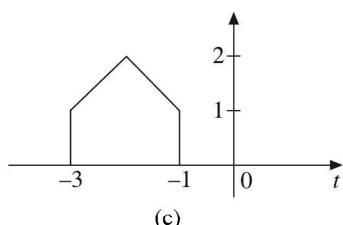
3.



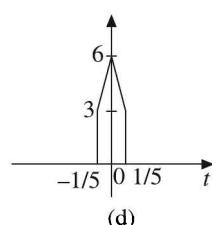
(a)



(b)

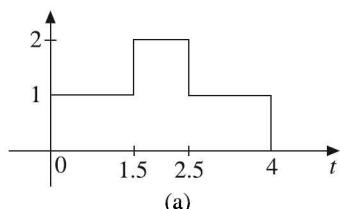


(c)

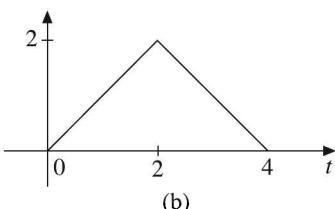


(d)

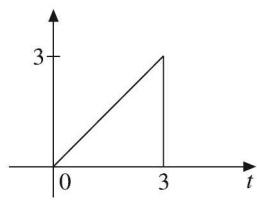
4.



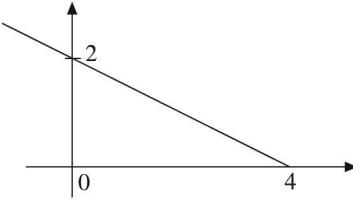
(a)



(b)



(c)



(d)

5. (a)  $r(t+2) - 2r(t+1) + 2r(t-1) + r(t-2)$   
 (b)  $2u(t) - r(t) + r(t-2) + 2u(t-4) - r(t-4) + r(t-6)$   
 (c)  $u(t-1) + r(t-1) - 2r(t-2) + r(t-3) - u(t-3)$   
 (d)  $-r(t) + 2u(t-1) + r(t-2)$   
 (e)  $u(t-2) - r(t-2) + 2r(t-3) - r(t-4) - u(t-4)$   
 (f)  $r(t) - r(t-1) - \frac{1}{2}u(t-1) + \frac{1}{2}u(t-2) - r(t-2) + r(t-3)$
6. (a) periodic,  $T = \frac{1}{3}$  (b) periodic,  $T = \frac{1}{4}$  (c) periodic,  $T = \frac{1}{2}$  (d) non-periodic  
 (e) non-periodic (f) non-periodic
7. (a) periodic,  $N = 50$  (b) non-periodic (c) periodic,  $N = 6$  (d) non-periodic
8. (a)  $P = 12.5$ , r.m.s =  $\sqrt{12.5}$  (b)  $P = \frac{1}{2}$ , r.m.s =  $\sqrt{\frac{1}{2}}$   
 (c)  $P = 50$ , r.m.s =  $\sqrt{50}$
9. (a) none,  $P = \infty$ ,  $E = \infty$  (b) Power signal,  $P = 2$ ,  $E = \infty$   
 (c) Energy signal,  $E = 10$ ,  $P = 0$  (d) none,  $P = \infty$ ,  $E = \infty$   
 (e) Power signal,  $P = 2$ ,  $E = \infty$  (f) Power signal  $P = 1/2$ ,  $E = \infty$
10. (a) Energy signal,  $E = 9/8$ ,  $P = 0$  (b) Power signal,  $E = \infty$ ,  $P = 1$   
 (c) Energy signal,  $E = 6$ ,  $P = 0$
11. (a) 10 J (b)  $32/3$  J (c)  $16/3$  J
12. (a) causal (b) non-causal (c) causal (d) non-causal  
 (e) non-causal (f) non-causal
13. (a)  $x_e(t) = \cos 2t$ ,  $x_o(t) = 0$   
 (b)  $x_e(t) = 1 + 3t^2$ ,  $x_o(t) = -2t$   
 (c)  $x_e(t) = \cos 2t$ ,  $x_o(t) = \sin 2t$   
 (d)  $x_e(n) = \{2, 3.5, 1, 3.5, 2\}$ ,  $x_o(n) = \{-4, 0.5, 0, -0.5, 4\}$   
 (e)  $x_e(n) = \{1.5, 1.5, 4, 1.5, 1.5\}$ ,  $x_o(n) = \{1.5, -3.5, 0, 3.5, -1.5\}$   
 (f)  $x_e(n) = \{2.5, 1.5, 2, 0.5, 2, 0.5, 2, 1.5, 2.5\}$ ,  
 $x_o(n) = \{-2.5, -1.5, -2, -0.5, 0, 0.5, 2, 1.5, 2.5\}$
14. (a) neither even nor odd (b) even  
 (c) even (d) even

**CHAPTER 2****Answers to Fill in the Blanks**

- |                                  |                                  |
|----------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| 1. lumped parameter              | 2. distributed parameter         |
| 3. past and future               | 4. past, future                  |
| 5. memoryless                    | 6. memory                        |
| 7. present and past              | 8. future                        |
| 9. non-anticipative              | 10. anticipative                 |
| 11. non-causal                   | 12. linear                       |
| 13. non-linear                   | 14. linearity, time-invariance   |
| 15. input/output characteristics | 16. input/output characteristics |
| 17. time-invariant system        | 18. time-variant                 |
| 19. bounded                      | 20. absolutely integrable        |
| 21. absolutely summable          | 22. invertible                   |
| 23. non-invertible               |                                  |

**Answers to Objective Type Questions**

- |         |         |         |         |
|---------|---------|---------|---------|
| 1. (a)  | 2. (a)  | 3. (b)  | 4. (d)  |
| 5. (c)  | 6. (c)  | 7. (b)  | 8. (c)  |
| 9. (d)  | 10. (d) | 11. (d) | 12. (d) |
| 13. (a) | 14. (c) | 15. (b) | 16. (d) |
| 17. (d) | 18. (d) |         |         |

**Answers to Problems**

- |                       |                    |                  |                  |
|-----------------------|--------------------|------------------|------------------|
| 1. (a) dynamic        | (b) static         | (c) dynamic      | (d) static       |
| (e) dynamic           | (f) dynamic        |                  |                  |
| 2. (a) causal         | (b) causal         | (c) non-causal   | (d) causal       |
| (e) non-causal        | (f) non-causal     |                  |                  |
| 3. (a) linear         | (b) non-linear     | (c) non-linear   | (d) non-linear   |
| (e) non-linear        | (f) linear         |                  |                  |
| 4. (a) time-invariant | (b) time-variant   | (c) time-variant | (d) time-variant |
| (e) time-invariant    | (f) time-invariant |                  |                  |
| 5. (a) unstable       | (b) stable         | (c) unstable     | (d) stable       |
| (e) unstable          | (f) stable         |                  |                  |

6. (a) dynamic, non-linear, causal, time-variant  
 (b) dynamic, linear, causal, time-variant  
 (c) dynamic, linear, non-causal, time-variant  
 (d) dynamic, linear, non-causal, time-invariant  
 (e) static, non-linear, causal, time-invariant  
 (f) dynamic, linear, non-causal, time-invariant

## CHAPTER 3

### Answers to Fill in the Blanks

- |   |   |                 |
|---|---|-----------------|
| 1. magnitude, direction   | 2. perpendicular                        | 3. error vector |
| 4. orthogonal vectors   | 5. independent                          | 6. zero         |
| 7. orthogonal   | $\int_{t_1}^{t_2} x_1(t) x_2(t) dt = 0$ | 10. integral    |
| 11. $C_{12} = \frac{\int_0^T x_1(t) x_2(t) dt}{\int_0^T x_2^2(t) dt}$ | 12. zero, unity                         | 13. orthogonal  |
| 14. orthonormal   |   |                 |
| 15. larger  | 16. closed, complete                    |                 |
| 17. closed, complete  | 18. integral of the product             |                 |
| 19. integral of the square  | 20. generalised Fourier series          |                 |

### Answers to Objective Type Questions

- |        |        |        |        |
|--------|--------|--------|--------|
| 1. (a) | 2. (a) | 3. (c) | 4. (a) |
| 5. (a) | 6. (d) | 7. (a) | 8. (b) |

## CHAPTER 4

### Answers to Fill in the Blanks

- |   |                     |                          |                 |
|---|---------------------|--------------------------|-----------------|
| 1. Fourier series, Fourier transform, Laplace transform |                     |                          |                 |
| 2. Fourier series                                       |                     |                          |                 |
| 3. trigonometric form, cosine form, exponential form    |                     |                          |                 |
| 4. periodic   | 5. Dirichlet's      | 6. sufficient, necessary |                 |
| 7. integral multiples                                   | 8. trigonometric    | 9. zero                  | 10. unique      |
| 11. mirror, $a_0$ and $a_n$                             | 12. rotation, $b_n$ | 13. $x(-t), -x(-t)$      | 14. even        |
| 15. odd   | 16. vertical        | 17. half wave            |                 |
| 18. half wave, odd, even                                |                     | 19. harmonic, polar      | 20. exponential |
| 21. even  |                     | 22. odd                  |                 |

23.  $a_0 = C_0, a_n = C_n + C_{-n}, b_n = j(C_n - C_{-n})$

24.  $C_0 = a_0, C_n = \frac{1}{2}[a_n - jb_n], C_{-n} = \frac{1}{2}[a_n + jb_n]$

25.  $a_0^2 + \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{a_n^2}{2} + \frac{b_n^2}{2}$

26.  $C_0^2 + \sum_{\substack{n=-\infty \\ n \neq 0}}^{\infty} C_n^2$

27. Fourier coefficients, frequency

28. Frequency spectra

29. discrete

30. one

31. two

32. even, odd

33. harmonic

34. pulse shape, period of repetition.

### Answers to Objective Type Questions

1. (a)

2. (b)

3. (c)

4. (b)

5. (b)

6. (b)

7. (d)

8. (a)

9. (b)

10. (b)

11. (a)

12. (c)

13. (d)

14. (c)

15. (a)

16. (b)

17. (b)

18. (a)

19. (a)

20. (b)

21. (b)

22. (a)

23. (a)

24. (b)

25. (a)

26. (b)

27. (c)

### Answers to Problems

1.  $x(t) = \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} a_n \cos\left(\frac{n\pi}{2}\right)t$

2.  $x(t) = \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{2}{\pi} \left[ \frac{-(-1)^n}{n} \right] \sin n\pi t$

3.  $x(t) = \frac{3}{4} + \sum_{\substack{n=-\infty \\ n \neq 0}}^{\infty} \left( \frac{1}{jn\pi} \right) \left[ 1 - \frac{1}{2}(-1)^n - \frac{1}{2}e^{-jn(\pi/2)t} \right] e^{jn(\pi/2)t}$

4.  $x(t) = \frac{3}{5} + \sum_{\substack{n=-\infty \\ n \neq 0}}^{\infty} \frac{5}{2n^2\pi^2} \left( \cos \frac{2\pi n}{5} - \cos \frac{4\pi n}{5} \right)$

5.  $x(t) = \frac{1}{3} + \frac{4}{\pi^2} \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{(-1)^n}{n^2} \cos n\pi t$

6.  $x(t) = \sum_{n=\text{odd}} \left( \frac{100}{n^2\pi^2} \right) e^{jnt}$

7.  $C_{-3} = j0.5, C_{-1} = je^{j3}, C_1 = -je^{-j3}, C_3 = -j0.5 \text{ and } C_m = 0 \text{ except } |m| \neq 1 \text{ and } 3$

8.  $C_{-5} = -2j, C_{-2} = 0.5, C_2 = 0.5, C_5 = 2j$
9. (a)  $C_0 = \frac{1}{2}, C_{-2} = -\frac{1}{4}, C_n = 0 \quad \text{for } n \neq 0$   
(b)  $C_{-3} = j, C_3 = -j, C_n = 0 \quad \text{for } n \neq 3$   
(c)  $C_{-3} = -\left(\frac{1}{4j} + \frac{\sqrt{3}}{4}\right), C_3 = \left(\frac{1}{4j} + \frac{\sqrt{3}}{4}\right), C_n = 0 \quad \text{for } n \neq 3$   
(d)  $C_0 = \frac{1}{2}, C_{-2} = -\frac{1}{4}, C_2 = -\frac{1}{4}, C_n = 0 \quad \text{for } n \neq 0$
10.  $x(t) = \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} \left( \frac{1-e^{-2}}{2+j2n\pi} \right) e^{j2n\pi t}$
11.  $x(t) = \frac{1}{3} + \sum_{n=1}^{\infty} \frac{1}{(n\pi)^2} \cos 2n\pi t - \frac{1}{n\pi} \sin 2n\pi t$
12.  $x(t) = 4 \cos\left(2\pi t + \frac{\pi}{6}\right) + 2 \cos\left(\pi t - \frac{\pi}{3}\right)$
13.  $x(t) = \frac{4}{5+3 \cos t}$

## CHAPTER 5

### Answers to Fill in the Blanks

- |                       |                        |                   |
|-----------------------|------------------------|-------------------|
| 1. periodic           | 2. aperiodic, periodic | 3. discrete       |
| 4. continuous         | 5. Fourier transform   | 6. sufficient     |
| 7. $H(\omega)$        | 8. frequency           | 9. Dirichlet      |
| 11. impulse           | 12. train              | 13. harmonic      |
| 15. one to one        |                        | 14. imaginary     |
| 16. $x(t) * 1/\pi t$  | 17. domain             | 18. linear        |
| 19. Hilbert transform | 20. amplitude          | 21. $ X(\omega) $ |
| 23. $1/\pi t$         | 24. $x(t)$             | 25. orthogonal    |
|                       |                        | 22. $90^\circ$    |
|                       |                        | 26. $x_2(t)$      |

### Answers to Objective Type Questions

- |         |         |         |         |
|---------|---------|---------|---------|
| 1. (c)  | 2. (d)  | 3. (b)  | 4. (c)  |
| 5. (b)  | 6. (a)  | 7. (b)  | 8. (b)  |
| 9. (c)  | 10. (b) | 11. (b) | 12. (c) |
| 13. (d) | 14. (c) | 15. (a) | 16. (a) |
| 17. (b) | 18. (c) | 19. (d) | 20. (a) |
| 21. (d) | 22. (b) | 23. (b) | 24. (a) |

- |         |         |         |         |
|---------|---------|---------|---------|
| 25. (c) | 26. (a) | 27. (c) | 28. (a) |
| 29. (a) | 30. (c) | 31. (b) | 32. (a) |
| 33. (c) | 34. (d) | 35. (a) | 36. (d) |
| 37. (b) | 38. (a) | 39. (d) | 40. (b) |
| 41. (a) | 42. (b) | 43. (a) | 44. (c) |
| 45. (a) | 46. (a) | 47. (b) | 48. (b) |
| 49. (b) | 50. (a) | 51. (a) | 52. (c) |

### Answers to Problems

1. (a) Does not exist    (b)  $\frac{4}{(2+j\omega)^2 + 4^2}$     (c)  $\frac{2+j\omega}{(2+j\omega)^2 + 4^2}$     (d)  $\frac{1}{(2+j\omega)^2}$
2. (a)  $\frac{1}{(3+j\omega)^2}$     (b)  $\pi\delta(\omega - 4) + \frac{1}{j(\omega - 4)}$     (c)  $2\pi\delta(\omega - 4)$   
 (d)  $\frac{e^{-3(4+j\omega)}}{(4+j\omega)}$     (e)  $e^{-j2\omega} \frac{2a}{a^2 + \omega^2}$     (f)  $2(\cos 2\omega + \cos 4\omega)$
3.  $2X(\omega) \cos 4\omega$
4.  $\frac{2}{1+\omega^2} - \frac{e^{-4}}{1+\omega^2}(2 \cos 4\omega - 2 \sin 4\omega)$
5.  $\frac{d}{dt}[te^{-3t} u(t)]$
6.  $\frac{1}{4\pi(4-jt)}$
7.  $\frac{-2j\omega}{2^2 + \omega^2}$
8.  $\frac{j2}{\omega}(1 - \cos \omega)$
9.  $\frac{1}{j\omega} \left[ e^{-j\omega(T/2)} \operatorname{sinc} \frac{\omega T}{2} - e^{-2\omega T} \right]$
10.  $4\operatorname{Sa}(2\omega) - 2\operatorname{Sa}(\omega)$
11.  $\frac{2}{\pi}(1 + 0.75 \cos 3t + 0.5 \cos 2t + 0.25 \cos t)$
12.  $\frac{1}{2}[e^{-t} u(t) - e^{-3t} u(t)]$
13.  $e^{-t} u(t) - te^{-t} u(t) + e^{-2t} u(t)$
14.  $5\pi\delta(\omega) + \frac{5}{2}[\pi\delta(\omega - 6) + \pi\delta(\omega + 6)]$
15.  $\frac{1}{4} e^{j(\omega/4)(0.2\pi)} j\pi \left[ \delta\left(\frac{\omega}{4} + 1\right) + \delta\left(\frac{\omega}{4} - 1\right) \right]$
16.  $\frac{\pi}{2} [\delta(\omega - 11) + \delta(\omega + 11) + \delta(\omega - 9) + \delta(\omega + 9)]$   
 $+ \pi [\delta(\omega - 12) + \delta(\omega + 12) + \delta(\omega - 8) + \delta(\omega + 8)]$
17. (a)  $\frac{1}{3}[e^{-2t} u(t) - e^{-5t} u(t)]$
18.  $\frac{d^2 y(t)}{dt^2} + 6 \frac{dy(t)}{dt} + 5y(t) = 7 - \frac{d}{dt} x(t)$
19.  $e^{-3t} u(t) - e^{-4t} u(t)$
20.  $e^{-3t} u(t) + e^{-5t} u(t)$

## CHAPTER 6

### Answers to Fill in the Blanks

1. impulse response      2.  $x(t) * h(t) = h(t) * x(t)$   
 3.  $x(t) * [h_1(t) + h_2(t)] = x(t) * h_1(t) + x(t) * h_2(t)$   
 4.  $x(t) * [h_1(t) * h_2(t)] = [x(t) * h_1(t)] * h_2(t)$   
 5. memoryless            6. memory            7. identity            8. causal  
 9. noncausal            10. impulse response            11.  $\delta(t)$   
 12. running integral    13. first derivative    14. zero  
 15. impulse response    16. impulse response    17. impulse response  
 18. impulse response    19.  $H(\omega)$             20. impulse response    21. filter  
 22.  $|H(\omega)|$             23. filter  
 24. pass band, stop band, half power bandwidth  
 25. constant            26. linear            27. infinite            28. distortion  
 29. an exact replica    30.  $x(t - t_d)$             31. symmetrical            32. finite  
 33. bandwidth            34.  $h(t) = 0$  for  $t < 0$   
 35. 
$$\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} \frac{|\ln|H(\omega)||}{1 + \omega^2} d\omega < \infty$$
  
 36.  $t_r \times B = \text{constant}$     37. the signal bandwidth

### Answers to Objective Type Questions

- |         |         |         |         |
|---------|---------|---------|---------|
| 1. (a)  | 2. (a)  | 3. (b)  | 4. (c)  |
| 5. (a)  | 6. (a)  | 7. (a)  | 8. (a)  |
| 9. (c)  | 10. (b) | 11. (b) | 12. (a) |
| 13. (c) | 14. (b) | 15. (a) |         |

### Answers to Problems

1.  $y(t) = \frac{(0.5)^t}{(\log 0.5 + 3)}$     2.  $H(s) = \frac{1}{3s^2 + 3s + 1}$   
 3.  $H(s) = \frac{1}{2} \left[ \frac{s}{s + (1/2)(R/L)} \right]$ ,  $h(t) = \frac{L}{R} \left[ 1 - e^{-(1/2)(R/L)t} \right] u(t)$ ,  $S(t) = \frac{1}{2} e^{-(1/2)(R/L)t}$   
 4.  $i(t) = 8te^{-2t} u(t)$     5.  $\frac{1}{4} [e^{-t} - e^{-5t}] u(t)$

6.  $h(t) = \delta(t) + 2e^{-3t} u(t)$ ;  $|H(\omega)| = \frac{\sqrt{5^2 + \omega^2}}{\sqrt{3^2 + \omega^2}}$ ;  $\underline{H(\omega)} = \tan^{-1} \frac{\omega}{5} - \tan^{-1} \frac{\omega}{3}$
7.  $y(t) = \left( 2te^{-t} - \frac{1}{2}e^{-t} + \frac{1}{2}e^{-3t} \right) u(t)$       8.  $y(t) = -\frac{1}{2}e^{-3t} u(t) + e^{-t} u(t) + \frac{1}{2}e^t u(-t)$
9.  $h(t) = te^{-t} u(t)$       10.  $x(t) = 2e^{-t} u(t)$
11.  $H(\omega) = \frac{1}{j\omega + 2}$ ,  $|H(\omega)| = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2^2 + \omega^2}}$ ,  $\underline{H(\omega)} = -\tan^{-1} \frac{\omega}{2}$
12. B.W. = 3.3 kHz      13. 3.167a

## CHAPTER 7

### Answers to Fill in the Blanks

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 1. mathematical  | 2. $\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} x(\tau) h(t - \tau) d\tau$ or $\int_{-\infty}^{\infty} h(\tau) x(t - \tau) d\tau$ |
| 3. $\int_0^t x(\tau) h(t - \tau) d\tau$ or $\int_0^t h(\tau) x(t - \tau) d\tau$                | 4. $\int_0^{\infty} x(\tau) h(t - \tau) d\tau$ or $\int_{-\infty}^t h(\tau) x(t - \tau) d\tau$                |
| 5. $\int_{-\infty}^t x(\tau) h(t - \tau) d\tau$ or $\int_0^{\infty} h(\tau) x(t - \tau) d\tau$ | 6. the signal itself  |
| 7. time convolution, frequency convolution   | 8. $x_1(t) * x_2(t) \longleftrightarrow X_1(\omega) X_2(\omega)$  |
| 9. $x_1(t) x_2(t) \longleftrightarrow \frac{1}{2\pi} [X_1(\omega) * X_2(\omega)]$              | 10. similarity  |
| 11. orthogonal   | 12. average power   |
| 13. the origin   | 14. Fourier transform   |
| 15. Fourier transform  | 16. total energy  |
| 17. average power  | 18. Spectral density  |
| 19. $E = \frac{1}{2\pi} \int_{-\infty}^{\infty}  X(\omega) ^2 d\omega$                         | 20. energy density spectrum   |
| 21. $ H(\omega) ^2 \psi_x(\omega)$   | 22. $P = \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty}  C_n ^2$   |
| 23. power density spectrum   | 24. filtering   |

### Answers to Objective Type Questions

- |         |         |         |         |
|---------|---------|---------|---------|
| 1. (a)  | 2. (b)  | 3. (d)  | 4. (c)  |
| 5. (a)  | 6. (d)  | 7. (b)  | 8. (a)  |
| 9. (b)  | 10. (a) | 11. (a) | 12. (d) |
| 13. (c) | 14. (b) | 15. (b) |         |

### Answers to Problems

1. (a)  $\frac{1}{2}e^{-t}(1-e^{-2t})$     (b)  $t u(t)$     (c)  $(1 - \cos t) u(t)$     (d)  $(1 - e^{-t}) u(t)$

2. (a)  $e^{-2t}(1-e^{-2t})u(t)$     (b)  $te^{-t}u(t)$

3. (a)  $y(t) = \frac{1}{a}(1-e^{-at})u(t)$     (b)  $y(t) = (t-1)u(t-1)$

$$(c) \quad y(t) = \begin{cases} 0 & \text{for } t < 0 \\ \frac{1}{2}(1-e^{-2t})e^{-t} & \text{for } 0 \leq t \leq 2 \\ \frac{1}{2}(1-e^{-4})e^{-t} & \text{for } t > 2 \end{cases}$$

$$(d) \quad y(t) = \begin{cases} 0 & \text{for } t < 3 \\ \frac{1-e^{-3t(t-3)}}{3} & \text{for } 3 \leq t \leq 5 \\ \frac{e^{-3}(t-5)-e^{-3}(t-3)}{3} & \text{for } t > 5 \end{cases}$$

$$(e) \quad y(t) = \begin{cases} 0 & \text{for } t < -2 \\ 8(t+2) & \text{for } -2 \leq t < 0 \\ 16 & \text{for } 0 \leq t < 2 \\ 8(4-t) & \text{for } 2 \leq t \leq 4 \\ 0 & \text{for } t > 4 \end{cases}$$

$$(f) \quad y(t) = \begin{cases} 0 & \text{for } t \leq 0 \\ t & \text{for } 1 \leq t \leq 2 \\ 2 & \text{for } 2 \leq t \leq 3 \\ 5-t & \text{for } 3 \leq t \leq 5 \\ 0 & \text{for } t > 5 \end{cases}$$

4.  $R(\tau) = \frac{A^2}{2} \cos \omega_0 \tau$

5.  $R(\tau) = \frac{1}{2}e^{-|\tau|}$ , ESD =  $\frac{1}{1+\omega^2}$

7. 2E

8. 24 W

## CHAPTER 8

### Answers to Fill in the Blanks

- |   |                           |                                       |
|---|---------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| 1. continuous-time  | 2. sampling               | 3. sampling period, sampling interval |
| 4. uniform sampling, low pass sampling  |                           | 5. $f_s \geq 2f_m$                    |
| 6. infinite sum, original signal  |                           |                                       |
| 7. $x(t)$ should be band-limited to some frequency $\omega_m$ , $\omega_s \geq 2\omega_m$ |                           |                                       |
| 8. $\omega_s > 2\omega_m$   | 9. $\omega_s = 2\omega_m$ | 10. $\omega_s < 2\omega_m$            |
| 11. the signal is not band-limited to a finite range, the sampling rate is too low        |                           |                                       |
| 12. before  | 13. aliasing              | 14. frequency folding effect          |
| 15. Nyquist rate  | 16. over sampled          | 17. under sampled                     |
| 18. Nyquist interval  | 19. anti-aliasing filter  | 20. $4f_m$                            |

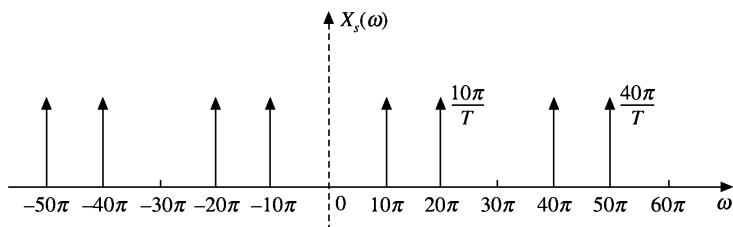
### Answers to Objective Type Questions

- |         |         |         |         |
|---------|---------|---------|---------|
| 1. (c)  | 2. (c)  | 3. (b)  | 4. (b)  |
| 5. (a)  | 6. (d)  | 7. (a)  | 8. (b)  |
| 9. (a)  | 10. (a) | 11. (c) | 12. (b) |
| 13. (b) | 14. (b) | 15. (d) | 16. (a) |
| 17. (c) | 18. (d) | 19. (c) | 20. (c) |
| 21. (c) | 22. (b) | 23. (a) | 24. (b) |
| 25. (c) | 26. (a) | 27. (b) | 28. (b) |
| 29. (a) | 30. (c) |         |         |

### Answers to Problems

1. 40 kHz

2.



**Figure 8.A2**

No the original signal cannot be recovered from its samples.

3. (a) No                    (b) Yes                    (c) Yes

4.

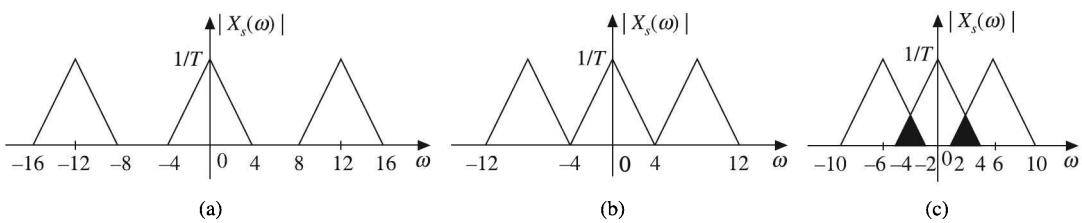


Figure 8.A4

5.

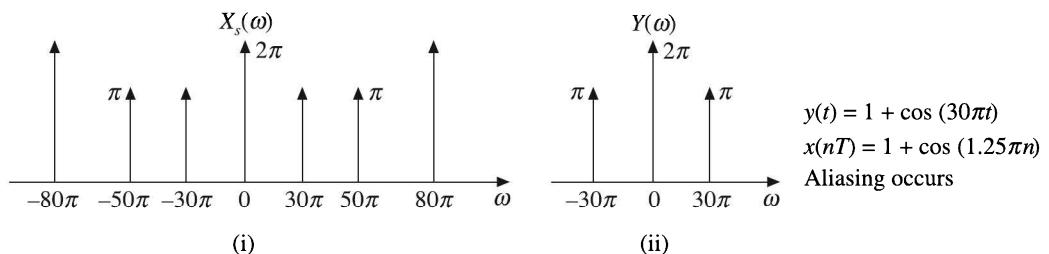


Figure 8.A5(a)

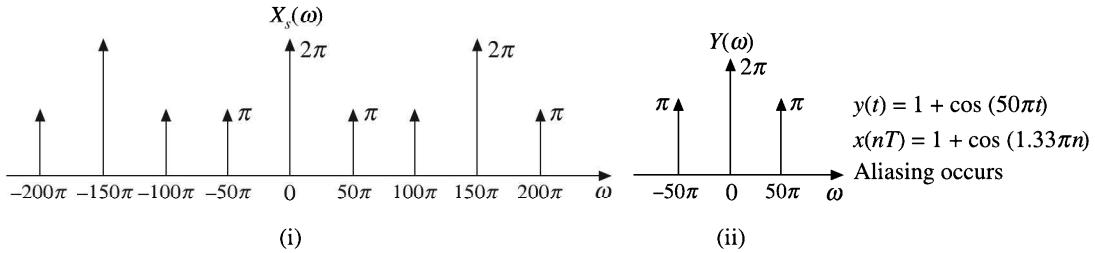


Figure 8.A5(b)

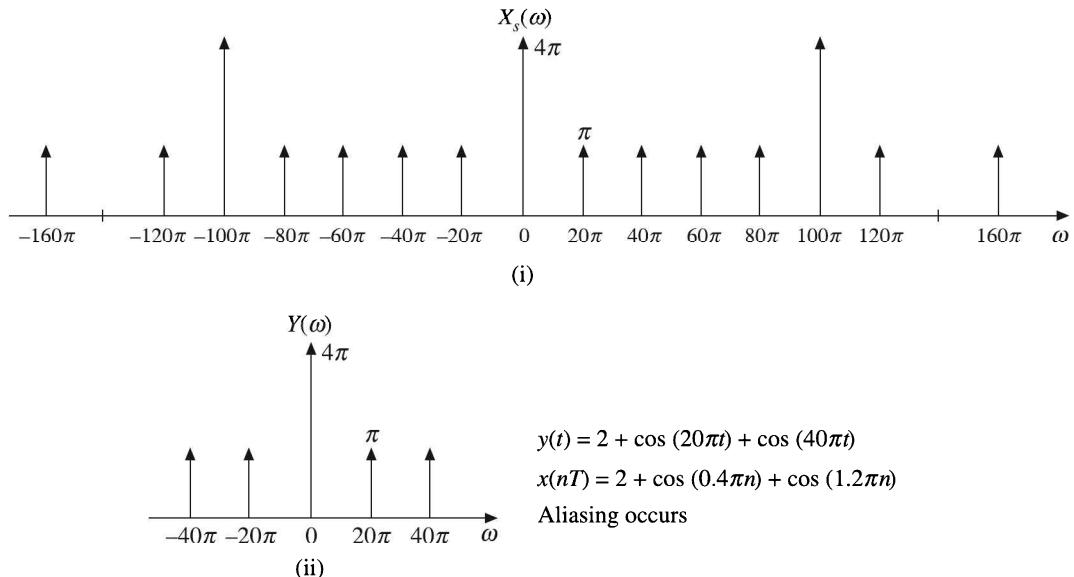
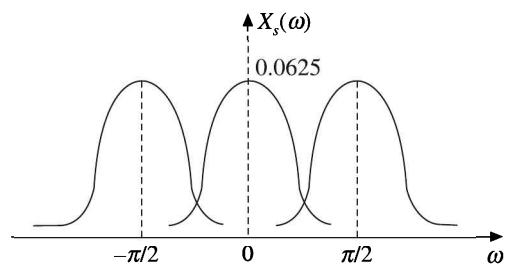


Figure 8.A5(c)

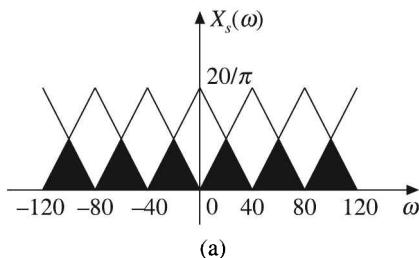


**Figure 8.A5(d)**

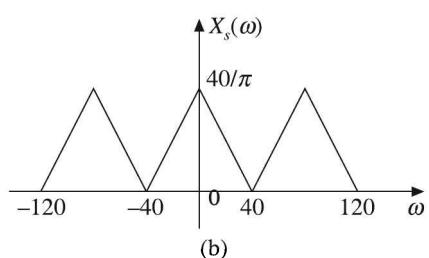
6. (a)  $f_N = 600$  Hz,  $T = 1.67$  ms  
 (c)  $f_N = 400$  Hz,  $T = 2.5$  ms

- (b)  $f_N = 600$  Hz,  $T = 1.67$  ms  
 (d)  $f_N = 200$  Hz,  $T = 5$  ms

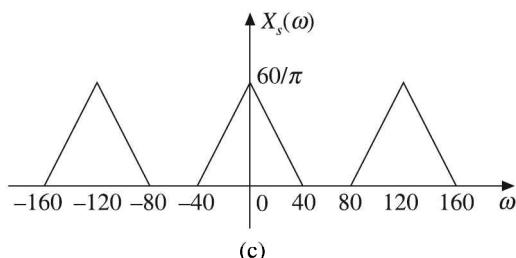
7.



Cannot be recovered



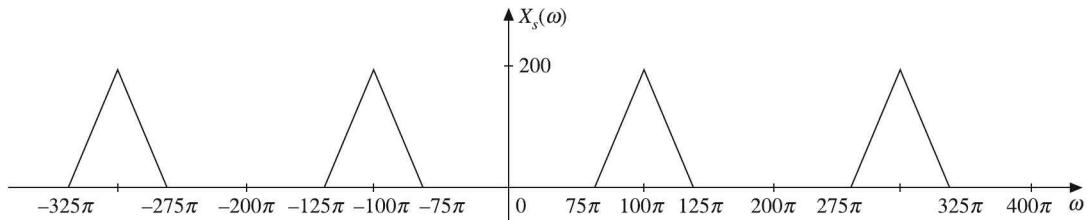
Can be recovered with LPF



Can be recovered

**Figure 8.A7**

8.



**Figure 8.A8**

9. (a) 2200 sps      (b) between 1100 Hz and 1200 Hz

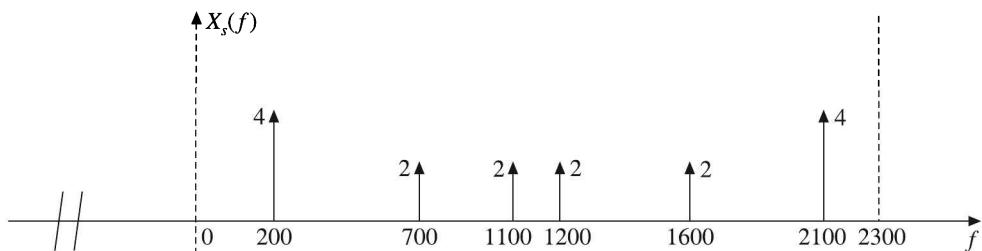


Figure 8.A9

10.  $f_{s(\min)} = 20$  rad/sec

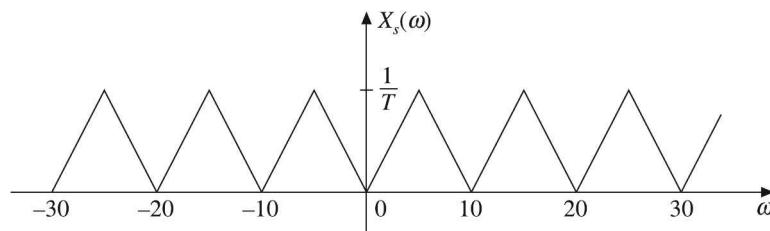


Figure 8.A10

## CHAPTER 9

### Answers to Fill in the Blanks

- |   |                                       |
|---|---------------------------------------|
| 1. differential                               | 2. continuous sum, $e^{j\omega t}$    |
| 3. continuous sum, $e^{st}$                   | 4. $s = \sigma + j\omega$             |
| 6. differential, algebraic                    | 5. differential                       |
| 8. absolutely integrable                      | 9. $j\omega$ axis                     |
| 12. poles                                     | 10. infinity                          |
| 14. causal, non-causal                        | 11. zero                              |
| 16. transient response, steady-state response | 13. causal, for time $t < 0$          |
| 19. system, input                             | 15. natural response, forced response |
| 23. $x(t) e^{-\sigma t}$                      | 17. proper                            |
| 27. proper                                    | 18. pole-zero                         |
| 30. an impulse                                | 20. transient                         |
| 33. non-causal, $< \sigma_2$                  | 21. steady-state                      |
| 36. poles, infinity, pole                     | 25. causal, non-causal                |
| 38. left most, inside                         | 26. intersection                      |
|   | 28. causal, non-causal                |
|   | 31. poles, pole                       |
|   | 32. causal, $> \sigma_2$              |
|   | 34. strip                             |
|   | 35. over the entire $s$ -plane        |
|   | 37. right most, inside                |

### Answers to Objective Type Questions

- |         |         |         |         |
|---------|---------|---------|---------|
| 1. (c)  | 2. (a)  | 3. (c)  | 4. (a)  |
| 5. (b)  | 6. (d)  | 7. (c)  | 8. (a)  |
| 9. (b)  | 10. (a) | 11. (b) | 12. (b) |
| 13. (a) | 14. (b) | 15. (c) | 16. (a) |
| 17. (c) | 18. (a) | 19. (a) | 20. (b) |
| 21. (c) | 22. (c) | 23. (b) | 24. (b) |
| 25. (a) | 26. (d) |         |         |

### Answers to Problems

- |   |   |   |                                     |
|---|---|---|-------------------------------------|
| 1. (a) $\frac{1}{(s+2)^2}$  | (b) $\frac{2}{(s+1)^3}$   | (c) $\frac{3}{s^2+4s+13}$               | (d) $\frac{s^2+2s-3}{(s^2+2s+5)^2}$ |
| (e) $\frac{2}{s^2+6s+5}$  | (f) $\frac{e^{-2s}(2s+1)}{s^2}$   | (g) $\frac{(3s+7)e^{-3(s+2)}}{(s+2)^2}$ | (h) $\frac{e^{-s}(1-s)}{s^2}$       |
| 2. (a) $Y_1(s) = \frac{s^2+2s-1}{(s^2+5s+6)^2}$                                 | (b) $Y_2(s) = \frac{s+2}{s^2+7s+12}$                                      |   |                                     |
| (c) $Y_3(s) = \left( \frac{s+1}{s^2+5s+6} \right)^2$                            |   |   |                                     |
| 3. (a) $x(t) = 14.14e^{-t} \cos\left(\frac{\pi}{4} + 1\right)t u(t)$            | (b) $\delta^1(t) + \delta(t) + e^{-3t}(\cos 3t - \sin 3t) u(t)$           |   |                                     |
| (c) $x(t) = \delta(t) + 2e^{-t}u(t) - 3e^{-2t}u(t)$                             | (d) $50e^{-10(t)}$  |   |                                     |
| (e) $2e^{-t} - 3te^{-t}$  | (f) $e^{-2t}u(t) + e^t u(t)$  |   |                                     |
| (g) $x(t) = e^{4t} \cos 3t u(t) - e^{-4t} \sin 3t u(t)$                         | (h) $x(t) = e^{-t}u(t) - \frac{5}{4}e^{-2t}u(t) + \frac{1}{4}e^{-6t}u(t)$ |   |                                     |
| (i) $x(t) = \frac{1}{4}u(t) - \frac{1}{4}e^{-2t}u(t) - \frac{1}{2}te^{-2t}u(t)$ |   |   |                                     |
| 4. (a) $x(t) = -5e^{-t}u(-t) + te^{-t}u(-t)$                                    | (b) $x(t) = 5e^{-t}u(t) - te^{-t}u(t)$                                    |   |                                     |
| (c) $x(t) = -u(-t) - e^{-t}u(t) - te^{-t}u(t)$                                  | (d) $x(t) = -\frac{1}{5}e^{2t}u(-t) + \frac{9}{5}e^{-3t}u(t)$             |   |                                     |
| (e) $x(t) = -u(-t) + e^{-t}u(-t) + te^{-t}u(-t)$                                |   |   |                                     |
| 5. (a) (i) $x(t) = 2e^{-2t}u(t) - 2e^{-3t}u(t)$                                 | ROC; $\operatorname{Re}(s) > -2$  |   |                                     |
| (ii) $x(t) = -2e^{-2t}u(-t) + 2e^{-3t}u(-t)$                                    | ROC; $\operatorname{Re}(s) < -3$  |   |                                     |
| (iii) $x(t) = -2e^{-2t}u(-t) - 2e^{-3t}u(-t)$                                   | ROC; $-3 < \operatorname{Re}(s) < -2$                                     |   |                                     |

- (b) (i)  $x(t) = -\frac{2}{5}e^{-4t}u(t) - \frac{2}{5}e^tu(-t)$  ROC;  $-4 < \text{Re}(s) < 1$
- (ii)  $x(t) = -\frac{2}{5}e^{-4t}u(t) + \frac{2}{5}e^tu(t)$  ROC;  $\text{Re}(s) > 1$
- (iii)  $x(t) = \frac{2}{5}e^{-4t}u(-t) - \frac{2}{5}e^tu(-t)$  ROC;  $\text{Re}(s) < 4$
- (c) (i)  $x(t) = -\frac{1}{4}e^{-5t}u(t) - \frac{1}{4}e^{-t}u(-t)$  ROC;  $-5 < \text{Re}(s) < 1$
- (ii)  $x(t) = -\frac{1}{4}e^{-5t}u(t) + \frac{1}{4}e^{-t}u(t)$  ROC;  $\text{Re}(s) > -1$
- (iii)  $x(t) = \frac{1}{4}e^{-5t}u(-t) - \frac{1}{4}e^{-t}u(-t)$  ROC;  $\text{Re}(s) < -5$
- (d) (i)  $x(t) = -\cos tu(t) + \sin tu(t) - e^{-t}u(-t)$  ROC;  $-1 < \text{Re}(s) < 0$
- (ii)  $x(t) = \cos tu(-t) - \sin tu(-t) - e^{-t}u(-t)$  ROC;  $\text{Re}(s) < -1$
- (iii)  $x(t) = -\cos tu(t) + \sin tu(t) + e^{-t}u(t)$  ROC;  $\text{Re}(s) > 0$
6.  $y(t) = \frac{1}{2}e^{-2t}u(t) - \frac{1}{2}e^{-4t}u(t)$
7. (a)  $y(t) = -\frac{1}{6}(\cos 4t - \cos 2t)u(t)$  (b)  $y(t) = \frac{1}{3}u(t-2) - \frac{1}{3}e^{-3(t-2)}u(t-2)$
8. Initial value (a) 1 (b)  $\infty$  (c) 0 (d) 0  
Final value (a) 0 (b) 0 (c) Not defined (d) 2
9.  $h(t) = \frac{1}{3}(e^{2t} - e^{-t})u(t)$  10.  $S(t) = \left( \frac{1}{6}e^{-2t} + \frac{1}{3}e^t - \frac{1}{2} \right)u(t)$
11.  $y(t) = (1 + t - t^2)e^{-t}u(t)$  12.  $H(j\omega) = \frac{2 + j\omega}{1 + j\omega}$ ,  $h(t) = \delta(t) + e^{-t}u(t)$
13.  $h(t) = \frac{3}{2}e^{-2t}(1 + e^{-2t})u(t)$
14.  $h(t) = 2e^{-3t}u(t) - e^{2t}u(-t)$  ROC;  $-3 < \text{Re}(s) < 2$  stable but not causal  
 $h(t) = (2e^{-3t} + e^{2t})u(t)$  ROC;  $\text{Re}(s) > 2$  causal but not stable
15. (a)  $h(t) = e^{-t} - e^{-2t}$   
(b)  $y(t) = \underbrace{\{3e^{-t} - 2e^{2t}\}}_{\text{Natural response}} + \underbrace{\{e^{-t} - e^{-2t}\}}_{\text{Forced response}} = \underbrace{4e^{-t} - 3e^{-2t}}_{\text{Total response}}$

16.  $x(t) = [1 - 3e^{-3t} + 2e^{-2t}] u(t)$

17.  $y(t) = 2 + 2e^{-t} - 4e^{-0.5t}$

18. (a)  $y(t) = 7e^{-t} u(t) - te^{-t} u(t) - 5e^{-2t} u(t)$       (b)  $y(t) = -e^{-2t} u(t) + te^{-2t} u(t) + e^{-3t} u(t)$

(c)  $y(t) = \frac{1}{12} - \frac{25}{3}e^{-3t} u(t) + \frac{25}{4}e^{-4t} u(t)$

19.  $y(t) = 3e^{-2t} u(t) - 3e^{-3t} u(t) - 2te^{-3t} u(t)$

20. (a) (i)  $h(t) = 10e^{-3t} \sin t u(t)$       (ii)  $S(t) = [1 - e^{-3t} (\cos t + 3 \sin t)] u(t)$

(b) (i)  $h(t) = \frac{1}{3}e^{-t} u(t) + \frac{2}{3}e^{-4t} u(t)$       (ii)  $S(t) = \frac{1}{2}u(t) - \frac{1}{3}e^{-t} u(t) - \frac{1}{6}e^{-4t} u(t)$

21.  $y(t) = \frac{18}{5}e^{-t} - 2e^{-t} - \frac{8}{5} \cos 2t - \frac{1}{5} \sin 2t$

22. (a)  $\frac{2}{s^2} - \frac{2e^{-s}}{s^2} - \frac{e^{-s}}{s} + \frac{e^{-3s}}{s} - \frac{2e^{-3s}}{s^2} + \frac{2e^{-4s}}{s^2}$

(b)  $\frac{2e^{-s}}{s} - \frac{e^{-s}}{s^2} + \frac{e^{-2s}}{s^2} + \frac{e^{-4s}}{s^2} - \frac{e^{-5s}}{s^2} - \frac{2e^{-5s}}{s}$

(c)  $\frac{2}{s^2} - \frac{2e^{-s}}{s^2} + \frac{e^{-2s}}{s} - \frac{e^{-4s}}{s} - \frac{2e^{-5s}}{s^2} + \frac{2e^{-6s}}{s^2}$

(d)  $\frac{2e^{-s}}{s} - \frac{e^{-s}}{s^2} + \frac{e^{-2s}}{s^2} + \frac{e^{-2s}}{s} + \frac{e^{-4s}}{s^2} - \frac{e^{-4s}}{s} - \frac{2e^{-5s}}{s} - \frac{e^{-5s}}{s^2}$

(e)  $\frac{2}{s^2} - 2\frac{e^{-s}}{s^2} - 4\frac{e^{-2s}}{s} + 2\frac{e^{-3s}}{s^2} - 4\frac{e^{-4s}}{s^2}$

(f)  $X(s) = 2\frac{e^{-s}}{s} - \frac{e^{-s}}{s^2} - 2\frac{e^{-2s}}{s^2} + 2\frac{e^{-3s}}{s^2} + 2\frac{e^{-4s}}{s} - \frac{e^{-5s}}{s^2} - 2\frac{e^{-5s}}{s}$

23. (a)  $X(s) = \frac{4}{s} - \frac{4}{3}\frac{1}{s^2} + \frac{8}{3}\frac{e^{-3s}}{s^2} - \frac{4}{3}\frac{e^{-6s}}{s^2} - 4\frac{e^{-6s}}{s}$

(b)  $X(s) = \frac{4}{s} - 4\frac{e^{-2s}}{s^2} + 8\frac{e^{-3s}}{s^2} - 4\frac{e^{-4s}}{s^2} - 4\frac{e^{-6s}}{s}$

(c)  $X(s) = 2\frac{e^{-2s}}{s} + \frac{e^{-2s}}{s^2} - 2\frac{e^{-4s}}{s^2} + \frac{e^{-6s}}{s^2} - 2\frac{e^{-6s}}{s}$

(d)  $X(s) = 2\frac{e^{2s}}{s} - \frac{e^{2s}}{s^2} + \frac{e^{-2s}}{s^2} + 2\frac{e^{-2s}}{s}$

## CHAPTER 10

### Answers to Fill in the Blanks

- |   |   |                            |
|---|---|----------------------------|
| 1. differential                             | 2. difference                               | 3. differential, algebraic |
| 4. difference, algebraic                    | 5. discrete-time, continuous-time           | 6. discrete time           |
| 7. discretized                              | 8. ROC of $X(z)$                            | 9. $x(n) r^{-n}$           |
| 11. intersection                            | 12. exterior                                | 13. interior               |
| 15. $z = \infty$                            | 16. $z = 0$ and $z = \infty$                | 17. $\delta(n)$            |
| 19. $\text{Lt}_{z \rightarrow \infty} X(z)$ | 20. $\text{Lt}_{z \rightarrow 1} (z-1)X(z)$ | 21. two                    |
| 22. impulse response                        | 23. $z = e^{j\omega}$                       | 24. absolutely summable    |
| 25. zero                                    | 26. inside the unit circle                  | 27. unit circle            |
| 28. forced response                         | 29. free response                           | 30. total response         |
|   |   | 31. impulse response       |

### Answers to Objective Type Questions

- |         |         |         |         |
|---------|---------|---------|---------|
| 1. (b)  | 2. (c)  | 3. (c)  | 4. (c)  |
| 5. (c)  | 6. (c)  | 7. (d)  | 8. (c)  |
| 9. (b)  | 10. (a) | 11. (d) | 12. (d) |
| 13. (a) | 14. (b) | 15. (a) | 16. (a) |
| 17. (a) | 18. (c) | 19. (a) | 20. (a) |
| 21. (a) | 22. (b) | 23. (c) | 24. (a) |
| 25. (c) | 26. (a) | 27. (c) | 28. (d) |
| 29. (c) | 30. (b) | 31. (c) |         |

### Answers to Problems

1. (a)  $X_1(z) = 2 + z^{-1} + 3z^{-2} - 4z^{-3} + z^{-4} + 2z^{-5}$   
 (b)  $X_2(z) = z^5 + 3z^4 - 2z^3 + 2z + 4$   
 (c)  $X_3(z) = 2z^3 + 4z^2 + z + z^{-1} + 3z^{-2} + 5z^{-3}$
  
2. (a)  $X_1(z) = 0$   
 (b)  $X_2(z) = -\frac{1}{6} \frac{z}{[z - (1/3)][z - (1/2)]}$   
 (c)  $X_3(z) = \frac{z - z^3}{z - 1}$   
 (d)  $X_4(z) = \frac{z - 3z^{-1} + 2z^{-3}}{(z - 1)^2}$   
 (e)  $X_5(z) = \frac{z[2z - (9/10)]}{[z - (1/4)][z - (1/5)]}$   
 (f)  $X_6(z) = \frac{-z/20}{[z - (1/5)][z - (1/4)]}$   
 (g)  $X_7(z)$  does not exist
  
3. (a)  $X_1(z) = \frac{z}{(z - 1)^2}$   
 (b)  $X_2(z) = \frac{z(z + 1)}{(z - 1)^3}$   
 (c)  $X_3(z) = \frac{2z}{(z - 2)^2}$   
 (d)  $X_4(z) = \frac{z[z - 2 \cos 3]}{z^2 - 4z \cos 3 + 4}$

$$(e) \quad X_5(z) = \frac{(1/3\sqrt{2})z}{[z - (1/3)e^{j(\pi/4)}][z - (1/3)e^{-j(\pi/4)}]}$$

$$(f) \quad X_6(z) = \frac{z^{10} - 1}{z^9(z-1)}$$

$$(h) \quad X_8(z) = \frac{1}{1-3z}$$

$$(j) \quad X_{10}(z) = \frac{3}{1-(1/2)z}$$

$$4. \quad (a) \quad x(n) = \{1, 1.5, 1.75, 1.875, 1.9375, \dots\} \quad (b) \quad x(n) = \{ \dots, 62, 30, 14, 6, 2, 0, 0 \}$$

↑

$$5. \quad x(n) = \sum_{k=5}^{10} \left( \frac{1}{k} \right) z^{-k}$$

$$6. \quad (a) \quad x(n) = \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} \frac{(-4)^k}{(2k)!} \delta(n+2k)$$

$$(b) \quad x(n) = \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} \frac{(-1)^k}{(2k)!} \delta(n-4k)$$

$$7. \quad (a) \quad x(n) = \left[ \frac{3}{4}(-1)^n - \frac{1}{2}n(-1)^n + \frac{1}{4} \right] u(n) \quad (b) \quad x(n) = \frac{9}{2} \left( -\frac{1}{2} \right)^n u(n) - \frac{7}{2} \left( -\frac{1}{3} \right)^n u(n)$$

$$(c) \quad x(n) = \left( -\frac{1}{3} \right)^n u(n)$$

$$(d) \quad x(n) = \delta(n-1) + \left( -\frac{1}{2} \right)^n u(-n-1) - 2(-1)^n u(-n-1)$$

$$(e) \quad x(n) = 4 \left( \frac{1}{2} \right)^n u(n) - 3 \left( -\frac{1}{4} \right)^n u(n)$$

$$(f) \quad x(n) = (-2)^n u(n) + (3)^n u(n) + \frac{2}{3}(n+1)(3)^{n+1} u(n+1)$$

$$(g) \quad x(n) = \frac{9}{2} u(n) + \frac{3}{2} \left( \frac{1}{3} \right)^n u(n) - 9(n+1) \left( \frac{1}{3} \right)^{n+1} u(n+1)$$

$$8. \quad (a) \quad (i) \quad x(n) = \left( \frac{1}{2} \right)^n u(n) - \left( \frac{1}{4} \right)^n u(n); \quad \text{ROC; } |z| > \frac{1}{2}$$

$$(ii) \quad x(n) = \left( \frac{1}{4} \right)^n u(-n-1) - \left( \frac{1}{2} \right)^n u(-n-1); \quad \text{ROC; } |z| < \frac{1}{4}$$

$$(iii) \quad x(n) = - \left( \frac{1}{2} \right)^n u(-n-1) - \left( \frac{1}{4} \right)^n u(n); \quad \text{ROC; } \frac{1}{4} < |z| < \frac{1}{2}$$

(b) (i)  $x(n) = 2(2)^n u(n) - \left(\frac{1}{2}\right)^n u(n); \text{ ROC; } |z| > 2$

(ii)  $x(n) = -2(2)^n u(-n-1) + \left(\frac{1}{2}\right)^n u(-n-1); \text{ ROC; } |z| < \frac{1}{2}$

(iii)  $x(n) = -2(2)^n u(-n-1) - \left(\frac{1}{2}\right)^n u(n); \text{ ROC; } \frac{1}{2} < |z| < 2$

(c) (i)  $x(n) = 2\delta(n) - 9\left(\frac{1}{2}\right)^n u(n) + 8u(n); \text{ ROC; } |z| > 1$

(ii)  $x(n) = 2\delta(n) + 9\left(\frac{1}{2}\right)^n u(-n-1) - 8u(-n-1); \text{ ROC; } |z| < \frac{1}{2}$

(iii)  $x(n) = 2\delta(n) - 9\left(\frac{1}{2}\right)^n u(n) - 8u(-n-1); \text{ ROC; } \frac{1}{2} < |z| < 1$

(d) (i)  $x(n) = (-2)^{n-3} u(n-3) + (3)^{n-3} u(n-3) + \frac{2}{3}(n-2)(3)^{n-2} u(n); \text{ ROC; } |z| > 3$

(ii)  $x(n) = -(-2)^{n-3} u(-n+2) - (3)^{n-3} u(-n+2) - \frac{2}{3}(n-2)(3)^{n-2} u(-n+1); \text{ ROC; } |z| < 2$

(iii)  $x(n) = (-2)^{n-3} u(n-3) - (3)^{n-3} u(-n+2) - \frac{2}{3}(n-2)(3)^{n-2} u(-n+1); \text{ ROC; } 2 < |z| < 3$

9. (a)  $nu(n)$

(b)  $\frac{n(n-1)}{2} u(n)$

10.  $x(n) = \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} \delta(n-3k)$

11.  $h(n) = -\frac{2}{3}\left(\frac{1}{4}\right)^n u(n) + \frac{5}{3}\left(-\frac{1}{2}\right)^n u(n)$

12.  $h(n) = \left[ 3\left(\frac{1}{4}\right)^n - 2\left(\frac{1}{3}\right)^n \right] u(n), H(z) = \frac{1 - (1/2)z^{-1}}{[1 - (1/3)z^{-1}][1 - (1/4)z^{-1}]}$

13.  $x(n) = -\frac{1}{2}\delta(n) + \frac{1}{6}u(n) + \frac{4}{3}\left(-\frac{1}{2}\right)^n u(n)$

14. (a)  $h(n) = 2\left(\frac{1}{2}\right)^{n-1} u(n-1), H(z) = \frac{2z^{-1}}{1 - (1/2)z^{-1}}$

(b)  $h(n) = \left[ -2\left(-\frac{1}{2}\right)^n + \left(\frac{3}{4}\right)^n \right] u(n), H(z) = \frac{-2}{1 + (1/2)z^{-1}} + \frac{1}{1 - (3/4)z^{-1}}$



## CHAPTER 12

### Answers to Fill in the Blanks

- |  |  |
|--|--|
| 1. $X(\omega) = \sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty} x(n) e^{-j\omega n}$               | 2. $\sum_{n=-\infty}^{\infty}  x(n)  < \infty$ |
| 3. signal spectrum   | 4. $2\pi$                                      |
| 5. integration, summation  | 6. $-\infty$ to $\infty$ , $-\pi$ to $\pi$     |
| 7. $x(n) = \frac{1}{2\pi} \int_{-\pi}^{\pi} X(\omega) e^{j\omega n} d\omega$ | 8. unit circle                                 |
| 9. $X(\omega) = X(z) \Big _{z=e^{j\omega}}$                                  | 10. continuous and periodic                    |
| 11. impulse response   | 12. frequency response                         |
| 13. frequency response, transfer function                                    | 14. continuous                                 |
| 15. magnitude function, phase function                                       | 16. symmetric, antisymmetric                   |
| 17. real, imaginary  | 18. $x(n) * h(n)$                              |

### Answers to Objective Type Questions

- |         |         |         |         |
|---------|---------|---------|---------|
| 1. (b)  | 2. (b)  | 3. (a)  | 4. (a)  |
| 5. (c)  | 6. (a)  | 7. (d)  | 8. (c)  |
| 9. (b)  | 10. (a) | 11. (b) | 12. (b) |
| 13. (a) | 14. (d) | 15. (a) |         |

### Answers to Problems

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| 1. (a) $X(\omega) = 2 - e^{-j\omega} + 3e^{-j2\omega} + 2e^{-j3\omega}$       | (b) $X(\omega) = 16 \frac{e^{j2\omega}}{1 - (1/4)e^{-j\omega}}$  |
| (c) $X(\omega) = \frac{1}{1 - 0.2e^{-j\omega}} + \frac{1}{1 - 2e^{-j\omega}}$ | (d) $X(\omega) = \frac{1 - a \cos \omega_0 e^{-j\omega}}{1 - 2a \cos \omega_0 e^{-j\omega} + a^2 e^{-j2\omega}}$ |
| 2. (a) $X(\omega) = e^{-j3\omega} \frac{3/4}{(5/4) - \cos \omega}$            | (b) $X(\omega) = e^{-j4\omega} \frac{1}{1 - (1/2)e^{-j\omega}}$  |
| (c) $X(\omega) = -\frac{e^{j\omega}}{(1 - e^{j\omega})^2}$                    | (d) $X(\omega) = \frac{1}{1 - e^{-j(\omega-2)}}$   |
| (e) $X(\omega) = -\frac{2e^{j\omega}}{(1 - 2e^{j\omega})^2}$                  |  |
| 3. $y(n) = \{1, 4, 4, 10, 7, -5, -1\}$  | 4. $x(n) = \{1, 2, 3, 2, 1\}$<br>↑   |
| 5. $X(\omega) = (1 + 4 \cos \omega) e^{-j\omega}$                             |  |

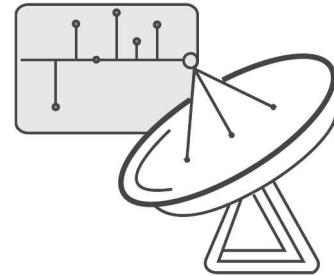
$$6. \quad y(n) = \frac{1}{3} [a^{n+1} u(n+1) + a^n u(n) + a^{n-1} u(n-1)]$$

$$7. \quad H(\omega) = \frac{1 - \cos \omega}{2}$$

$$8. \quad H(\omega) = \frac{1 + 0.81e^{-j\omega} + 0.81e^{-j2\omega}}{1 + 0.45e^{-j2\omega}}, \quad |H(\omega)| = \left[ \frac{2.31 + 2.94 \cos \omega + 1.62 \cos 2\omega}{1.2 + 0.9 \cos 2\omega} \right]^{1/2},$$

$$\angle H(\omega) = \tan^{-1} \left[ \frac{-0.45 \sin \omega - 0.36 \sin 2\omega}{1.36 + 1.17 \cos \omega + 1.26 \cos 2\omega} \right]$$

# Index



- Adder, 903
- Aliasing, 545, 583
- Amplitude spectra, 233
- Analysis equation, 231
- Anti-aliasing filter, 546, 584
- Anticipative system, 116
- Aperture effect, 552, 585
- Autocorrelation, 488, 534
  - of energy signals, 488, 534
  - of power signals, 489, 534
  - theorem, 489
- Average power, 56
- Band pass sampling theorem, 575
- Basic operations on signals, 20, 102
  - amplitude scaling, 27
  - signal addition, 30
  - signal multiplication, 31
  - time reversal, 21
  - time scaling, 27
  - time shifting, 20
- BIBO stability criterion, 139
- BIBO stable, 138
- Cascade form realization, 902, 911
- Circuit analysis, 718
- Classification of signals, 41, 102
  - causal and noncausal, 73, 105
  - continuous-time and discrete-time, 41, 102
  - deterministic and random, 42, 102
  - energy and power, 55, 102
- even and odd, 75, 104
- periodic and nonperiodic, 43, 103
- Classification of systems, 113, 164
  - causal and noncausal, 116, 165
  - continuous-time and discrete-time, 114, 165
  - invertible and noninvertible, 156, 166
  - linear and nonlinear, 118, 165
  - lumped parameter and distributed parameter, 115, 165
  - stable and unstable, 138, 166
  - static and dynamic, 115, 165
  - time invariant and time varying, 125, 166
- Complex spectrum, 231
- Convolution, 457, 520
- Convolution theorems, 463
  - frequency convolution, 463, 533
  - time convolution, 463, 532
- Correlation of functions, 457, 483, 533
- Correlation theorem, 486, 535
- Cross correlation, 485
  - of energy signals, 485, 534
  - of power signals, 486
- Data reconstruction, 552
- Detection
  - by autocorrelation, 517
  - by cross correlation, 517
  - by filtering, 518
- Direct form-I realization, 902, 904
- Direct form-II realization, 902, 907
- Dirichlet conditions, 204, 287
  - strong, 204
  - weak, 204

- 
- Discrete-time signal representation, 1, 99  
     functional, 2  
     graphical, 2  
     sequence, 3  
     tabular, 2  
 Distortion, 418  
 Distortionless transmission, 418  
 DTFT, 922  
  
 Energy density spectrum, 491  
 Equalizer, 585  
 Existence of DTFT, 923  
  
 Filter characteristics, 417  
 Finite duration signals, 683  
 Flat top sampling, 550  
 Forced response, 687, 693, 744  
 Fourier coefficients, 207  
 Fourier series, 203, 204, 286  
     cosine form, 211  
     existence of, 204  
     exponential form, 204, 229, 287  
     harmonic analysis, 203  
     harmonic form, 211  
     polar form, 211  
     trigonometric form, 204, 287  
 Fourier spectrum, 233  
 Fourier transform, 296  
     amplitude spectrum, 300  
     Dirichlet conditions, 300  
     existence of, 300  
     frequency spectrum, 300  
     inverse, 299  
     limitations, 326, 398  
     merits, 326, 399  
     pair, 299  
     of a periodic signal, 325  
     phase spectrum, 300  
 Free response, 744  
 Frequency  
     folding effect, 546  
     response, 372, 948  
     spectra, 233  
  
 Gibbs phenomenon, 243, 289  
 Graphical procedure for convolution, 466  
 Guard band, 545  
  
 Hilbert transform, 380, 400  
 Hilbert transform pair, 380  
  
 Hilbert transformer, 382, 400  
 Homogeneity property, 119, 165  
  
 Ideal filter characteristics, 421  
     all pass, 423, 449  
     band pass, 423  
     band reject, 423  
     high pass, 423  
     low pass, 422  
 IDTFT, 932  
 Impulse response, 411, 448, 855, 858  
 Impulse sampling, 547  
 Incoherent signals, 486  
 Integrator, 903  
 Interpolation, 552, 585  
 Inverse Hilbert transform, 380  
 Inverse Laplace transform  
     bilateral, 676  
     unilateral, 645  
 Inverse Z-transform methods, 814  
     convolution integral, 853  
     long division, 816, 892  
     methods, 815, 892  
     partial fraction expansion, 833  
     residue, 847  
  
 Laplace transform, 591, 733  
     advantages, 594  
     bilateral, 592, 602  
     comparison with Fourier transform, 595  
     existence of, 593  
     limitations, 594  
     relation with Fourier transform, 594  
     ROC of, 592  
     unilateral, 592, 596, 602, 742  
 Left-sided signals, 683  
 Linear phase systems, 419, 450  
 Linear system, 410  
 Low pass sampling theorem, 542, 583  
 LTI system, 410, 412  
 LTV system, 410, 412  
  
 Main lobe, 309, 399  
 Mean square error, 185  
 Memory system, 115  
 Memoryless system, 115  
 Multiplier, 903  
  
 Natural response, 687, 744  
 Natural sampling, 548

- 
- Non-anticipative system**, 116  
**Normalized**  
  energy, 55  
  orthogonal set, 182  
  power, 55  
**Nyquist interval**, 546, 584  
**Nyquist rate**, 545, 584
- Orthogonal**  
  functions, 183, 198  
  signal space, 182, 199  
  vector space, 181, 198  
  vectors, 172, 198  
**Orthonormal vector space**, 182, 198  
**Oversampling**, 545, 584
- Paley-Wiener criterion**, 424  
**Parallel form realization**, 902, 914  
**Parseval's energy theorem**, 491  
**Parseval's power theorem**, 494  
**Phase spectra**, 233  
**Power density spectrum**, 493  
**Properties of autocorrelation**  
  of energy signals, 488  
  of power signals, 490  
**Properties of convolution**, 459  
  associative, 459  
  commutative, 459  
  convolution with an impulse, 459, 532  
  distributive, 459  
  shift, 459, 532  
  width, 459  
**Properties of cross correlation**  
  of energy signals, 486  
  of power signals, 487  
**Properties of DTFT**, 934  
  correlation, 938  
  differentiation in frequency domain, 936  
  frequency convolution, 937  
  frequency shifting, 935  
  linearity, 934  
  modulation, 938  
  Parseval's theorem, 938  
  periodicity, 935  
  symmetry, 939  
  time convolution, 937  
  time reversal, 936  
  time shifting, 935  
**Properties of ESD**, 493
- Properties of Fourier series**, 244  
  conjugation, 249  
  convolution theorem, 247  
  linearity, 244  
  modulation, 248  
  Parseval's theorem, 249  
  time differentiation, 246  
  time integration, 246  
  time reversal, 245  
  time scaling, 246  
  time shifting, 244  
**Properties of Fourier transform**, 312  
  autocorrelation, 321  
  conjugation, 321  
  convolution, 317  
  differentiation in frequency domain, 316  
  differentiation in time domain, 315  
  duality, 319  
  frequency shifting, 313  
  linearity, 312  
  modulation, 320  
  multiplication, 318  
  Parseval's, 322  
  time integration, 316  
  time reversal, 314  
  time scaling, 314  
  time shifting, 312  
**Properties of Hilbert transform**, 382, 389  
**Properties of impulse function**, 9, 100  
**Properties of Laplace transform**, 616  
  conjugation, 624  
  differentiation in s-domain, 620  
  final value theorem, 626, 742  
  frequency shift, 622  
  initial value theorem, 625, 742  
  linearity, 616  
  multiplication, 623  
  Parseval's relation, 625  
  time convolution, 622  
  time periodicity, 627  
  time reversal, 618  
  time scaling, 617  
  time shift, 617  
  transform of derivative, 618  
  transform of integrals, 620  
**Properties of LTI systems**, 413, 447  
  associative, 414  
  causality, 414  
  commutative, 413  
  distributive, 413  
  invertibility, 415  
  memory, 414  
  stability, 415

- 
- Properties of PSD**, 496, 536  
**Properties of ROC of Laplace transforms**, 684  
**Properties of ROC of Z-transforms**, 787  
**Properties of Z-transform**, 788
- accumulation, 797
  - conjugation, 793
  - convolution, 794
  - correlation, 796
  - differentiation in z-domain, 793
  - final value theorem, 798
  - initial value theorem, 798
  - linearity, 788
  - multiplication, 799
  - multiplication by an exponential sequence, 791
  - Parseval's theorem, 797
  - time expansion, 792
  - time reversal, 791
  - time shifting, 789
- Relation between**
- bandwidth and rise time, 424
  - convolution and correlation, 498, 535
  - ESD and R(t), 497
  - impulse response and transfer function, 449
  - PSD and R(t), 498
- Right-sided signals**, 683
- ROC of**
- left hand sequence, 784
  - right hand sequence, 784
  - two-sided sequence, 785
- Sampling**, 541, 578
- frequency, 542, 578
  - interval, 541
  - period, 541, 578
  - techniques, 547
- Side lobes**, 309, 399
- Signal**, 1, 82
- analog, 102
  - anticausal, 73, 105
  - anti-symmetric, 75
  - continuous-time, 1
  - digital, 102
  - discrete-time, 1
  - one-dimensional, 1, 82
  - symmetric, 75
  - two-dimensional, 1
- Signal bandwidth**, 420, 450
- Signal modelling**, 99
- Single-sided spectra**, 233
- Smoothing filter**, 555
- Stability and causality**, 856
- Standard signals**, 3
- complex exponential, 12, 101
  - Gaussian, 15, 102
  - real exponential, 11, 100
  - rectangular pulse, 13, 101
  - signum, 14, 101
  - sinc, 14, 101
  - sinusoidal, 9, 100
  - triangular pulse, 13, 101
  - unit impulse, 7, 100
  - unit parabolic, 6, 99
  - unit ramp, 5, 99
  - unit step, 3, 99
- Steady-state response**, 693, 744
- Superposition property**, 119, 165
- Synthesis equation**, 230
- System**, 113, 164
- bandwidth, 421, 450
- Transfer function**, 416, 448, 855, 892, 947
- of ZOH, 555
- Transformation methods**, 203, 286
- Transient response**, 693, 744
- Two-sided signals**, 683
- Two-sided spectra**, 233
- Under sampling**, 555, 584
- Vector**, 171, 198
- Wave symmetry**, 213, 287
- even symmetry, 215, 287
  - half wave symmetry, 222, 287
  - hidden symmetry, 229
  - mirror symmetry, 215
  - odd symmetry, 219, 287
  - quarter wave symmetry, 225, 288
  - rotation symmetry, 219
- Waveform synthesis**, 703
- Zero order hold**, 554
- Z-transform**, 754, 890
- advantages of, 755, 890
  - comparison with LT, 760
  - one sided, 755
  - relation with DTFT, 755, 890
  - relation with LT, 761
  - ROC of, 755, 891
  - two sided, 755, 890

Third Edition  
**Signals and Systems**

A. Anand Kumar

The Third Edition of this well-received text continues to provide coherent and comprehensive coverage of signals and systems. It is designed for undergraduate students of electronics and communication engineering, telecommunication engineering, electronics and instrumentation engineering, and electrical and electronics engineering, as well as for the practicing professionals in these fields.

Written with student-centred pedagogically driven approach, the text provides a self-contained introduction to the theory of signals and systems. This book looks at the concepts of systems, and also examines signals and the way that signals interact with physical systems. It covers topics ranging from basic signals and systems to signal analysis, processing and communication. Features include introduction to Fourier transforms of standard signals, signal transmission through linear systems, relation between convolution and correlation of signals, sampling theorems and techniques, and transform analysis of LTI systems. All the solved and unsolved problems in this book are designed to illustrate the topics in a clear way.

New to This Edition

MATLAB Programs at the end of each chapter

**KEY FEATURES**

- Numerous worked-out examples in each chapter
- Short questions with answers help students to prepare for examinations
- Objective type questions and unsolved problems at the end of each chapter to test the level of understanding of the subject.

**THE AUTHOR**

**A. ANAND KUMAR, Ph.D.** is Principal, College of Engineering, K.L. University, Vizianagaram, Andhra Pradesh. Earlier from 2004 to 2011 he served as Director, Sri Institute of Technology and Engineering, Tadepallipudem, West Godavari District, Andhra Pradesh. From 2000 to 2006 he served as Principal, Sir C.R. Reddy College of Engineering, Eluru, West Godavari District, Andhra Pradesh and as Professor, S.D.M. College of Engineering and Technology, Dharwad, Karnataka from 1983 to 2000. With more than 38 years of teaching experience, he has published five more books (All published by PHI Learning). His area of research includes radar signal processing.

**Other books by the author**

Digital Signal Processing  
Control Systems  
Fundamentals of Digital Circuits, 2nd ed.  
Pulse and Digital Circuits, 2nd ed.  
Switching Theory and Logic Design



[www.phindia.com](http://www.phindia.com)